

# Manual for FOMA® P904i '07.5



- Easy Search/Contents/Precautions ■
- Before Using the Handset ■
- Voice/Videophone Calls ■
- PushTalk ■
- Phonebook ■
- Sound/Screen/Light Settings ■
- Security Settings ■
- Camera ■
- i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel ■
- Mail ■
- i-appli ■
- Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa ■
- GPS Function ■
- Full Browser ■
- Data Display/Edit/Management ■
- Music Playback ■
- Other Convenient Functions ■
- Character Entry ■
- Network Services ■
- Data Communication ■
- Overseas Use ■
- Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting ■
- Index/Quick Manual ■



# DoCoMo W-CDMA system

## Thank you for selecting the “FOMA P904i”.

Before or during use of the FOMA P904i, make sure that you read this manual and the separate manuals such as for the battery pack thoroughly so that you can use the FOMA P904i correctly. If you feel any inconvenience in reading the manual, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back page of this manual.

The FOMA P904i is designed to be your close partner.

Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

### Before using your FOMA phone

- Because the FOMA phones use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.
- Use the FOMA phone carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public, or in crowded or quiet places.
- Since the FOMA phones use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party.
- The FOMA phones change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice may sound different from the actual original voice.
- It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data stored in the phone.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.  
Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust, Inc., GeoTrust Japan, Inc., RSA Security Inc.,  
and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA phone supports FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA phone can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and in DoCoMo's roaming area.

### For those who use the FOMA phone for the first time

If this is the first time for you to use the FOMA phone, read this manual in the order as described below. Then you will get acquainted with the outline of preparing and operating procedures for using your FOMA phone.

1. Check “Safety Precautions” ..... P.12
2. Attach and then charge the battery pack ..... P.41
3. Turn on the power, set the initial settings, and check your phone number ..... P.45
4. Check the keys on the FOMA phone for their roles ..... P.24
5. Check the meanings of icons that appear on the display ..... P.26
6. Learn how to operate the menus ..... P.31
7. Get well acquainted how to make and receive calls ..... P.52

You can download the latest information about this manual from the following DoCoMo web site:

•User’s Manual (PDF file) Download

(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

※The URL and the content of the web site might be modified without notice.

# How to Read/Refer to This Manual

In this manual, illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can easily understand how to use the FOMA phone correctly.

- In this manual, the descriptions of the procedure are given with “Menu icon setting” set to “Asphalt”. (See page 31 and page 144) Also, the descriptions of the display are given with “Display”→“Display setting”→“Stand-by display” set to “OFF” and “Color pattern” set to “Platinum”.
- Operations are described in the method of “Scroll Selection” (see page 31).
- Displays and illustrations described in this manual are for reference. The actual ones might differ.
- In this manual, “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which supports the IC card function” is described as “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli”.

## How to Refer to This Manual

By the following search methods, you can find pages where your desired functions and services are described:

### From the Index

Search from the index when you know the names of functions or services.

### From Easy Search

Search from keywords for the functions you frequently use or the functions that are convenient if you can know any.

### From the Tabs on the Cover

Search from the tabs printed on the cover.

See the next page for details.

### From the Contents ▶▶ P.6

Search from the contents that categorize functions.

### From the Main Functions ▶▶ P.8

Search from the main functions when you want to use.

### From the Function List ▶▶ P.456


Search from the function list.

### From Quick Manual ▶▶ P.530

Quick Manual gives you a clear, brief description about basic functions. You can take it when you go out. Further, Quick Manual “For Overseas Use” is attached, so refer to it when you use the FOMA phone overseas.

#### Illustrations for keys

- In this manual, the illustrations for keys are simplified.

Actual key	Illustration in this manual
1 (Body color: Champagne × Circular)	
1 (Body color: Platinum × Frost)	
7 (Body color: Asphalt × Hairline)	
1 (Body color: Rose × Facet)	

For the illustration for keys used in this manual, see “Phone Parts and Functions” on page 24.

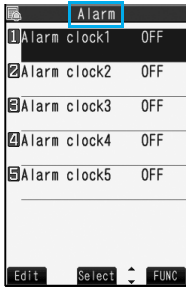
- For the description of the operating procedures in this manual, see page 31.

- Note that “FOMA P904” is referred to as “FOMA phone” in this manual.
- The functions which use a microSD memory card are described in this manual; however, you need to obtain a microSD memory card separately to make these functions available. See page 347 for the microSD memory card.
- It is prohibited to copy all or part of this manual without permission.
- The instructions contained in this manual may be changed without notice.

How to search for “Alarm” is explained here as an example of search method.

**From the Index** ▶▶ P.522

Search for a function or a service name as shown below.



Add to a phonebook entry	114
Add to phonebook (Phone)	109, 114
Add to phonebook (UIM)	109, 114
Additional service	440
Additional guidance	440
Address link function	216
<b>Alarm</b>	<b>390</b>
Alarm setting	398
ANSHIN-KEY area setting	166
ANSHIN-KEY info	166
ANSHIN-KEY lock	163, 166
Answer setting	73
Any key answer	73

Go to page 390 where “Alarm” is explained.

**From Easy Search** ▶▶ P.4

Search for the function you frequently use or that is convenient if you can know any as shown below.

Other things you can do	
To reduce the battery consumption.....	139 <Power Saver Mode>
To scan QR codes or Bar codes.....	196 <Bar Code Reader>
To check the location where you are, or the surroundings.....	302 <GPS Function>
To use the microSD memory card.....	347 <microSD Memory Card>
To exchange information using infrared rays....	357 <Infrared Data Exchange>
To listen to music.....	374 <MUSIC Player>
To use the FOMA phone as an alarm clock.....	390 <Alarm>
To use the FOMA phone as a calculator.....	402 <Calculator>
To use the FOMA phone overseas.....	448 <International Roaming>
To bring software programs up to date.....	505 <Software Update>
To bring security up to date.....	511 <Scanning Function>

Go to page 390 where “Alarm” is explained.

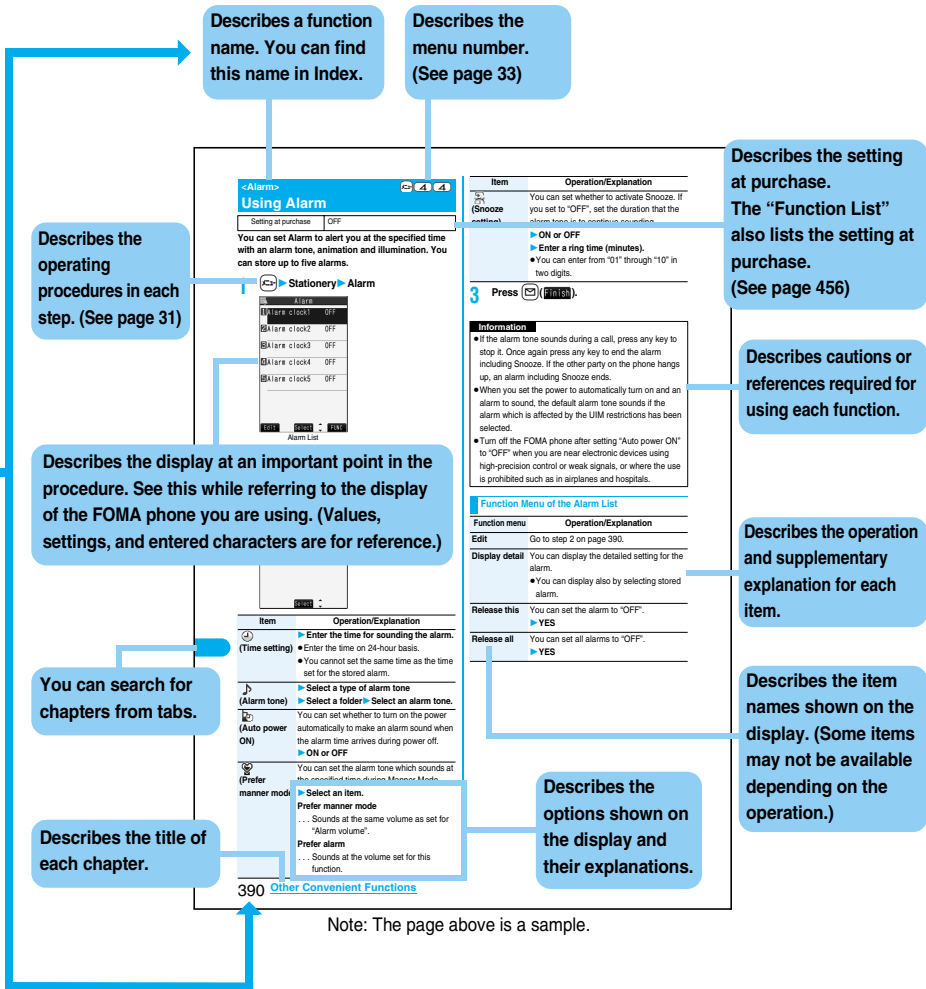
**From the Tabs on the Cover** ▶▶ Cover page

Search for the function you want to set in the order of “Cover” → “First page of Chapter” → “Description page” as shown below.

- Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
- GPS Function
- Full Browser
- Data Display/Edit/Management
- Music Playback
- Other Convenient Functions**
- Character Entry
- Network Services
- Data Communication
- Overseas Use
- Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting
- Index/Quick Manual

Multitaccess.....	Multitaccess	386
Multitask.....	Multitask	386
Informing You of an Incoming Call/Call Message by Voice.....	Reading Aloud	388
Turning Power On/Off Automatically at a Specified Time.....	Auto Power ON/OFF	389
Using Alarm.....	Alarm	390
Using Calendar to Manage Schedule.....	Schedule	393
Using ToDo to Manage Schedule.....	ToDo	397
Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm.....	Alarm Setting	398
Using Your Original Menu.....	Private Menu Setting	398
Storing Your Name, Mail Address and Other Information.....	Own Number	399
Recording Voice during a Call or Standby as Voice Memo.....	Voice Memo	400
Recording Images during a Videophone Call as a Movie Memo.....	Movie Memo	401

Go to page 390 where “Alarm” is explained.



# Easy Search

To retrieve the operation for the desired function with simple words, refer to the following:

## To know convenient functions for making calls

- To/Not to notify your phone number to the other party.... 48 <Caller ID Notification>
- To switch to a videophone call during a voice call ... 58 <Switch to Videophone Call>
- To change a volume level of the other party's voice..... 75 <Volume>
- To put a call on hold during a call..... 76 <Holding>



## To do the following when you cannot answer calls

- To put an incoming call on hold before answering.... 76 <On Hold>
- To convey the message that you need to refrain from talking on the phone ..... 77 <Public Mode (Drive Mode)>
- ..... 79 <Public Mode (Power Off)>
- To record voice/video messages..... 80 <Record Message Setting>



## To change melody or illumination

- To adjust the ring volume ..... 75 <Ring Volume>
- To change ring tones according to callers..... 109 <Add to Phonebook>
- To change ring tones..... 128 <Select Ring Tone>
- To know incoming calls by vibrator..... 130 <Vibrator>
- To silence the keypad sound..... 132 <Keypad Sound>
- To activate Manner Mode..... 134 <Manner Mode>
- To change colors/lighting patterns of Call indicator for incoming calls..... 147 <Illumination Setting>



## To change/know display settings

- To know the meaning of marks (icons) on the display ..... 26 <Display>
- To change the menu display ..... 35 <EASY Mode>
- To change the Stand-by display (Wallpaper) .... 137 <Display Setting>
- To display a calendar on the Stand-by display..... 137 <Calendar>
- To change the character size ..... 153 <Character Size>



## To make full use of mail

- To send Deco-mail ..... 236 <Deco-mail>
- To send images ..... 240 <Attachments>
- To sort and save mail automatically ..... 260 <Auto-sort>



## To make full use of camera

- To shoot with the photo light..... 191 <Photo Light>
- To change the shooting size..... 192 <Image Size Setting>
- To save to the microSD memory card ..... 193 <Storage Setting (Store In)>
- To display shot images.....322 <Picture Viewer>



## To use the FOMA phone with a sense of security

- To lock the FOMA phone from away  
when it gets lost ..... 161 <Omakase Lock>※1
- To lock the FOMA phone automatically  
when you are away from it or have lost it..... 163 <ANSHIN-KEY Lock>
- To keep Phonebook entries from prying eyes .... 172 <Secret Mode>
- To reject calls without a caller ID..... 175 <Call Setting without ID>
- To reject calls from the phone numbers  
not in the Phonebook ..... 176 <Reject Unknown>
- To separately store Phonebook and other  
data files in preparation for their erasure ..... 177 <Data Security Service>※2



※1 This is a pay service.

※2 This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

## Other things you can do



- To reduce the battery consumption ..... 139 <Power Saver Mode>
- To scan QR codes or Bar codes ..... 196 <Bar Code Reader>
- To check the location where you are,  
or the surroundings ..... 302 <GPS Function>
- To use the microSD memory card..... 347 <microSD Memory Card>
- To exchange information using infrared rays .... 357 <Infrared Data Exchange>
- To listen to music..... 374 <MUSIC Player>
- To use the FOMA phone as an alarm clock ..... 390 <Alarm>
- To use the FOMA phone as a calculator ..... 402 <Calculator>
- To use the FOMA phone overseas..... 448 <International Roaming>
- To bring software programs up to date..... 505 <Software Update>
- To bring security up to date ..... 511 <Scanning Function>



● The operating procedures for frequently used functions are summarized in Quick Manual. (See page 530)

# Contents

How to Read/Refer to This Manual .....	1	<b>Safety Precautions .....</b>	<b>12</b>
Easy Search .....	4	<b>Notes on Handling .....</b>	<b>17</b>
Contents .....	6	<b>Intellectual Property Rights .....</b>	<b>20</b>
Main Functions of FOMA P904i .....	8	<b>Accessories and Main Options .....</b>	<b>22</b>
Making Full Use of FOMA P904i! .....	10		

<b>Before Using the Handset</b> 23	Phone Parts and Functions, Display, Method for Selecting Menu, EASY Mode, Guide, UIM (FOMA Card), Battery, Charging, One-push Open, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Setting, Set Time, Caller ID Notification, Own Number, etc.
<b>Voice/Videophone Calls</b> 51	Making a Call/Videophone Call, WORLD CALL, Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call, Call Records, Chaku-moji, Hands-free, Receiving a Call/Videophone Call, Answer Setting, Volume, Ring Volume, Public Mode (Drive Mode), Public Mode (Power Off), Record Message Setting, Chara-den, etc.
<b>PushTalk</b> 93	What is PushTalk?, Making a PushTalk Call, Receiving a PushTalk Call, PushTalk Phonebook, Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving, etc.
<b>Phonebook</b> 107	Phonebook, Add to Phonebook (FOMA phone/UIM), Group Setting, Search Phonebook, Two-touch Dial, Voice Dial, etc.
<b>Sound/Screen/Light Settings</b> 127	Select Ring Tone, Vibrator, Voice Announce, Manner Mode, Display Setting, Private Window, Backlight, Color Pattern, Menu Icon Setting, Feel Settings, Illumination Setting, Desktop Icon, Font, Clock Display, etc.
<b>Security Settings</b> 155	Passwords, Change Security Code, UIM Setting, Releasing PIN Lock, Lock All, Self Mode, Personal Data Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Mail Security, Restrictions, Call Setting without ID, Reject Unknown, etc.
<b>Camera</b> 179	Still Image Shoot, Moving Image Shoot, Settings for Shooting Images, Setting Image Size/Image Quality, Bar Code Reader, Text Reader, etc.
<b>i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel</b> 203	What is i-mode?,  Menu, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Download, i-mode Settings, Message R/F, SSL Certificate, Client Certificate, What is i-motion?, What is i-Channel?, etc.
<b>Mail</b> 229	i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Template, Attachments, Photo-sending, Mail Auto-receive, Kirari Mail, Receive Option, Check New Message, Auto-sort, Chat Mail, SMS (Short Messages), etc.
<b>i-appli</b> 273	What is i-appli?, i-appli Download, i-appli Run, Starting i-appli Automatically, i-appli Stand-by Display, Settings for when Running i-appli,  appli(microSD)
<b>Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa</b> 291	What is Osaifu-Keitai?, What is iC Transfer Service?, Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli, What is ToruCa?, Obtain ToruCa Files, ToruCa Viewer, ToruCa File List/Detailed ToruCa File Display, ToruCa Settings, IC Card Lock



<b>GPS Function</b> 301	What is GPS?, Position Location, Provide Location, Notify of Location, GPS Settings, etc.
<b>Full Browser</b> 311	Full Browser, Full Browser Settings
<b>Data Display/Edit/Management</b> 319	About Data Box, Picture Viewer, Original Animation, i-motion Player, Chara-den, Melody Player, microSD Memory Card, Infrared Data Exchange, iC Communication, PDF Viewer, AV Output, etc.
<b>Music Playback</b> 371	Playing Back Music, Saving Music Files, MUSIC Player, Playlist, About SD-Jukebox
<b>Other Convenient Functions</b> 385	Multiaccess, Multitask, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, Private Menu Setting, Own Number, Voice Memo, Movie Memo, Call Data, Calculator, Free Memo, UIM Operation, Bluetooth, Reset Settings, Initialize, etc.
<b>Character Entry</b> 415	Character Entry, Common Phrases, Cutting/Copying/Pasting, Own Dictionary, Learned Words, Download Dictionary, etc.
<b>Network Services</b> 425	Check Network Information, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding, Nuisance Call Blocking, Caller ID Request, Dual Network, English Guidance, Service Numbers, In-call Management, Remote Access, Multi Number, 2in1, Additional Service, etc.
<b>Data Communication</b> 441	Available Data Communication, Before Using, Preparation Flow for Data Communication, AT Command, About CD-ROM, DoCoMo Keitai Datalink
<b>Overseas Use</b> 447	Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Available Services, Confirmation for Using, Making a Call from the Country You Stay, Receiving a Call, Network Search Mode, PLMN Setting, Operator Name Display, Roaming Setting, Overseas Service
<b>Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting</b> 455	Function List, Jacket Style and Non-Jacket Style, Options and Related Equipment, Troubleshooting, Error Messages, Warranty and Maintenance Services, i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site, Software Update, Scanning Function, Specifications, Export Administration Regulations, etc.
<b>Index/Quick Manual</b> 521	Index, Quick Manual, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use"

# Main Functions of FOMA P904i

FOMA (Freedom Of Mobile multimedia Access) is the name of the DoCoMo service based on the W-CDMA format, authorized as one of the world's standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

## Remarkable i-mode!

i-mode is an online service that enables you to get useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or web pages supporting i-mode by using the screen of an i-mode phone. This service also enables you to send or receive mail messages with ease.

### ◆ i-mode mail/Deco-mail/ Decomail-pictograph ▶▶ P.230, P.236, P.469

Besides mail text, you can attach up to 2 Mbytes of files or 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) in total. The FOMA phone supports Deco-mail/Decomail-pictographs and you can change the character color, character size, and background color of mail text, so you can compose pleasant mail messages to send.

### ◆ Mega i-appli/i-appli DX ▶▶ P.274

By downloading i-appli programs from sites, you can enjoy playing games or have stock price information or weather forecasts updated automatically. As the large capacity mega i-appli is supported, you can enjoy playing high-resolution 3D games and full-length role playing games. With i-appli DX software, you can have more fun of i-appli by linking with information inside the i-mode phone such as the Phonebook entries or mail messages.

#### ■ Support intuition games

You can enjoy playing i-appli programs such as the games supporting the motion tracking which enables you to operate i-appli programs by inclining or swinging the FOMA phone.

### ◆ Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa ▶▶ P.292, P.294

By downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, you can replenish electronic money from a site into the IC card in the FOMA phone and check your account for the balance and usage details. As the "DCMX" i-appli program that provides the DoCoMo credit service is pre-installed, your FOMA phone as "Osaifu-Keitai" has now become more and more a convenient tool in your daily life. Further, "IC transfer service" is supported so that you can easily move data from the existing IC card to a new one when you replace your FOMA phone such as at the time of model change.

ToruCa is an electronic card that you can obtain from scanning devices (reader/writer) or sites and can easily exchange using mail or infrared data exchange.

### ◆ International Roaming ▶▶ P.448

You can use your FOMA phone, its phone number, and mail address overseas as they are. (In 3G roaming area only)

Voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS, and network services are available.

### ◆ Chaku-uta Full®/Uta-hodai ▶▶ P.374, P.372

Chaku-uta Full® enables you to obtain a whole music file from a music distribution site for playback or for setting it as a ring tone. At the flat rate, you can enjoy listening to music as much as you like; for example, Uta-hodai enables you to obtain a whole music file from the membership music site on monthly fee basis.

● "Chaku-uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

### ◆ Video Clips ▶▶ P.224

As up to 10 Mbytes of i-motion movie in H.264 format of high compression rate is supported, you can enjoy a whole range of music clip, or high-quality video clips such as movies or animations.

### ◆ GPS ▶▶ P.302

You can obtain the location information of the FOMA phone using radio waves transmitted from the GPS satellites. You can use that obtained location information to bring up a map of your current location and search for information of the surrounding area, notify of your location by attaching to mail, and navigate yourself to the place where you want to go. (The navigation i-appli program is pre-installed.)

### ◆ Bluetooth ▶▶ P.405

The wirelessly-connected FOMA phone and a Bluetooth device enable you to talk or listen to music while you are carrying the FOMA phone in your bag.

### ◆ Feel Function ▶▶ P.145

#### ■ Feel \* Talk

Feel \* Talk reproduces a “Conversational” atmosphere by animating 45 types of cartoon characters and by lighting or flickering the Call/Charging indicator.

#### ■ Feel \* Mail

Feel \* Mail reproduces the atmosphere of “Mail messages” by animating 45 types of cartoon characters. Pleasant animation appears on the Private window according to the contents of the new mail message.

### ◆ HIKARI Icon ▶▶ P.25

When a missed call or new mail message is found, flickering of the HIKARI Icons notifies you.

### ◆ Wide QVGA Display

You can display still images in the Wide QVGA (240 dots x 400 dots) display of approx. 2.8 inches.

Further, the Light sensor automatically adjusts the backlight in accordance with the ambient brightness, and the LCD AI adjusts the image quality in accordance with the brightness.

### ◆ Security Settings ▶▶ P.155

Various settings such as the lock functions and security settings for “safety” are available.

#### ■ ANSHIN-KEY Lock ▶▶ P.163

The FOMA phone is automatically locked if the ANSHIN-KEY is away from it. So this function is useful for the cases such as when you leave the desk with the FOMA phone left on it because it is automatically locked.

#### ■ Omakase Lock ▶▶ P.161

When you have lost the FOMA phone, you can lock the FOMA phone and release it by contacting DoCoMo.

For inquiries, see the back page of this manual.

Omakase Lock is a pay service\*\*.

\*\*You are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.

● Note that Omakase Lock might be activated by an offer from the contractor of the FOMA phone when the contractor and the user of the FOMA phone differ.

#### ■ Data Security Service ▶▶ P.177

This service enables you to save the Phonebook entries, still images, and mail messages to the Data Storage Center, and restore the saved data, when you lost your FOMA phone or in other cases, to your FOMA phone from the Data Storage Center. Further, you can edit or manage data held at the Data Storage Center using your personal computer and can reflect the edited data to your FOMA phone.

For cautions on the use of Data Security Service and details on how to use it, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

For inquiries, see the back page of this manual.

Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

### ◆ One-push Open ▶▶ P.44

#### ■ One-push Answer ▶▶ P.74

When a call comes in, just press the One-push open button, and you can open the FOMA phone to answer the call.

#### ■ Recv. Mail/Call at Open ▶▶ P.141

When a missed call or new mail message is found, just press the One-push open button, and you can open the FOMA phone to display the detailed Missed Call display or the Inbox List.

### ◆ Mail Blind ▶▶ P.263

You can show the characters on the detailed mail display and Message Composition display in gray to make them hard to see from persons around you. (The characters on the Character Entry display are not shown in gray.)

### ◆ Image Stabilizer ▶▶ P.193

Owing to the Image Stabilizer function, you can shoot still images or moving images with less blur by the outside camera.

### ◆ Network ▶▶ P.426

- Voice Mail Service (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Dual Network Service (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- SMS (Short Messages) (Free)
  - No subscription is required.
- Call Waiting Service (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Multi Number (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- Call Forwarding Service (Free)
  - A separate subscription is required.
- 2in1 (Charged)
  - A separate subscription is required.

# Making Full Use of FOMA P904i!

## ◆ Videophone ▶▶ P.52

You can talk with a person who is away from you, seeing each other.

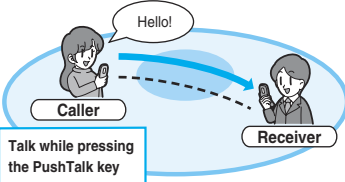
By the default setting, the voice of the other party is set to be output from the speakers, so you can start talking immediately.

You can switch, without disconnecting, from an ordinary voice call to a videophone call.

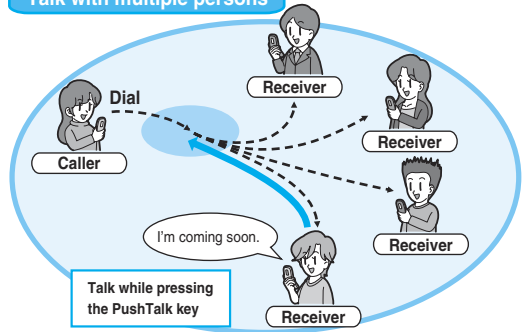
## ◆ PushTalk ▶▶ P.94

You can communicate with multiple persons (up to five persons including yourself) just by selecting them from the PushTalk Phonebook and pressing the PushTalk key.

### Talk between two persons



### Talk with multiple persons



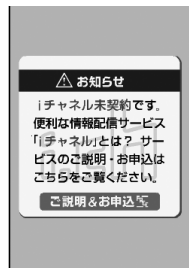
## ◆ i-Channel ▶▶ P.226

i-Channel distributes graphical information such as news or weather forecast.

By selecting a channel you want to see on the Channel List, you can obtain detailed information.

- i-Channel is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.
- The i-Channel service is provided only in Japanese.

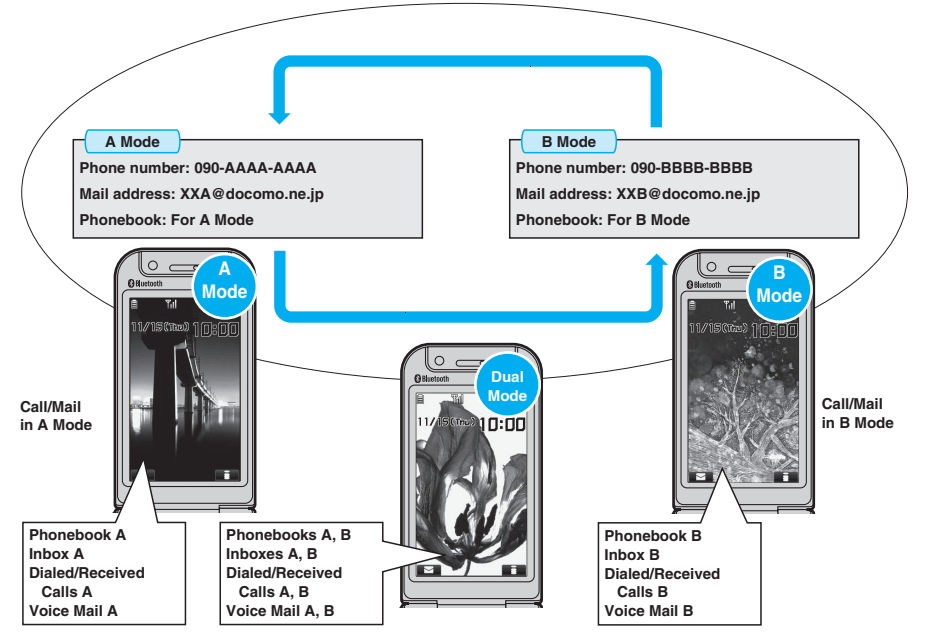
Before contract



After contract

## ◆ 2in1 ▶▶ P.435

You can use two phone numbers/mail addresses on your single FOMA phone. This is the service that enables you to use your FOMA phone as if you are using two sets, by using the dedicated mode function. You can sort Phonebook entries, mail boxes, dialed/received call records, and Stand-by displays into "A mode" and "B mode" to manage them separately. You can also use "Dual mode" to simultaneously manage both A and B modes.



## ◆ MUSIC Player ▶▶ P.374



On a single player, you can play back and enjoy Chaku-uta Full® music files, Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files, and SD-Audio files.

You can download Chaku-uta Full® music files from sites and may be able to display their images and lyrics while playing them back.

In the case of SD-Audio or WMA files, you can obtain your favorite music files from music CDs or Internet web pages and save them on the microSD memory card by using your personal computer.

You can save music files also by using the Napster® application program.




## ◆ Chaku-moji ▶▶ P.63

While calling up the other party, you can have your message displayed on his/her Call Receiving display. The receiving end can know your subject/feeling by reading the message before answering the call.





# Safety Precautions



Always follow the safety precautions.

- Before using the FOMA phone, read these safety precautions carefully so that you can use it correctly. After reading the precautions, keep them in a safe place.
- Be sure to observe these safety precautions because they are designed to protect you or those around you from causing injury and to avoid unnecessary damage to the property.
- The symbols below indicate the levels of danger or damage that can be caused if the particular precautions are not observed.

	<b>Danger</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling will almost certainly cause death or serious injury.
	<b>Warning</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing death or serious injury.
	<b>Caution</b>	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing injury or damage to the product or property.

- The following symbols show specific directions:

	Denotes things not to do. (Prohibition)	
Don't		
	Denotes not to disassemble.	
Do not disassemble		
	Denotes not to touch with wet hands.	Avoid Water
Not wet hands		

	Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).
Do	
	Denotes to pull the power plug out of the outlet.
Pull the power plug out	

- “Safety Precautions” are divided into the following six sections:

General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM.....	P.13
Precautions for FOMA phone .....	P.14
Precautions for batteries .....	P.15
Precautions for adapters/chargers.....	P.15
Precautions for UIM .....	P.16
Notes on using near electronic medical equipment .....	P.16

## General precautions for FOMA phone, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM



### Danger



Do

#### Use only the batteries and adapters/chargers approved by DoCoMo for your FOMA phone.

If you use any type of battery, adapter or charger other than the specified one, your FOMA phone, battery or other accessories may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack P12

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

Desktop Holder P20

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

※For other compatible products, contact a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.



Do not disassemble

#### Do not disassemble, modify or solder the FOMA phone or accessories.

Accidents such as fire, injury, or electric shock, or malfunction may result. The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Avoid Water

#### Do not wet the FOMA phone or accessories.

If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto them, overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury or others may result. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.



Don't

#### Do not use or leave the FOMA phone and its accessories in places with a high temperature such as near fire or places exposed to direct sunlight, or in cars under the blazing sun.

The devices could be deformed or malfunction, or the battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire, thus resulting in the deterioration of performance and shortening of the life of devices. Also, part of the case could get heated, causing bare skin burns.



### Warning



Do

#### When you are in a place such as a gas station where flammable gas is generated, turn off the FOMA phone, or never do charging. Otherwise, catching fire may result.

Ensure that you use Osai-fu-Keitai with the FOMA phone turned off when you are in the vicinity of the gas station. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off the power with the lock released.)



Don't

#### Do not throw the FOMA phone or accessories, or subject them to severe shocks.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.



Don't

#### Be careful not to let electroconductive materials (metal pieces, pencil leads etc.) contact with the charging terminals or connector terminal. Also, make sure that those are not entered into the inside of the FOMA phone.

Short-circuit could cause fire or malfunction of the FOMA phone.



Don't

#### Do not place the batteries, the FOMA phone, adapters/chargers, or UIM in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.

The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. The FOMA phone or the adapter/charger may overheat, smoke, or catch fire, or its circuit parts may become damaged.



Do

#### If odor, overheat, discoloration, or deformation is detected during use, battery charge, or storage, immediately observe the following:

1. Pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
  2. Turn off the power to the FOMA phone.
  3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA phone.
- If you use the FOMA phone and its accessories as they are, overheat, burst, or catching fire could result or the battery could leak.



### Caution



Do

#### If children use the FOMA phone or accessories, a guardian should explain the safety precautions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use.

Otherwise, injury may result.



Don't

#### Do not place the FOMA phone or accessories on unstable locations such as wobbly tables or slanted locations.

The FOMA phone or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.



Do

#### Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.

Accidental swallowing or injury may result.



Don't

#### Do not store in humid or dusty places, or in high temperature environments.

Malfunction may result.



Do

#### If you use i-appli programs, talk on the videophone and so on for a long time during charging, the temperature of the FOMA phone, battery pack, or adapter/charger might rise.

If you directly touch the part of high temperature continuously, redness, itching, or rash might be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition.

Be especially careful when you use the FOMA phone for a long time with the adapter/charger connected.

## Precautions for FOMA phone



### Warning



Do

**Turn off the FOMA phone in places where use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.**

Otherwise, electronic devices and electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off. For use inside medical facilities, make sure that you comply with their regulations. You may be punished for using the FOMA phone in airplanes, which is prohibited by law.



Do

**Turn off the FOMA phone when near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals.**

The FOMA phone may possibly cause these devices to malfunction.

※Electronic devices that may be affected:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from the radio waves.



Don't

**If you have any implanted electronic medical equipment, do not place your FOMA phone in a chest pocket or inner pocket.**

If the FOMA phone is positioned close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause that equipment to malfunction.



Do

**For those with weak heart conditions, the vibrator and ring volume must be adjusted carefully.**

Those functions may cause an effect on the heart.



Don't

**Do not operate the FOMA phone while driving a vehicle.**

Operating a mobile phone during drive has been prohibited since 1st, November 2004. Park your car in a safe place even when you are using the Hands-Free Kit. During drive, make sure that you activate Public Mode or Voice Mail Service.



Don't

**Do not directly point the infrared data port at someone's eyes during transmission.**

His/her eyes may possibly be affected. Other infrared devices may operate erroneously if the infrared data port is pointed at them during transmission.



Do

**When talking with the FOMA phone set to Hands-free, be sure to keep the FOMA phone away from your ear.**

Otherwise, your hearing could be impaired.



Don't

**Do not shine the photo light close to eyes.**

Doing so can damage eyesight. Also, accidents such as injury might occur if someone is startled or dazzled by the light.



Don't

**Do not put the FOMA phone in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.**

If the airbag expands, the FOMA phone could hit you and others, causing accidents such as injury and the FOMA phone could malfunction and become damaged.



Do

**If thunder starts to rumble while you are using the FOMA phone outdoors, turn the power off, and move to a safe place.**

Otherwise, you could be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



Don't

**When using the motion tracking, ensure that you check around you for safety, securely take hold of your FOMA phone, and do not swing to an extent more than necessitated.**

The motion tracking is the function to incline or swing the FOMA phone for operation. If you excessively swing your FOMA phone, it might happen that it hits against persons or objects, resulting in critical accidents or damage.



Don't

**When a metallic strap is attached to your FOMA phone, be careful that it does not hit against persons or objects when using the motion tracking.**

Accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.



### Caution



Do

**Itching, rash or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA phone immediately, and then seek medical attention.**

Metals are used for the following parts:

Where it is used	Material	Finishing
Charging terminal	Phosphor bronze	Gold-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Screws for Jacket Style Screws for Non-Jacket Style※	Iron	Chrome-plated finish with copper-and-nickel-plated ground
One-push open button	ABS	Chrome-plated finish with copper-and-nickel-plated ground
Battery pack installation side	PC+ASA	Copper-plated, Nickel-plated

※The finishing for the following body color differs:

- Asphalt × Hairline: Black-chrome-plated finish
- Rose × Facet: Coating finish



Don't

**Do not swing the FOMA phone by its strap.**

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, and accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.





Don't

**Do not allow liquids such as water, or foreign materials such as metal pieces or flammable materials to get into the UIM insertion slit or microSD memory card slot of the FOMA phone.**

Fire, electric shock or malfunction may occur.



Do

**Electronic devices in some types of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA phone.** For safety's sake, make sure not to use the FOMA phone inside such cars.



Don't

**Do not place magnetic cards or similar objects near the FOMA phone or between phone parts.**

Information on magnetic cards such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be deleted.



Don't

**Do not open the FOMA phone by pressing the one-push open button near persons around you or your face.**

The FOMA phone may hit you or persons around you, causing accidents and injuries.



Do

**Be careful not to get your finger or a strap caught between the FOMA phone when you close or open it.**

Accidents such as injury or damage may result.



Do

**Use the Bluetooth functions in Japan only.**

The Bluetooth functions on the FOMA phone have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use it overseas.



Do

**Use the FeliCa reader/writer functions in Japan only.**

The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA phone have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use it overseas.



Do

**Use the ANSHIN-KEY in Japan only.**

The ANSHIN-KEY for the FOMA phone has been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.

You might be imposed punishment if you use it overseas.

## Precautions for batteries

■ Check the description on the label of the battery pack for the type of battery.

Description	Type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery



## Danger



Do

**If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and get medical attention immediately.**

Otherwise, the loss of eyesight may result.



Don't

**Do not throw the battery into fire.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

**Do not let any metal object such as a wire come in contact the battery terminals. Also do not carry or store the battery together with any metal objects like a necklace.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

**Do not pierce it with nails, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



Don't

**Do not use excessive force to attach the battery to the FOMA phone even when you cannot attach it successfully. Also, check that the battery is the right way round when you attach it.**

The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.



## Warning



Do

**If the battery fluid comes in contact with skin or clothes, immediately stop using, then rinse it out thoroughly with clean water.**

Skin injury may result.



Do

**If charging is not completed at the end of the specified charging time, stop charging.**

Otherwise, the battery may leak, overheat, become damaged or catch fire.



Do

**Immediately stop using the FOMA phone and keep it away from fire if the battery leaks or emits an odor.**

The leaked battery fluid may ignite, causing fire or burst.



## Caution



Don't

**An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.**

The battery may catch fire or damage the environment.

After insulating the battery terminals with tape, take it to a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop or dispose of it in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

## Precautions for adapters/chargers



## Warning



Don't

**Never short-circuit the charging terminals when the adapter is plugged into the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the charging terminals with fingers or other bare skin.**

Fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury may result.

[Next Page](#)



Not wet hands

**Do not touch the power cord of the adapter/charger, or power outlet with wet hands.**

Electric shock may result.



Don't

**Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in steamy places such as a bathroom.**

Electric shock may occur.



Pull the power plug out

**When the adapter/charger is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the outlet.**

Otherwise, electric shock, fire, or malfunction may result.



Don't

**Do not use a damaged adapter/charger cord or power cord.**

Electric shock, overheating or fire may result.



Pull the power plug out

**If liquids such as water get in the charger, unplug the power cord immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

Otherwise, electric shock, smoke or fire may result.



Do

**When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, firmly plug it in, taking care not to contact with metal straps or the like.**

Otherwise, electric shock, short-circuit or fire may result.



Do

**Use the adapter/charger at the specified V AC.**

If you use it at a wrong voltage, fire or malfunction may result. When using the FOMA phone overseas, use FOMA AC adapter available overseas.

AC adapter: 100 V AC

DC adapter: 12/24 V DC

[For negative (-) grounded vehicles only]

AC adapter available overseas: 100 V to 240 V AC

[Connect only to household AC outlet]



Do

**If a fuse of the DC adapter has blown, replace it with a specified fuse.**

If you use an unspecified fuse, fire or malfunction may result. For the specified fuse, refer to each instruction manual.



Don't

**The DC adapter is for use only in a negative (-) grounded vehicle. Do not use it in a positive (+) grounded vehicle.**

Fire may result.



Do

**Keep the power plugs dust-free.**

Otherwise, fire may result.



Don't

**Place the charger and desktop holder on a stable location during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger and desktop holder in cloth or bedding.**

The FOMA phone may become separated, or the charger and desktop holder may overheat, causing fire or malfunction.



Don't

**If it starts to thunder, do not touch the FOMA phone and adapter/charger.**

You might be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.



## Caution



Pull the power plug out

**Before cleaning, pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

Otherwise, electric shock may result.



Don't

**Do not place heavy objects on the adapter/charger cord and power cord.**

Electric shock or fire may result.



Do

**Always hold the power plug when pulling the adapter/charger out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

If you pull the plug out by the cord, the cord may be damaged, which could result in electric shock or fire.

## Precautions for UIM



## Caution



Do

**Be careful not to touch the cut surface of the UIM (IC portion) when removing it.**

You may hurt your hand or fingers.

## Notes on using near electronic medical equipment

■ The description below meets “Guidelines on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones – Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment” by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.



## Warning



Do

**Turn off the FOMA phone in crowded areas such as inside trains during rush hour, as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be near you.**

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

**Comply with the following in hospitals or health care facilities:**

- Do not carry the FOMA phone into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU).
- Turn off the FOMA phone in hospital wards.
- If there is any electronic medical equipment near you, turn off the FOMA phone even when in a location such as a lobby.
- Comply with any regulations of hospital and health care facilities instructing you not to use or carry in a mobile phone.
- If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.



Do

**If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the mobile phone 22 cm or more away from an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.**

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.



Do

**Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical establishments for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting its manufacturer.**

Operation of electronic medical equipment can be affected by radio waves.

## Notes on Handling

### General notes

#### ■ Do not wet the equipment.

The FOMA phone, battery, adapter/charger, and UIM are not waterproofed. Do not use them in environments, which are high in humidity such as in bathrooms, and do not allow them to get wet from rain. Furthermore, if carrying them against your body, they become moist due to perspiration and the internal parts may become corroded, causing malfunction.

If the parts are found to have been damaged due to exposure to the liquids, any repairs will not be covered by warranty, or repairs may not be possible. This may be repaired at a cost if repairs are possible.

#### ■ Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.

● The screen of the FOMA phone sometimes has a special coating so that they are easier to see. If you rub it roughly with a dry cloth, it might be scratched. Take care of the way of handling, and use only a dry, soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses. If the screen is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated or the coating might peel off.

● Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, detergent or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printing may be removed or discoloration may result.

#### ■ Occasionally clean the terminals of the equipment using a dry cotton swab.

If the terminals become soiled, the connection might deteriorate so that the power turns off or the battery does not charge fully. Wipe the terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

#### ■ Do not place the FOMA phone near an air conditioner outlets.

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction.

#### ■ Do not place the FOMA phone in places where it may be subjected to excessive pressure.

Do not place the FOMA phone in a bag along with many other articles or in a trouser pocket, because this can damage the LCD display and internal circuitry. Malfunctions caused by such damage is not covered by the warranty.

#### ■ Carefully read each instruction manual attached to the FOMA phone, battery pack, adapter/charger, or desktop holder.

### Notes on handling the FOMA phone

#### ■ Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.

The FOMA phone should be used within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.

#### ■ The FOMA phone, if operated near landline phones, television sets, radios or other devices that are in use, may affect them. You should operate your FOMA phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

#### ■ It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place.

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

#### ■ Do not sit with the FOMA phone in your trousers or skirts pocket. Do not place the FOMA phone under heavy objects in a bag.

Malfunction may result.

#### ■ Make sure that nothing, such as a strap, gets caught between the parts of the FOMA phone when you close it.

Otherwise, malfunction or damage may result.

#### ■ The FOMA phone becomes warm during use or charging but this is not an abnormality. Use the FOMA phone as it is.

#### ■ Do not leave the FOMA phone in places exposed to direct sunlight.

Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.

### Notes on handling batteries

#### ■ Batteries have a limited life.

Though it varies depending on the usage state, you are advised to replace the battery if its usable time is extremely short even when you fully charge it. Make sure that you buy the specified battery.

#### ■ Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.

#### ■ Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA phone for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.

#### ■ The usable time of the battery differs depending on the usage environment or its remaining life.

#### ■ Depending on how the battery pack is used, it might swell as its operating life becomes short, but this is not a problem.

[Next Page](#)

- **Store the batteries in a well ventilated place out of direct sunlight.**

When you do not use the battery for a long time, remove the battery from the FOMA phone or adapter/charger with the battery power completely drained, and store it in the polyethylene bag used for wrapping.

- **When any abnormality due to external shock such as the deformation or scratches by dropping is found on the battery pack, consult a repair counter.**

### Notes on handling chargers/adapters

- **Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.**

- **Charge the battery where:**

- There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.
- There are no landline phones, television sets or radios nearby.

- **During charging, the adapter/charger may become warm. This is not an abnormality, so continue charging.**

- **Do not use the DC adapter for charging the battery when the car engine is not running.**  
The car battery could go flat.

- **When using the power outlet having the disengaging prevention mechanism, observe the instructions given in that instruction manual.**

- **Do not give a strong shock. Also, do not deform the charging terminals or terminal guide.**  
Malfunction may result.

### Notes on handling the UIM

- **Never use more force than necessary when inserting/removing the UIM.**
- **The UIM may become warm during use, but this is not a sign of a malfunction. Continue using it as it is.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the UIM into some other types of IC card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep the IC portion clean.**
- **Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.**
- **It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored on the UIM and keep such notes in a safe place.**  
We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.
- **For the environmental protection, bring any unneeded UIMs to a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.**
- **Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**
- **Do not damage, carelessly touch, or short-circuit the IC.**  
Data might be lost or malfunction may result.
- **Do not drop the UIM or subject it to strong impacts.**  
Malfunction may result.

- **Do not bend the UIM or place objects on it.**  
Malfunction may result.

### Notes on handling the camera

- **You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.**



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### Notes on handling the FeliCa reader/writer

- **The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA phone use very weak radio waves that are license free from radio stations.**
- **The FeliCa reader/writer is operated on the 13.56 MHz frequencies. When you use another reader/writer nearby, take enough distance between your FOMA phone and the reader/writer. Further ensure that there are no radio stations that are operated on the same frequencies.**

### Notes on using ANSHIN-KEY Lock

- **ANSHIN-KEY Lock is a function that uses the Secure PrivateCosm (SPC) technology developed by the Secure Private Consortium to have communications between the FOMA phone and the ANSHIN-KEY. When the both become away each other and it is detected, the FOMA phone is automatically locked.**
- **Supported version**  
Specifications EA001 Ver.1.00 specific low power※  
※ It is ensured that the FOMA phone and ANSHIN-KEY conform to the SPC specifications as defined by the Secure Private Consortium, and have been authorized as a 426-MHz specific low power radio station.

#### Cautions on Using ANSHIN-KEY Lock

On the frequencies of this product, the specific low power radio stations such as telemeters and telecontrols that are free from license are operating. When the radio interference occurs between this product and "other radio stations", immediately move to another place. In addition, if you have metal materials such as coins brought close to or contacted with it, the signals from ANSHIN-KEY might not be sensed, and your FOMA phone might be locked.

## Notes on using Bluetooth function

■ **FOMA phone supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth Specification for the security during connection using Bluetooth. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration. Take care of the security while making connection using Bluetooth.**

■ **Even if any leak of data or information occurs while making connection using Bluetooth, we take no responsibility.**

■ **With the FOMA phone, you can use the following six services; Headset, Hands-free, Audio, Dial-up Communication, Object Push, and Serial Port services. Also, the Audio/Video remote-control service might be available depending on the Audio service. (Only with compatible Bluetooth devices)**

### Supported version

Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.2 compliant<sup>※1</sup>

### Supported profiles<sup>※2</sup> (Supported services)

#### HSP

Headset Profile

#### HFP

Hands-Free Profile

#### A2DP

Advanced Audio Distribution Profile

#### AVRCP

Audio Video Remote Control Profile

#### DUNP

Dial-up Networking Profile

#### OPP

Object Push Profile

#### SPP

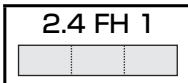
Serial Port Profile

※1 The FOMA phone and all Bluetooth function-installed devices have ensured that they conform to the Bluetooth Specification according to the rules the Bluetooth SIG defines, and are all authenticated. However, operating methods might differ, or data might not be exchanged even when they are connected wirelessly, depending on the features or specifications of connecting devices.

※2 Standardizes the connecting procedures of Bluetooth per feature of a device.

## Radio frequencies


The radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the FOMA phone uses are as follows:



2.4 : Indicates radio facilities that use 2400 MHz frequencies.

FH : Indicates the modulation system is the FH-SS system.

1 : Indicates that a supposed coverage distance is 10 meters or less.

 : Indicates that all radio frequencies 2400 MHz through 2483.5 MHz are used, and that the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

### Cautions on Using Bluetooth Devices

Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for a mobile object identifier that have to be licensed and is used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to “another radio station”) in addition to scientific, medical, or industrial devices such as microwave ovens.

1. Before using this product, make sure that “another radio station” is not operating nearby.
2. If radio interference between this product and “another radio station” occurs, move immediately to another place or stop radio transmission to avoid interference.
3. Contact the following for further details:

Contact (DoCoMo Information Center):



0120-005-250 (in English, toll free)

0120-800-000 (in Japanese, toll free)

※Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

## Intellectual Property Rights

### Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents such as text, images, music, or software programs downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or images shot by the cameras of this product without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this violates portrait rights.


### Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "KIRARI MAIL", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-appliDX", "i-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "Chara-den", "ToruCa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "visualnet", "V-live", "i-Channel", "DCMX", "iD", "custom jacket", "Security Scan", "i-shot", "i-motion mail", "i-area", "Short Mail", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "DoPa", "sigmarion", "musea", "IMCS", "OFFICEED", "2in1", and the logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-appli", "DCMX", "iC", "iD", and "WORLD WING" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- NAVIDIAL and NAVIDIAL logo mark are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Apix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Apix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.



- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.

- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- 使いかたナビ® is a registered trademark of CANNAC, Inc.
- V Maicoicon is a registered trademark of Matsushita Electric Co., Ltd.
- Java and Java related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- IrFront® is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- Bluetooth and its logo mark are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, INC., and NTT DoCoMo Group is licensed to use the registered trademarks. Other trademarks and names belong to respective owners.
- Powered by MascotCapsule®  
MascotCapsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION © 2007 HI CORPORATION. All Rights Reserved.
- PhotoSolid® is the registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.

- Other company names and product names described in the text are trademarks or registered trademarks of those companies.

### Others

- NetFront of ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide Internet functionality. NetFront is trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries. Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Some part of this product contains modules developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains the Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Copyright © 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product contains Adobe Reader of Player technology of Adobe Systems Inc. Copyright © 2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending. Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe and Adobe Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.



- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501
5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109
5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5,778,338		

- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.  
For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL · LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)

- Advanced Wnn V2 of OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. is used for conversion methods for Japanese language.

"Advanced Wnn V2" © OMRON SOFTWARE Co., LTD.  
1999-2007 All Right Reserved.

- This product contains the IrFront® technology of ACCESS Co., Ltd. as an OBEX protocol.

- IrFront® is a product of ACCESS Co., Ltd.  
Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

- This product contains technology of Reallusion Inc. for the Funny Transform function and Funny Transform II function.



- This product is loaded with Bluetooth® Stack for Embedded Systems Spec 1.2 developed by Toshiba Corp.

- This product contains "Sense", the voice analysis technology of Alegria Corporation for Feel \* Talk.

- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to

- encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or
- decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider.

No license is granted or implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to

- encode video in compliance with the AVC Standard ("AVC Video") and/or
- decode AVC Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC Video.

No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

- Copyright 2001 Seiko Epson Corporation.  
All Rights Reserved. PRINT Image Matching is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.  
The PRINT Image Matching logo is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.



- This product is manufactured or sold under license from InterDigital Technology Corporation.

- This product uses GestureTek's technology.

Copyright © 2006, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- The abbreviations used for respective operating systems (Japanese version) in this manual are as shown below:  
Windows Vista is the abbreviation of Windows Vista™ (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, and Ultimate).  
Windows XP is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Windows 2000 is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

- Windows Media is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this products is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary.

- Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device ("WM-DRM") to protect the integrity of their content ("Secure Content") so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM Software to play Secure Content ("WM-DRM Software"). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content ("Secure Content Owners") may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of Revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation lists onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

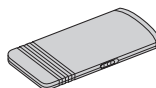
# Accessories and Main Options

## <Accessories>

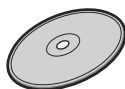
- **FOMA P904i Handset**  
(With Warranty and Back Cover P18)



- **ANSHIN-KEY P01**  
[With a coin battery (sample), Warranty,  
and Instruction Manual]



- **FOMA P904i CD-ROM**  
The PDF Versions of "Manual for Data  
Communication", "Kuten Code List" and "SDオー  
ディオ簡易操作ガイド (SD-Audio simplified  
operation guide)" are included.



- **Instruction Manual**  
Quick Manual included (See page 530)



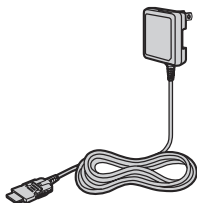
- **別紙 SDオーディオ簡易操作ガイド**  
(Separate volume of SD-Audio simplified  
operation guide)



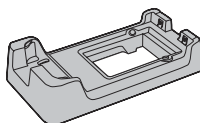
- **Custom Jacket**  
Screws for Jacket Style (four screws)  
Screw driver for Custom Jacket  
Dust prevention cushion  
(See page 488)

## <Main Options>

- **FOMA AC Adapter 01/02**  
(With Warranty and  
Instruction Manual)



- **Desktop Holder P20**  
(With Instruction Manual)



- **Battery Pack P12**  
(With Instruction Manual)



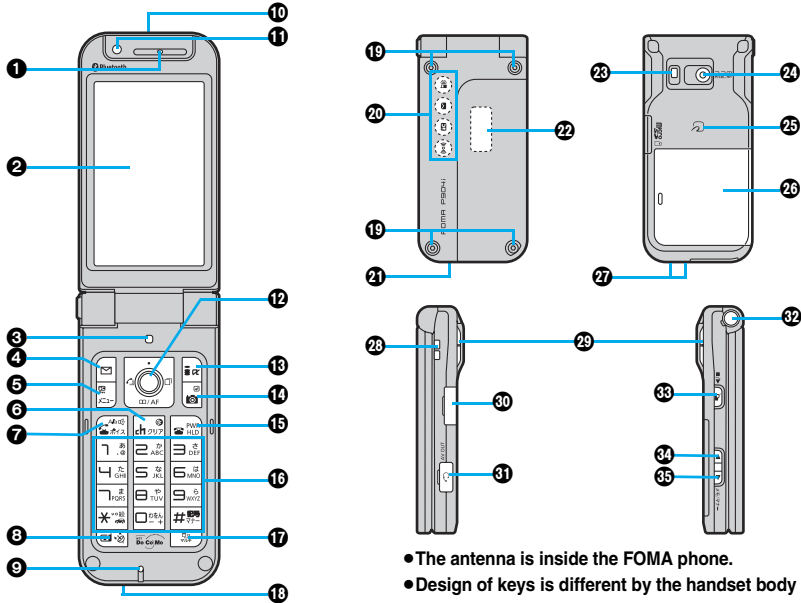
Other Options → See page 489



# Before Using the Handset

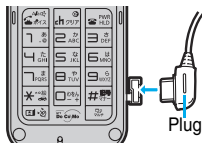
Phone Parts and Functions .....	24
Display .....	26
Displaying Description of Icons .....	28
Private Window .....	28
Navigation Displays .....	30
Method for Selecting Menu .....	31
Using EASY Mode .....	35
When You do not Remember Key Operation .....	36
Using UIM (FOMA Card) .....	38
Attaching/Removing Batteries .....	41
Charging FOMA Phone .....	42
Opening FOMA Phone by Using a Button .....	44
Checking Battery Level .....	44
Turning Power On/Off .....	45
Switching to English .....	46
Executing Initial Settings .....	46
Setting Date and Time .....	47
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number .....	48
Checking Your Own Number .....	49

# Phone Parts and Functions



- The antenna is inside the FOMA phone.
- Design of keys is different by the handset body color. Illustrations above are for "Asphalt X Hairline" handset.

## ■ For inserting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option)



Take hold of the plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch and insert or pull it straight into or out. Be careful not to take hold of the cover and plug together when you pull it out.

### 1 Earpiece

- For listening to the other party's voice

### 2 Display

- (See page 26)

### 3 Light sensor

- For sensing brightness (See page 142)

### 4 Mail key

- For showing the Mail menu (See page 250)
- For operating the function shown at the lower left of the display (See page 30)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For checking new mail messages (See page 245)

### 5 Menu key/IC Card Lock key

- For showing the Main menu (See page 31)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For locking the IC card (See page 300)

### 6 Clear/i-Channel key

- For returning to the previous operation
- For clearing entered text or a phone number
- For showing the Channel List (See page 228)

### 7 Send/Answer key, Hands-free key

- For making/receiving calls (See page 52 and page 70)
- For talking with Hands-free (See page 68)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For accessing a voice dial entry (See page 124)

### 8 Videophone key/GPS key

- For making/receiving videophone calls (See page 52 and page 70)
- For showing the GPS menu (See page 303)

**<Press and hold for at least one second>**

- For measuring your current location to use the GPS function (See page 306)

### 9 Microphone

- For speaking to the other party

## 10 Infrared data port

- Used for infrared exchange and the infrared remote-controller. (See page 357 and page 361)

## 11 Inside camera

- For shooting photos of yourself (See page 181)
- For catching sight of yourself during a videophone call

## 12 Command Navigation key

- For operating functions and menus (See page 30)

## 13 i-mode key/i-appli key

- For showing the i-mode menu (See page 204)
- For operating the function shown at the lower right of the display (See page 30)

### <Press and hold for at least one second>

- For showing the i-appli Software List (See page 277)

## 14 Camera key

- For activating a camera in "Photo mode" (See page 186)
- For switching the camera mode while a camera is activated (See page 191)




### <Press and hold for at least one second>

- For activating a camera in "Movie mode" (See page 189)

## 15 Power/End key

- For ending calls · For ending functions
- For turning on the power (for at least one second)/For turning off the power (for at least two seconds) (See page 45)

## 16 Numeric keys

- For entering phone numbers and text
-  (for at least one second)  
For activating Manner Mode (See page 134)
-  (for at least one second)  
For activating Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 77)
-  (for at least one second)  
For switching the backlight on/off (See page 142)

## 17 Multi key

- For showing the Multitask menu (See page 387)

### <Press and hold for at least one second>

- For switching functions, when multiple functions are running (See page 387)





## 18 Connector terminal

- For connecting the AC adapter (option), DC adapter (option), or the FOMA USB Cable (option)

## 19 Screws for Non-Jacket Style

(See page 488)

## 20 HIKARI Icons

-  : Flickers for missed calls
-  : Flickers for unread mail messages
-  : Lights/Flickers during iC communication or when you place the FOMA phone over an IC card scanning device (reader/writer)
-  : Flickers while connecting Bluetooth device
- You can turn on/off the lighting/flickering of HIKARI Icons by Illumination Setting. (See page 147)

## 21 Call/Charging indicator

- Flickers for incoming calls/mail and during a call. (See page 147)
- Lights in red during charging.

## 22 Private window

(See page 28)

## 23 Photo light

- Flickers when you shoot with a camera.
- Used for shooting in a dark place. (See page 191)

## 24 Outside camera

- For shooting photos of persons and/or landscapes (See page 181)
- For catching sight of persons and/or landscapes during a videophone call

## 25 FeliCa mark

- The IC card is mounted.
- Use the IC card function placing this mark over the scanning device (reader/writer). You cannot dismount the IC card. (See page 293)

## 26 Back cover

(See page 41)

## 27 Charging terminals

## 28 Strap hole

## 29 Speakers

- For sounding ring tone.
- For hearing the other party's voice through this speaker when Hands-free is activated. (See page 68)

## 30 microSD memory card slot

- For inserting microSD memory card (See page 348)

## 31 Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal

(See page 367 and page 404)

## 32 One-push open button

(See page 44)

## 33 PushTalk key

- For making/receiving PushTalk calls (See page 95 and page 98)
- For showing the PushTalk Phonebook (See page 99)

### <Press and hold for at least one second>

- For activating "MUSIC Player" (See page 374)

## 34 Side upper key

- For scrolling up page by page

### <Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone open>

- For activating 2in1 (See page 435)

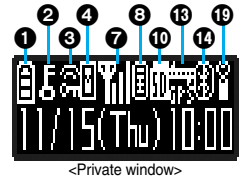
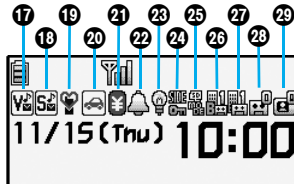
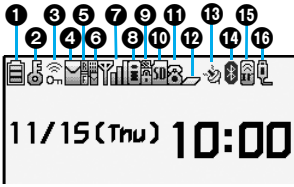
## 35 Side lower key

- For scrolling down page by page
- For using Record Message (See page 81)
- For checking for missed calls and new mail (See page 149)

### <Press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone closed>

- For activating Manner Mode (See page 134)

# Display



<Private window>

<b>1</b>		The battery level (estimate) (See page 44)
<b>2</b>		During Lock All (See page 160)
		During Personal Data Lock (See page 162)
		During Keypad Dial Lock (See page 171)
		During Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (See page 172)
		During IC Card Lock (See page 300)
		When both Keypad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock are activated
		When both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are activated
		When both IC Card Lock and Lock All are activated
		When both IC Card Lock and Personal Data Lock are activated
		When both IC Card Lock and Keypad Dial Lock are activated
		When both IC Card Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are activated
		When IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Personal Data Lock are simultaneously activated
		When IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are simultaneously activated
<b>3</b>		While ANSHIN-KEY Lock is set (See page 163)
		While ANSHIN-KEY Lock is activated (See page 163)
		While ANSHIN-KEY Lock is temporarily deactivated (See page 164)
		An abnormality is found while ANSHIN-KEY Lock is set. (See page 164)
		While Timer Lock At Close is set (See page 167)
<b>4</b>		Unread i-mode mail or an SMS message exists. (See page 243 and page 270)
		The area for i-mode mail and SMS messages in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 243 and page 271)
		The area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
		Unread mail exists, and the area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.

	(black)	Both the FOMA phone and UIM (FOMA card) are full.
<b>5</b>		Unread Messages R/F exist. (See page 218)
		The area for Messages R/F in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 218)
<b>6</b>		i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. (See page 245)
		The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 243)
		Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center. (See page 218)
		The box for Messages R/F at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 218)
		i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". (See page 245)
<b>7</b>		Radio waves reception level (estimate) Strong ← → Weak
		When out of the FOMA phone service area or where radio waves do not reach
		During Self Mode (See page 161)
<b>8</b>		During i-mode (See page 204 and page 205)
		During i-mode communication (See page 204)
		During packet communication (The icon differs depending on the communication status.)
		During PushTalk communication (See page 95)
		When you get out of the service area while Network Search Mode is set to "Manual" (See page 452)
<b>9</b>		During SSL communication (See page 205)
<b>10</b>		While a microSD memory card is inserted (See page 348)
		While reading or writing data from/to microSD memory card

	While a write-protected microSD memory card is inserted (See page 348)
	When the inserted microSD memory card cannot be used (See page 348)
	While a microSD memory card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in microSD Mode (See page 354)
	While a microSD memory card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in MTP Mode (See page 354)
<b>11</b>	
	During a voice call
	During a videophone call (64K)
	During a videophone call (32K)
	During 64K data communication
<b>12</b>	
	During Multitask (See page 387)
	While multiple functions are activated (See page 387)
<b>13</b>	
	During measuring the current location (See page 303)
	While Location Request Menu is set to "ON" or "Permission schedule" (See page 308)
<b>14</b>	
	During connecting to Bluetooth devices (See page 409 and page 410)
	Low power consumption state when connecting to Bluetooth devices (See page 409)
<b>15</b>	
	During infrared exchange (See page 357 and page 361)
<b>16</b>	
	While the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in Communication Mode
	While the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected in microSD Mode (See page 354)
	During talking or communicating through a USB Hands-free compatible device (See page 69)
	During connecting to a USB Hands-free compatible device (See page 69)

	During connecting to a USB Hands-free compatible device in microSD Mode (See page 69)
<b>17</b>	
	While Vibrator is set (See page 130)
<b>18</b>	
	While Ring Volume is set to "Silent" or Mail/Msg. Ring Time is set to "OFF" (See page 75 and page 133)
<b>19</b>	
	During Manner Mode (See page 134)
	While Remote Monitoring is set to "ON" (See page 90)
<b>20</b>	
	During Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 77)
<b>21</b>	
	When the call cost has exceeded the specified limit (See page 402)
<b>22</b>	
	While an alarm is set (See page 391)
<b>23</b>	
	While Backlight is set to "OFF" (See page 142)
<b>24</b>	
	While Side Keys Guard is set to "ON" (See page 171)
<b>25</b>	
	While USB Mode Setting is set to "microSD mode" (See page 354)
	While USB Mode Setting is set to "MTP mode" (See page 354)
<b>26</b>	
	Voice mail messages for Number B are held at the Voice Mail Center in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 439)
<b>27</b>	
	Voice mail messages are held at the Voice Mail Center. (See page 426)
<b>28</b>	
	The number of record messages (See page 80)
<b>29</b>	
	The number of videophone record messages (See page 80)

- When the date/time is set, the clock appears at the upper right of the displays other than the Stand-by display. However, the clock does not appear when icon **15** or **16** is displayed.

**■ About the contents displayed:**

- The backlight of the display softly lights by opening the FOMA phone.
- Some characters and symbols on the display and Private window might be modified or abbreviated. In addition, the Private window is displayed in monochrome.
- The explanations in this manual are mainly based on the settings at purchase, so the display on your FOMA phone may not match the explanations if you have changed the settings after purchase.
- The color liquid crystal display uses high-precision production technology. The slightest change in the environment or other factors may result in unlit or permanently lit pixels, but this is not a manufacturing defect.
- The color display is shown in black and white in this manual, so the color tone of the actual display looks different.

# Displaying Description of Icons




The symbols at the top of the display (such as , , and ) are called icons. You can check the meanings of the selected icons on the display.

1  ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Icons** ▶ Use  to highlight an icon.



## Private Window

Various information is displayed on the Private window like the following examples:

Press /  or  with the FOMA phone closed to display information on the Private window for about 15 seconds.



Clock



Schedule alarm



Chaku-moji message



Receiving a call



Obtain a ToruCa file



Dialing



During a voice call



Remote monitoring





Receiving a PushTalk call

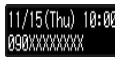
### Missed calls



When the FOMA phone is closed, "Missed call" appears.

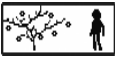
Press  to display the missed call record. The name is displayed for the missed call coming from the party stored in the Phonebook.


When there are multiple missed calls, up to three missed call records are displayed each time you press .




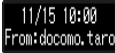
- If you have received 30 or more incoming calls after a missed call, the missed call record disappears.
- Missed call records are not displayed while a function for the Tool group (see page 386) is activated.
- After you display a missed call record, "Missed call" disappears.


### ■ When a new mail message is received



When the FOMA phone is closed, a Feel \* Mail image is played back, and then "New mail" appears. When you press , the latest Feel \* Mail image is displayed.

When "Mail" on page 140 is set to "ON", a Feel \* Mail image is played back, and then the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of the received mail are displayed. The sender's name is displayed for the mail coming from the party stored in the Phonebook. When "New mail" is displayed, up to three mail messages appear each time you press .



● Press  to end the playback of the Feel \* Mail image or to clear the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of the received mail.



● For the mail message to the box or folders with security set, Feel \* Mail images, the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject are not played back/displayed.

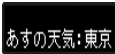
● When a mail message comes in while "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred" and a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, "New mail" appears without showing any information.

● After you display the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of the received mail, "New mail" disappears.

● When a mail message comes in during a voice call or a videophone call, information is not displayed even when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred".

● When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF" and you receive a secret mail message in Normal Mode, a Feel \* Mail image is not played back.

### ■ When i-Channel is received



When "i-Channel ticker" on page 140 is set to "ON" and the FOMA phone is closed, tickers flow on the Private window.

● Press / or  to end the tickers' flow.

## Change Clock Display

You can change displayed contents by pressing  while clock is shown.



Time only



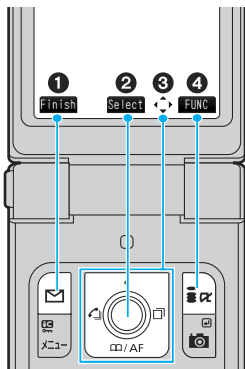
Icons and Date/time

### Information








- The display for the schedule alarm differs according to the schedule icon you set. (See page 393)

# Navigation Displays

When you want to execute an operation on the display, press the corresponding key as below.



## ■ Operation display examples and basic key assignments

1	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	
2	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	
3	Indicates the direction in which you can scroll and select items.	
4	Indicates the operation you can perform with the  key.	

## ■ Operating Command Navigation key

### Up

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display up. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls the display while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Phonebook Function Selection display (Phonebook menu).
- Converts entered characters to katakana, kanji or other characters. (See page 417)

### Left/Received Calls

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Received Call List. Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the Received Address List. (See page 60 and page 258)
- Scrolls back page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Returns to the previous page while displaying a site.

### Right/Redial

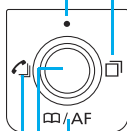
- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Redial List. Press and hold for at least one second to bring up the Sent Address List. (See page 60 and page 258)
- Scrolls forward page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Moves to the next page while displaying a site.

### OK key

- Fixes the operation.

### Down

- Moves the cursor or highlighted display down. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
- Scrolls the display while a site or mail text is displayed.
- Press from the Stand-by display to bring up the Search Phonebook display. Press and hold for at least one second to store a Phonebook entry. (See page 109 and page 116)
- Converts entered characters to kanji, katakana or other characters. (See page 417)





# Method for Selecting Menu

Press **[M-Menu]** of the FOMA phone to bring up the Main menu so that you can execute, set, or check functions.

• You can also switch to EASY Mode in which menus are narrowed to the basic functions for easy operation. (See page 35)

## ■ Scroll Selection

The Main menu is composed of nine main menu icons indicating each function.

- If you select a main menu icon, the Sub-menu Item Selection display appears. If you further select a sub-menu item, the Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display appears.
- By repeating selecting, you can set and check the function.

## ■ Menu Number Selection

You can display some functions by pressing **[M-Menu]** + the menu number. (See page 456)

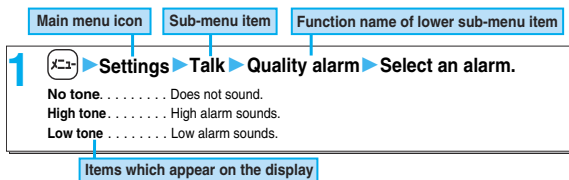
## ■ Multitask is Supported

- You can simultaneously use some functions in the Main menu. (See page 386)

## Scroll Selection

In this manual, the description for the command navigation key operation (selection of top, bottom, left, or right and press of **[M-Menu]** after selecting or entering a function item) is simplified. Scroll selection is explained below using the following example of selecting the function “Quality alarm”:

### Description Example of Steps

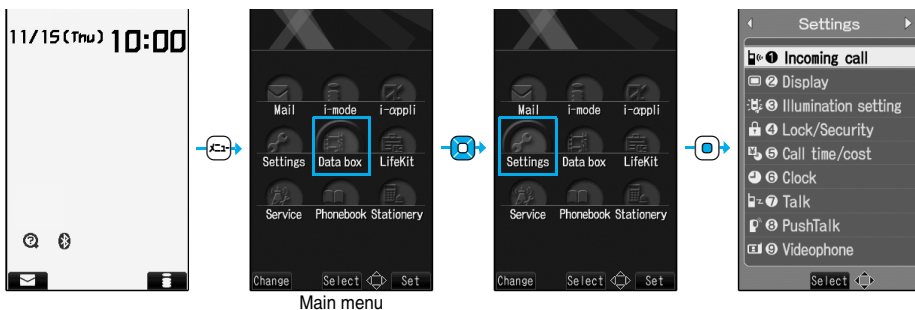


## STEP

# 1

### Select a main menu icon from the menu function

Select “Settings” from the Main menu. The Main menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 144)



- Press **[M-Menu]** to highlight the icon.  
Press and hold **[M-Menu]** to scroll the icons continuously.
- If you have not touched any keys for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.  
However, when “Menu icon setting” is set to “Champagne”, the Stand-by display does not return.

[Next Page](#)

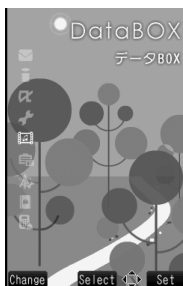
### When “Menu icon setting” is set to “Champagne”



Press on the Main menu to highlight the main menu icons, and press to highlight the sub-menu items or functions on each main menu icon.

- The main menu icons are displayed in English even if “Select language” is set to “日本語 (Japanese)”.

### When “Menu icon setting” is set to “Platinum”



Press on the Main menu to highlight the main menu icons.

### When “Menu icon setting” is set to “Rose”

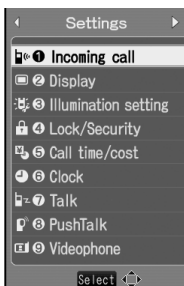
- The main menu icons are displayed in English even if “Select language” is set to “日本語 (Japanese)”.

## STEP

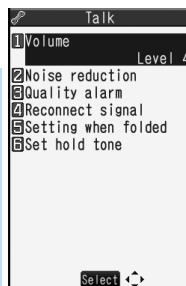
# 2

### Select a sub-menu item from the menu function

Select “Talk” from “Settings”.



- The highlighted item is the currently selected one.
- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.
- Press or to scroll page by page.

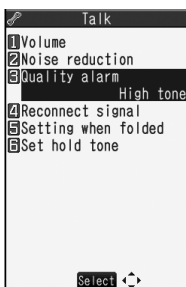
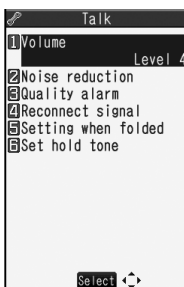


## STEP

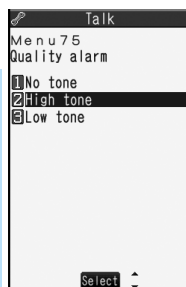
# 3

### Select a desired lower sub-menu item (function)

Select “Quality alarm” from “Talk”.



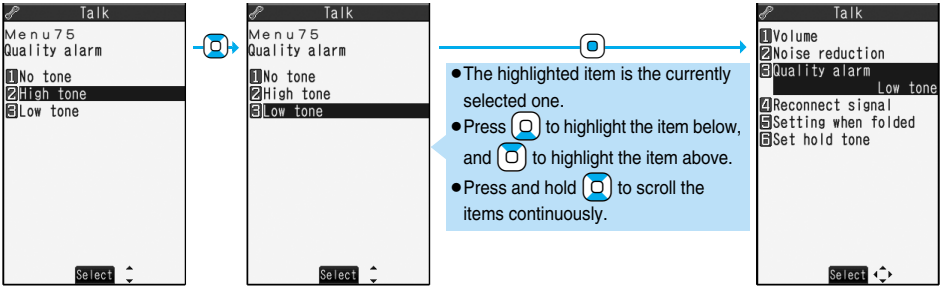
- Press to highlight the item below, and to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold to scroll the items continuously.
- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display.



# STEP

## 4 Set or check the function

Some menu items have even more detailed menus. The example below shows how to set "Low tone" for "Quality alarm".



## Menu Number Selection

Menu Number Selection is explained below using the following example:

### Description Example of Menu Number

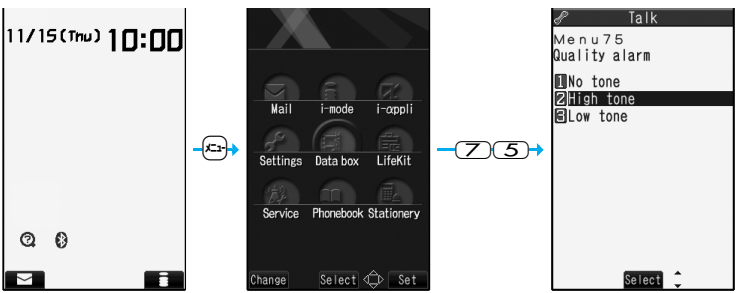
Menu number

<Quality Alarm> **7 5**  
**Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected**

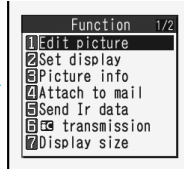
# STEP

## 1 Bring up the function using the menu number

From the Stand-by display, press **7 5**.



## Function Menu display



- If you press **(FUNC)** when “FUNC” appears at the lower right of the display, the Function menu including selectable items such as “Save”, “Edit” or “Delete” in each operation appear on the display. The contents of the Function menu depend on the display from which you bring up the Function menu.
- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display.

## Description Example for Function Menu

In this manual, the operation of the Function menu is described in two methods below depending on the page:

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES	● You can delete all files.

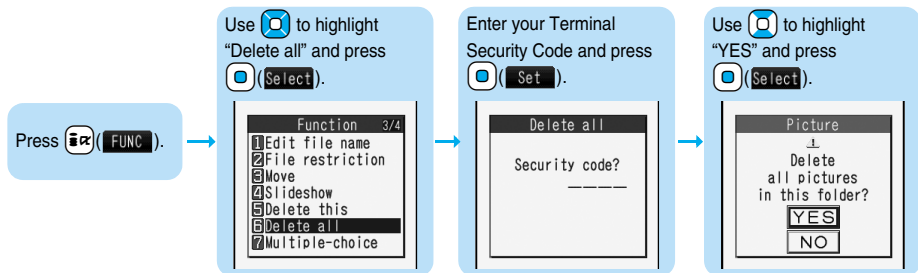
  

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete all	You can delete all files. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

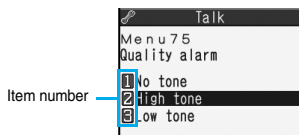
Item displayed in the Function menu

Operating procedures after selecting an item in the Function menu

An actual operation is done as follows:



## To select items quickly <Direct selection>

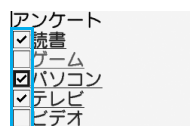


You can select an item also by simply pressing the numeric key corresponding to the displayed item number.

## Item scroll

When menu items are listed over multiple pages, press **(Up)** with the uppermost/lowermost item highlighted to show the previous/next page. You can press **(Left)** or **(Right)** to scroll through page by page.

## Check box




With the functions you can select multiple items, put a check mark for check boxes to select them. Each time you press **(Select)**, “” and “” switches.


With some functions, you can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing **(FUNC)** and selecting “Select all/Release all”.


- “” is placed to the selected item depending on the function.

### ■To finish the menu operation

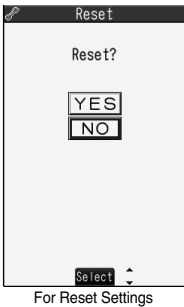
When you finish setting function, the selection display for the lower sub-menu item comes up (or the Stand-by display returns in some cases). When you finish setting the function, press . This ends the menu operation and the Stand-by display returns (except during Multitask).



### ■To cancel the menu operation midway

Press  to cancel setting midway. The contents of the setting are abandoned and the Stand-by display or the former display returns. Depending on the setting item, the confirmation display appears asking whether to abandon the setting contents.

In addition, you can press  to return to the previous operation.

### ■When the “YES/NO” selection display appears



1. Press  to highlight “YES” or “NO”.
2. Press  (**Select**).


## Using EASY Mode

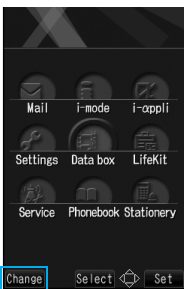
“EASY Mode” is a mode that has enhanced the operability with fewer operation steps than those in Normal Mode.

- Basic functions are focused on to appear in the display.
- In this manual, the operating procedures are given only in Normal Mode. For how to operate in EASY Mode, see the respective pages of each function.
- You cannot use the Multitask function. (See page 386)

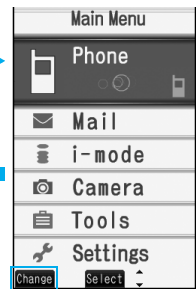
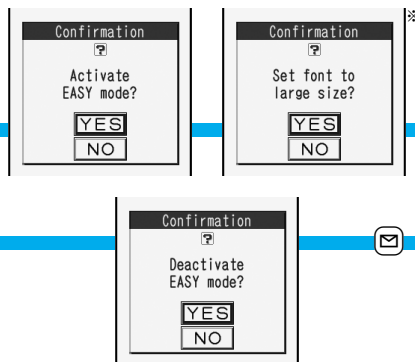
## Switch to EASY Mode

You can switch between Normal Mode and EASY Mode from the Main menu.

From the Stand-by display, press .




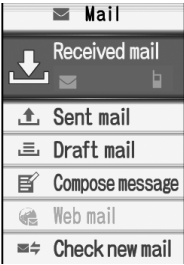




Main menu in Normal Mode



Main menu in EASY Mode

※Select “YES” to set every item of “Character size” on page 153 to “Large”. Even when you release EASY Mode, either of the settings does not return. When “Large” has already been set, the confirmation display does not appear.

## Configuration of EASY Mode

Phone	Mail	i-mode
 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phone</li> <li>Dialed calls</li> <li>Received calls</li> <li>Search phonebook</li> <li>Add to phonebook</li> <li>Record message</li> <li>Own number</li> </ul>	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mail</li> <li>Received mail</li> <li>Sent mail</li> <li>Draft mail</li> <li>Compose message</li> <li>Web mail</li> <li>Check new mail</li> </ul>	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i-mode</li> <li>Menu</li> <li>Bookmark</li> <li>Screen memo</li> <li>Last URL</li> <li>Enter URL</li> <li>Message R/F</li> </ul>
Camera	Tools	Settings
 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Camera</li> <li>Take photo</li> <li>View photos</li> <li>Record movie</li> <li>View movies</li> </ul>	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tools</li> <li>Data box</li> <li>Schedule</li> <li>Alarm</li> <li>Calculator</li> <li>Free memo</li> <li>Guide</li> </ul>	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings</li> <li>Ring tone/Volume</li> <li>Display/Font</li> <li>Call cost</li> <li>Set time</li> <li>Security</li> <li>Service</li> </ul>

### ■ To change the Main menu in Easy Mode

Settings ▶ Display/Font ▶ Menu Display setting ▶ Pattern 1 or Pattern 2

- "Pattern 1" is set at purchase.

<Guide>

## When You do not Remember Key Operation

You can search for the functions you want to know and use, and then check the operating methods.

You can execute some functions from "使いかたナビ (Guide)". This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

### 1 ▶ ステーショナルリー (Stationery) ▶ 使いかたナビ (Guide) ▶ Select an item.



使いかたナビ (Guide) display

**基本の操作 (Basic operations)** . . . Displays the basic functions. Go to step 4.

**おすすめ機能 (Recommendable functions)**


. . . . . Displays the recommendable functions. Go to step 4.

**機能検索 (Function search)** . . . . Searches for a function.

**ボイス検索 (Search by voice)** . . . Searches by vocalizing a keyword. Go to step 2 on page 37.

**検索履歴 (Search history)** . . . . Displays up to 30 search histories. Go to step 4.

- Highlight each item and press  (ENTER); then the detailed operating methods are displayed.

- The display on step 1 appears also by selecting the 使いかたナビ (Guide) icon "  " pasted on the desktop at purchase.

## 2 Select a search method if you select “機能検索 (Function search)” in step 1.

文字入力キーワード検索 (From your words) . . . Enter a keyword and retrieve. Go to step 3.

索引検索 (From index) . . . . . Retrieves functions with Japanese syllabic order. Press or to display the preceding or following row. Go to step 4.

機能一覧検索 (From Function List) . . . . . Retrieves from the function list. Go to step 4.

- Highlight each item and press (); then the detailed operating methods are displayed.

If you highlight “文字入力キーワード検索 (From your words)” and press () , select “文字入力キーワード検索 (From your words)” or “文字入力のしかた (How to input words)”.

## 3 Enter a keyword.

Up to 50 search results are displayed.

- You can enter up to 24 full-pitch or 48 half-pitch characters.

## 4 Select a function ▶ Select an item.

機能の説明 (Description) . . . . . Displays explanations for the function.

操作のしかた (How to operate) . . . . . Displays the operating method.

この機能を使う (Operate function) . . . Executes the function. Operate each function.

関連機能 (Relevant function) . . . . . Displays up to 10 relevant functions. Repeat step 4.

- For some functions, press () several times for selection.
- If you select “基本の操作 (Basic operations)” in step 1, the description about the function is displayed when that function is selected. Press () to execute the function.
- You can display explanations about the function also by pressing () while highlighting the function.
- To delete search history, press () and select “1件削除 (Delete this)” or “全削除 (Delete all)”, then select “YES”.

## Search by Voice

You can search for a function by vocalizing a keyword. Set “Search by voice” of “Read aloud settings” to “ON” to hear voice guidance for operations.

## 1 使いかたナビ (Guide) display ▶ ボイス検索 (Search by voice)

- You can display the detailed operating methods by pressing () and selecting “ボイス検索 (Search by voice)” or “音声入力のしかた (How to input voice)”.

## 2 Vocalize a keyword when the voice recognition start tone sounds.

Start vocalizing the keyword within four seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds.

Up to nine detected results are displayed.

- You cannot change the sound volume of the voice recognition start tone. It does not sound during Manner Mode.
- The keywords you can input by voice are limited to the ones that have been pre-installed to the FOMA phone. If the vocalized keyword is not recognized easily, vocalize a different word.
- See page 124 for voice input.

## 3 Select a detected result ▶ Select an item.

このキーワードで検索 (Search from this) . . . . . Retrieves with the keyword you have selected. Up to 50 searched results are displayed. Go to step 4 on page 37.

キーワードの追加 (Add keywords) . . . . . Add a new keyword. Repeat step 2 and step 3.

## Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that holds your information such as phone numbers. It can hold data such as Phonebook entries and SMS messages as well. By sharing a UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA phones for multiple purposes.

You cannot use the FOMA phone for communication such as voice and videophone calls, i-mode, sending/receiving mail, or packet communication unless the UIM is inserted.

For details on how to use the UIM, refer to the UIM instruction manual.

When inserting or removing the UIM, take care not to accidentally touch or scratch the IC.

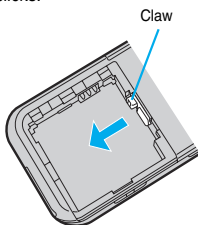
### Insert/Remove UIM

You need to turn off the power and then remove the battery before you insert the UIM. (See page 41)

#### ■ Inserting

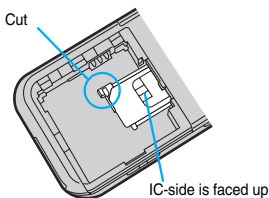
#### 1 Pull the claw to pull the tray out.

- Pull out the tray straight until it clicks.



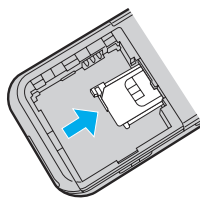
#### 2 Place the UIM on the tray with its IC-side facing up.

- Fit the cut corners of the UIM and tray in place.



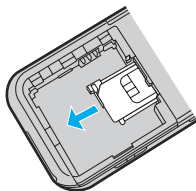
#### 3 Push the tray inwards.

- Push the tray inwards firmly until it is fixed.



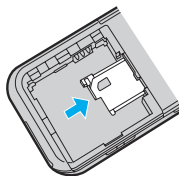
#### ■ Removing

#### 1 Follow step 1 of "Inserting" to pull out the tray and remove the UIM.



#### ■ If the tray is disengaged

Fit and push it straight into the guide rail.



#### Information

- Make sure that you insert/remove the UIM with the FOMA phone closed and held in your hand.
- Take care not to force the UIM into place because this can break it. And take care not to force the tray into place because it can brake the tray and the guide rail.
- Take care not to lose the UIM once you remove it.
- When you replace your UIM (except during Omakase Lock), you need to enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)



## About Password of UIM

You can set two passwords, PIN1 and PIN2, for a UIM. (See page 157)

## UIM Restrictions

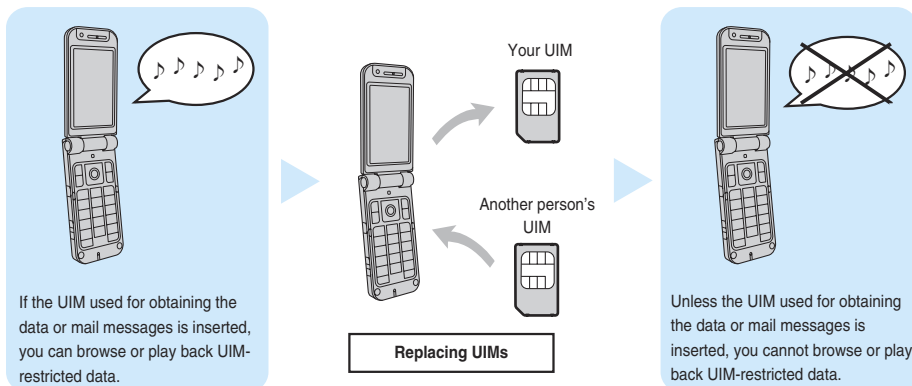
The FOMA phone has the UIM restriction function as a security function to protect your data and files.


If you obtain data and files by the method below with the UIM inserted, UIM restrictions are automatically set to them.

- When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or Internet web pages
- When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments

The data or files with the UIM restrictions can be browsed, played back, started, edited, attached to mail, or transferred via infrared rays only when the UIM used for obtaining is inserted. When the UIM used for obtaining the data or files is not inserted, or when another UIM is inserted, these functions are not operable.

- In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as “your UIM” and other UIMs as “another person’s UIM”.



- When the UIM is not inserted or when another person’s UIM is inserted, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, “”:

- |  |                   |                           |                |
|--|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| • Videophone record messages   | • Movie memos     | • Melodies                | • Images       |
| • i-motion movies  | • i-ϕpli programs | • Chara-den images        | • PDF files    |
| • Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta Full® music files   | • Templates       | • Downloaded dictionaries | • Screen memos |
| • Files attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox   |                   |                           |                |
| • Files attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox/Draft (except the data shot or edited with the FOMA phone) |                   |                           |                |
| • Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted  |                   |                           |                |
| • Images inserted into Deco-mail text  |                   |                           |                |

※ This function applies to the pre-installed i-ϕpli programs, Chara-den images, Decomail-pictographs, etc. if they are reinstalled (upgraded) from a site.

※ “Chaku-uta” is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

- The data set with the UIM restrictions appear on the preview display as shown on the right.



### Information

- When the UIM restrictions are set for data and files, you cannot set those data and files for the functions such as “Display setting” and “Select ring tone” when another person’s UIM is inserted instead.
- If you have set the data and files with the UIM restrictions for the functions such as “Display setting” and “Select ring tone”, these will work with their default settings if you remove your UIM or insert another person’s UIM. If you insert your UIM again, then your settings will be enabled again.
- UIM restrictions are not set for the data received using the infrared exchange function or data transmission (OBEX) function or the still images/moving images shot or edited with the FOMA phone.
- Even when another person’s UIM is inserted, data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be moved or deleted.
- You cannot start the i-appli program set with the UIM restrictions even if you select the highlighted text from the detailed mail display unless the UIM that was inserted at download is inserted.
- The settings of the following functions are stored on the UIM:
  - SMS validity period                      · SMS center selection                      · Select language
  - Validating/Invalidating DoCoMo Certificate 1 and user certificate   · PIN1 code, PIN2 code   · PIN1 code entry set
  - PLMN setting

### Differences of UIM (FOMA Card)

If you use the blue UIM with your FOMA phone, note that following specifications differ from those of the green/white UIM:

Functions	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Reference
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook	20 max.	26 max.	P.110
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Cannot be used	Can be used	P.221
Use of WORLD WING <sup>※</sup>	Cannot be used	Can be used	P.448
Use of Service Numbers for “DoCoMo repair counter” and “General inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>”	Cannot be used	Can be used	P.433

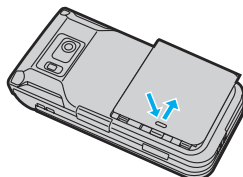
- ※WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that enables you to use the current phone number overseas for making and receiving calls using the UIM (green/white) and service compatible mobile phone. You can use P904i only in the DoCoMo 3G roaming service area. For using in a GSM service area, insert the UIM into a GSM service compatible mobile phone.
- ※You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING if you have subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005. If you offered that you do not need WORLD WING at the time you signed up for the FOMA service, or when you have midway canceled WORLD WING, you are required to take the procedures to newly subscribe to WORLD WING.
- ※If you have signed up for the FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not yet subscribed to WORLD WING, you are required to subscribe to it.
- ※This service is not available with some billing plans.
- ※If you lose your UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, immediately contact DoCoMo to take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the UIM. For inquiries, see “DoCoMo Information Center” on the back page of this manual. Note that you are still charged the call and communication fees incurred after you lose it or have it stolen.

# Attaching/Removing Batteries

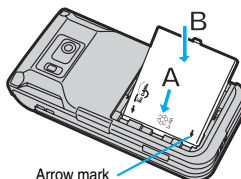
Use the FOMA phone's dedicated Battery Pack P12.

## ■ Attaching

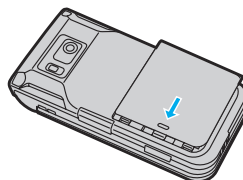
**1** While pressing the “○” part, slide the back cover (2 mm or more) in the direction of the arrow to unlock.



**2** With the arrow mark facing up, fit securely the FOMA phone to the tab side of the battery pack, and then push the battery pack into the direction B while pressing it against the direction A.

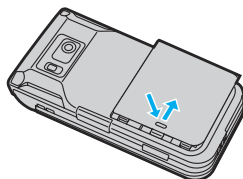


**3** Slide the back cover in the direction of the arrow and attach it in place.

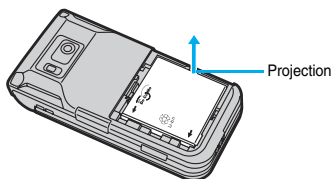


## ■ Removing

**1** While pressing the “○” part, slide the back cover (2 mm or more) in the direction of the arrow to unlock.



**2** Take hold of the projection of the battery pack to lift it up.



## Information

- Make sure that you attach/remove the battery with the FOMA phone closed and held in your hand after you turn off the power. Also, make sure not to press one-push open button when you attach/remove the battery.
- Make sure that the tray for the UIM is not drawn out when attaching the battery. If the tray is drawn out, the battery cannot be attached. Note that if the battery is forcibly attached, the UIM or tray may be damaged.
- If you try to force the battery into place, you could damage the charging terminals of the FOMA phone.
- For details, refer to the instruction manual for Battery Pack P12.

# Charging FOMA Phone

Use the FOMA phone's dedicated Battery Pack P12.

## Life of battery pack

- Battery packs are consumables. The usable time shortens slightly each time they are charged.
- When the usable time of the battery pack becomes half the time it was purchased, replacing is recommended because the battery pack is nearing the end of its life. Depending on the use conditions, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this is not a problem.
- The life of the battery pack may shorten if you use i-oppli programs, talk on the videophone and so on for a long time during charging.

**For environmental protection, bring the exhausted battery pack to an NTT DoCoMo, dealer, or recycle shop.**



## Charging

- For details, refer to the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (option), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (option), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (option).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 supports from 100 V AC through 240 V AC.
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use supports from 100 V AC through 240 V AC, however, the shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100 V AC (for domestic use). To use it overseas, you need to have a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of the country you stay. Do not use a transformer for overseas use to charge the battery pack.
- Even during charging, you can still answer calls if the FOMA phone is turned on. This will consume the charged amount so that charging will take longer. Also, the standby time or talk time might be shorter if you charge the battery pack with your FOMA phone open.
- If you have a long time videophone call during charging, the temperature in the FOMA phone may rise and charging may be suspended. In such a case, wait for a while and try charging again.
- Remove and insert the connector slowly and carefully, without using unnecessary force.
- Do not remove the battery pack during charging.

## Do not charge for long periods of time (several days) with the FOMA phone turned on.

- If you leave the FOMA phone powered on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA phone for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound soon, because the FOMA phone receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. If this happens, charge the battery pack correctly. When charging the battery pack again, first remove the FOMA phone from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again.

**Estimated usable time for battery pack** (The usable time for the battery pack varies with the charging time and the remaining life of the battery pack.)

<b>Continuous standby time</b>	<b>Standstill . . . Approx. 630 hours</b>	<b>Continuous talk time</b>	<b>Voice call . . . . . Approx. 170 minutes</b>
	<b>In motion . . . Approx. 400 hours</b>		<b>Videophone call. . . . . Approx. 100 minutes</b>

- ※ The continuous talk time is the estimated time that the FOMA phone can be used for calls when radio waves can be sent and received normally.
- ※ The continuous standby time is the estimated time when radio waves can be received normally. The standby time could be about half of this estimate depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance). When you use i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter. Further, even if you do not make calls or not execute i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter if you compose i-mode mail, start up a downloaded i-oppli or the i-oppli Stand-by display, execute data communication or Multiaccess, use a camera, play back music, or use Bluetooth connections.
- ※ The continuous talk time and the continuous standby time may be shortened depending on the network environment in the country you stay.
- ※ The continuous standby time for standstill is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in standstill status when it is closed and can receive radio waves normally.
- ※ The continuous standby time for in motion is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA phone in the combined status of "standstill" "moving" and "out of the service area" when it is closed, in an area where it can receive radio waves normally.

## Estimated time for charging battery pack

<b>AC adapter</b>	<b>Approx. 130 minutes</b>	<b>DC adapter</b>	<b>Approx. 130 minutes</b>
-------------------	----------------------------	-------------------	----------------------------

- ※ The charging time is an estimate of time for when empty battery pack is charged with the FOMA phone turned off. The charging time will be longer if you charge the battery pack with the power of the FOMA phone turned on.

## Charge with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

**1** Connect the AC adapter (option) to the desktop holder (option).

**2** Insert the AC adapter's plug into a power socket.

**3** Put the bottom of the FOMA phone into the stopper of the desktop holder (A) to fit the head to the lock claw, and then depress the FOMA phone until it clicks (B).

Check that the Call/Charging indicator lights in red.

When the Call/Charging indicator flickers, dismount the AC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA phone and then re-mount them for charging.


If the symptom persists, troubles with the AC adapter, desktop holder or battery pack may be involved, so consult a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.


- The charging confirmation tone (see page 132) sounds when charging starts and ends. However, it does not sound when the power is off or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).
- Be sure to set the FOMA phone firmly onto the desktop holder. Also, be careful that the connector cap or a commercial strap is not caught between the FOMA phone and desktop holder.
- Charging can be done even when the FOMA phone is open.

**4** When charging is completed, hold the desktop holder and lift up the head of FOMA phone to remove.

- Unplug the AC adapter from the power socket when you are not going to use it for a long time.

### Indicator and display during charging and when charging is completed

	Call/Charging indicator	"  " display
Charging	Lights in red	Blinks
Charging completed	Off	Lights

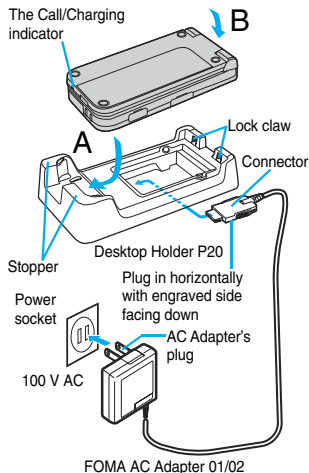
- When the FOMA phone is turned off, "

If you start charging with the battery flat, the Call/Charging indicator might not light immediately; however, charging itself has started.

### DC adapter (option)

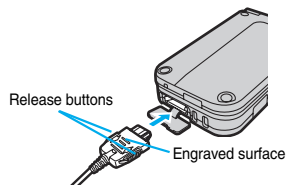
With the DC adapter, you can use a cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V) of cars to charge the FOMA phone with the battery pack attached.

For details, refer to the instruction manual for the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02.



### Charge with the AC adapter only

Insert the connector with the engraved surface facing up until it clicks. Pull straight the connector out while pressing the release buttons.



※ Check the facing direction (front or rear) of the AC adapter plug and then insert or pull it horizontally into or from the FOMA phone. Malfunction could result if you try to pull it forcibly.

### Information

- If the fuse blows off when charging with the DC adapter, be sure to use a 2A fuse. The 2A fuse is consumables, so purchase at auto parts stores in your neighborhood.

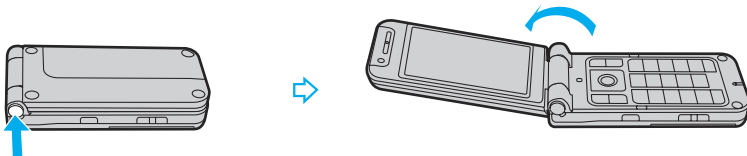
## <One-push Open>

# Opening FOMA Phone by Using a Button

You can open the FOMA phone easily by pressing the button. You can open it also manually without using the button.

## 1 Press the one-push open button.

The FOMA phone opens up.



### Information

- The FOMA phone might not open fully, depending on its direction.
- When you open the FOMA phone by pressing the button, be careful not to drop it by its rebound.
- You need to close the FOMA phone manually. If it does not close, open it fully and then close it.

## <Battery Level>

# Checking Battery Level

When the FOMA phone is turned on, an estimate of the battery level is indicated by the icon.

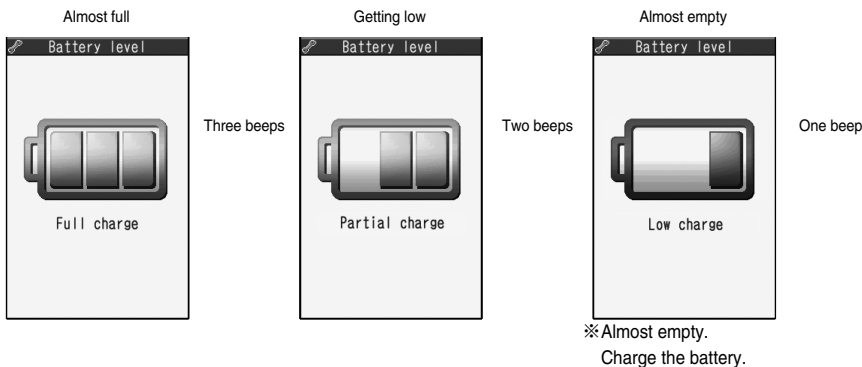
- Almost full . . . . . (white)
  - Getting low . . . . . (white)
  - Almost empty . . . . . (red)
- Charge the battery when it is almost empty.

## Check by Display and Tone



You can check an estimate of the battery level by the display and sound.

## 1 Settings > Other settings > Battery level





- The pictograph disappears after about three seconds.
- The battery tone does not sound while "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original" is activated, or "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF".

### ■When the battery is running out



Recharge Battery display

The display on the left appears and the low battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds. To stop this alarm, press any key other than  and . About one minute later, the FOMA phone will be turned off.

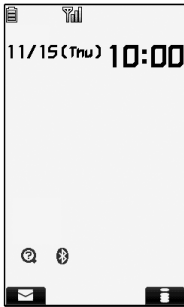
- During a call, a beeping tone from the earpiece notify you of the low battery. About 20 seconds later your call will be cut and then one minute later the FOMA phone will be turned off.
- The battery tone from the speaker does not sound while "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or "LVA tone" is set to "OFF" in "Original".

<Power ON/OFF>

## Turning Power On/Off



### Turn Power On

#### 1 Press and hold for at least one second.



Stand-by display

After the Wake-up display (see page 138) is displayed, the Stand-by display appears.

- If you have stored many Phonebook entries or mail messages, it may take a while for the display to appear.
- If Set Time is set, the current date and time are shown.
- When  is displayed, the FOMA phone is out of the service area or in the place where the radio waves do not reach. Move to a location where  disappears.
- If "Starting System Wait a minute" is displayed, wait for a while and then proceed. Further, HIKARI Icons light while this display is shown. However, they do not light when the power is turned on by Alarm or Auto Power ON in Public Mode (Drive Mode).



### ■When your UIM is replaced (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

### ■When "PIN1 code entry set" of "UIM setting" is set to "ON"

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after you turn on the power. When the correct PIN1 code is entered, the Stand-by display appears. See page 157 for PIN1 code.

### ■When "Auto reset setting" of "Notice call cost" is set to "ON" (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN2 code after you turn on the power. When the correct PIN2 code is entered, the Stand-by display appears. If you press  or  without entering the correct PIN2 code, "Auto reset setting" is set to "OFF" and the Stand-by display appears. See page 157 for PIN2 code.

#### Information

- Each entry display appears in the order of "PIN1 code" → "Terminal Security Code" → "PIN2 code".

### Turn Power Off

#### 1 Press and hold for at least two seconds.

The exit display appears and the power turns off.

- You cannot turn on the power immediately after turning off the power. Wait a few seconds.

# Switching to English

Setting at purchase	Japanese
---------------------	----------

## 1 ▶ 設定 (Settings) ▶ ディスプレイ (Display) ▶ バイリンガル (Select language) ▶ Japanese (日本語) or English (英語)

• The following functions are different between Japanese display and English display:

Functions	Japanese	English
“Display” of Clock Display	日本語 (Japanese) 英語 (English) OFF	Not available ON OFF
Info Notice Setting	電子音 (Electrical tone) ボイス (Voice) OFF	ON Not available OFF
使いかたナビ (Guide)	Available	Not available
Voice Guidance	Available	Not available

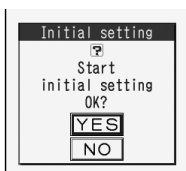
### Information

• When the UIM is inserted, the “バイリンガル (Select language)” setting is stored on the UIM.

# Executing Initial Settings

If the date and time, Terminal Security Code, Keypad Sound, Caller ID Setting, or Location Request Menu is not set, the Initial Setting display appears when the power is turned on. You can set the initial settings also from each menu function separately.

## 1 Turn on the power ▶ YES



• When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code, PIN 1 code, or PIN 2 code appears, follow the operation on page 45.

## 2 Set the date and time.

You can select “Auto time adjust ON” or “Auto time adjust OFF” for setting the time. (See page 47)

## 3 Set your Terminal Security Code.

You can set your Terminal Security Code required for setting functions. (See page 156)

1. Enter “0000” ▶ Enter your new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

## 4 Set Keypad Sound.

You can set the keypad whether to make a sound. (See page 132)

1. ON or OFF

## 5 Set Caller ID Setting.



You can set whether to notify your phone number when making a PushTalk call. (See page 104)

## 6 Set Location Request Menu.

You can set whether to notify your current location for when a GPS location provision request arrives. (See page 308)



### Information

- When an unset function is found, the Initial Setting display for an unset function appears each time you turn on the power.
- The completed settings are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing  or  midway.
- When the power is automatically turned on by alarm notification, the Initial Setting display does not appear even if there is any unset function.

<Set Time>

 3 1

## Setting Date and Time

Setting at purchase

Auto time adjust ON

You can select whether to correct the time automatically or set it manually.

1



▶ Settings ▶ Clock ▶ Set time

▶ Auto time adjust ON or Auto time adjust OFF

### Auto time adjust ON

.... Corrects the date/time automatically. The setting is completed.

If the time is not automatically corrected such as when “” is displayed and the date/time has not been set, the display for manually correcting the time appears. Follow step 2 to set the date/time.

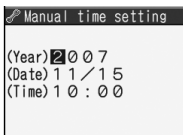
### Auto time adjust OFF


.... Sets the date/time manually.

- When “Notice call cost” is set to “ON”, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

2

## Enter year, month, date and time.



Use  to move the cursor and enter numbers by the numeric keys.

- Enter the A.D. year.
- Enter the time on the 24-hour basis.
- To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with “0” as in “01” through “09”.

### ■ About date/time correction function

The time displayed on the FOMA phone is corrected according to the clock information obtained from the network.

The time is corrected when you show the Stand-by display with “Auto time adjust ON” set. If you want to set the time with a lag, set the time manually.

- Some few second errors might occur. You might not be able to correct the time depending on the radio wave conditions, or the i-oppli program set for the i-oppli Stand-by display.
- When you receive the clock information overseas and the time difference correction value differs from the previously received one, “Time is adjusted” is displayed and the time difference is corrected automatically. Press “OK” to update the time and show Dialed Calls, Redial, Received Calls, sent/received mail messages and others in local time.
- When the time difference is corrected overseas, the sub clock (Japanese date/time, etc.) is displayed below the clock on the Stand-by display.
- Depending on the networks overseas, the time difference might not be corrected.

Next Page

## Information

- You cannot use the following functions unless the clock is set:
  - Storing date/time of Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls (see page 59)
  - Storing recording date/time of Record Message and Voice Memo (see page 82)
  - Storing recording date/time of Videophone Record Message and Movie Memo (see page 82)
  - Calendar (see page 137)
  - Schedule (see page 393)
  - Software Update (see page 505)
  - Update of Scanning Function (see page 511)
  - Function menu “Input time” while entering characters (see page 419)
  - Function menu “Shooting date” of the Finder display (see page 193)
  - “Permission schedule” of Location Request Menu of GPS function (see page 308)
  - Playing back Uta-hodai music files set with playback restrictions and WMA files (see page 374)
- The FOMA phone has an internal backup battery. The set time is stored in the internal backup battery so is kept even when you change the battery. However, the time could be reset if the battery is detached for two or more weeks. In this case, charge the FOMA phone and then set the clock again. Also, when using the FOMA phone for the first time after purchase, attach the battery to the FOMA phone and then charge it. This charges the internal backup battery as well.
- The sub clock is not displayed while Set Time is set to “Auto time adjust OFF” or in Japan.
- This function supports clock settings from 00:00 on January 1, 2007 through 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

## <Caller ID Notification>

# Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA phone to send your phone number to the called party's phone when dialing. Your phone number is important information, so take utmost care when notifying your phone number.

This function is available only when the other party's phone supports Caller ID.

## Set Caller ID Notification to Network



You can set whether to notify your caller ID on the network.

1



▶ Service ▶ Caller ID notification ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Activate	▶ ON or OFF ▶ Enter your Network Security Code.	• See page 156 for the Network Security Code.
Check setting	—	You can check the setting contents of “Activate”.

## Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call

Each time you dial out, you can set whether to notify your caller ID.

1

Enter a phone number

or

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2




(FUNC) ▶ Notify caller ID ▶ Don't notify or Notify caller (OFF or ON)

- When you release “Notify caller ID”, select “Cancel prefix”. For voice calls or videophone calls, follow the setting for “Activate” of “Caller ID notification”. For PushTalk calls, follow the setting for “Caller ID setting” on page 104.

You can select whether to notify the other party of your phone number also by entering “186”/“184” before the party’s phone number.

■ To notify your caller ID

186 +  + 

■ Not to notify your caller ID

184 +  + 

#### Information

- When you make a call and hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 432), follow the procedure for “To notify your caller ID” to enter “186” and redial.

<Own Number>



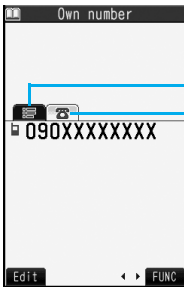
## Checking Your Own Number

- Your phone number (own number) is stored on the UIM.

1



▶ Phonebook ▶ Own number






Own Number display

You can press  to switch the tabs.

- See page 399 for storing/displaying personal data.

#### Information

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can switch between Number A and Number B by pressing  (Change) from the Own Number display. “” appears for Number A, and “” appears for Number B.
- When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor → 2in1 contractor) while using 2in1, perform “2in1 function OFF” (see page 436) and then set “2in1 setting” to “YES”, or perform “Auto acquire No. B” (see page 400), to acquire the correct Number B.  
When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor → 2in1 non-contractor), perform “2in1 function OFF” as well to update the owner’s information to the correct one.



# Voice/Videophone Calls

## Making Calls/Videophone Calls

About Videophone .....	52
Making a Call/Videophone Call .....	52
International Calls .....	55
Setting for International Calls .....	56
Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call .....	58
Using Call Records .....	59
Setting Chaku-moji .....	63
Sending Touch-tone Signals Quickly .....	66
Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number .....	67
Making a Call with Specified Sub-address .....	67
Selecting Alarm for Reconnecting .....	68
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear .....	68
Switching to Hands-free .....	68
Using Hands-free Compatible Devices .....	69
Communicating Using Bluetooth Device .....	69

## Receiving Calls/Videophone Calls

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call .....	70
Switched between a Voice Call and Videophone Call by the Other Party .....	72
Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls .....	73
Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing .....	74
Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Call .....	74
Adjusting Earpiece Volume .....	75
Adjusting Ring Volume .....	75

## When You Cannot or Could not Answer the Call

Putting an Incoming Call on Hold when You cannot Answer at Once .....	76
Putting a Call on Hold during a Call .....	76
Setting Hold Tone .....	77
Using Public Mode (Drive Mode) .....	77
Using Public Mode (Power Off) .....	79
If You could not Answer an Incoming Call .....	80
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call .....	80
Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call during Ringing .....	81
Playing Back/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/ Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos .....	82

## Making Full Use of Videophone Calls

Using Chara-den .....	83
Useful Functions for Videophone Calls .....	84
Setting Videophone Hands-free .....	87
Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls .....	87
Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls .....	88
Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected .....	89
Setting for Switching between a Voice Call and a Videophone Call .....	89
Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode .....	89
Connecting FOMA Phone to External Devices to Use Videophone Function .....	90
Checking inside the Room when You are Out .....	90

# About Videophone

You and the other party can talk viewing each other's images.

DoCoMo videophones conform to 3G-324M, standardized by the international standard 3GPP. You cannot connect to the videophone that uses a different format.

●**3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project):**

This is the regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

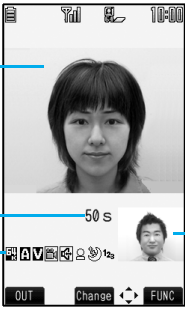
●**3G-324M:**

This is the international standard for the third generation of mobile videophones.

Connection speed of videophone calls

64K: Communicates at 64 kbps of connection speed.      32K: Communicates at 32 kbps of connection speed.

■**Display during videophone calls**



① Image through the other party's camera or substitute image  
 ② Image through your camera or substitute image  
 ③ Call duration  
 ④ Status

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> : 64K communicating</li> <li> : 32K communicating</li> <li> : Voice sending/receiving</li> <li> (gray): Voice sending/receiving failed*1</li> <li> : Image sending/receiving</li> <li> (gray): Image sending/receiving failed*2</li> <li> : Photo image sending</li> <li> : Substitute image sending</li> <li> : Chara-den talking</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> : Hands-free activated</li> <li> : AV output</li> <li> : Bluetooth communicating</li> <li> : Portrait</li> <li> : Close-up</li> <li> : Landscape</li> <li> : Night Mode</li> <li> : Chara-den Whole Action Mode</li> <li> : Chara-den Parts Action Mode</li> <li> : DTMF Transmission Mode</li> </ul>
---	---

\*1 When voice sending fails, the other party cannot hear your voice.

When voice receiving fails, you cannot hear the other party's voice.

\*2 When image sending fails, the other party cannot view the image through your camera.

When image receiving fails, you cannot view the image through the other party's camera.

When voice or image sending/receiving fails, it does not recover automatically. You need to make a videophone call again.

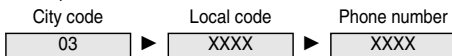
# Making a Call/Videophone Call

## 1 Enter the other party's phone number, starting with the city code.



● Even when you are dialing within the same area, you need to enter the city code before the phone number.

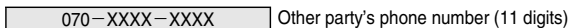
<Example>



● To make calls to mobile phone



● To make calls to PHS





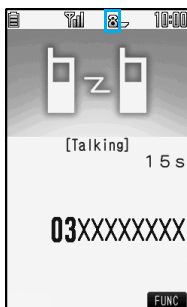
● When 27 or more digits are entered, the lower 26 digits only are displayed.


● To store an entered phone number in the Phonebook, press (Store). Go to step 2 on page 114.

## 2

### When Making a Voice Call

Press  or  (Dial).







• “” blinks during dialing, and lights during a call.

### When Making a Videophone Call

Press .



- “” or “” will blink during dialing and light during the call.
- During a videophone call, you can press  to send the substitute image to the other party. To resume sending the image through your camera, press  again.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during a videophone call as “Hands-free w/ V. phone” has been set to “ON”. (See page 87) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of “Hands-free w/ V. phone”.



The digital communication charging starts from this display.

- If you hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 432), follow the procedure for “To notify your caller ID” on page 49 to enter “186” and redial.
- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can hear the other party's voice from the earphone. (See page 404)
- If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of “Setting when folded”. (See page 74)
- You can press numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call. However, you need to switch to DTMF Transmission Mode during a Chara-den call. (See page 87)

## 3

Press  to end the call after talking.

#### Information

- You can make a voice call also by pressing  and then entering the party's phone number. If you enter a wrong number, press  to clear the display and then redial.
- When you make a videophone call with substitute image, note that you will still be charged for the digital communication, not the voice calls.
- If you dial 110, 119 or 118 using the videophone function, the number will be automatically dialed out as a voice call.
- You can send a Chara-den image to other party instead of your own image during a videophone call. (See page 83)
- The International videophone call is available using the DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”. (See page 55)
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can make a call after selecting Number A or Number B. (See page 436)

### ■Display during dialing

The other party's name and icon will be displayed if you have stored the party's phone number and name in the Phonebook. However, the image will not be displayed, even if you have stored it for that party.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 117) is displayed.
- The phone number instead of the name will be displayed if the Phonebook entry has been stored as secret data, or if Personal Data Lock is activated.

### ■If you enter a wrong phone number

Each time you press **[CHG#]**, the digit on the far right is cleared. If you press and hold **[CHG#]** for at least one second, all the digits are cleared and the Stand-by display returns.

- Press **[C]** to move the cursor to the digit you want to clear, and then press **[CHG#]** to clear it. To clear all the digits on and to the right of the cursor, press and hold **[CHG#]** for at least one second.

### ■Photo-sending during a call

During a voice call, you can send the other party the still images you have shot on the spot or ones you have saved. (See page 241)

### ■If a videophone call cannot be connected

When a videophone call cannot be connected, the reason is displayed. (The displayed reason might not be the same as the actual reason depending on the other party's phone and contract for network services.)

Messages	Reasons
Check number, then redial	You have dialed a non-existent phone number.
Busy	The other party is busy. (Depending on the receiver's phone, this message might be displayed during packet communication as well.)
Busy with packet transmission	The packet communication is progress at the other end.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	Your caller ID is not notified. (when dialing "V-live" or "visualnet")
Your call is being forwarded	During forwarding
Redial using voice call	The other party activates Call Forwarding Service but the forwarding destination phone does not support videophone calls.
Upper limit has been exceeded	The upper limit for the plan with the limit function (Type Limit, Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed	
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You did not make a videophone call from the IP (Information Provider) site among i-mode official sites (at dialing to V-live).
Connection failed	Redial after setting "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" to "ON". · This may appear in the case other than above.

### ■Auto-redialing

If a videophone call is not connected, dialing at 32K or a voice call is automatically made.

	Voice call auto redial "ON"	Voice call auto redial "OFF"
Could not connect by dialing at 64K.	Dials again at 32K.	Dials again at 32K.
Could not connect by dialing at 32K.	Dials again as a voice call.	Does not dial again.

- The videophone call by 32K speed is provided to connect with PHSs and similar devices that cannot be connected at 64K depending on the network conditions. When you dial a 64K videophone call to the phone that can be connected only at 32K, the connection speed will be switched automatically to 32K.  
※ The same digital communication fee applies to the 32K videophone connection and 64K digital connection.
- Videophone calls cannot be connected to the phones that do not support the videophone function, or to the phones that are out of the service area or turned off even if they are videophones. If you have set Voice Call Auto Redial to "ON" and attempt to dial a phone that does not have the videophone function, the videophone call will be cut off from the other end and the number will be redialed as a voice call. However, this operation might not work if you call an ISDN-synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (as of May 2007), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that you could be charged for the communication.
- Once the videophone call has started communications, redialing as a voice call will not be made.



## Function Menu while Entering Phone Number

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Notify caller ID	See page 48.	You can set whether to notify your caller ID.
Prefix numbers	See page 67.	You can add a prefix number.
Int'l dial assist	See page 56.	You can make an international call.
Multi number	See page 435.	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party.
Chaku-moji	See page 63.	You can make a call with a Chaku-moji message.
Add to phonebook	See page 114.	You can store the phone number in the Phonebook.
Compose message	Go to step 3 on page 232.	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address.
Connection speed	▶ 64K or 32K	You can set the connection speed per videophone call. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The priority order of Connection Speed is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting".</li> </ul>
Select image	See page 88.	You can select an image for videophone calls.

<WORLD CALL>

## International Calls

**WORLD CALL is the international call service available from DoCoMo mobile phones.**

**When you have signed up for FOMA service, you have contracted to use "WORLD CALL" (except those who have applied not to use it).**

- You can call about 240 countries and regions.
- The WORLD CALL charges are added to your monthly FOMA bill.
- The application/monthly fee is free of charge.
- Changes in procedures for international call



"My Line" service is not available for mobile communications such as mobile phones, so cannot be used with WORLD CALL. However, in conjunction with the launch of "My Line" service, the dialing procedure for international calls from mobile phones has changed. Note that the old way of dialing (the way without "010" from the following operation) no longer works.


- The service is not available with some billing plans.
- Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual for inquiries about WORLD CALL.
- When using international carriers other than DoCoMo, contact them.

■ If the other party uses a specific 3G mobile phone overseas, you can press **(E)** to make an international videophone call after the dialing procedure described below.

- For the information about connectable countries and telecommunications carriers, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.
- Images sent from the other party may blur on your FOMA phone or you may not be able to connect, depending on the other party's phone used for the international videophone call.

## Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call




**1** Enter numbers in order of 009130→010→country code→area code (city code)  
→destination phone number ▶  or  (Dial)


- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  to make an international videophone call.

## Use “+” to Make an International Call

When you enter a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold  for at least one second to enter “+”. You can use “+” to make international calls without entering an international call access code such as 009130-010.

• Because “Auto assist setting” of “Int’l dial assist” is set to “ON” by default, an international call access code is automatically entered.

**1**  (for at least one second) ▶ Enter numbers in order of country code  
→area code (city code)→destination phone number ▶  or  (Dial)  
▶ Dial


- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  to make an international videophone call.
- When you select “Dial with orig. No.”, you can make a call without adding an international call access code.

## International Dial Assist

When you make a call, “+”, which was entered at the beginning of a phone number by pressing and holding  for at least one second, is replaced with an international call access code of “Int’l dial assist”.

**1** Enter a phone number  
or  
bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

**2**  (FUNC) ▶ Int’l dial assist ▶ Select a name ▶  or  (Dial)


- Press  to make an international videophone call.
- When the beginning of the phone number is other than “+”, an international call access code is added. (When the phone number begins with “0”, “0” at the beginning is automatically deleted.)

<International Dial Assist>

## Setting for International Calls

### Auto Assist Setting

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

You can set whether to make a call by automatically replacing “+” which was entered at the beginning of a phone number by pressing and holding  for at least one second with an international call access code. (This function is available in Japan only.)

**1**  ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Int’l dial assist ▶ Auto assist setting  
▶ ON or OFF

## 2 Select a name ▶ Select a country name.

- When no international call access code or country code is stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it. Select “YES” and go to step 2 of “IDD Prefix Setting” on page 57 for an international call access code, and go to step 2 of “Country Code Setting” on page 57 for a country code.

### IDD Prefix Setting

Setting at purchase	WORLD CALL (009130010)
---------------------	------------------------

You can store up to three international call access codes to be added to the beginning of a phone number for making an international call.

## 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Int'l dial assist ▶ IDD prefix setting ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press (Edit).

- If you select the stored item, you can check the stored contents.

## 2 Enter a name ▶ Enter an international call access code.

- You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter an international call access code of up to 10 digits.

### Country Code Setting

Setting at purchase	Japan (81)
---------------------	------------

You can store up to 27 country codes required for making international calls from overseas.


## 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting ▶ Int'l dial assist ▶ Country Code set. ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press (Edit).

- If you select a stored country name, you can check the stored contents.

## 2 Enter a country name ▶ Enter a country code.

- You can enter a country name of up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter a country code of up to 5 digits. But you cannot use #, \*, and +.

### Function Menu while IDD Prefix Setting/Country Code Setting is Displayed

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Edit</b>	Go to step 2 of “IDD Prefix Setting” on page 57 for IDD Prefix Setting, and go to step 2 of “Country Code Setting” on page 57 for Country Code Setting. • You can edit the item also by pressing  (Edit).	—
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES	• You cannot delete the international call access code or country code set by “Auto assist setting”.
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES	

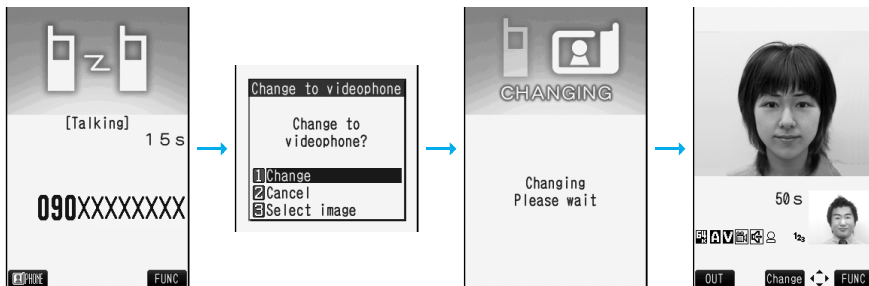
## Switching between a Voice Call and Videophone Call

You (caller) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call. This function is available for the mobile phones that can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

### Switch from a Voice Call to Videophone Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, "☎PHONE" is displayed on your phone and you can switch from the voice call to videophone call.

#### 1 During a voice call ▶ ☎PHONE ▶ Change

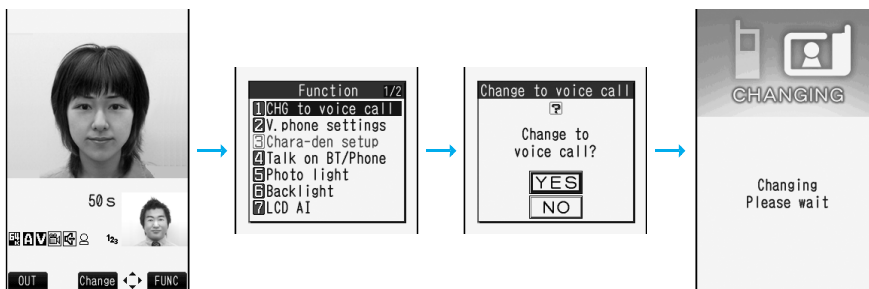


- When you select an image to be sent to the other party, select "Select image". Go to step 2 of "Set by Call" on page 88.
- When "Cancel" is selected, the FOMA phone cancels switching and returns to the voice call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.

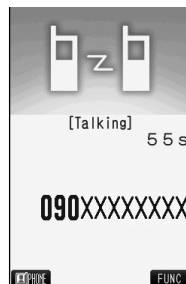
### Switch from a Videophone Call to Voice Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, you can switch from the videophone call to voice call by selecting "CHG to voice call" from the Function menu.

#### 1 During a videophone call ▶ ☎PHONE (FUNC) ▶ CHG to voice call ▶ YES



- Select "NO" on the confirmation display to stop switching and to resume the videophone call.
- While switching, the voice guidance is played back.



## Information

- You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- When i-mode or packet communication is in progress, the communication is disconnected and then the voice call is switched to the videophone call.
- When packet communication is in progress at the other end, the message to the effect that the communication cannot be switched is displayed and the voice call continues without switching to the videophone call.
- You cannot switch from the voice call to the videophone call while “Multi calling” is displayed during the call if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.
- It takes about five seconds to switch. Switching may take a longer time depending on the radio wave conditions.
- Depending on how the caller’s phone is working or on the radio wave conditions, switching between a voice call and videophone call may fail and the connection may be cut off.
- If you switch between the voice call and videophone call during a call, the call duration and call cost are counted respectively for the calls. You are not charged while “Changing” is displayed.
- You cannot switch between the videophone call and voice call unless “Notify switchable mode” is set to “Indication ON” at the other end. See page 89 for “Notify switchable mode”.
- When you switch a videophone call to voice call, Hands-free is deactivated.

<Redial> <Dialed Calls> <Received Calls>

## Using Call Records

The FOMA phone can record the other party’s phone number and date/time you have dialed or received. You can call back to the other party.

### ■ Redial

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are recorded in total, and the older record of dialing to the same phone number is deleted. However, the dialing by PushTalk is retained in Redial separately from that of the voice call or videophone call even if you dial to the same phone number.

### ■ Dialed Calls



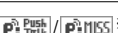
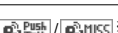
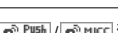




Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are recorded in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are recorded as well. The older record of dialing to the same phone number is also retained.


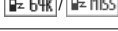

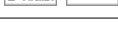




### ■ Received Calls

Up to 30 records of incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are recorded in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are recorded as well. The older record coming from the same phone number is also retained.

- When a call is switched between a voice call and a videophone call, the call that is dialed/received first is recorded.
- When more than 30 calls are dialed, the older records are automatically deleted. Even if you turn off the FOMA phone, call records are not deleted.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 redial items, 90 dialed call records, and 120 received call records for Number A and Number B are recorded in total. (Dialed call records of 64K data and packet communications are recorded only for Number A.)

### ■ Icons for Redial, Dialed Calls, and Received Calls

	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of voice call
	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of videophone call
	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk
	Dialed and received group calls/missed group calls of PushTalk
	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk via server’s phonebook
	Voice/Video messages are recorded on Record Message
	Incoming calls of Remote Monitoring
	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of international call
	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of international videophone call

	Dialed calls of 64K data communication
	Received calls/missed calls of 64K data communication
	Dialed calls of packet communication
	Received calls/missed calls of packet communication
	Received calls of 64K data communication and packet communication when no external device is connected
	Received Chaku-moji message
	Records with time difference corrected
	Records for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

※Displayed in green for unchecked missed calls.

## Use Redial/Dialed Calls

1

### When Using Redial

Stand-by display ▶ 





### When Using Dialed Calls

 ▶ Phonebook ▶ Dialed/recv. calls ▶ Dialed calls



For Redial

The list for call records is displayed.

- For redial items of PushTalk, press  (Select) to show the Redial List of the group. Highlight a party and press  to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press , you can make a group call.
- Press  (Change) to display the Sent Address List.

2

### Select a call record.



For Redial

The detailed display for the call record is displayed.

- When the other party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in the search order (see page 117) are displayed.

## Use Received Calls


 2 4

1

Stand-by display ▶ 







Received Call List

- You can display the Received Call List also by  ▶ Phonebook ▶ Dialed/recv. calls ▶ Received calls ▶ All calls or Missed calls.

All calls . . . . . All the records including missed calls

Missed calls . . . . . The records of missed calls only

(If unchecked missed calls are found, the number of them is displayed.)

- For received call records of PushTalk, press  (Select) to show the Received Call List of the group with "★" mark added to the caller. Highlight a party and press  to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press , you can make a group call.
- Press  (Change) to display the Received Address List.

## 2 Select a received call record.



Detailed Received Call display

- The caller ID is displayed if it was provided; and if this caller has been stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in search order (see page 117) are displayed.
- If there was a call for packet communication, the sender's access point name (APN) is displayed.
- When the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- For missed calls, the ring time is displayed on the right of the received date/time.
- When a Chaku-moji message is received, it is displayed.

### ■ Make a call while the list for redial items, dialed call records, or received call records is displayed

- Press to make a voice call to the highlighted party. Press to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

### ■ Make a call while a redial item, dialed call record, or received call record is selected



- Press or to make a voice call to the displayed phone number. Press to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

### Information

- You can make a voice call to the most recently dialed or received number by pressing from the Stand-by display and then .
- When you make/receive a call with an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the phone number on the detailed display. If you store a phone number for "Number setting" of "Multi number", the phone number is displayed as well.
- The dialed call records of 64K data communication are recorded only when the FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected.
- Even if you make a voice call (or videophone call) to the phone number in a received call record with a Chaku-moji message displayed, the received Chaku-moji message is not sent.
- When a call comes in from a party who uses a dial-in phone number, a different phone number might be displayed.

## Function Menu while Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls is Displayed

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Notify caller ID	See page 48.	You can set whether to notify caller ID.
Prefix numbers	See page 67.	You can add a prefix number.
Int'l dial assist	See page 56.	You can make an international call.
2in1 dial	See page 436.	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1.
Multi number	See page 435.	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party.
Chaku-moji	See page 63.	You can make a call with a Chaku-moji message.
Character size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To reset the character size, perform the same operation.</li> <li>• The setting here applies to "Dialed/recv. calls" of "Character size" as well.</li> </ul>	You can switch the character size for the list between Large and Standard.

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 114. ● You can store the phone number in the Phonebook also by pressing  (Store) from the detailed display. Go to step 2 on page 114.	You can store the phone number in the Phonebook.
<b>Feel * Talk</b>	See page 146.	You can play back the Feel * Talk image.
<b>Ring time</b> [Received Call List only]	—	You can display the ring time for missed calls. Even if you have set “Missed calls display” of “Ring time” to “Not display”, the missed calls which stopped ringing within the ring start time and their ring times are displayed.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.	You can paste the phone number to the desktop.
<b>Compose message</b>	Go to step 3 on page 232.	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address.
<b>Compose SMS</b>	Go to step 3 on page 270.	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address.
<b>Sent address</b> [Redial/Dialed Calls only]	See page 258.	You can display the Sent Address List.
<b>Received address</b> [Received Calls only]	See page 258.	You can display the Received Address List.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ YES	● If you execute “Delete all” from the Function menu of Redial/Dialed Calls, all records in both Redial and Dialed Calls are deleted. Even if you execute “Delete this” or “Delete selected” of Redial, the records are not deleted from Dialed Calls and they are retained. To delete the dialed call records, delete them from the Function menu while “Dialed calls” is displayed.
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Put a check mark for redial items, dialed call records, or received call records to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES	
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES	
<b>Connection speed</b>	See page 55.	You can set the connection speed of videophone calls.
<b>Select image</b>	See page 88.	You can select an image for videophone calls.
<b>Store in P-Talk PB</b>	▶ YES	● You cannot store from the call record for the party who is not stored in the Phonebook.
<b>Store P-Talk group</b>	▶ Select a group. ● When members who are not stored in the PushTalk Phonebook are found, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them.  ▶ Enter a group name. ● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters.	● You cannot store in a PushTalk group unless all the members are stored in the FOMA phone’s Phonebook.

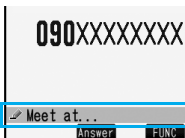


# Setting Chaku-moji

When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send your text message to tell the subject during calling.

- Compatible models . . . . . 902iS series, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 904i series, 702iS series (except N702iS, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series, 601i series (except L601i), D800iDS
- The sending end is charged, but the receiving end is not charged.

## ■ When a Chaku-moji message is received



A Chaku-moji message is displayed below a sender. The Chaku-moji message is recorded in Received Calls as well.

- The Chaku-moji message is displayed only during ringing. It is not displayed during a call.
- Even when a Chaku-moji message comes in within the ring start time set by “Ring time”, it is received and recorded in Received Calls.
- The Chaku-moji message is displayed on the Private window when “Chaku-moji” of “Called” on page 140 is set to “ON”.
- The Chaku-moji message is not displayed during Lock All, Omakase Lock, Personal Data Lock, or ANSHIN-KEY Lock. However, you can check the Chaku-moji message from Received Calls after the lock is released.

## Store Chaku-moji Messages

You can store up to 10 Chaku-moji messages.

- 1 **Service** **Chaku-moji** **Create message**  
**<Not stored>** and press **(Edit)** **Enter a message.**



Message List

- To edit a stored message, highlight it and press **(Edit)**.
- You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictographs, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.

## Make a Call with a Chaku-moji Message


- 1 **Enter a phone number**  
or  
**bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.**

- 2 **(FUNC)** **Chaku-moji** **Do the following operations.**

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Create message</b>	<b>Enter a message.</b> • You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictographs, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.	You can create a Chaku-moji message just before dialing. • The Chaku-moji message created using this function is not stored in the Message List.
<b>Select message</b>	<b>Select a message.</b>	From the Message List, you can select the stored Chaku-moji message.

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Sent messages	▶ Select a sent message.	From the Sent Message List, you can select a Chaku-moji message to be sent. Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages only are stored in the Sent Message List. If you send the same Chaku-moji message, the older one is deleted. When the number of sent Chaku-moji messages exceeds 10, the messages are deleted from the oldest one.

### 3 Press or (Dial).

- Press  to make a videophone call.
- The Chaku-moji message being sent is displayed during dialing.

#### Information

- When a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone, "Transmission completed" is displayed, and you are charged a transmission fee.
- When a Chaku-moji message does not arrive at the other party's phone such as when the other party's phone is not a Chaku-moji compatible mobile phone or the call is not allowed by "Message disp. settings" at the receiving end, "Transmission failed" is displayed. In this case, you are not charged a transmission fee.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not be displayed at the sending end even if a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone. In this case, you are charged a transmission fee.
- Even if you make a call with a Chaku-moji message attached, the Chaku-moji message is not displayed and you are not charged a transmission fee (the call is not recorded in Received Calls at the receiving end) when the other party has the following settings or is placed in the following states. Also, the transmission result is not displayed at the sending end.
  - When the other party's phone is out of the service area, turned off, during Public Mode (Drive Mode), or the ring time for Record Message Setting is set to zero seconds
- When a videophone call is not connected and automatically dialed at 32K or as a voice call, the Chaku-moji message is resent as well.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
- You cannot send/receive Chaku-moji messages overseas.


### Detailed Sent Message


Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages are stored in Sent Messages, and you can check for the other party's phone number and the date/time the Chaku-moji message was sent. Older messages sent to the same phone number are also stored.


- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 10 records for Number A and Number B are displayed in total.



### 1 ▶ Service ▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Sent messages



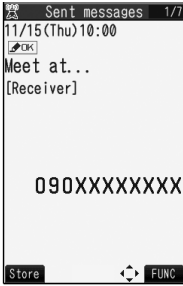
 ... Chaku-moji message successfully sent

 ... Chaku-moji message unsuccessfully sent

 ... Chaku-moji message for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

- When the transmission result is not displayed, " " or " " is not displayed.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result might not be displayed correctly.

## 2 Select a sent message.



- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.

### Function Menu while Detailed Sent Message is Displayed

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Store	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ &lt;Not stored&gt;</li> <li>• You can store also by pressing  (Store).</li> </ul>	You can store a sent Chaku-moji message in the Message List.
Delete this	▶ YES	—
Delete all	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</li> <li>▶ YES</li> </ul>	—

### Message Display Settings

Setting at purchase	Calls with callerID
---------------------	---------------------

You can set how incoming Chaku-moji messages are displayed.

## 1 ▶ Service ▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Message disp. settings ▶ Select an item.

**Display all messages** . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages from all callers.

**Numbers stored in PB** . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the callers stored in the Phonebook.

**Calls with callerID** . . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the caller notifying his/her phone number.

**Hide all messages** . . . . . Does not display Chaku-moji messages.

#### Information

- When you set to "Numbers stored in PB", you cannot receive Chaku-moji messages from the callers stored in the Phonebook B in A Mode of 2in1 (and vice versa).

### Prefer Chaku-moji

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

You can set how your FOMA phone works for incoming Chaku-moji messages for when "Set when opened" is set to "Answer".

## 1 ▶ Service ▶ Chaku-moji ▶ Prefer Chaku-moji ▶ ON or OFF

**ON** . . . . . Does not answer by opening the FOMA phone during ringing, but displays a Chaku-moji message.

**OFF** . . . . . Answers by opening the FOMA phone during ringing. The FOMA phone immediately answers by opening, so you may not check a Chaku-moji message. The Chaku-moji message is recorded in "Received calls".

# Sending Touch-tone Signals Quickly

Setting at purchase	Not stored
---------------------	------------

You can send touch-tone signals from your FOMA phone to use services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc.

## Store Pause Dial

You need to store a number string to be sent as a touch-tone signal in the Pause Dial List. If you have inserted a pause (p), you can send a number string breaking at the point where the pause is inserted.

1 > Settings > Other settings > Pause dial > (Edit)

- When a number string is already stored, it is displayed.
- To delete a stored pause dial, press (FUNC) and select "Delete", then select "YES".

2 Enter a number string.

- Enter the pause (p) by pressing and holding for at least one second.
- You can use only through , , to enter a number string and the pause (p).
- You can enter up to 128 digits.
- You cannot enter a pause (p) at the beginning and end of a number string, or enter it consecutively.

## Send Pause Dial

1 > Settings > Other settings > Pause dial > (Send)

2 Enter a phone number > or (Dial)

A voice call is made. Once the line is connected, a number string stored in Pause Dial is displayed up to the first pause (p).

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing or from Redial by pressing .

3 Check that the line is connected > or (Send)

A number string up to the first pause (p) is sent, and a number string up to the next pause (p) is displayed.

A number string up to the pause (p) is sent each time you press or (Send).

When you have finished sending the last number, the "Talking" display comes up.

- To send multiple pieces of a number string at a time, press and hold for at least one second, and select "Send at one time".

### Information

- During a call, you can send a number string also by displaying the Function menu of the Pause Dial display.
- Some devices on the receiving end cannot receive signals.
- You cannot send a number string with pauses during a videophone call.

## <Prefix Setting>

# Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number

Setting at purchase    WORLD CALL (009130010)

You can store prefix numbers such as international call access codes or “184”/“186” and add them to the beginning of the phone number for dialing. You can store up to seven prefix numbers.

- 1 ► **Settings** ► **Network setting** ► **Prefix setting**  
► **Highlight <Not recorded>** and press (**Edit**).



- If you select a stored prefix, you can check the stored contents.
- To delete a stored prefix, press (**FUNC**) and select “Delete this” or “Delete all” then select “YES”. If you select “Delete all”, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

- 2 **Enter a name** ► **Enter a prefix number.**

- You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.
- You can enter a prefix number of up to 10 digits. The keys for entry are limited to through , , and .

## Prefix Numbers

You can add a prefix number to the top of phone number when you make a call.

- 1 **Enter a phone number**  
or  
**bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.**

- 2 (**FUNC**) ► **Prefix numbers** ► **Select a name** ► or (**Dial**)  
• Press to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

## <Sub-address Setting>

# Making a Call with Specified Sub-address

Setting at purchase    ON

You can set whether to regard the numbers after “\*” of a phone number as a sub-address to access the specified phones or data terminals.

- The sub-address is a number assigned to identify each ISDN terminal connected to an ISDN line. It is also used for selecting contents on “V-live”.

- 1 ► **Settings** ► **Other settings** ► **Sub-address setting** ► **ON or OFF**

### Information

- Even if you set “Sub-address setting” to “ON”, “\*” at the top of phone numbers and “\*” immediately after the prefix number or “186”/“184” are not regarded as sub-address mark-off symbols.

# Selecting Alarm for Reconnecting

Setting at purchase	High tone
---------------------	-----------

You can select an alarm that sounds until a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is reconnected after disconnected owing to bad radio wave conditions.

1 Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Reconnect signal ▶ Select an alarm.

### Information

- The reconnectable time differs depending on the usage status and radio wave conditions. An estimate is about 10 seconds and the call charge is applied also for that duration.
- While you are disconnected, no sound is transmitted to the other party.

# Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

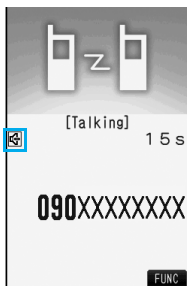
Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

1 Settings ▶ Talk ▶ Noise reduction ▶ ON or OFF

# Switching to Hands-free

When you switch to Hands-free, sound such as the other party's voice is audible over the speaker.

1 During a call



For a voice call



For a videophone call



For a PushTalk call

When Hands-free is activated, is displayed.

- For videophone calls and PushTalk calls, you can activate/deactivate Hands-free also during dialing or connecting.
- Press again to deactivate Hands-free.
- The sound volume during a Hands-free call follows the setting specified by "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- You can switch to Hands-free even during Manner Mode. Also, you will still hear voice through the speaker even when you activate Manner Mode during a Hands-free call.

### Information

- While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you cannot hear voice through the speaker even if you switch to Hands-free.
- Keep the FOMA phone well away from your ear during a Hands-free call. Otherwise you could affect or damage your hearing.
- Talk into the FOMA phone within a distance of about 50 cm.

### <In-Car Hands-free>

## Using Hands-free Compatible Devices

You can make or receive voice calls from a Hands-free compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option) or a car navigation system by connecting with your FOMA phone.

You can connect your FOMA phone to a Hands-free compatible device using two ways of connections as follows:

#### ● Connect using the USB cable:




To use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option), you need to have the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (option).

#### ● Connect using Bluetooth (wireless):

To connect to a Bluetooth compatible Hands-free device, you need to register and connect it to the FOMA phone.

※ For how to operate Hands-free compatible devices, refer to the respective instruction manuals.

### Information

- To connect using the USB cable, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".
-  appears while you are talking or communicating using a USB Hands-free compatible device.
-  might appear while the FOMA phone is connected to a USB Hands-free compatible device, and  while "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode", depending on the Hands-free device connected.
- The display or ring tone for incoming calls follows the settings of the FOMA phone.
- When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free compatible device, the ring tone sounds from that device even when Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" of the FOMA phone is set to "Silent".
- The receiving operation in Public Mode (Drive Mode) works in accordance with the "Public (Drive) mode" setting.
- The receiving operation while Record Message is activated works in accordance with the "Record message setting" setting.
- When the sound is set to output from the FOMA phone, the FOMA phone works in accordance with "Setting when folded" if it is closed during a call. When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free device, the communication state does not change regardless of "Setting when folded" even if you close the FOMA phone.

## Communicating Using Bluetooth Device

You can communicate wirelessly by connecting a device such as Wireless Earphone Set P01 (option) to the FOMA phone. (See page 410)

# Receiving a Call/Videophone Call

## 1 When you receive a call, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

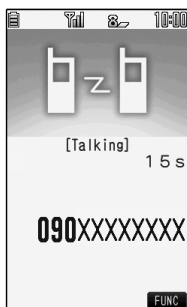


- To vibrate the FOMA phone for incoming calls, set “Phone” or “Videophone” of “Vibrator” to other than “OFF”.
- When receiving a videophone call, “Incoming V.phone” is displayed.
- “☎” is displayed at the upper right of the phone number for incoming international calls.
- See page 28 for when the FOMA phone is closed.

Chaku-moji message (See page 63)

## 2 For Answering a Voice Call

Press or (**Answer**) to answer the call.



- When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, the call is placed on hold if you answer the call by pressing with the FOMA phone closed. If you have set “Setting when folded” to “No tone” or “End the call”, the other party hears nothing, and if you have set “Setting when folded” to “Tone on”, the call hold tone is played back. You can start talking by opening the FOMA phone.

## For Answering a Videophone Call

Press or to answer the videophone call.



You can send the image through your camera to the other party. Press (**Subst.**) to take a videophone call, and the substitute image is sent to the other party. (Substitute image answering)

- Press during a call, and then you can switch between your photo image and substitute image for sending to the other party.

- If you close the FOMA phone during a call, the FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of “Setting when folded”. (See page 74)

## 3 Press to end the call after talking.



## Information

- You might hear beeps (in-call ring tone) during a call.  
If you have signed up for any of Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service and set “In-call management” to “Answer”, the beeps (in-call ring tone) will sound for another incoming call, enabling you to do the following operations:

Voice Mail Service . . . . . Transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 428)

Call Waiting Service . . . . . Put your current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (See page 429)

Call Forwarding Service . . . Transfer the call to the registered forwarding destination. (See page 431)

- You can set “Reject unknown” not to accept calls from the phone numbers not stored in the Phonebook.


### <For Videophone Calls>

- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during a videophone call as “Hands-free w/ V. phone” has been set to “ON”. (See page 87) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of “Hands-free w/ V. phone”.
- Even if Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”, the call is not forwarded unless the forwarding destination is a phone compatible with the videophone conforming to 3G-324M (see page 52). Check the phone you are forwarding the call to and then activate the service. The videophone caller does not hear the guidance to the effect that the call is forwarded. (The message to the effect that the call is to be forwarded appears, depending on the receiver’s FOMA phone.)
- If a videophone call comes in from the phone number to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the video guidance for Call Rejection is played back and the call is disconnected.
- You can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of your own image. (See page 83)

### ■ Display for incoming calls

#### When a caller’s phone number is provided

If the caller’s name, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, the name, phone number, and icon (or image) are displayed.

- If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 117) is displayed.
- The phone number but not the name is displayed if the party has been stored as secret data in the Phonebook, or if Personal Data Lock is activated.
- For a forwarded call, the forwarder is displayed below the phone number of the caller. (The forwarder’s phone number might not be displayed in the case of some forwarders.)
- When you receive a call to an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the caller. (With a forwarded call, you can press  (Change) to switch to display of the forwarder.)

#### When a caller’s phone number is not provided

The reason for no caller ID is displayed. (See page 175)

## Function Menu while a Call is Ringing

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Call rejection	—	You can disconnect the call without answering. • You cannot execute “Call rejection” if you set “Phone” of “Set when opened” to “Answer” and the call is received with the FOMA phone closed.
Call forwarding	See page 431.	You can forward the call to the forwarding destination.
Voice mail	See page 428.	You can connect the call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

## Switched between a Voice Call and Videophone Call by the Other Party

When you have set “Notify switchable mode” to “Indication ON”, the caller (the other party) can switch between a voice call and videophone call.

- You (receiving end) cannot switch between a voice call and videophone call.

### Switched from a Voice Call to Videophone Call by the Other Party

1

The display for switching to a videophone call appears during a voice call.



**YES** . . . . . Sends the image through your camera to the caller.

**NO** . . . . . Sends a pre-installed substitute image to the caller.

- While switching, the message to that effect is displayed and the voice guidance is played back.

### Switched from a Videophone Call to Voice Call by the Other Party

When the caller (the other party) switches a videophone call to a voice call, the message telling that the call is being switched appears, the voice guidance is played back, and then the call is switched to a voice call.

# Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls























Setting at purchase Any key answer




You can set to start talking (Any key answer) or to stop the ring tone (Quick silent) by pressing a key besides , ,  (for videophone call) or  (for PushTalk call) for when a call or PushTalk call comes in.

1  ► Settings ► Incoming call ► Answer setting ► Select a key operation.

### Any key answer

You can start talking by pressing any key shown below:

Voice call	 ,  ,  through  ,  ,  ,  ※,  ,  , 
PushTalk call	 ,  ,  ,  ,  through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ,  , 





●When receiving a videophone call, you can start talking by pressing ,  or .

### Quick silent

The following are the keys you can press to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance:









When “Set when opened” is set to “Keep ringing”, you can open the FOMA phone to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance. Even if you stop it, the other party hears a calling tone.

Voice call	 through  ,  ,  ,  ※,  ,  , 
Videophone call	 through  ,  ,  ,  ※,  ,  , 
PushTalk call	 ,  through  ,  ,  ,  ,  ,  , 

●After you stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance by the key operation above, you can press ,  or  (for videophone call), or press  (for PushTalk call) to start talking.

### OFF

You can start talking by pressing a key shown below:

Voice call	 , 
Videophone call	 ,  , 
PushTalk call	 ,  , 

※While “Change” is displayed, you cannot start talking or stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance.

### Information

●While the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you can press the switch to start talking, regardless of “Answer setting”. (See page 405)

<Set when Opened>

## Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Phone during Ringing

Setting at purchase	Keep ringing
---------------------	--------------

- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Incoming call** ► **Set when opened** ► **Select an incoming type**  
► **Keep ringing or Answer**

### Information

- If you receive a videophone call with "Answer" set, the still image set for "Substitute image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.

<Setting when Folded>



## Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Call


### Set Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during a Voice Call/Videophone Call

Setting at purchase	End the call
---------------------	--------------

- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Talk** ► **Setting when folded** ► **Phone/Videophone**  
► **Select an item.**

**No tone** . . . . . The voice is muted. The hold tone does not sound. The setting is completed.

**Tone on** . . . . . The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone" while the FOMA phone is closed.

**End the call** . . . . . The call is finished. This is the same operation as pressing  during a call. The setting is completed.

## 2 Speaker ON or Speaker OFF


**Speaker ON** . . . . . The hold tone sounds from the speaker.

**Speaker OFF** . . . . . The hold tone does not sound from the speaker.

### Set Response for when Closing FOMA Phone during PushTalk

Setting at purchase	Speaker call
---------------------	--------------

- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Talk** ► **Setting when folded** ► **PushTalk**  
► **Speaker call or End the call**

- During PushTalk communication or when the PushTalk Phonebook List, PushTalk Group List, or Group Member List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) and select "Set. when folded".

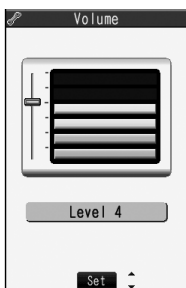
### Information

- This function is disabled when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected. The communication state does not change even if you close the FOMA phone during a voice call or PushTalk communication. If you close the FOMA phone during a videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party with the line connected.
- If you close the FOMA phone during a videophone call with "No tone" activated, a substitute image is sent to the other party. When "Tone on" is set, the still image selected by "Holding" of "Select image" is sent.
- If you set to "No tone" or "Tone on", "Holding" is displayed on the Private window when the FOMA phone is closed.

# Adjusting Earpiece Volume

Setting at purchase | Level 4

1 ► **Settings** ► **Talk** ► **Volume** ► **Use** to adjust the earpiece volume.



Adjust the earpiece volume to Level 1 (minimum) through Level 6 (maximum). To raise the volume, press or ; to lower it, press or .

- During a call, PushTalk call, or calling, you can press or to adjust the volume, and while entering phone number, you can press and hold (for at least one second) to adjust it. Press or within two seconds to adjust it.

### Information

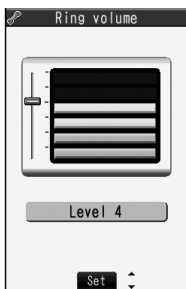
- The earpiece volume adjusted during a call is retained even after the call ends.
- When you adjust the earpiece volume, the sound volume during a Hands-free call or Speaker call for PushTalk is also adjusted.

# Adjusting Ring Volume

Setting at purchase | Level 4

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming calls and mail.

1 ► **Settings** ► **Incoming call** ► **Ring volume** ► **Select an incoming type**  
► **Use** to adjust the volume.



• Following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while the ring volume is set to "Silent":

: The ring volume for voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls is "Silent".

: The ring volume for mail, chat mail or Messages R/F is "Silent".

: The ring volume for voice calls, PushTalk calls, or videophone calls is "Silent" and the ring volume for mail, chat mail, or Messages R/F is "Silent".

- If you have set "Step", the ring tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.
- During ringing of a voice call or videophone call, you can adjust the ring volume also by pressing and holding or for at least one second. However, you cannot adjust the ring volume in the following cases:
  - "Ring volume" is set to "Step".
  - "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent" and you stop the ring tone or voice guidance.
  - During Manner Mode
  - Incoming calls within the ring start time specified by "Ring time"

<On Hold>

## Putting an Incoming Call on Hold when You cannot Answer at Once















### 1 During ringing

The FOMA phone makes three rapid beeps for confirmation and the incoming call is put on hold.


- The confirmation tone does not sound while Manner Mode is activated or when “Phone” of “Ring volume” is “Silent”.
- The other party hears the hold tone set for “On hold tone” of “Set hold tone”.

For videophone calls, the still image set for “On hold” of “Select image” is displayed.

### 2 Press , or to release hold and answer the call.

- If “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, you can release hold of voice calls by pressing any key of  through , , , , , , , , , or .
- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing  or  to release hold. If you press  (Subst.) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.

#### Information

- The caller is charged for the call even during answer-hold.
- If you press  during answer-hold, the call will be disconnected.






<Holding>

## Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

### 1 During a call

- The other party hears the hold tone set for “Holding tone” of “Set hold tone”. For videophone calls, the still image set for “Holding” of “Select image” is displayed.
- You can put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone during the call if you have set “Setting when folded” to “Tone on”.

### 2 Press or to release hold and answer the call.

- Press  to release hold. If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing  or  to release hold. If you press  (Subst.) or  to release hold, the substitute image is sent.
- If you have set “Setting when folded” to “Tone on” and put the call on hold by closing the FOMA phone, open the FOMA phone or connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) to answer the call. If you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to answer the videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party.

#### Information

- The caller is charged for the call even while the call is on hold.
- If a new call comes in while the current call is put on hold, the hold is released.

# Setting Hold Tone

Setting at purchase	On hold tone: Tone 1    Holding tone: JESU JOY OF MAN'S DESIRING
---------------------	--

You can set the guidance the other party hears during on hold.

- 1** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Talk** ▶ **Set hold tone** ▶ **On hold tone or Holding tone**  
▶ **Select a hold tone.**

**Tone 1** . . . . . The caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the call. Hold the line, or redial after a while" in Japanese. You can set this for "On hold tone" only.

**Tone 2** . . . . . The caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the call. Redial after a while" in Japanese. You can set this for "On hold tone" only.

**JESU JOY OF MAN'S** . . . . . The melody is played back. You can set this for "Holding tone" only.

**Voice announce 1** . . . . . The caller hears the voice recorded by "Voice announce". If it has not been recorded, this is not displayed.

**Voice announce 2** . . . . . The caller hears the voice recorded by "Voice announce". If it has not been recorded, this is not displayed.

- Press (**Play**) to play back a hold tone. Press to end the demo playback.

# Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

Setting at purchase	Released
---------------------	----------

**Public Mode is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode, the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently driving or in a place (a train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where you should refrain from answering the call. Then the call is disconnected.**

- 1** **Stand-by display** ▶ (for at least one second)

Public Mode is activated and is displayed.




When a call comes in, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.

- To deactivate Public Mode, perform the same operation. Then, Public Mode is deactivated and disappears.

### Information

- You can activate/deactivate Public Mode only from the Stand-by display. You can activate/deactivate Public Mode even when is displayed.
- You can make calls as usual even during Public Mode.
- If you dial emergency call phone numbers "110", "119", "118", Public Mode is released.
- When Public Mode and Manner Mode are activated simultaneously, Public Mode has priority.
- If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (The Public Mode guidance is not played back.)
- You cannot use this function during data communication.

### ■When Public Mode (Drive Mode) is activated

- Even when a call comes in, the ring tone does not sound. The “Missed call” icon appears on the display and the call is recorded in “Received calls”. The guidance is played back to the caller to the effect that you are currently driving or in an area where mobile phones should not be used. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message “Connection failed” appears on the caller’s display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you are driving is conveyed to them.  
However, when the power is off or “”, the caller hears the out-of-service area guidance instead of the Public Mode guidance.
- The ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker even when mail or a message comes in. In addition, the set vibrator does not work.
- The ring tone for 64K data communication, alarm tone, and charging confirmation tone do not sound, and a melody while i-øpli is running is not played back.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed.
-  (HIKARI Icon) and  (HIKARI Icon) do not flicker, and the Call/Charging indicator does not light when you close the FOMA phone.

### ■Relations between incoming calls during Public Mode (Drive Mode) and respective services

Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Videophone Calls
Voice Mail Service※	Plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	Does not play back the video guidance for Public Mode, and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service※	Plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. Whether the guidance is played back or not depends on the guidance setting of Call Forwarding Service. If “Plays guidance” is set, plays back the Public Mode guidance. If “Does not play guidance” is set, does not play back the guidance.	Does not play back the video guidance for Public Mode, and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. If the destination does not support videophone calls, the call is disconnected.
Call Waiting Service	Plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	Plays back the video guidance for Public Mode, and then the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	For the call from the phone number registered to be rejected, plays back the Call Rejection guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	For the call from the phone number registered to be rejected, plays back the video guidance for Call Rejection, and then the call is disconnected.
Caller ID Display Request Service	For the caller without a caller ID, plays back the Caller ID Request guidance, and then the call is disconnected. For the caller with a caller ID, plays back the Public Mode guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	For the caller without a caller ID, plays back the video guidance for Caller ID Request, and then the call is disconnected. For the caller with a caller ID, plays back the video guidance for Public Mode, and then the call is disconnected.

※When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or the power is off, the Public Mode guidance is not played back, but Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works. Note that in this case the call is not notified by the “Missed call” icon and not stored in “Received calls”.



## Using Public Mode (Power Off)

**Public Mode (Power Off) is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode (Power Off), the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently in a place (hospital, airplane, around priority seat in a train, etc.) where use is prohibited. Then the call is disconnected.**

### 1 Enter “✳25251”▶

Public Mode (Power Off) is set. (Nothing is changed on the Stand-by display.)

After setting Public Mode (Power Off) and turning off the power, the guidance “The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later.” is played back for incoming calls.

- To release Public Mode (Power Off), dial “✳25250”.
- To check the setting for Public Mode (Power Off), dial “✳25259”.

#### ■ When Public Mode (Power Off) is activated

The setting stays activated until you dial “✳25250” to deactivate Public Mode (Power Off). You cannot deactivate the setting just by turning on the power.

The guidance is played back to the caller telling that you are currently in a place where you should turn off the power. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message “Connection failed” appears on the caller’s display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you do not participate is conveyed to them.

The Public Mode (Power Off) guidance is played back even when you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.

#### ■ Relations between incoming calls during Public Mode (Power Off) and respective services

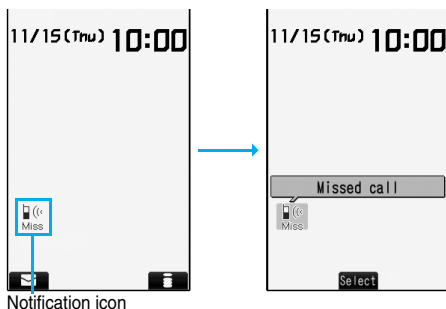
Service	Responses to Incoming Voice Calls	Responses to Incoming Videophone Calls
Voice Mail Service	Plays back the Public Mode (Power Off) guidance, and then the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.※	Does not play back the video guidance for Public Mode (Power Off), and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	Plays back the Public Mode (Power Off) guidance, and then the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination.※ Whether the guidance is played back or not depends on the guidance setting of Call Forwarding Service. If “Plays guidance” is set, plays back the Public Mode (Power Off) guidance. If “Does not play guidance” is set, does not play back the guidance.	Does not play back the video guidance for Public Mode (Power Off), and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. If the destination does not support videophone calls, the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	For the call from the phone number registered to be rejected, plays back the Call Rejection guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	For the call from the phone number registered to be rejected, plays back the video guidance for Call Rejection, and then the call is disconnected.
Caller ID Display Request Service	For the caller without a caller ID, plays back the Caller ID Request guidance, and then the call is disconnected. For the caller with a caller ID, plays back the Public Mode (Power Off) guidance, and then the call is disconnected.	For the caller without a caller ID, plays back the video guidance for Caller ID Request, and then the call is disconnected. For the caller with a caller ID, plays back the video guidance for Public Mode (Power Off), and then the call is disconnected.

※When the ring time is set to 0 seconds, the Public Mode (Power Off) guidance is not played back, but Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works.

# If You could not Answer an Incoming Call

When you could not answer calls (Missed calls), the “Notification icon” appears on the Stand-by display. You can check Received Calls by selecting the icon.

## 1 Stand-by display ▶ ▶ (Select)



Notification icon

- Press or to return to the former display.
- When multiple icons are found, use to highlight an icon and press (Select).
- See page 28 for when the FOMA phone is closed.
- (HIKARI Icon) flickers to notify you of a missed call. (See page 25)

# Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call

By activating Record Message, you can play back an answer message to incoming calls and record callers' voice/video messages when you cannot answer them even if you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service. You can record up to five messages for voice calls and up to two messages for videophone calls. Each message can be recorded for up to 20 seconds.

## Activate Record Message

Setting at purchase	Record message setting: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (when "Record message setting" is set to "ON") Ring time: 13 seconds (when "Record message setting" is set to "ON")
---------------------	---

## 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo ▶ Record message setting ▶ ON or OFF

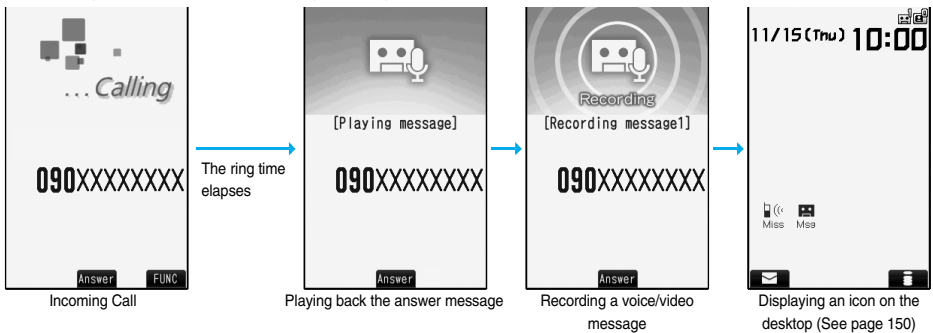
## 2 Select an answer message.

- Press (Play) to play back the answer message. Press to end the demo playback.
- When “Japanese 1”, “Japanese 2”, or “English” is set, a beep sounds after playing back the answer message to the other party. If “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” is set, the beep does not sound.

## 3 Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter from “000” through “120” in three digits.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Automatic Answer and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.
- While Record Message is activated, “ ~ “” (the number of recorded messages for voice calls) and “ ~ “” (the number of recorded messages for videophone calls) are displayed.

## ■ Incoming calls when Record Message Setting is set to "ON"



For a videophone call, the still image set for "Preparing" of "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display while playing back the answer message, and the still image set for "Record message" of "Select image" is displayed while recording.

## ■ To answer a call while the answer message is played back or a voice/video message is recorded

Press or .

For videophone calls, press or to send the image through your camera, or press (Subst.) to send the substitute image.

You can take calls by pressing the switch on the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option). For videophone calls, your own photo image is sent to the other party.

### Information

- Record Message does not work when is displayed.
- When Public Mode (Drive Mode) and Record Message are simultaneously activated, the former has priority and the latter does not work.
- The priority order of answer messages is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Record message setting".
- If "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" selected as an answer message is deleted, the answer message will be set to "Japanese 1".
- When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set at the same time as Record Message, the priority depends on the ring time set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. To give Record Message priority, set the ring time for Record Message Setting shorter than that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Even when you do this, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service will work if there are already five record messages for voice calls and two record messages for videophone calls.
- You cannot receive a call from a third party while a voice/video message is being recorded. The third party will hear the busy tone.

### ■ Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents saved to the FOMA phone and store them separately.

## <Quick Record Message>

# Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer the Call during Ringing

Even if a call comes in while Record Message is not activated, you can record the caller's voice/video message just for that incoming call.

## 1 During ringing ▶ or

Manner Mode is also activated.

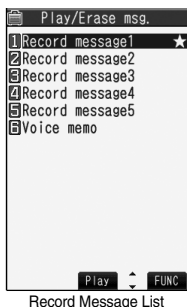
The caller will hear the answer message and then can leave you a voice/video message.

- Record Message does not work when five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded or when a PushTalk call comes in.
- When "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you cannot activate Record Message by pressing with the FOMA phone closed.

# Playing Back/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/ Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

## Play Back/Erase Record Messages/a Voice Memo

- 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo ▶ Play/Erase msg.  
▶ Select a record message or voice memo.



Record Message List

A beep sounds and playback starts.

- On the Record Message List, recorded items are indicated by “★”.
- It is played back at the volume set for “Volume” (earpiece volume).
- When playback ends, a double-beep sounds and the message “Playing” is cleared from the display.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback. When a caller’s phone number is provided, it is displayed. If the caller is stored in the Phonebook, his/her name is also displayed. However, the name is not displayed and the phone number only is displayed in the following cases:
  - When you play back a record message from the caller stored as secret data in Normal Mode
  - When you play back a record message for Number A in B Mode (or vice versa) while using 2in1
- If the caller’s phone number is displayed during playback, you can make a voice call to that phone number by pressing . Press to make a videophone call and press to make a PushTalk call.

### ■ To play back using

From the Stand-by display, press to play back the latest record message. When record messages are not recorded, a voice memo is played back.

### ■ To skip to next message

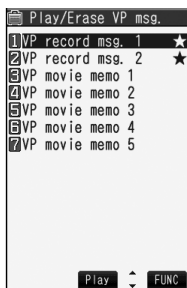
Each time you press during playback, messages are played back in the following order: the next new record message → the oldest record message → a voice memo.

### ■ To cancel playback midway

Press (Stop) or (END).

## Play Back/Erase Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

- 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo ▶ Play/Erase VP msg.  
▶ Select a videophone record message or movie memo.



Videophone Record Message List

- On the Videophone Record Message List, recorded items are indicated by “★”.
- It is played back at the same volume of the playback sound of i-motion movies.
- The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback.


### ■ To play back using

From the Stand-by display, press and hold for at least one second to play back the latest videophone record message. When videophone record messages are not recorded, the latest movie memo is played back.

### ■ To cancel playback midway

Press (Stop) or (END).

## Function Menu of the Record Message List/Videophone Record Message List

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Play	—	You can play back a message.
Erase this	▶ YES • You can erase a message/memo also by pressing  (Erase) during playback.	—
Erase rec. msg.	▶ YES	You can erase all record messages from the Record Message List, and can erase all videophone record messages from the Videophone Record Message List.
Erase movie memo [Videophone Record Message List only]	▶ YES	You can erase all movie memos.
Erase all	▶ YES	You can erase all record messages and a voice memo from the Record Message List, and can erase all videophone record messages and movie memos from the Videophone Record Message List.

## Using Chara-den



You can send a Chara-den image instead of the image through your camera.




- See page 341 for Chara-den images.

### Set by Call

You can set a Chara-den image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

#### 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den List (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den call

Enter the destination phone number and press  or  (Dial) to make a videophone call.

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing .
- You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing  or from Redial by pressing .

#### Information

- The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select image".

### Substitute Image

Setting at purchase	Dimo
---------------------	------









You can set a Chara-den image for "Substitute image" of "Select image".

#### 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den List/Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Substitute image

## Chara-den Setup

You can configure settings for a Chara-den call. These settings are effective only for during a videophone call.

- 1 During a Chara-den call  (  ) ▶ Chara-den setup  
▶ Do the following operations.





Item	Operation	Explanation
Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a Chara-den image.	• If you switch Chara-den images, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.
Action list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Highlight an action and press  (  ) to execute the action. Press  (  ) to check the details of the action.</li> <li>• You can display the Action List also by pressing .</li> </ul>	You can display the list for actions that you can operate.
Change action At videophone start-up Whole Action Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can switch modes also by pressing .</li> </ul>	You can switch the action mode between Whole Action Mode (  ) and Parts Action Mode (  ).
SW substitute img.	—	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for “Pre-installed” of “Select image”.
SW org. subst. img.	—	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for “Original” of “Select image”.

## Useful Functions for Videophone Calls

### Switch Cameras

At videophone start-up	Inside camera
------------------------	---------------


You can switch images to be sent to the other party from through the inside camera to through the outside camera.

- 1 During a videophone call  (  )
  - Press  (  ) again to return to the previous state.
  - The setting here is effective only for the current videophone call.

### Send Substitute Images


You can switch images to be sent to the other party from the image through your camera to the still image or Chara-den image set as the substitute image.

See page 341 for Chara-den.

- 1 During a videophone call 

The substitute image is sent to the other party.

“  ” is displayed while the still substitute image is being sent, and “  ” is displayed if you have set a Chara-den image as a substitute image (during a Chara-den call).

  - Press  again to switch from the substitute image to the image through your camera.

### ■About substitute images to be sent

You can set a substitute image by the three functions described below:


- A Chara-den image stored in a Phonebook entry
- A Chara-den image set by “Group setting”
- A still image or Chara-den image set for “Substitute image” of “Select image”


In addition, you can set a Chara-den image by call. (See page 83)

The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: “Setting by call” → “Setting for Phonebook entry” → “Group setting” → “Select image”.

Note that “Setting for Phonebook entry” and “Group setting” are disabled when a videophone call comes in without notifying the caller ID.

### ■To answer a videophone call sending a substitute image

Press  (Subst.) to answer the videophone call during ringing.

- To switch the substitute image to the image through your camera, press .

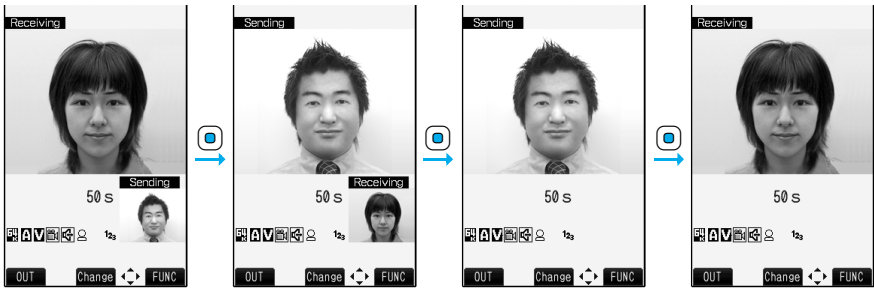
### Information

- Even when you make a videophone call sending a substitute image, you are charged for the digital communication.

## Switch Image Display Positions

You can switch the display locations of your image and the other party's image.

### 1 During a videophone call, press (Change).



- Each time you press  (Change), the displays switch.

## Zoom

At videophone start-up Wide

You can adjust the magnification for a photo image to be sent to the other party. During a videophone call, the maximum magnification is about 2.0 times for the inside camera and about 2.8 times for the outside camera.

### 1 During a videophone call ▶ Use to adjust the magnification.

- The former zoom setting returns when the videophone call ends.

## Function Menu during Videophone Call

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
CHG to voice call	See page 58.	You can switch the current videophone call to the voice call.
V.phone settings (Visual preference)	See page 87.	You can set the image quality.

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>V.phone settings (Brightness)</b> At videophone start-up 0	<b>▶ Brightness ▶ Select a brightness level.</b>	You can adjust the brightness of the image to be sent to other party to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).
<b>V.phone settings (White balance)</b> At videophone start-up Automatic	<b>▶ White balance ▶ Select an item.</b> <b>Fine weather</b> ... For talking outdoors in fine weather <b>Cloudy weather</b> ... For talking in cloudy weather or in the shade <b>Automatic</b> ... For adjusting white balance automatically <b>Light bulb</b> ... For talking under lighting	You can adjust the colors of the photo image to be sent to the other party, to make the colors look more natural.
<b>V.phone settings (Color mode set)</b> At videophone start-up Normal	<b>▶ Color mode set ▶ Select a color tone.</b>	You can switch the color tone of the photo image to be sent to the other party.
<b>V.phone settings (Night mode)</b> At videophone start-up OFF	<b>▶ Night mode ▶ ON or OFF</b>	You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the photo image to be sent clear in a dark place.
<b>V.phone settings (Focus)</b> At videophone start-up Landscape	<b>▶ Focus ▶ Close-up or Landscape</b>	You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call. ● The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits), so you cannot change the setting.
<b>Chara-den setup</b>	See page 84.	You can configure settings for Chara-den calls.
<b>Talk on BT/Phone</b>	See page 411.	You can set whether to communicate through the FOMA phone or a Bluetooth device.
<b>Photo light</b> At videophone start-up OFF	<b>▶ ON or OFF</b>	You can set Photo Light to light for when sending the image through the outside camera to the other party.
<b>Backlight</b> Setting at purchase Constant light	<b>▶ Constant light or 15 seconds light</b>	You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds after an operation.
<b>LCD AI</b>	See page 143.	You can set whether to automatically adjust the brightness of the display backlight and compensate the image quality according to the brightness.
<b>Outside camera/Inside camera</b>	See page 84.	You can switch the cameras.



Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Send DTMF tone/ DTMF tone OFF	—	During a Chara-den call, you can switch to the DTMF Transmission Mode that enables you to enter the data from the numeric keys and to send DTMF (touch-tone signals). You can operate it only during a Chara-den call. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•“Send DTMF tone” is displayed when the mode is not DTMF Transmission Mode and “DTMF tone OFF” is displayed in DTMF Transmission Mode.</li> <li>•In DTMF Transmission Mode, you cannot operate the action of Chara-den images.</li> <li>•The DTMF tone may not be received depending on the device of a receiving end.</li> </ul>
Own number	—	You can display your phone number.
Key guide	—	You can display the guide of key operation during a videophone call.

<Hands-free with Videophone>

## Setting Videophone Hands-free

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

You can set whether to switch to Hands-free automatically for when a videophone call starts.

1  ► Settings ► Videophone ► Hands-free w/ V. phone ► ON or OFF

- See page 68 for the operation while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free.


<Visual Preference>

## Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls

Setting at purchase	Normal
---------------------	--------

You can set the quality of the other party's image on the display and of your image to be sent.

1  ► Settings ► Videophone ► Visual preference ► Select an image quality.

- “Prefer motion spd” is effective for moving images. When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to “Prefer img qual”.
- During a videophone call, press  (FUNC), select “V.phone settings” and select “Visual preference”. The setting here is effective only for the current videophone call.

### Information

- If the radio wave conditions weaken during a videophone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

# Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls

Setting at purchase	On hold: Pre-installed    Holding: Pre-installed    Substitute image: Chara-den (Dimo) Record message: Pre-installed    Preparing: Pre-installed    Movie memo: Pre-installed
---------------------	--

You can set an image to be sent to the other party instead of the image through your camera.

## 1 Settings > Videophone > Select image > Select an item.

- On hold** . . . . . Sets an image for "On hold" (answer-hold).
- Holding** . . . . . Sets an image for "Holding" during a call.
- Substitute image** . . . Sets a substitute image (still image or Chara-den) for when a camera is off.
- Record message** . . . Sets an image while recording a record message.
- Preparing** . . . . . Sets an image while playing back an answer message.
- Movie memo** . . . . . Sets an image while recording a movie memo.

## 2 Select an image.

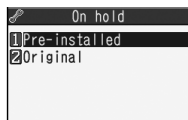


Image Selection display

- Pre-installed** . . . For sending a pre-installed still image to the other party.
  - Original** . . . . . For sending an appropriate message with a still image stored using "Set display".
  - Chara-den** . . . . . For sending a Chara-den image selected by "Substitute image". (See page 83)  
(Displayed only when "Substitute image" has been selected in step 1.)
- Press (Play) to play back a demo to check the still image or Chara-den image.

**Information**

- Even if you delete the still image selected from "Original", that still image is displayed to the other party. To change, set by "Change setting" or "Set display".

## Function Menu of the Image Selection Display

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Change setting	<p>If you have selected "Original"</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a still image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press  (Play) to play back a demo to check the still image.</li> </ul> <p>If you have selected "Chara-den"</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a Chara-den image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press  (Play) to play back a demo to check the Chara-den image.</li> </ul>	<p>You can change the setting for "Original" or "Chara-den".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot operate while selecting "Pre-installed".</li> <li>● See page 326 for settable still images.</li> </ul>

## Set by Call

You can set an image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

### 1 Enter a phone number

or

bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

### 2 (FUNC) ▶ Select image ▶ Me or Chara-den

- The setting is completed when you select "Me".
- To cancel the setting by call, select "Release". The setting is completed.

### 3 Select a Chara-den image.

<Voice Call Auto Redial>

## Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected

Setting at purchase    OFF

If a videophone call cannot be connected, it will be automatically redialed as a voice call.

1  Settings ▶ Videophone ▶ Voice call auto redial ▶ ON or OFF

### Information


- The charges for calls once switched to voice calls are billed at the rates for the voice calls.
- "Voice call auto redial" does not work when a videophone call cannot be connected such as when the line is busy or the other party's phone is in Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, "Voice call auto redial" works when you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function.

<Notify Switchable Mode>

## Setting for Switching between a Voice Call and a Videophone Call

You can let the other party know that your FOMA phone can switch between a voice call and videophone call. This function is set to "Indication ON" at the time of contract. When "Notify switchable mode" is set to "Indication ON", the caller can switch between the videophone call and voice call.

- You cannot operate "Notify switchable mode" when you are out of the service area or radio waves do not reach, or during a call.

1  Settings ▶ Videophone ▶ Notify switchable mode  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Indication ON	▶ YES ▶ OK	—
Indication OFF	▶ YES ▶ OK	—
Check indication	—	You can check the setting of the function.

<Videophone while Packet>

## Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode

Setting at purchase    V-phone priority

1  Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ V-phone while packet ▶ Select an item.

**V-phone priority** . . . . . Shows the Videophone Call Receiving display. When you answer the videophone call, packet communication is disconnected.

**Packet downld priority** . . . . . Rejects the videophone call and continues the communication.

**V-phone answerphone** . . . . . Connects the incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

**Call forwarding** . . . . . Forwards the incoming videophone call to the forwarding destination.

### Information

- If you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service or you have not set it to "Activate", "Packet downld priority" works even if you set to "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding".

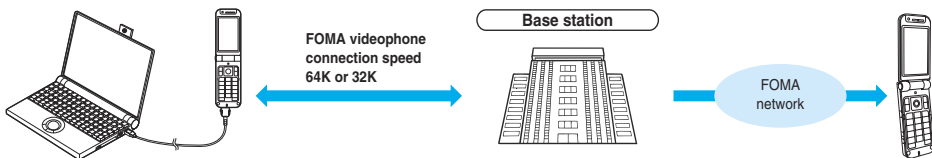
# Connecting FOMA Phone to External Devices to Use Videophone Function

You can operate your FOMA phone from an external device such as your personal computer for making or receiving videophone calls by connecting them using the FOMA USB Cable (option).

To use this function, you need to install a videophone application program on a dedicated external device or personal computer, and further, you need to prepare equipment (commercial) such as an earphone/microphone or USB compatible web camera.

- For operating environments for a videophone application program and how to set or operate it, refer to the instruction manual or other literature for an external device.
- You can use “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト2005 (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005)” for the application program that supports this function. Download it from the DoCoMo Videophone Software web site.  
(For details such as operating environment for the personal computers, refer to the support web page.)

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Japanese only)



## Information

- You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.
- When you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during a voice call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls. The same applies for an incoming voice call, videophone call, and 64 data communication during a videophone call from an external device.

## <Remote Monitoring>

# Checking inside the Room when You are Out

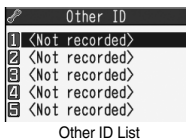
Setting at purchase	Other ID: Not recorded Ring time: 5 seconds Set: OFF
---------------------	--

You can use the inside camera of the FOMA phone as a monitoring camera to observe the remote location from a phone that has the videophone function based on 3G-324M. While “Remote monitoring” is set to “ON”, the FOMA phone automatically starts Remote Monitoring when it receives a videophone call from a phone number stored as “Other ID” of “Remote monitoring”.

(The FOMA phone needs to be set open.)

**1** Settings ▶ Videophone ▶ Remote monitoring  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

**2** Other ID ▶ <Not recorded> ▶ Enter a phone number.




- To change, select the stored phone number.
- You can store up to five phone numbers that can enter up to 26 digits by using numerals, #, \*, or +.
- To return to the setting display for Remote Monitoring, press on the Other ID List after storing phone number.

**3** Ring time ▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).

- You can enter the time from “003” through “120” in three digits until Remote Monitoring starts after receiving a videophone call.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Automatic Answer and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.

## 4 Set ▶ ON

- When receiving videophone calls from the phone numbers stored as “Other ID”, the FOMA phone automatically answers to start Remote Monitoring after the ring time elapses.
- “” is displayed while this function is set to “ON”.
- You cannot set to “ON” in Manner Mode.



### ■ To release Remote Monitoring

Perform the same operation as in step 1 on page 90, then operate “Set ▶ OFF”.

### ■ To change the setting contents of Remote Monitoring

Perform the same operation as in step 1 through step 4 on page 90.

## Function Menu of the Other ID List

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Look-up address	▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number.	You can call up a phone number in the Phonebook, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls to enter it.
	<b>Dialed calls</b> . . . . Select a phone number and press  (Select).	
	<b>Received calls</b> . . . Select a phone number and press  (Select).	
Delete this	▶ YES	• If you delete all Other IDs, “Remote monitoring” is set to “OFF”.
Delete all	▶ YES	

## Perform Remote Monitoring

### 1 Make a videophone call from a stored phone number.







After the ring time set for “Remote monitoring” elapses, Remote Monitoring automatically starts.

- The image through the receiving end’s camera appears on the display and the sound comes out of the speaker.
- You cannot set Voice-only Remote Monitoring.
- Make a videophone call notifying your caller ID. If the caller ID is not notified, Remote Monitoring will not start and the call will be handled as an ordinary incoming videophone call.

### 2 Remote Monitoring ends when the calling end or receiving end presses .

### ■ For answering a videophone call (image through your camera) without starting Remote Monitoring at the receiving end

- You can press  or  to answer the videophone call before the FOMA phone answers it automatically and send the image through your camera to the other party. If you press  (Subst.), the videophone call starts sending the substitute image to the other party.
- When a remote monitoring call comes in, “Set when opened” is disabled.
- If you press  when a remote monitoring call comes in, the call will be cut and Remote Monitoring will not start.

### Information


- When your FOMA phone is used for the receiving end, a camera image at the calling end appears, and sound comes out. (You cannot switch to a substitute image.)
- Remote Monitoring does not start during Manner Mode and Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, it starts even during Lock All.
- When Remote Monitoring is set to "ON" and a videophone call comes in from "Other ID", Remote Monitoring starts after the set ring time, even when "Ring time", "Automatic answer", or "Record message setting" is set and regardless of their ring times.
- When Remote Monitoring is not performed, it is recorded in Received Calls as a missed videophone call.
- If the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected when a remote monitoring call comes in, the ring tone will sound from both the earphone and the speaker, even when "Earphone" of "External option" is set to "Earphone".
- The ring tone for Remote Monitoring sounds. (You cannot change the ring tone for Remote Monitoring.)  
The ring tone sounds at the volume set for "Videophone" of "Ring volume", but at "Level 2" if you have set "Step", "Level 1" or below.  
The flickering color is "Gradation", and its flickering pattern is "Standard", regardless of the Illumination setting.
- You cannot put incoming remote monitoring calls on hold.
- If you set both Call Forwarding Service and Remote Monitoring, and give priority to Remote Monitoring, set its ring time shorter than that for Call Forwarding Service.
- To use Call Forwarding Service for Remote Monitoring, store the phone number of dialing side as "Other ID" and set a 3G-324M videophone as the forwarding destination.

● You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



**Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

# PushTalk



What is PushTalk? .....	94
Making a PushTalk Call .....	95
Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication .....	97
Receiving a PushTalk Call .....	98
Storing in PushTalk Phonebook .....	99
<Store in PushTalk Phonebook>	
Making a PushTalk Call Using PushTalk Phonebook .....	101
Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries .....	102
<Delete from PushTalk Phonebook>	
Making Full Use of PushTalk Phonebook .....	103
Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving .....	104

## What is PushTalk?

You can communicate with multiple persons (up to five persons including yourself); press the PushTalk key to access the PushTalk Phonebook, select the persons you want to talk with, and press the PushTalk key.

You are charged a PushTalk communication fee each time you press (talk) the PushTalk key. You can talk only while you are pressing the PushTalk key, and the members other than you can do nothing but listen to you for that duration. You can check the display for the state of members such as who is talking.

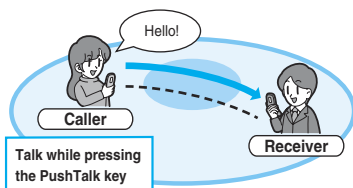
This function is convenient for communicating within a group or for a short communication simultaneously.

- Compatible models . . . . . 902i series, 902iS series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 904i series, 702i series (except SH702iD, N702iD, F702iD, D702i, SA702i, SO702i), 702iS series (except N702iS, D702iF, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series (except N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703i $\mu$ , N703i $\mu$ )

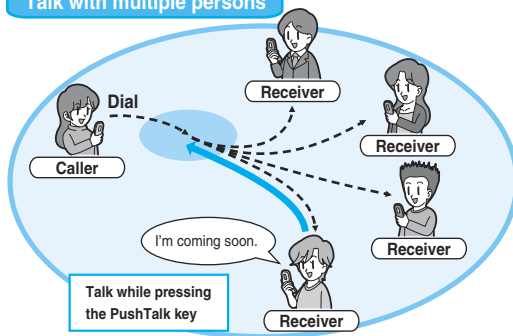
During communication, you can add members or call up members who have not participated if you use the following models\*\*:

\*\*903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703i $\mu$ , N703i $\mu$ )

### Talk between two persons



### Talk with multiple persons



### ■ PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus is the service that enables you to communicate with up to 20 persons including yourself by using the Phonebook that has been registered on the network. In addition, you can check PushTalk member's state, so this service makes PushTalk more convenient.

You need to subscribe to PushTalkPlus separately to use it.

- For details such as how to operate PushTalkPlus, refer to the booklet which is supplied at subscription.



# Making a PushTalk Call

## 1 Enter the other party's phone number








When you are dialing, a confirmation tone for starting a PushTalk call sounds for a few seconds, and then the same ring tone as with the voice (videophone) call sounds.

- "P" blinks at the upper part of the display when you are making a PushTalk call and lights during communication.
- You can make a group call for multiple persons using the PushTalk Phonebook. (See page 99 and page 101)

## 2 When the other party answers, talk while pressing .




When the other party answers, a confirmation tone for starting communication sounds.


- When you get the talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone sounds. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing  and having the talker's right. When you release , the talker's right is released, and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds even if you press  when another member has it.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during communication as "Hands-free w/ PushTalk" has been set to "ON". (See page 104) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- Press  () to add a member. Go to step 1 on page 97.
- The FOMA phone works according to "Setting when folded" if you close it during communication. (See page 74)

## 3 Press to end the communication after talking.

A tone to notify the disconnection of communication sounds at the other end.

- When the call you made is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press , and the icon indicating that you are not participating appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members exit, the PushTalk communication itself ends.


### Information

- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses  and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- Emergency calls 110/119/118 are not available from PushTalk.
- The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- If you make a PushTalk call notifying your phone number, the phone numbers of all the members are notified to all the members who have received the call. The phone number is important information, so take utmost care when notifying it.
- If you make a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the i-mode communication is disconnected.
- You cannot use PushTalk by Number B of 2in1.

## Function Menu during PushTalk Communication

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Add member</b>	Go to step 1 on page 97.	You can add a member during PushTalk communication.
<b>Set. when folded</b>	See page 74.	You can set how the FOMA phone works when it is closed.

### ■ Making/Receiving a PushTalk group call

You can use the PushTalk Phonebook or Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to communicate with multiple members. While making or receiving a PushTalk group call, the group name and the members in the group are displayed. Press  to confirm other members. When a call is received with the other party's phone number not provided, "User unset" is displayed.

### ■ Display while dialing/communicating



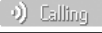



During group communication

The phone number of the member who has the talker's right is displayed, and the state of the talker's right is displayed in color of the round icon at the upper left. When the name of that member, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, his/her name and image are displayed. However, when you cannot receive a member's information correctly, "?" is displayed.



When the FOMA phone is closed, the phone number (name) of the member who has the talker's right is displayed on the Private window.

Color of the round icon at the upper left	State of the talker's rights
Blue	Calling
Green	You can get the talker's right.
Blinking in green	You have the talker's right.
Blinking in yellow	Another member has the talker's right.
Blinking in green and red	The talker's right will be released automatically in a few seconds because it has long been retained (A release notice tone sounds).

- The state of members is shown by icons during dialing or communicating. (Characters other than shown below might appear.)

Icon	State of members
 Calling ※	Calling
 Connected	Has participated in the PushTalk call.
 Disconnected ※	Does not answer, has ended the PushTalk call, out of the service area, or the power is off.
 Driving ※	Has activated Public Mode (Drive Mode).

※ Displayed only for the PushTalk communication among three or more members.

- The number of times you have got the talker's right is the total of the number of  and the number shown in . When 999 times are exceeded, the counting is reset to 0.

### ■ Re-participating or participating midway in PushTalk communication

After you finish PushTalk communication or when you cannot answer to a PushTalk call, you can use Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call to re-participate or participate midway in the communication so long as the PushTalk communication continues among other members. If the PushTalk communication among other members has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.

# Adding a Member during PushTalk Communication











You can make a PushTalk call to another member during PushTalk communication and add that member to the communication.

You can add a person to the members by accessing the PushTalk Phonebook, Phonebook, or Dialed Calls/Received Calls, or by directly entering a phone number.

You can add up to five members (including yourself), and can repeat adding up to that number.

- Members can be added from the calling end only.
- You can add even the members who use the PushTalk compatible models which do not have this function.
- The added members are not recorded in Dialed Calls/Redial.

**1** During PushTalk communication   ► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>View PushTalk PB</b>	See page 101. Instead of pressing  , press   to call. • Press  (FUNC) and select "Member/Group" to switch between the PushTalk Phonebook List and PushTalk Group List.	You can call up a PushTalk Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call.
<b>View phonebook</b>	► Call up a Phonebook entry ► Highlight a phone number and press   .	You can call up a Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call.
<b>Direct input</b>	► Enter a phone number ►   .	You can enter a phone number to make a PushTalk call.
<b>View call records</b>	► Dialed calls or Received calls ► Select a record ► Select a phone number ►   .	You can call up Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call.

## Information

- Even the caller cannot add members if he/she uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function.
- For a member who uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function, the members added during PushTalk communication are not shown and a confirmation tone does not sound.

# Receiving a PushTalk Call

## 1 When a PushTalk call comes in, “PushTalk call” is displayed, the ring tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.



- “PushTalk group call” is displayed for an incoming group call.
- See page 28 for when the FOMA phone is closed.
- To reject a call, press (FUNC) during ringing and select “Call rejection”. You can reject the call also by pressing .

## 2 Press to answer a PushTalk call ▶ Talk while pressing .



- You can answer also by pressing or (Answer) instead of pressing . You can answer also by pressing with the FOMA phone closed.
- When you get talker’s right, the talker’s right obtained tone is played back. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing and having the talker’s right. When you release , the talker’s right is released and a confirmation tone sounds.
- You cannot get the talker’s right and an error tone sounds, even if you press when another member has it.
- “Set when opened” and “Record message setting” become invalid.
- Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during communication as “Hands-free w/ PushTalk” has been set to “ON”. (See page 104) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of “Hands-free w/ PushTalk”.
- The FOMA phone works according to “Setting when folded” if you close it during communication. (See page 74)

## 3 Press to end the communication after talking.


A tone for confirming the end of communication sounds at the other end.

- When the call you received is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press , and the icon indicating that you are not participating appears on each member’s display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members exit, the PushTalk communication itself ends.

### Information

- The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses and the talker’s right obtained tone sounds.
- The duration you can talk per talker’s right is limited. The talker’s right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker’s right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker’s right in a certain period of time.
- You cannot use “On hold” or “Holding” function for PushTalk.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a voice call, a PushTalk call that comes in during Public Mode (Drive Mode), and a voice call (when “PushTalk arrival act” is set to other than “Answer”), a videophone call, data communication, or a PushTalk call that comes in during PushTalk communication are recorded as missed calls in Received Calls.
- A PushTalk call that comes in during a videophone call or during data communication does not work and is not recorded in Received Calls.
- After you finish PushTalk communication or when you cannot answer to a PushTalk call, you can use a received call record to make a PushTalk call and to re-participate or participate midway in the communication so long as the PushTalk communication continues among other members. If the PushTalk communication among other members has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.

**Information**

- When a caller adds members during PushTalk communication, the added members are not recorded in Received Calls.
- See page 105 for how to respond to the PushTalk call during i-mode communication.
- When the caller is defined as the one to be rejected, the call is rejected. The setting of call rejection applies to the setting for both voice calls and videophone calls.
- When a PushTalk call comes in during Lock All, Omakase Lock, or ANSHIN-KEY Lock, “ Miss” appears after the lock is released.

<Store in PushTalk Phonebook>

# Storing in PushTalk Phonebook


From the items stored in a FOMA phone's Phonebook entry, you need to store a name (reading) and a phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook. You can store up to 1,000 entries in the PushTalk Phonebook.

## 1 Stand-by display <New> Do the following operations.



PushTalk Phonebook List

- If you store multiple phone numbers from a Phonebook entry, the phone number previously stored in the PushTalk Phonebook is overwritten.

Item	Operation	Explanation
View phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Call up a Phonebook entry</li> <li>▶ Select a phone number ▶ YES</li> </ul>	You can access an entry already stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook and store it in the PushTalk Phonebook.
Direct input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Phone ▶ Select a storing method.</li> <li><b>New</b> . . . . . Go to step 2 on page 109.</li> <li><b>Add</b> . . . . . Go to step 3 on page 114.</li> <li>● When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, press  (Finish) and select the phone number you want to store in the PushTalk Phonebook. The “★” mark is added to the phone number that has already been stored in the PushTalk Phonebook.</li> </ul>	You can store the entry in the PushTalk Phonebook after storing it in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.
View call records	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Dialed calls or Received calls</li> <li>▶ Select a record</li> <li>▶ Select a phone number ▶ YES</li> </ul>	You can access a dialed call record or received call record to store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. You cannot store in the PushTalk Phonebook from the dialed/received call record of the party who is not stored in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

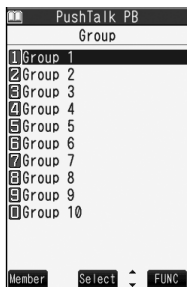
**Information**

- In the PushTalk Phonebook, you cannot store the Phonebook entries set to B by Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

## Store in Group

You can store PushTalk Phonebook entries in groups. You can store up to 19 members per group and create up to 10 groups.

### 1 PushTalk Phonebook List ▶ (Group)



PushTalk Group List

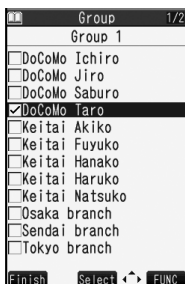
• Press (Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook List.

### 2 Select a group ▶ <Edit group members>

▶ Put a check mark for members to be stored ▶ (Finish)



Group Member List



Group Member Selection display

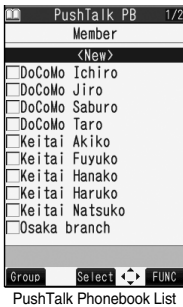
## Function Menu of the Group Member Selection Display


Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Members to store	• Press  (Store) to store the members to the group.	You can display only members applied with a check mark.
Search	▶ Select a search method. Reading? . . . . . See page 116. Group? . . . . . See page 116.  ▶ Select a member.	You can display the Group Member Selection display with the searched members selected.

# Making a PushTalk Call Using PushTalk Phonebook

You can make a group call to up to four members using the PushTalk Phonebook or PushTalk group.

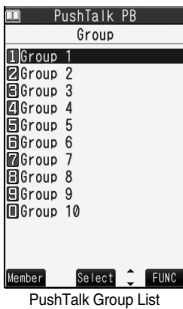
## 1 PushTalk Phonebook List ▶ Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to ▶





- Press  (Group) to show the PushTalk Group List.
- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.

## Make a Call from PushTalk Group

### 1 PushTalk Group List ▶ Select a group.



- Select a group and press  to make a call to all the members in the group.
- Press  (Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook List.

### 2 Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to ▶



- When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.

#### Information

- When five or more members are stored in a group, you cannot make a call to all the members by selecting the group.

## Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

- 1 PushTalk Phonebook List  (  ) ▶ DEL from P-Talk PB  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Delete this	<p>▶ Select a deleting method.</p> <p><b>DEL from P-Talk PB</b> ...Deletes an entry in the PushTalk Phonebook only. Does not delete the entry in the FOMA phone's Phonebook.</p> <p><b>DEL from all PBs</b> ...Deletes an entry in both the PushTalk Phonebook and FOMA phone's Phonebook.</p> <p>▶ YES</p>	—
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</p> <p>▶ YES</p>	• The FOMA phone's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

### Delete from PushTalk Group

- 1 PushTalk Group List  (  ) ▶ DEL from PT group ▶ YES

### Delete Group Members

- 1 Group Member List  (  ) ▶ DEL group members  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES	—
Delete all	<p>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</p> <p>▶ YES</p>	—

#### Information

- Even when you delete PushTalk groups or group members, the PushTalk Phonebook entries and FOMA phone's Phonebook entries are not deleted.





# Making Full Use of PushTalk Phonebook

## Function Menu of the PushTalk Phonebook List/PushTalk Group List/Group Member List

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Members to call</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press <b>[P]</b> or <b>[PTT]</b> to make a PushTalk call.</li> <li>● Press <b>[PR]</b> (<b>[FUNC]</b>) to select “Notify caller ID” and you can select whether to notify your phone number. Select “Cancel prefix” to follow the setting by “Caller ID setting”.</li> </ul>	When the PushTalk Phonebook List or Group Member List is displayed, you can display the checked members only.
<b>Search PushTalk PB</b> [Phonebook List only]	<p>▶ <b>Select a search method.</b>  <b>Reading?</b> . . . See page 116.  <b>Group?</b> . . . . See page 116.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a member.</b></p>	You can display the PushTalk Phonebook List with the searched members selected.
<b>Store in P-Talk PB</b> [Phonebook List only]	See page 99.	You can store a PushTalk Phonebook entry.
<b>DEL from P-Talk PB</b> [Phonebook List only]	See page 102.	You can delete the PushTalk Phonebook entry.
<b>Edit group members</b> [Group List/Member List]	Go to step 2 on page 100.	You can edit the members in the group.
<b>Edit group name</b> [Group List only]	<p>▶ <b>Enter a group name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>	—
<b>DEL from PT group</b> [Group List only]	See page 102.	You can delete the PushTalk group.
<b>DEL group members</b> [Member List only]	See page 102.	You can delete the members in the group.
<b>Auto answer set.</b>	See page 104.	You can set whether to auto-answer.
<b>Ring time setting</b>	See page 104.	You can set a ring time.
<b>Hands-Free</b>	See page 104.	You can set whether to switch to Hands-free automatically.
<b>Set. when folded</b>	See page 74.	You can set how the FOMA phone works when it is closed.
<b>Caller ID setting</b>	See page 104.	You can set whether to notify your phone number.
<b>i-mode arrival act</b>	See page 105.	You can set a response to an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication.
<b>P-Talk arrival act</b>	See page 105.	You can set a response to an incoming voice call during PushTalk communication.
<b>Network connection</b>	See page 94.	You can connect to the network to use PushTalkPlus. This is available only when you have signed up for PushTalkPlus.

# Setting PushTalk Calling/Receiving

## 1 Settings ▶ PushTalk ▶ Do the following operations.

- When the PushTalk Phonebook List, PushTalk Group List, or Group Member List is displayed, press  (  ) and select each item. “P-Talk arrival act” is displayed on these displays instead of “PushTalk arrival act”.

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Auto answer setting</b> Setting at purchase OFF	▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>ON</b> . . . . Automatically answers immediately after receiving regardless of “Ring time setting”. <b>OFF</b> . . . . Does not answer automatically.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you set to “ON”, calls are automatically answered even when the FOMA phone is closed regardless of “Setting when folded”.</li> <li>• When you set to “ON”, calls are automatically answered after switching to Hands-free regardless of “Hands-free w/ PushTalk”.</li> <li>• When you set to “ON”, the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator, and backlight do not work. Calls are not automatically answered during Manner Mode.</li> <li>• Even when “ON” is set, Hands-free is deactivated if you open the FOMA phone after you answer a call with the FOMA phone closed.</li> </ul>
<b>Ring time setting</b> Setting at purchase 30 seconds	▶ <b>Enter a ring time (seconds).</b> • Enter two digits from “01” through “60”.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Disconnected” is displayed at the other end after the ring time has elapsed.</li> </ul>
<b>Hands-free w/ PushTalk</b> Setting at purchase ON	▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>	You can set whether to hear the other party’s voice from the speaker or from the earpiece for when PushTalk communication starts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 68 for how Hands-free works while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free during communication.</li> </ul>
<b>Caller ID setting</b> Setting at purchase Not notify	▶ <b>Notify or Not notify</b>	You can set whether to notify other members of your phone number when you add members at making a PushTalk call or during PushTalk communication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you make a group call with “Notify” selected, the phone numbers of all the members are notified to all the members who have received the call.</li> </ul> When you make a group call with “Not notify” selected, all the members are shown as “User unset” at the displays of all the members who have received the call.

Item	Operation	Explanation		
<b>PushTalk arrival act</b> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Answer</td> </tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Answer	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Voice mail</b>            ... Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail Service Center.</p> <p><b>Call forwarding</b>            ... Forwards an incoming voice call to the forwarding destination.</p> <p><b>Call rejection</b>            ... Rejects an incoming voice call and does not answer.</p> <p><b>Answer</b>            ... Shows the Voice Call Receiving display.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you press  for an incoming voice call while "Answer" is set, the Call Receiving display appears after you finish the PushTalk communication, and then you can answer the voice call. To continue the PushTalk communication, press  ( <b>FUNC</b> ) and select "Call rejection", "Call forwarding", or "Voice mail".</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase				
Answer				

**Information**

<Caller ID setting>

- "Caller ID setting" is set to "Not notify" when a UIM is replaced by a different one.
- This setting is effective only for a PushTalk call. "Caller ID notification" of Network and the "186"/"184" setting (see page 48) do not apply.
- When you add a member during PushTalk communication with "Notify" selected, your phone number is notified to both the added member and existing members.
- When you activate "Notify caller ID" from the Function menu for dialing, or when "Notify" or "Not notify"/"User unset" is displayed in the detailed Redial/Dialed/Received Call display, each of those settings will work.

## i-mode Arrival Act

Setting at purchase	PushTalk preferred
---------------------	--------------------


You can set whether to show the PushTalk Call Receiving display when a PushTalk call comes in during i-mode communication.

### 1 Stand-by display ( ) ▶ i-mode settings ▶ i-mode arrival act ▶ Select an item.

- PushTalk preferred** . . . . . Ends i-mode communication and brings up the PushTalk Call Receiving display.
- i-mode preferred** . . . . . Rejects receiving a PushTalk call and continues i-mode communication. The call is not recorded in Received Calls.
- When the PushTalk Phonebook List, PushTalk Group List, or Group Member List is displayed, press ( **FUNC** ) and select "i-mode arrival act".



# Phonebook



Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone. ....	108
Storing Phonebook Entries ..... ‹Add to Phonebook›	109
Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook.....	114
Setting Groups ..... ‹Group Setting›	115
Dialing from Phonebooks..... ‹Search Phonebook›	116
Editing Phonebook Entries ..... ‹Edit Phonebook›	118
Deleting Phonebook Entries ..... ‹Delete Data›	119
Checking Number of Phonebook Entries ..... ‹No. of Phonebook›	120
Making Full Use of Phonebooks .....	120
Making a Call with a Few Touches ..... ‹Two-touch Dial›	123
Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice..... ‹Voice Dial›	123
Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center . . . ‹Data Security Service›	126

# Phonebooks Available for FOMA Phone

You can use two types of Phonebook, namely the Phonebook in the FOMA phone itself, and the Phonebook on the UIM. If you categorize the use of these Phonebooks, you can manage your data efficiently.

		FOMA phone	UIM
Number of entries		1,000 entries	50 entries
Contents of Phonebook	Basic item	Name (Reading)	○
		Group	19 groups
		Phone number	4 phone numbers
		Phone number icon	○
		Mail address	3 mail addresses
		Mail address icon	○
		Address	○
		Location information	○
		Birthday	○
		Memo	○
		Image	○ (Up to 100 images)
		Memory No.	From 000 to 999
	Setting item	Ring tone	○
		Vibrator	○
		Illumination	○
		Picture	○
		Chara-den	○ (Up to 100 Chara-den images)
		Mail ring tone	○
		Mail vibrator	○
		Mail illumination	○
		Answer message	○
		Connection speed	○
	Restrictions	Restrict dialing	
		Call rejection	
		Call acceptance	○
		Call forwarding	
		Voice mail	
Secret code		○	
Storage in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only		○	
Contents of Group	Name	○	
	Ring tone		
	Vibrator		
	Illumination		
	Picture		
	Chara-den		
	Mail ring tone	○	
	Mail vibrator		
	Mail illumination		
	Answer message		
	Connection speed		

○: Can be stored.

×: Cannot be stored.




● You can set your UIM into another FOMA phone and use the UIM Phonebook entries.

# Storing Phonebook Entries

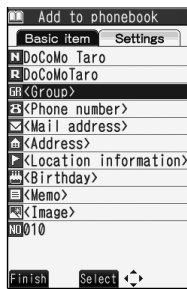
You can store Phonebook entries in the FOMA phone (Phone) or on the UIM.

## 1 Stand-by display (for at least one second) Phone or UIM

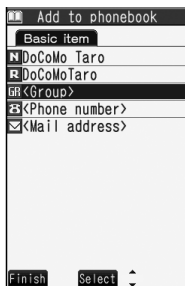
The Edit Name display appears. Go to step 2 and enter a name.

- You can bring up the Phonebook Function Selection display also by “ Phonebook” or “Stand-by display ”. You can bring up the Storage Location Selection display by selecting “Add to phonebook”.
- You can bring up the Storage Location Selection display also by pressing  **New** from the Phonebook List.


## 2 Do the following operations.














For the FOMA phone












For the UIM












- You can press  to switch between the “Basic item” tab and “Settings” tab on the FOMA phone’s Phonebook.

Item	Operation	Explanation
 <Name>	<p><b>▶ Enter a name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. You can enter pictographs and symbols as well.</li> <li>• For the UIM, you can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 10 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>	<p>You can enter the name of the person or company in kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.</p>
 <Reading>	<p><b>▶ Enter a reading.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters. You can enter half-pitch symbols as well.</li> <li>• For the UIM, you can enter up to 12 full-pitch characters or 25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 12 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>	<p>You can enter the reading in half-pitch katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, they are not reflected in the reading.</li> <li>• If you enter “わ (reduced size)” or “ワ (reduced size)” for a name, “ワ (half-pitch, regular size)” (for the FOMA phone) and “ワ (regular size)” (for the UIM) are displayed in the reading field.</li> </ul>
 <Group>	<p><b>▶ Select a group.</b></p>	<p>In the FOMA phone, 19 groups are available. On the UIM, 10 groups are available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is stored in “No setting”.</li> </ul>

Item	Operation	Explanation
 <Phone number>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a phone number.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter from the city code for the phone numbers.</li> <li>● You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. However, you can enter up to 20 digits for blue UIMs.</li> <li>● Press and hold  for at least one second to insert a pause (p) into the phone number you store. However, you cannot insert the pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted to the end of phone number is not stored.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select an icon.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have stored a phone number in the FOMA phone, another " &lt;Phone number&gt;" will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another phone number, select " &lt;Phone number&gt;".</li> </ul>	<p>You can store up to four phone numbers per Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You can set an icon for each phone number to categorize mobile phone numbers, office phone numbers, and so on.</p> <p>You can store one phone number per Phonebook entry on the UIM.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you insert "X" in the middle of a phone number, you cannot make a call. However, the phone number is recorded in Redial or Dialed Calls.</li> <li>● You can store the phone number which includes "#" such as that for information service as well.</li> </ul>
 <Mail address>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a mail address.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The mail address can consist of up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol characters.</li> <li>● When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select an icon.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have stored a mail address in the FOMA phone, another " &lt;Mail address&gt;" will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another mail address, select " &lt;Mail address&gt;".</li> </ul>	<p>You can store up to three mail addresses per Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone. You can set an icon for each mail address to categorize mobile phone addresses, home addresses, and so on.</p> <p>You can store one mail address per Phonebook entry on the UIM.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For the FOMA phone, you can set a secret code as well. (See page 122)</li> </ul>
 <Address> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Enter a ZIP code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a postal address.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 7 digits for the zip code and up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters for the postal address.</li> <li>● In the postal address, you can enter pictographs as well.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot enter "ー" or "-" (hyphen) in the zip code.</li> </ul>



Item	Operation	Explanation
 <Location information> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b>  <b>By position loc.</b>  ... Measures the current location and store the location information. After checking the location information, press  (Set).</p> <p><b>From loc. history</b>  ... Select a location information from Location History and store it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To delete the stored location information, select "Delete location info".</li> <li>• When you press  (Use) during measuring the current location, the confirmation display appears asking whether to display the result obtained so far from the location information. Select "OK" to display the location information.</li> <li>• To cancel measuring the current location, press  (Stop) or  (Cancel).</li> <li>• Press  (Retry) from the confirmation display for the location information to restart measuring in "Quality mode".</li> </ul>	<p>—</p>
 <Birthday> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Enter a birthday.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter the birthday from January 1, 1800 through December 31, 2099.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p>
 <Memo> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Enter a memo.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters for the memo.</li> <li>• You can enter pictographs as well.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p>
 <Image> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b>  <b>Select image</b>  ... . You can store a still image in Data Box.</p> <p><b>Shoot image</b>  ... . You can store the shot still image. Perform step 2 through step 3 of "Shoot a Still Image" on page 186.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release the stored still image, select "Release image".</li> </ul>	<p>The stored still image is displayed when you call up the Phonebook entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The size of a still image you can store is VGA (480 x 640) or smaller and up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG format or GIF format.</li> <li>• If you store a still image larger than 72 x 54 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.</li> <li>• If you store a still image larger than 240 x 180 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the Call Receiving display.</li> <li>• When "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the stored still image is displayed for an incoming call. However, when another image is stored in the "Picture" field, that image is preferentially displayed for the incoming call.</li> </ul>

Item	Operation	Explanation
 <Memory No.> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Enter a memory number.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter a three-digit number of "000" through "999".</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The lowest empty memory number "010" through "999" is entered as a memory number in advance. If "010" through "999" are all occupied, the lowest empty memory number from "000" through "009" is entered.</li> </ul>
 <Ring tone> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select ring tone</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 129.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored ring tone, select "Release ring tone".</li> </ul>	You can set a ring tone for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Vibrator> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select vibrator</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a vibration pattern.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored vibrator, select "Release vibrator".</li> </ul>	You can set a vibration pattern for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Illumination> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select illumination</b> ▶ <b>Select a color.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored illumination, select "Release illumination".</li> </ul>	You can set an illumination color for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Picture> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select picture</b> ▶ <b>Select a type of image</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored image, select "Release picture".</li> </ul>	You can set an image to be displayed for when a call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Chara-den> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select Chara-den</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a Chara-den image.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored Chara-den image, select "Release Chara-den".</li> </ul>	The stored Chara-den image is displayed as a substitute image for videophone calls with the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Mail ring tone> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select ring tone</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 129.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored mail ring tone, select "Release ring tone".</li> </ul>	You can set a ring tone for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Mail vibrator> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select vibrator</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a vibration pattern.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored mail vibrator, select "Release vibrator".</li> </ul>	You can set a vibration pattern for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Mail illumination> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select illumination</b> ▶ <b>Select a color.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored mail illumination, select "Release illumination".</li> </ul>	You can set an illumination color for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
 <Answer message> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select answer message</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select an answer message.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored answer message, select "Release answer message".</li> </ul>	You can set an answer message for Record Message by Phonebook entry.
 <Connection speed> [FOMA phone only]	<p>▶ <b>Select connect. speed</b> ▶ <b>64K or 32K</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release the stored connection speed, select "Release connect. speed".</li> </ul>	You can set a connection speed for when you make a videophone call to the person stored in the Phonebook.



## 3 Press (Finish).

- If you have not entered any name, “Finish” is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

### ■ The Phonebook entries while editing

#### When the battery goes flat

When the low battery alarm sounds while you are editing a Phonebook entry, the message “Recharge battery” (see page 45) appears. The data you are editing will be saved automatically, so you can charge the battery and continue editing, or you can change to a charged battery and then resume editing as follows:

1. Stand-by display  (for at least one second)  Phone or UIM
  - If you select the storage location for the interrupted Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume editing.
2. Recall
  - To add a new Phonebook entry, select “New”. In this case, the data you are editing is retained. If you try to store the interrupted entry after you finish storing a new one, the confirmation display appears again.
3. Resume editing the interrupted entry.
  - Only the most recently interrupted entry is retained.
  - If you resume editing the data but then cancel editing without storing it, that data will be abandoned. Once you recall the data, be sure to store it.

#### If you receive a call or mail

If you receive a call or mail while editing a Phonebook entry, you can respond it leaving the edited data as it is, thanks to the Multitask function.

To return to the Phonebook Edit display, press and hold  for at least one second to switch the menu. You can return to the Phonebook Edit display also by ending the call or mail function.

### ■ Important ■

- The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. For just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347) or by using Data Security Service (see page 126). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).
- Note that, at the time of your model change, the handling counters such as a DoCoMo shop might not be able to copy the stored contents to your new FOMA phone, depending on the specifications.


**Note that we cannot be held responsible for the unlikely event of loss of the stored contents.**

# Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook

You can store the displayed or selected phone number, mail address, and still image in the FOMA phone's or UIM's Phonebook.

Operation	Storable items
While a phone number is entered	Phone number
While a redial item, dialed call record, or received call record is displayed	Phone number
While Sent Address or Received Address is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a site or screen memo is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the text of Message R/F or mail is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the data scanned by Bar Code Reader or Text Reader is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
In halt state or at the end of playback of an i-motion movie which includes a ticker of underscored phone number (or mail address)	Phone number/Mail address
While a ToruCa file is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While your current location or location history is displayed	Location information
While a registered LCS client is displayed	Name/Phone number
While the Still Image List or a still image is displayed	Still image

## 1 Bring up/Select an item to be stored (FUNC) Add to phonebook

- To store the address of the sender (or of another recipient of simultaneous mail) of the received mail or the destination address of the sent mail into the Phonebook, select "Store address".  
When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, the display for selecting an address appears. Use  to select the mail address or phone number you want to store.
- To store the results scanned by Text Reader in a Phonebook entry, select "Store phone No." or "Store mail add.".
- To store a still image in the Phonebook, select "Phonebook" from "Set display".
- When "Add to phonebook" is displayed on the Scanned Code Result display for Bar Code Reader, select "Add to phonebook"; then other information in the scanned code than the phone number or mail address is entered into each field.

## 2 Phone or UIM Select a storing method.

**New** . . . . Go to step 2 on page 109.

**Add** . . . . Adds data to the existing Phonebook entry. When storing data on the UIM, "Overwrite" is displayed.

## 3 Select a search method Search the Phonebook

 Select a Phonebook entry to be stored  (Select)



The phone number or mail address is entered automatically.

- See step 2 on page 109 to edit other items in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store into the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can remain the original entry and store a new entry into a different location by changing the memory number.

## 4 (Finish) YES

- If you store the entry in the UIM Phonebook, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original entry, or select "New" to store it as a new entry.

**Information**

- The Phonebook entry does not store the information of “Notify caller ID” included in Redial/Dialed Calls. To set Caller ID Notification, add “186”/“184” to the phone number and store it.
- Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces or deleted, and then stored.
- You may not be able to store the information from some sites into the Phonebook.

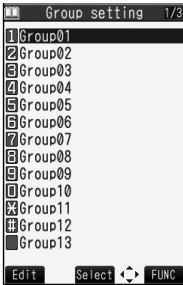
<Group Setting>



# Setting Groups

You can sort Phonebook entries into groups such as “Company”, “Friend” etc. according to your relationship, or “Baseball”, “Ceramic art” etc. according to your interest. You can use the sorted Phonebook entries as separate Phonebooks for easy access to the entry you want to search for. You can set a ring tone, vibration pattern, or illumination by group.

## 1 Stand-by display Phonebook settings Group setting



- The groups on the UIM are indicated by “”.
- To reset the group names and respective settings by group, which have already been stored, press (FUNC), select “Reset group”, and then select “YES”.

## 2 Highlight a group and press (Edit) Do the following operations.

- Select a stored group, or press (FUNC) and select “Check setting” to check its settings. However, you cannot check the settings of the groups on the UIM.

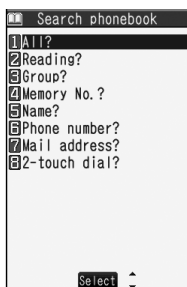
Item	Operation	Explanation
<Group name>	<p> Enter a group name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can store up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters. However, you can store only up to 10 characters (regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters) as a UIM group name when the entered group name contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>	—
<Ring tone>	See step 2 on page 109.	• You cannot set for groups on the UIM.
<Vibrator>		
<Illumination>		
<Picture>		
<Chara-den>		
<Mail ring tone>		
<Mail vibrator>		
<Mail illumination>		
<Answer message>		
<Connection speed>		

## 3 Press (Finish).


# Dialing from Phonebooks















You can retrieve stored Phonebook entries by eight search methods.

## 1 Stand-by display Do the following operations.






Search Phonebook display

- The display for the same search method as the previous one appears once you have carried out a search. Press  to show the Search Phonebook display.

Item	Operation	Explanation
All?	—	You can bring up all Phonebook entries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 117)</li> </ul>
Reading?	 Enter a part of the reading 	You can enter the reading of the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full reading. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 117)</li> </ul>
Group?	 Select a group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you press  (FUNC) on the Group List, the Function menu for "Group setting" is displayed.</li> </ul>	You can bring up Phonebook entries stored in the specified group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 117)</li> </ul>
Memory No.?	 Enter the memory number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter from "000" through "999" in three digits.</li> <li>• From the Stand-by display, you can press  and then press  to display the Memory No. Dial display. From there you can make a voice call by entering the memory number of the phone number.</li> </ul>	You can search for the entry by the memory number assigned when it was stored in the Phonebook. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. (See page 117)</li> </ul>
Name?	 Enter a part of the name 	You can enter the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full name.
Phone number?	 Enter a part of the phone number  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can display the Phonebook List also by entering a part of the phone number from the Stand-by display or the "Talking" display, and pressing .</li> </ul>	You can enter a part of the other party's phone number and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of phone number.
Mail address?	 Enter a part of the mail address 	You can enter a part of the other party's mail address and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of mail address.
2-touch dial?	—	You can bring up the list of Phonebook entries in memory number 000 through 009. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phonebook entries not yet stored or being set with secret are displayed as &lt;---&gt;.</li> </ul>

## 2 Select an entry or (Dial)



- When the entry contains multiple phone numbers, or when you searched by "Mail address?", press  from the detailed display to select a phone number.
- You can make a videophone call by pressing  or PushTalk call by pressing .

### About Phonebook List





Phonebook List



When you search from "All?", "Reading?", "Group?", or "Memory No.?", the tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook List. With "All?" and "Reading?", the entries are sorted by every column of reading, with "Memory No.?" by every 100 of the memory number, and with "Group?" by every group.

Press  to display the Phonebook entries in the tab at left or right. However, when there are 13 or more Phonebook entries in a tab, pressing  brings up the previous or next page.

- After you search by "Reading?", you can move the cursor to the "ア" through "ワ", "英", and "他" tab by pressing each numeric key from the List. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.




<Example> Press  to display the "ナ" tab. Each time you press , the cursor moves to the top of "ニ" "又" and so on.

- After you search by "Group?", you can move the cursor to the top of each column in the tab by pressing each numeric key from the List. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.

<Example> Press  to move the cursor to the top of the "ナ" column. Each time you press , the cursor moves to the top of "ニ" "又" and so on.

- After you search by "Memory No.?", you can move the cursor to the "000~" to "900~" tab by pressing each numeric key from the List.

<Example> Press  to move the cursor to the "500~" tab.

- You can make a voice call to the phone number stored for the name highlighted on the Phonebook List, by pressing . Also, press  to make a videophone call and press  to make a PushTalk call. When multiple phone numbers are stored for the name, the one stored first will be dialed.
- "📞" appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, "📞" appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and "📞" appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)

### Search order

The Phonebook entries are searched in the order of readings you entered for storing, as follows:


"Space at the beginning of the reading" → "Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、...ン)" → "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" → "Numerals (0 through 9)" → "Symbols" → "No reading".

For "Reading?", searching is done in the following order:


"Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、...ン)" → "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" → "Space at the beginning of the reading" → "Numerals (0 through 9)" → "Symbols" → "No reading".

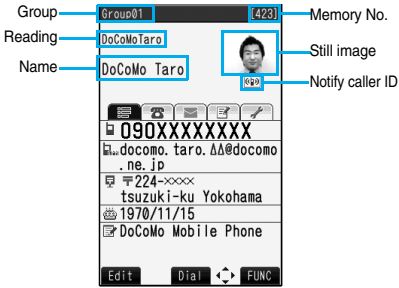
※The Memory No. Search searches in the order of the memory numbers.

### Information







- In a search method other than "Group?" and "2-touch dial?", enter nothing and press ; then you can search all through the Phonebook.
- When no Phonebook entry is found that matches the condition you entered by "Reading?" or "Memory No.?", the entry that is the closest to the condition is displayed.

## To check details of the Phonebook entries

- Bring up the entry that you want to check the details 



Detailed Phonebook display  
(Item List)

- The first stored phone number, mail address, and memo are displayed.
- For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, “” is displayed instead of the memory number.
- When Notify Caller ID is set to “Notify caller”, “” appears, and when set to “Don’t notify”, “” appears.
- Under the still image, “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and “” appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)



Phone number





Mail address

- When you select an item, you can compose an i-mode mail message with that mail address entered into the address.





Personal information

- When you select a postal address, memo, or still image, the full display appears. Press  (Exit) or  (Return) to return to the former display. When you select the location information, the location information menu appears. (See page 303)



Setting

- When you select “Ring tone” or similar item, a demo is played back. Press  (Stop) or  (Return) to end the demo.

### Information

- When a Phonebook entry contains the setting for Multi Number or Chaku-moji, the set contents are displayed in the Item List/Phone Number display.

## <Edit Phonebook>

# Editing Phonebook Entries

- Detailed Phonebook display  (Edit)





## 2 Select an item to be edited ▶ Edit the contents.

- See step 2 on page 109 for how to edit the Phonebook entry.
- Even if you edit the Phonebook entry in the FOMA phone (Phone), you can remain the original contents in the original location and store the edited contents in the different location by changing the memory number.

## 3 (Finish) ▶ YES


- If you edited the UIM Phonebook entry, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original contents, or "Add" to save the contents as a new entry.

<Delete Data>

## Deleting Phonebook Entries



### Delete from the Detailed Phonebook Display

## 1 Detailed Phonebook display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Delete data ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Phone number/ Mail address/Address/ Location info/Birthday/ Memo/Image/Ring tone/ Vibrator/Illumination/ Picture/Chara-den/ Mail ring tone/Mail vibrator/Mail illumination/ Answer message/ Connection speed	▶ YES  • From the detailed display, press  to highlight an item to be deleted. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted items in the Phonebook entry.	You can delete each item.
This phonebook	▶ YES	—

### Delete from the Phonebook List

## 1 Phonebook List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Delete data ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES	—
Delete selected	▶ Put a check mark for Phonebook entries to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES  • You can check or uncheck all items by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Select all in tab/Select all/Release all in tab/Release all".  • Perform the same operation as that of "Delete all" when you have selected all Phonebook entries including secret ones.	—
Delete all in tab	▶ YES	You can delete all the Phonebook entries for the displayed tab.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES ▶ YES	You can delete all Phonebook entries including secret entries.


**Information**

- When you delete a Phonebook entry that is stored in the PushTalk Phonebook, the PushTalk Phonebook entry is also deleted.

## <No. of Phonebook> ☎ 2 6

# Checking Number of Phonebook Entries

### 1 Stand-by display ▶ ▶ Phonebook settings ▶ No. of phonebook



- Phone  
 Phonebook . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone)  
 Secret . . . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored as secret data during Secret Mode or Secret Data Only  
 Image . . . . . The number of Phonebook entries in which still images are stored  
 Chara-den . . . . The number of Phonebook entries in which Chara-den images are stored  
 PushTalk . . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored in the PushTalk Phonebook  
 Voice dial. . . . The number of Phonebook entries set as voice dial entries  
 Rest. . . . . : The number of phone numbers that can still be stored  
                   : The number of mail addresses that can still be stored
- UIM  
 Phonebook . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored on the UIM

**Information**

- While you are using 2in1, the number of displayable Phonebook entries for each mode is displayed. (See page 437)

## Making Full Use of Phonebooks

### Function Menu of the Phonebook List

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Sort	▶ Select a type of order. ● You can sort Phonebook entries in reverse order by selecting “Ascending” or “Descending”.	You can change the display order. ● You cannot sort on the Phonebook List with tabs displayed.
Attach to mail	Go to step 2 on page 232.	You can send i-mode mail with the Phonebook entry attached.
Send Ir data (Send phonebook)	See page 359.	You can send the Phonebook entry using infrared rays.
Send Ir data (Send all phonebook)	See page 360.	You can send all Phonebook entries using infrared rays.
 transmission (Send phonebook)	See page 361.	You can send the Phonebook entry using iC communication.
 transmission (Send all phonebook)	See page 362.	You can send all Phonebook entries using iC communication.

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Send to Bluetooth (Send phonebook)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Send phonebook</b></li> <li>▶ <b>Select a Bluetooth device to be sent</b></li> <li>▶ <b>YES</b></li> <li>● When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search. Select “YES” to start the search.</li> <li>● See page 408 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.</li> </ul>	You can send the Phonebook entry using Bluetooth.
<b>Send to Bluetooth (Send all phonebook)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Send all phonebook</b></li> <li>▶ <b>Select a Bluetooth device to be sent</b></li> <li>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES</b></li> <li>● When “Session number setting” of “Bluetooth settings” is set to “ON”, enter your Terminal Security Code and then a session number.</li> <li>● When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search. Select “YES” to start the search.</li> <li>● See page 408 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.</li> </ul>	You can send all Phonebook entries using Bluetooth.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 349.	You can copy the Phonebook entry to the microSD memory card.
<b>Connect to Center</b>	See page 126.	You can connect to the Data Storage Center.
<b>Delete data</b>	See page 119.	You can delete Phonebook entries.
<b>Character size</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To reset the character size, perform the same operation.</li> <li>● The setting here applies to “Phonebook” of “Character size” as well.</li> </ul>	You can switch the character size for the list between Large and Standard.
<b>Set secret/Release secret</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you select “Set secret” in ordinary mode (not in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”), enter your Terminal Security Code.</li> </ul>	You can activate/deactivate Secret for the Phonebook entry.





#### Information

##### <Send to Bluetooth>

- You cannot send Phonebook entries from the UIM.
- See page 405 for the Bluetooth.

### Function Menu of the Detailed Phonebook Display

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Notify caller ID</b>	See page 48.	You can set whether to notify your caller ID.
<b>Prefix numbers</b>	See page 67.	You can add a prefix number.
<b>Int'l dial assist</b>	See page 56.	You can make an international call.
<b>2in1 dial</b>	See page 436.	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1.
<b>Multi number</b>	See page 435.	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party.
<b>Chaku-moji</b>	See page 63.	You can make a call with a Chaku-moji message.

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Connection speed	See page 55.	You can set the connection speed of videophone calls.
Restrictions	See page 174.	You can set the Restriction functions.
Edit data	Go to step 2 on page 119.	—
Delete data	See page 119.	You can delete Phonebook entries.
Store in P-Talk PB	—	You can store the phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook.
Add desktop icon	See page 151.	You can paste the phone number to the desktop.
Compose message	Go to step 3 on page 232.	You can compose i-mode mail to send to the mail address.
Compose SMS	Go to step 3 on page 270.	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address.
Attach to mail	Go to step 2 on page 232.	You can send i-mode mail with the Phonebook entry attached.
Send Ir data (Send phonebook)	See page 359.	You can send the Phonebook entry using infrared rays.
Send Ir data (Send all phonebook)	See page 360.	You can send all Phonebook entries using infrared rays.
 transmission (Send phonebook)	See page 361.	You can send the Phonebook entry using iC communication.
 transmission (Send all phonebook)	See page 362.	You can send all Phonebook entries using iC communication.
Send to Bluetooth (Send phonebook)	See page 121.	You can send the Phonebook entry using Bluetooth.
Send to Bluetooth (Send all phonebook)	See page 121.	You can send all Phonebook entries using Bluetooth.
Copy to microSD	See page 349.	You can copy the Phonebook entry to the microSD memory card.
Connect to Center	See page 126.	You can connect to the Data Storage Center.
Automatic display	See page 141.	You can set the phone number for Automatic Display.
Copy name	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can paste the copied text to a mail message and others.</li> </ul>
Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/ Copy location info/ Copy birthday/ Copy memo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the detailed display, press  to highlight an item to be copied. The items in the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted items in the Phonebook entry.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can paste the copied text to a mail message and others.</li> </ul>
Secret code	<p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Set code</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the detailed display, press  to highlight a phone number or mail address to be set with a secret code.</li> <li>To check the secret code, select “Check code”.</li> <li>To release the secret code, select “Release code”.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Enter a four-digit secret code ▶ YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter a four-digit number for secret code. You cannot set “0000”.</li> </ul>	<p>You need to add the recipient’s secret code when sending i-mode mail to anyone who has registered a secret code. Once you set the secret code for the mail address in the Phonebook entry, it will be added automatically whenever you send mail to that address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the Function menu, “Secret code” is indicated by “★”, after it is set.</li> </ul>

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Set secret/Release secret	See page 121.	You can activate/deactivate Secret for the Phonebook entry.
Copy to UIM/ Copy from UIM	See page 404.	You can copy the Phonebook entry to the UIM or to the FOMA phone (Phone).
Select image	See page 88.	You can select an image for videophone calls.


#### Information


##### <Secret code>



- You cannot set secret codes for UIM Phonebook entries.
- The secret code can be added only when the recipient's mail address is in the form of "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". It cannot be added to any other form of mail address.
- If you have stored the mail address as "phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail messages from the party of that mail address. After changing the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", set the secret code.

#### <Two-touch Dial>

## Making a Call with a Few Touches

When the entry is stored in memory number "000" through "009" in the FOMA phone's Phonebook, you can dial the phone number just by pressing the lowest one digit of memory number and .

1 Numeric key ( to )  or  (Dial)

- You can make a videophone call by pressing  or a PushTalk call by pressing .

#### Information

- When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the first phone number will be dialed.
- When you set "Restrict dialing" to a Phonebook entry of memory number 000 through 009, set it to the first phone number in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store a Phonebook entry of memory number from 000 through 009 as secret data, make a call to that entry in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

#### <Voice Dial>

## Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice

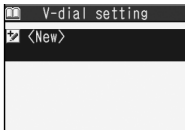
Just vocalize the other party's voice dial name and then the Phonebook entry is accessed for making a call.



### Voice Dial Setting



You can store up to 100 voice dial entries selecting from among the Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA phone (Phone).

1 Stand-by display  Phonebook settings  Voice dial setting  <New>



- You can edit the stored voice dial name by pressing  (Edit). Go to step 3.
- To delete the stored voice dial entry, press  (FUNC) and select "Delete" or "Delete all" and then select "YES".

2 Search the Phonebook  Select a Phonebook entry.

The display for search method you used last time appears.

- The "★" mark is added to the Phonebook entry stored in the Voice Dial List.

3 Enter a voice dial name.

- You can enter up to 22 half-pitch katakana characters.
- The reading of the Phonebook entry is displayed as the voice dial name. Correct the name to the easy-to-identify words.

Next Page

## Information

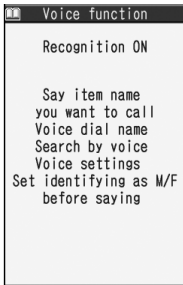
- The voice dial name set by this function is effective only for calling up a voice dial entry. For the voice guidance function, the reading (name) stored in the Phonebook is read aloud.
- When multiple similar voice dial names are stored or when the voice dial name is short, the recognition rate lowers and a wrong voice dial entry (Phonebook entry) might be accessed. In this case, rename the existing voice dial name and store it.
- You cannot store “ボイスケンサク (Boisukensaku)” and “ボイスセツテイ (Boisusettei)” as a voice dial name.

## Dial from Phonebook by Voice

By your voice, you can access the Phonebook entry you set in the Voice Dial List. When “Read aloud settings” is set to “ON” and “Voice dial” is checked, the operation is guided by the voice guidance.

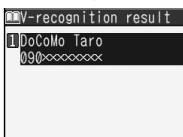
### 1 Stand-by display (for at least one second)

### 2 As soon as the voice recognition start tone sounds, vocalize the voice dial name.



Start vocalizing within four seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds.

- You cannot change the volume of the voice recognition start tone. The voice recognition start tone does not sound during Manner Mode.
- If you say the word “ボイス検索 (Boisukensaku)”, “使いかたナビ (Guide)” starts up. Go to step 2 of “Search by Voice” on page 37.
- If you say the word “ボイス設定 (Boisusettei)”, the display of “Voice settings” appears. (See page 125)








Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.

- When “Auto voice dial” is set to “ON”, the display for Auto Voice Dial appears. Then about two seconds later, the FOMA phone automatically dials out.

### 3 Highlight a detected result and press or (Dial).

The first phone number in the selected Phonebook entry is dialed.

- You can bring up the detailed Phonebook display by pressing  (Detail). Highlight a phone number and press  or  (Dial) to make a voice call. Also, you can make a videophone call by pressing  or a PushTalk call by pressing .

#### ■About voice input



When vocalizing a voice dial name, observe the following points:

- When you vocalize, keep your mouth away from the microphone about 10 cm. If your voice is too distant, it may be difficult to recognize your voice.
- Pronounce the voice dial name as clearly as possible.
- Before and after voice production, avoid making the sounds unrelated to the voice dial name such as clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, noisy breathing or other noise.
- Vocalize in quiet, noise-free locations.
- While vocalizing, do not put your fingers over the microphone, or press or brush the keys.
- The recognition rate may rise by changing the setting of “Identify as”.

**■To access a voice dial entry using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch**


You need to set “Voice earphone dial” to “ON” and open the FOMA phone in advance.

1. Press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for at least one second.
2. Perform the operations in step 2 and step 3 on page 124.


- You can make a call also by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch instead of pressing  or .

**■To access a voice dial entry using a Bluetooth device**

You can access a voice dial entry with the FOMA phone closed as well. You need to set “Voice earphone dial” to “ON” in advance.

1. When connected using the Headset service or Hands-free service  
Press the switch of the Bluetooth device, or press and hold  of the FOMA phone for at least one second.
  - For using the Hands-free service, the Bluetooth device needs to support a voice recognition function.
2. Access a voice dial entry following the voice guidance.
  - Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed on the Private window.
  - The FOMA phone automatically dials out about four seconds after the voice guidance to that effect finishes.

## Voice Settings

- 1**  ► **Settings** ► **Other settings** ► **Voice settings**  
► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation		
<b>Auto voice dial</b> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Setting at purchase</td></tr> <tr><td>OFF</td></tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	OFF	► ON or OFF	You can automatically make a call to the phone number accessed by voice.
Setting at purchase				
OFF				
<b>Voice earphone dial</b> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Setting at purchase</td></tr> <tr><td>OFF</td></tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	OFF	► ON or OFF	You can access the voice dial entries by using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) or Bluetooth Headset F01 (option).
Setting at purchase				
OFF				
<b>Identify as</b> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Setting at purchase</td></tr> <tr><td>Male voice</td></tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Male voice	► Male voice or Female voice	You can store the gender of the vocalizer to raise the recognition rate. Specify this function according to your gender. ● The setting here is valid for vocalizing “使いかたナビ (Guide)” keywords as well.
Setting at purchase				
Male voice				
<b>Read aloud settings</b>	See page 388.	You can set the voice guidance to be provided.		
<b>Read aloud volume</b>	See page 388.	You can adjust the volume for the voice guidance.		
<b>Read aloud output</b>	See page 388.	You can set the voice guidance to be output from the earpiece.		
<b>Read aloud valid set.</b>	See page 388.	You can set the voice guidance to be provided only when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected.		


## Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center

You can save the Phonebook stored in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center. By accessing the Data Storage Center, you can restore/update the Phonebook to your FOMA phone.

Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.

- You cannot use Data Security Service when you are out of the service area.
- For cautions on the use of Data Security Service and details on how to use it, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

### 1 LifeKit ▶ Data Security Service ▶ Connect to Center ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

- When operating from the Phonebook List or detailed Phonebook display, press  (FUNC) and select “Connect to Center”.

#### Information



- You cannot save the UIM Phonebook.
- When the Phonebook entries saved to the Data Storage Center exceeds the number of Phonebook entries storable in the FOMA phone’s Phonebook, the excess entries cannot be updated.

### Auto-update

On the site of the Data Storage Center, you can set so as to periodically update and save the Phonebook entries in your FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center.

- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

#### Information

- The Phonebook is not automatically updated while another function is working at the time of Auto-update.
- If the Phonebook cannot be updated, the notification icon of “” (PB in Center updated) appears on the Stand-by display. Select “”, and the update display appears if Auto-update is set. If Auto-update is not set, the update display appears after you enter your Terminal Security Code.

### Sent/Received Phonebook Data List

You can display the records of communication such as saving the Phonebook, mail messages, or still images to the Data Storage Center.

### 1 LifeKit ▶ Data Security Service ▶ Sent/recv. PB data list ▶ Select a record.

- Up to 30 records are saved. When more than 30 records are saved, the older records are overwritten.
- Select a communication completion time in the list to switch to the detailed display.

### Phonebook Image Sending

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

You can set whether to save images set for the Phonebook entries to the Data Storage Center.

### 1 LifeKit ▶ Data Security Service ▶ PB image sending ▶ ON or OFF

#### Information

- You cannot save the images whose output from FOMA phone is prohibited.



# Sound/Screen/Light Settings

## Tone Setting

Changing Ring Tone of FOMA Phone . . . . .	⟨Select Ring Tone⟩	128
Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody . . . . .	⟨Sound Effect⟩	130
Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration . . . . .	⟨Vibrator⟩	130
Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone . . . . .	⟨Voice Announce⟩	131
Setting Keypad Sound . . . . .	⟨Keypad Sound⟩	132
Setting Charging-start/end Tones . . . . .	⟨Charge Sound⟩	132
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected . . . . .	⟨Quality Alarm⟩	132
Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F . . . . .	⟨Mail/Message Ring Time⟩	133
Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only . . . . .	⟨Earphone⟩	133
Silencing Tones . . . . .	⟨Manner Mode⟩	134
Selecting Manner Mode Type . . . . .	⟨Manner Mode Set⟩	135

## Display/Light Setting

Changing Displays . . . . .	⟨Display Setting⟩	137
Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing . . . . .	⟨Display Phonebook Image⟩	139
Setting Displays for Private Window . . . . .	⟨Private Window⟩	140
Displaying a Phone Number by Opening FOMA Phone . . . . .	⟨Automatic Display⟩	141
Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Phone . . . . .	⟨Received Mail/Call at Open⟩	141
Setting Lights for Display and Keypad . . . . .	⟨Backlight⟩	142
Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically . . . . .	⟨LCD AI⟩	143
Setting Color Combination for Display . . . . .	⟨Color Pattern⟩	143
Setting Display of Main Menu . . . . .	⟨Menu Icon Setting⟩	144
Using Feel Function . . . . .	⟨Feel Settings⟩	145
Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others . . . . .	⟨Illumination Setting⟩	147
Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and HIKARI Icons . . . . .	⟨Info Notice Setting⟩	149
Using Icons on Desktop . . . . .	⟨Desktop Icon⟩	150
Changing Character Font . . . . .	⟨Font⟩	152
Changing Character Size . . . . .	⟨Character Size⟩	153
Setting Clock Display . . . . .	⟨Clock Display⟩	154

# Changing Ring Tone of FOMA Phone

Setting at purchase

 Phone: Pattern 1 PushTalk: Pattern 1 Videophone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2  
 Chat mail: Pattern 2 MessageR: Pattern 3 MessageF: Pattern 3

**You can set ring tones by incoming type.**

**If you select an i-motion movie, the i-motion movie and sound are played back for incoming calls/messages. (Chaku-motion)**

- The ring tone is the PCM sound source, chord of 115 tones, and ADPCM compliant.
- See “Add to Phonebook” for setting a ring tone by Phonebook entry, and see “Group Setting” for setting it by group.

## ■ Ring Tone List (pre-installed)

Display	Title	The name of Lyricist/Composer
Pattern 1	—	—
Pattern 2	—	—
Pattern 3	—	—
Pattern 4	—	—
Pattern 5	—	—
BAD DAY※1	BAD DAY	Composer: POWTER DANIEL ROBERT
JUPITER※1	JUPITER	Composer: HOLST GUSTAV
APPRENTI SORCIER※1	APPRENTI SORCIER	Composer: DUKAS PAUL ABRAHAM
ALSO SPRACH※1	ALSO SPRACH ZARATHUSTRA OP 30	Composer: STRAUSS RICHARD
RHAPSODY IN BLUE※1	RHAPSODY IN BLUE	Composer: GERSHWIN GEORGE
THE ENTERTAINER	THE ENTERTAINER	Composer: JOPLIN SCOTT
OBOROZUKIYO	OBOROZUKIYO	Composer: OKANO TEIICHI
MATTINO IL※1	MATTINO IL	Composer: GRIEG EDVARD HAGERUP
3D tone1※1	—	—
3D tone2※1	—	—
3D tone3※1	—	—
3D tone4※1	—	—
SMART BEEP	—	—
waterdrop	—	—
Mail 1	—	—
Mail 2	—	—
LOVE PSYCHEDELICO※2※3	—	—

※1 3D sound supported. See page 130 for 3D sound.

※2 i-motion movie

※3 © Victor Entertainment, Inc. © JVC Entertainment Company, LTD.

(Note) Uppercases of Roman alphabet are used for titles, lyricists, and composers.

The name of lyricists and composers are described conforming to the JASRAC web page.

Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.



License No. T-0730070

# 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Select ring tone ▶ Select an item.

**Phone** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for voice calls.

**PushTalk** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for PushTalk calls.



**Videophone** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for videophone calls.

**Mail** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

**Chat mail** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for chat mail messages.

**MessageR** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for Messages R.


**MessageF** . . . . . Sets a ring tone for Messages F.

● Select an item and press  (  ) to check the contents actually played back or displayed.

# 2 Select ring tone ▶ Select a type of ring tone.

**Melody** . . . . . Sets a melody as a ring tone.

**MUSIC** . . . . . Sets a whole Chaku-uta Full® music file as a ring tone.

 **motion** . . . . . Sets an i-motion movie as a ring tone. (Chaku-motion/Chaku-uta®)



**Voice announce** . . . . . Sets “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2”, as a ring tone.

After selecting “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2”, the setting is completed.

**OFF** . . . . . Sets a ring tone off. The setting is completed.

# 3 Select a folder ▶ Select a ring tone.

## Information

- You can set the Call Receiving display by selecting “Phone” or “Videophone”, and then by selecting “Select calling disp.”. Go to step 2 on page 139.
- You can set the Mail Receiving display by selecting “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF”, and then by selecting “Select receiving disp.”. Go to step 2 of “Set Stand-by Display” on page 137.
- The priority order of ring tones is as follows: “Read aloud settings” → “Setting for Phonebook entry” → “Group setting” → “Select ring tone”. When a call comes in to the additional number, the ring tone specified by “Set as ring tone” of “Multi number” sounds.  
If a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1, the priority order of the ring tones is as follows: “Read aloud settings” → “Setting for Phonebook entry” → “Group setting” → “Ringtone set. for No. B” (see page 436).
- The ring tone or images set at purchase might be played back or displayed for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and “Display setting”.
- You can set an i-motion movie as a ring tone only if its property for “Ring tone” is “Available”. See “ motion Info” on page 335 to check whether “Ring tone” is “Available” or “Unavailable”.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a mail ring tone, you can press  or others to stop the ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back taking priority over “Display setting”. However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie for the ring tone, the image set by “Display setting” is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for “Select calling disp.”, the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over this function for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for “Select calling disp.”, the ring tone selected for this function is played back for incoming calls.
- You cannot set an i-motion movie which contains video as a PushTalk ring tone.
- When different types of mail — i-mode mail, SMS messages, chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of ring tone as follows: “Chat mail” → “i-mode mail/SMS” → “MessageR” → “MessageF”. If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the ring tone corresponding to the mail you have received last works.
- For the melody downloaded from a site or attached to mail, or the melody prohibited to attach to mail or output from the FOMA phone, a playing part may be specified in advance. When the play-part-specified melody is set for the ring tone, only the specified part is played back.

# Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody

Setting at purchase | i-motion stereo: OFF Stereo&3DSound: ON

You can set whether to add stereophonic sound effects to the playback tone of melodies and i-motion movies, ring tones, and effect tones.

## 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Sound effect ▶ Select an item.

**i-motion stereo** . . . .Plays back natural and stereophonic sound. Effective for the playback sounds of i-motion movies.

**Stereo&3DSound** . . .Plays back 3D sound in 3 dimensional sound from the stereo-speakers. Effective for the i-oppli effect tones or ring tones.

## 2 ON or OFF

### ■ 3D Sound



3D Sound is a function that creates the stereophonic sound and the sound moving through the space, using the stereo-speakers (or stereo-earphone set). 3D Sound compatible i-oppli games, ring tones, and i-motion movies enable you to enjoy live-like feeling of sounds.

To enjoy the powerful 3D Sound and to get the best performance, keep the FOMA phone about 40 cm away from you, holding it in front of you.

Note that the sound effects may be weakened if you hold the FOMA phone to the left or right from the front or if it is too close to or too far from you even in front of you.

### Information

- Stereognostic sense might differ depending on the person. If you feel strange, switch "i-motion stereo" and "Stereo&3DSound" to "OFF".

# Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration

Setting at purchase | OFF

You can set the vibrator to notify you of incoming calls and mail.

## 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Vibrator ▶ Select an incoming type ▶ Select a vibration pattern.

**Pattern 1** . . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 0.5 second) and off (about 0.5 second).

**Pattern 2** . . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 1 second) and off (about 1 second).

**Pattern 3** . . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 3 seconds) and off (about 1 second).

**Melody linkage** . . . Vibrates in time with the vibration pattern stored in the melody.

**OFF** . . . . . Does not vibrate.

- While you are selecting a pattern, the FOMA phone vibrates by the selected pattern for confirmation. However, it does not vibrate if you select "Melody linkage".

- The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while the vibrator is set:

: Vibrates for incoming voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls.

: Vibrates for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F.

: Vibrates for incoming voice calls, PushTalk calls or videophone calls, and vibrates for incoming mail, chat mail or Messages R/F.

**Information**

- The priority order of vibrators is as follows: “Setting for Phonebook entry” → “Group setting” → “Vibrator”.
- The vibrator vibrates at a regular strength, regardless of the ring volume level.
- Even when “Melody linkage” is set, the FOMA phone vibrates with “Pattern 2” if an i-motion movie or melody with no vibration pattern is set for the ring tone.
- Be careful not to leave the FOMA phone on a desk or similar places with the vibrator activated; when a call comes in, the FOMA phone might move and fall by vibration.


<Voice Announce>









## Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone

You can set the sound you recorded with the FOMA phone for a ring tone, On hold tone/Holding tone, alarm for “Alarm”, “Schedule” and “ToDo”, and an answer message for Record Message.

You can record up to two items for about 15 seconds for each.

- 1  LifeKit ▶ Rec.msg/voice memo ▶ Voice announce  
▶ Voice announce 1 or Voice announce 2 ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Record	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•To suspend recording midway, press  (Stop), , or . The contents recorded to that point are saved.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•The tone beeps about 5 seconds before the recording time (for about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the tone beeps twice, and the former display returns.</li> <li>•When a call comes in, when an alarm for “Alarm”, “Schedule”, or “ToDo” sounds, or when you switch displays using Multitask during recording, the recording is suspended. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)</li> </ul>
Play	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•To suspend playback midway, press  (Stop), , or .</li> </ul>	—
Erase	▶ YES	—

**Information**



- You can set the recorded sound as a ring tone for Number B of 2in1. (See page 436)

# Setting Keypad Sound

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

1  ► Settings ► Other settings ► Keypad sound ► ON or OFF

**Information**

- The sound volume for keypad sound cannot be changed.
- If you set this function to "OFF", the battery level tone (see page 44) and respective warning tones do not sound.
- The keypad does not make a sound when you press , during ringing, or during playback of a moving image or i-motion movie.
- When you press  with your FOMA phone closed, the FOMA phone works according to "Info notice setting" on page 149.

# Setting Charging-start/end Tones

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

The confirmation tone sounds twice when charging starts/ends.

1  ► Settings ► Other settings ► Charge sound ► ON or OFF

**Information**

- The sound volume for charge sound cannot be changed.
- The charging confirmation tone does not sound when a display other than the Stand-by display is shown or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).

# Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected

Setting at purchase	High tone
---------------------	-----------

When a call is liable to be disconnected midway because of bad radio wave conditions, an alarm sounds to inform you right before possible disconnection.

1  ► Settings ► Talk ► Quality alarm ► Select an alarm.

- No tone** . . . . . Does not sound.
- High tone** . . . . High alarm sounds.
- Low tone** . . . . Low alarm sounds.


**Information**

- You might be disconnected without hearing an alarm if radio wave conditions deteriorate suddenly.
- An alarm for "Quality alarm" sounds only from the earpiece during a videophone call.

# Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F

Setting at purchase	Mail/Msg. ring time: ON Ring time: 5 seconds
---------------------	--

You can set the duration of the ring tone which sounds for incoming i-mode mail, SMS messages, Chat mail and Messages R/F.

**1**  **Settings** ▶ **Incoming call** ▶ **Mail/Msg. ring time**  
▶ **Select a type of mail or message** ▶ **ON or OFF**

**2** **Enter a ring time (seconds).**  
• Enter in two digits from “01” through “30”.

# Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only

Setting at purchase	Earphone+Speaker
---------------------	------------------

You can set where you make the ring tone and alarm sound from for when you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option).

**1**  **Settings** ▶ **External option** ▶ **Earphone**  
▶ **Earphone+Speaker or Earphone**

### Information

- Even when you select “Earphone”, the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker about 20 seconds after ringing starts. However, the tone does not sound from the speaker but sounds from the earphone only even after 20 seconds have elapsed if the tone sounds for the operations other than incoming calls, incoming mail, and alarm notification.
- Even when you select “Earphone”, the tone sounds from the speaker when you do not connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch or when you start shooting still or moving images.
- In the following cases, the tone sounds from the earphone when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected, and from the speakers when it is not connected, regardless of this setting.
  - During playback of a melody
  - During playback of a music file
  - During playback of an i-motion movie
  - While i-øpli is running
- Do not wind the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch around the FOMA phone.
- The FOMA phone may pick up noise if you take the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch close to the FOMA phone during a call.

# Silencing Tones

Setting at purchase	Released
---------------------	----------

When you do not want the FOMA phone to make any sound, you can just press one key to switch off the ring tone, keypad sound and any other sound from the speaker.

You can use “Manner mode set” to select Manner Mode functions from three types; “Manner mode”, “Super silent”, or “Original”.

While “Manner mode” or “Super silent” is activated, or while “Mic sensitiv.” is set to “Up” in “Original”, you can talk softly on the phone but your voice can still be heard clearly at the other end.

## 1 During standby/During a call ▶ (for at least one second)


Manner mode selected in “Manner mode set” is set.


- When FOMA phone is closed, press and hold  for at least one second to activate Manner Mode.




### Information

- The recording start tone sounds even in Manner Mode when you shoot still images or moving images.
- In Manner Mode, if you try to play back a melody, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select “YES” to play back the melody at the volume set for “Phone” or “Ring volume”. If the setting is “Silent” or “Step”, the volume is Level 2.
- In Manner Mode, if you try to play back an i-motion movie with sound or play back a music file by MUSIC Player, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select “YES” to play it back at the volume set by each player. When you change the volume level, it is played back at the changed volume for the next time.
- When a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the sound comes out of the earphone. The confirmation display asking whether to play back sound or music files during Manner Mode does not appear. Further, the playback tone does not sound from the speakers even if you unplug the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch during playing back sound or music files by each player.


### ■ Display during Manner Mode

During Manner Mode, “” is displayed. The settings you selected for “Manner mode set” are also displayed.

: Indicates that “Vibrator” will function to announce events.



 /  / : Indicate that “Ring volume” has been set to “Silent”.

### ■ To release Manner Mode

Press and hold  for at least one second. During a call or calling, two beeps sound and the message that is released appears.



- When FOMA phone is closed, press and hold  for at least one second to release Manner Mode.

### ■ To activate Manner Mode during ringing

Press  or .

Manner Mode is activated and Record Message is simultaneously activated so that the caller can leave a voice/video message.

Even when “Record message setting” has not been set to “ON”, the Record Message function works.

To answer the call, press  (.

- When five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded, or when a PushTalk call comes in, Record Message does not work. Manner Mode specified by “Manner mode set” will work.
- When the call finishes, Manner Mode is still activated.

### ■ When Manner Mode is activated during a call or calling

If you activate Manner Mode during a call or calling, the message to that effect appears.



# Selecting Manner Mode Type

Setting at purchase	Manner mode
---------------------	-------------

You can select one of three types of operations for Manner Mode.

## ■ Operations during Manner Mode

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record message	Set value of Record message		ON or OFF
Vibrator**1	ON		ON or OFF
Phone volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step①
Mail volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step②
Alarm volume**2	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step
VM tone	ON	OFF	ON or OFF③
Keypad sound	OFF		ON or OFF④
Microphone sensitivity	Up		Normal or Up
Low voltage alarm tone (Low battery alarm)	OFF		ON or OFF When "LVA tone" is set to "ON", it works with the same set value as ①**3
Confirmation tone for selecting ring tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①・②
Answer hold tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①**4
Call hold tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①**5
ToruCa obtained tone and ToruCa failed-to-obtain tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①
Confirmation tone for recording voice announce	ON	OFF	Works with the same set value as ③
Battery level tone	Silent		Silent
Voice recognition start tone	Silent		Silent
Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①**6
Warning tones	Silent		Works with the same set value as ④
Schedule alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①
Start tones for shooting still and moving images	Level 4		Level 4
Confirmation tone for selecting shutter sound	OFF		Works with the same set value as ③
Switching to Hands-free by "Hands-free w/ V. phone"	OFF		OFF
Read aloud volume	Silent		Works with the same set value as "Read aloud volume" on page 388

\*\*1 Vibrator works instead of (or with) the following tones:

Ring tone and alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"

The vibration pattern will be the same as the setting described on page 130. However, if the setting described on page 130 is "OFF", "Pattern 2" will be activated.

Confirmation tone for checking missed calls and new mail

· Vibrates for about 1 second when you have missed calls or new mail messages.

· Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls and new mail messages.

\*\*2 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 391 is set to "Prefer alarm", the alarm tone sounds at the volume set for Alarm.

\*\*3 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is "Silent".

\*\*4 The tone sounds at Level 2 when ① is "Step".

\*\*5 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is not "Silent".

\*\*6 The tone sounds at Level 6 when ① is not "Silent".


## Manner Mode/Super Silent

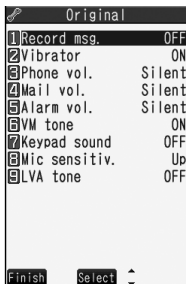
You can set standard “Manner mode” to inform you of incoming calls or mail by the vibrator, or “Super silent” to erase sounds including confirmation tones from the earpiece.




- 1  ► Settings ► Incoming call ► Manner mode set  
► Manner mode or Super silent

## Original

You can use “Original” to customize operations in Manner Mode.

- 1  ► Settings ► Incoming call ► Manner mode set ► Original  
► Do the following operations.



Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Record msg.</b> Setting at purchase OFF	► ON or OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even if you select “ON”, the ring time is fixed to about 13 seconds and cannot be changed when “Record message setting” on page 80 is set to “OFF”.</li> <li>• See page 80 for Record Message Setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Vibrator</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	You can set the FOMA phone to vibrate for incoming calls and mail. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 130 for Vibrator.</li> </ul>
<b>Phone vol.</b> Setting at purchase Silent	► Use  to adjust the volume.	You can adjust the ring volume for incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 75 for Ring Volume.</li> </ul>
<b>Mail vol.</b> Setting at purchase Silent	► Use  to adjust the volume.	You can adjust the ring volume for i-mode mail, SMS messages, and Messages R/F. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 75 for Ring Volume.</li> </ul>
<b>Alarm vol.</b> Setting at purchase Silent	► Use  to adjust the volume.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 390 for Alarm.</li> </ul>
<b>VM tone</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	You can set the FOMA phone to sound a confirmation tone when a record message is played back, a voice memo is recorded or played back, and a movie memo is recorded.
<b>Keypad sound</b> Setting at purchase OFF	► ON or OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 132 for Keypad Sound.</li> </ul>

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Mic sensitiv.</b> Setting at purchase Up	▶ Normal or Up	—
<b>LVA tone</b> Setting at purchase OFF	▶ ON or OFF	• See page 45 for LVA Tone (low battery alarm).

**2** Press  (Finish).

<Display Setting>   

## Changing Displays

### Set Stand-by Display

Setting at purchase	"bridge" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline" "gold" for body color "Champagne × Circular" "pink" for body color "Rose × Facet" "zebra" for body color "Platinum × Frost"
---------------------	---

You can set an image for the Stand-by display. You can set also i-motion movies shot by the FOMA phone or downloaded from sites for the Stand-by display.

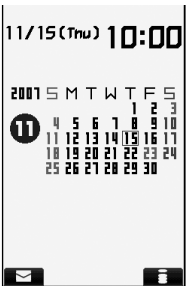
**1**  ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Stand-by display  
 ▶ Select a type of image.

- If you select "Calendar", select "Background" or "No background". If you select "No background", the setting is completed.
- If you select "i-appli display", select an i-appli program. The setting is completed.  
 However, when "Ticker ON/OFF" of "i-Channel ticker" is set to "ON", you cannot set the i-appli Stand-by display.



**2** Select a folder ▶ Select an image.


- When the image is larger than the Stand-by display, the overall image is displayed with the dimensions shrunk and proportional ratio retained. The image smaller than the Stand-by display is displayed in equivalent dimensions.
- See page 467 for the pre-installed Stand-by displays.



**■ When Calendar is set**




The calendar for the current month appears on the Stand-by display. You can check the calendar for the previous or next month or set schedule events (see page 393) with ease.


- From the Stand-by display, press  and then  to display the calendar for the previous or next month.

When a desktop icon is pasted on the Stand-by display, pressing  highlights the desktop icon previously used or the calendar.


Highlight the calendar, press  (Select) and use  to display the calendar for the previous or next month.

Press  (Select) again to set "Schedule" for the displayed month.


### ■When a Funny transform II image, original animation, or animation GIF is set



An animation is played back on the display when you open the FOMA phone or when you press  from the Stand-by display. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

### ■When a Flash movie is set

It is played back when you open the FOMA phone or when you press  from the Stand-by display. The image stopped such as by your first operation is displayed as the Stand-by display.

### ■When an i-motion movie is set

It is played back when you open the FOMA phone or when you press  from the Stand-by display. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

● Press  or  during playback to adjust the volume.

Press , , , , , , , , ,  or  to end the playback.

● If you play back an i-motion movie during Manner Mode, the sound is not played back.

### Information

- The Web To, Mail To, and Phone To/AV Phone To functions are not available from an i-motion movie set for the Stand-by display.
- Some i-motion movies might not be correctly displayed.
- You cannot set a still image in excess of VGA (480 x 640) size or 100 Kbytes for the Stand-by display.
- You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Stand-by display.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

## Set the Wake-up Display

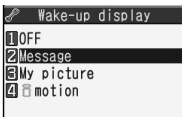
Setting at purchase

Wake up

You can set an image or message to be displayed for when the power is turned on.

1

 ► Settings ► Display ► Display setting ► Wake-up display  
► Select a type of image.



- If you select "Message", enter a message. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters.
- If you select "My picture" or "i motion", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 137.
- See page 467 for the pre-installed Wake-up displays.

### Information

- You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Wake-up display.
- The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.
- Even if you set the pre-installed Funny Transform II image or the image edited by "Funny transform II" or "Edit picture", animation is not displayed, but the first frame is displayed.

## Set Displays for Dialing/Calling and Others



Setting at purchase

"Console" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline"  
"Champagne" for body color "Champagne × Circular"  
"Rose" for body color "Rose × Facet"  
"Console" for body color "Platinum × Frost"

You can set an image for the Dialing/Call Receiving display, Mail Sending/Mail Receiving display, and Checking display.

1

 ► Settings ► Display ► Display setting ► Select a type of display.

- When "Calling" or "VP Calling" is selected, select "Select calling disp."
- When "Mail receiving" is selected, select "Select receiving disp." and go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 137.
- If you select "Dialing", "VP Dialing", "Mail sending", or "Check new message", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 137.
- Select "Calling", "VP Calling" or "Mail receiving" and press  (  ) to check the contents actually displayed or played back.

## 2 Select a type of image.

Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 137.

### Information

- When you select "Calling", "VP Calling", or "Mail receiving", select "Select ring tone" to set the ring tone. Go to step 2 on page 129.
- The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Disp. PH-book image" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.  
The same order applies if a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1. However, when you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion) by "Ringtone set. for No. B", it is played back as Chaku-motion, taking priority over this function.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back for incoming calls, taking priority over this function. However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie, the image set by this function is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" is played back.
- The images or ring tone set at purchase might be displayed or played back for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Select ring tone".
- You cannot set some images for "Display setting".
- The sound of Flash movies is not played back.
- Even if you set the image edited by "Funny transform II" of "Edit picture", the animation is not displayed, but the first frame is displayed.

## Set Power Saver Mode

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

You can set Power Saver Mode to reduce the battery consumption by clearing the display.

## 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting ▶ Power saver mode ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- If you set to "ON", the display goes off after a certain period of time elapses with no operation on the Stand-by display. When you set "Illumination in talk" of "Illumination setting" to "OFF", the display during a voice call also goes off.
- The setting here applies to "Power saver mode" of "Backlight" as well. Also, use "Light time (minutes)" of "Backlight" to specify a standby time until Power Saver Mode starts. (See page 142)
- The FOMA phone does not switch to Power Saver Mode during data communication or charging, or while i-apply is set for the Stand-by display.
- The display turns on when you operate the FOMA phone or receive a call. However, it does not turn on when you receive a call in Public Mode (Drive Mode).

## <Display Phonebook Image>

## Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

If the caller ID notified by the caller matches the phone number stored in the Phonebook, the still image stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

## 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Disp. PH-book image ▶ ON or OFF

[Next Page](#)

## Information

- The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Picture for Phonebook entry" → "Picture for group" → "Image for Phonebook entry" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.
- For Phonebook entries stored as secret data, images are not displayed during ringing even in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

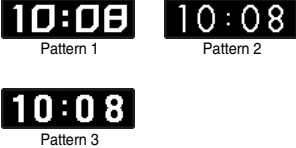
<Private Window>



# Setting Displays for Private Window

Setting at purchase ON

- 1** ► **Settings** ► **Display** ► **Private window** ► **ON or OFF**  
 ► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Brightness</b> Setting at purchase Level 3	► Select a brightness level.	You can adjust the brightness to Level 1 (dark) through Level 3 (bright).
<b>Orientation</b> Setting at purchase Pattern 1	► Pattern 1 or Pattern 2	You can set the direction of the clock to be displayed.
<b>Clock</b> Setting at purchase "Pattern 1" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline" "Pattern 2" for body color "Champagne × Circular" "Pattern 2" for body color "Rose × Facet" "Pattern 3" for body color "Platinum × Frost"	► Pattern 1, Pattern 2 or Pattern 3 	You can set the display pattern of the clock.
<b>Called</b> Setting at purchase ON (Chaku-moji: OFF)	► ON or OFF ► ON or OFF	You can display the phone number (name when stored in the Phonebook) of the caller during ringing. In addition, you can set whether to display a Chaku-moji message.
<b>Mail</b> Setting at purchase OFF	► ON or OFF	You can display the received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of mail. (See page 29) • The received date/time, sender's address (name), and subject of received mail in the box or folders with security set are not displayed.
<b>i-Channel ticker</b> Setting at purchase OFF	► ON or OFF	• You can set for each mode of 2in1. When 2in1 is deactivated, it becomes common to the setting in A Mode.
<b>Disp. connection</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	You can set whether to display animations/characters during communication.

## <Automatic Display>

# Displaying a Phone Number by Opening FOMA Phone

You can display the phone number in the specified Phonebook entry by opening the FOMA phone which was closed during displaying the Stand-by display.

You can make a voice call to that phone number by just pressing . Also, you can make a videophone call by pressing and make a PushTalk call by pressing .

## Set Automatic Display



Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Automatic display ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- Automatic Display is not available during a call, Personal Data Lock, Lock All, Omakase Lock, ANSHIN-KEY Lock, or in Secret Data Only.
- Press , , or to return to the Stand-by display from the Automatic display.

## Specify/Change Phone Number to be Displayed Automatically

1 Detailed Phonebook display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Automatic display

When you specify a phone number for Automatic Display, "Automatic display" is indicated by "★" in the Function menu of the Phonebook.

- To release the phone number specified for Automatic Display, perform the same operation.

### Information

- You can specify just a single phone number for Automatic Display. You cannot specify Phonebook entries stored as secret data, and on the UIM.
- When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the specified phone number is displayed.
- When you specify a Phonebook entry set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, Automatic Display is not available in B Mode. When you specify a Phonebook entry set to B, Automatic Display is not available in A Mode.

## <Received Mail/Call at Open>

# Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Phone

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

When a call is missed or a new mail message comes in, the detailed Missed Call display/Inbox List is displayed when you open the FOMA phone.

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Recv. mail/call at open ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- When a call comes in EASY Mode, the detailed Received Call display appears.
- When an incoming call is missed after a mail message is newly received, the detailed Missed Call display is preferentially displayed.

# Setting Lights for Display and Keypad

## 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Backlight ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation		
<b>Lighting</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ON+Saver (Lighting: ON Power saver mode: ON Light time: 5 minutes)</td> </tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	ON+Saver (Lighting: ON Power saver mode: ON Light time: 5 minutes)	<p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a light time (minutes).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter from "02" through "20" in two digits.</li> </ul>	<p>You can set whether to light the backlight in ordinary time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you set to "OFF", "💡" appears on the Stand-by display.</li> </ul> <p>Also, you can set whether to activate Power Saver Mode for the main display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The setting here applies to "Power saver mode" of "Display setting" as well. (See page 139)</li> <li>When an image other than still image is set for the Stand-by display, the Stand-by display shifts to Power Saver Mode after the image is played back and a standby time elapses.</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase				
ON+Saver (Lighting: ON Power saver mode: ON Light time: 5 minutes)				
<b>Charging</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Standard</td> </tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Standard	<p>▶ <b>Standard or Constant light</b></p> <p><b>Standard</b> . . . . . Lights during charging in the same setting as it lights in ordinary time.</p> <p><b>Constant light</b> . . . Always lights during battery charge.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the power is supplied from external power sources such as an AC adapter (option), the setting for charging applies, regardless of the on/off setting of the backlight for ordinary time.</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase				
Standard				
<b>Area</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LCD+Keys</td> </tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	LCD+Keys	<p>▶ <b>LCD+Keys or LCD</b></p>	<p>You can set the range the backlight lights in.</p>
Setting at purchase				
LCD+Keys				
<b>Brightness</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Level 2</td> </tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Level 2	<p>▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b></p>	<p>You can adjust the brightness to Level 1 (dark) through Level 3 (bright).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The setting here is valid only for the backlight for the main display.</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase				
Level 2				
<b>Light sensor</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Auto ON</td> </tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Auto ON	<p>▶ <b>Auto ON or Auto OFF</b></p> <p><b>Auto ON</b> . . . . Automatically adjusts the backlight in accordance with the ambient brightness.</p> <p><b>Auto OFF</b> . . . Lights in the brightness level set by "Brightness".</p>	<p>You can set whether to adjust the backlight automatically for the area set by "Area" in accordance with the ambient brightness.</p>
Setting at purchase				
Auto ON				

**■ To switch the backlight on/off by pressing one key**

"ON/OFF" for "Lighting" of "Backlight" switches each time you press and hold for at least one second.

**Information**

- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight stays lit while a call is coming in and the area specified by "Area" lights for about 15 seconds when you turn on the power, touch the keys, or open the FOMA phone. The backlight stays lit while the camera is activated or a moving image/i-motion movie is played back. When "OFF" is set, it does not light. However, it stays lit during recording of a moving image regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- See page 86 for Backlight during a videophone call.
- When you display the text of i-mode mail or Messages R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the text.




## Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

You can set whether to automatically adjust the brightness of the display backlight during a videophone call or playing back i-motion movies, and to compensate the image quality according to that brightness.

### 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ LCD AI ▶ ON or OFF

- During a videophone call, press  (FUNC) and select "LCD AI". In that case, the setting is effective only for that call.

#### Information

- If you set to "ON", the brightness is adjusted within the level specified for "Brightness" of "Backlight". The brightness is adjusted also while you are selecting a menu item.

## Setting Color Combination for Display

Setting at purchase	"Asphalt" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline" "Champagne" for body color "Champagne × Circular" "Rose" for body color "Rose × Facet" "Platinum" for body color "Platinum × Frost"
---------------------	--

You can set the display color pattern of characters and backgrounds, and so on.

### 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Color pattern ▶ Select a color pattern.

- You can select the display from among, "Platinum", "Casual", "Champagne", "Rose", and "Asphalt".
- While a coloring pattern is selected, the selected color appears on the display for confirmation.

#### Information

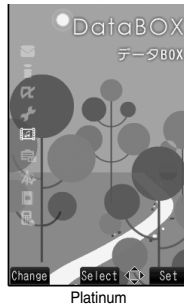
- You cannot change the color for icons and images displayed in multiple colors, the DoCoMo pictographs, and the Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode.

# Setting Display of Main Menu

Setting at purchase	"Asphalt" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline" "Rose" for body color "Rose × Facet"	"Champagne" for body color "Champagne × Circular" "Platinum" for body color "Platinum × Frost"
---------------------	---	---

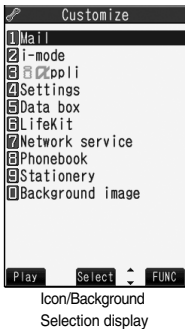
You can change the icons on the Main menu and the background images.

## 1 (Set) Select a pattern.



- When "Champagne" is set, press from the Main menu to display the main menu icons, and press to select the sub-menu items or functions on the menu of each icon. When "Platinum" is set, the animation changes according to the date and time. When "Normal" or "Customize" is set, the guidance of each menu appears.

## 2 When you select "Customize" in step 1, select a menu icon or background image to be changed ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image.



Repeat step 2 and set menu icons and a background image.

- While selecting a menu icon or background image, press (Play) to confirm the currently set image.

While confirming the demo of "Background image", press (Frame) to select a frame color indicating the group. Press (Change) to switch between 16 Color and 256 Color.

### Information

- The image you can customize is a JPEG or GIF image whose size is VGA (480 x 640) or smaller and up to 100 Kbytes. Perform "Change size" or "Trim away" for other images.
- When a customized image is deleted, "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder returns.
- When Personal Data Lock is activated while "Customize" is set, the image of "Asphalt" is displayed.
- When you set "Customize", the Main menu icons do not switch even if you switch "Select language".

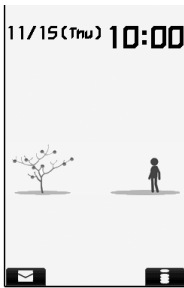
## Function Menu of the Icon/Background Selection Display

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
Reset	▶ YES	You can reset to “スタンダード (Standard)” in the “Pre-installed” folder.
All reset	▶ YES	You can reset all the menu icons and background to “スタンダード (Standard)” in the “Pre-installed” folder.

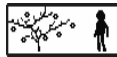
### <Feel Settings>

## Using Feel Function

The Feel function reproduces the atmosphere of “communications” or “mail” by actions of 45 types of animated characters.



After ending a call



After receiving a mail message

- To end the playback, press or .
- When the FOMA phone is closed, press or / to end the playback.

### Feel \* Talk

Once you activate Feel \* Talk, a Feel \* Talk image is played back when a call ends. You can play it back also from the Dialed Call List, Received Call List, Redial List, or each detailed display.

You can make the Call/Charging indicator light/flicker in synchronization with Feel \* Talk when you close your FOMA phone after ending a call.

- You cannot use Feel \* Talk for videophone calls and PushTalk communications.

1 ▶ Settings ▶ Feel settings ▶ Feel \* Talk ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Display after talk</b> Setting at purchase ON	▶ ON or OFF	A Feel * Talk image is played back on the Stand-by display when a call ends. ● When this function is set to “OFF”, a Feel * Talk icon does not appear on each record display even while “Disp. /play in history” is set to “ON”.
<b>Disp. /play in history</b> Setting at purchase ON	▶ ON or OFF	A Feel * Talk icon appears on each record display.
<b>Illumination</b> Setting at purchase ON	▶ ON or OFF	At the first time of closing the FOMA phone after a call ends, the Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers in synchronization with Feel * Talk. ● The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers regardless of the setting of “Illum. when folded”.








#### Information


- A Feel \* Talk image is played back even if you end a call after switching between a videophone call and voice call.



# Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others

1  Settings ► Illumination setting ► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Illumination</b>	See page 148.	You can set the flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator for during ringing.
<b>Illumination in talk</b> Setting at purchase OFF	► Use  to select a color. ● The Call/Charging indicator flickers for confirmation while you are selecting.	You can set the flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator for during a call. ● It flickers in the same color as it flickers during a call, while Record Message is working, during on hold, or during holding.
<b>Missed call illum.</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	 (HIKARI Icon) flickers for missed calls at about 15-second interval for about 30 minutes.
<b>Unread mail illum.</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	 (HIKARI Icon) flickers for unread mail messages at about 15-second interval for about 30 minutes.
<b>Illum. when folded</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	The Call/Charging indicator lights when the FOMA phone is closed.
<b>MUSIC illumination</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	The Call/Charging indicator flickers for about 15 seconds when you start playback by MUSIC Player.
<b>Bluetooth illumination</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	 (HIKARI Icon) flickers during connecting to Bluetooth devices. ● It flickers at about 15-second interval for about 5 minutes when the connection is completed.
<b>IC card illumination</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	 (HIKARI Icon) lights/flickers when you place the FOMA phone over an IC card scanning device (reader/writer) or during IC communication. ● It does not light/flicker during IC Card Lock.
<b>PushTalk illumination</b> Setting at purchase ON	► ON or OFF	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you try to get the PushTalk talker's right, or when a member's state changes to "Connected".
<b>Side key illumination</b> Setting at purchase view	► Use  to select a color. ● The Call/Charging indicator lights for confirmation while you are selecting.	You can set the lighting color of the Call/Charging indicator for when you press  with the FOMA phone closed. ● It lights for about 15 seconds. ● The illumination at purchase differs depending on the body color.

Item	Operation	Explanation
Check settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  to scroll the display for confirmation.</li> </ul>	You can check the setting contents for "Illumination", "Illumination in talk", and "Side key illumination".




## Illumination



You can set the flickering color of the Call/Charging indicator according to the incoming type.


# 1

 ► Settings ► Illumination setting ► Illumination  
► Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation								
<b>Set color</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr><td>Setting at purchase</td></tr> <tr><td>Phone: call</td></tr> <tr><td>PushTalk: poc</td></tr> <tr><td>Videophone: call</td></tr> <tr><td>Mail: mail</td></tr> <tr><td>Chat mail: mail</td></tr> <tr><td>MessageR: mail</td></tr> <tr><td>MessageF: mail</td></tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Phone: call	PushTalk: poc	Videophone: call	Mail: mail	Chat mail: mail	MessageR: mail	MessageF: mail	<p>► <b>Select an incoming type</b></p> <p>► Use  to select a color.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To make the indicator light in colors "Color 1" to "Color 12" in order, select "Gradation".</li> <li>The Call/Charging indicator lights for confirmation while you are selecting.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The priority order of illumination is; "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Set color".</li> <li>The illumination at purchase differs depending on the body color.</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase										
Phone: call										
PushTalk: poc										
Videophone: call										
Mail: mail										
Chat mail: mail										
MessageR: mail										
MessageF: mail										
<b>Set pattern</b> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr><td>Setting at purchase</td></tr> <tr><td>Standard</td></tr> </table>	Setting at purchase	Standard	<p>► <b>Select a pattern.</b></p> <p><b>Standard</b> . . . . . Flickers in the same pattern repeatedly.</p> <p><b>Melody linkage</b> . . . Flickers with the ring tone.</p>	<p>You can set the flickering pattern of the Illumination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the Call/Charging indicator flickers by "Standard" in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When "Set color" is set to other than "Color 1" through "Color 12" and "Gradation"</li> <li>When an i-motion movie or melody with no flickering pattern is set for the ring tone</li> </ul> </li> </ul>						
Setting at purchase										
Standard										
<b>Color setting (Edit color name)</b>	<p>► <b>Edit color name</b> ► <b>Select a color</b></p> <p>► <b>Enter a name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> </ul>								
<b>Color setting (Adjust color tone)</b>	<p>► <b>Adjust color tone</b> ► <b>Select a color</b></p> <p>► <b>Adjust the color tone.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use  to select a color and use  to change the color tone.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1" through "Color 12" only.</li> </ul>								

# Checking Missed Calls and New Mail by Tone and HIKARI Icons

Setting at purchase ON

When the FOMA phone is closed, you can press  to check for missed calls, new mail, new chat mail, record messages, and voice mail messages. To use this function, you need to set “Side keys guard” to “OFF” in advance.

## 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Info notice setting ▶ Select an item.

**ON**\* . . . Notifies you whether there are missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail by the electronic sound and flickering of the HIKARI Icons.

**OFF** . . . Turns off the information notice.

※When “Select language” is set to “日本語 (Japanese)”, you can select “電子音 (electronic sound)” or “ボイス (voice)”. With “ボイス (voice)”, Japanese electronic voice and flickering of the HIKARI Icons notify you of new chat mail, new mail, missed calls, record messages and voice mail messages in this order.


### ■ If you press while the FOMA phone is closed

#### When you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail

(When the “Missed call” icon, “New mail” icon, or “Chat mail” icon is displayed on the Stand-by display.)

If “Info notice setting” is set to “ON”, a double-beep tone sounds and the HIKARI Icons light for about three seconds.

If “Info notice setting” is set to “ボイス (voice)” in Japanese display, a beep tone sounds and a voice message announces that you have new mail, a missed call, and so on, and the HIKARI Icons light for about three seconds.

● If you press  again while the voice is being played back, you can stop it.

#### When you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail

If “Info notice setting” is set to “ON”, or “ボイス (voice)” in Japanese display, a triple-beep tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers for about five seconds.

Even when “Info notice setting” is set to “ボイス (voice)” in Japanese display, the notice is not made by voice.

### Information

- You cannot check for the mail messages held at the i-mode Center by this function.
- The confirmation function might not work depending on the function being activated.
- The sound volume for electronic sound cannot be changed.
- “ボイス (voice)” sounds at the volume set for “Phone” of “Ring volume”. If “Step” is set, the sound volume is Level 2.
- The missed call, new mail, and new chat mail are informed by both the HIKARI Icons and the vibrator unless “Phone” of “Vibrator” has been set to “OFF”.
- The vibrator notifies the information as follows:
  - Vibrates for about 1 second when you have a missed call, new mail, or new chat mail message.
  - Vibrates for about 0.2 second when you have no missed calls, new mail, or new chat mail message.
- If you open the FOMA phone during notification, it stops.

















# Using Icons on Desktop

Setting at purchase | 使いかたナビ (Guide) | Bluetooth


















If you could not answer a call (missed call) or when you have new mail, icons notify you of the call or mail on the Stand-by display. (Notification icons)

Also, you can paste the phone numbers, mail addresses or other items you frequently use as icons. (Desktop icons)



## ■ Operation when a notification icon is selected



	<b>Missed call</b> Shows the Received Call List for missed calls. (See page 60)		<b>When Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center</b> Shows the display for Voice Mail. (See page 426)
	<b>Record message</b> Shows the Record Message List. (See page 82)		<b>When the Phonebook could not be updated by Data Security Service</b> Shows the update display for Data Security Service. (See page 126)
	<b>Videophone record message</b> Shows the Videophone Record Message List. (See page 82)		<b>When you did not respond to a location provision request</b> Shows Location History. (See page 306)
	<b>New i-mode mail or SMS</b> Shows the Inbox List. (See page 249)		<b>When Software Update is needed</b> Starts Software Update. (See page 505)
	<b>New chat mail</b> Starts Chat Mail. (See page 267)		<b>When Software Update was executed</b> Shows the Update Completion display or the reason for not completing after entering your Terminal Security Code. (See page 505)
	<b>When i-oppli did not start automatically</b> Shows the i-oppli Auto Start Info display. (See page 288)		<b>When pattern data was updated automatically</b> Shows the updated result. (See page 512)
	<b>When a ToruCa file is obtained from a scanning device (reader/writer)</b> Shows the ToruCa File List. (See page 295)		<b>When the battery of ANSHIN-KEY becomes short</b> Shows the ID number of ANSHIN-KEY. (See page 164)
	<b>When a security error occurs on the i-oppli Stand-by display</b> Shows the Security Error History. (See page 277)		<b>When the FOMA phone and a personal computer are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (option)</b> Shows the display for setting "USB mode setting". (See page 354)
	<b>Missed alarm</b> Shows the contents of the alarm that could not be notified. (See page 392)		

## ■ Operation when a desktop icon is selected

	<b>Phone number</b> Shows the Dialing display with the phone number entered. (See page 52 and page 95)		<b>Chara-den image**</b> Plays it back by the Chara-den player. (See page 341)
	<b>URL of site</b> Shows the site of that URL. (See page 204)		<b>Melody**</b> Plays it back by the Melody player. (See page 344)
	<b>URL for Full Browser</b> Shows the site of that URL by Full Browser. (See page 312)		<b>PDF file**</b> Shows it on the PDF viewer. (See page 363)
	<b>Sender's/Destination address of i-mode mail</b> Shows the Message Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 232)		<b>ToruCa file**</b> Shows it on the ToruCa viewer. (See page 295)
	<b>Sender's/Destination address of SMS</b> Shows the SMS Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 269)		<b>使いかたナビ (Guide)</b> Shows the 使いかたナビ (Guide) display. (See page 36)
	<b>i-oppli**</b> Starts the i-oppli program. (See page 277)		<b>Camera menu</b> Shows the Camera menu. (See page 186 and page 189)
	<b>Picture**</b> Shows it on the Picture viewer. (See page 322)		<b>Bar Code Reader function</b> Shows the Bar Code Reader Selection display. (See page 196)
	<b>i-motion movie**</b> Plays it back by the i-motion player. (See page 332)		<b>Text Reader function</b> Shows the Text Reader Selection display. (See page 199)
			<b>Ir data receiving function</b> Shows the Ir Data Receiving Selection display. (See page 359 and page 360)



	<b>Schedule function</b> Shows the Calendar display. (See page 393)
	<b>ToDo function</b> Shows the ToDo List. (See page 397)

	<b>Bluetooth function</b> Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 408, page 410, and page 412)
	<b>Private menu</b> Shows the Private menu. (See page 398)

※ When the original data is deleted or overwritten, the desktop icon is disabled.

## Paste Icons to Desktop

You can paste up to 15 desktop icons of such as phone numbers, mail addresses, etc.

### 1 The display for an item to be pasted ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add desktop icon ▶ YES

- When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be pasted.

**Information**

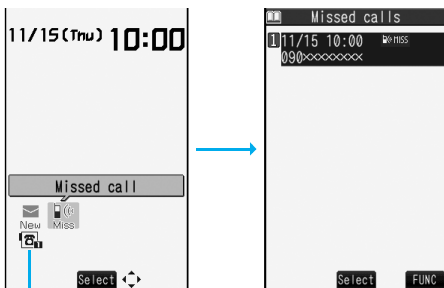
- You may not be able to paste the URL to the desktop depending on the site.
- You can store the title for URL of up to 16 full-pitch characters or 32 half-pitch characters. When the number of characters for the title exceeds that much, the characters in excess are deleted. If no title is found, the URL excluding “http://” or “https://” is displayed.
- Some files and data might not be pasted to the desktop.

## Proceed to Respective Functions from Icons on Desktop


### 1 Stand-by display ▶



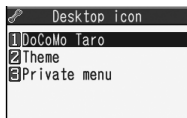
### 2 Use to highlight an icon, and press (Select).



When a missed call icon is selected

- Up to five “Desktop icons” are displayed. If there are six or more icons, “◀” and “▶” are displayed.
- A “Notification icon” is deleted when each function is executed. To delete all “Notification icons”, press and hold  for at least one second from the display in step 1.

## 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Desktop icon



Desktop Icon List

The list of desktop icons pasted to the desktop is displayed.

## 2 Select the icon whose details are to be displayed.

- When a URL is long, use to scroll the display to check it.

### Function Menu of the Desktop Icon List

- You can bring up the Function menu also by pressing (FUNC), while highlighting a desktop icon from the Stand-by display.

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Enter a title.</b> • You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters for the title displayed when you highlight the icon is up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters from the beginning of the title.	—
<b>Reset desktop</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>	The desktop icons are reset to the default.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>	—
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>	—

### <Font>

## Changing Character Font

Setting at purchase	Font 1
---------------------	--------

## 1 Settings ▶ Display ▶ Font ▶ Select a font.

**Font 1** . . . . . Switches to gothic type font.

**Font 2** . . . . . Switches to pop type (round type) font.

### Information

- Some characters such as Kanji are displayed in “Font 1” regardless of this function.
- You cannot change the font of a phone number entry or clock display.

### Change Character Font of Phone Numbers

Setting at purchase	Pattern 1
---------------------	-----------

**You can set the font of phone numbers displayed on the following display:**

Dialing/Call Receiving display      Detailed Dialed/Received Call display      Detailed Redial display  
Detailed Sent Chaku-moji Message display




- When you use 2in1, the setting here applies to the font for Number A. To specify the font for Number B, operate “Set call/receive No. (Disp. call/receive No.)” of “2in1 setting”.

## 1 Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Disp. call/receive No. ▶ Select a font.

# Changing Character Size

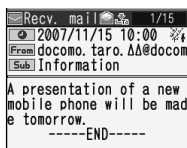
You can set the size of characters displayed in the mail text, on sites, and so on. Further, you can set the size of characters for while you are entering text.

1  ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Character size ▶ Do the following operations.

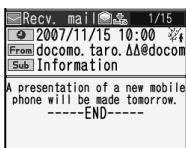
Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Mail</b> Setting at purchase Standard	▶ <b>Large, Standard, or Small</b> ● The setting here applies to “Character size” of Mail Settings as well.	You can set the character size for the text of the detailed mail display. ● While a sent or received mail message is displayed, press  (FUNC) and select “Character size”, or press  . ● You cannot change the character size of Decomail-pictographs. ● While the mail text is displayed, you can change character size also by pressing and holding  for at least one second. (See page 243 and page 271) In this case, the setting here also changes. ● When you set to “Large”, the characters on the Folder List and the Inbox/Outbox/Draft List are displayed in large size as well.
<b>i-mode</b> Setting at purchase Standard	▶ <b>Large, Standard, or Small</b> ● The setting here applies to “Character size” of i-mode Settings as well.	You can set the character size displayed on sites, in screen memos and in the text of Messages R/F.
<b>Phonebook</b> Setting at purchase Standard	▶ <b>Large or Standard</b>	You can set the character size for the Phonebook List.
<b>Dialed/recv. calls</b> Setting at purchase Standard	▶ <b>Large or Standard</b>	You can set the character size for the Redial/Dialed Call/Received Call/Sent Address/Received Address List.
<b>Character input</b> Setting at purchase Standard [Candidate auto display: ON (Standard)]	▶ <b>Large or Standard</b> ▶ <b>ON (Large), ON (Standard), ON (Small), or OFF</b> ● The setting here applies to “Candid. auto-disp.” of the Function menu while entering (editing) characters.	You can set the character size for while you are entering text. Also, you can select how to display the conversion candidate list shown at the bottom of the display. ● When you switch to EASY Mode and select “YES” on the confirmation display asking whether to enlarge the font size, “Large” and “ON (Large)” are set respectively.

■ When the character size is set, the display appears as shown below:

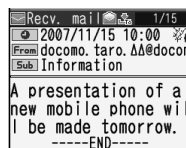
<For mail>



Standard



Large



Small

# Setting Clock Display

You can switch the clock on the Stand-by display not to be displayed, or can change the display size.

1  Settings ▶ Clock ▶ Clock display ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Display</b> Setting at purchase ON	<b>▶ ON* or OFF</b> ※When “Select language” is set to “日本語 (Japanese)”, you can select “日本語 (Japanese)” or “英語 (English)”.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The setting here applies also to the clock display on the Private window (see page 29). However, when “Display” is set to “OFF”, it follows the “Select language” setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Size</b> Setting at purchase Big	<b>▶ Big or Small</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The setting here does not change the clock size on the Private window.</li> </ul>

# Security Settings

## Passwords

Passwords .....	156
Changing Terminal Security Code..... <Change Security Code>	158
Setting PIN Code..... <UIM Setting>	158
Releasing PIN Lock.....	159

## Restricting Operations or Functions

Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others .....	<Lock All> 160
Using Omakase Lock .....	<Omakase Lock> 161
Using Self Mode .....	<Self Mode> 161
Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information.....	<Personal Data Lock> 162
ANSHIN-KEY Lock.....	163
Setting Auto Lock .....	<Auto Lock> 166
Setting a Variety of Locks .....	<Lock Setting> 167
Using Face Reader .....	<Face Reader Setting> 168
Locking Keypad Dial .....	<Keypad Dial Lock> 171
Preventing Side Key Operation Errors .....	<Side Keys Guard> 171

## Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls or Messages

Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls.....	<Record Display Set> 172
Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes .....	<Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only> 172
Applying Secret for Mail in Outbox/Inbox.....	<Secret Mail Display> 173
Setting not to Display Mail in Outbox/Inbox without Permission.....	<Mail Security> 173
Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries.....	<Restrictions> 174
Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID.....	<Call Setting without ID> 175
Delaying Start of Ringing Operation .....	<Ring Time> 176
Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks .....	<Reject Unknown> 176
What is Data Security Service? .....	177

## Other “Security Settings”

Other “Security Settings”.....	178
--------------------------------	-----

## Passwords

For some functions of the FOMA phone, you need to enter your password. In addition to the Terminal Security Code for operating respective mobile phone functions, the Network Security Code to use network services, and i-mode password are available. These passwords help you utilize your FOMA phone.

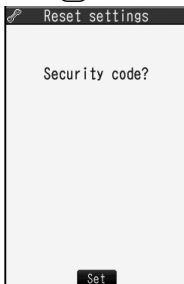
### Cautions on passwords

- You should avoid using the numbers for passwords such as denoting your birth date, part of your phone number, local address number, room number, “1111” or “1234” that is easily decoded by a third party. Also make sure that you take a note of the passwords you have selected just in case you forget them.
- Take care not to let others know your passwords. Even if your passwords are known and used by a third party, we at DoCoMo take no responsibility in any event for the resultant loss.
- Note that we at DoCoMo will never make any inquiries about your passwords.
- If you do not remember your respective passwords, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver’s license, the FOMA phone and UIM to the handing counter of a DoCoMo shop.  
For details contact “DoCoMo Information Center” on the back page of this manual.

## Terminal Security Code

The Terminal Security Code is set to “0000” at purchase but you can change it by yourself. (See page 158)

When the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears, enter your four- to eight-digit code and press  (Set).



- When you enter your Terminal Security Code, the entered numbers are indicated by “\_” and not displayed.
- If you have entered wrong numbers or nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed; then the display prior to entering the Terminal Security Code returns. Check the correct code and retry entering numbers.

## Network Security Code

The Network Security Code is a four-digit number for procedures on DoCoMo e-site or for using network services. This is determined at the time of contract but can be changed by yourself.

If you have “DoCoMo ID/Password” for “My DoCoMo”, the overall support site for personal computers, you can use a personal computer to take proceedings of changing your Network Security Code to new one. Also, you can change it by yourself from “各種手続き (procedures)” on DoCoMo e-site by using the i-mode phone.

※ For “My DoCoMo” and “DoCoMo e-site (ドコモeサイト)”, see the back page of this manual.

## i-mode Password

You need to enter the four-digit “i-mode password” for registering or deleting My Menu, applying for or canceling Message Services, i-mode pay service, and so on.

(Some information providers may provide you with their specific password.)

The i-mode password is “0000” at the time of your contract, but you can change it by yourself. (See page 208)

From i-mode, you can change the i-mode password by following operation:

“ Menu” → “English iMenu” → “Options” → “Change i-mode Password”

## PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code


For the UIM, you can set the two security codes, namely the PIN1 code and PIN2 code.

These security codes are “0000” at the time of your contract, but you can change them by yourself. (See page 159)

The PIN1 code is the four- to eight-digit number for checking the user each time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA phone or each time the FOMA phone is turned on, so that you can prevent the third party from using your UIM. By entering your PIN1 code, you can make or take calls, or use functions in the FOMA phone.

The PIN2 code is the four- to eight-digit number for executing Reset Total Cost, using the user certificate or applying for the issue of it, etc.

● If you purchase a new FOMA phone and use the existing UIM with the new FOMA phone, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code you have set previously.

When the PIN1 Code or PIN2 Code Entry display appears, enter your four- to eight-digit PIN1 code/PIN2 code and press  (Set).



For PIN1 code

- The entered PIN1 code or PIN2 code is displayed as “\_”.
- If you enter a wrong PIN1 code or PIN2 code three times in succession, it is locked and the FOMA phone cannot be used. (The remaining number of times you can enter appears on the display.)

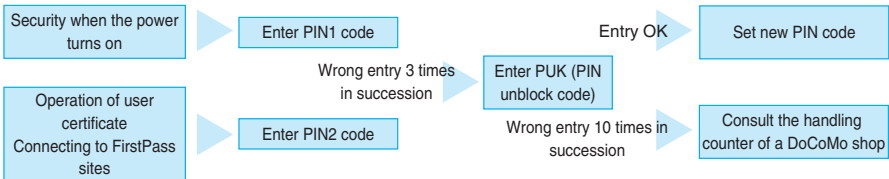
When you enter the correct PIN1 code or PIN2 code, the remaining number of times you can enter will return to three times.

## PUK (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK (PIN unblock code) is the eight-digit number for releasing the PIN1 code and PIN2 code lock state.

You cannot change this code by yourself.

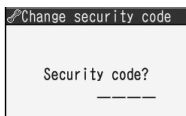
● If you enter a wrong PUK (PIN unblock code) 10 times in succession, the UIM is locked.



# Changing Terminal Security Code

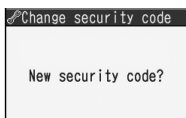
Change the default for the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions to your own four- to eight-digit code so that you can make full use of the FOMA phone. Make sure you take a note of the security code you have changed just in case you forget it.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Change security code  
▶ Enter the current Terminal Security Code.



• If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".

- 2 Enter a new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶ YES

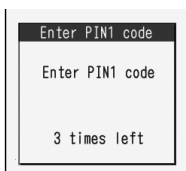


# Setting PIN Code

## PIN1 Code Entry Set

You can set the FOMA phone not to work unless you enter your PIN1 code when turning on the power.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ UIM setting  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ PIN1 code entry set ▶ ON or OFF  
▶ Enter the PIN1 code.



• See page 157 for the PIN1 code.



## Change PIN1 Code/Change PIN2 Code

You need to have set "PIN1 code entry set" to "ON" to change the PIN1 code.

1



Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ UIM setting

▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Change PIN1 code or Change PIN2 code

▶ Enter the current PIN1 code or PIN2 code.



• See page 157 for the PIN1 code or PIN2 code.

For changing PIN1 code

2

Enter a new PIN1 code or PIN2 code (four to eight digits).



• The entered PIN1 code or PIN2 code is displayed as " \_".

3

Enter the new PIN1 code or PIN2 code again.

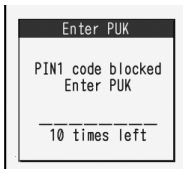


## Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession on the display requiring its entry, it is locked and the FOMA phone cannot be used. In this case, release the PIN1 code/PIN2 code lock and set a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

1

Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code) (eight digits).



• The entered unblock code is displayed as " \_".

## 2 Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).



- The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as “\_”.

## 3 Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.



<Lock All>

## Locking your Phone to Prevent Use by Others

Setting at purchase	Released
---------------------	----------




If you set Lock All, you can do no operations other than answering calls and turning on/off the power.

## 1 Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

“” and “Lock all” appear and Lock All is set.

- To release Lock All, enter your Terminal Security Code from the Stand-by display. Even if you turn off the power, Lock All will not be released.

### Information

- You cannot make calls during Lock All. However, you can make emergency calls at 110, 119, and 118. Select “YES” from the confirmation display for dialing.
- You can receive calls, but the callers' data such as their names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Lock All.
- If you fail to release Lock All five times in succession, the power to the FOMA phone turns off. However, you can turn it on again.
- You can receive mail messages or Messages R/F during Lock All; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail messages and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as “”, “”, or “” appear after Lock All is released.
- The desktop icon disappears during Lock All. When Lock All is released, the icon reappears.
- The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed during Lock All.
- The default Wake-up display appears during Lock All even when an i-motion movie has been set for the Wake-up display.
- Even if you set Lock All, IC Card Lock is not activated.

## <Omakase Lock>

# Using Omakase Lock

When you have lost your FOMA phone or in other cases, you can use this service to remotely lock your FOMA phone by contacting DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo. Your privacy and Osaifu-Keitai are protected.

To release the lock, contact DoCoMo by phone, etc.

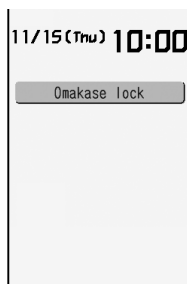
※Omakase Lock is a pay service. You are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.

Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock

 0120-524-360 Business hours: 24 hours

※You can set/release also from My DoCoMo site via a personal computer or other devices.

•For details on how to use Omakase Lock, its fees and others, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]" or contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.



"Omakase lock" is displayed on the Stand-by display and Omakase Lock is set.

- Omakase Lock is the service that locks the FOMA phone in which your contracted UIM is inserted.
- During Omakase Lock, all the key operations are locked except for answering voice calls/ videophone calls and turning on/off the power, and respective functions (including IC card functions) are disabled.
- You can receive voice calls and videophone calls (except PushTalk calls), but the callers' data such as names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. In addition, the ring image, ring tone, and vibrator are reset to the default. When you release Omakase Lock, the former settings return.
- Mail messages received during Omakase Lock are held at the Mail Center.
- You can turn on/off the power, however, Omakase Lock is not released by turning off the power.
- GPS Location Provision is available even during Omakase Lock.
- Note that neither the UIM nor the microSD memory card is locked.

## Information

- Even while another function is working, Omakase Lock applies after finishing that function.
- Omakase Lock can be set even when another lock function is set. However, if you have set Public Mode (Drive Mode) before setting Omakase Lock, you cannot receive voice calls and videophone calls.
- Omakase Lock cannot be set when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, turned off, or during Self Mode.
- When you have signed up for Dual Network Service and are using the mova phone, Omakase Lock cannot be set.
- Omakase Lock is a service that is activated by an offer from the contractor of the UIM inserted in the FOMA phone. Even when the contractor and the user of the FOMA phone differ, the FOMA phone will be locked if the contractor offers to DoCoMo.
- You can release Omakase Lock only when the UIM of the same phone number at locking is inserted in your FOMA phone. If you cannot release it, contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

## <Self Mode>

# Using Self Mode

Setting at purchase

Released

You can disable all phone calls and communication functions.

During Self Mode, the caller hears the guidance to the effect that radio waves do not reach or the power is turned off. If you use DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use these services in the same way as when the FOMA phone is turned off.

1



▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Self mode ▶ YES ▶ OK

"SELF" appears and Self Mode is set.

- To release Self Mode, perform the same operation.

[Next Page](#)

## Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110, 119 and 118 even during Self Mode. In this case, Self Mode is released.
- You cannot receive mail or Messages R/F during Self Mode.
- Even if a call comes in during Self Mode, the "Missed call" icon does not appear after releasing Self Mode.

## <Personal Data Lock>

# Locking Functions Regarding Personal Information

Setting at purchase

Released

To prevent other people from reading or tampering with your personal information, you can set the following functions not to be used:

- |                      |                             |                              |  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| · Record message     | · Camera                    | · Moving image               | · Reject unknown   |
| · Add to phonebook   | · Bar code reader           | · Melody <sup>※1</sup>       | · Desktop <sup>※3</sup>                                    |
| · Phonebook settings | · Text reader               | · Chara-den                  | · Reset settings   |
| · Search phonebook   | · ToruCa                    | · Music                      | · Initialize   |
| · PushTalk phonebook | · IC card content           | · MUSIC player               | · Play/Erase msg.  |
| · UIM operation      | · i-mode                    | · PDF viewer                 | · Infrared exchange  |
| · Own number         | · Bookmark                  | · microSD memory card        | · iC communication   |
| · Automatic display  | · Full browser              | · Data link                  | · Voice dial   |
| · Alarm              | · i-oppil                   | · Software update            | · i-Channel  |
| · Schedule           | · Mail                      | · Pattern data update        | · Feel image playback                                      |
| · ToDo               | · Mail group                | · GPS function <sup>※2</sup> | · "Number setting" and "Set as ring tone" for Multi number |
| · Voice memo         | · Photo-sending             | · Voice announce             |  |
| · Movie memo         | · Chat group                | · Select image               |  |
| · Free memo          | · Still image <sup>※1</sup> | · Remote monitoring          |  |

※1 You can display the pre-installed still images and melodies.

※2 Location Provision is available.

※3 You can operate the Private menu, "Desktop icon" of 使いかたナビ (Guide), or "Notification icon" of a missed call displayed after Persona Data Lock is set.

## 1 Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Personal data lock ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.







" " appears and Personal Data Lock is set.

- To release Personal Data Lock, perform the same operation as above. When you set "Auto lock" to "Timer lock at close" and select "Personal data lock" for "Timer lock ON at close", the display for releasing Personal Data Lock appears also by opening the FOMA phone.

When you set "PIM/IC security mode" to "Face reader", follow the operation of "Use Face Reader to Release Lock" on page 170.

When you set to "Double security", enter your Terminal Security Code after the operation on the page 170.

## Information

- You can automatically receive Messages R/F, i-mode mail messages, chat mail messages, and SMS messages during Personal Data Lock; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display does not appear. Further, the receiving operation such as ringing/vibration does not work, so you are not notified of receiving. The icons such as "", "", or " " appear after Personal Data Lock is released.
- You cannot delete the desktop icons from the desktop during Personal Data Lock. During Personal Data Lock, the "Notification icon" and "Desktop icon" such as "New mail", "Missed alarm", "Phone number", "URL" and "Mail address" do not appear, however, they reappear when you release Personal Data Lock.
- During Personal Data Lock, you cannot check a missed call or new mail by pressing  with the FOMA phone closed.
- During Personal Data Lock, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party if you send the substitute image during a videophone call.
- If you set "Lock all" during Personal Data Lock, " " is cleared and " " appears instead.

# ANSHIN-KEY Lock

ANSHIN-KEY Lock is the function to automatically lock the FOMA phone when the distance from the FOMA phone to ANSHIN-KEY exceeds the range of the active area. Carrying the ANSHIN-KEY with you prevents other persons from using your FOMA phone, such as when you have left it somewhere.

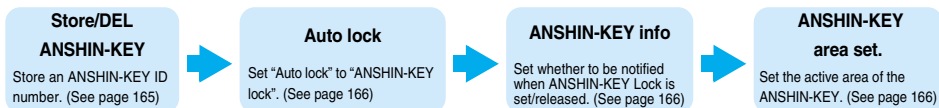
You can store up to 10 ANSHIN-KEYS. If you additionally purchase the ANSHIN-KEY P01 (option), you can use it for carrying with you on a daily basis, for business use, or as a spare key for when you have lost it.

●Refer to the manual for ANSHIN-KEY P01 as well.

## Use ANSHIN-KEY

To use the ANSHIN-KEY, perform the following operations:

●When you set "Auto lock" to "ANSHIN-KEY lock", "📶" appears.



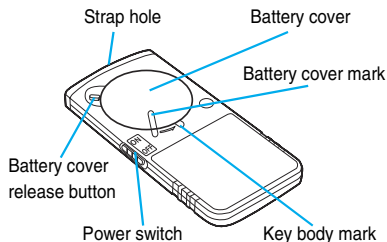
### ■Setting/Releasing ANSHIN-KEY Lock

The FOMA phone is automatically locked when the ANSHIN-KEY is brought out of the active area, and the lock is automatically released when it enters into within the active area.

- When ANSHIN-KEY Lock is activated, the icon changes to "📶" and "ANSHIN-KEY lock" appears on the Stand-by display.
- When ANSHIN-KEY Lock is released, the icon returns to "📶".
- When "ANSHIN-KEY info" is set to "ON", the Call/Charging indicator lights, and a confirmation tone sounds when ANSHIN-KEY Lock is set/released.

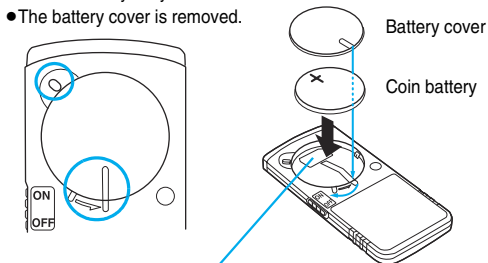


### ■Names of parts of ANSHIN-KEY



### ■How to replace the battery of the ANSHIN-KEY

1. While pressing the battery cover release button, fit the battery cover with the key body mark.
  - The battery cover is removed.
2. Replace the coin battery and then mount the battery cover.



●The ANSHIN-KEY ID number is shown below the battery.

## Notes on Using ANSHIN-KEY

- The ANSHIN-KEY Lock function uses radio waves between the FOMA phone and ANSHIN-KEY.  
If your ANSHIN-KEY is inside a metallic bag or near the metals such as coins or contact-free IC card, the FOMA phone might be locked as the active area extremely narrows or the radio waves are shut off.
- Turn off the power to both the FOMA phone and ANSHIN-KEY in an area where their use is prohibited such as in airplanes or hospitals.
- Use the ANSHIN-KEY only in Japan because it has obtained the technology standard compliance certificate as a specific low power radio station pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law. If you use it overseas, you might be imposed a punishment.

## Operations during ANSHIN-KEY Lock

- The following functions will be locked:

· Dialing	· PushTalk	· Sending/Editing mail	· i-mode/Full browser
· i-appli	· i-Channel	· Camera	· MUSIC
· MUSIC player	· IC card function**	· ToruCa	





※IC Card Lock is activated.

- Functions available during ANSHIN-KEY Lock

- Voice call, videophone call . . . You can receive calls, but the callers' names stored in the Phonebook are not displayed.
- Mail, Message R/F. . . . . You can receive messages, but no ring tone sounds/no vibrator works and the contents are not displayed.
- Alarm, Schedule, ToDo . . . . . You can be notified, but the alarm sounds/vibrates according to the default setting.
- GPS function . . . . . You can respond to the location information request when you set "Location request menu" to "ON" or if within the permitted time or validity period specified by "Permission schedule".
- Data Security Service . . . . . The Phonebook is updated only if auto-update is set when the update notification is received from the Data Storage Center.

## Temporarily Release ANSHIN-KEY Lock




When the lock is not released such as when you have lost ANSHIN-KEY, or the battery installed on it becomes flat, you can temporarily release the lock by entering your Terminal Security Code from the Stand-by display.

- While the lock is temporarily released,  is displayed and you can operate all the functions. When you bring the ANSHIN-KEY back to the active area while the lock is temporarily released, the temporal release ends, the FOMA phone is placed in "ANSHIN-KEY lock" mode, and the icon switches from  to .  
If the icon does not switch to , or when the temporal release lasts for a long time, bring the ANSHIN-KEY back to the active area, turn on the power to the ANSHIN-KEY again, and then open the FOMA phone.

### Information

- Note that the active area of the ANSHIN-KEY changes depending on the environment where you use it. It is advisable that you check the active area before use.
- If the lock on your FOMA phone is not released by bringing the ANSHIN-KEY close to it after the locked state continues for about 3 hours, once close and then open the FOMA phone. When the locked state continues for about 72 hours, the power to the ANSHIN-KEY is turned off for saving the electric power. Turn on the power to the ANSHIN-KEY again, once close, and then open the FOMA phone.
- It might take dozens of seconds to release the lock even when you bring the ANSHIN-KEY close to your FOMA phone.
- If you fail to temporarily release ANSHIN-KEY Lock five times in succession, the power to the FOMA phone turns off. However, you can turn it on again.
- When you select "OFF" for "Auto lock" while the lock is temporarily released, ANSHIN-KEY Lock is released.
- You can make an emergency call at 110, 119, or 118 even during ANSHIN-KEY Lock. Select "YES" from the confirmation display to make the call.
- You cannot use the ANSHIN-KEY Lock function in the following cases:
  - When Self Mode is activated
  - When you are overseas
  - When you are out of the service area for 24 hours or more



- When the battery of the ANSHIN-KEY becomes short

The notification icon  appears on the Stand-by display. When you select , the message to the effect that the remaining battery becomes short, and the ANSHIN-KEY ID number appear. To clear , do the following operations:

- Replace the battery of the ANSHIN-KEY
- Use another stored ANSHIN-KEY
- Set "Auto lock" to either "Timer lock at close" or "OFF"

An estimate of usable period of the battery on ANSHIN-KEY is about four months. It differs depending on the usage environment and usage condition.

- When abnormality is found on communication with the ANSHIN-KEY

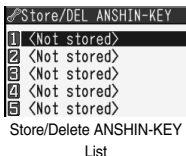
When any abnormality is found on communication between the FOMA phone and ANSHIN-KEY after you set ANSHIN-KEY Lock,  appears on the Stand-by display. If  still appears after turning off/on the power of the FOMA phone, consult with a service counter such as a DoCoMo shop because the abnormality or malfunction of the FOMA phone might be possible.

## Store/Delete ANSHIN-KEY

Setting at purchase    Not stored

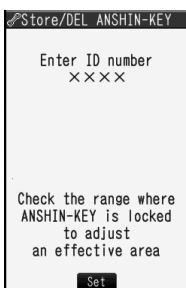
You can store/delete the ANSHIN-KEYS to be authenticated by “ANSHIN-KEY lock”. You can store up to 10 ANSHIN-KEYS. If you have stored multiple ANSHIN-KEYS, ANSHIN-KEY Lock is released when one of them is within the active area.

- 1**  **Settings** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Lock setting** ▶ **Store/DEL ANSHIN-KEY**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **Highlight <Not stored>** and press  **(Store)**.

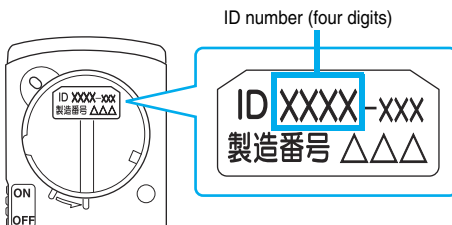


- When any ANSHIN-KEY has already been stored, the ID number for the stored ANSHIN-KEY is displayed.

## 2 Enter the ID number.



- The ANSHIN-KEY ID number (four digits) is shown under the battery. Do not peel off the ANSHIN-KEY ID number sticker. You are advised to take a note of the ID number and store it separately against the case when it is peeled off.



## 3 Turn on the ANSHIN-KEY ▶ OK


- For the first storing, the confirmation display appears asking whether to set “Auto lock” to “ANSHIN-KEY lock”. Select “YES” to set ANSHIN-KEY Lock.
- For the second storing and onward, the setting is completed.

### Information

- You cannot store/delete ANSHIN-KEYS in the following cases:
  - When Self Mode is activated
  - When you are overseas
  - When you are out of the service area for 24 hours or more
  - When another function is working
- During storing the ANSHIN-KEY, the FOMA phone is placed in the same status as when it is out of the service area.
- When storing the second ANSHIN-KEY and onward, ANSHIN-KEY Lock is temporarily activated even when the first ANSHIN-KEY is in the active area. ANSHIN-KEY Lock is automatically released about 10 seconds later.
- Even when multiple ANSHIN-KEYS are stored, only one ANSHIN-KEY is communicating with the FOMA phone. When the power to the ANSHIN-KEY that is communicating is turned off or when it is taken out of the active area, the another ANSHIN-KEY in the active area automatically starts communicating. ANSHIN-KEY Lock is activated for about 10 seconds when it is switched.
- You cannot use an ANSHIN-KEY with multiple FOMA phones.
  - When you store a stored ANSHIN-KEY in another FOMA phone, the storing for the FOMA phone you previously used is invalidated.
  - When the storing is invalidated, delete the invalidated ANSHIN-KEY from the FOMA phone you use, then store it again to use it with that FOMA phone.

[Next Page](#)

### ■ To delete a stored ANSHIN-KEY

1. Store/Delete ANSHIN-KEY List ▶ Highlight a stored item and press  (Delete) ▶ YES  
When "Auto lock" is set to "ANSHIN-KEY lock" and you delete all the items, "Auto lock" returns to "OFF".

## ANSHIN-KEY Info

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

You can have the Call/Charging indicator lit and a confirmation tone sounded for when ANSHIN-KEY Lock is set/released.

- 1  ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting ▶ ANSHIN-KEY info  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- When "ANSHIN-KEY info" is set to "ON", the Call/Charging indicator may light or the confirmation tone may sound depending on the radio wave conditions even when the ANSHIN-KEY is near the FOMA phone.
- The confirmation tone does not sound in Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode), or when "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".

## ANSHIN-KEY Area Setting

Setting at purchase	Wide
---------------------	------

You can set the active area from the FOMA phone to the ANSHIN-KEY.

- 1  ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Lock setting ▶ ANSHIN-KEY area set.  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an extent.


### Information

- Depending on the situation you use the ANSHIN-KEY, the active area is widened; up to about 8 meters for "Narrow", up to about 20 meters for "Middle", and up to about 40 meters for "Wide". Check the active area before use, and adjust it.

## <Auto Lock>

## Setting Auto Lock

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

- 1  ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Auto lock  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select a lock.

**ANSHIN-KEY lock** . . . . Locks automatically when the distance from the FOMA phone to the ANSHIN-KEY exceeds the active area.

**Timer lock at close** . . . . Locks automatically when the specified time has elapsed after closing the FOMA phone.

**OFF** . . . . . Does not set "ANSHIN-KEY lock"/"Timer lock at close".

### Information

- When you set "Timer lock at close" or "OFF", turn off the power to the ANSHIN-KEY.
- To use "Timer lock at close", you need to set "Personal data lock" or "IC card lock" of "Timer lock ON at close" of "Lock setting" to other than "OFF".
- When you set "Timer lock at close", the Lock Release display you selected for "Timer lock ON at close" appears when you open the FOMA phone.
- You cannot set ANSHIN-KEY Lock in the following cases:
  - When Self Mode is activated
  - When you are overseas
  - When you are out of the service area for 24 hours or more



## Setting a Variety of Locks

### Timer Lock ON at Close


Setting at purchase	Personal data lock: 5 minutes IC card lock: 5 minutes
---------------------	---

You can set the type of locks activated by “Timer lock at close” and specify the time until the lock is activated.

- 1  ► Settings ► Lock/Security ► Lock setting ► Timer lock ON at close  
► Enter your Terminal Security Code ► Personal data lock or IC card lock

### 2 Select an elapse time.

- To deactivate “Timer lock at close”, select “OFF”.

To activate “Timer lock at close”, set “Auto lock” to “Timer lock at close”. “” appears and then “Timer lock at close” is activated.

#### Information

- When the Stand-by display is not shown, or when another function is working with the Stand-by display shown, the lock is not activated even after the specified time elapses.
- When a call or mail message comes in after closing the FOMA phone, or when you open it, the elapsed time counter returns to 0 seconds.
- When “Timer lock at close” is set, the lock is temporarily released if you release Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock. However, it is re-locked when the specified time elapses after closing the FOMA phone.

### PIM/IC Security Mode

Setting at purchase	Security code
---------------------	---------------

You can set the way to release Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.

- 1  ► Settings ► Lock/Security ► Lock setting ► PIM/IC security mode  
► Enter your Terminal Security Code ► Select a security mode.

**Security code** . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock. The setting is completed.

**Face reader** . . . . . Use Face Reader authentication to release the lock.

**Double security** . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock after using Face Reader authentication. The setting is completed.

### 2 YES

#### Information

- You cannot change PIM/IC Security Mode when the face data files stored by Face Reader Setting are fewer than three, or during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.

# Using Face Reader

You can store your face data files in Face Reader and use it for authentication when releasing IC Card Lock or Personal Data Lock. To use Face Reader, you need to store three or more face data files and set "PIM/IC security mode" to either "Face reader" or "Double security".

### ■Notes on using Face Reader

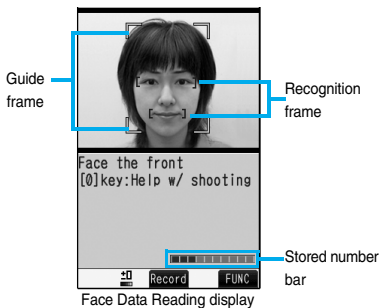
- The dirty camera might result in erroneous operation. Use this function after wiping it with a soft cloth to clean the dirt off.
- In environment where the face is exposed to strong light and the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face, the face will not be recognized easily. In this case, storing might become difficult or the recognition rate (the rate of correct identification) might be lowered. Adjust so that the face is exposed to even light.
- The face might not be recognized normally when its entire part is exposed to the light and becomes white.
- Storing the face might become difficult or the recognition rate might be lowered when the face conditions are as described below:
  - When the features of the face (eyes, mouth, nose, and eyebrows, etc.) are hard to see as they are covered by hair, glasses, or a mask
  - When the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face such as when you are under the light in a dark place
- The recognition rate might rise by reacting in accordance with the face conditions such as by raising the hair so that the eyes, nose, mouth, and eyebrows are clearly visible (taking the glasses and mask off) or moving to a place where the face is exposed to even light. The recognition rate rises also by storing the face data file additionally.
- The face authentication technology does not completely guarantee that you are recognized as yourself. Accordingly, we are not at all responsible for damages resulting from the use of this product by a third party or when the damages are caused by what you could not use the function because of wrong authentication by Face Reader.

## Store

Setting at purchase	Not stored
---------------------	------------

To use Face Reader, store 3 or more face data files. You can store up to 10 face data files.

- 



Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. You can prevent the failure in authenticating the face data file, which results from the difference in the position of the face at storing and authenticating the data.

When your face is recognized, the recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off your eyes and mouth, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.

- The number of face data files is displayed by the bar on the Face Data Reading display.

- Press (Record).

The face data file is shot.

- When the face data file could not be recognized, select "OK" to return to step 1.

- Press (Store).

The face data file you have shot is stored. Repeat step 1 through step 3 to store three or more face data files.

- When the third face data file is stored, the message appears telling that Face Reader can be more easily used by adding face data file. Select "OK" to return to step 1.
- When you press (Delete), the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the face data file. Select "YES" to return to the Face Data Reading display.
- If you try to store the face data file in the same environment, you might not be able to store it. Change the direction of the face or the place for shooting.

### Information

- At shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in red and the shutter tone sounds regardless of the Manner Mode setting. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed. However, the shutter tone does not sound during playing back a music file by MUSIC Player or in pause state.

## Function Menu of the Face Data Reading Display

Function menu	Operation	Explanation
<b>Brightness</b> At Face reader start-up ±0	<b>▶ Select a brightness level.</b> • You can adjust brightness also by pressing <b>(3)</b> from the Face Data Reading display.	You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).
<b>Help</b>	• You can bring up Help also by pressing <b>(O)</b> from the Face Data Reading display.	You can check the cautions for shooting.

## Delete Stored Images

You can reset all the face data files stored in Face Reader.

- 1** **(MENU)** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Lock setting** ▶ **Face reader setting**  
 ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **Delete stored images** ▶ **YES**

### Information

- You cannot reset the face data files during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.
- When you reset the face data files, "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Security code".

## Recognition-failed Image

Up to five images that are not judged as you by Face Reader recognition operation are saved. When the number of images exceeds five, the oldest data is overwritten. You can use these images to specify who tried to illegally access your data.

- 1** **(MENU)** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Lock setting** ▶ **Face reader setting**  
 ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **Recog. failed image** ▶ **Select an image.**

Recog. failed image	
1	2007/11/15 10:00
2	2007/11/15 9:55
3	2007/11/15 9:54
4	2007/11/15 9:20
5	2007/11/15 9:14

- To delete the recognition-failed images, press **(FUNC)**, select "Delete this" or "Delete all", and then select "YES". When you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

## Face Reader Security

Setting at purchase	Normal
---------------------	--------

You can set Face Reader to additionally recognize blinking of the eyes.

- 1** **(MENU)** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Lock/Security** ▶ **Lock setting** ▶ **Face reader setting**  
 ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶ **Face reader security** ▶ **Normal or High**

**Normal** . . . Does not recognize blinking of the eyes.

**High** . . . . Recognizes blinking of the eyes.

## Change Security Code

You can set a password to be entered instead of the Face Reader authentication for when “PIM/IC security mode” is set to “Face reader” or “Double security”.

- 1  ► Settings ► Lock/Security ► Lock setting ► Face reader setting  
► Enter your Terminal Security Code ► Change security code  
► Enter the current Face Reader Security Code.


• If you enter the code for the first time, enter “0000”.

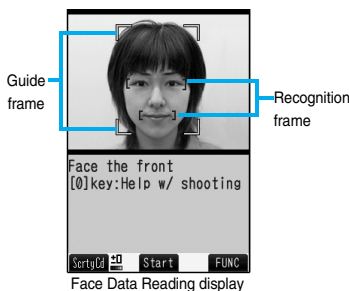
- 2 Enter a new Face Reader Security Code (four to eight digits) ► YES

## Use Face Reader to Release Lock


When “PIM/IC security mode” is set to “Face reader”, use Face Reader to release the lock instead of using your Terminal Security Code.

When it is set to “Double security”, use Face Reader for authentication and then enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock.

- 1 Display for releasing Personal Data Lock/IC Card Lock  
► Match the face to the guide frame and press  (Start).



Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. The recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed, and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.

- Perform the operation for authentication with the same facial expression as when you stored the face data file.
- Press  (Security) and enter your Face Reader Security Code; then you can operate to authenticate instead of using Face Reader.

For the Face Reader Security Code, see page 170.

### ■ If you failed to be authenticated

When additional storing of the face data file is possible, select “OK” to bring up the confirmation display asking whether to store additional face data file. Select “YES”, enter your Terminal Security Code; then you can store additional face data file. When you cannot store any more face data files, select “OK” to show the Face Data Reading display. If the shot face is judged as another person, a shutter tone sounds and the recognition-failed image is saved. Select “OK” to show the Face Data Reading display. Try authentication using Face Reader again.

- When 10 face data files are stored and a new data file is added, the oldest data file is overwritten.

### ■ When “Face reader security” is set to “High”

After you are successfully authenticated by Face Reader, your eye blinking is checked. Repeat blinking your eyes slowly. When the detection of eye blinking fails, the authentication also fails.

- Even in the same environment as that for the authentication by Face Reader, the detection of eye blinking may fail. Change the place or the direction of your face, and then operate.

## <Keypad Dial Lock>

# Locking Keypad Dial

Setting at purchase	Released
---------------------	----------

You can lock dialing from the numeric keys. When using the FOMA phone for business purposes, private use of the FOMA phone can be prevented.


### ■ Unavailable operations

- Dialing from the numeric keys
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Initial setting
- Phonebook (storing, editing, deleting, copying from the microSD memory card, sending/receiving using Infrared rays, sending/receiving using iC communication, and sending/receiving using Bluetooth communication)
- Phone To/AV Phone To function
- Mail To function

### ■ Available operations

- Dialing from the Phonebook or Voice Dial
- Dialing from Redial or Dialed Calls or Sent Address (Only phone numbers stored in the Phonebook)

## 1 Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Keypad dial lock ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

 is displayed and Keypad Dial Lock is set.

- To release Keypad Dial Lock, perform the same operation.

### Information

- You can make emergency calls at 110, 119 and 118 even during Keypad Dial Lock.
- If you set Keypad Dial Lock, you can send mail only when the address is called up from the Phonebook and when the address stored in the Phonebook is called up from Sent Address.

## <Side Keys Guard>


# Preventing Side Key Operation Errors

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

You can disable the side keys , , and  for when the FOMA phone is closed.



You can prevent operation errors in a bag.

## 1 (for at least one second)

 appears and "Side keys guard" is set to "ON".


- To set to "OFF", perform the same operation.

### Information

- Even when "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", you can answer an incoming PushTalk call by pressing . You can get the talker's right by pressing  during the PushTalk communication.
- When an external device such as the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the function of the side keys is valid regardless of this setting.

# Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls

Setting at purchase      Received calls: ON    Redial/Dialed calls: ON

- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Other settings** ► **Record display set**  
► **Enter your Terminal Security Code** ► **Select an item.**

**Received calls** . . . . . Sets whether to display Received Calls and Received Address.

**Redial/Dialed calls** . . . . . Sets whether to display Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address.

- 2 **ON or OFF**

• When you set “Received calls” to “OFF”, you cannot play back record messages of voice calls, either.

# Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes

Setting at purchase      Released

In ordinary mode, you cannot call up Phonebook entries or schedule events stored as secret data.

In Secret Mode, you can select whether to store the stored/edited Phonebook entries/schedule events as secret data or as ordinary data. The Phonebook entries/schedule events you have stored/edited in Secret Data Only are stored as secret data.

You can call up all the data files in Secret Mode but can call up only the secret data files in Secret Data Only.


## Activate Secret Mode







## Activate Secret Data Only



- 1  ► **Settings** ► **Lock/Security** ► **Secret mode or Secret data only**  
► **Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

When “Secret mode” is selected, “” appears and Secret Mode is activated.

When “Secret data only” is selected, “” blinks, the number of stored secret data items is displayed, and then Secret Data Only is activated.

- If you call up a Phonebook entry or schedule event in Secret Mode, “” stays lit for ordinary data and “” blinks for secret data.
- To deactivate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, perform the same operation or press  from the Stand-by display.

### ■ To change secret data to an ordinary Phonebook entry or schedule event

In Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, select “Release secret” from the Function menu of the Phonebook entry or schedule event to be released.

#### Information

- You can store FOMA phone’s Phonebook entries only as secret data.
- When you make a call or receive a call from the party stored as secret data, his/her name is not displayed but the phone number is displayed on the Dialing/Call Receiving display.
- If you call up a secret entry to make a call or send mail, the record is not memorized in “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address”.
- When the other party stored as secret data makes a call to you notifying a caller ID, the notified phone number is displayed in “Received calls”; however the stored name is not displayed.
- If you simultaneously activate “Lock all” and “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”, deactivating “Lock all” deactivates “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”.

<Secret Mail Display>

## Applying Secret for Mail in Outbox/Inbox

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

You can set whether to display the mail (secret mail) message from the sender or to the destination address that matches secret data in the Phonebook.

- 1 Stand-by display   ► Mail settings ► Secret mail display  
► Enter your Terminal Security Code ► ON or OFF

### Information

- Even when “Secret mail display” is set to “OFF”, you can check secret mail in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only.
- When “Secret mail display” is set to “OFF”, and any secret address is included in addresses of simultaneous mail, that mail message is not displayed.
- When “Secret mail display” is set to “OFF”, and any secret member is included in chat members, chat mail messages of all chat members are not displayed.

<Mail Security>

## Setting not to Display Mail in Outbox/Inbox without Permission

Setting at purchase	All unchecked
---------------------	---------------

You can set the security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft of the Mail menu.

You need to enter your Terminal Security Code to display the mail messages in security-activated boxes.

- 1 Stand-by display   ► Mail settings ► Mail security  
► Enter your Terminal Security Code  
► Put a check mark for boxes to be set  (Finish)
  - When security is set, “” is added to the icon of the set box in the Mail menu.

### Information





- If you set security for the Outbox and Inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address and Received Address.

# Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

Setting at purchase

All released

## Restrict Dialing

You can disable making voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls to phone numbers other than specified ones. When you use the FOMA phone for business use, this function is useful for preventing the private use. Bring up the specified Phonebook entry and press  or  (**Dial**) to make a voice call. (To make a videophone call, press , and to make a PushTalk call, press .) You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

## Call Rejection

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you do not want to receive to be rejected. The caller hears a busy tone. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

## Call Acceptance

You can receive voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls only from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you want to accept to be connected. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" simultaneously.

## Restrict Dialing/Call Rejection/Call Acceptance

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC) Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

**Restrict dialing** . . . . . You can dial the specified phone numbers only.





**Call rejection** . . . . . You can reject calls from the specified phone numbers.

**Call acceptance** . . . . . You can accept calls from the specified phone numbers only.

**Call forwarding** . . . . . See page 431.

**Voice mail** . . . . . See page 428.

The set item is indicated by "★".

- When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, press  on the detailed display to highlight the phone number you will set Restrictions for.
- To set Restrict Dialing for multiple phone numbers, first set Restrict Dialing and press  to return to the detailed Phonebook display;  to highlight the phone number to be set for Restrict Dialing and continue the operation. If you press  to return to the Stand-by display, additional settings cannot be done. To do additional settings, release Restrict Dialing for the set phone number and activate Restrict Dialing again, including the released phone number.
- To release Restrictions, perform the same operation.

### Information

- You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored as secret data, and in the UIM Phonebook.
- If you activate "Personal data lock" while "Restrict dialing" is set, you cannot dial at all.
- If you activate "Personal data lock" while "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" is set, you can accept all incoming calls.
- You cannot operate the following while "Restrict dialing" is set:
  - Calling up/Referring to phone numbers other than specified
  - Keypad dial (except for the calls to the specified phone numbers)
  - Dialing from Received Calls (except for the calls from the specified phone numbers)
  - Storing/Editing/Deleting Phonebook entries, copying Phonebook entries from the microSD memory card, and copying Phonebook entries to the UIM
- To simultaneously activate "Restrict dialing" and "Automatic display", set "Restrict dialing" for the phone number set with "Automatic display".
- You can make calls to the emergency phone numbers 110/119/118 even if you set "Restrict dialing".



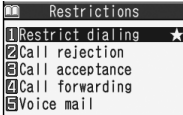
## Information

- When a call comes in from the phone number set with “Call rejection”, or from other than the phone number set with “Call acceptance”, the call is recorded in “Received calls” as a missed call record and the icon of “Missed call” appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to “Activate”. However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of the setting of “Call rejection” or “Call acceptance”.


## Check/Release Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

☰ 2 6

### 1 Stand-by display ▶ ▶ Phonebook settings ▶ Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.



- Restrict dialing** . . . See page 174.
- Call rejection** . . . . . See page 174.
- Call acceptance** . . . See page 174.
- Call forwarding** . . . See page 431.
- Voice mail** . . . . . See page 428.

- The set item is indicated by “★”.
- To release all the Phonebook entries set with Restrictions, press  (FUNC), select “Release”, and then select “YES”.

### 2 Select a Phonebook entry.

The phone number set with Restrictions is displayed.

- To release “Restrictions” per phone number, select the phone number you want to release by following the same steps above, and select “YES”.

## <Call Setting without ID>

☰ 1 0

## Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID

Setting at purchase	Unavailable: Accept/Same as ring tone    PublicPhone: Accept/Same as ring tone User unset: Accept/Same as ring tone
---------------------	--

You can set whether to receive (accept) or not to receive (reject) a voice call, videophone call, and PushTalk call depending on the reason for no caller ID. There are three reasons; “Unavailable”, “PublicPhone”, and “User unset”.

### 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Call setting w/o ID ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

- Unavailable** . . . . . Calls from the other party who cannot notify his/her phone number such as calls from overseas or from landline phones via call forwarding services.  
(However, the caller ID might be notified depending on the telephone companies the calls go through.)
- PublicPhone** . . . . . Calls from public phones, etc.
- User unset** . . . . . When the caller has set the caller ID not to be notified.

### 2 Accept or Reject

- If you select “Accept”, go to step 2 on page 129 to select a ring tone.  
If you select “Same as ring tone”, the ring tone will be the one selected in “Phone” of “Select ring tone”.

Next Page

### Information

- If you select "Reject", the ring tone does not sound even if a call comes in, the call is recorded in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.

## <Ring Time>



# Delaying Start of Ringing Operation

# 1



**Settings ▶ Incoming call ▶ Ring time ▶ Do the following operations.**

Item	Operation	Explanation
<b>Ring start time</b> Setting at purchase Ring start time: OFF Start time: 1 second (when "Ring start time" is set to "ON")	<b>▶ ON or OFF</b> <b>▶ Enter a start time (seconds).</b> • Enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.	You can set the FOMA phone not to start ringing operation immediately for when a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call comes in from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is effective as a countermeasure for blocking nuisance calls such as one ring phone scam (one-giri).
<b>Missed calls display</b> Setting at purchase Display	<b>▶ Display or Not display</b>	You can set whether to display the call disconnected within the time specified for "Ring start time" in Received Calls.

### Information

- When a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the FOMA phone starts ringing as soon as the call comes in even if "186" / "184" is added to the phone number. However, during Personal Data Lock, or for the call from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, ringing starts according to the setting of this function.
- If the ring start time is longer than the ring time for Record Message Setting, the ringing operations do not start, activating Record Message instead. To activate Record Message after starting the ringing operations, set the longer ring time for Record Message Setting than the ring start time. The same applies to the ring time for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Automatic Answer.

## <Reject Unknown>

# Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks

Setting at purchase	Accept
---------------------	--------

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

# 1



**Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Reject unknown**

**▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Accept or Reject**

### Information

- If a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If you simultaneously activate "Reject unknown" and "Call acceptance" of "Restrictions", the latter has priority.

## Information

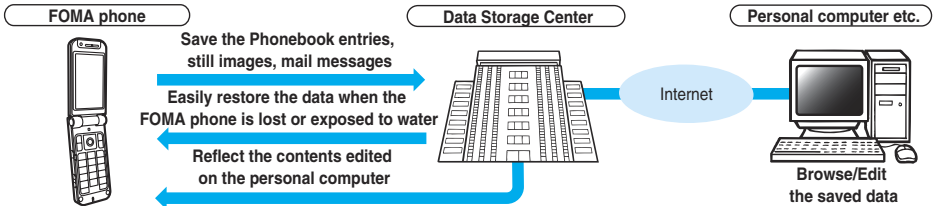
- When a call comes in from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook while you set this function to "Reject", the call is recorded in "Received calls" as a missed call record, and the Notification icon of "Missed call" appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA phone is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Even when this function is set to "Reject", your FOMA phone follows the settings specified by "Call setting w/o ID" if each setting of "Call setting w/o ID" is set to "Accept".
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail regardless of this setting.
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" to "Reject" while "Ring start time" of "Ring time" is set to "ON".

## What is Data Security Service?

Data Security Service enables you to save the Phonebook entries, still images, and mail messages stored in your FOMA phone (saved data files) to the DoCoMo Data Storage Center.

You can restore the saved data files such as Phonebook entries, even when the FOMA phone is lost or exposed to water, to your new FOMA phone from the Data Storage Center by operating i-mode. Further, you can easily edit the saved data files stored at the Data Storage Center from My DoCoMo page via a personal computer, and can store the edited saved data files in the FOMA phone.

- For details on how to use Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



- Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis. (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for Data Security Service.)

### ■ About Data Security Service

Phonebook . . . Operation from the Function menu of the Phonebook List or a detailed Phonebook display (See page 121 and page 122)

Operation by  LifeKit (See page 126)

Mail . . . . . Operation from the Function menu of the Inbox/Outbox/Draft List or a detailed mail display (See page 256)

Still image . . . Operation from the Function menu of the Still Image List or a still image in play (See page 324)

## Other “Security Settings”

Other than introduced in this chapter, the following functions/services for the Security Settings are available:

If you want	Functions/Service name	Reference page
To prevent crank calls or vicious sales calls from incoming	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P.431
To prevent the incoming call that does not notify a caller ID	Caller ID Request	P.432
To ensure safe and reliable data communication by using electronic certificate services ※ Limited to FirstPass sites	FirstPass	P.221
To protect the IC card function from being used illegally	IC Card Lock	P.300
To update software programs in the FOMA phone when necessary	Software Update	P.505
To protect the FOMA phone from data liable to cause trouble	Scanning Function	P.511
To receive necessary mail only from among the large volume of incoming mail	Receive Option	P.245
To store/check safety information using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”
To change/confirm the mail address	Change/Confirm Mail Address	
To reject mail with URL	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)	
To accept or reject mail from the specified domain	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept or reject mail between i-mode mobile phones only		
To accept or reject mail from the specified address		
To reject SMS messages	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject the 200th and succeeding i-mode mail messages sent from a single i-mode phone on the same day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertising mail that is sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the file size of incoming mail	Limit Mail Size	
To confirm the settings for the mail function	Confirm Settings	
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To check whereabouts of lost mobile phone	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

### Information

- The priority order of functions simultaneously set to prevent nuisance calls is as follows: “Nuisance Call Blocking Service” → “Call rejection” → “Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID” → “Ring time”.



# Camera



Before Using Cameras .....	180
Shooting Still Images .....	186
Shooting Moving Images .....	189
Changing Settings for Shooting Images .....	190
Setting Image Size and Image Quality .....	191
Using Bar Code Reader .....	196
Using Text Reader .....	199

# Before Using Cameras

## Notes for when Shooting Images

- Check the lens for any stain before shooting. If the lens is stained, clean the lens with a soft cloth. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or something oily, you will not be able to focus on a subject, or the stains are reflected on still or moving images you shoot.
- Make sure that you do not let fingers, hairs, or the strap overlap the lens when shooting.
- Make sure that you hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands so that it does not move when shooting. Otherwise, the image may be blurred, especially in a dark place.
- Do not leave the FOMA phone with the lens pointing direct to the sunlight. Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.
- If you shoot under a fluorescent lamp, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speeds, “flicker symptom”, horizontal stripes flow from top to bottom of the display, may result. The color tone for the image may vary depending on a shooting timing.
- If you shoot a subject containing an area of an extremely high brightness such as the reflection of sun light, the bright area might be black-spotted but this is not a malfunction.
- Images shot by the cameras might differ from actual subjects in color tone and brightness.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save still or moving shot images.
- A slight time lag is found between when you press  (Record) and when you actually shoot. Therefore, if you shoot a fast moving subject, the subject might be shot with its position slightly away from the one you see it when you press  (Record).
- Do not remove the microSD memory card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or microSD memory card could malfunction.
- If you turn off the power while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.
- If the battery pack is removed off while saving a file to the FOMA phone or microSD memory card, that data becomes contingent.
- You need to obtain a microSD memory card separately to use the functions related to the microSD memory card. The microSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances, etc. (See page 347)

### ■ Important ■

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

## Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute the contents of which a third party holds the copyright such as text, image, music, or software programs downloaded from web pages on the Internet, or recorded using this product, without permission from the copyright holder except for when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed by the copyright law.

Note that it may be prohibited to shoot or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Make sure that you refrain from shooting portraits of other persons and distributing such portraits over the Internet without consent, as this may violate portrait rights.

- You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA phone to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.



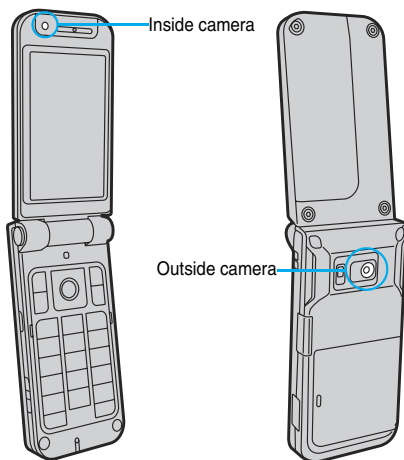
Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Use Cameras

You can use the cameras to shoot still or moving images.

You can switch between the front (inside camera) and the back (outside camera).

See page 191 for how to switch cameras.



### ■Keys used for shooting

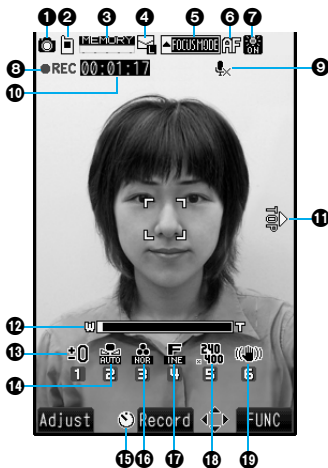
	Operate icon menu
	Call out function menu
	Shutter/Save
	Tele
	Wide
	Switch focus (when the outside camera is used)
	Autofocus (when the outside camera is used)
	Change camera-mode
	Brightness
	White balance
	Photo mode
	Image quality setting
	Image size setting (in Photo mode/Continuous mode)
	Image stabilizer
	Auto timer
	Photo light (when the outside camera is used)
	Switch the setting for Store in
	Switch camera
	End camera (in ordinary time) Release focus lock (when focus is locked)
	End camera

### Information

- While the camera is activated, the photo light flickers. You cannot turn off flickering.
- You cannot change or silence the volume of the shutter sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody for the shutter sound, either.
- If no key operation is done on the Finder display, the camera is automatically deactivated after about three minutes.
- When you shoot in a dark place, ensure to set "Photo mode" of "Camera settings" to "Night mode".

## Finder Display

On the Finder display, the settings are indicated by bars and icons.



Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page
❶ Camera mode		Photo mode	P.186
		Movie mode	P.189
		Continuous mode (Auto, Manual, Auto bracket)	P.186
❷ Store in		Phone: Stores in the FOMA phone.	P.193
		microSD: Stores on the microSD memory card.	
❸ Number of recordable image/Memory capacity bar	—	Number of recordable still image Displays up to 999 images.	—
		Memory usage state (estimate) in Movie mode Displayed in red when the memory space reaches maximum.	—
❹ File size setting		Mail restrict'n (S): Up to 490 Kbytes can be saved.	P.192
		Mail restrict'n (L): Up to 1.99 Mbytes can be saved.	
		Long time: A long time shooting is possible.	
❺ Focus guide		Focus guide	—
❻ Focus		Auto	P.192
		Close-up	
		Landscape	
❼ Photo light		Photo light on	P.191
❽ Shot mode		A moving image is being recorded.	P.189
❾ Movie type set		Records only the video.	P.194
❿ Shooting date/ Recordable time		Inserts the date.	P.193
	—	Recordable time (estimate) for moving images	—
⓫ Top icon		Adjust so that this icon is shown at the upper side of the display when you shoot in the horizontal display. (Displayed when the image size is set to 2M Wide)	—
⓬ Zoom bar		Zooming status	P.190
⓭ Brightness		Brightness of shot image	P.192
⓮ White balance		Auto: For adjusting white balance automatically	P.192
		Fine: For shooting outdoors in fine weather	
		Cloudy: For shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade	
		Light bulb: For shooting under lighting	



Icon/bar name	Icon	Description		Page	
15 Number of frames for continuous shooting/ Auto timer		The number of frames at "Manual" shooting in Continuous Mode.		P.193	
		Auto timer is on.		P.195	
16 Photo mode		Normal		P.192	
		Portrait			
		Sports			
		Food			
		Scenery			
		Night mode			
17 Image quality set.		Photo	Normal: Standard	P.192	
			Movie (microSD)		Fine: Fairly high quality
					Super fine: High quality
					Extra fine: Best quality
		Movie (FOMA Phone)	Normal: Standard		
			Prefer img qual: Prefer image		
			Long dur. mode: Prefer recordable time		
			Prefer motion spd: Prefer motion		
18 Image size		Outside camera photo	3M (1536 x 2048) <sup>※1</sup>	P.192	
			2.7M (1440 x 1920) <sup>※2</sup>		
			2M Wide (1920 x 1080)		
			2M (1200 x 1600)		
			1M (960 x 1280)		
			VGA (480 x 640)		
			CIF (352 x 288)		
			Stand-by (240 x 400)		
			QVGA (240 x 320) <sup>※3</sup>		
			QCIF (176 x 144)		
			Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)		
			Inside camera photo		
			Continuous shot		
			Movie		
19 Image stabilizer		Image stabilizer (Auto or OFF)		P.193	

※1 When Image Stabilizer is set to "Auto", you cannot select.

※2 When Image Stabilizer is set to "OFF", you cannot select.

※3 In Movie Mode, moving images are shot in 320 x 240.

## Specifications for Still Image Shooting

File format	JPEG
Compression format	Baseline format
Pixels	Photo: 3M (1536 x 2048), 2.7M (1440 x 1920), 2M Wide (1920 x 1080), 2M (1200 x 1600), 1M (960 x 1280), VGA (480 x 640), CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 400), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) Continuous shot: CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 400), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	jpg
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007) "2007/11/15 10:00"
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was saved and the number of shot frames (when the 1st frame was shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007) "200711151000000" (Store in: Phone) "P1000001" (Store in: microSD)
Maximum file size	2 Mbyte
Mail attachment/Output	Can be attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone by using the microSD memory card.
Memory capacity	Approx. 41 Mbytes (Phone) See page 184 for the microSD memory card.

### Estimate of the number of storable still images

The number of files that can be saved varies depending on shooting environments.

※The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone and microSD memory card has limit.

#### ■The number of files that can be saved to P904i

Image quality setting Image size	Super fine	Fine	Normal
3M (1536 x 2048)	Approx. 38	Approx. 47	Approx. 54
2.7M (1440 x 1920)	Approx. 38	Approx. 47	Approx. 54
2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	Approx. 55	Approx. 75	Approx. 94
2M (1200 x 1600)	Approx. 55	Approx. 75	Approx. 94
1M (960 x 1280)	Approx. 76	Approx. 108	Approx. 144
VGA (480 x 640)	Approx. 376	Approx. 448	Approx. 523
CIF (352 x 288)	Approx. 673	Approx. 795	Approx. 795
Stand-by (240 x 400)	Approx. 673	Approx. 795	Approx. 795
QVGA (240 x 320)	Approx. 785	Approx. 795	Approx. 795
QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 795	Approx. 795	Approx. 795
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 795	Approx. 795	Approx. 795

#### ■The number of files that can be saved to the microSD memory card (64 Mbytes)

Image quality setting Image size	Super fine	Fine	Normal
3M (1536 x 2048)	Approx. 61	Approx. 76	Approx. 86
2.7M (1440 x 1920)	Approx. 61	Approx. 76	Approx. 86
2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	Approx. 88	Approx. 122	Approx. 152
2M (1200 x 1600)	Approx. 88	Approx. 122	Approx. 152
1M (960 x 1280)	Approx. 122	Approx. 172	Approx. 223
VGA (480 x 640)	Approx. 543	Approx. 634	Approx. 761
CIF (352 x 288)	Approx. 951	Approx. 1268	Approx. 1902
Stand-by (240 x 400)	Approx. 951	Approx. 1268	Approx. 1902
QVGA (240 x 320)	Approx. 1268	Approx. 1268	Approx. 1902
QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 1902	Approx. 1902	Approx. 3804
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 3804	Approx. 3804	Approx. 3804

●The number of files that can be saved is an estimate. In addition, the number varies depending on the microSD memory card manufacturers.

## Specifications for Moving Image Shooting

File format	MP4, ASF
Coding system	Video: MPEG4※1 Voice: AMR, G.726
Pixels	QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	3gp, mp4, asf※2
Title	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was recorded (when shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007) "2007/11/15 10:00"
File name	Automatically set according to the date and time the image was recorded (when shot at 10:00 on November 15, 2007) "200711151000" (Store in: Phone) "MOL001" (Store in: microSD)
Maximum file size	12 Mbytes (Store in: Phone) Can be limited to the size which can be attached to i-motion mail when shooting. (See page 192)
Mail attachment/Output	Can be attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone by using the microSD memory card.
Memory capacity	Approx. 20 Mbytes (Phone) See page 185 for the microSD memory card.

※1 MPEG4 is short for Moving Picture Experts Group Phase4 which is a high efficiency coding (data compression) system for use with mobile communications or the Internet.

※2 See page 357 for file generation of 3gp, mp4, and asf.

### Estimate of recordable time

The recordable time varies depending on shooting environments. Take reference to the recordable time and memory capacity which appears on the Finder display.

#### ■ Recordable time to P904i

File size setting	Movie type set	Recordable time in one time recording (Approx.)				Total recordable time (Approx.)			
		Image quality setting				Image quality setting			
		Prefer motion speed	Prefer image quality	Normal	Long duration mode	Prefer motion speed	Prefer image quality	Normal	Long duration mode
Mail restriction (S)	Normal	18 sec	34 sec	79 sec	119 sec	12 min	23 min	54 min	82 min
	Video	20 sec	39 sec	92 sec	153 sec	13 min	26 min	63 min	105 min
	Voice	299 sec	299 sec	299 sec	299 sec	207 min	207 min	207 min	207 min
Mail restriction (L)	Normal	73 sec	137 sec	318 sec	483 sec	12 min	23 min	54 min	82 min
	Video	78 sec	155 sec	371 sec	10 min	13 min	26 min	63 min	105 min
	Voice	20 min	20 min	20 min	20 min	207 min	207 min	207 min	207 min

● The recordable time is an estimate.

#### ■ Recordable time to microSD memory card (64 Mbytes)

File size setting	Movie type set	Recordable time in one time recording (Approx.)				Total recordable time (Approx.)			
		Image quality setting				Image quality setting			
		Extra fine	Super fine	Fine	Normal	Extra fine	Super fine	Fine	Normal
Long time	Normal	439 sec	566 sec	18 min	33 min	439 sec	566 sec	18 min	33 min
	Video	453 sec	590 sec	20 min	40 min	453 sec	590 sec	20 min	40 min
	Voice	180 min	180 min	180 min	180 min	600 min	600 min	600 min	600 min

● The recordable time is an estimate. In addition, the recordable time varies depending on microSD memory card manufacturers.

## <Still Image Shoot>

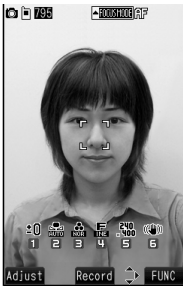
# Shooting Still Images

You can shoot still images by using the camera. The shot still images are saved to a folder within the “My picture” folder in the FOMA phone or to the microSD memory card.


- See “Storage setting (Store in)” and “Select storage” for selecting a storage location.
- See page 322 for how to display saved still images.

## Shoot a Still Image

### 1 Stand-by display ▶



Finder display

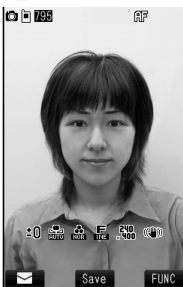
- The Camera menu is displayed by  LifeKit ▶ Camera. Select “Photo mode”.
- You can paste the Camera menu to the desktop. (See page 151)
- When the image size is 2M Wide, hold the FOMA phone horizontally and fit the image at the top and bottom.

### 2 Press (Record).

A still image is shot.





- See page 191 for using Autofocus.
- The image appears horizontally reversed (mirrored) when you shoot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when played back.
- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON”, the Post View display does not appear; the still image is automatically saved. Go to step 4.

### 3 (Save) ▶ Select a destination folder.



Post View display

The still image you shot is saved.

- To save the still image as an mirrored image (horizontally reversed), press  (FUNC) and select “Mirror save”.
- When “Store in” is set to “microSD”, the still image is saved to the folder selected by “Select storage”.
- Press  to cancel the shot still image and return to the Finder display.
- Press  (  ) to attach the shot still image to i-mode mail with ease. (See page 187)

### 4 Press to end the camera.

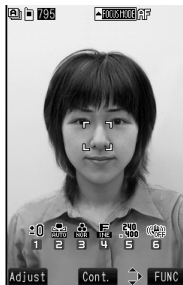
#### ■ Post View display

The Post View display enables you to check still or moving images you shot before they are saved.

## Continuous Shooting

You can continuously shoot still images. You can set the number of frames, and shooting interval for auto-shooting. (See page 193)

### 1 Stand-by display ▶ (for at least one second) ▶




Finder display

- The camera starts in the mode you used last time, “Auto”, “Manual”, or “Auto bracket” (starts in “Auto” at purchase).  
To change Continuous Mode, see “Continuous mode” of “Cont. shooting set”.



### 2 Press (Cont.).

Continuous shooting starts.

If “Continuous mode” is set to “Manual”, press

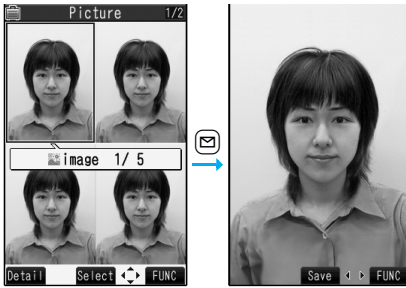
 (Record) the number of times of shooting frames.

- See page 191 for using Autofocus.

- To cancel shooting midway, press . If you shoot in the “Auto” or “Auto bracket” mode of “Continuous mode”, you can cancel also by pressing  (Quit). You can cancel shooting also by closing the FOMA phone.
- The image appears horizontally reversed (mirrored) when you shoot with the inside camera; however the image is correctly displayed when played back.
- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON”, the Post View display does not appear; the still images are automatically saved. Go to step 5.

### 3 To select a still image and save it

#### Highlight a still image and press



- Press from the detailed display to show the previous or next still image.
- To save the still image as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), press (FUNC) and select "Mirror save".

#### To select multiple still images and save them

Put a check mark for still images to be saved (FUNC) ▶ Store selection

▶ Save or Mirror save

#### To save all still images

(FUNC) ▶ Store all

▶ Save or Mirror save

- Press from the Post View display to cancel the shot still image and return to the Finder display.

### 4 Select a destination folder.


- When "Store in" is set to "microSD", the still image is saved to the folder selected by "Select storage".

### 5 Press to end the camera.

#### Information

- The image quality may be coarse depending on "Image size setting" or "Display size".
- When you shoot, the tone selected for "Shutter sound" sounds regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.
- Even when a mail message comes in while shooting, the shooting operation continues. Though unread message icon is displayed, the Mail Receiving display is not displayed.
- If you end the camera function by using Multitask while shooting, unsaved still images are deleted.
- When shooting, hold the FOMA phone securely to avoid blurred images.
- While you are shooting in Photo Mode or "Manual" of Continuous Mode, the photo light flickers. In "Auto"/"Auto bracket" of Continuous Mode, it lights.

### Function Menu of the Post View Display in Photo Mode/Detailed Display in Continuous Mode

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Save</b>	See page 186 and page 187.
<b>Mirror save</b>	You can save the still image you shot without frame as the mirrored image (horizontally reversed). (See page 186 and page 187)
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can save the still image you shot and attach it to i-mode mail. ▶ <b>Select a folder.</b> Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Effector</b>	 <p>Effector display</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>YES ▶ Select a folder.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This is available only in Photo Mode.</li> <li>• See page 188 for the Function menu on the Effector display.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Set display</b>	You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and others for displaying. This is available only in Photo Mode. ▶ <b>Select a folder.</b> Go to step 1 on page 326. • Even when "Store in" is set to "microSD", the still image is saved to the FOMA phone.
<b>Change frame</b>	You can replace the frame added to the shot still image by new one. This is available only in Photo Mode. ▶ <b>Select a frame.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  to bring up the previous or next frame.</li> <li>• To reselect a frame, press  (Cancel).</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Set)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot release the frame.</li> <li>• See page 468 for the pre-installed frames.</li> </ul>








Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Normal display/ Mirror display</b>	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).
<b>Store in</b>	You can set the storage location for the still image. (See page 193)
<b>Display size</b>	See page 194.
<b>File restriction</b>	See page 195.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the still image you shot.








### Information

#### <Effector>

- Effector is available to the following size of still images: CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 400), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
- Selecting “Effector” changes the mirrored image shot by the inside camera to the correct image.

## Function Menu of the Effector Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Frame</b>	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a frame</b> ▶   (Set)</li> <li>• Press  to bring up the previous or next frame.</li> <li>• To cancel, press  (Cancel).</li> <li>• To save the still image you edited, press   (Save).</li> </ul> <p>See page 186 for saving.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 468 for the pre-installed frames.</li> </ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Retouch</b>	 <p>For “Negative”</p> <p>You can set the texture and color tone, for the still image.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item</b> ▶   (Set)</p> <p><b>Sharp</b> . . . . . Stresses the outline.</p> <p><b>Blur</b> . . . . . Softens the outline.</p> <p><b>Sepia</b> . . . . . Makes the color tone sepia.</p> <p><b>Emboss</b> . . . . . Makes the image rugged.</p> <p><b>Negative</b> . . . . . Reverses the color tone.</p> <p><b>Horizontal flip</b> . . . Flips the image horizontally.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  to display the previous or next retouch.</li> <li>• To cancel, press  (Cancel).</li> <li>• To save the still image you edited, press   (Save).</li> </ul> <p>See page 186 for saving.</p>
<b>Attach to mail</b>	See page 187.
<b>Save</b>	You can save the edited still image. (See page 186)

### Information

#### <Frame>

- You cannot add the frame with the size other than that of the still image you are editing.

## Function Menu of the Post View Display in Continuous Mode

- If you select a still image from the Post View display and press **(Select)**, “**☑**” is added. Press **(Select)** again to release the selection.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Store selection</b>	You can select multiple still images from among the shot still images, and save them. (See page 187)
<b>Store all</b>	You can save all the shot still images. (See page 187)
<b>Store all/animat'n</b>	You can save all the shot still images to store as an original animation. ▶ <b>Save</b> ● To save as a mirrored image (horizontally reversed), select “Mirror save”. ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>&lt;New&gt;</b>
<b>Select this</b>	You can select the still image.
<b>Select all</b>	You can select all the still images. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Release this</b>	You can release the selection.
<b>Release all</b>	You can release all the selections. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Store in</b>	You can set the storage location for the still image. (See page 193)
<b>Normal display/Mirror display</b>	You can switch between a correct image and a mirrored image (horizontally reversed).
<b>File restriction</b>	You can set the file restrictions on the multiple still images selected from the Post View display. ▶ <b>File unrestricted or File restricted</b> ● See page 195 for the file restrictions.
<b>Restriction all</b>	You can set the file restrictions on the all still images displayed on the Post View display. ▶ <b>File unrestricted or File restricted</b> ● See page 195 for the file restrictions.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the shot still images.

### Information

#### <Store all/animat'n>

- When “Store in” is set to “microSD”, this function is not available.
- If you have shot a single still image only, this function is not available.

## <Moving Image Shoot>

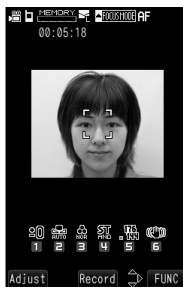
## Shooting Moving Images

You can shoot moving images by using a camera. The shot moving images are saved to a folder within the “**motion**” folder in the FOMA phone or to the microSD memory card.

- For selecting a storage location, see “Store in” and “Select storage”.
- See page 332 for playing back the saved moving images.

### 1 Stand-by display

▶ **(Camera)** (for at least one second)



Finder display

- The Camera menu is displayed by **(LifeKit) ▶ Camera**. Select “Movie mode”.
- You can paste the Camera menu to the desktop. (See page 151)

### 2 Press **(Record)**.

Recording starts.

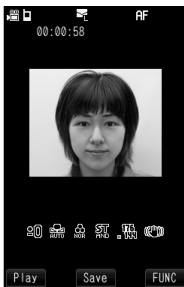
- See page 191 for using Autofocus.
- When you shoot with the inside camera, the horizontally reversed (mirrored) image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.

### 3 Press **(Stop)**.


Recording ends.

- Recording automatically ends when a call comes in, the low battery alarm sounds, or the FOMA phone is closed during recording.
- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON”, or “Store in” is set to “microSD”, the Post View display does not appear; the moving image is automatically saved. When “Store in” is set to “microSD”, the moving image is saved to the folder set by “Select storage”. Go to step 5.

## 4 Save Select a destination folder.



Post View display

The moving image you shot is saved.  
 ● Press  to cancel the shot moving image and return to the Finder display.

## 5 Press to end the camera.

### ■ Post View display

The Post View display enables you to check still or moving images you shot before they are saved.

### ■ If recording ends or the image quality deteriorates while shooting

When you use a microSD memory card that you repeatedly save/delete data files to/from, the writing speed slows down, recording might end midway or the image quality might deteriorate.



Do the following operations to improve such symptoms:

- Copy all the data files from the microSD memory card onto your personal computer as they are.**
  - When your personal computer is set so as to hide folders and files, change the settings to display those folders and files, and then operate. For how to change the settings, refer to the operating manual or Help on the personal computer you use.
  - Do not change the names of folders and files copied to the personal computer.
- Use the personal computer to delete all the data files on the microSD memory card.**
  - Do not format the microSD memory card. The data files might not be played back.
- Copy the data files copied in step 1 back to the microSD memory card.**
  - Be sure to copy them back to the same microSD memory card. Even if you save the copyrighted data files on another microSD memory card, you cannot play them back.

### Information

- The shutter tone set by “Shutter sound” sounds when shooting starts and ends regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.
- If you do key operations while recording, the operation sound may be picked up.
- The photo light lights during recording.

## Function Menu of the Post View Display in Movie Mode

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Play</b>	See page 332.
<b>Save</b>	See page 190.
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can save the recorded moving image and attach it to i-mode mail.  <b>Select a folder.</b> Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Set as stand-by</b>	You can save the recorded moving image and set it for the Stand-by display.  <b>Select a folder.</b>
<b>Display size</b>	See page 194.
<b>File restriction</b>	See page 195.
<b>Cancel</b>	You do not save the recorded moving image.

### Information

#### <Set as stand-by>

- Some moving images might not be displayed correctly.
- See page 138 for playback of the moving image set for the Stand-by display.

## Changing Settings for Shooting Images

You can set a camera when shooting images.

### Use Zoom

You can display the image through the camera in “Wide” or “Tele”.

The maximum magnification for each size is as follows:

### ■ Outside camera

Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Photo (Image stabilizer: Auto)	2.7M (1440 x 1920)	1 level	1.0 times
	2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	1 level	1.0 times
	2M (1200 x 1600)	6 levels	1.2 times
	1M (960 x 1280)	11 levels	1.4 times
	VGA (480 x 640)	31 levels	3.0 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	31 levels	1.3 times
	Stand-by (240 x 400)	31 levels	1.6 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	31 levels	2.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	2.7 times
Photo (Image stabilizer: OFF)	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	3.6 times
	3M (1536 x 2048)	1 level	1.0 times
	2M Wide (1920 x 1080)	1 level	1.0 times
	2M (1200 x 1600)	6 levels	1.2 times
	1M (960 x 1280)	11 levels	1.5 times
	VGA (480 x 640)	31 levels	3.1 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	31 levels	4.3 times
	Stand-by (240 x 400)	31 levels	5.1 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	31 levels	6.3 times
QCIF (176 x 144)	31 levels	8.7 times	
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	12.0 times	



Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Continuous	CIF (352 x 288)	11 levels	1.4 times
	Stand-by (240 x 400)	11 levels	1.6 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	21 levels	2.1 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	21 levels	2.8 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	3.9 times
Movie (Image stabilizer: Auto)	QVGA (320 x 240)	6 levels	1.1 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	21 levels	2.1 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	3.0 times
Movie (Image stabilizer: OFF)	QVGA (320 x 240)	6 levels	1.5 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	21 levels	2.8 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	31 levels	3.9 times


### ■ Inside camera

Camera mode	Size	Level of zoom	The maximum magnifications (Approx.)
Photo/ Continuous	CIF (352 x 288)	1 level	1.0 times
	Stand-by (240 x 400)	1 level	1.0 times
	QVGA (240 x 320)	1 level	1.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	21 levels	2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	21 levels	2.7 times
Movie	QVGA (320 x 240)	1 level	1.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	21 levels	2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	21 levels	2.7 times

## 1 Finder display

▶ Use  to adjust the magnification.

### Information

- The image quality may slightly change when you select "Wide" or "Tele".
- "Tele" is released in the following cases:
  - When you press  to end the camera
  - When a size is changed
  - When camera mode is switched

## Use Autofocus


You can shoot with the outside camera after confirming the focus conditions. You can use Autofocus, even if "Focus" is set to "Close-up" or "Landscape".

## 1 Finder display




For Photo Mode

When the subject is focused, a confirmation tone sounds, then the frame becomes green and the focus is locked. When the subject is not focused, the frame becomes red.

- Press  to focus again.

## 2 Press (Record).

- If "Focus" is set to "Auto", the subject is automatically focused on and shot when you press  (Record) from the Finder display.

### Information


- If "Movie type set" is set to "Voice" in Movie Mode, you cannot use Autofocus.

## Photo Light

At Camera start-up	OFF
--------------------	-----

You can light the photo light as a spare light for when you use the outside camera to shoot in a dark place. In Photo Mode, the photo light flashes strong at the instant the shutter is pressed.

## 1 Finder display

- Press  to turn off the photo light.

The photo light returns to the flickering state when you do not operate for about 30 seconds. Further, it goes off when you show the Post View display.


### Information

- You cannot use the photo light when "Movie type set" is set to "Voice" in Movie Mode.
- You cannot use the photo light when the battery level shows very low.


## Setting Image Size and Image Quality

### Function Menu of the Finder Display

- The settings for camera shooting or for saving files are retained even if you end the camera. When you start up the camera again, the previous settings before ending the camera return.



Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Inside camera/	You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera.
Outside camera	
Setting at purchase/	• You can switch between the inside camera and outside camera also by pressing  from the Finder display.
Outside camera	

### CHG

- ▶ Select a mode.
- When you select "Continuous mode", the camera starts in the mode you used last time, "Auto", "Manual", or "Auto bracket" (starts in "Auto" at purchase).
  - Each time you press  from the Finder display, the mode switches in order of "Photo mode" → "Movie mode" → "Continuous mode".

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Image size setting</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an image size.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you shoot a photo for sending during a voice call, you can select only "QCIF (176 x 144)" and "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)".</li> <li>You can display the Icon Menu by pressing <b>(5)</b> from the Finder display. (See page 195)</li> <li>The image size is automatically determined by "Image quality set." when shooting moving images.</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase Photo Mode: Stand-by (240 x 400) Continuous Mode: CIF (352 x 288) Photo-sending: QCIF (176 x 144)	
[Photo/Continuous Mode]	
<b>File size setting</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Mail restrict'n (S)</b> ... You can shoot up to 490 Kbytes.</p> <p><b>Mail restrict'n (L)</b> ... You can shoot up to 1.99 Mbytes.</p> <p><b>Long time</b> ... You can shoot for a long time. The moving image is saved to the microSD memory card.</p>
Setting at purchase Mail restrict'n (L)	
[Movie Mode only]	
<b>Image quality set.</b>	<p>You can set the image quality for saving.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an image quality.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Movie Mode, the image size for "Normal" (Phone), "Prefer img qual", "Prefer motion spd", "Normal" (microSD) or "Fine" is QCIF (176 x 144). The image size for "Long dur. mode" is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96). The image size for "Super fine" or "Extra fine" is QVGA (320 x 240).</li> <li>You can display the Icon Menu by pressing <b>(4)</b> from the Finder display. (See page 195)</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase Photo Mode/ Continuous Mode: Fine Movie Mode: Normal	
<b>Camera settings (Brightness)</b>	<p>You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).</p> <p>▶ <b>Brightness ▶ Select a brightness level.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can display the Icon Menu by pressing <b>(1)</b> from the Finder display. (See page 195)</li> </ul>
At Camera start-up ±0	
<b>Camera settings (White balance)</b>	<p>You can adjust the coloring of the image on the Finder display to create a natural color tone.</p> <p>▶ <b>White balance ▶ Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Auto</b> . . . . . For adjusting white balance automatically</p> <p><b>Fine</b> . . . . . For shooting outdoors in fine weather</p> <p><b>Cloudy</b> . . . . . For shooting in cloudy weather or in the shade</p> <p><b>Light bulb</b> . . . . . For shooting under lighting</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can display the Icon Menu by pressing <b>(2)</b> from the Finder display. (See page 195)</li> </ul>
At Camera start-up Auto	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Camera settings (Color mode set)</b>	<p>▶ <b>Color mode set ▶ Select a color mode.</b></p> <p><b>Normal</b> . . . . . Shoots in normal color.</p> <p><b>Sepia</b> . . . . . Shoots in sepia color.</p> <p><b>Monochrome</b> . . . . . Shoots in monochrome.</p> <p><b>Vivid</b> . . . . . Makes the contours vivid and then shoots.</p> <p><b>Natural</b> . . . . . Makes the contours smooth and then shoots.</p>
At Camera start-up Normal	
<b>Camera settings (Photo mode)</b>	<p>You can set a photo mode suitable for the place.</p> <p>▶ <b>Photo mode ▶ Select a photo mode.</b></p> <p><b>Normal</b> . . . . . Standard mode</p> <p><b>Portrait</b> . . . . . Suitable to shoot portraits</p> <p><b>Sports</b> . . . . . Suitable to shoot moving subjects such as athletes</p> <p><b>Food</b> . . . . . Suitable to shoot dishes</p> <p><b>Scenery</b> . . . . . Suitable to shoot scenery</p> <p><b>Night mode</b> . . . . . Suitable to shoot in dark places such as in nighttime</p> <p><b>Backlight</b> . . . . . Suitable to shoot against the sun (from behind)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can display the Icon Menu by pressing <b>(3)</b> from the Finder display. (See page 195)</li> </ul>
At Camera start-up Normal	
<b>Camera settings (Focus)</b>	<p>You can set the focus of the outside camera.</p> <p>▶ <b>Focus ▶ Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Auto</b> . . . . . For using Autofocus (See page 191)</p> <p><b>Close-up</b> . . . . . For focusing on a subject in a short distance</p> <p><b>Landscape</b> . . . . . For focusing on a subject in a long distance</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Each time you press <b>(D)</b> from the Finder display, the mode switches in order of "Auto"→"Close-up"→"Landscape".</li> </ul>
At Camera start-up Auto	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Camera settings (Shutter sound)</b>	You can set a shutter sound. You can set a shutter sound each for Photo Mode
Setting at purchase Sound 1	(Continuous Mode) and Movie Mode. ▶ <b>Shutter sound</b> ▶ <b>Select a shutter sound.</b> ● While you are selecting, the shutter tone sounds for confirmation.
<b>Camera settings (Flicker correction)</b>	You can suppress blur on the Finder display for when shooting with the outside camera.
Setting at purchase Auto	▶ <b>Flicker correction</b> ▶ <b>Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz) or Mode 2 (60Hz)</b>
<b>Storage setting (Store in)</b>	You can set the storage location for the still or moving images you shot.
Setting at purchase Phone	▶ <b>Store in ▶ Phone or microSD</b> ● Each time you press  from the Finder display, the setting switches between "Phone" and "microSD".
<b>Storage setting (Auto save set)</b>	You can set whether to automatically save the image. When "Store in" is "Phone", the image is saved to the "Camera" folder. When "Store in" is "microSD", the image is saved to the folder set by "Select storage".
Setting at purchase OFF	▶ <b>Auto save set ▶ ON or OFF</b>
<b>Storage setting (File restriction)</b>	See page 195.
<b>Image stabilizer</b>	You can correct camera shake for when shooting with the outside camera.
Setting at purchase Auto	▶ <b>Auto or OFF</b> ● You can set Image Stabilizer also by pressing  from the Finder display. (See page 195)
[Photo/Movie Mode]	
<b>Photo light</b>	See page 191.
<b>Auto timer</b>	See page 195.
<b>Shooting effect (Shoot with frame)</b>	You can shoot a still image with a frame.
At Camera start-up OFF	▶ <b>Shoot with frame ▶ ON or OFF</b> ▶ <b>Select a frame.</b> ● See page 468 for the pre-installed frames.
[Photo Mode only]	
<b>Shooting effect (Cushy mark)</b>	You can shoot a person's face with a cushy mark pasted. The cushy mark is automatically pasted in an appropriate position.
At Camera start-up OFF	▶ <b>Cushy mark ▶ ON or OFF</b> ▶ <b>Select a cushy mark.</b> ● See page 468 for pre-installed cushy marks.
[Photo/Movie Mode]	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Shooting effect (Shooting date)</b>	You can set whether to insert the date on the shot still image. Set the date following by "Set time" in advance.
Setting at purchase OFF	▶ <b>Shooting date ▶ ON or OFF</b> ● You can set only when "Image size setting" is set to larger than "VGA (480 x 640)".
[Photo Mode only]	
<b>Cont.shooting set. (Continuous mode)</b>	▶ <b>Continuous mode ▶ Select a mode.</b> <b>Auto</b> . . . . . Shoots automatically at an interval and with the number of frames as specified by "Shot interval" and "Shot number".
Setting at purchase Auto	<b>Manual</b> . . . . . Shoots one by one manually with the number of frames specified by "Shot number".
[Continuous Mode only]	<b>Auto bracket</b> . . . Shoots automatically nine still images at an interval of about 0.3 second while changing the brightness and color tone one by one. ● Select "Manual" to display the number of frames for continuous shooting.
<b>Cont.shooting set. (Shot interval)</b>	▶ <b>Shot interval</b> ▶ <b>Select a shooting interval.</b> ● When "Image size setting" is set to "CIF (352 x 288)", "Shot interval" is set to "1.0 second" if it has been set to "0.5 second". ● You can set this only in "Auto" of Continuous Mode.
Setting at purchase CIF (352 x 288): 1.0 second Stand-by (240 x 400)/ QVGA (240 x 320)/ QCIF (176 x 144)/ Sub-QCIF (128 x 96): 0.5 second	
[Continuous Mode only]	
<b>Cont.shooting set. (Shot number)</b>	▶ <b>Shot number</b> ▶ <b>Enter the number of photos.</b> ● When "Image size setting" is set to "CIF (352 x 288)", you cannot change "Shot number". ● You can set this only in "Auto" or "Manual" of Continuous Mode.
Setting at purchase CIF (352 x 288): 4 (fixed) Stand-by (240 x 400)/ QVGA (240 x 320)/ QCIF (176 x 144)/ Sub-QCIF (128 x 96): 5	
[Continuous Mode only]	

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Movie type set</b>	You can select whether to record both the video and voice, or one of them when you shoot the moving image.
At Camera start-up	Normal
[Movie Mode only]	▶ <b>Normal, Video, or Voice</b>
<b>Display size</b>	You can set whether to display a moving image or still image in the original size (Actual size) or to fit to the screen size on the Finder display.
Setting at purchase	Actual size
	▶ <b>Actual size or Fit in display</b>
<b>Memory info</b>	You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.
<b>Common replay mode</b>	You can set a shooting size appropriate for attaching to i-mode mail.
[Movie Mode only]	▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>●“File size setting” is set to “Mail restrict’n (S)”, and “Image quality set.” (Movie Mode) is set to “Normal”.</li> </ul>

### Information

#### <Inside camera/Outside camera>

- When “Image size setting” is set to larger than “VGA (480 x 640)”, and you switch to the inside camera, the camera starts up in “CIF (352 x 288)”.

#### <File size setting>

- When the “File size setting” is set to “Long time”, “Store in” is set to “microSD”. When “Long time” is set and the camera is finished and re-activated, the file size setting switches to “Mail restrict’n (L)”. Then “Store in” stays set to “microSD”.

#### <Camera settings>

- Note that the image may blur in Night Mode because the exposure takes a longer time.
- If you set “Flicker correction” to “Auto”, it may take a while to automatically adjust the image quality. In this case, switch to Mode 1 or Mode 2 according to the power frequency provided in the shooting location.

#### <Storage setting>

- See “Select storage” for how to set a storage location on the microSD memory card.
- If you change “File size setting” to “Long time”, “Store in” is set to “microSD” and “Storage setting” cannot be operated.
- When “Auto save set” is set to “ON”, the image is saved to the latest folder if “Select storage” is not set or the folder set as a destination folder is deleted.
- When “Store in” is set to “microSD” in Movie Mode, you cannot change “Auto save set”.

### Information

#### <Image stabilizer>

- This function is only for decreasing the degree of camera shake, so its effect differs depending on the subject or condition.
- Image Stabilizer might not work effectively in the following cases:
  - When the camera shakes to a great extent
  - When zooming is in use
  - When shooting moving subjects
- When “Photo mode” is set to “Sports” or “Night mode” in Photo Mode, “Image stabilizer” become invalid.
- It might happen that residual image remains in the area where the subject is moving, or noise is found in overall area. In that case, set this function to “OFF”.
- As peripheral pixels are used for the process of Image Stabilizer, the shooting range differs depending on the “Auto” or “OFF” setting.
- When this function is activated, the processing time after shooting might be longer about two seconds because of the process of Image Stabilizer.
- You cannot use Image Stabilizer for the inside camera.
- When you set Image Stabilizer to “Auto” while the image size is set to 3M, it changes to 2.7M.

#### <Shooting effect>

- When “Image size setting” is set to larger than “VGA (480 x 640)”, you cannot shoot with a frame.
- If you shoot a still image with a frame using the inside camera and save it, the frame is also horizontally reversed when the still image is automatically reversed as a correct image.
- You cannot save the still image shot with a frame as the mirrored image.
- When “Image size setting” is set to larger than “VGA (480 x 640)”, cushy marks cannot be pasted in Photo Mode.

#### <Cont.shooting set.>

- The number of shots that can be set differs depending on the image size. The number of shots that can be set is as follows:
  - CIF (352 x 288): 4
  - Stand-by (240 x 400): 5 through 10
  - QVGA (240 x 320): 5 through 10
  - QCIF (176 x 144): 5 through 20
  - Sub-QCIF (128 x 96): 5 through 20

#### <Display size>

- When “Image quality set.” is set to “Super fine” or “Extra fine”, the setting is always “Fit in display”.
- The setting on the Finder display is reflected on the Post View display; however the setting on the Post View display is not reflected on the Finder display.

#### <Common replay mode>

- When “File size setting” is set to “Long time”, or “Store in” is set to “microSD”, you cannot operate.

## File Restriction

Setting at purchase	File unrestricted
---------------------	-------------------

You can set the file restrictions for when you save the shot still or moving image. The operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled at the receiving end who has received the image as the first distribution.

### 1 Finder display (FUNC)

▶ Storage setting ▶ File restriction

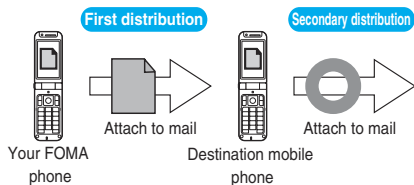
or

Post View display in Photo Mode, Movie Mode or Photo sending/Detailed display in Continuous Mode

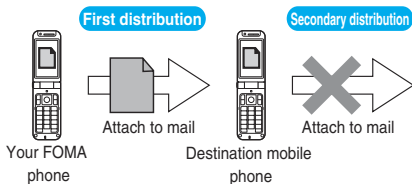
▶  (FUNC) ▶ File restriction

### 2 File unrestricted or File restricted

#### ■ For "File unrestricted"



#### ■ For "File restricted"



#### Information


- Even when you set "File restriction" to "File restricted", the still or moving images can be output from the destination mobile phone by transmitting the images using infrared data exchange or by copying them to the microSD memory card.
- After saving, you can use "File restriction" on page 324 to change the settings.
- When "Store in" is set to "microSD" in Movie Mode, "File restriction" becomes "File unrestricted".

## Auto Timer

At Camera start-up	OFF
--------------------	-----

### 1 Finder display (FUNC) ▶ Auto timer


▶ ON or OFF




- You can set Auto Timer also by pressing  from the Finder display.

### 2 Enter a delay time (seconds).

- Enter from "01" through "15", in two digits.

#### ■ When Auto Timer is set to "ON"

When set to "ON", "⏱" appears on the Finder display. When you press  (Record), a confirmation tone sounds and "⏱" blinks. The photo light flickers every about 1 second until about 5 seconds before shooting. From about 5 seconds before shooting, the photo light flickers every about 0.5 second, and the confirmation tone sounds every about 1 second. Shooting takes place after the set delay time has elapsed.

- To cancel shooting, press  (Quit) or  (Ch2P) while the photo light is flickering. Even if you cancel shooting, "Auto timer" stays set to "ON".
- If you press  (Record) before the delay time has elapsed, shooting takes place immediately.
- When you shoot, a confirmation tone sounds regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound volume for the confirmation tone cannot be changed.







#### Information

- You cannot use Auto Timer in "Manual" of Continuous Mode.
- Auto Timer will be set to "OFF" when shooting ends.

#### ■ To operate the Icon Menu from the Finder display

You can operate the icons instead of the Function menu to change the settings of the camera. You can set the following: "Brightness", "White balance", "Photo mode", "Image quality set.", "Image size setting", "Image stabilizer".

1. Finder display  (Adjust) ▶ Select an icon  
▶ Select an item.

- You can operate the Icon Menu by pressing , , , , , or  from the Finder display.

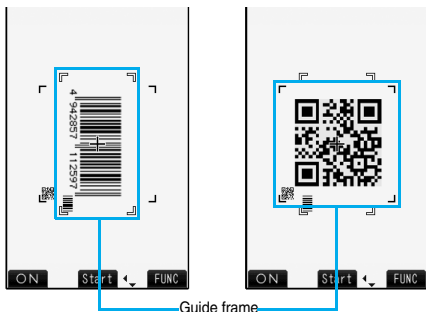
## <Bar Code Reader>

# Using Bar Code Reader

You can use the outside camera to scan JAN codes and QR codes and store them as data.

From the scanned data, you can make calls, compose i-mode mail messages, and access Internet web pages, and so on.

### ■When scanning with Bar Code Reader



- Scan a code with the camera about 10 cm away from the code. However, when the code is small, bring the camera close to it slowly so that the code is scanned larger within the guide frame.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the code.

### ■JAN Code

JAN Code is a bar code that denotes numerals with the vertical bars of a different width.

You can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) JAN codes.



- "4942857112597" is displayed when you scan this bar code with the FOMA phone.

### ■QR Code

QR Code is one of the 2-dimensional codes that denotes data in the vertical and horizontal directions. Kanji, katakana, alphanumeric characters, and pictographs are displayed.

Some QR codes have image or melody information.



- "株式会社NTTドコモ" is displayed when you scan this QR code with the FOMA phone.

## Scan a Code

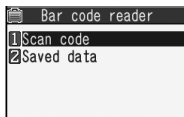
At Bar Code Reader start-up	Photo light: OFF Brightness: ±0 Zoom: Magnified view
-----------------------------	--

You can store up to 5 scanned codes.

You can scan up to 16 divided QR codes.

### 1 LifeKit Bar code reader

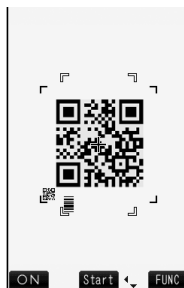
#### ▶ Scan code



Bar Code Reader Selection display





- You can paste the Bar Code Reader menu to the desktop. (See page 151)

### 2 Fit a code to be scanned to the guide frame and press .











Scanning Code display

When the focus is locked, a confirmation tone sounds and the cross mark becomes green.

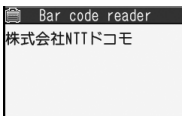
- Press  (ON / OFF) to set the photo light to "ON" or "OFF".
- Press  (FUNC) and select "Brightness"; then you can adjust brightness to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).
- Press  to show the reduced display, and press  to return to the former display.

### 3 Press (Start).

The code is scanned. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

- To cancel scanning, press  or .
- When scanning is completed, the scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the tone does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".
- "" is displayed for melody files and "" or "" is displayed for incompatible or damaged files.
- While you are entering (editing) characters, the Scanned Code Result display does not appear; the Text Data Confirmation display of the scanned code appears. To enter the scanned code, press  (Set). To discard it, press  (Cancel) or . The characters that cannot be displayed are replaced by half-pitch spaces. When the code containing no text data has been scanned, the code is not correctly displayed.
- If scanning is not completed in a certain period, the scanning is suspended and the Scanning Code display returns.
- When the scanned code is part of divided QR codes, select "OK" to repeat step 2 and step 3 for scanning the rest of codes.

### 4 (FUNC) ▶ Save result ▶ OK



Scanned Code Result display




The scanned data is stored.




#### Information

- You cannot scan bar codes or 2-dimensional codes other than JAN codes or QR codes.
- Scanning may take a long time. Hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands during scanning.
- You may not be able to scan codes correctly depending on scratch, dirt, damage, the quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR code version.
- You cannot scan some codes depending on the type or size.

#### Function Menu of the Scanned Code Result Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Save result	You can store the scanned data. (See page 197)
Display list	You can bring up the Bar Code Reader List when one or more files are stored.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Internet	You can connect to the highlighted URL via i-mode or Full Browser. ▶ <b>i-mode or Full Browser ▶ YES</b> • You can connect to the URL also by highlighting the URL and pressing  (Select).
Compose message	You can compose i-mode mail to send to the mail address you are selecting. Go to step 3 on page 232. • You can compose i-mode mail also by highlighting the mail address and pressing  (Select). • When you select "Compose message" from the Scanned Code Result display, the data on the Scanned Code Result display is entered into the address, subject, and text field.
Dialing	You can make a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call to the phone number you are selecting. ▶ <b>Select a dialing type.</b> • When you select "Select image", select an image to send to the other party during the videophone call. • You can make a call also by highlighting the phone number and pressing  (Select).  ▶ <b>Dial</b> • To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 56) • To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 on page 48)
Add to phonebook	See page 114.
Add bookmark	You can bookmark the URL you are selecting. ▶ <b>YES ▶ OK</b> • Select "Page title" to edit the title. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> • Select "Add bookmark" to bookmark the site name and URL.
Save image	You can save the scanned image data to set to the Stand-by display or other displays. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 2 on page 212. • See page 215 when images are stored to the maximum.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Save melody</b>	<p>You can save the scanned melody data to set it as a ring tone or other tones.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 of “Download Melody” on page 213.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select “” to play back the melody.</li> <li>● See page 215 when melodies are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul>
<b>Save ToruCa</b>	<p>You can save the scanned ToruCa file.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can display the ToruCa file by selecting “”.</li> <li>● See page 215 when ToruCa files are stored to maximum.</li> </ul>
<b>Start  i-øpli</b>	<p>You can start up i-øpli from the scanned data.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Copy</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a start point for copying</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select an end point for copying.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can copy codes of up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>● See page 421 for pasting copied characters.</li> </ul>

### Information

#### <Internet>

- URL can be displayed in up to 512 half-pitch characters by Bar Code Reader and up to 256 half-pitch characters by Text Reader.

#### <Compose message>

- If the scanned data contains nonenterable characters, you cannot enter it as a mail address, and those characters may become spaces in the text field.

#### <Dialing>

- You cannot make emergency calls by scanning “110”, “119” or “118”.

#### <Add bookmark>

- You can display up to 512 half-pitch characters for a URL and can store up to 256 characters from the beginning.

#### <Save image>

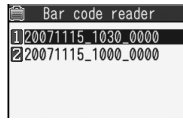
- The file name and title for the saved image are “imageXXX” (XXX are numerals).
- You cannot scan the bar code of the image in excess of 3M (1536 x 2048).

#### <Save melody>

- The file name for the saved melody is “melodyXXX” (XXX are numerals).
- For the melody with no title, the file name is displayed as the title.
- When playing back the melody, it is played back at the sound volume set for “Phone” of “Ring volume”.

## Display the Saved Data List

- ▶  ▶ **LifeKit** ▶ **Bar code reader**  
▶ **Saved data**



The titles for stored data are displayed from the latest one.

Bar Code Reader List

- Select a title to show the Scanned Code Result display.

### Information

- The titles for the scanned data are as follows:  
(Example) When the scanned data is saved at 10:00 on November 15, 2007;  
Title name: 20071115\_1000\_0000
- If you store multiple data items for the same date and time, the lower four-digit numbers increase up to “9999”.

## Function Menu of the Bar Code Reader List

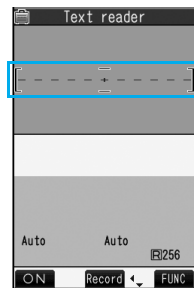
Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit title</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter a title.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Result</b>	You can bring up the Scanned Code Result display for stored data.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>



## Using Text Reader

You can scan printed phone numbers, mail addresses or alphanumeric characters such as URLs using the outside camera, and store them as text information. Use the text information to make calls, compose i-mode mail, connect to the Internet, and so on.

### When scanning with Text Reader



Guide frame

- Fit the character strings into the guide frame to scan.
- Autofocus works when you scan characters about 10 cm or more away from them. When you scan characters in the out-of-focus state, the recognition rate lowers.
- Scan the character string with the camera set in parallel.

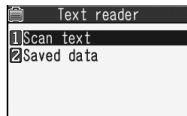
### Scan Text

At Text Reader start-up	Photo light: OFF Zoom: Magnified view
-------------------------	--

You can store eight scanned data files of up to 256 half-pitch characters per item.

The number of characters you can scan at a time is up to 50 half-pitch characters, and you can scan the increased characters in parts.

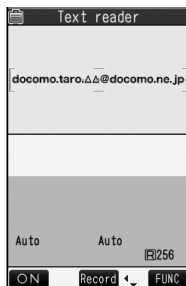
### 1 LifeKit > Text reader > Scan text



Text Reader Selection display

- You can paste the Text Reader menu to the desktop. (See page 151)

### 2 Fit the characters to be scanned to the guide frame and press .



When the focus is locked, a confirmation tone sounds and the guide frame becomes green.

Scanning Text display

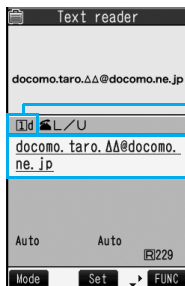
- Press () to set the photo light to "ON" or "OFF".
- Press to show the reduced display, and press to return to the former display.

### 3 Press ()

The characters are scanned. (The shutter tone does not sound.)

- To cancel scanning, press .
- When scanning is completed, the scanning completion tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed and cannot be changed. However, the tone does not sound in Manner Mode or while "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".

### 4 Confirm the scanned result.



Conversion candidate

Scanned result

Scanned Text Confirmation display

The scanned characters are underlined. Confirm the scanned characters for mistakes.

- Press to restart scanning.
- To store the characters without correcting, go to step 6.

### How to correct characters

Select the characters for conversion candidates and correct them.

Conversion candidates for each character are displayed up to four kinds.

- Press to highlight a character to be corrected and press the number for the conversion candidate character.

### Enter directly and correct.

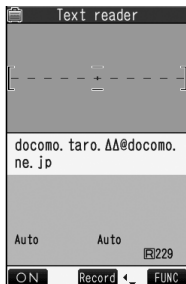
Enter directly if you want to correct the character to other than the conversion candidate.

- Press to highlight a character to be corrected and press (Mode) to switch to "English entry mode" or "Numeric entry mode" ▶ Enter a character.

### Information

- You cannot enter characters such as ".ne.jp" or ".co.jp" by pressing .

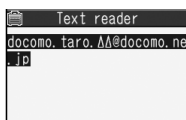
## 5 Press (Set).



The scanned characters are set.

- To link characters, repeat step 2 through step 5.
- To release the set characters, press .

## 6 (FUNC) ▶ Store



The scanned characters are stored.

Scanned Text Result display

- When scanned text contains "tel", "@", or "http://", you can execute Phone To or Web To function by selecting the text. (See page 215) You can select only first item even if multiple items are found.
- Press (Overwr) to overwrite the scanned characters and activate Text Reader. Go to step 2.

### Information

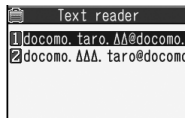
- Hold the FOMA phone securely with your hands during scanning so that you can scan characters correctly.
- Characters you can scan are alphabet letters (uppercase and lowercase), numerals, and symbols (&, (, ), -, ., /, :, @, [, ], \_, ~, ?, =, %, and +). You cannot scan kanji and hiragana characters. You might not be able to scan those correctly depending on the surroundings such as lighting.

### Information

- You cannot scan handwritten characters correctly.
- You might not be able to scan the following:
  - Characters received by a FAX/Copied characters/
  - Designed characters/Characters having no certain space between characters/Characters difficult to identify from the background.

## Display the Saved Data List

### 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Text reader ▶ Saved data



Text Reader List

Up to 22 half-pitch characters are displayed for each stored data.


- Select a data item to show the Scanned Text Result display.
- Press ( ) to compose i-mode mail to send to the characters in the item set as a mail address. (See step 3 on page 232)

## Function Menu of the Scanning Text Display/ Scanned Text Confirmation Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Store</b>	You can store the scanned result. (See page 200)
<b>Edit</b>	You can edit and store the scanned character string. ▶ <b>Edit the text.</b>
<b>Recognition mode</b>	You can set this mode according to the type of the character string you want to scan. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
At Text Reader start-up	<b>Auto setting</b> . . . . . Automatically recognizes the type of characters.
Auto setting	<b>URL</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan a URL. "http://" or "https://" is automatically entered to the head of the character string when it is stored.
	<b>Mail address</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan a mail address.
	<b>Phone number</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan a phone number.
	<b>Number</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan numerals.
	<b>Free character</b> . . . . . Select this when you scan alphabetic characters that are not especially specified.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>NEGA/POSI mode</b>	You can set this mode to fit to the printing conditions of the character string you want to scan.
At Text Reader start-up	▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
Auto setting	<b>Auto setting</b> . . . Automatically recognizes printing conditions.
	<b>Positive fix</b> . . . . Select this when deep color characters are printed over faint color ground.
	<b>Negative fix</b> . . . . Select this when faint color characters are printed over deep color ground.

### Function Menu of the Scanned Text Result Display/Text Reader List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit</b>	▶ <b>Edit the text.</b>
<b>Internet</b>	You can connect to the scanned URL via i-mode or Full Browser. (See page 197)
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose i-mode mail to send to the scanned mail address as a destination address. Go to step 3 on page 232.
<b>Dialing</b>	You can dial the phone number you have scanned. (See page 197)
<b>Store mail add.</b>	You can store the mail address you have scanned in the Phonebook. (See page 114)
<b>Store phone No.</b>	You can store the phone number you have scanned in the Phonebook. (See page 114)
<b>Add bookmark</b>	You can bookmark the URL you have scanned. ▶ <b>OK</b> ● Select “Page title” to edit the title. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b>
<b>Search phonebook</b>	You can search for Phonebook entries using the scanned phone number or mail address. ▶ <b>Select a search method</b> ▶  The Phonebook List that corresponds to the phone number or mail address is displayed.
<b>Display detail/Display list</b>	You can switch between the Scanned Text Result display and Text Reader List.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>



# i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

What is i-mode? .....	204
<b>Displaying Sites</b>	
Accessing Sites .....	204
How to View/to Operate Sites .....	205
Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site .....	207
Using My Menu .....	208
Changing i-mode Password .....	208
Displaying Internet Web Pages .....	208
Displaying Web Pages from URL History .....	209
Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access .....	209
Saving Site Contents .....	211
<b>Downloading Images or Melodies from Sites</b>	
Downloading Files or Data Items from Sites .....	212
<b>Convenient Functions of i-mode</b>	
Operations from Highlighted Information .....	215
<b>Setting Functions of i-mode</b>	
Setting Detailed Functions .....	216
Setting Connection Timeout .....	217
Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication) .....	218
<b>Using Message Services</b>	
Receiving Messages R/F Automatically .....	218
Reading Received Messages R/F .....	219
<b>Using Certificates</b>	
Operating SSL Certificates .....	221
Setting FirstPass .....	221
Changing a CA Center .....	223
<b>Using i-motion</b>	
What is i-motion? .....	224
Obtaining i-motion Movies from Sites .....	225
Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion Movies .....	226
<b>Using i-Channel</b>	
What is i-Channel? .....	226
Using i-Channel .....	228
Setting How Ticker is Displayed .....	228

## What is i-mode?

**i-mode** is the service that makes use of the display of the FOMA phone supporting i-mode (i-mode phone) to enable you to use online services such as site (program) access, Internet access, and i-mode mail.

- i-mode is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis. For inquiries about the subscription, see the back page of this manual.
- For details on the contents of i-mode service, refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

### Before Using i-mode

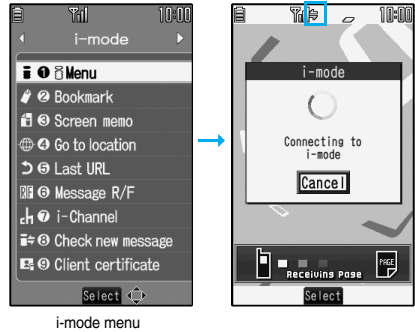
- Contents of sites (programs) and web pages (Internet web pages) are generally protected by copyrights law. Data such as text and images that you obtained to the i-mode phone from sites (programs) and Internet web pages can be used for personal entertainment but cannot be used in whole or in part, as it is or after modification, for commercial purposes or sent as e-mail attachments or output from your i-mode phone to other devices, unless you have permission from the copyright holders.
- The contents saved to the i-mode phone (mail, Messages R/F, screen memos, i-oppli, and i-motion movies) and registered contents such as bookmarks may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the i-mode phone, so you are advised to take notes of the registered contents or important contents. Note that we cannot be held responsible for the unlikely event of loss of the saved contents or registered contents.
- If you replace the UIM with another one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted, you cannot display/play back files depending on the model, such as still images/moving images/melodies obtained from sites, attached files (still images/moving images/melodies and other files) sent/received by mail, screen memos, or Messages R/F.
- When the file whose display and/or playback is restricted by the UIM is set for the Stand-by display or specified ring tone, the FOMA phone works with the default contents when you replace the existing UIM with new one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted.

< Menu>


## Accessing Sites

You can use a variety of services offered by IPs (Information Providers). From the display of the FOMA phone, you can check your bank balance, reserve tickets, and do similar tasks. (IPs offer different types of services. Some of them need to be applied for separately.)

### 1 Stand-by display Menu






While you are online, "i-mode" blinks.

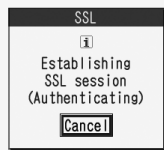
- To cancel during the connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press  (Quit).

### 2 Select an item (link).

Repeat selecting items (links) to display the desired site.

- You can select underscored items on the displayed site. When you select an item, it is highlighted.
- If there is a number at the head of the item showing the link, you can connect to that link directly by pressing the numeric key corresponding to that number. (Some sites cannot be connected.)
- While the site is displayed, press  to scroll through line by line.  
Press  or  to scroll through page by page.

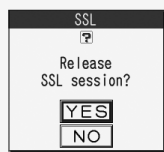
### To obtain SSL pages



The display on the left appears when you obtain an SSL site. When obtaining is completed, the SSL page appears and the lights.

- To cancel during authentication, select "Cancel". To cancel obtaining the SSL page after authentication, press ().

### To return to ordinary site



The display on the left appears when you return to a non-SSL site. Select "YES" to display the ordinary site; the goes off.

### To end i-mode

- From a site display YES goes off and i-mode ends.
- It may take longer to end i-mode.

### Information

- blinks while you are using the i-mode service (during i-mode standby).
- Depending on the site, you may need to apply for the service in writing separately, or to pay information fees to use it.
- Depending on the site, might be displayed when the image is not correctly displayed.
- Depending on the site or data, you might not be able to download or save melodies, PDF files, software programs, and others.
- With some Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode, the color setting might make the text difficult or impossible to see.

## Change to Menu in English

The Menu can be displayed in English.

- Stand-by display Menu English iMenu



- Menu in English will be displayed.
- To change back to the Japanese display, select (Japanese).

### Information

- The Menu in English differs slightly from the Menu in Japanese.
- Items such as Tokusuru Menu and News are not shown on the English Menu.
- Generally, "What's New" site will be updated every other Monday.

### Information

- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on "What's New".

## How to View/to Operate Sites

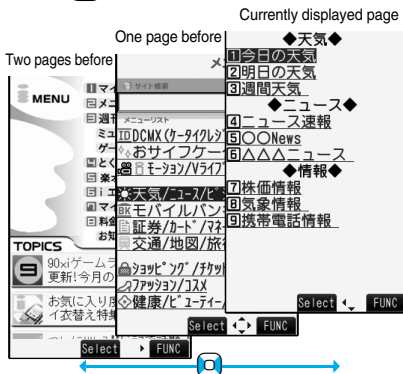
Basic operating methods while a site is displayed are explained.

### Return to Obtained Previous Page/Go to Obtained Next Page

The FOMA phone saves the files such as the displayed Internet web pages to a temporal storage area called a cache. By pressing , you can bring up the page stored in the cache without communicating.

- When you bring up a page that exceeds the cache size on the FOMA phone or a page that is configured (created) to always read its latest information, the FOMA phone starts communication.
- When i-mode ends, the cache is cleared.

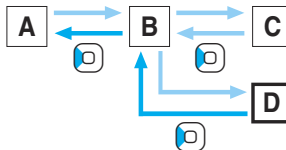
- Press to return to the previous page. Press to go to the next page.



### To turn pages

You can move back through the pages that you have displayed so far by pressing repeatedly. However, if you display a different page ("D") from the previous page ("B"), you cannot return to "C" from "D" even when you press twice. Instead, the pages are displayed in the order of "D" → "B" → "A".

<When pages have been displayed in the order of "A" → "B" → "C" → "B" → "D">



— Sequence of page display  
— Sequence when previous page from the display "D" has been displayed

### Information

- When Flash movies are displayed, the display behavior might differ.

[Next Page](#)

### Information

- When you display pages stored in cache, you cannot display text or settings you entered when last connected.

## Select/Enter Information on Sites

In sites, you may use the displayed radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, and pull down menus.

Name	Display example	Operation/Explanation
Radio button	<input type="radio"/> : Not selected <input checked="" type="radio"/> : Selected	Radio buttons are for selecting one from multiple choices.
Check box	<input type="checkbox"/> : Not selected <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Selected	Check boxes are for selecting one or more items from multiple choices.
Text box		You can enter characters. Highlight a text box and press  (Select) to show the Character Entry display.
Pull down menu		You can select an item from the option list. Highlight a pull-down menu and press  (Select) to show the option list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>●You might be able to select multiple items from pull-down menus. Each time you use  to highlight an item and press  (Select), you can select/release items repeatedly. After selecting items, press  (Finish).</li> </ul>

## Flash Function

Flash is an animation technology using pictures and sound. Flash movies make the sites more attractive. You can download Flash movies to your FOMA phone and play them back or set them for the Stand-by display.

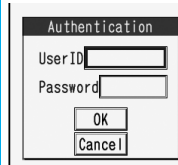
### Information

- Some Flash movies refer to the phone-information data in your FOMA phone. To permit the use of the information in your FOMA phone, set "Use phone information" to "YES". ("YES" is set at purchase.)
- Effect tones sound for some Flash movies. To silence them, set "Sound effect setting" (or "Sound effect") to "OFF".

### Information

- The effect tone and vibrator for the Flash movie set for the Stand-by display do not work.
- The effect tone for Flash movies does not sound during playing back a music file by MUSIC Player.
- Some Flash movies may vibrate the FOMA phone while they are being played back. The FOMA phone vibrates regardless of the setting of "Vibrator".
- You may not be able to save part of the images even if you perform the operation for saving Flash movies or saving them to Screen Memo depending on the Flash movies. In this case, the Flash movies on the FOMA phone's display may appear different from those on sites.
- Some Flash movies might not work correctly.
- You cannot save the Flash movies if an error occurs while they are being played back.
- You can operate some Flash movies by using or . Flash movies can be operated sometimes even when "" is not displayed.

### To enter user ID or password



Some sites have the "Authentication" display such as on the left.

(The format of the display varies according to the site.)

1. Select the "User ID" field  
▶ Enter your user ID.
2. Select the "Password" field  
▶ Enter your password.
  - The entered password is displayed as "\*".
3. OK  
Authentication of your user ID and password will begin.




### Serial number of mobile phones/UIMs

When you select an item, the confirmation display asking whether to send the serial number of mobile phone/UIM may come up. To send the information, select "YES".

### Information

- The "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM" to be sent is used by an identifying the user, providing customized information, and for judging if the contents the IP (Information Provider) offers are available on your mobile phone.
- The "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM" is sent to the IPs (Information Providers) over the Internet, so could be deciphered by third parties. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IPs (Information Providers) or others, by this operation.



Function Menu while Site is Displayed	
Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add bookmark</b>	See page 209.
<b>Add screen memo</b>	See page 211.
 <b>Menu</b>	You can return to "  Menu".
<b>Bookmark</b>	You can display the Bookmark Folder List. (See page 210)
<b>Screen memo list</b>	You can display the Screen Memo Folder List. (See page 211)
<b>Reload</b>	The displayed contents will change to the latest ones.
<b>Save image</b>	See page 212.
<b>Save BG Image</b>	▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 2 on page 212.
<b>Enter URL</b>	You can directly enter a URL to display an Internet web page. (See page 208)
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 114.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can paste or attach the URL of a displayed site or screen memo, or images to the text to compose i-mode mail. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Attach URL</b> . . . . . Pastes a URL to the text of i-mode mail. <b>Attach image</b> . . . . . Select an image to attach it to i-mode mail. <b>Insert dec. mail</b> . . . . . Select an image to paste it to Deco-mail. Go to step 2 on page 232. ● See page 236 for Deco-mail.
<b>Title</b>	You can display the title of the displayed site.
<b>URL</b>	You can display the URL of the displayed site.
<b>Certificate</b>	You can check the subject name, author, validity period and serial number of the certificate used in SSL communication. Up to five certifications are displayed. ● Use  to scroll the display to check the information.
<b>Change CHR code</b>	When characters are not correctly displayed, you can convert them to the correct ones. ● This setting is valid only for the site being displayed.
<b>Set image display</b>	You can set whether to display the image. (See page 216)
<b>Sound effect</b>	You can set effect tones for Flash movies. (See page 217)

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Retry</b>	You can play back the displayed animation or Flash movie from the beginning.
<b>Switch to FB</b>	See page 314.

**Information**

**<Compose message>**

- The number of characters of the URL you can paste to the text is up to 256 half-pitch characters. If the URL contains 256 half-pitch characters or more, you cannot paste it.
- You may not be able to attach or paste some images to i-mode mail.

**<Title>**

- Titles can be displayed up to 128 half-pitch characters and 64 full-pitch characters.

**<Change CHR code>**

- When characters are not correctly displayed, repeat the operation. However, the previous character is displayed if you repeat the operation four times.
- Even when you repeat this operation, the correct character might not come up.
- If you change the character code when the correct characters are displayed, wrong characters might come up instead.

## <Last URL> Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site

**Display Last URL**

When you end i-mode, the URL of the page displayed last is stored as "Last URL".  
You can display the page you viewed last time by selecting "Last URL" from the i-mode menu.

- 1 Stand-by display ▶    
▶ Last URL

**Information**

- Some pages cannot be stored as "Last URL", such as pages whose URLs contain more than 2,048 half-pitch characters, the Download (Obtaining) Completion display for melodies or i-motion movies, and FirstPass Center pages.

**Reset Last URL**

You can initialize the URL of the page you viewed last time to the  Menu URL.

- 1 Stand-by display ▶    
▶ i-mode settings ▶ Reset last URL ▶ YES

<My Menu>

## Using My Menu

If you register frequently used sites in My Menu, you will be able to access them easily.

You can register up to 45 sites.

### Register Sites in My Menu

- 1 Bring up a page to be registered
  - ▶ Register My Menu
    - The page configuration differs depending on the site.
- 2 Select the i-mode password text box
  - ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ 決定 (OK)
    - The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\*”.
    - See page 156 for the i-mode password.

#### Information

- Some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.
- When you subscribe to a pay site in メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search) and Menu List, it will be registered in My Menu automatically.

### Access Sites from My Menu

- 1 Stand-by display ▶  (  ) ▶  Menu
  - ▶ English iMenu ▶ My Menu
  - ▶ Select a site to be accessed.




#### Information

- If you are using Dual Network Service, you might not be able to use My Menu registered by the mova phone using the FOMA phone, or My Menu registered by the FOMA phone using the mova phone.

<Change i-mode Password>

## Changing i-mode Password

The i-mode password (four digits) is required to subscribe to and unsubscribe from message services and i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings. Be sure not to let others know your i-mode password.

- 1 Stand-by display ▶  (  ) ▶  Menu
  - ▶ English iMenu ▶ Options
  - ▶ Change i-mode Password
  - ▶ Select the “Current Password” text box
  - ▶ Enter the i-mode password (four digits).



- If you enter the i-mode password for the first time, enter “0000” (four zeros) which is set at a time of your contract.
- The entered numerical is displayed as “\*”.

- 2 Select the “New Password” text box
  - ▶ Enter a new i-mode password (four digits).

- Enter your own i-mode password.

- 3 Select the “New Password (Confirmation)” text box ▶ Enter the new i-mode password (four digits) ▶ Select



- Enter the same number that you entered in step 2.



#### Information

- Note that if you do not remember the i-mode password, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license to the handling counter of a DoCoMo shop.

<Enter URL>

## Displaying Internet Web Pages

- 1 Stand-by display ▶  (  )
  - ▶ Go to location ▶ <NEW>

- While a web page is displayed, press  (  ) and select “Enter URL” to bring up the display in step 2. Select the text box. (The URL of the displayed site is in the text box.)

## 2 Enter a URL ▶ OK



- You can enter up to 256 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols.

### Information

- Internet web pages not supporting i-mode or some type of internet web pages to be connected might not be displayed correctly.
- When the file size of the page you have received exceeds the maximum obtainable size of a page, receiving is suspended. The data obtained so far might be displayable by selecting "OK".

## <URL History> Displaying Web Pages from URL History

Up to 10 entered URLs can be registered in URL History.

- 1 Stand-by display ▶ ( )  
▶ Go to location ▶ Select a URL to be displayed ▶ OK



- Excluding "http://" and "https://", up to 22 half-pitch characters can be displayed.
- You can edit the URL by selecting the URL's text box.

### Information

- When the entered URLs exceed 10 items, the URL histories are overwritten automatically, starting from the oldest one.
- When you newly enter a URL to access a site, that URL is saved as a different record even if you access the same URL.

### Function Menu of the URL History List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Add desktop icon	See page 151.
Compose message	You can paste the selected URL to the text of i-mode mail and send it. Go to step 2 on page 232.
Set as home URL	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶ YES • You can operate this only from the URL History List of Full Browser.
Delete	▶ YES

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete selected	▶ Put a check mark for URL histories to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### <Bookmark>

## Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

### Add Bookmark

Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, you can display the page directly. Up to 100 bookmarks can be registered (total for all folders).

- 1 From the page to be registered  
▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add bookmark ▶ YES  
▶ Select a destination folder.

### Information

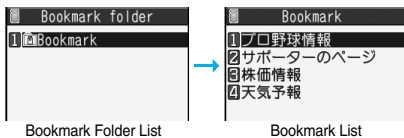
- URLs containing up to 256 half-pitch characters can be registered (up to 512 half-pitch characters for Full Browser). URLs longer than this cannot be registered.
- Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters are stored for a title. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted. If no title is entered, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered.
- The contents entered in the site are not saved to the bookmark.
- Some pages cannot be bookmarked.


### Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the stored contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).


## Display Web Pages or Sites from a Bookmark

- Stand-by display  (  )  **Bookmark**
  - Select a folder
  - Select a bookmark to be displayed.








- While a site is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) and select "Bookmark".
- After you use a bookmark to display a page, that bookmark will be displayed at the top of the Bookmark List.

### Function Menu of the Bookmark Folder List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add folder</b>	You can add a new folder. You can add up to nine folders in addition to each "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b> ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Edit folder name</b>	▶ <b>Edit the folder name.</b> ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
<b>No. of bookmarks</b>	You can check the number of bookmarks stored in all folders.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	See page 360.
<b>All  transmission</b>	See page 362.
<b>Delete folder</b>	You can delete the folder and all bookmarks and screen memos in the folder. You cannot delete the "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	The folders will not be deleted. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Function Menu of the Bookmark List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Move</b>	You can move bookmarks or screen memos to another folder. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b> ▶ <b>Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be moved</b> ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> ) ▶ <b>YES</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit title</b>	▶ <b>Edit the title.</b> ● You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters for a bookmark. If you press  ( <b>Set</b> ) with a blank, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered. ● You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters for a screen memo. If you press  ( <b>Set</b> ) with a blank, the screen memo is registered as "No title".
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can paste the selected URL to the text of i-mode mail and compose it. Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Attach to mail</b>	You can send i-mode mail with the bookmark attached. Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Send Ir data</b>	See page 359.
<b> transmission</b>	See page 361.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	You can copy the bookmark to the microSD memory card. (See page 349)
<b>Set as home URL</b>	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● You can operate this only from the Bookmark List of Full Browser.
<b>Copy URL</b>	You can copy the URL of the bookmark. ▶ <b>Select a start point for copying</b> ▶ <b>Select an end point for copying.</b> ● See page 421 for how to paste copied characters.
<b>No. of bookmarks</b>	You can display the number of bookmarks stored in the displayed folder.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be deleted</b> ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> ) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	You can delete all bookmarks or screen memos stored in the folder. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

<Screen Memo>

## Saving Site Contents

### Save as a Screen Memo

You can save a displayed page as a screen memo to the FOMA phone. You can display the page saved as a screen memo without connecting to i-mode.

You can save up to 100 screen memos. (The actual number of savable screen memos may decrease depending on the data size.)

#### 1 From a page to be saved (FUNC)

▶ Add screen memo ▶ YES

▶ Select a destination folder.

- See page 215 when screen memos are stored to the maximum.

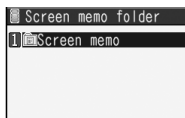
#### Information

- Up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters are stored for a title. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted.
- If you save the Download (Obtaining) Completion display, its data file is saved as well. (The Obtaining Completion display for Chaku-uta Full® music files, for i-motion movies with playable deadline, or for the ToruCa files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited cannot be saved.) Some Download (Obtaining) Completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos. The display except the Download (Obtaining) Completion display is saved with a URL of that page of up to 256 half-pitch characters.
- When you save SSL pages, their SSL certificates are saved as well.
- The contents entered in the text box, or selected with the pull-down menu, check box, or radio button are not saved to screen memos.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per page. However, you can save up to 500 Kbytes of the i-motion Obtaining Completion display, up to 200 Kbytes of the Template Obtaining Completion display, up to 1 Kbyte of the ToruCa Obtaining Completion display, and up to 20 Kbytes of the Download Dictionary Obtaining Completion display.

### Display a Screen Memo

#### 1 Stand-by display

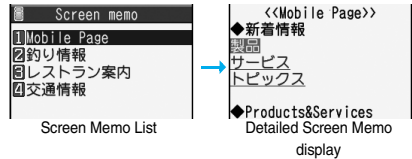
▶ Screen memo




Screen Memo Folder List

- While a site is displayed, press  (FUNC) and select "Screen memo list".

## 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a screen memo.




- Use  to check other screen memos.


#### Information

- The page saved as a screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. This might differ from the latest information on the site.

### Function Menu of the Screen Memo Folder List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add folder</b>	See page 210.
<b>Edit folder name</b>	See page 210.
<b>No. of memos</b>	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in all folders.
<b>Security ON/OFF</b>	You can set so that the folder does not open unless you enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES The folder changes to "  ". • To release it, perform the same operation.
<b>Delete folder</b>	See page 210.
<b>Delete all</b>	You can delete all screen memos. The folders will not be deleted. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

### Function Menu of the Screen Memo List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Move</b>	See page 210.
<b>Edit title</b>	See page 210.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	You can protect screen memos not to be deleted. You can protect up to 50 screen memos. (This number changes depending on the data size of the protected pages.) Protected items are indicated by "  ". • To release protection, perform the same operation.
<b>No. of memos</b>	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in the displayed folder.
<b>Delete</b>	See page 210.
<b>Delete selected</b>	See page 210.
<b>Delete all</b>	See page 210.

## Function Menu of the Detailed Screen Memo Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Save image	See page 212.
Save BG image	▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder. Go to step 2 on page 212.
Add to phonebook	See page 114.
Edit title	See page 210.
Protect ON/OFF	See page 211.
Compose message	See page 207.
URL	You can display the URL of the screen memo.
Certificate	You can check the certificate used for SSL communication. (See page 207)
Sound effect	You can set effect tones for Flash movies. (See page 217)
Retry	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning.
Delete	▶ YES

## Downloading Files or Data Items from Sites

You can download the files such as images and melodies from sites and save them to the FOMA phone. You can save some files directly to the microSD memory card.

### Download Image

You can save the image displayed on a site or screen memo, and then set it as the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display. You can save images, frames and marks for Deco-mail as well. You can save up to 1,800 still images (including the number of stored Chaku-uta Full® music files and PDF files).

- From a site display/Detailed Screen Memo display ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Save image  
▶ Select an image ▶ YES  
▶ Select a destination folder.

- See page 215 when images are stored to the maximum.

- To set it as a display, select “YES”.

Go to step 1 on page 326.

### Information

- Up to 36 half-pitch characters are saved for a file name. When the file name is not specified, a part of the downloaded URL or “imagexxx” (xxx denotes numerals) is saved as the file name.
- Even when an image is displayed on the site, it might not be displayed on the Picture viewer after saving it to the FOMA phone.
- The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a Decomail-pictograph:
  - GIF or JPEG image
  - Image of 20 x 20 dots
  - Image without file restrictions
  - Image of 6 Kbytes or less
- The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a frame or a mark:
  - Transparent GIF (except animation GIF)
  - The extension is “ifm”.
  - Image of CIF (352 x 288) or smaller
  - Images of CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 400), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) are saved as frames, and others are saved as marks.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per image via i-mode, or 500 Kbytes per image via Full Browser.

### Download Melody

You can download melodies and set them as a ring tone and other tones. You can save 20 to 400 max. melodies. (The number of melodies that can be saved might decrease depending on the data size.)

- Bring up a melody downloadable site  
▶ Select a melody ▶ Save ▶ YES  
▶ Select a destination folder.



Obtaining Completion display

- See page 344 for operations while a melody is being played back.
- Select “Property” to display the melody information. (See page 346)
- See page 215 when melodies are saved to the maximum.
- See page 211 to save a screen memo.

## 2 Select “YES” to set the downloaded melody as a ring tone ▶ Select an incoming type.



### Information

- For some melodies, the play part might have been specified. If you set the play-part-specified melody for a ring tone, the specified part only is played back.
- Some downloaded melodies might not be played back successfully.
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters are saved for a file name. When the file name is not specified, a part of the downloaded URL or “melodyxxx” (xxx denotes numerals) is saved as the file name.
- Untitled melodies are indicated by “No title” on the Obtaining Completion display or list.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per melody.

## Download PDF File

You can download PDF files from sites for display. You can save up to 1,800 PDF files (including the number of stored still images and Chaku-uta Full® music files).

### 1 Bring up a PDF file downloadable site ▶ Select a PDF file.

- With the PDF file that cannot be displayed unless you download all pages, the confirmation display appears asking whether to download all pages. Select “YES” to select the destination folder.
- If you have not downloaded all pages, you can additionally download the remaining pages by using “Download remain”.
- See page 366 for how to save the displayed PDF file to the FOMA phone. You can save the PDF file containing pages that have not been downloaded or the PDF file of which download was suspended midway as well.
- See page 363 for operations while PDF file is displayed.

### ■ When the PDF file to be downloaded is set with a password



The display on the left might be displayed depending on the PDF file to be downloaded.

1. Select the password field ▶ Enter the password ▶ OK

- With the PDF file not stored in the FOMA phone, the confirmation display appears asking whether to download it. If you select “YES”, select the destination folder.
- The entered password is displayed as “\*”.\*”.

### Information

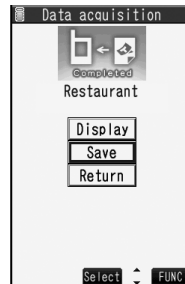
- The file size of the PDF file you can download from i-mode sites is up to 2 Mbytes. You cannot download the PDF file in excess of 2 Mbytes.
- You might be able to display the failed-to-download PDF file by re-downloading.

## Download ToruCa File

You can download ToruCa files from sites. You can save up to 495 ToruCa files. (The number of ToruCa files that can be saved might decrease depending on the data size.)

### 1 Bring up a ToruCa file downloadable site ▶ Select a ToruCa file.

### 2 Save ▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder.



Obtaining Completion display

- Select “Display” to preview the ToruCa file. You can save the ToruCa file also by pressing ( Save ) while it is previewed.
- See page 215 when ToruCa files are stored to the maximum.
- Press ( FUNC ) and select “Add screen memo” to save the display as a screen memo. (See page 211)

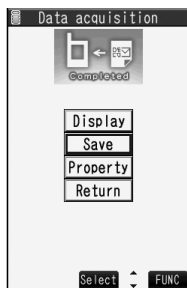
## Download Template

You can download templates for Deco-mail from sites. You can save up to 45 templates including the pre-installed ones. (The actual number of templates that can be saved might decrease depending on the data size.)

- You can download the pre-installed templates from the “P-SQUARE” site. (See page 215)

### 1 Bring up a template downloadable site

▶ Select a template ▶ Save ▶ YES



Obtaining Completion display

- Select “Property” to display the information about the template. (See page 240)
- See page 239 for how to check the stored template.
- See page 215 when templates are stored to the maximum.
- See page 211 to save a screen memo.

#### Information

- When no decoration is set for the template or when the image of which output to external devices from the FOMA phone is prohibited is inserted into the template, you cannot save the template.
- When a file is attached to the template, that file is deleted.
- The title of the downloaded template takes the name of “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm”. (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
- You can download up to 200 Kbytes per template file, but when the number of characters used for the mail text exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters, or when the total of the image size inserted exceeds 90 Kbytes, you cannot save that template file.

## Download Dictionary

You can download dictionaries from sites. You can save up to 20 dictionaries including the pre-installed ones.

- You can download the pre-installed dictionaries from the “P-SQUARE” site. (See page 215)

### 1 Bring up a dictionary downloadable site

▶ Select a dictionary ▶ Save ▶ YES



Obtaining Completion display

- Select “Property” to display the information about the dictionary. (See page 422)
- See page 211 to save a screen memo.

### 2 <Not stored> ▶ To set it as a dictionary file, select “YES”.

- See page 422 for how to operate the downloaded dictionary.

#### Information

- You can save up to 20 Kbytes per dictionary.
- Depending on the site, you might not be able to download dictionaries.



## Download Chara-den Images

You can download Chara-den images from sites.  
You can save up to 10 Chara-den images including the pre-installed ones.

- 1 Bring up a Chara-den image downloadable site ▶ Select a Chara-den image ▶ Save ▶ YES



Obtaining Completion display

- Select "Property" to display the information about the Chara-den image. (See page 342)
- See page 211 to save a screen memo.

### Information

- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per Chara-den image.

### ■ When the data files are stored to the maximum

If the maximum number of data files is stored or there is not enough memory when you try to save the data files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the unnecessary file and save new one.

- Perform this operation to save the following data:

- Images
- i-motion movies
- Melodies
- Chara-den images
- ToruCa files
- Chaku-uta Full® music files
- Screen memos
- PDF files
- Templates

1. YES ▶ Put a check mark for data files to be deleted

▶ (Finish) ▶ YES

If usable memory space is not enough, put a check mark for files to be deleted referring to the size of each file.

"Finish" appears when you put it for those of insufficient memory space.

- If there is a security-applied folder for screen memos, the confirmation display appears asking whether to enable you to select the screen memo in that security-applied folder. When you select "YES", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
- The file set for another function is indicated by "★".

### ■ About "P-SQUARE"

You can download the pre-installed templates (see page 476), dictionaries (see page 422), and Chara-den images (see page 341) from the "P-SQUARE" site (Japanese only).

☎ Menu → メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker) → P-SQUARE



QR code for accessing the site

### ■ Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to save the images, melodies, PDF files, and ToruCa files stored in the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

## Operations from Highlighted Information

You can easily make a call, send mail, and display Internet web pages using highlighted information (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, and so on) displayed on sites and in mail.

- The Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, i-appli To and Address Link functions might not be available depending on the mail sent from a personal computer or the site.
- You might be able to use the Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, or i-appli To function using highlighted information other than a phone number, mail address or URL.
- In B Mode of 2in1, the Mail To function is not available.

## Phone To/AV Phone To Function

You can make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls by using phone numbers or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.

- The Phone To function to make a videophone call is called the AV Phone To function.

### 1 Select a phone number or similar information ▶ Select a dialing type.

- When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to other party during a videophone call.
- The choices for dialing types may not be displayed when the phone number is prefixed by "tel:" or "tel-av:". Go to step 2.

### 2 Dial

- To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 56)
- To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 on page 48)

## Mail To Function

You can send mail by using mail addresses or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.

### 1 Select a mail address or similar information.


The destination mail address is already entered in the address field.

Go to step 3 on page 232.

## Web To Function

You can access Internet web pages, via i-mode or Full Browser, from URL or similar information displayed on sites or in mail.

### 1 Select a URL or similar information ▶ i-mode or Full Browser ▶ YES

- When the URL or similar one contains the information of i-mode or Full Browser, you are connected via the function which corresponds to the information.
- To cancel during connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press  (Quit).

## i-opp! To Function

You can start i-opp! programs from URLs (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

### 1 Select i-opp! information ▶ YES i-opp! starts.

## Information


- Even if i-mode mail text contains a link to start an i-opp! program, you cannot quote the link when forwarding or replying to. Also, you cannot quote it when using the Data Link Software or infrared exchange function.

## Address Link Function

You can bring up a map from the postal address shown in a site or others or can use the location information on the GPS compatible i-opp! program.

You can send the location information by i-mode mail as well.

### 1 Select the location information such as postal address ▶ Select an item.

Run  opp!. . . . . Selects and starts a GPS compatible i-opp! program.

Read a map. . . . . Connects to the map site and displays a map.

Paste to mail. . . . . Converts the location information into a URL and compose i-mode mail with the URL pasted in the text.




Location info. . . . . Displays the details of the selected location information.



## <i-mode Settings>

## Setting Detailed Functions

You can set i-mode and Messages R/F.



### 1 Stand-by display ▶ ( ) ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Scroll	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled for when you use  while displaying a site, screen memo, or the text of Messages R/F. ▶ Select the number of lines.
Setting at purchase	
1 line	
Character size	See page 153.
Set image display	You can set whether to display images or Flash movies included on sites or in screen memos. ▶ ON or OFF • While a site is displayed, press  (FUNC) and select "Set image display".
Setting at purchase	
ON	
 motion setting	See page 226.
Auto-display	See page 219.
Auto melody play	You can set whether to play back a melody automatically for when you open a Message R/F. (See page 219)

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Use phone information</b>	To display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed, the information in the FOMA phone may be used. You can select whether to permit the information to be used for that case. ▶ <b>YES or NO</b>
Setting at purchase	YES
<b>Sound effect setting</b>	You can set whether to make an effect tone sound for when you display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ● While a site is displayed, or from the detailed Screen Memo display, press  (FUNC) and select "Sound effect".
Setting at purchase	ON
<b>Doc. display settings</b>	You can set the display format for when the PDF viewer is activated. (See page 366)
<b>i-mode arrival act</b>	You can set whether to answer the PushTalk call coming during i-mode communication. (See page 105)
<b>Check settings</b>	You can check each of i-mode settings.
<b>Reset last URL</b>	You can initialize the URL of the site you viewed last (to the  Menu URL). (See page 207)
<b>Reset</b>	You can reset each of "i-mode settings" to their defaults. See "Function List" for the items to be reset. (See page 456) ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Information

#### <Set image display>

- Even when "ON" is set, images might not be displayed correctly. In this case,  is displayed.
- When "OFF" is set,  is displayed and the data file is not received.

#### <Use phone information>

- The available information is as follows:
  - Date and time set by "Set time"
  - Reception level of radio waves
  - Battery level
  - Sound volume set by "Phone" of "Ring volume"
  - Language selected by "Select language"
  - Model name and serial number of FOMA phone

#### <Sound effect setting>

- Even when "ON" is set, the effect tones may not sound depending on Flash movies.

### <Set Connection Timeout>

## Setting Connection Timeout

Setting at purchase	60 seconds
---------------------	------------

**It may take long to obtain some sites. You can set the time to wait before canceling obtaining. Obtaining is not canceled automatically when "Unlimited" is set.**

- 1  ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connection setting**  
▶ **Set connection timeout**  
▶ **Select a timeout.**

### Information

- Even when you have set "Unlimited", you may be disconnected owing to radio wave conditions.

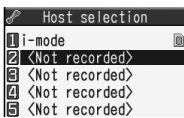
# Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

Setting at purchase i-mode

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host (APN) to use for receiving services other than i-mode (DoCoMo). If you change this setting, you will not be able to use i-mode.

- 1 Settings ▶ Connection setting ▶ Host selection ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press (Edit) ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.



- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to the selected one.
- To delete the stored host, press (FUNC), select "Delete", enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select "YES".

## 2 Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Host name	▶ Enter a host name. • You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
Host number	▶ Enter a host number. • You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶ Enter a host address. • You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address 2	▶ Enter a host address 2. • You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

- 3 Press (Finish).

### Information

- If you set any other host than i-mode, "Pake-Houdai" is not applied.

# Receiving Messages R/F Automatically

Message services automatically deliver information you want to your FOMA phone.

When your FOMA phone is in the service area, it receives Messages R/F automatically from the i-mode Center.

" (white)" or " (white)" appears at the top of the display when a Message R/F is delivered.

You can save up to 100 each of received Messages R/F.

- 1 When you receive a Message R/F, the " (white)" or " (white)" blinks and the message for receiving the Message R/F appears.



After the message is received, the number of received mail messages and Messages R/F is displayed.

- You can display the Message R/F List by selecting "MessageR" or "MessageF".
- If "Auto-display" is set to other than "OFF", the contents of received Message R/F are displayed automatically.
- The former display returns if you do not perform any operations for about 15 seconds. (The number of seconds varies according to the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)

### Information

- Received Messages R/F are not displayed automatically while displaying the screen other than the Stand-by display, while i- $\alpha$ pli is running, or during Public Mode (Drive Mode), Lock All, Personal Data Lock, or ANSHIN-KEY Lock.
- When the number of Message R/F exceeds the maximum of storage, they will be overwritten starting from the oldest Message R/F. Unread or protected Messages R/F are not overwritten.
- When the FOMA phone cannot receive any more Messages R/F, " (black)" or " (black)" is displayed. Delete unnecessary Messages R/F, read unread Messages R/F or release protection.
- When the icon " (white)" or " (white)" is displayed, the i-mode Center holds Messages R/F. When the icon " (black)" or " (black)" is displayed, the i-mode Center can hold no more Messages R/F. Perform "Check new message" to receive them.
- After being displayed automatically, Messages R/F are still displayed as unread ones in the Message R/F List. However, if you scroll through the messages while they are being displayed automatically, they will be indicated as read.

### Information

- Messages R/F for you are held at the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the power is off
  - During a videophone call
  - During Self Mode
  - When you are out of the service area
  - During infrared exchange
  - While connecting to the FirstPass Center
  - During PushTalk communication
  - During Omakase Lock
  - While connecting to the Data Storage Center
  - When the space of Messages R/F is full with protected or unread messages

### Auto-display

Setting at purchase	MessageR preferred
---------------------	--------------------

You can set how to automatically display Messages R/F received during standby.

- 1 Stand-by display
  - ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Auto-display
  - ▶ Select an option for automatic display.

### Auto Melody Play

Setting at purchase	ON
---------------------	----

You can set whether to play back pasted or attached melodies automatically for when you open a Message R/F.

- 1 Stand-by display
  - ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Auto melody play
  - ▶ ON or OFF

### Information

- You cannot play back attached or pasted melodies during playing back a music file by MUSIC Player regardless of the setting of "Auto melody play".

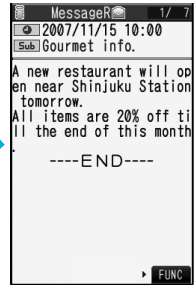
### <Display Message R/F>

## Reading Received Messages R/F

- 1 Stand-by display
  - ▶ Message R/F ▶ MessageR or MessageF
  - ▶ Select a Message R/F to be displayed.



Message R/F List



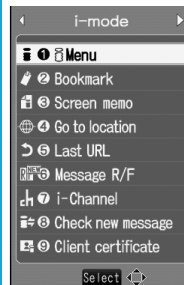
Detailed Message R/F display

- When you select an unread Message R/F, "Ⓜ" (pink) changes to "Ⓜ".
- Use to check other Messages R/F.
- When the text of Message R/F is long, use to scroll the display to check it. Also, you can press or to scroll page by page.

### Information

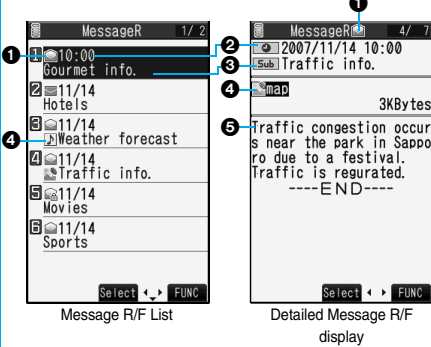
- You can play back an attached melody by selecting it and pressing (Select).

### i-mode menu



When unread Messages R/F are found, "NEW" is added to the icon.

## Message R/F List and Detailed Message R/F display



### 1 Status of Message R/F

“” appears when protection is set.

	Unread Message R/F
	Read Message R/F

### 2 Received date and time

The list shows the time for the Message R/F received today, and shows the date for the Message R/F received until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the Message R/F was received.

### 3 Subject

#### 4 The data attached or pasted

The detailed display shows the data volume.

	Valid melody file
	Part/all of melody files are invalid.
	Valid image file
	Part/all of image files are invalid.
	Valid ToruCa file
	Part/all of ToruCa files are invalid.
	Multiple attached files
	Part/all of attached files are invalid.
	Multiple pasted files
	File applied with the UIM restrictions

### 5 Text of message

## Function Menu of the Message R/F List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Display all</b>	You can re-display all Messages R/F in the “Chronological ↑” order after using the Sort or Filter function.
<b>Sort</b>	You can rearrange the displaying order. ▶ <b>Select a displaying order.</b>
<b>Filter</b>	You can display only Messages R/F that satisfy the condition. ▶ <b>Select a displaying type.</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	You can protect a Message R/F not to be overwritten or deleted. You can protect up to 50 messages (Message R and Message F each). Protected messages are indicated by “”. ● To release protection, perform the same operation.
<b>Unprotect all</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>No. of messages</b>	You can display the total number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA phone, as well as the number of unread messages and protected messages.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for Messages R/F to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete read</b>	You can delete all read Messages R/F. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	You can delete all Messages R/F. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Information

<Sort> <Filter>

- To return to the former status, execute “Display all”.
- If you close the List and re-open it, you can return to the List of all items.



## Function Menu of the Detailed Message R/F Display






Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 114.
<b>Save melody</b>	You can save the attached or pasted melody and set it a ring tone. ▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 2 of “Download Melody” on page 213. ● When multiple melodies are attached, use  to select the melody to save and then save it. ● See page 215 when melodies are stored to the maximum.
<b>Save ToruCa</b>	You can save the attached ToruCa file. ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b> ● When the ToruCa files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save the ToruCa file. Select “YES”. ● See page 215 when ToruCa files in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Save image</b>	You can save the attached image and set it as the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display. ▶ <b>YES ▶ Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 2 on page 212. ● See page 215 when images are stored to the maximum.
<b>Save BG image</b>	▶ <b>YES ▶ Select a destination folder.</b> Go to step 2 on page 212.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	See page 220.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>

Information	
<Save melody>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When saving, the title for the melody is stored instead of the file name. If it has no title, the file name is stored.</li> <li>● Some saved melodies might not be played back successfully.</li> </ul>	

## <SSL Certificate> Operating SSL Certificates

- 1  ▶ **Settings ▶ Connection setting**
- ▶ **Certificate**
- ▶ **Highlight a certificate and press  (FUNC)**
- ▶ **Do the following operations.**

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Certificate info</b>	The subject name, author, validity period, and serial number of the certificate are displayed. ● You can check the certificate also by pressing  ( <b>Select</b> ) instead of  ( <b>FUNC</b> ). ● Use  to scroll the display to check the information.
<b>Valid/Invalid</b>	The selected item is invalidated; then “  ” changes to “  ”.
Setting at purchase All valid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When you select an invalid certificate, it will be validated.</li> <li>● If you set a certificate to invalid, you cannot display the sites with that SSL certificate.</li> <li>● You cannot set “DoCoMo Cert2” to “Invalid”.</li> </ul>

■ Certificates used for SSL communication	
Certificate . . . . .	Certificates issued by the authenticating company and stored in the FOMA phone at purchase.
DoCoMo Certificate . . . . .	Certificates required for connecting to the FirstPass Center or FirstPass sites; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).
User Certificate . . . . .	Certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center by selecting “Client certificate” from the i-mode menu; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).

## <Client Certificate> Setting FirstPass

**User certificates verify that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificates are stored on the UIM for the use on FirstPass sites. When you cannot display a FirstPass site because the user certificate on the UIM has expired or the required user certificate is not stored on the UIM, you can request the issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.**

- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available with the blue UIM.
- The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass Center site are subject to change.
- To show FirstPass sites, you can use Full Browser as well.
- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Messages R/F while connected to the FirstPass Center.
- Set the date and time using “Set time” beforehand to connect to the FirstPass Center.
- This function is not available overseas.

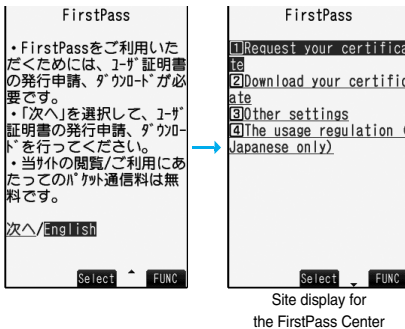
## ■Client Authentication

- With the FOMA phone, server authentication and client authentication are performed for safer data exchange. The site and your FOMA phone exchange certificate, check the other party's certificate and verify each other for safer communication service. By getting client authentication, you can enjoy more secure communication services.
- Client authentication is available via the Internet communication from the FOMA phone or via the Internet communication with the FOMA phone connected to a personal computer. To use the personal computer for the client authentication, you need to install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual (PDF format)" in the "FirstPassPCsoft" folder on the CD-ROM. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to see "FirstPassManual (PDF format)". If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe Reader from the provided CD-ROM to see it. For details such as how to use it, refer to Adobe Reader Help.

## Access FirstPass Center

You can perform user certificate operations on the site of the FirstPass Center site.

- 1 Stand-by display ▶  (  )  
▶ Client certificate ▶ English



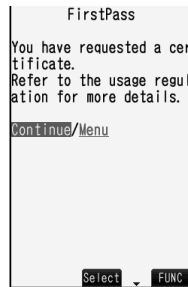
### Information

- Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the regulation.
- You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the FirstPass Center.

## Request Issue of User Certificate for Download

You need to request the issue of the user certificate before you download it. When requesting the issue of your user certificate is completed, download the user certificate. After the downloading is completed, it is saved on the UIM and the FirstPass sites will be displayable.

- 1 Site display for the FirstPass Center  
▶ Request your certificate ▶ Continue



- For an update, the message "Updating user certificate" is displayed.
- When you have already requested the issue of the user certificate, select "Download" from the site display for the FirstPass Center to bring up the display in step 3. Go to step 3.

- 2 Enter your PIN2 code.



- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 157 for PIN2 code.



### 3 Download ▶ Continue

```
OU=DoCoMo Secure Network
Secondary 1
O=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
C=JP
Issuer:
OU=DoCoMo Secure Network
Secondary 1
O=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
C=JP
Expiration:
2009/11/15 08:59:59
Serial Number:
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
xxxxxxxx
Continue/Menu
Select FUNC
```

- If you do not download the user certificate immediately, select “Menu”. From the confirmation display asking whether to close the SSL page, select “YES” to return to the site display for the FirstPass Center.

#### Information

- Before downloading a new or an updated certificate, be sure to request the user certificate to be issued. User certificates cannot be downloaded until the request for issue has been made.

### Access Sites with User Certificate

You can connect to FirstPass sites with your user certificate.

#### 1 Bring up a FirstPass site ▶ Select an item ▶ YES

#### 2 Enter your PIN2 code.

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 157 for PIN2 code.

#### Information

- If you try to connect to the FirstPass site without the user certificate or when its available period is expired, the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue connecting to the site. Select “NO” to return to the previous page. Download or update the user certificate from the FirstPass Center site and then access the site again.
- The packet communication fee for accessing the FirstPass site is included in Pake-Houdai.

### Request Revocation of User Certificate

You can revoke the downloaded user certificate.

#### 1 Site display of the FirstPass Center ▶ Other settings ▶ Revoke your certificate ▶ YES

#### 2 Enter your PIN2 code.

- Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
- See page 157 for PIN2 code.

#### 3 Continue ▶ Continue ▶ Continue

```
FirstPass
Are you sure you want to
revoke your certificate?
(You can't cancel revoca
tion process after start
ed.)
Continue/Menu
```

#### Information

- To use FirstPass after revoking a certificate application, you need to apply again for your user certificate to be issued and then download it.
- See page 221 for how to view the download user certificate.

<Certificate Host>

### Changing a CA Center

Setting at purchase	DoCoMo
---------------------	--------

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

#### 1 (Settings) ▶ Settings ▶ Connection setting ▶ Certificate host ▶ Highlight <Not recorded> and press

(Edit).

```
Connection setting
Certificate host
DoCoMo
(Not recorded)
```

- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to that host.
- To delete the stored host, press (Delete) (FUNC), select “Delete”, enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select “YES”.

Next Page

**2** Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Default URL	▶ Enter a default URL. • You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶ Enter a host address. • You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

**3** Press  (Finish).

**Before Using FirstPass**

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic certification service. By using FirstPass, client authentication is enabled, whereby the site and your FOMA phone exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and perform mutual authentication.
- When requesting issue of a user certificate, carefully read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" on the display, agree to this, and then make the request.
- You need to enter the PIN2 code to use the user certificate. Once you have entered your PIN2 code, all subsequent operations will be deemed to be done by you, so be careful not to let anyone else use your UIM or PIN2 code.
- If your UIM is lost or stolen, "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual can revoke your user certificate.
- DoCoMo bears no obligation or responsibility with regard to the sites and information provided by FirstPass sites. Please solve the problem between you and FirstPass sites.
- DoCoMo and the CA do not guarantee security when you use FirstPass and SSL, so you should use them on your own judgment and responsibility.

**What is i-motion?**

i-motion movies are composed of video, sound and music, and you can play them back obtaining from i-motion compatible sites into your FOMA phone. You can set the i-motion movie for a ring tone. Two types of i-motion movies are available as shown below. The type of the obtained i-motion movie differs depending on the site or file. You can save up to 10 Mbytes per i-motion movie.

Categories		Description
Type	Playback type	
Standard (normal) type (can be saved)	Plays back after obtaining	Plays back after obtaining all the data of an i-motion movie.
	Plays back while obtaining	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion movie. After obtaining, you can play it back in the same way as "Plays back after obtaining".
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Plays back while obtaining	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion movie. The data is deleted after playback, so you cannot play it back again or save it to the FOMA phone.

<Obtain i-motion Movie>

## Obtaining i-motion Movies from Sites

### Play Back an i-motion Movie Obtained from a Site

- 1 Select an i-motion movie from an i-motion obtainable site ▶ Play



Obtaining Completion display

See page 333 for the operation during playback.

- If an i-motion movie can be played back during obtaining, it will be played back during obtaining.
- If “Automatic replay” is set to “ON”, the i-motion movie will be played back automatically after it is obtained.
- See page 211 to save a screen memo.

#### Information

- Depending on the accessed site or an i-motion movie, you might not be able to obtain the data or play it back during obtaining, or play it back after obtaining. Also, you cannot obtain an i-motion movie in ASF format.
- See page 333 for the file formats of playable i-motion movies.
- Even when you stop playing back the data of standard (normal) type while obtaining, obtaining still continues.
- Even if “Automatic replay” is set to “ON”, the data is not automatically played back after obtaining when it is played back while obtaining.
- For an i-motion movie that has restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable period, or playable deadline, “( )” is displayed at the head of the title. An i-motion movie with the playable period restricted cannot be played back before or after the restriction period. If you remove the battery and keep it aside for a long time, the date/time information in your FOMA phone might be reset. In that case, you cannot play back the i-motion movie that has restrictions on the playable period and playable deadline. See page 335 for checking the playback restrictions.
- Depending on the line speed, line state, or radio wave conditions, the playback during obtaining might be suspended or the images might be distorted. You can repeatedly play back the standard (normal) type of i-motion movies after obtaining, but cannot play back the streaming type of i-motion movies.

## Save an i-motion Movie

You can save the obtained i-motion movie to your FOMA phone and set it for a ring tone, the Stand-by display, and the Wake-up display. You can save up to about 20 Mbytes of i-motion movies (including Chaku-uta® music files).

- 1 Obtaining Completion display ▶ Save  
▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder.

- See page 215 for when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

- 2 Select “YES” to execute “Set ( ) motion”.

Go to step 2 on page 335.

#### ■ When downloading i-motion movie is suspended

When you press (QUIT) to suspend downloading an i-motion movie, or when the Download display returns after downloading is suspended by receiving an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading. Select “YES” to resume downloading the remaining part. Select “NO” to show the Obtaining Completion display if any part of the file has been downloaded. Select “Save pt.” to save that file to any folder in “( ) motion” inside “Data box”.

You can download the partially saved file again by selecting it from “Data box”.

- The title of the partially saved i-motion movie is “movie”.
- When the playable period or playable deadline of the partially saved i-motion movie has expired, you cannot download the remaining segments of the file. You can delete the partially saved file when you try to download the file.

#### Information

- Depending on the i-motion movie, you might not be able to save the obtained data to the FOMA phone.
- Partially saved i-motion movies cannot be played back from Data Box.


#### ■ Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

## Property

You can display the property of an obtained i-motion movie. (See page 335)

### 1 Obtaining Completion display ▶ Property

- Use  to scroll the display to check the information.

## When a Link is Set in a Ticker

When a ticker has been set in an i-motion movie, it is displayed during playback.

When the ticker contains the underscored phone number, mail address, or URL for sites, you can execute the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To function, or can save the data to the Phonebook at the end of playback or during halt.

Example: Connecting to a URL in a ticker

### 1 At the end of playback ▶ YES



## < i-motion Setting >

### Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion Movies

Setting at purchase  ON

You can set whether to play back an i-motion movie automatically, for when you have obtained a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie from a site or have selected a screen memo which contains a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie.

### 1 Stand-by display ▶ ( )

- ▶ i-mode settings ▶  motion setting
- ▶ Automatic replay ▶ ON or OFF

#### Information

- Note that a streaming type of i-motion movie is played back automatically even if this function is set to "OFF".

## What is i-Channel?

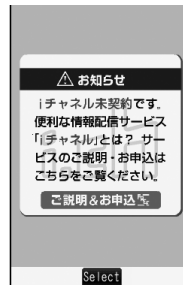
DoCoMo or IPs (Information Providers) distribute news, weather forecast and others as graphical information to i-Channel mobile phones.

Information is periodically received and tickers flow on the Stand-by display for the latest information. You can press the i-Channel key to show the Channel List. (See page 228)

In addition, by selecting a channel you want to see on the Channel List, you can obtain detailed information.

- For cautions on use of and how to use i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- The i-Channel service is provided in Japanese only.

Before contract



When you have not signed up for i-Channel.

After contract

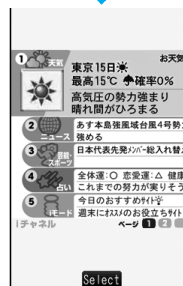


After you have signed up for i-Channel, tickers automatically flow on the Stand-by display when information is received or when the Channel List is displayed.

- See page 29 for when the FOMA phone is closed.



Ticker



Connected



Press **(CH277)** to show the Channel List. You can view the information listed by channel, including the one which flowed as tickers.

Select each channel to browse its detailed information.

※The displays are for reference. The actual ones differ.

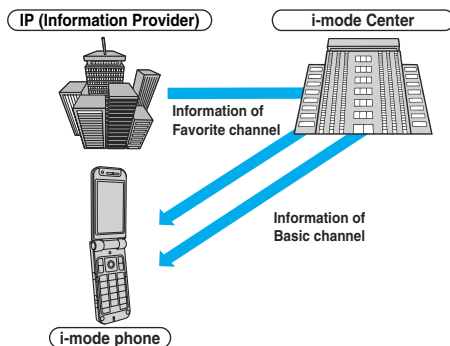
Two types of channels are available, "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel".

"Basic channel" is provided by DoCoMo and comes with the FOMA phone, so you can browse to that channel as soon as you start using i-Channel. The packet communication fee that is charged for auto-updates of information distributed through "Basic channel" is included in the i-Channel service fee.

"Favorite channel" is distributed by IPs (Information Providers) other than DoCoMo, so you can register and use any channels you like. The packet communication fee that is charged for auto-updates of information distributed through "Favorite channel" is not included in the i-Channel service fee.

You can make the information of both "Basic channels" and "Favorite channels" flow on the Stand-by display as tickers.

- You might be charged information fees for some "Favorite channels".
- You need to apply to IPs (Information Providers) to use some "Favorite channels".
- For both "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel", you are charged the i-Channel service fee plus packet communication fee to browse detailed information from the Channel List.
- The packet communication fee that is charged for auto-updates of information distributed through the Basic channel during international roaming is not included in the i-Channel service fee.



- i-Channel is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.  
(You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for i-Channel.)
- See page 228 for how to operate i-Channel.

### Trial service

When you have signed up for i-mode and use an i-Channel mobile phone, and when you have ever not applied for i-Channel service (on the contractor line for the i-Channel mobile phone), "Basic channel" is available for a certain periods with service fee free.

However, you are charged a packet communication fee to browse to detailed information from the Channel List.

- For cautions on use of the trial service and details on how to use it, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- The trial service takes place automatically after a certain period has passed from when you insert your UIM and start using the i-Channel mobile phone. If your mobile phone does not automatically start receiving the service, press the i-Channel key.

The number of times you can use the trial service is once for one contractor line.

The trial service automatically closes when a certain period has passed. For the operations on how to close the service midway, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

### Information

- When the FOMA phone is turned off or if radio wave conditions are bad such as when it is out of the service area, you may not be able to receive information even if you have contracted to the i-Channel service. In that case, select the channel for unsigned subscribers that appears by pressing **(CH277)**; then you can now receive information, and tickers flow on the Stand-by display. If your FOMA phone remains in the default state, you may not be able to receive information. Press **(CH277)**, and then information is received and tickers flow on the Stand-by display.
- To receive i-Channel information overseas, you are charged a communication fee by channel (domestic talk-free service does not apply).
- After you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting is automatically set to off.
- If you cancel the contract for the i-mode service before you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting remains on.

## Using i-Channel



When “Ticker ON/OFF” is set to “ON”, up to 10 ticker files for the latest information flow repeatedly on the Stand-by display. If you want to know more about the information, you can obtain the details from the Channel List.

### 1 Stand-by display ▶



Channel List



The Channel List appears regardless of the “Ticker ON/OFF” setting.

- Press and hold  for at least one second while the i-appli Stand-by display is shown.
- “” blinks during receiving information.

### 2 Select an item (link).



#### Information

- The ring tone does not sound and the vibrator does not work even when information comes in. In addition, the Call/Charging indicator does not light or flicker.
  - Tickers are not displayed in the following cases:
    - When the information is automatically updated after that or when you press  to receive the latest information, tickers automatically flow.
      - When the UIM is replaced.
      - When “Host selection” is changed.
      - When “Reset i-Channel” is executed.
      - When “Reset settings” is executed.
      - When “Initialize” is executed.
- However, the information might not be automatically updated when “Host selection” is changed. To receive the latest information, press  to display the Channel List.

#### Information

- When “Host selection” is changed, the i-Channel connecting end is also changed. (In ordinary, you do not need to change the setting.)
- Depending on your usage state, you might receive information from i-Channel when you display the Channel List.

#### <i-Channel Ticker>

## Setting How Ticker is Displayed

### 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ i-Channel ticker ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Ticker ON/OFF</b>	You can set whether to display tickers on the Stand-by display.
Setting at purchase	▶ ON or OFF
ON	
<b>Ticker scroll speed</b>	You can set the ticker flowing speed.
Setting at purchase	▶ Select a speed.
Normal	
<b>Reset i-Channel</b>	You can initialize the ticker information, set “Ticker ON/OFF” to “ON”, and “i-Channel ticker” of “Private window” to “OFF”. ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES


#### Information

- You can perform “Ticker ON/OFF”, “Ticker scroll speed”, and “Reset i-Channel” for each mode of 2in1. However, i-Channel information is initialized for all modes. Further, when 2in1 is deactivated, they become common to the settings in A Mode.

#### <Ticker ON/OFF>

- When “Ticker ON/OFF” is set to “ON”, you cannot set the i-appli Stand-by display.
- When “Ticker ON/OFF” is set to “ON” and an animation file or Funny transform II file is set for the Stand-by display, playback of the file is suspended after five seconds, and tickers start flowing.
- In Public Mode (Drive Mode), during Lock All, or during ANSHIN-KEY Lock, tickers are not displayed.

#### <Reset i-Channel>

- Tickers are not displayed after you execute “Reset i-Channel”. When the information is automatically updated after that or when you press  to receive the latest information, tickers automatically flow.

# Mail

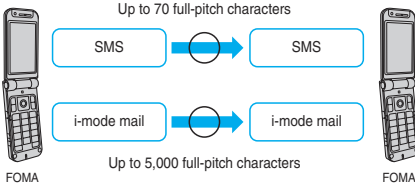
Mail Functions of FOMA Phone .....	230
<b>Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail</b>	
Composing i-mode Mail to Send .....	232
Composing Deco-mail to Send .....	236
Composing Deco-mail by Using Template .....	239
Attaching Files .....	240
Using Photo-sending .....	241
<b>Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail</b>	
Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically .....	243
When Kirari Mail Comes in .....	244
Receiving Selected i-mode Mail .....	245
Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail .....	245
Replying to Received i-mode Mail .....	246
Forwarding Received i-mode Mail .....	247
When i-mode Mail with Files Attached/Pasted is Received .....	247
<b>Operating Mail Box</b>	
Displaying Mail from Inbox/Outbox/Draft .....	248
How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display .....	250
Managing Mail Messages .....	254
<b>Using Mail History</b>	
Displaying Sent/Received Mail Record .....	258
<b>Setting Mail Settings</b>	
Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder .....	260
Creating Mail Group .....	261
Detailed Settings for i-mode Mail and SMS (Short Messages) .....	262
<b>Using Chat Mail</b>	
Using Chat Mail .....	265
Creating Chat Group .....	268
<b>Using SMS (Short Messages)</b>	
Composing SMS (Short Messages) to Send .....	269
Receiving SMS (Short Messages) Automatically .....	270
Checking whether Center Holds SMS (Short Messages) .....	271
Setting Details for SMS (Short Messages) .....	271
<b>Using Web Mail</b>	
Using Web Mail .....	272

## Mail Functions of FOMA Phone

The FOMA phone has mail functions for sending and receiving i-mode mail and SMS messages. You need to subscribe to "i-mode" to use i-mode mail.

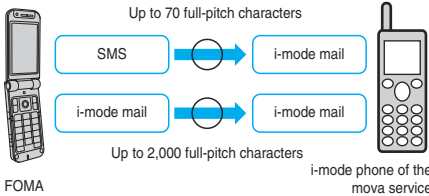
### Sending and Receiving of Mail

#### FOMA phone → FOMA phone



#### FOMA phone → i-mode phone of the mova service

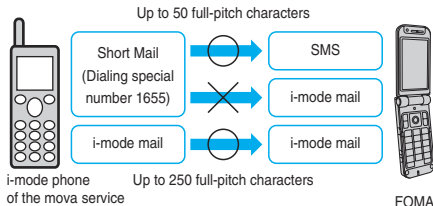
SMS messages sent from the FOMA phone are received as i-mode mail messages by the i-mode phones of the mova service.



※When "SMS report request" (see page 271) is set to "ON", you cannot send SMS messages to the mova.

#### i-mode phone of the mova service → FOMA phone

Short Mail messages\* sent from i-mode phones of the mova service are received as SMS messages by the FOMA phone.



※The Short Mail service enables text messages to be exchanged between mobile phones of mova service.  
 · When a Short Mail message is sent from an i-mode phone of the mova service, the FOMA phone receives it as an SMS message.

## i-mode Mail

Once you subscribe to i-mode, you can exchange e-mails over the Internet as well as with other i-mode phones (including mova phones).

You can attach up to 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) within 2 Mbytes in total besides mail text. The i-mode mail also supports Deco-mail, so you can change the character color, character size, and background color of mail text. Further, a variety of Decomail-pictographs you can insert into text are pre-installed, so you can easily compose pleasant messages to send.

When you first subscribe to the i-mode service, your mail address is as below.

#### ■ If you have subscribed to i-mode newly

The alphanumeric characters before the "@" mark are a random combination. Check your address after signing up for the i-mode service.

(Example) abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<How to check your mail address>

Menu → English iMenu → Options → Mail Settings  
 → Confirm Mail Address

- When exchanging mail with other i-mode phones (including mova phones), you only need to use the part of your address preceding the "@" mark.
- When you receive e-mails from personal computers, the senders need to use your full address including @docomo.ne.jp.
- See page 232 for how to send i-mode mail.
- See page 243 for how to receive i-mode mail.
- For details on the contents of the i-mode service, refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

#### Selecting and receiving i-mode mail

You can check the titles of i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, select messages to receive, or delete messages at the i-mode Center before receiving them. (See page 245)

#### ■ Doing the mail settings

The following settings are available:

<Setting method>

Menu → English iMenu → Options → Mail Settings → [each setting]

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" which is supplied on your i-mode contract.

#### Changing mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

You can change the part of your mail address preceding the "@" mark as in "docomo.△△\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

#### Confirming mail address [Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)]

You can confirm what the currently set mail address is.



## Registering a secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings)]→Register a Secret Code

You can register a four-digit secret code for your phone number when you use it as the mail address. Then, you will not receive i-mode mail that does not include your secret code, thus eliminating unwanted i-mode mail.

## Resetting mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings)]→Reset Mail Address

You can set your mail address to the format “your mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

## Spam mail prevention

You can restrict receiving mail by setting the accept/reject mail settings following any of the methods shown below:

- ① Reject Mail with URL [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)]→Reject Mail with URL
  - You can set not to receive mail messages with the URL of the site that NetSTAR, Inc. judged as the category of meet-a-mate, adult, illicit, or low-security sites.
- ② Reject/Receive Mail Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)]→Reject/Receive Mail Settings
  - From among DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka, and WILLCOM, you can specify companies you receive mail messages from. Further, you can receive mail messages only from the specified domains or addresses. You can separately specify mail addresses to reject receiving even if they are the addresses of the company or domain you set to receive from. Further, you can reject mail messages pretending a domain for a mobile phone or PHS, coming from the companies other than above (Internet).
- ③ SMS Rejection Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)]→SMS Rejection Settings
  - You can restrict receiving SMS messages by one of following four methods: “Reject All SMS”, “Reject Anonymous SMS”, “Reject Intl. SMS”, “Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS”. In addition, you can check the setting state.
- ④ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders [Receiving Mail (Other Settings)]→Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders
  - You can reject receiving the 200th and succeeding i-mode messages sent from a single i-mode phone (including mova phones) on the same day. The default is “Reject”, so you do not need to set if you want to reject messages from the large-volume-mail sender.
- ⑤ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail [Receiving Mail (Other Settings)]→Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail
  - You can reject receiving the mail with “未承諾広告※” (Unsolicited advertisement) added to the head of the title name field and unilaterally sent for advertising purposes. The default is “Reject”, so you do not need to set if you want to reject mail with “未承諾広告※” (Unsolicited advertisement). (Senders are obligated by the law to describe “未承諾広告※” (six full-pitch characters) to the head of title name field.)

## Limiting mail size [Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)]

You can limit the size of i-mode mail you receive by specifying the size in advance.

## Confirming settings [Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)]

You can check the current mail settings for whether mail is accepted or rejected.

## Suspending mail functions [Suspend Mail]

If you do not use the mail functions, you can have the i-mode Center suspend them. After the Mail functions are suspended, you can reactivate them.

However, the mail address immediately after the mail functions are resumed will be “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

### ■ Preventing nuisance mail

You can effectively prevent receiving nuisance mail by changing your mail address, or by using Reject/Receive Mail Settings.

### ■ When you cannot receive i-mode mail

i-mode mail messages are delivered to your i-mode phone as soon as they arrive at the i-mode Center. However, when you cannot receive them because your i-mode phone is off or out of the service area, they are re-sent until the delivery is completed for up to 720 hours for which mail messages are held.

※The i-mode mail messages that could not be received are held at the i-mode Center for 720 hours.

※The re-sending conditions differ depending on the reason you cannot receive them.

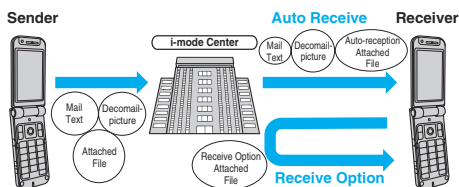
Also, you can set Receive Option Setting so that you can select i-mode mail messages at the i-mode Center to receive them.

### ■ Other things you can do

#### File sending/receiving

You can attach every type of files to an i-mode mail message (2 Mbytes supported). You can attach maximum 10 files, a total of 2 Mbytes to an i-mode mail message for sending.

When you receive an i-mode mail message (2 Mbytes supported), you can receive all the files. You can automatically receive up to 100 Kbytes (auto-reception attached files), and when the attached files exceed 100 Kbytes, you can select necessary files for receiving up to 2 Mbytes (receive option attached files). By “Attachment preference”, you can select and receive attached files regardless of their sizes, even the files of 100 Kbytes or less. When you receive the files on another model, you can receive only the compatible types of files within the memory space of that model.



## Deco-mail

When you are editing i-mode mail, you can change the font size and the background color, and paste images into the text. In this way, you can compose and send your own customized mail and also receive decorated mail. Further, a variety of Decomail-pictographs you can insert into text are pre-installed, so you can easily compose pleasant messages to send. (Decorated mail from a personal computer might not work in the same way as on the personal computer owing to the decoration not supported by the i-mode phone.) If you send Deco-mail to an incompatible mobile phone, or to a Deco-mail compatible mobile phone of up to 10,000bytes, it may be received at the receiving end as URL-described mail. In this case, the recipient can see the Deco-mail by selecting the URL.

- See page 237 for how to edit Deco-mail.
- See page 236 for how to send Deco-mail.
- Compatible models . . . Available on the Deco-mail compatible models. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

## SMS (Short Messages)

You can send and receive SMS messages even if you have not contracted for the i-mode service.

- See page 269 and page 270 for how to send and receive SMS messages.
- You can send and receive SMS messages to and from subscribers of overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For the countries and overseas carriers available for the service, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.

### Information

- SMS messages received by the FOMA phone can be saved to the UIM. (See page 403)

### ■ Address for SMS messages

Your address to receive SMS messages is the contracted mobile phone number.

### ■ Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent/received by SMS are as below.

Address	21 characters (including "+")	
SMS input character	Japanese	English
	(70 characters)	(160 characters)

### ■ When you cannot receive SMS messages

SMS messages are delivered to your FOMA phone as soon as they arrive at the SMS Center. However, they are held at the SMS Center when you cannot receive them such as when your FOMA phone is off or out of the service area.

### Information

- The SMS Center holds SMS messages for a maximum period of 72 hours. You can set the holding period with "SMS validity period". (See page 272)
- When the holding period expires, SMS messages are deleted automatically.

### Information

- You can receive SMS messages held at the SMS Center using "Check new SMS" on page 271.
- Once your FOMA phone receives SMS messages, they will be deleted at the SMS Center. Your FOMA phone will store the SMS messages. (See page 270)

## <Compose Message>


## Composing i-mode Mail to Send

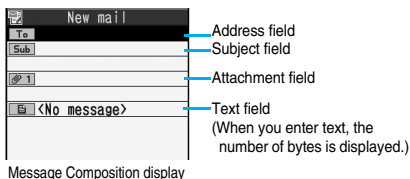
You can compose and send i-mode mail messages.

You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages to the Outbox.

See page 236 for composing Deco-mail.


### 1 Mail ▶ Compose message


- When "Menu icon setting" is set to other than "Champagne", you can show the Message Composition display also by "Stand-by display" .



### 2 Select the address field ▶ Select an item.

**Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.

**Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).

**Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).

**Mail group** . . . . . Select a mail group.

**Enter address** . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number.

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
- If the destination is an i-mode phone, you can send mail also by entering only the part preceding the "@" mark of a mail address.
- See page 234 for sending to multiple destination addresses.
- See page 234 for deleting an added address.

### 3 Select the subject field ▶ Enter a subject.

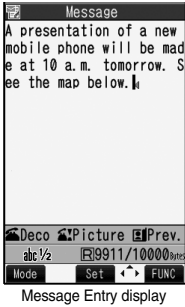
- You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.


### 4 Select the attachment field

▶ Select an item.

- See page 240 for how to select an attachment.



## 5 Select the text field ▶ Enter text.



- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
- See page 234 for pasting a header or signature.
- See page 234 for deleting an entire message you have entered.
- You can select Decomail-pictures by pressing and holding  for at least one second.

## 6 Press (Send).

The animation display during transmission appears and the mail message is sent.

- To cancel sending midway, press  (Cancel) or press and hold  (for at least one second). However, the mail message might be sent depending on the timing.

## 7 OK


### Information






- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be displayed correctly at the destination.
- The half-pitch katakana characters or pictographs might not be displayed correctly except for the cases exchanging between i-mode phones.
- When the number of sent mail messages exceeds the FOMA phone's storage maximum, they will be overwritten from the oldest one. However, protected sent mail messages cannot be overwritten.
- You cannot compose an i-mode mail message when the number of sent mail messages in the Outbox has reached the maximum and those messages are all protected, or when 20 mail messages are saved to the Draft or the Draft is full. Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
- When you select "Compose message" from the Function menu while entering a phone number, the mail address is entered as a destination address if the phone number and mail address are stored in a Phonebook entry. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the Phonebook entry, the first mail address is entered.
- If you try to send the mail whose address is a phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
- You cannot send mail to the addresses that include a comma (,).
- You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields.


### Information

- If the destination address has been stored in the Phonebook with a secret code, the secret code will be added automatically at sending. However, even if a secret code is stored in the Phonebook, the secret code will not be added and the mail will be sent as ordinary i-mode mail unless the address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".
- If you store the secret code and send mail to a mail address other than that of DoCoMo mobile phones, you might not receive the error message for unknown address.
- Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character, and a space is counted as one full-pitch or half-pitch character.
- The mail message you entered a Decomail-pictograph becomes a Deco-mail message.
- In B Mode of 2in1, you cannot compose i-mode mail.

### Function Menu of the Message Composition Display


Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Send</b>	You can send the mail message. Go to step 7 on page 233.
<b>Preview</b>	Check the address, subject, text and attachments before sending. • You can send the mail message by pressing  (Send).
<b>Save</b>	When composing or editing the mail, you can save it to the Draft.




Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add receiver</b>	<p>You can add multiple addresses in the address field to send the same i-mode mail to multiple recipients simultaneously. You can send the same mail to up to five addresses at the same time.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Phonebook</b></p> <p>... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</p> <p><b>Sent address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (<b>Select</b>).</p> <p><b>Received address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (<b>Select</b>).</p> <p><b>Enter address</b></p> <p>... Enter a mail address or phone number.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•To consecutively add addresses, select &lt;Not entered&gt; and repeat the above steps.</li> <li>•Press  (<b>FUNC</b>) and select "Delete receiver" to delete the selected mail address. Select "YES".</li> <li>•Press  (<b>FUNC</b>) and select "Change rcv. type" to change the type of mail. (See page 234)</li> <li>•Select an entered mail address on the Mail Composition display to show the Address List.</li> </ul> <p>▶  (<b>Finish</b>)</p>
<b>Delete receiver</b>	<p>You can delete the selected address when there are multiple addresses.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Change rcv. type</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a type of address.</b></p> <p><b>To</b> ... This is the direct destination address. "To" recipients are displayed at the receiving ends.*</p> <p><b>Cc</b> ... Specify to let parties know the mail contents in addition to the direct recipients. "Cc" recipients are displayed at the receiving ends.*</p> <p><b>Bcc</b> ... Specify to hide the recipients from others. "Bcc" recipients are not displayed at the receiving ends.</p> <p>*They might not be displayed depending on the mobile phone, device, or mail software of the receiving end.</p>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Template (Load template)</b>	<p>You can read in a template and compose Deco-mail.</p> <p>▶ <b>Load template</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•When the text has already been entered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the text.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select a template.</b></p> <p>The contents of the template are entered into the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•While selecting a template, press  (<b>Play</b>) to check the contents of the template.</li> <li>•See page 236 for composing Deco-mail.</li> <li>•See page 476 for the pre-installed templates.</li> </ul>
<b>Template (Save template)</b>	<p>You can save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.</p> <p>▶ <b>Save template</b> ▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•See page 215 when templates are stored to the maximum.</li> <li>•See page 239 for how to check the stored template.</li> </ul>
<b>Attach file</b>	See page 240.
<b>Activate camera</b>	<p>You can shoot and attach an image or i-motion movie.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a shooting mode.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•See page 186 and page 189 for how to shoot.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete att. file</b>	See page 241.
<b>Del all att. files</b>	See page 241.
<b>Add header</b>	<p>You can paste a header at the beginning of the text of the i-mode mail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•You need to store the header beforehand. (See page 264)</li> </ul>
<b>Add signature</b>	<p>You can paste a signature at the end of the text of the i-mode mail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•You need to store the signature beforehand. (See page 264)</li> </ul>
<b>Erase message</b>	<p>You can delete all the text and inserted images. You cannot delete the address, subject or attached files.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Delete</b>	<p>You can delete the i-mode mail you have been editing.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>

Information	
<b>&lt;Add receiver&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot add any addresses if the address field for "To", "Cc", and "Bcc" already contains five addresses in total or contains no addresses.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Change rcv. type&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot send i-mode mail if the "To" field is blank.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Template (Save template)&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The subject of i-mode mail you are composing will be the title of the template. If no subject is entered, the title takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm". (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Add header&gt; &lt;Add signature&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot paste a header/signature if the text, including the header/signature, would exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>If the decoration such as font color or character size is set for the top or end of text, the header or signature will be decorated as well.</li> </ul>	

### Function Menu of the Message Entry Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Decorate mail</b>	You can display Palette. (See page 237)
<b>Template (Load template)</b>	You can read in a template. (See page 234)
<b>Template (Save template)</b>	You can save the Deco-mail as a template. (See page 234)
<b>Pictograph</b>	See page 419.
<b>Symbols</b>	See page 419.
<b>Full pitch/Half pitch</b>	You can switch between the full-pitch mode and the half-pitch mode. (See page 419)
<b>Copy</b>	You can copy characters. (See page 421)
<b>Cut</b>	You can cut characters. (See page 421)
<b>Paste</b>	You can paste the cut or copied characters. (See page 421)
<b>Common phrases</b>	See page 419.
<b>Space</b>	See page 419.
<b>Kuten code</b>	You can enter characters by referring to Kuten Code. (See page 419)
<b>Quote phonebook</b>	See page 419.
<b>Quote own data</b>	See page 419.
<b>Paste location (By position loc.)</b>	You can obtain the current location information by using the GPS function, convert that information into the URL, and then paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶ <b>By position loc.</b> ▶  <b>(Set)</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Paste location (From loc. history)</b>	You can convert the location information retained Location History of the GPS function into the URL, and paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶ <b>From loc. history</b> ▶ <b>Select a location record</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Paste location (From phonebook)</b>	You can convert the location information stored in the Phonebook into the URL, and paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶ <b>From phonebook</b> ▶ <b>Select a Phonebook entry</b> ▶  <b>(Select)</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Bar code reader</b>	See page 196.
<b>Input time</b>	See page 419.
<b>Own dictionary</b>	You can store words in Own dictionary. (See page 421)
<b>Learned words</b>	You can check or delete learned words. (See page 422)
<b>Change input mode</b>	You can switch the character input methods. (See page 420)
<b>2/NIKO-touch guide</b>	See page 420.
<b>Candid. auto-disp.</b>	See page 153.
<b>Candidate display</b>	See page 420.
<b>Character set time</b>	See page 420.
<b>Help</b>	See page 420.
<b>Property</b>	You can display the file name and file size of the image inserted in Deco-mail. ● You need to move the cursor just before the image in advance.
<b>Undo</b>	After entering or deleting characters, pasting data, or operating on a decoration, you can undo your most recent operation. You can do it up to twice. ● You can undo the operation also by pressing  .
<b>Full/Separate disp</b>	You can select whether to show the Message Entry display fully or to show the detailed Received Mail display at the lower part of the display when replying with reference.
<b>Switch messages</b>	You can switch between operations for the Message Entry display and the detailed Received Mail display when replying with reference.
<b>JUMP</b>	You can move the cursor to the top or end of the text. (See page 420)
<b>Preview</b>	You can check the contents of the text before sending. ● You can preview also by pressing  .

### Information

#### <Paste location>

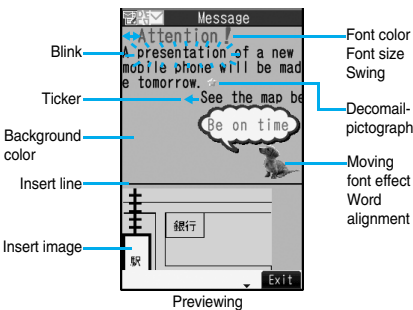
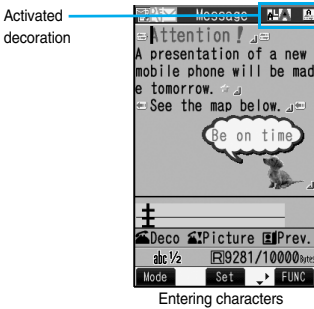
- The pasted URL is counted as the number of characters in the mail text.
- You can paste up to 512 half-pitch characters.
- “▶” is inserted before the pasted URL. However, you can delete it while editing.

#### <Undo>

- Once you use “Undo” to return to the previous status, you cannot cancel this by using “Undo” again.
- If you close the Message Entry display, you cannot return to the previous status by using “Undo” when you re-open it. (However, after you have exited “Preview”, you can return to the previous status by “Undo”.)

## Composing Deco-mail to Send

When editing an i-mode mail message, you can change the size of the font and the color of the background as well as inserting images, thus composing your own original mail. You can compose Deco-mail also using the templates (patterns). (See page 239)



**1** Perform the operations in step 1 through step 3 on page 232.

**2** Select the text field

▶ Decorate the text using Palette.

- See page 237 for how to use Palette.

To enter text after selecting decorations

▶ Select one of decorations

▶ Enter text.

To set decorations after entering text

Enter text ▶ ▶ (Select area)

Go to “Select area” on page 238.

- You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters. (The number of characters you can enter decreases depending on the decoration.)
- Once you decorate the mail text, “ ” appears.
- You can preview the contents of the text by pressing .

Press (Exit) to finish previewing and return to the former display.

**3** Press (Set).

The Message Composition display is displayed.

Go to step 6 on page 233.

### Information

- Even if you delete the decorated characters, only the decoration data remain and the number of characters you can enter might decrease. Clear the decoration and then delete the characters. If you delete the characters by pressing and holding for at least one second, the characters as well as the decoration data are deleted.

- When you reply with quote to the received Deco-mail or you forward it, the decorations or inserted images are displayed at the replying destination or forwarding destination.

- If you use a template containing an image unable to attach to mail for sending, the image is deleted.

- When you send a Deco-mail message in excess of 10,000 bytes to a Deco-mail incompatible model or a Deco-mail compatible model other than the models described below<sup>※</sup>, it is received at the destination as a mail message with the URL for browsing Deco-mail described.

On some incompatible models, however, the mail with text only might be received without the URL for browsing.

- <sup>※</sup>903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703iμ)
- Decorations might not be correctly displayed if you send or receive Deco-mail to and from devices such as personal computers.
- The movement and blink of Ticker/Swing and animation playback stop when a certain period has passed.

## About Decorations

You can decorate the text of i-mode mail using Palette.

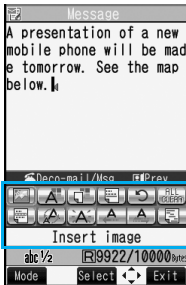
You can set multiple decorations for one point.

- You cannot combine Word Alignment, Ticker, and Swing for one point.
- Lines are inserted by Line Insert with the color specified by Font Color.
- If Word Alignment, Ticker, or Swing is specified, the images and moving font effects are inserted with the specified state.
- You can enter Decomail-pictographs using "Insert image", and from "Pictograph" on the Function menu as well.

### How to use Palette

Press from the Message Entry display to display Palette.

- Press (Exit) to close Palette. You can close Palette also by pressing while you are operating on it.

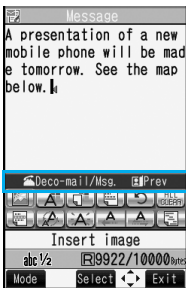


Palette

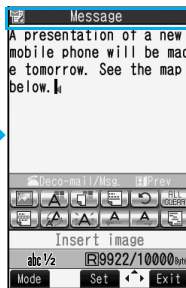
### Switch operations

You can switch between the operation of Palette and the operation of entering text, each time you press . You can move the cursor and enter text with Palette displayed.

- After you enter text, the text entry operation returns. When you use Palette in succession, press and operate.



Palette operation



Text entry operation

### Icons
































Depressed

- When the cursor is over the decorated character, the set decoration icon appears depressed. Highlight the depressed icon and press (Select); then you can change, complete or cancel the decoration. You can release the area selection also by pressing while the area is selected.

### How to operate Decoration

Function	Operation/Explanation
(Insert image/Moving font effect)	You can convert characters to a mark and insert it into the text. The mark animates in various ways and conveys your feelings to the other party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶  ▶ Select a moving font effect</li> <li>▶ Enter text.</li> <li>• To delete the moving font effect, move the cursor to the moving font effect and press .</li> <li>• See page 475 for the pre-installed moving font effects.</li> </ul>
(Insert image/My picture)	You can insert the image stored in "My picture" into the text of mail. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶  ▶ Select a folder</li> <li>▶ Select an image.</li> <li>• You can select a Decomail-picture by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the Message Entry display.</li> <li>• To delete the image, move the cursor to the image and press .</li> <li>• See page 475 for the pre-installed Decomail-pictures.</li> </ul>
(Insert image/Camera)	You can insert the image shot by a camera on the spot into the text of mail. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶  ▶ Shoot a still image.</li> <li>• The image size of the camera is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), QCIF (176 x 144), Stand-by (240 x 400), QVGA (240 x 320) or CIF (352 x 288).</li> <li>• To delete the image, move the cursor to the image and press .</li> <li>• See step 2 and step 3 of "Shoot a Still Image" on page 186 for how to shoot.</li> </ul>
(Font color)	You can change the color of characters and lines to be entered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Select a color ▶ Enter text.</li> <li>• In the font color changing mode, "A" is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>• You can set other decorations in succession.</li> <li>• When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.</li> </ul>
(Background color)	You can change the background color of the mail text. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Select a color.</li> </ul>

Function	Operation/Explanation
 <b>(Insert line)</b>	<p>You can insert a horizontal line into the mail text.</p> <p>The line feed is inserted automatically, and the line is inserted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To delete the line, move the cursor to the line and press .</li> </ul>
 <b>(Undo)</b>	<p>You can return to the previous status of the set decoration. You can do it up to twice.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can undo the operation also by pressing .</li> </ul>
 <b>(Decorate all reset)</b>	<p>You can release all the decorations.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you have inserted an image, the message “In-line image is deleted” is displayed. Select “OK” to return to the Message Entry display.</li> </ul>
 <b>(Select area)</b>	<p>You can set Font Color, Blink, Font Size, Word Alignment, Ticker and Swing over the selected text you have entered. You can also change the set decoration, add another decoration, or cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a start point.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can select all text by pressing  (  ) and selecting “YES”.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select an end point.</b></p> <p>Set, change, add or cancel each decoration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● “ / SELECT” is displayed at the upper right of the display during selecting decoration area.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Set, change, or add decoration&gt;</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an icon and set, change, or add decorations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select another icon in succession to change the multiple decorations or add decorations.</li> </ul> <p>▶ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When Blink, Ticker, or Swing has been set, reselect each icon and complete decorations.</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Release Blink, Ticker, or Swing&gt;</p> <p>▶ <b>Select the icon for Blink, Ticker, or Swing</b> ▶ <b>Select the same icon again.</b></p>
 <b>(Font size)</b>	<p>You can change the size of characters to be entered.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a font size</b> ▶ <b>Enter text.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the font size changing mode, “” or “” is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>● You can set other decorations in succession.</li> <li>● When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.</li> </ul>

Function	Operation/Explanation
 <b>(Select blink)</b>	<p>You can make characters to be entered blink.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter text.</b></p> <p>The set characters are blinking.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the blink setting mode, “” is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>● You can set other decorations in succession.</li> </ul> <p>▶  ▶  <b>(Reset blink)</b></p>
 <b>(Select ticker)</b>	<p>You can make characters to be entered and images to be inserted flow (moving from right to left).</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter text.</b></p> <p>The line feed is inserted automatically and “” is displayed before and after the cursor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the ticker setting mode, “” is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>● You can set other decorations in succession.</li> </ul> <p>▶  ▶  <b>(Reset ticker)</b></p> <p>The line feed is inserted automatically.</p>
 <b>(Select swing)</b>	<p>You can make characters to be entered and images to be inserted swing (moving to left and right back).</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter text.</b></p> <p>The line feed is inserted automatically and “” is displayed before and after the cursor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the swing setting mode, “” is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>● You can set other decorations in succession.</li> </ul> <p>▶  ▶  <b>(Reset swing)</b></p> <p>The line feed is inserted automatically.</p>
 <b>(Word alignment)</b>	<p>You can change the position of characters to be entered and images to be inserted.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a word alignment</b> ▶ <b>Enter text.</b></p> <p>The line feed is inserted automatically, and the alignment is set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the word alignment setting mode, “” is displayed at the upper right of the display.</li> <li>● You can set other decorations in succession.</li> <li>● When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.</li> </ul>



## Information

### <Insert image>

- You can insert up to 20 images within 90 Kbytes in total. However, even if the inserted images are 20 or fewer, the confirmation display appears for some operations asking whether to re-edit the text because the maximum number of images has exceeded. Select "YES", and then edit the text again.
- If multiple same images are inserted, they are counted as a single file. If you copy/paste the image already inserted, that image is regarded as the same image and handled as a single file including the copied origin.

### <Font color>

- If you move the cursor to the character for which another color is set, the setting changes to that color.
- The color for pictographs is also subjected to the specified font color. To restore the color to ordinary one, select "指定なし/Default".
- You cannot change the color of Decomail-pictographs.

### <Background color>

- You cannot change the background color when editing the header or signature.

### <Font size>

- If you move the cursor to the character for which a different font size is set, the font size is changed to that size of the character.
  - You cannot change the size of the Decomail-pictograph.
- ### <Select blink>
- You cannot make Decomail-pictographs blink.

## <Template>

# Composing Deco-mail by Using Template

Template is form data for Deco-mail for which decorations such as font size and image insertion are already specified.

Other than those pre-installed in the FOMA phone, you can download templates from sites (see page 214). You can also save Deco-mail you sent, received or composed as a template (see page 234 and page 258).

You can edit the saved template using Palette.

- You can delete the pre-installed templates (see page 476). You can re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site. If you use a UIM other than the one used for downloading, the UIM restrictions apply to it. (See page 39)

- 1 Stand-by display    Template  
▶ Select a template.





Template List



Detailed Template display

© I-FREEK CO., INC.

- Press   to compose Deco-mail using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 232.
- Even if you set "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, you cannot paste it.

## Function Menu of the Template List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Compose message	You can compose Deco-mail using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 232.
Sort	You can change the order of displayed templates. ▶ Select an order.
Edit title	▶ Enter a title. ● You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Info</b>	You can display the file size, saved date and time of the template, and whether it contains images.
<b>Memory info</b>	You can display the number of stored templates.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ YES
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ Put a check mark for templates to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

## Function Menu of the Detailed Template Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose Deco-mail using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Edit</b>	You can edit the contents of the template and save it. ▶ Edit the text ▶  (Save) ▶ YES or NO <b>YES</b> . . . Overwrites and saves. <b>NO</b> . . . Saves as a separate file. ● See step 2 on page 236 for how to edit the text. ● See page 215 when the templates are stored to the maximum.
<b>Save insert image</b>	You can save images inserted into the template or Deco-mail text, and set them as the Stand-by display and Wake-up display. ▶ Select an image ▶ YES ▶ Select a destination folder. Go to step 2 on page 212. ● See page 215 when images are stored to the maximum.

### Information

#### <Edit>

- The title name when saved as a separate file takes “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm”  
(Y: Year, M: Month, D: Date, h: hour, m: minute).

#### <Save insert image>

- Decomail-pictographs are saved to the “お気に入り (Favorite)” folder in the “Decomail-pictograph” folder.

## <Attachments>

### Attaching Files

You can send an i-mode mail message with files attached.

You can attach following files:

- Still image
- Moving image/i-motion movie
- Melody
- ToruCa file
- PDF file
- Phonebook entry
- Schedule event
- ToDo item
- Bookmark (i-mode, Full Browser)
- SD other files






You can attach up to 10 files within 2 Mbytes in total.

- You cannot attach files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone to other devices.
- Regardless of the “File restriction” setting, you can attach the still image or moving image/i-motion movie shot with your FOMA phone or the files received via infrared rays.
- When you attach a file, another attachment field appears on the Message Composition display.
- When the receiving end is not the model described below\*, it receives only compatible files within the memory space of that model.  
※903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703iμ)
- It might take a time to send the i-mode mail depending on the size of attached files.

## 1 Message Composition display

- ▶ Select the attachment field
- ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Picture</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image. Go to step 2 on page 232. ● Highlight an attached image and press  (Select) to display the image. Press  to return to the former display.
<b>Melody</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody. Go to step 2 on page 232. ● Highlight an attached melody and press  (Select) to play back the melody. Press any key to stop the playback.
<b>motion</b>	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-motion movie. Go to step 2 on page 232. ● Highlight the attached i-motion movie and press  (Select) to play back the i-motion movie. During playback, press  to return to the former display.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>ToruCa</b>	When the ToruCa file is a ToruCa file (details), it is attached as a ToruCa file (details). ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a ToruCa file.</b> Go to step 2 on page 232. ● Highlight the attached ToruCa file and press  (Select) to preview it. Press  to return to the former display.
<b>PDF</b>	▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a PDF file.</b> Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Phonebook</b>	▶ <b>Select a search method</b> ▶ <b>Select a Phonebook entry</b> ▶  (Select) Go to step 2 on page 232. ● When you specified a search method last time, the Phonebook entry is searched by that method.
<b>Schedule</b>	▶ <b>Select a date</b> ▶ <b>Select a schedule event</b> ▶  (Select) Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>ToDo</b>	▶ <b>Select a ToDo item</b> ▶  (Select) Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Bookmark</b>	▶ <b>i-mode or Full Browser</b> ▶ <b>Select a bookmark.</b> Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Other</b>	You can attach a file stored in the "SD other files" folder. ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a file.</b> Go to step 2 on page 232.

### Information

#### <Picture>

- The images are not sent as the attachments to i-mode phones of the mova service; they are in the form of URLs for browsing images and automatically attached with expiry dates and can be obtained by selecting URLs. The mail text that can be sent to an i-mode phone of the mova service is up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes). (When the acceptable number of characters of the mova phone is "250 full-pitch characters") When multiple files are attached, the files are deleted and just the mail text is sent.
- The i-mode phone of the mova service cannot receive GIF images.
- The still image might not be received correctly or not be displayed or coarsely displayed depending on the model at the receiving end.

#### <Melody>

- Melodies stored on the microSD memory card cannot be attached. Copy the melodies to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)
- If the receiving end is other than FOMA P904i, the sent melody might not be played back correctly or the attachment might be deleted.
- You cannot receive the attached melody on the i-mode phone of the mova service.

### Information

#### <i-motion>


- Some i-motion movies cannot be attached to mail or their file sizes may become larger or smaller.
- Moving images stored on the microSD memory card cannot be attached. Copy the moving images to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)
- Depending on the mobile phone of the receiving end, i-motion movies cannot be correctly received/displayed, might become coarse, or might be converted into consecutive still images. When sending moving images to other than the model described below\*, it is advisable to shoot them with the following settings:  
File size setting: Mail restrict'n (S)  
Image quality set.: Normal, Prefer img qual, Prefer motion spd  
\*903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except P703iμ)

#### <ToruCa>

- ToruCa files stored on the microSD memory card cannot be attached. Copy the ToruCa files to the FOMA phone. (See page 297)

## Delete Attached File

You can delete the selected attached files.

- 1 **Message Composition display**  
▶ **Highlight an attached file and press**  
 (FUNC) ▶ **Delete att. file** ▶ **YES**

## Delete All Attached Files

- 1 **Message Composition display**  
▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Del all att. files** ▶ **YES**

#### <Photo-sending>


## Using Photo-sending

You can send photos (still images) to the other party during a voice call. The photo is sent as the attachments of i-mode mail, and the receiving end can view it during a call.

To send photos during a voice call, you need to store the phone number and mail address of the other party in the same Phonebook entry beforehand. Depending on the model of other party's phone, the other party might not be able to view the photo during a call.

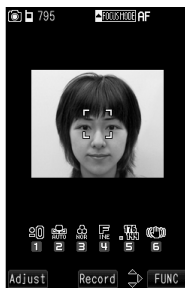
## Shoot and Send Photos

During a voice call, you can send photos (still images) you shoot on the spot.

- 1 **During a voice call** ▶  (FUNC)  
▶ **Shoot/send photo** ▶ **Photo mode**


The camera starts up.

## 2 Press (Record).



Finder display

The photo is shot.


- Press  from the Finder display to return to the "Talking" display.
- See page 191 for how to operate on the Finder display.

## 3 (Send) ▶ Select a folder

### ▶ Select a mail address.



The photo is saved and sent.

- You can set "Set display" and "File restriction" by pressing  (FUNC). (See page 187 and page 195)
- When multiple mail addresses are stored, select the mail address you send the mail message to.
- When you select "Quit", the photo is saved to the Draft as the image-attached mail.

#### Information

- The image sizes of the camera are QCIF (176 x 144) and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).

## Select and Send Photos

You can send the saved photos (still images).

### 1 During a voice call (FUNC) ▶ Shoot/send photo ▶ My picture


### 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a photo ▶ Select a mail address.



The photo is sent.

- You can select a photo (still image) of QCIF (176 x 144) and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96).
- When multiple mail addresses are stored, select the mail address you send the mail message to.

#### ■ When you receive a photo (still image)

When "Photo auto display" is set to "ON", the photo is automatically displayed.

If you have received multiple photos during a voice call, you can press  to switch them.

- You can display the received photo during a voice call by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Display photo".
- You can also execute "Check new msg." during a voice call by pressing  (FUNC). (See page 245)


#### Information

- Photo-sending is not available in the following cases:
  - When the phone number and mail address of the other party on the phone are not stored in the same Phonebook entry
  - When the phone number and mail address of the other party on the phone are stored as secret data in the Phonebook
  - When a caller ID is not notified to the receiving end (User unset, PublicPhone, Unavailable etc.) (However, you can send from the calling end.)
  - When "Restrict dialing" is not set for the phone number of the other party on the phone during "Restrict dialing"
  - When the number of sent mail messages in the Outbox has reached the maximum and those messages are all protected, or when 20 mail messages are saved to the Draft or the Draft is full (You cannot send.)
  - When the Inbox is full of unread or protected mail (You cannot receive.)
  - During Personal Data Lock
  - During Call Waiting
  - In B Mode of 2in1
- You cannot send some photos (images) during a voice call.
- A photo sent/received during a voice call is saved to the Outbox or Inbox as a file attachment of the image mail (the subject is the phone number).

## <Mail Auto-receive>

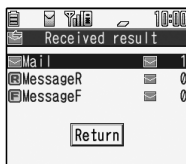
### Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

When the FOMA phone is in the service area, you can receive i-mode mail, SMS messages and SMS reports automatically. (See page 245 for receiving i-mode mail after selecting it.)

When a mail message comes in, “ (white)” appears at the top of the display.



You can save up to 2,500 received i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

#### 1 When i-mode mail arrives, “ (white)” blinks and the receiving message is displayed.

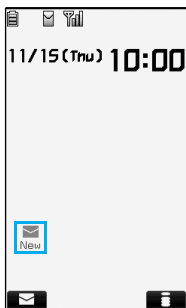


Reception Result display






When receiving is completed, the display shows the number of received i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F.

- You can display the Inbox List by selecting “Mail”.
- To cancel receiving midway, press  (Cancel) or press and hold  (for at least one second) while “Mail Receiving...” is displayed. However, the mail message might be received depending on the timing.
- See page 29 for when the FOMA phone is closed.

#### ■ If no keys are pressed for about 15 seconds







The former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for “Mail/Msg. ring time”.)

- “ ” appears on the desktop. Press , highlight “ ”, and press  (Select) to display the Inbox List.
-  (HIKARI Icon) flickers to notify you of a new mail message. (See page 25)

#### Information

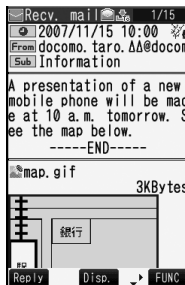
- You can automatically receive up to 100 Kbytes of an i-mode mail message including attached files. You can manually obtain the attached files in excess of 100 Kbytes from the i-mode Center. (See page 247)

#### Information


- When the total number or size of received messages stored in the FOMA phone has reached the maximum, the mail messages will be overwritten in the priority order of mail in the “Trash box” folder and older received mail. However, unread or protected mail is not overwritten.
- When the total number of unread or protected mail messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new mail can be received and “ (black)” is displayed. To receive i-mode mail, delete received mail or read unread mail or release protection of mail until “ (black)” clears, and then perform “Check new message”.
- You can receive i-mode mail with melodies, still images, or other files attached. You can receive incompatible attached files but you cannot display them.
- When you receive mail from a device that can set To, Cc and Bcc, you can check whether the message was sent to you as To, Cc or Bcc.
- Mail Messages for you are held at the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the power is off
  - During a videophone call
  - During Self Mode
  - During infrared exchange
  - During Omakase Lock
  - During iC Communication
  - When you are out of the service area
  - While connecting to the FirstPass center
  - During PushTalk communication
  - While copying to the microSD memory card
  - While connecting to the Data Storage Center
  - When the space of the Inbox is full with protected or unread messages
- When i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center, “ (white)” appears, and when they are held to the maximum, “ (black)”, appears.

### Display Newly Received i-mode Mail

#### 1 Reception Result display ▶ Mail ▶ Select an i-mode mail message to be displayed.



#### ■ Switching i-mode Mail display

You can change the size of characters by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the detailed mail display (text).

When you set to “Large”, the characters on the Folder List and the Inbox/Outbox/Draft List are displayed in large size as well.

## Information

- Undisplayable characters are replaced by spaces, etc.
- When the number of characters in the text of received i-mode mail exceeds the maximum, “?” or “//” is inserted at the end of the text and the excess part is deleted automatically.
- The still image automatically displayed at opening might not be correctly displayed. When the image is larger than the screen size, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- Some decorations inserted into the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer might not be displayed correctly.

## <Kirari Mail>

### When Kirari Mail Comes in

**Kirari Mail is a function that makes the Call/Charging indicator illuminate in response to Kirari Mail pictographs contained in the text of mail. The Call/Charging indicator illuminates when mail comes in, when you bring up the detailed i-mode mail display, or when you bring up the preview display for composing mail.**

#### ● When mail comes in

- If compatible pictographs are contained, the Call/Charging indicator illuminates whether it is i-mode mail or an SMS message.
- If you receive multiple messages at the same time, the Call/Charging indicator illuminates for the message you received at the last.
- The Call/Charging indicator flickers as usual and then illuminates.
- The Call/Charging indicator does not illuminate in Public Mode (Drive Mode), or during a call.


#### ● When the detailed i-mode mail display is shown

- If a melody is attached or pasted, the Call/Charging indicator illuminates after the melody is played back.
- When the display switches to other than the detailed display, lighting/flickering is suspended.
- The Call/Charging indicator does not illuminate for incoming mail when the mail is displayed from the mail-linked i-appli.

#### ● When mail you are composing is previewed







































- The Call/Charging indicator illuminates regardless of the “Kirari Mail” setting.

### ■ Checking the lighting/flickering of the Call/Charging indicator

Press  from the detailed Received Mail display, detailed Sent Mail display, Message Composition display, or preview display for sending.

- You can check regardless of the “Kirari Mail” setting.
- If you check from the Message Composition display, press any key to stop the Call/Charging indicator from lighting or flickering.

### ■ Kirari Mail Pictographs list

Pictograph	Indicator color	Illumination type	Pictograph	Indicator color	Illumination type
	White	A		Yellow	C
	White	A		Yellow	C
	White	A		Yellow	C
	White	B		Green	C
	White	C		Light blue	A
	White	C		Light blue	C
zzz	White	C		Light blue	C
--	White	C		Light blue	C
	Red	A		Blue	A
	Red	A		Blue	C
	Red	A		Blue	C
	Red	A		Blue	C
	Red	B		Blue	C
	Red	C		Blue	C
	Red	C		Pink	A
	Red	C		Pink	C
	Yellow	A		Pink	C
	Yellow	C		Pink	C
	Yellow	C		Pink	C
	Yellow	C		Gradation	C

- A type: Flickers fast for about one second.
- B type: Lights for about one second.
- C type: Flickers slowly for about two seconds.
- ※ The indicator color is for reference.

## Information

- If a call comes in, the Call/Charging indicator stops lighting or flickering.

## Kirari Mail

Setting at purchase All checked

You can select whether to make the Call/Charging indicator illuminate in response to compatible pictographs when Kirari Mail is received or displayed.

### 1 Stand-by display ▶

- ▶ Mail settings ▶ Kirari Mail
- ▶ Put a check mark for items to be set
- ▶  (Finish)

**At viewing Msg. . . . .** The Call/Charging indicator illuminates when the detailed Kirari Mail display is displayed.

**At reception. . . . .** The Call/Charging indicator illuminates when a Kirari Mail message is received.


<Receive Option>

## Receiving Selected i-mode Mail

You can check the titles of i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center and select them to receive, or delete them at the Center before receiving.

To use this function, set "Receive option setting" to "ON" beforehand.

When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you cannot receive i-mode mail messages automatically.

When a mail message comes in the i-mode Center,  is displayed.

## Receive Option Setting

Setting at purchase OFF

You can set whether to select and receive necessary i-mode mail only.

### 1 Stand-by display ▶


- ▶ Mail settings ▶ Receive option setting
- ▶ ON or OFF





## Select and Receive Mail Messages

### 1 Stand-by display ▶

- ▶ Receive option




• When "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF", the display to the effect that it will be set to "ON" appears.

Press  (Select) to set "Receive option setting".

• You can bring up the Receive Option display also by  ▶ i-mode ▶  Menu ▶  メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search) ▶  メール選択受信 (Receive Option).


2 Then, follow the operations described in "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".


## Information

- When Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", you cannot receive i-mode mail automatically. The i-mode Center will hold incoming i-mode mail for you, and  will be displayed. In this case, the mail ring tone does not sound, and the vibrator does not work even when Manner Mode or Vibrator is activated. To receive it, use "Receive option".
- Even when Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", you will still receive all mail messages if you execute "Check new message". If you do not want to receive all mail messages, remove a check mark from "Mail". (See page 246)
- When you bring up the Receive Option display, the  icon goes off. Also, the  icon goes off if you turn the power off or bring up the mail display.
- You cannot select SMS messages for receiving.


<Check New Message>




## Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail

i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F arriving at the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA phone. However, the messages will be held at the i-mode Center if your FOMA phone cannot receive mail because it is turned off or out of the service area, or when Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". When  (white) is displayed, receive mail by checking the i-mode Center.



See "Receive option" when  is displayed.

### 1 Stand-by display





- ▶  (for at least one second)

 (white) and  (white)/ (white) will blink, the message "Checking..." will be displayed, and the i-mode mail and Messages R/F will be delivered.



On the results of checking, the numbers of the received i-mode mail and Messages R/F are shown.

- To cancel receiving midway, press  (Cancel) or press and hold  (for at least one second). However, the mail message might be received depending on the timing.

## Information

- When icons such as  (black),  (black)/ (black) or  (black) are displayed, the FOMA phone cannot receive any more i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Delete unnecessary mail and messages, or read unread mail and messages, or release protection. (Read and unprotected mail and messages are overwritten automatically from the oldest one.)



### Information

- Even when i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center, the  (white) icon to that effect, or the  (black) icon telling that messages are held to the maximum at the i-mode Center might not appear. (This happens if mail arrives at the Center when, for instance, your FOMA phone is off.)
- You can select items to be checked by "Set check new message".
- You cannot use this function to receive SMS messages. Use "Check new SMS" to receive them.

### i-mode Checking

Setting at purchase	All checked
---------------------	-------------

You can select items to be checked from among i-mode mail, Messages R and Messages F, for when you perform "Check new message".

- 1  ► Settings ► Connection setting  
 ► Set check new message  
 ► Put a check mark for the items to be checked ►  (Finish)



### Information

- If you do not want to receive Messages R and Messages F by "Check new message", change these settings to .

## Replying to Received i-mode Mail

### Reply/Reply with Quote

You can reply to the sender. With "Reply with quote", you can quote the original text in your received i-mode mail and reply to it. You cannot use "Reply with quote" for SMS messages.

- 1 **Inbox List/Detailed Received Mail display**  
 ►  (FUNC) ► Reply or Reply with quote
  - You can reply also by pressing  (Reply) from the detailed Received Mail display.
  - If other recipients of the simultaneous mail are found, you can choose whether to reply to the sender only or to all addresses.  
 Select "To sender" or "To all".
  - Just one quotation mark (see page 264) is added to the beginning of the text in the i-mode mail to be replied with quote.

- 2 **Enter a subject and text and send.**

When you have selected i-mode mail, go to step 3 on page 232.

When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 3 on page 270.

After you send mail,  changes to .





## Reply with Reference

You can display the Message Entry display at the upper part of the display and the detailed Received Mail display at the lower part of the display so that you can enter the main text by referring to the received mail. You cannot use "Reply with ref" for SMS messages.

- 1 **Inbox List/Detailed Received Mail display**  
 ►  (FUNC) ► Reply with ref

- If other recipients of the simultaneous mail are found, you can choose whether to reply to the sender only or to all addresses.  
 Select "To sender" or "To all".

- 2 **Enter text.**


- Each time you press , you can switch between operations for the Message Entry display and the detailed Received Mail display.
- Press and hold  for at least one second to display the preview for the main text. Press  (Exit) to return to the former display.
- To bring up the whole Message Entry display, press  (FUNC) and select "Full/Separate disp".  
 If you operate this again, the detailed Received Mail display appears at the lower part of the display.

- 3 **Enter a subject and send the mail.**

Go to step 3 on page 232.

After you send mail,  changes to .

### Information

- For the sender's address that cannot be replied to (such as when the mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters),  is displayed.
- "Re:" is prefixed to the subject of the mail message to be replied, replied with a quotation, or replied with reference. When the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters, the excess part is deleted. (When "Re:" has already been prefixed, it changes to "Re2:" and will be counted up to "Re99:.")
- Even if the i-mode mail text contains pasted data, you cannot quote it in your reply. Also, you cannot quote it when using the Data Link Software or infrared exchange function. See page 251 for pasted data.
- If the text of Deco-mail contains images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices, such images will be deleted when you reply to it.



<Forward>

## Forwarding Received i-mode Mail

You can forward the i-mode mail or SMS messages to others.

### 1 Inbox List/Detailed Received Mail display

▶  (FUNC) ▶ Forward

### 2 Enter an address and send the mail.

When you have selected an i-mode mail message, go to step 2 on page 232.

When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 270.

After you send mail, “” changes to “.

#### Information

- “Fw:” is prefixed to the subject of the mail message to be forwarded. When the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters, the excess part is deleted. (When “Fw:” has already been prefixed, it changes to “Fw2:” and will be counted up to “Fw99:”.)
- When you forward an i-mode mail message with a file you have not obtained yet, the file information is deleted.
- Even if the i-mode mail text contains pasted data, you cannot quote it in your forwarding mail. Also, you cannot quote it when using the Data Link Software or infrared exchange function. See page 251 for pasted data.
- When a mail message is forwarded and a ToruCa file (details) that contains data whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited is attached to the mail message, the attached file returns to a ToruCa file before obtaining details.
- When a mail message on the microSD memory card is forwarded, the attached file is deleted.
- When you “Forward” a mail/SMS message received to Number B/Address B in Dual Mode of 2in1, the sent mail message is retained in the Outbox or Draft, even if you switch to A Mode.

## When i-mode Mail with Files Attached/Pasted is Received

You can receive up to 2 Mbytes of the attached files on your FOMA phone. However, you receive only the attached file information for the files in excess of 100 Kbytes, so you need to manually obtain those attached files from the i-mode Center.

The FOMA phone supports following files:

- Still image
- Moving image/i-motion movie
- Melody
- ToruCa file
- PDF file
- Phonebook entry
- Schedule event
- ToDo item
- Bookmark (i-mode, Full Browser)

You cannot play back or display the files other than above. You can save them to any folder in “SD other files”, or use the i-mode mail to forward them.

You can use “Attachment preference” to select the files to be received.

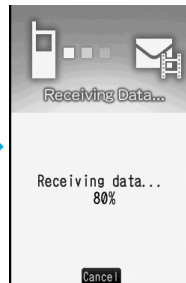
- When multiple data items are pasted, they might not be displayed.

## Obtain Receive Option Attached Files

You can obtain the receive option attached files held at the i-mode Center.

### 1 Detailed Received Mail display

▶ Select an attached file which has not been obtained.



After obtaining is completed, files are played back/displayed.

- If the i-motion movie can be played back during obtaining, that i-motion movie is played back during obtaining.

#### Information

- You cannot obtain the attached files when the unused memory space in the Inbox is lesser.

## Play Back/Display Attached or Pasted Files

You can play back or display the attached/pasted files already obtained.

### 1 Detailed Sent Mail display/ Detailed Received Mail display

#### ▶ Select an attached file.

The file is played back or displayed.

- For the Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, bookmarks, and files not supported by the FOMA phone, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save them.

#### Information

- When the sender's device is other than FOMA P904i, the received melodies might not be played back correctly.
- When the first attached file is less than 100 Kbytes of a still image, that still image only is automatically displayed when the mail message is opened.
- The size of a still image displayed on an i-mode mail message is up to 3M (1536 x 2048) size. However, it is displayed shrunk when the image size is larger than that of the screen.
- You cannot play back a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- You cannot display a ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte and ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes.

## Save Attached or Pasted Files

You can save the attached or pasted files that you have obtained. You can set some files for a ring tone, or an image on the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or other displays.

### 1 Detailed Sent Mail display/ Detailed Received Mail display

#### ▶ Highlight an attached file and press

#### (FUNC) ▶ Save data ▶ YES

- The files not supported by the FOMA phone are saved to the destination folder in "SD other files". The setting is completed.
- Even if the files are supported by the FOMA phone, some of them cannot be saved to the FOMA phone depending on the file such as an invalid data file or whose size is too large. In that case, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save it to the microSD memory card. When you save it, it is saved to a destination folder in "SD other files."
- The confirmation display might appear telling that a part of the file cannot be saved depending on the attached file.

### 2 Select a destination location or folder.

For melodies, go to step 2 of "Download Melody" on page 213.

For still images, go to step 2 on page 212.

For i-motion movies, go to step 2 on page 225.

- Bookmarks are saved according to each information of i-mode or Full Browser.
- See page 215 for when files are stored to the maximum.

#### Information

- You cannot save a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA phone.
- You cannot save a ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte and ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA phone.

<Inbox> <Outbox> <Draft>

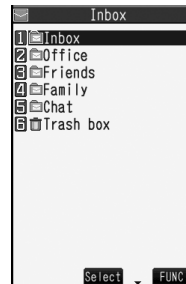
## Displaying Mail from Inbox/ Outbox/Draft

### Display Mail from Inbox

You can save up to 2,500 received i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

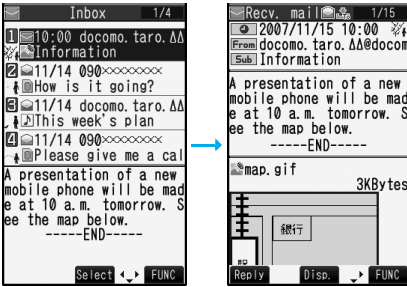
You can check the received i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

### 1 Stand-by display ▶ Inbox ▶ Select a folder.



Inbox Folder List

## 2 Select a mail message.



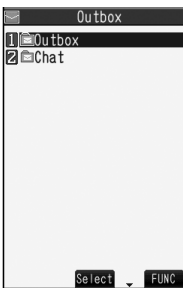
Inbox List Detailed Received Mail display

- When you select an unread mail message, “ (pink)” changes to “”.
- Use to check other mail messages.
- When the mail text is long, use to scroll the display to check it. Also, you can press or to scroll page by page.
- When a melody is attached, it is played back automatically. (You can change this setting by “Auto melody play”.)
- See page 146 for Feel\* Mail.

## Display Mail from Outbox

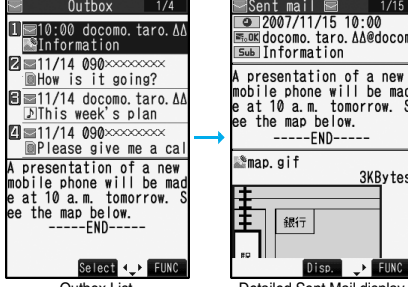
You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.  
You can check the sent i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

- 1 Stand-by display () **Outbox**  
 **Select a folder.**



Outbox Folder List

## 2 Select a mail message.



Outbox List Detailed Sent Mail display

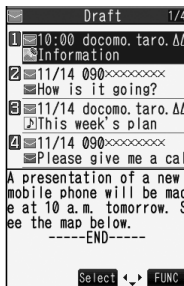
- Use to check other mail messages.
- When the mail text is long, use to scroll the display to check it. Also, you can press or to scroll page by page.

## Display Mail from Draft

You can edit and send i-mode mail messages and SMS messages in the Draft.

You can save up to 20 i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

- 1 Stand-by display () **Draft**



Draft List

## 2 Select a mail message.

When you have selected i-mode mail, go to step 2 on page 232. When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 270.

### Information

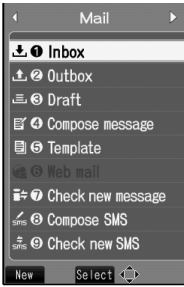
- When you select the i-oppli mail folder, the mail-linked i-oppli that supports the folder starts.

### Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

# How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display

## Mail menu



Icons might have the following marks:

	Unread mail messages are saved in the Inbox.
	Failed-to-send mail messages are saved in the Outbox. Draft mail messages are saved in the Draft.
	While "Mail security" is activated (displayed also for chat mail)

## Inbox Folder List



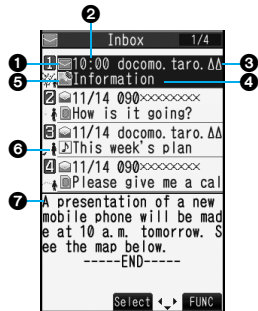
### 1 Folder status

"NEW" appears when unread messages are found, and "!" appears when Mail Security is activated.

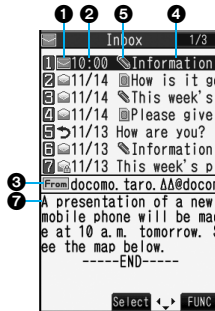
	Ordinary folder
	i-apply mail folder
	Trash box folder

### 2 Folder name

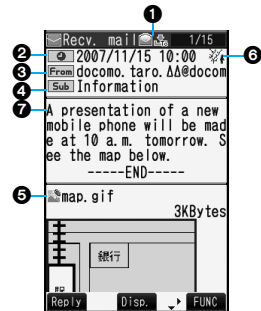
## Inbox List and detailed Received Mail display



Inbox List  
For "Date+sender/receiver subject"



Inbox List  
For "Date+subject"



Detailed Received Mail display

### 1 Mail status and type

"!" appears when protection is set.

	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Forwarded mail

	Replied mail
	Type of the received mail (for detailed display only)

### 2 Received date and time

The Inbox List shows the time for the mail received today, and shows the date for the mail received until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was received. "!" appears when the date/time is corrected.

**3 Phone number or mail address of the sender or of another recipient of simultaneous mail**

	Sender's mail address (for detailed display only)
	Sender's mail address that cannot be replied to (for detailed display only)
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail (for detailed display only)
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail that cannot be replied to (for detailed display only)

**4 Subject**

For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed. ("SMS" is displayed on the detailed display.)  
 In Dual Mode of 2in1, "SMS" is displayed at the end of the subject of SMS/i-mode mail messages received to Number B/ Address B.

	SMS messages in the FOMA phone
	SMS messages on the UIM

**5 Attached or pasted data**

The detailed display shows the data volume as well.

<For Inbox List (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed Received Mail display>

"" is added to each icon when you execute "Delete att. file" (for detailed display only).

	Melody file
	Image file
	Inserted image file (for List only)
	i-motion movie file
	ToruCa file
	PDF file
	Phonebook entry file
	Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Bookmark file
	Other files

	Attached file before obtaining (for detailed display only)
	Attached file suspended to be obtained (for detailed display only)
	Attached file failed to be obtained (for detailed display only)
	i-oppli start information (for List only)
	i-oppli mail (for List only)
	Multiple files (for List only)
	Multiple pasted files
	File applied with the UIM restrictions

<For Inbox List (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file
	i-oppli mail

	File applied with the UIM restrictions
--	--

**6 Feel \* Mail icon**

See page 146 for Feel \* Mail.

**7 Text of mail**

**Outbox Folder List**



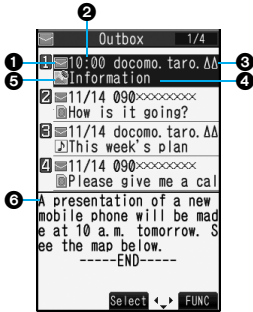
**1 Folder status**

"" appears when Mail Security is activated.

	Ordinary folder
	i-oppli mail folder

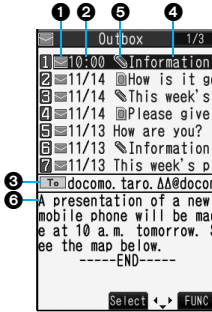
**2 Folder name**

## ■ Outbox List and detailed Sent Mail display



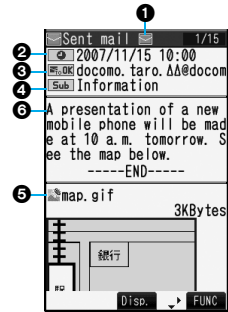
Outbox List

For "Date+sender/receiver subject"



Outbox List

For "Date+subject"



Detailed Sent Mail display

### ① Mail status

"🔒" appears when protection is set.

	Mail successfully sent		Simultaneous mail sent to some addresses
	Mail failed to be sent		Simultaneous mail failed to be sent to all addresses
	Simultaneous mail successfully sent to all addresses		

### ② Sent date and time

The Outbox List shows the time for the mail sent today, and shows the date for the mail sent until yesterday.

The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was sent. "🕒" appears when the date/time is corrected.

### ③ Recipient's phone number or mail address

			Mail address successfully sent (for detailed display only)
			Mail address failed to be sent (for detailed display only)

### ④ Subject

For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed. ("SMS" is displayed on the detailed display.)

	SMS messages in the FOMA phone		SMS report received [for List (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed display only]
	SMS messages on the UIM		

### ⑤ Attached data

The detailed display shows the data volume as well.

<For Outbox List (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed Sent Mail display>

"🗑️" is added to each icon when you execute "Delete att. file" (for detailed display only).

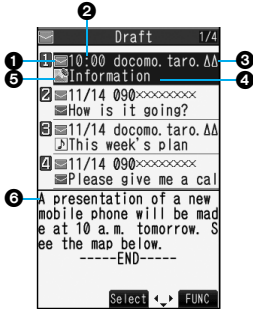
	Melody file		Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Image file		Bookmark file
	Inserted image file (for List only)		Other files
	i-motion movie file		i-appli mail (for List only)
	ToruCa file		Multiple files (for List only)
	PDF file		File applied with the UIM restrictions
	Phonebook entry file		

<For Outbox List (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

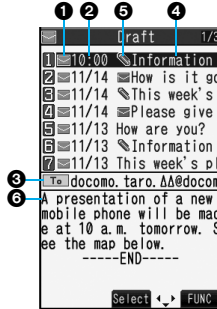
	Attached file		File applied with the UIM restrictions
	i-appli mail		

### ⑥ Text of mail

## Draft List



For "Date+sender/receiver subject"



For "Date+subject"

### 1 Mail status

	Ordinary mail
	Simultaneous mail

### 2 Saved date and time

The Draft List shows the time for the mail saved today, and shows the date for the mail saved until yesterday.

appears when the date/time is corrected.

### 3 Recipient's phone number or mail address

When the phone number or mail address is stored in the Phonebook, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

### 4 Subject

For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed.

	SMS messages
--	--------------

### 5 Attached data

<For Date+sender/receiver subject>

	Melody file
	Image file
	Inserted image file
	i-motion movie file
	ToruCa file
	PDF file
	Phonebook entry file

	Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Bookmark file
	Other files
	Multiple files (for List only)
	File applied with the UIM restrictions

<For (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file
	File applied with the UIM restrictions



### 6 Text of mail


#### Information

- See "Mail list display" on page 262 to change a method to display the Inbox/Outbox/Draft List.
- When "Name in phonebook" of "Mail list display" is checked, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed as sender or recipient. However, when the sender's mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the name is not displayed even when "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" is stored in the mail address field in a Phonebook entry. Store the phone number part only to display the name. When a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches a Phonebook entry stored as secret data, the name is not displayed. It is displayed in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only. Even when a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches a Phonebook entry not stored as secret data, the name is not displayed in Secret Data Only. Switch to Secret Mode or release Secret Data Only to display the name.
- When "Message" of "Mail list display" is not checked, the text does not appear on the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list.

# Managing Mail Messages

## Function Menu of the Inbox Folder List/Outbox Folder List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add folder</b>	<p>You can add a new folder. Other than the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box", and i-appli mail folder, you can add up to 22 folders to each of "Inbox" and "Outbox".</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Auto-sort</b>	See page 260.
<b>Re-sort</b>	<p>You can resort mail messages following the sorting conditions specified by "Auto-sort."</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the folder applied with Mail security (see page 254) is found, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.</li> </ul>
<b>Edit folder name</b>	<p>You can edit the names of the added folders only.</p> <p>▶ <b>Edit the folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Mail security</b>	<p>You can set the folder not to be displayed unless you enter your Terminal Security Code.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <p>The folder switches to "🔒".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release it, perform the same operation.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete folder</b>	<p>All the mail messages including secret mail in the folder will be deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Sort folder</b>	<p>You can sort only the added folders and the i-appli mail folders.</p> <p>▶ Use  to sort the order of the folders</p> <p>▶  (Select)</p>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>No. of messages</b>	<p>Received mail</p> <p>All . . . . . Total of mail messages in all Inbox folders**</p> <p>Unread . . . . . Total of unread mail messages in all Inbox folders**</p> <p>Protected . . . . . Total of protected mail messages in all Inbox folders</p> <p>Sent mail</p> <p>All . . . . . Total of mail messages in all Outbox folders**</p> <p>Protected . . . . . Total of protected mail messages in all Outbox folders</p> <p>UIM</p> <p>Received . . . . . Total of received SMS messages on the UIM</p> <p>Sent . . . . . Total of sent SMS messages on the UIM</p> <p>**Includes the SMS messages stored on the UIM, and the mail messages in the respective folders.</p>
<b>Open folder</b>	By executing "Open folder" for an i-appli mail folder, you can display the mail messages in the folder without running mail-linked i-appli.
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	See page 360.
<b>All  transmission</b>	See page 362.
<b>DEL all read mails</b> [Inbox Folder only]	<p>You can delete all the read mail messages including secret mail in all Inbox folders. All the read SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>DEL all recv. mails</b> [Inbox Folder only]	<p>You can delete all the mail messages including secret mail in all Inbox folders. All the received SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>DEL all sent mails</b> [Outbox Folder only]	<p>You can delete all the messages including secret mail in all Outbox folders. All sent SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>

### Information

#### <Re-sort>

- You cannot sort the mail messages in the "Chat" folder and "Trash box" folder.
- Mail messages which are not applied with "Auto-sort" are sorted into the "Inbox" folder.

#### <Mail security>

- You can neither delete the Mail-Security-activated folder nor edit its name.











Information
<p><b>&lt;Delete folder&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot delete an i-oppli mail folder if corresponding mail-linked i-oppli exists.</li> </ul> <p>If the software program does not exist, you can delete the i-oppli mail folder, but this will delete both folders created in the Outbox Folder List and Inbox Folder List.</p>

### Function Menu of the Inbox List/Outbox List/Draft List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Reply</b> [Inbox only]	See page 246.
<b>Reply with quote</b> [Inbox only]	See page 246.
<b>Reply with ref</b> [Inbox only]	You can reply to the mail message while referring to the received mail. (See page 246)
<b>Forward</b> [Inbox only]	See page 247.
<b>Edit</b> [Outbox only]	<p>You can re-edit the sent mail message and send it again.</p> <p>When you have selected an i-mode mail message, go to step 2 on page 232.</p> <p>When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 270.</p>
<b>Move</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail messages to be moved</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Search mail (Search sender)</b> [Inbox only]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a mail address or phone number of a sender.</p> <p>▶ <b>Search sender</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Phonebook</b></p> <p>... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</p> <p><b>Received address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).</p> <p><b>Sent address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).</p> <p><b>Enter address</b></p> <p>... Enter the mail address or phone number.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Search mail (Search receiver)</b> [Outbox only]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a mail address or phone number of a recipient.</p> <p>▶ <b>Search receiver</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Phonebook</b></p> <p>... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</p> <p><b>Sent address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).</p> <p><b>Received address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).</p> <p><b>Enter address</b></p> <p>... Enter the mail address or phone number.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Search mail (Search subject)</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a subject.</p> <p>▶ <b>Search subject</b> ▶ <b>Enter a subject.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Search mail (Search subject+msg)</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can retrieve mail messages with a subject or text.</p> <p>▶ <b>Search subject+msg</b> ▶ <b>Enter a part of a subject or text.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Display all</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can re-display all mail messages in "By date ↑" order after using Search Mail, or the Sort or Filter function.</p>
<b>Mail history</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can display the history of sent/received mail from the sender or to the recipient being selected or displayed. Up to 1,000 histories are displayed in the chronological order from the most recent one.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a sender's or destination address.</b></p> <p>The target sent/received mail histories are displayed.</p> <p>◀ ... Sent mail</p> <p>▶ ... Received mail</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a history; then you can bring up the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display. Press  (Right) to return to the former display.</li> </ul>
<b>Sort</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can change the order of displayed mail messages.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an order.</b></p>
<b>Filter</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can display the mail messages only that satisfy the condition.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a type.</b></p>


Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>List setting</b>	<p>You can select the item to be displayed on the List. You can also switch between the name stored in the Phonebook and the mail address/phone number for the display in the sender's/destination address field.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item to be displayed.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can switch also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Read all</b> [Inbox only]	<p>You can change unread mail in the folder to read mail.</p> <p>While displaying mail messages using the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed mail messages are changed to read ones.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can protect the mail message so that it is not overwritten and deleted. You can protect all the received and sent messages. (2,500 received messages, 1,000 sent messages)</p> <p>The protected one is indicated by “ from the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display.  </p>
<b>ProtectSLCT. ON/OFF</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>▶ <b>Put/Remove a check mark for mail messages to be protected/unprotected</b></p> <p>▶  (Finish)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A check mark is placed to the mail already protected.</li> </ul>
<b>Color label</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	<p>You can color the characters on the Inbox List and Outbox List for classifying mail. Select “Default” to set ordinary character color.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a color.</b></p>
<b>Send lr data</b>	See page 359.
<b>Send all lr data</b> [Draft only]	See page 360.
 <b>transmission</b>	See page 361.
<b>All  transmission</b> [Draft only]	See page 362.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	You can copy the mail message to the microSD memory card. (See page 349)

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Store in Center</b>	<p>You can save mail messages stored in FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center. Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail messages to be saved</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can select up to 10 mail messages.</li> <li>• You do not need to put a check mark for the mail messages on the Detailed Received Mail display and Detailed Sent Mail display.</li> </ul>
<b>UIM operation</b> [Inbox/Outbox]	You can copy or move the mail message to the UIM or FOMA phone. (See page 404)
<b>Mail info</b> [Inbox only]	You can check the sender's mail address or phone number, received date/time, and subject.
<b>No. of messages</b>	<p>Received mail</p> <p>In folder . . . Total of mail messages in the folder*1</p> <p>Unread . . . Total of unread mail messages in the folder*1</p> <p>Protected. . . Total of protected mail messages in the folder</p> <p>Sent mail</p> <p>In folder . . . Total of mail messages in the folder*2</p> <p>Protected. . . Total of protected mail messages in the folder</p> <p>Draft</p> <p>All . . . . . Total of mail messages in the Draft</p> <p>UIM</p> <p>Received. . . Total of received SMS messages on the UIM</p> <p>Sent. . . . . Total of sent SMS messages on the UIM</p> <p>*1 When you select the “Inbox” folder, the count includes the SMS messages stored on the UIM.</p> <p>*2 When you select the “Outbox” folder, the count includes the SMS messages stored on the UIM.</p>
<b>Move to trash</b> [Inbox only]	<p>You can move mail messages to the “Trash box” folder. The mail messages moved to the “Trash box” folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted).</p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail messages to be moved to the trash box</b></p> <p>▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail messages to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete read mails</b> [Inbox only]	<p>You can delete all the read mail messages in the folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Delete all SMS-R</b> [Inbox only]	You can delete all the SMS reports. While displaying SMS reports using the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed SMS reports are deleted. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	You can delete all mail messages in the folder. ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

<b>Information</b>	
<b>&lt;Search mail&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Even if you set “No title” for “Search subject” of “Search mail”, you cannot search for the i-mode mail whose subject is not entered and displayed as “No title”.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Protect ON/OFF&gt; &lt;ProtectSLCT. ON/OFF&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot protect mail messages in the “Trash box” folder.</li> <li>● When you try to protect all the sent messages with those saved to the maximum, you can no longer compose i-mode mail messages.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Color label&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Color Label applied to the mail messages is released when they are copied to the microSD memory card, copied/moved to the UIM, copied/moved from the UIM or sent via infrared rays or iC transmission.</li> <li>● Color Label applied to the SMS messages on the UIM is released when the UIM is dismantled and then mounted.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Store in Center&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot save the SMS messages stored on the UIM.</li> <li>● You cannot save the following data files attached to mail: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited</li> <li>· ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte or ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes</li> <li>· SD other files</li> </ul> </li> <li>● You cannot use Data Security Service when you are out of the service area.</li> <li>● When you have not signed up for Data Security Service, the message to that effect appears.</li> <li>● You can download the saved mail messages from the Data Security Center site to your FOMA phone. For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.</li> </ul>	
<b>&lt;Move to trash&gt;</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you move unread mail to the Trash box, it changes to read mail.</li> </ul>	

## Function Menu of the Detailed Received Mail Display/Detailed Sent Mail Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Reply</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 246.
<b>Reply with quote</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 246.
<b>Reply with ref</b> [Received Mail only]	You can reply to the mail message while referring to the received mail. (See page 246)
<b>Edit</b> [Sent Mail only]	You can re-edit the sent mail message and send it again. When you have selected an i-mode mail message, go to step 2 on page 232. When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 270.
<b>Resend</b> [Sent Mail only]	You can re-send the sent mail message. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>View Kirari mail</b>	See page 244.
<b>Forward</b> [Received Mail only]	See page 247.
<b>Protect ON/OFF</b>	See page 256.
<b>Mail history</b>	You can display the histories of the mail exchanged with the selected party. (See page 255) ● You can display also by pressing  .
<b>Color label</b>	See page 256.
<b>Move</b>	▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b>
<b>Copy</b>	▶ <b>Select an item to be copied.</b> ● See page 421 for how to copy. ● When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be copied.
<b>Store address</b>	You can store the address of the sender or of another recipient of simultaneous mail in the Phonebook. (See page 114)
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 114.
<b>Auto-sort</b>	You can store a sender or subject as a sort condition. (See page 260)
<b>Save data</b>	See page 248.
<b>Save decor. image</b>	See page 240.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Save D-pictograph</b> [Received Mail only]	You can save Decomail-pictographs in the mail text at once. You can save up to 20 of them. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● See page 215 for when the Decomail-pictographs are stored to the maximum. ● See page 322 for how to check the stored Decomail-pictographs.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.
<b>Save as template</b>	You can save the sent/received Deco-mail as a template. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● See page 215 when the templates are stored to the maximum. ● See page 239 for how to check the stored template.
<b>Property</b>	You can display the file name and file size of the image inserted into the text. ▶ <b>Select an image.</b>
<b>Chat mail</b> [Received Mail only]	You can store the sender's mail address as a chat mail member and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 265.
<b>Display SMS report</b> [Sent Mail only]	You can check the result of the SMS message you sent, or the date and time it arrived at the destination. To receive the SMS report, set "SMS report request" to "ON".
<b>Send Ir data</b>	See page 359.
<b>EC transmission</b>	See page 361.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	See page 349.
<b>Store in Center</b>	See page 256.
<b>UIM operation</b>	You can copy or move the mail to the UIM or FOMA phone. (See page 404)
<b>Scroll</b>	You can set the number of the lines that are scrolled. (See page 262)
<b>Character size</b>	See page 153.
<b>Delete att. file</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Move to trash</b> [Received Mail only]	You can move the mail to the "Trash box" folder. The mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted). ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b> ● You can delete a mail message also by pressing (O).

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Name/address</b>	You can display the sender's/destination address by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address/phone number. ● You can switch also by pressing (5).

**Information**

**<Resend>**

- If you re-send a failed-to-send mail message, it is saved as the sent mail message. If you re-send the failed-to-send simultaneous message to all addresses, it is saved as the sent mail message.

## <Sent Address> <Received Address> Displaying Sent/Received Mail Record

**Sent and received i-mode mail messages and SMS messages are recorded in Sent Address and Received Address, up to 30 messages each. You can check the List for the mail addresses and phone numbers. When you exchange mail messages with the same mail address or phone number, the older one is deleted.**

- In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 records for Number A/ Address A and Number B/Address B are recorded in Received Address in total.

### 1 When Using Sent Address

**Stand-by display** (for at least one second)







- ...SMS message successfully sent
- ...i-mode mail successfully sent
- ...SMS message failed to be sent
- ...i-mode mail failed to be sent
- ...Time-difference corrected time
- Press (Change) from the Sent Address List to display Redial. When the Sent Address List is displayed from Dialed Calls, you can press (Change) to display Dialed Calls.


## When Using Received Address

### Stand-by display (for at least one second)

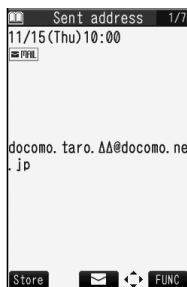


Received Address List

-  ... SMS message
-  ... i-mode mail
-  ... Time-difference corrected time
-  ... SMS/i-mode mail message received to Number B/ Address B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)




- Press  (Change) on the Received Address List to display Received Calls.

## 2 Select a record to be displayed.




For Sent Address

The detailed display of the Address List is displayed.

- With an SMS message for which the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
- To send i-mode mail to the displayed address, press  and go to step 3 on page 232.
- To send an SMS message to the displayed phone number, press  and go to step 3 on page 270.
- To store in the Phonebook, press  (Store). Go to step 2 on page 114.

## Function Menu while Sent/Received Address is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Character size</b>	You can switch the character size for the list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To reset the character size, perform the same operation.</li> <li>● The setting here applies to "Dialed/recv. calls" of "Character size" as well.</li> </ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Feel * Mail [Received Address only]</b>	You can play back a Feel * Mail image. (See page 146)
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	See page 114.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose i-mode mail. The mail address is entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 232.
<b>Compose SMS</b>	You can compose an SMS message. The phone number is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 on page 270.
<b>Dialing</b>	If the mail address has been stored in a Phonebook entry, you can make a voice call, a videophone call or a PushTalk call to the phone number stored in the Phonebook. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a dialing type.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to the other party during a videophone call. To cancel the setting, select "Release".</li> <li>● When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, you can dial the first phone number.</li> </ul> </li> <li>▶ <b>Dial</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist", select an international call access code, and follow the procedure above after selecting "Dialing" from the Function menu. (See page 56)</li> <li>● To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 on page 48)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Redial/ Dialed calls [Sent Address only]</b>	You can display the Redial List or the Dialed Call List.
<b>Received calls [Received Address only]</b>	You can display the Received Call List. All received calls (all calls) are displayed.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete message</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for records to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

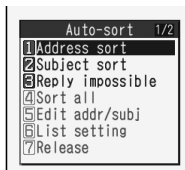
<Auto-sort>

## Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder

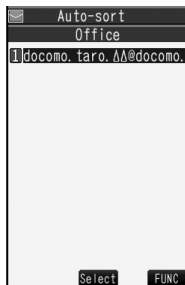
You can automatically save the mail messages that satisfy the set conditions to the specified folder. This function applies to only the added folders and i-apply mail folders.

### 1 Inbox Folder List/Outbox Folder List

▶  (FUNC) ▶ Auto-sort



Auto-sort Menu display



Auto-sort Setting display

Follow the operation of the Function menu list on page 260 to set "Auto-sort".  
If you select a folder for which Auto-sort conditions have been set, the Auto-sort Setting display comes up.

## Auto-sort Storing

You can specify a sort condition and folder from the detailed Sent/Received Mail display.

### 1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Auto-sort ▶ Do the following operations

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Address sort</b>	You can set the displayed sender's/recipient's address for a sorting condition. ▶ <b>Select a folder.</b> • When multiple addresses are found, select an address.
<b>Subject sort</b>	You can edit the displayed subject and set it for a sorting condition. ▶ <b>Edit the subject</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder.</b>

### ■ To change the condition

The confirmation display appears asking whether to replace or overwrite.  
Select "YES" to replace the set condition with the new one.

### ■ When the same condition is set for another folder

The confirmation display appears asking whether to change.  
Select "YES" to release the condition set for another folder and to set for the selected folder.

- You cannot change the setting for a Mail-Security-activated folder.



### ■ When storing another address for the folder set for "Address sort"




The confirmation display appears asking whether to add the address. Select "YES" to add the address.

### Information

- You can store a total of 700 addresses in all folders.
- When multiple conditions match, sorting is done in the priority below.
  - ① Sort all
  - ② Subject sort
  - ③ Reply impossible/Send impossible
  - ④ Address sort (Look-up address/Enter address)
  - ⑤ Address sort (Look-up mail group)
  - ⑥ Address sort (Look-up group)
- Mail messages sent simultaneously to multiple members cannot be sorted by "Address sort" or "Send impossible".

## Function Menu of the Auto-sort Setting Display


Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Address sort (Look-up address)</b>	You can look up a mail address or phone number in the Phonebook or Sent/Received Address and set it to the folder for sorting. ▶ <b>Look-up address</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> ... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. <b>Sent address</b> ... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select). <b>Received address</b> ... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).
<b>Address sort (Look-up group)</b>	You can set a group to be sorted into the folder. ▶ <b>Look-up group</b> ▶ <b>Select a group.</b>
<b>Address sort (Look-up mail group)</b>	You can set a mail group to be sorted into the folder. ▶ <b>Look-up mail group</b> ▶ <b>Select a mail group.</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Address sort (Enter address)</b>	<p>You can directly enter a mail address or phone number to be sorted into the folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter address</b> ▶ <b>Enter a mail address or phone number.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters for the mail address or phone number.</li> <li>When the mail address is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, enter the phone number only. You can sort SMS messages as well if you enter the phone number only.</li> </ul>
<b>Subject sort</b>	<p>You can enter the subject of i-mode mail messages to be sorted into the folder. One subject can be set per folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a subject.</b></p>
<b>Reply impossible</b>	<p>You can set reply-disabled mail messages to be sorted. You can set for only one folder.</p>
<b>Send impossible</b>	<p>You can set failed-to-send mail messages to be sorted. You can set for only one folder.</p>
<b>Sort all</b>	<p>You can sort all mail messages into the i-<b>oppli</b> mail folder. You can set for only one i-<b>oppli</b> mail folder each in the Inbox and Outbox. When “Sort all” is set, other sort settings are disabled.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Edit addr/subj</b>	<p>You can edit and store the mail address, phone number, and subject set for the folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Edit the mail address, phone number or subject.</b></p>
<b>List setting</b>	<p>You can switch whether to display the destinations by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address or phone number.</p> <p>▶ <b>Name or Address</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can switch also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Release</b>	<p>You can release the sort condition. (The item is deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.)</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Release selected</b>	<p>You can select mail addresses or phone numbers, and release the sort condition for them. (The items are deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.)</p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for mail addresses or phone numbers to be released</b></p> <p>▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can switch between the name and mail address (phone number) by pressing .</li> </ul>


Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Release all</b>	<p>You can release all sort conditions. (The items are deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.)</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>

### Information

#### <Address sort (Look-up group)>

- On the Auto-sort Setting display, “” is added to the front of group name.
- You cannot set groups on the UIM.
- The secret mail messages received in ordinary mode (not in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”) are not sorted into the folder.

#### <Address sort (Look-up mail group)>

- On the Auto-sort Setting display, “” is added to the front of mail group name.

#### <Subject sort>

- When the subject matches sort conditions for multiple folders, it is sorted to the folder nearest to the “Inbox” folder or “Outbox” folder.
- Even if you set “No title”, the i-mode mail titled with “No title” because of no entry cannot be sorted.
- SMS messages cannot be sorted by subject.

#### <Sort all>

- You cannot sort SMS reports or SMS messages that have been directly received on the UIM.

## <Mail Group>

 2 6

## Creating Mail Group

You can store mail addresses by group. You can send mail to regular destinations.

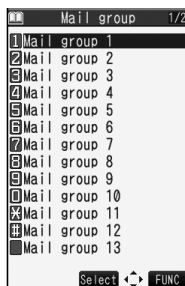
You can store up to five addresses per group, and up to 20 groups.

1




 ▶ **Phonebook**

▶ **Phonebook settings** ▶ **Mail group**

▶ **Select a Mail group to be stored.**



Mail Group List

- When mail addresses are stored in a Mail group, “” appears at the lower left of the display. Press  () to send i-mode mail to a selected Mail group.

Go to step 3 on page 232.

## 2 Highlight <Not stored> and press



Detailed Mail Group display

- If you select a stored mail address, the Mail Group Address Confirmation display appears.

## 3 Enter a mail address.

- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. Repeat step 2 and step 3 to store multiple mail addresses.

### Function Menu of the Mail Group List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose i-mode mail to the Mail group. Go to step 3 on page 232.
<b>Edit group name</b>	▶ <b>Enter a name of the Mail group.</b> • You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
<b>Reset group name</b>	You can reset the name of Mail group to the default. ▶ <b>YES</b>

### Function Menu of the Detailed Mail Group Display/Mail Group Address Confirmation Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit address</b>	Go to step 3 on page 262. • You can edit the address also by pressing .
<b>Look-up address</b>	You can call up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. ▶ <b>Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> ... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. <b>Sent address</b> ... Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ). <b>Received address</b> ... Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ).
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

## <Mail Settings>

# Detailed Settings for i-mode Mail and SMS (Short Messages)

## 1 Stand-by display ▶ ▶ Mail settings ▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Scroll</b>	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled at a time for when you press  on the detailed mail display, Message Composition display and preview display. ▶ <b>Select the number of lines.</b> • While sent or received mail is displayed, press  ( <b>FUNC</b> ) and select "Scroll".

**Character size** See page 153.

**Mail list display** You can set items to be displayed on the Inbox/Outbox/Draft List by using radio buttons or check boxes.

Setting at purchase
Date+sender/receiver subject (Checked)
Message (Checked)
Name in phonebook (Checked)

▶ **Select a display format.**

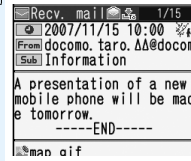
### Message display

You can set whether to display received mail in standard display (from the top) or from the text.

Setting at purchase

Standard

▶ **Standard or From message**



### Auto melody play

You can set whether to play back the attached or pasted melodies automatically for when you display the text of received mail.

Setting at purchase

ON

▶ **ON or OFF**

### Pred. conv. at reply

You can set whether to preferentially display the words contained in the subject and text of the received mail message as conversion candidates when you reply to, reply with quote to, reply with reference to, or forward it.

Setting at purchase

ON

▶ **ON or OFF**



Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Mail blind</b>	You can show the characters on the detailed mail display and Message Composition display in gray to make them hard to see from persons around you. (The characters on the Character Entry display are not shown in gray.)
Setting at purchase OFF	<p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <p>● Press and hold <b>(8)</b> for at least one second while sent or received mail is displayed.</p>
<b>Header/Signature</b>	See page 264.
<b>Mail security</b>	You can set the security for the Inbox, Outbox, and Draft in the Mail menu. (See page 173)
<b>Receiving display</b>	You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays, even during operation of another function.
Setting at purchase Alarm preferred	<p>▶ <b>Alarm preferred or Operation preferred</b></p> <p><b>Alarm preferred</b></p> <p>... Prioritizes the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays when you have new mail.</p> <p><b>Operation preferred</b></p> <p>... Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail.</p>
<b>Receive option setting</b>	You can set whether to select and receive i-mode mail. (See page 245)
<b>Attachment preference</b>	You can set whether to receive the attached file with an i-mode mail message. The attached files for which you remove a check mark are held at the i-mode Center. (The file in excess of 100 Kbytes is held at the i-mode Center, even if you put a check mark for it.)
Setting at purchase All checked	<p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for items to be received</b></p> <p><b>(Finish)</b></p> <p><b>Picture</b> . . . . . Receives still images.</p> <p><b>Melody</b> . . . . . Receives melodies.</p> <p><b>motion</b> . . . . . Receives i-motion movies.</p> <p><b>ToruCa</b> . . . . . Receives ToruCa files.</p> <p><b>PDF</b> . . . . . Receives PDF files</p> <p><b>Tool data</b> . . . . . Receives Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, and bookmarks.</p> <p><b>Other</b> . . . . . Receives files unsupported by the FOMA phone.</p>
<b>Photo auto display</b>	You can set whether to automatically display the photo (still image) received during a call.
Setting at purchase ON	▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Kirari Mail</b>	See page 245.
<b>Chat setting</b>	You can set the chat mail settings. (See page 268)
<b>SMS report request</b>	You can set whether to request SMS reports. (See page 271)
<b>SMS validity period</b>	You can set the length of time SMS messages are held at the SMS Center. (See page 272)
<b>SMS input character</b>	You can set the characters you can enter into the text of SMS messages. (See page 272)
<b>Secret mail display</b>	You can set whether to display secret mail. (See page 173)
<b>Auto color label</b>	You can specify the text color of the sender, received date/time and others on the Inbox List by mail address. You can store up to 10 items.
	▶ <b>&lt;Not stored&gt;</b> ▶ <b>Select an item.</b>
	<b>Phonebook</b>
	... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.
	<b>Sent address</b>
	... Select a phone number or mail address and press <b>(Select)</b> .
	<b>Received address</b>
	... Select a phone number or mail address and press <b>(Select)</b> .
	<b>Enter address</b>
	... Enter a mail address or phone number.
	● To change the set color, press <b>(FUNC)</b> and select "Select color".
	● To delete the set item, press <b>(FUNC)</b> and select "Delete this" or "Delete all" then select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
	▶ <b>Select a color.</b>
<b>Check settings</b>	● Use <b>(Select)</b> to scroll the display to check the information.
<b>Reset</b>	You can reset the individual "Mail settings" to their default settings. See "Function List" for the items to be reset. (See page 456)
	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b>
	▶ <b>YES</b>

## Information

### <Mail list display>

- If you put a check mark for “Message”, you can operate “Reply”, “Reply with quote”, “Reply with ref” and “Forward” from the Inbox List. Also, you can operate “Edit” from the Outbox List.

### <Message display>

- Even if “From message” is set, the message might not be displayed from the text depending on the number of characters in the text.

### <Auto melody play>

- You cannot play back attached or pasted melodies during playing back a music file by MUSIC Player regardless of the setting of “Auto melody play”.

### <Mail blind>

- The Deco-mail is not displayed in gray.

### <Auto color label>

- Even when you set this function, the text color of the mail message already received does not change.



## Header/Signature

You can store a header, signature and quotation mark. Also, you can set whether to automatically paste the header or signature.

### 1 Stand-by display

▶ Mail settings ▶ Header/Signature

▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Header</b>	The header is the sentence such as greeting at the beginning of the text.
Setting at purchase	▶ <b>Select the header field</b>
Blank (Insert ON)	▶ <b>Enter a header</b>  (Finish)
	● You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
	● See step 5 on page 233 for how to enter the header.
	● If you do not want the header to be pasted automatically, select “Insert” to change <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> to <input type="checkbox"/> .
	● See page 234 for adding a header by mail message.
<b>Signature</b>	The signature is your name and other information, placed at the end of the text.
Setting at purchase	▶ <b>Select the signature field</b>
Blank (Insert ON)	▶ <b>Enter a signature</b>  (Finish)
	● You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
	● See step 5 on page 233 for how to enter the signature.
	● If you do not want the signature to be pasted automatically, select “Insert” to change <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> to <input type="checkbox"/> .
	● See page 234 for adding a signature by mail message.
<b>Quotation marks</b>	The quotation mark is the symbol indicating a quotation from received mail for when you reply to mail.
Setting at purchase	▶ <b>Enter a quotation mark.</b>
>	● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

## Information

- Even if you have put a check mark for “Insert”, the header and signature cannot be pasted when you compose i-mode mail for Photo-sending during a call or from a template or i-appli.
- You cannot paste headers, signatures or the quotation marks to SMS messages.



## Using Chat Mail

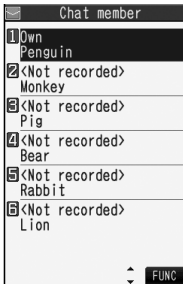
You can send or receive chat mail messages to and from multiple persons on a single display.

### Store Chat Members

To use Chat Mail, you need to store the mail address of the other party in Chat Member beforehand.

You can store up to six chat members including the user (yourself).

- 1 **Stand-by display**   **Chat mail**  
 **Chat member**  
 **<Not recorded>** **Enter a mail address.**





Chat Member List


- To edit a stored member, select the member.
- When the mail address is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, store the phone number only.
- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.


#### Information

- If you edit the mail address of the stored member, the member's name and image are changed.

### Function Menu of the Chat Member List

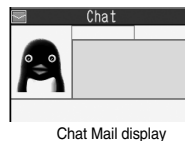
Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit</b>	You can edit the mail address. Go to step 1 of “Store Chat Members” on page 265.
<b>Refer address</b>	You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Received Address, or Sent Address to enter it. <b>▶ Select an item.</b> <b>Phonebook</b> ... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. <b>Sent address</b> ... Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ). <b>Received address</b> ... Select a phone number or mail address and press  ( <b>Select</b> ).

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Change member</b> (Chat group)	You can store the members stored in a chat group as chat members. <b>▶ Chat group ▶ Group list or Member list Group list . . . .</b> You can select members by chat group. <b>Member list . . . .</b> You can select members from all the members stored in chat groups. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select “Group list”, select a chat group. The members from the selected group are stored.</li> <li>• If you select “Member list”, check the members you want to store and press  (<b>Finish</b>).</li> </ul>

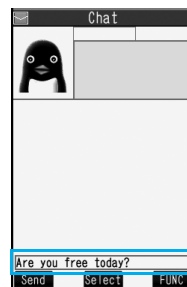
<b>Change member</b> (Mail group)	You can store the mail addresses stored in Mail group as chat members. <b>▶ Mail group ▶ Select a Mail group.</b>
<b>Display setting</b>	You can check the chat member's name, image, background color, and mail address. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can press  to switch members.</li> <li>• The mail address of the user (yourself) is not displayed.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete</b>	<b>▶ YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	<b>▶ YES</b>

### Exchange Chat Mail Messages

- 1 **Stand-by display**   **Chat mail**



- 2  (**Select**) **▶ Enter characters.**



- You can enter up to 250 full-pitch or 500 half-pitch characters.

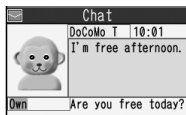
### 3 Press (Send).



The chat mail message is sent.

The sent chat mail message is displayed at the top of the Chat Mail display.

### 4 The display for receiving chat mail appears and a chat mail message is received.



The received chat mail message is displayed at the top of the Chat Mail display.



Repeat step 2 through step 4 to send and receive chat mail messages.

### 5 (FUNC) ► Quit ► YES or NO

**YES** . . . You can delete read and sent chat mail message from the “Chat” folder.

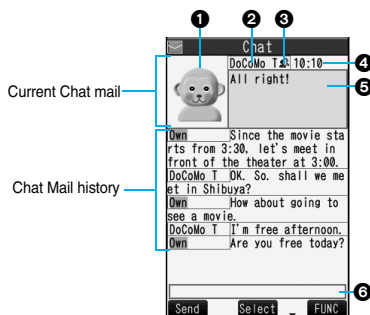
**NO** . . . You do not delete read and sent chat mail message from the “Chat” folder.

Chat Mail ends.

- You can end Chat Mail also by pressing  or .
- When no sent and received chat mail messages are found, the confirmation display does not appear.

### ■ Chat Mail display

The Chat Mail display appears as follows:



#### ① Image

The image you have stored in Chat Group is displayed.

#### ② Member name

The chat member's name stored in the chat group is displayed. Also, the name is displayed with a specified background color.

- When the name is not stored in the chat group, up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the mail address are displayed. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name are displayed.

#### ③ Broadcast mark

Displayed when the chat mail message set with multiple addresses is received.



(blue): All addresses are stored in Chat Member





(dark blue): Addresses that are not stored in Chat Member are found

#### ④ Sent/Received date and time

The date and time the chat mail message was sent/received are displayed. The time is displayed for the chat mail messages sent/received today and the date for the chat mail messages sent/received until yesterday.

#### ⑤ Text

The text of chat mail message is displayed. The number of characters of the text to be displayed is up to 250 full-pitch or 500 half-pitch characters.

If the text exceeds four lines,  is displayed and you can switch the pages by pressing .

- You cannot switch the page of the text on the Chat Mail history.
- The text of the chat mail message successfully sent is displayed in black. The text of the chat mail message failed to be sent is displayed in gray.

#### ⑥ Input box

Entered characters (characters to send) are displayed from the beginning by a factor of one line.

### Information

- The communication fee for when you send chat mail messages to multiple chat members is the same as for sending a chat mail message to one member. (However, the data for the added address fields will involve a higher charge.)
- When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you cannot execute Chat Mail.
- When the Inbox is full of unread or protected mail messages, you cannot execute Chat Mail. Delete unnecessary mail messages or read unread mail messages, or release the protection and then operate.
- Attached files or pasted data are not displayed.
- Sent/Received chat mail messages are saved to the "Chat" folder. (You can also change the setting from "Auto-sort".)
- The subject of a sent chat mail message is "チャットメール (chat mail)" (half-pitch characters).
- Even when the chat mail text on the Chat Mail display contains the phone number, mail address, or URL, the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions are not available. However, those functions will be available when Chat Mail is finished and chat mail message is brought up from the "Inbox" or "Outbox".


### If You Receive Chat Mail during Standby

If you receive a chat mail message during standby,

"" appears on the desktop.

Press , highlight "", and press  (Select); then Chat Mail starts up.

### Information

- Messages are recognized as chat mail messages in the following cases:
  - When the sender's address or destination address is stored in Chat Member or in a chat group
  - When the subject contains "チャットメール (chat mail)" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters)
- Even when you receive a chat mail message from a member of a chat group other than Chat Member while Chat Mail is running, "" appears.

### If you start Chat Mail from the desktop, received mail, or Chat Group

If you start Chat Mail from a mail address or from a chat group that is not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete stored member and start Chat Mail.

Select "YES"; then the current chat members are deleted and the sender's mail address or chat group members are stored in Chat Member.

#### <If you start Chat Mail from the desktop or received mail>



The sender's mail address is stored in Chat Member.

When the sender's mail address has been stored in a chat group, the members in that chat group are stored in Chat Member. However, the mail address selected as the destination is only the mail address of the sender.

#### <If you start Chat Mail from Chat Group>

The chat group members are stored in Chat Member. All members of the group are selected as the destination.

### Function Menu of the Chat Mail Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Send</b>	You can send the chat mail message.
<b>Select receiver</b>	From among chat members, you can select destination addresses to send the chat mail messages to. ▶ Put a check mark for destination addresses to send the messages to  (Finish)
<b>Chat member</b>	You can store chat members. (See page 265)
<b>Broadcast address</b>	You can check the destination addresses you have simultaneously sent a chat mail message to. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● When there are destination addresses that are not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them in Chat Member. If you store them in Chat Member, select "YES" and put a check mark for the destination addresses to be stored and press  (Finish).</li></ul>
<b>Reload</b>	You can receive chat mail messages that you could not automatically receive. If you receive a new chat mail message, the Chat Mail display is updated.
<b>View first line</b>	You can display the latest chat mail message.
<b>View last line</b>	You can display the oldest chat mail message.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Delete read mails</b>	You can delete all the received read chat mail messages and sent chat mail messages including secret mail and chat mail messages failed to send. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Quit</b>	See page 266.

Information	
<b>&lt;Broadcast address&gt;</b>	
● You can store up to six members (including yourself) in Chat Member.	

## Chat Setting

- Stand-by display** ▶ ( )  
▶ **Mail settings** ▶ **Chat setting**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Sound setting</b>	You can set a tone for when you send/receive a chat mail message on the Chat Mail display. ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select a tone.</b> ● The tone does not sound when a chat mail message comes in from a member not stored in Chat Member.
<b>Chat image</b>	You can set whether to display images on the Chat Mail display. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>User setting</b>	You can set the name and image of the user (yourself). ▶ <b>Select the name field</b> ▶ <b>Enter a user name.</b> ● You can enter up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters. ● Not to change the user name, go to the next step. ▶ <b>Select the image field</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b>

<Chat Group>

2 6

## Creating Chat Group

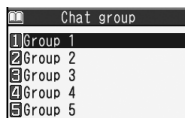
You can store the mail addresses you want to exchange chat mail per group.

By storing multiple members in a group, you can set them as chat members at a time.

You can store up to five mail addresses per group.

You can create up to five groups.

- ▶ **Phonebook**  
▶ **Phonebook settings** ▶ **Chat group**  
▶ **Select a chat group to be stored.**

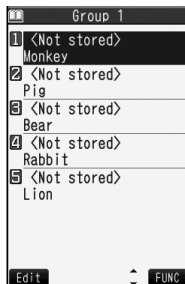


Chat Group List

- When the selected chat group has any member, “CHAT” appears at the lower left of the display.

If you press (CHAT), Chat group members are stored in Chat Member and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 265.

- Highlight <Not stored> and press**



Detailed Chat Group display

- If you select a stored mail address, the Chat Group Address Confirmation display appears.

- Enter a mail address.**




- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
- When the entered mail address is stored in the Phonebook, and the image is stored in the Phonebook, the image is also set.
- When the mail address is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, store the phone number only.

Repeat step 2 and step 3 to store multiple mail addresses.

## Function Menu of the Chat Group List

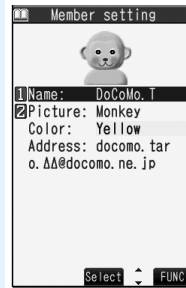
Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Activate chat</b>	The members in the chat group are stored as chat members and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 265.
<b>Edit group name</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a chat group name.</b></li> <li>● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Reset group name</b>	<p>You can reset the name of the chat group to the default.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>YES</b></li> </ul>


## Function Menu of the Detailed Chat Group Display/Chat Group Address Confirmation Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Edit</b>	<p>You can edit the mail address. Go to step 3 on page 268.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can edit also by pressing  (Edit).</li> </ul>
<b>Refer address</b>	<p>You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></li> </ul> <p><b>Phonebook</b></p> <p>... Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.</p> <p><b>Sent address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).</p> <p><b>Received address</b></p> <p>... Select a phone number or mail address and press  (Select).</p>
<b>Change member</b>	<p>You can store members from a Mail group in the chat group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Mail group</b> ▶ <b>Select a Mail group.</b></li> </ul>

## Function menu Operation/Explanation

### Member setting



You can set the member's name and image. You can switch members by pressing .

- ▶ **Select the member name field**
- ▶ **Enter a member's name.**

- You can enter up to four full-pitch or eight half-pitch characters.
- Not to change the member's name, go to the next step.

- ▶ **Select the picture field**
- ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image.**

**Delete** ▶ **YES**

**Delete all** ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**  
▶ **YES**

## <Compose SMS>

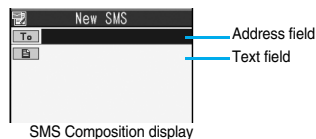
### Composing SMS (Short Messages) to Send

You can compose and send SMS messages.

You can save up to 1,000 sent SMS messages including i-mode mail messages to the Outbox.


- You can send and receive SMS messages to and from subscribers of overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For the countries and over seas carriers available for the service, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.
- You can move/copy the sent SMS messages to the UIM. (See page 403)


- Stand-by display** ▶  (  )
- ▶ **Compose SMS**



## 2 Select the address field ▶ Select an item.


**Phonebook** . . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number.

**Sent address** . . . . . Select a phone number and press  (Select).

**Received address** . . . . . Select a phone number and press  (Select).

**Enter address** . . . . . Enter a phone number.

Only one address can be specified.

- You can enter up to 21 digits (including "+").
- When the address is that of overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (press and hold  for at least one second), "country code", and "destination mobile phone number" in that order. When the mobile phone number begins with "0", enter the phone number except for the "0". Also, you can enter "010", "country code", and "destination mobile phone number" in that order to send SMS messages. (When you reply to SMS messages received from overseas, enter "010".)

## 3 Select the text field ▶ Enter text.

- The number of characters you can enter differs depending on the "SMS input character".

## 4 Press (Send).

The animation display during transmission appears and mail is sent.

## 5 OK


### Information

- Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be sent successfully to the destination.
- When the number of sent mail messages exceeds the maximum number of storage, they will be overwritten starting from the oldest sent mail. However, protected sent mail cannot be overwritten.
- You cannot compose an SMS message when the number of sent mail messages in the Outbox has reached the maximum and those messages are all protected, or when 20 mail messages are saved to the Draft or the Draft is full. Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
- Even if "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", the caller ID is notified to the other party you send an SMS message to. If you attempt to send an SMS message to the phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
  - "+" is valid only at the beginning of the address.
  - You cannot send the message to addresses that include any characters other than numbers, "\*", "#" and "+".
  - You cannot start a new line while editing the text.
  - The special symbols (see page 482) are replaced by half-pitch spaces.

### Information

- Each space is counted as a character.
- You cannot reply to the SMS message whose sender is User unset/PublicPhone/Unavailable.
- In B Mode of 2in1, you cannot compose SMS messages.

### Function Menu of the SMS Composition Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Send</b>	You can send the SMS message. Go to step 5 on page 270.
<b>Preview</b>	Before sending, you can check the address and the text contents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  (Send) to send the SMS message.</li> </ul>
<b>Save</b>	You can save the SMS message you are composing or editing to the Draft. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot save the message when the address field and text field are blank.</li> </ul>
<b>SMS report req.</b>	You can set whether to request an SMS report for the SMS message you are composing. (See page 271)
<b>SMS valid. per.</b>	You can set the validity period for the SMS message you are composing. (See page 272)
<b>SMS input char.</b>	You can set characters to be entered into the SMS message you compose. (See page 272)
<b>Erase message</b>	You can delete the entire text. You cannot delete the address. ▶ YES
<b>Delete</b>	You can delete the SMS message you are editing. ▶ YES

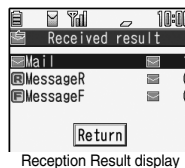
### <Receive SMS>

## Receiving SMS (Short Messages) Automatically

You can save up to 2,500 received SMS messages including i-mode mail messages.

- You can move/copy the received SMS messages to the UIM. (See page 403)

## 1 When an SMS message arrives, (white) lights and the receiving message is displayed.




Reception Result display

When receiving ends, the display shows the number of received SMS messages.

- You can display the Inbox List by selecting "Mail".
- See page 29 for when the FOMA phone is closed.





### ■ If no keys are pressed for about 15 seconds

“” appears on the desktop, then the former display returns. (See page 243)

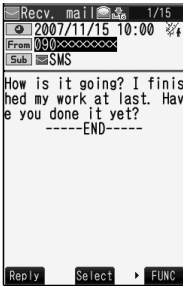
(The actual number of seconds varies depending on the setting for “Mail/Msg. ring time”).

### Information


- When the number of unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new messages can be received and “ (black)” is displayed. To receive SMS messages, delete mail in the Inbox or read unread mail or release protection until “ (black)” clears, and then perform “Check new SMS”.

## Display Newly Received SMS (Short Message)

- 1 **Reception Result display ▶ Mail**  
▶ Select an SMS message to be displayed.




### ■ Switching SMS display

You can change the size of characters by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the detailed SMS display (text).

When you set to “Large”, the characters on the Folder List and the Inbox/Outbox/Draft List are displayed in large size as well.

### Information

- Spaces will be displayed in the received SMS message depending on the entered characters.
- While the sender’s address (phone number) is highlighted in the displayed SMS, you can press  (Select) to dial it (the Phone To/AV Phone To function).  
Further, if the sender’s phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the stored “name” is highlighted. In this case, you can dial the phone number in the same way.
- A Short Mail is received as an SMS message on the FOMA phone. When the sender does not notify the phone number, the reason is displayed in the sender’s field.

### <Check New SMS>

## Checking whether Center Holds SMS (Short Messages)

When SMS messages arrive at the SMS Center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA phone, but will be held at the SMS Center if your FOMA phone cannot receive messages such as when it is off or out of the service area.



You can receive the messages by “Check new SMS”.

- 1 **Stand-by display** ▶    
▶ Check new SMS

- 2 **Return**

If the Center holds SMS messages, the FOMA phone automatically receives them.

### Information

- Some SMS messages are not delivered immediately after checking.
- When “ (black)” or “ (black)”, etc. are displayed, you cannot receive any more SMS messages. Delete unnecessary mail, read unread mail, or release protection. (Read and unprotected messages are overwritten automatically from the oldest one.)
- You cannot use this function to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Use “Check new message” to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F.

## Setting Details for SMS (Short Messages)

### SMS Report Request


Setting at purchase    OFF

You can set whether to request an SMS report for when sending an SMS message.

The SMS report lets you know that your SMS message was delivered to the destination.

You can check received SMS reports in the “Inbox” folder.

- 1 **Stand-by display** ▶    
▶ Mail settings ▶ SMS report request  
▶ ON or OFF

- While displaying the SMS Composition display, press  (FUNC) and select “SMS report req.”.


## SMS Validity Period

Setting at purchase 3 days

You can set the period that the SMS Center holds an SMS message sent but unsuccessfully delivered due to the out-of-service area, etc.

### 1 Stand-by display

- ▶ Mail settings ▶ SMS validity period
- ▶ Select a holding period.

- If you select “None”, the stored SMS message is re-sent after a certain period of time and deleted from the SMS Center.
- While displaying the SMS Composition display, press  (FUNC) and select “SMS valid. per.”.

## SMS Input Character

Setting at purchase Japanese (70char.)

You can set the characters you can enter into the text of SMS messages. You can set to enter only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and half-pitch symbols.

### 1 Stand-by display


- ▶ Mail settings ▶ SMS input character
- ▶ Select an item.

#### Japanese (70char.)

... You can enter full-pitch and half-pitch characters. You cannot enter pictographs except “♥” and “☺” (see page 478). You can enter up to 70 characters for the text.

#### English (160char.)

... You can enter only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and half-pitch symbols. You can enter up to 160 characters for the text.

- While displaying the SMS Composition display, you can press  (FUNC) and select “SMS input char.”. In this case, “Japanese (70char.)” is displayed as “Japanese” and “English (160char.)” is displayed as “English”.

## SMS Center Selection

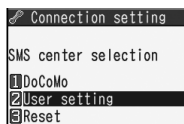
Setting at purchase DoCoMo

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the address and “Type of number” for the SMS Center.

This setting is for getting any service other than SMS Service you currently use.

- ### 1 Settings ▶ Connection setting
- ▶ SMS center selection ▶ User setting
  - ▶ Enter an address.



- You can enter up to 20 half-pitch characters.

### 2 International or Unknown

- If “\*” or “#” is included in the entered address, you cannot set it for “International”.

■ To reset the user setting to “DoCoMo”

- The display in step 1 ▶ Reset
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

<Web Mail>

## Using Web Mail

You can send mail messages or browse received mail messages on the i-mode site.


- You can use only in B Mode or Dual Mode of 2in1.
- For details on Web mail, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [2in1]”.

### 1 Stand-by display

- ▶ Web mail

### 2 Operate following the onscreen instructions.

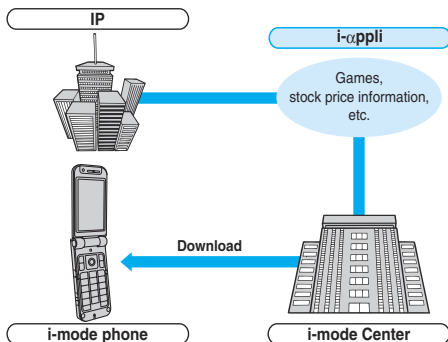
# i-appli



What is i-appli? .....	274
Downloading i-appli from Sites .....	275
Starting i-appli .....	277
Starting i-appli Automatically .....	287
Operating i-appli Stand-by Display .....	288
Setting Lights and Vibrators for when Running i-appli .....	289
Displaying i-appli Data Files on the microSD Memory Card .....	290

## What is i- $\alpha$ pli?

By downloading i- $\alpha$ pli from i-mode sites, you can make full use of your FOMA phone supporting i-mode (i-mode phone). For example, you can enjoy various games downloaded to your i-mode phone, and can automatically check the stock prices at regular intervals once you have downloaded i- $\alpha$ pli for stock price information. In addition, you can download only the necessary data of map i- $\alpha$ pli so that you can scroll it smoothly. You can also use the i- $\alpha$ pli which enables you to directly store the data into the Phonebook or Schedule, or the i- $\alpha$ pli which links to Data Box, enabling you to save or obtain images.



- See page 275 for how to download i- $\alpha$ pli.
- See page 277 for how to run i- $\alpha$ pli.
- See page 287 for how to run i- $\alpha$ pli automatically.
- The serial number of your i-mode phone/UIM may be used depending on the software program.
- Some software programs communicate when they are started; you can set them not to communicate.

### ■ Using stored data

Some i- $\alpha$ pli programs can refer to, store, and operate the data in your i-mode phone (Phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule events, images and icon information).

The i- $\alpha$ pli programs can do the following by using the stored data:

- Store Phonebook entries
- Use icon information
- Save to Bookmark
- Store schedule events
- Retrieve images from Data Box
- Save images to Data Box
- Save ToruCa files
- Use microSD memory card

## What is i- $\alpha$ pli DX?

i- $\alpha$ pli DX enables you to use i- $\alpha$ pli in a more convenient and pleasurable way. By linking to i-mode phone's information (mail, dialed call records/received call records/redial items, and Phonebook entries), you can compose a mail message on the display where your favorite graphic character appears, or make the graphic character tell you who the caller of an incoming call is. By linking to mail, your desired information such as the stock price, or the progress of games can be updated in real time.

### ■ Using stored data

Some i- $\alpha$ pli DX programs can refer to, store, and operate the data such as mail messages, redial items, received call records, and ring tones in addition to the stored data (Phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule events, images, and icon information) which ordinary i- $\alpha$ pli can use.

The i- $\alpha$ pli DX programs can do the following by using the stored data:

- Store Phonebook entries
- Refer to the Phonebook
- Use icon information
- Store bookmarks
- Set alarm
- Store schedule events
- Use Mail Menu
- Use the i-mode Mail Composition display
- Refer to the latest redial item
- Refer to the latest received call record
- Refer to the latest unread mail
- Save ring tones
- Change ring tones (for calls, mail, messages)
- Retrieve images from Data Box
- Save images to Data Box
- Add folders to Data Box
- Change display settings (for the Stand-by display, Dialing/Receiving display, Mail Sending/Receiving display, Message R/F Receiving display)
- Use the microSD memory card
- Store a new ToruCa file, or select, obtain or search ToruCa files
- Use location Information
- i- $\alpha$ pli DX might communicate to confirm the validity of software programs regardless of the communication settings of software programs. Communication frequencies and timing vary depending on the software program.
- You need to set "Set time" to start up i- $\alpha$ pli DX.

### ■ What is Mail-linked i- $\alpha$ pli?

Mail-linked i- $\alpha$ pli is a type of i- $\alpha$ pli DX, enabling you to use i- $\alpha$ pli in a more convenient and pleasurable way.

By exchanging information via i-mode mail, your desired information such as the stock price or the progress of games can be updated in real time.

- i- $\alpha$ pli mail running under mail-linked i- $\alpha$ pli may not be displayed correctly.
- In B Mode of 2in1, message application programs, i- $\alpha$ pli mail messages, and the i- $\alpha$ pli Stand-by display are not available.
- In Dual Mode of 2in1, the i- $\alpha$ pli Stand-by display is not available.

### ■ What is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli?

By using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli, you can read/write the data inside the IC card and use convenient functions such as downloading electronic money or traffic tickets, or checking your account for the balance and usage details on the mobile phone.

- If you use Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli, the information on the IC card is transmitted to the IP (Information Provider) you have signed up for.
- See page 292 for Osaifu-Keitai.

## What is GPS compatible i-appli?

With the GPS compatible i-appli programs that use GPS functions, useful functions are available; you can search for the town information of the current location easier, and can bring up a map to show your location to navigate yourself to where you want to go.

- When you use a GPS compatible i-appli program, your location information is sent to the information provider of the software program you use.
- Before using the GPS function on a GPS compatible i-appli program, you need to set "Location usage" of "Software setting" to "ON" for the software program you use.

## Other things you can do

### ■ i-appli Stand-by display

You can set i-appli for the Stand-by display so that you can receive mail or make calls from the i-appli Stand-by display. You can also set the i-appli Stand-by display more convenient; it enables you to display the latest information about news or weather forecast, or to bring up your desired graphic character that notifies you of incoming mail or alarm. (See page 288)

- They are the functions that can be used under the software programs supporting the i-appli Stand-by display.

### ■ i-appli auto start

You can auto-start the software programs by specifying the date, time, and the day of the week. Some software programs can be auto-started at the time intervals set in them. (See page 287)

### ■ Shooting with a camera

You can shoot a picture using the i-mode phone's camera from the software programs.

- This is a function that can be used under the software programs supporting the camera shooting function.

### ■ Infrared exchange

With some software programs, you can communicate with the devices having the infrared exchange function. i-appli now has a wide variety of usage by linking to those devices. (See page 357)

- This function can be used under the software programs supporting the infrared exchange function.
- You might not be able to exchange data with some devices, even when they have the infrared exchange function.

### ■ Infrared remote-controller

With some software programs, you can operate various devices such as home electronic appliances supporting the infrared remote-controller. (See page 361)

For instance, you can use the pre-installed "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote-controller)" as the AV remote-controller that synchronizes with a TV program list. (See page 286)

- This function can be used under the software programs supporting the infrared remote-controller. You need to have the software program compatible with target devices.

## <i-appli Download>

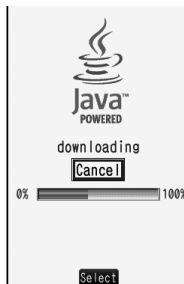
# Downloading i-appli from Sites

You can download software programs from sites to the FOMA phone.


You can store from 10 to 100 downloaded software programs. (The actual number of storable software programs may decrease depending on the data size.)

## 1 Bring up an i-appli downloadable site

▶ Select a software program.



## 2 Select "OK" when downloading ends.

- When downloading ends, the display for Software Setting (Network Set, Stand-by Set, or Location Usage) might come up. Press  (Finish) after setting is completed. These settings can be done also from the Software List.


## 3 YES or NO

YES . . . Starts i-appli.

NO . . . Returns to the site display.



### ■ When software programs are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of software programs is stored or there is not enough memory, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete unnecessary software programs to save a new one.

1. YES ▶ Put a check mark for software programs to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES

- Continue checking items until "Finish" appears at the lower left of the display.
- See page 280 for deleting mail-linked i-appli.

### ■ When downloading is suspended

When downloading is suspended while you are downloading an i-appli program of 100 Kbytes or more owing to the radio wave conditions or by pressing  or , the confirmation display appears asking whether to obtain it again. Select "YES" to download it again. When you select "NO", the confirmation display appears asking whether to save the file downloaded halfway. Select "YES" to partially save the file.

From the Software List, you can download the remaining part of the i-appli program partially saved.

### ■ Downloading mail-linked i-ϕpli

When you download mail-linked i-ϕpli, each i-ϕpli mail folder is created automatically in the Inbox/Outbox Folder List. The name of the folder is the same as the title of the downloaded mail-linked i-ϕpli, and cannot be changed.

You can save up to five mail-linked i-ϕpli programs.

- You cannot download the software program if the mail-linked i-ϕpli using the same folder is already in the Software List.
- You cannot download mail-linked i-ϕpli while Mail Security is set.
- You cannot download mail-linked i-ϕpli if the Inbox/Outbox Folder List contains five i-ϕpli mail folders.

### ■ Re-downloading mail-linked i-ϕpli

You can use an existing i-ϕpli mail folder when re-downloading mail-linked i-ϕpli whose folder only remains. If you do not use the existing i-ϕpli mail folder, delete it and create an i-ϕpli mail folder. You cannot download mail-linked i-ϕpli without creating the folder.

#### To use the existing i-ϕpli mail folder

1. The confirmation display asking whether to use the folder ► YES

#### To delete the existing folder and create an i-ϕpli mail folder

1. The confirmation display asking whether to use the folder ► NO
2. The confirmation display asking whether to create a folder ► YES

#### Information

- “i-ϕpli mail” is the mail sent and saved by mail-linked i-ϕpli and mail received for mail-linked i-ϕpli. i-ϕpli mail is automatically saved to the i-ϕpli mail folder.

### ■ Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card (see page 347).

#### Information


- You can download i-ϕpli pre-installed in your FOMA phone from the “P-SQUARE” site (Japanese only).

☎ Menu→メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search)→ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker)→P-SQUARE



QR code for accessing the site

#### Information

- Downloading is not available at some accessed sites.
- Some i-ϕpli programs can automatically connect to the i-mode Center after they are downloaded. However, to use this service, you need to set it in advance in “Software setting (Network set)”.
-  appears at the top of the display while software information or a software program is being downloaded from SSL pages.
- At downloading, the confirmation display might appear for asking whether to send the “serial number of your mobile phone/UIM”. Select “YES” to start downloading. In this case, the “serial number of your mobile phone/UIM” is sent to the IP (Information Provider) over the Internet, so could be deciphered by third parties. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IP (Information Provider) or others by this operation.
- If you attempt to re-download the software program that was downloaded using a different UIM, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the software program. With the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ϕpli, the confirmation display appears telling that the data on the IC card is to be overwritten. Select “YES” to start downloading. When downloading ends, the software program that was downloaded using a different UIM and the data on the IC card are deleted.
- You cannot download some software programs while the IC card function is working or IC Card Lock is activated.
- Some software programs that start immediately after downloading cannot be saved.
- Depending on the data volume on the IC card, you might not be able to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ϕpli even if there is still available space for software storage. Delete the displayed software programs following the confirmation display, and then download it again. (Some software programs might not be targeted for deletion, depending on the software type to be downloaded.) Depending on the software program, you need to start it and delete the files on the IC card before deleting the software program itself.
- You can save up to 1 Mbyte per i-ϕpli program.
- The 3D polygonal<sup>※</sup> engine enables cubic images to be displayed in i-ϕpli.  
※ By combining polygons, a deep, cubic image is displayed.

### Display Software Info

Setting at purchase	Not display
---------------------	-------------

You can display software information when downloading i-ϕpli.

1

 Settings ►  i-ϕpli settings

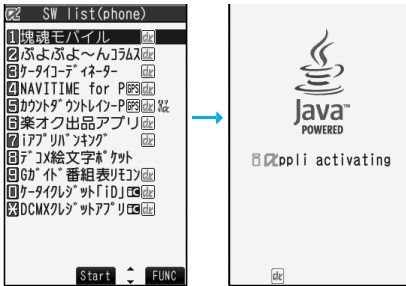
► Disp. software info

► Display or Not display

# Starting i-opp1

## 1 Stand-by display

- ▶ (for at least one second)
- ▶ Select a software program to be started.



Software List



- : GPS compatible i-opp1
- : Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-opp1
- : GPS/Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-opp1
- : i-opp1 DX
- : Mail-linked i-opp1
- : Partially saved i-opp1
- : Set for Auto Start
- : Set for the i-opp1 Stand-by display
- : Set for both Auto Start and the i-opp1 Stand-by display
- : Can set for the i-opp1 Stand-by display
- : Downloaded from an SSL page
- : Downloaded or upgraded by using a different UIM

- You can display the Software List on the microSD memory card by ▶ i-opp1 ▶ opp1(microSD) ▶ SW list(microSD).
- When you start an i-opp1 DX program or while it is running, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to permit the i-opp1 DX program to use the FOMA phone's information and functions.
- When you select the partially saved i-opp1 program, you can download the remaining part of it.
- “” or “” is displayed while i-opp1 is running.
- To end i-opp1, press and hold for at least one second or press ; then select “YES”.
- The software program you started last time comes at the top of the list. You cannot manually change the order of software programs.

# Bring up IC Card List

You can list up Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-opp1 programs.

## 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ IC card content



IC Card List

### ■ To start another software program from the current one

With some software programs, you can start the specified i-opp1 programs and use them without returning to the Software List. Some software programs have a specified software program to be started, and others do not.

### ■ When a software program to be started is specified

While an i-opp1 program is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to start the specified software program. Select “YES”.

### ■ When a software program to be started is not specified

While an i-opp1 program is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to select a software program. Select “YES” and select a software program.

### ■ When a software program malfunctions

You can check the details when a software program malfunctions.

1. ▶ i-opp1 ▶ opp1 info ▶ Trace info

The Trace Information display comes up.

### ■ When a security error occurs


You can check the details when an i-opp1 program ends because of a security error.

If “” is displayed on the desktop, you can select the icon to display the Security Error History.

1. ▶ i-opp1 ▶ opp1 info ▶ Security error history

The Security Error History display comes up.

**■ When “FUNC” appears on the Trace Information or Security Error History display**

You can copy information by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting “Copy info”. To delete information, select “Delete info”, and select “YES”.




**Information**

- When the memory space for the Trace information becomes full, the information is overwritten from the oldest one.
- To creators of i-oppo
  - If you encounter an error while creating a software program, the Trace Information display might help identify the problem.
  - For how to check the Trace Information, see “■ When a software program malfunctions” on page 277.




**Information**

- To start up i-oppo DX, set the data and time by “Set time” beforehand.
- When a software program is running, melodies are played back at the volume set for “Phone” of “Ring volume”. However, melodies are not played back during a call.
- You may need to set the communication setting while a software program is running.
- When communicating frequency is extremely high in a certain period of time while i-oppo is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue communicating.
- With some software programs, you can use the Web To function and the Phone To/AV Phone To function from i-oppo. However, you cannot use them while the software program is running as the i-oppo Stand-by display.
- If you start a camera from i-oppo, the shot images are not saved with ordinary images, but are saved as part of i-oppo for its usage.
- If you start a camera from i-oppo, you can specify the image size or image quality for some i-oppo programs.
- You can scan QR codes and JAN codes from i-oppo using the camera. The scanned data is saved and used by the software program.
- Images<sup>※</sup> that are used by i-oppo and data you have entered might be sent over the Internet to the server automatically.
  - ※ i-oppo uses the following types of images:
    - Images shot by the camera after it is started from a camera-linked application program
    - Images obtained by the infrared exchange function of i-oppo
    - Images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages
    - Images obtained from Data Box by i-oppo
- i-oppo mail running under mail-linked i-oppo might not be displayed correctly.

**Information**

- Some i-oppo programs save the various information running under i-oppo when you finish it. However, the information might not be saved if the low battery alarm sounds or the battery pack is removed while i-oppo is running. If the battery level indicates “”, either press  or end i-oppo in accordance with the operation of each software program.
- You can save the data files of some software programs to the microSD memory card, but you might not be able to use them for another model. You can check “i-oppo(microSD)” for the software programs that use the microSD memory card.
- Some IPs (Information Providers) may access the software program stored in your mobile phone and have it directly halted, depending on the software program. In that case, you will not be able to start or update the software program, or use it for the Stand-by display. You can delete it or display the software information. To resume running the software program, you need to receive the communication to cancel the software halting state. Contact the IP (Information Provider) to inquire about that.
- Some IPs (Information Providers) might send data to the software program stored in your mobile phone depending on the software program.
- When the IP (Information Provider) requests to halt or re-open the software program or sends data to it, the mobile phone communicates and “” is displayed. In this case, you are not charged a communication fee.

**Function Menu of the Software List/IC Card List**

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Set</b>  <b>To</b>	<p>You can set whether to permit the i-oppo program to start from links on sites or mail. You can also set whether to start the i-oppo program when you place the FOMA phone over an IC card compatible scanning device (reader/writer). You can set this for each software program.</p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for items to be set</b></p> <p> (Finish)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Some items might not be set depending on the software program.</li> </ul>
<b>Auto start time</b>	<p>You can set the date and time for Auto Start. (See page 287)</p>
<b>Software setting (Stand-by set)</b>	<p>You can set the software program as the i-oppo Stand-by display. (See page 288)</p>
<b>Software setting (Network set)</b>	<p>You can set whether to communicate while i-oppo is running.</p> <p>▶ <b>Network set ▶ ON, OFF or Check every start</b> ▶  (Finish)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you select “Check every start”, the confirmation display appears each time you start it.</li> </ul>



Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Software setting (Stand-by net)</b>	You can set whether to communicate while the i-ϕpli Stand-by display is running. (See page 289)
<b>Software setting (Icon info)</b>	You can set whether to permit the i-ϕpli to use information of icons for the i-mode mail, SMS messages, Messages R/F, battery level, Manner Mode and the service area/out-of-service area. ▶ <b>Icon info</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶  (Finish)
<b>Software setting (Change mld./img.)</b>	You can set whether to permit the i-ϕpli to change the setting for ring tones or the Stand-by display. This function is available only for i-ϕpli DX. ▶ <b>Change mld./img.</b> ▶ <b>ON, OFF or Check every change</b> ▶  (Finish) ● If you select “Check every change”, the confirmation display appears each time you change the setting for ring tones and the Stand-by display from i-ϕpli.
<b>Software setting (See P. book/hist.)</b>	You can set whether to permit the i-ϕpli to refer to the Phonebook, Redial, and Received Calls. This function is available only for i-ϕpli DX. ▶ <b>See P. book/hist.</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶  (Finish)
<b>Software setting (View ToruCa)</b>	You can set whether to permit the i-ϕpli to refer to ToruCa files. This function is available only for i-ϕpli DX. ▶ <b>View ToruCa</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶  (Finish)
<b>Software setting (Location usage)</b>	You can set whether to permit the i-ϕpli to use location information. This function is available only for i-ϕpli DX. ▶ <b>Location usage</b> ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> ▶  (Finish)
<b>Software desc.</b>	You can display the software name and version of the i-ϕpli. ● Use  to scroll the display to check the information.
<b>Upgrade</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.
<b>Delete</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b>	▶ <b>Put a check mark for software programs to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Move to microSD</b>	You can move the software program to the microSD memory card. ▶ <b>YES</b> ● You can check the moved software program by  ▶ i-ϕpli ▶  ϕpli(microSD) ▶ <b>SW list(microSD)</b> .
<b>Move to phone</b>	You can move the software program from the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone. ▶ <b>YES</b>

Information
<p><b>&lt;Software setting (Icon info)&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When you set “Software setting (Icon info)” to “ON” for the i-ϕpli Stand-by display, the icon information for unread mail/message, battery level, Manner Mode, radio wave strength and out-of-service area can be sent to the IP (Information Provider) over the Internet in the same way as the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM, and can be deciphered by third parties.</li> <li>● When the software program needs “Software setting (Icon info)”, the software program might not run if “OFF” is selected.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Upgrade&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When a software program has been updated at start, you can upgrade it.</li> <li>● At upgrading, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to send the “serial number of your mobile phone/UIM”. Select “YES” to start upgrading. In this case, the “serial number of your mobile phone/UIM” is sent to the IP (Information Provider) over the Internet, so could be deciphered by third parties. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IP (Information Provider) or others by this operation.</li> <li>● You cannot upgrade the mail-linked i-ϕpli in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· While details of the corresponding i-ϕpli mail folder are displayed</li> <li>· While Mail Security is set</li> <li>· When Mail Security is set for the corresponding i-ϕpli mail folder</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## ■When you delete mail-linked i-oppai



For “Delete”

When deleting mail-linked i-oppai, you can select whether to delete the automatically created i-oppai mail folders. If only the folders are left, you can check the text of mail from the Inbox/Outbox List.

1. Perform the operation of “Delete”, “Delete selected” or “Delete all”.

YES . . . . . Deletes both the software program and the i-oppai mail folder.

NO . . . . . Does not delete the i-oppai mail folder; deletes the software only.

Cancel . . . . . Does not delete both the software program and i-oppai mail folder; the former display returns.

### Information

- You can delete neither the i-oppai program nor the i-oppai mail folder even if you select “YES”, in the following cases:

- While displaying details of the folder
- While Mail Security is set
- While the folder is set with security
- When the folder contains protected mail

## ■When you delete an i-oppai program whose data files are on the microSD memory card



When you delete an i-oppai program whose data files are on the microSD memory card, you can select whether to delete those files.

1. Perform the operation of “Delete”, “Delete selected”, or “Delete all”.

YES . . . . . Deletes both the software program and files on the microSD memory card. Press “YES” again on the confirmation display. You need to enter your Terminal Security Code to execute “Delete” or “Delete selected”.

NO . . . . . Does not delete the files on the microSD memory card but deletes the software program only.

Cancel . . . . . Does not delete both the software program and files on the microSD memory card, and the former display returns.

## ■When you delete Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai

When deleting the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the data on the IC card. Select “YES”.

### Information

- You might not be able to delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai unless you delete the files on the IC card after starting the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai.
- You might not be able to delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai while the IC card function is working or IC Card Lock is set.

## ■Setting of pre-installed i-oppai software programs

Software setting	塊魂 モバイル (Katamari Damacy Mobile)	ぷよ ぷよ～ん コラムス (PuyoPuyon COLUMNS)	ケータイ コーディネーター (Mobile Phone Coordinator)	NAVITIME for P
Stand-by set	-	Not available	-	-
Network set	ON	Not available	ON	ON
Stand-by net	-	Not available	-	-
Icon info	-	Not available	ON	-
Change mld./img.	-	Not available	ON	-
See P.book/hist.	-	Not available	-	ON
View ToruCa	-	Not available	ON	ON
Location Usage	-	Not available	-	ON

Software setting	カウント ダウン トレイン GPS (Countdown Train GPS)	楽オク出品 アプリ (Rakuoku Exhibition Application)	i アプリ バンキング (i-oppai Banking)	デコメ 絵文字 ポケット (Decomail- pictograph Pocket)
Stand-by set	OFF	-	-	-
Network set	ON	ON	ON	ON
Stand-by net	ON	-	-	-
Icon info	-	-	-	-
Change mld./img.	-	-	-	Not available
See P.book/hist.	-	-	-	Not available
View ToruCa	-	ON	-	Not available
Location Usage	ON	-	-	Not available

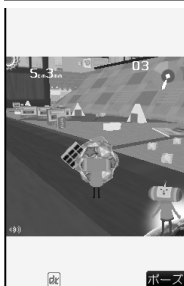
Software setting	Gガイド番組表 リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote- controller)	ケータイ クレジット [iD] (Mobile Phone Credit "iD")	DCMX クレジット アプリ (DCMX Credit Application)
Stand-by set	-	-	-
Network set	ON	ON	ON
Stand-by net	-	-	-
Icon info	-	-	-
Change mid./img.	-	-	-
See P.book/hist.	-	-	-
View ToruCa	ON	-	-
Location Usage	-	-	-

## Pre-installed i-appli Programs

The following i-appli programs are pre-installed:

- You can delete the pre-installed i-appli programs. You can re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site. If you use a UIM other than the one used for downloading, the UIM restrictions apply to it. (See page 39)
- The re-download service period
  - ・“塊魂モバイル (Katamari Damacy Mobile)”, “ぷよぷよ～んコラムス (PuyoPuyon & COLUMNS)”, “ケータイコーディネーター (Mobile Phone Coordinator)”: the end of May, 2011
  - ・“NAVITIME for P”: the end of July, 2010
  - ・“カウントダウントレインGPS (Countdown Train GPS)”: the end of June, 2010
- The re-download service might be halted or closed without notice even in the service period.
- The download service period of additional data for i-appli programs
  - ・“カウントダウントレインGPS (Countdown Train GPS)”: the end of July, 2010
  - ・“ケータイコーディネーター (Mobile Phone Coordinator)”, “塊魂モバイル (Katamari Damacy Mobile)”: the end of June, 2011
- The usable period of “NAVITIME for P” is scheduled to close at the end of July, 2010.

## 塊魂モバイル (Katamari Damacy Mobile)



This is a romantic action game in which you roll a ball called “塊 (Katamari)” and collect various objects on the earth.

© 2003-2007 NBGI

## 1 Software List ▶ 塊魂モバイル (Katamari Damacy Mobile) ▶ はい (YES) ▶

- If you select “いいえ (NO)”, “お知らせ (Information)” does not appear when you start the program next time.
- From the Prince Star (Menu selection) display, you can show the display of “操作方法 (Operation Method)”, “図鑑 (Picture Book)”, “インフォメーション (Information)”, and “ダウンロード (Download)”. To show each Menu display, use (2), (4), (6), (8) to move the prince close to the object of each menu, and then press .
- You can adjust the sound volume by pressing .

## 2 (地球へ) ▶ Use to select a stage.

- You can show the Earth (Stage Selection) display also by using to move the prince close to the earth and pressing .

## 3 Use to select a mode of the game.

- Select “モーショントラッキングモード (Motion Tracking Mode)” to display the detailed operating methods.

### ◆ Key operation while playing a game

Key operation	Contents
	Turns to the left.
	Rolls forward.
	Turns to the right.
	Circles counterclockwise.
	Moves parallel to the left.
	Circles clockwise.
	Moves parallel to the right.
	Turns to the left rear.
	Rolls backward.
	Turns to the right rear.
(○) [Repeated hitting]	The prince dashes.
	The prince turns.
	Sound volume adjustment
	Menu & Pause

### ■ What the motion tracking is

It is a way of operating i-appli programs (by inclining or swinging the FOMA phone) through the recognition technology of the inside camera.

- It might not work in the following cases:
  - ・ When the lens of the inside camera is dirty
  - ・ When the clothes you are wearing are similar to the background
  - ・ When the background is not stable such as when you are moving
  - ・ When you are in a dark or too bright place

### Information

- This application program is the game played by inclining or swinging the FOMA phone. If you excessively swing your FOMA phone, it might happen that it hits against persons or objects, resulting in accidents or damage. When playing the game, securely take hold of your FOMA phone, do not swing to an extent more than necessitated, and check around you for safety.

## ぷよぷよ〜ん&COLUMNS (PuyoPuyon & COLUMNS)



Game Selection display

This is the transplanted version of “ぷよぷよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon)” and “コラムス (COLUMNS)”, the puzzle games that become a massive hit for game consoles. Two games are packaged in an application program. They support the matches using the Bluetooth function and widen the ways of playing.  
© SEGA

### 1 Software List ▶ ぷよぷよ〜んコラムス (PuyoPuyon COLUMNS)

▶ Press or .

- When “ ” or another appears at the lower left of the display, press to adjust the sound volume.

### 2 Select a game.

ぷよぷよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon)

..... You can play “ぷよぷよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon)”.

COLUMNS ... You can play COLUMNS.

オプション (Option)

..... You can set the sound volume or vibrator on/off of the application program. You can also initialize data files.

終了 (End) ... You can end the application program.

### ■ぷよぷよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon)

#### 1 Game Selection display ▶ ぷよぷよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon) ▶ Select a menu item.

ひとりでぷよぷよ (Hitori de PuyoPuyo)

... Play in the VS computer mode. When you have won whole 10 rounds, you beat the game. Select “最初から (from the beginning)”. When a data file saved halfway is found, you can select “続きから STAGEXX (from STAGEXX)”.

※XX denotes the stage number.

ふたりでぷよぷよ (Futari de PuyoPuyo)

... Play in the mode in which you can use the Bluetooth communication to have a match against others. For a Bluetooth match, see “To have a Bluetooth match” on page 283.

とことんぷよぷよ (Tokoton PuyoPuyo)

... Play in the score attacking mode. First select the size of “ぷよ (Puyo)” and the level of difficulty. The number of colors for “ぷよ (Puyo)” differs depending on the level of difficulty.

ハイスコア (High-score)

... Displays the high score of the “とことんぷよぷよ (Tokoton PuyoPuyo)” mode.

BGMへんこう (Change BGM)

... Change BGM.

ヘルプ (Help)

... Displays how to play “ぷよぷよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon)”.

### ◆Key operation while playing a game

Key operation	Contents
(5)	Rotates “ぷよ (Puyo)” to the right.
	Rotates “ぷよ (Puyo)” to the left.
(4)	Moves to the left.
(6)	Moves to the right.
(8)	Increases falling speed.
(停止)	Suspends the game. To resume the game, press  (再開) again or select “再開 (Resume)”. Select “終了 (End)” to end the game.

### ■COLUMNS

#### 1 Game Selection display ▶ COLUMNS ▶ Select a menu item.

VS CPU ... Play in the VS computer mode. When you have won whole 10 rounds, you beat the game. Select “最初から (from the beginning)”. When a data file saved halfway is found, you can select “続きから STAGEXX (from STAGEXX)”.

※XX denotes the stage number.

VS HUMAN

... Play in the mode in which you can use Bluetooth communication to have a match against others. For a Bluetooth match, see “To have a Bluetooth match” on page 283.

エンドレス (Endless)

... Play in the score attacking mode. First select the level of difficulty. The starting level, score, and color of jewels vary depending on the level of difficulty.

ハイスコア (High-score)

... Displays the high score of the “エンドレス (Endless)” mode.

BGM変更 (Change BGM)

... Change BGM.

ヘルプ (Help)

... Displays how to play COLUMNS.

### ◆Key operation while playing a game

Key operation	Contents
(5)	Moves the jewel down to replace.
	Moves the jewel up to replace.
(4)	Moves to the left.
(6)	Moves to the right.
(8)	Increases falling speed.
(停止)	Suspends the game. To resume the game, press  (再開) again or select “再開 (Resume)”. Select “終了 (End)” to end the game.

## ■ To have a Bluetooth match

When you select “ふたりでぶよぶよ (Futari de PuyoPuyo)” on the “ぶよぶよ〜ん (PuyoPuyon)” menu, or when you select “VS HUMAN” on the COLUMNS menu, you need to do the following to connect to your opponent using Bluetooth:

### To have a match with an unregistered player (first time)

Operation at your side (1P side)

Select “未登録の相手と対戦 (1P側) [Match with an unregistered player (1P side)]” and select “YES”.

Select the opponent's FOMA phone you have found, select “YES”, and enter your Terminal Security Code.

Enter the same Bluetooth passkey as that of the opponent and select “確定 (OK)”.

Check that the 2P side is waiting for request and select “準備完了 (Ready)”.

### To have a match with a registered player

Operation at your side (1P side)

Select “登録済の相手と対戦 (1P側) [Match with a registered player (1P side)]”.

Select the opponent's FOMA phone.

Check that the 2P side is waiting for request and select “準備完了 (Ready)”.

Operation at your opponent (2P side)

He/She selects “未登録の相手と対戦 (2P側) [Match with an unregistered player (2P side)]” and enter his/her Terminal Security Code.

When he/she is requested to connect, he/she selects “YES”.

He/She enters any Bluetooth passkey and select “確定 (OK)”.

When he/she receives your request, he/she selects “はい (YES)”.

He/She selects your FOMA phone.

When he/she receives your request, he/she selects “はい (YES)”.

## Information

- When “登録済の相手と対戦 (1P側) [Match with a registered player (1P side)]” or “登録済の相手と対戦 (2P側) [Match with a registered player (2P side)]” is selected with no Bluetooth device registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search for another player. When “YES” is selected, see “To have a match with an unregistered player (first time)”.
- When you select a Bluetooth device other than a FOMA phone, the connection results in an error.
- See page 405 for Bluetooth.

## ケータイコーディネーター (Mobile Phone Coordinator)



© Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.

You can collectively download image files or melody files that are provided to match with Custom Jacket, set them automatically, or use a guide for settings.

- To obtain the data list and to download image files or melody files, you need to communicate. The communication charge differs depending on the type of image or of design.

### Downloadable items and procedures

- Stand-by display
- Ring tone
- Menu background
- Menu icon
- Dialing/Call receiving image
- Mail sending/receiving image

## 1

### Software List

#### ▶ ケータイコーディネーター (Mobile Phone Coordinator) ▶ Read “ご利用の前に (Before use)” thoroughly ▶ OK

- To set the size of characters on the display, select “大 (Large)”, “中 (Medium)”, or “小 (Small)”.
- If you put a check mark for “次回からこの画面を表示しない。(Does not show this display from next time.)”, “ご利用の前に (Before use)” does not appear when you start it next time.

## 2

#### Select a title ▶ Put a check mark for themes to be changed ▶ (確定)


Downloading starts.

- Remove the check mark from the theme you do not want to change.
- Each time downloading of each file is completed, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save the file. Select “YES” or “NO”.
- “待受画面 (Stand-by display)”, “着信音 (ring tone)”, “電話発信・着信画像 (dialing/call receiving image)”, and “メール送信・受信画像 (mail sending/receiving image)” are automatically set. “Menu icon setting” is set to “Customize”, and “メニュー背景 (menu background)” and “メニューアイコン (menu icons)” are automatically set.
- When “” or another appears at the lower left of the display, press to adjust the sound volume.

## 3

#### Press (終了).

**■To display how to set each theme**

Select “設定方法 (How to set)”, and then select “設定方法 (How to set)” of each theme to display how to set manually.  
 ● You can set each theme also with the setting method displayed while switching displays using .

**NAVITIME for P**



This is the GPS compatible i-oppai program that uses the GPS function to guide you through the best route from the start to the destination by public transportation, by cars, on foot respectively. You can bring up a map and search for shops/ facilities in the surrounding area as well.

© NAVITIME JAPAN

- During communication, you might be separately charged a packet communication fee. For the estimate communication fee, refer to “設定 / インフォメーション (Setting/Information)” → “ヘルプ (Help)” → “通信料のご案内 (Information of communication fee)”.
- NAVITIME for P supports the motion tracking.
- NAVITIME for P is a mail-linked i-oppai program, so you cannot use it in B Mode of 2in1.

**カウントダウントレインGPS (Countdown Train GPS)**



Powered by JR Travel Navigator

You can download the time schedule of trains, and can count down the departure time of the train you want to catch on a minute/second basis. The alarm function is also provided to notify you of 5 to 30 minutes before the departure. You can update the time schedule from the menu so the latest one is always available. Further, you can search for the nearest station using the GPS function.

- For details, refer to “ヘルプ (Help)” in the menu.
- カウントダウントレインGPS (Countdown Train GPS) is a mail-linked i-oppai program, so you cannot use it in B Mode of 2in1.

**1 Software List ▶ カウントダウントレイン-P (Countdown Train-P)**

**2 Read “免責事項 (Exemption clause)” thoroughly ▶  (次へ)**

▶ はい (YES)

**3  (メニュー)**

▶ **最寄駅検索 (GPS) or 駅名入力検索**

**最寄駅検索 (GPS)**

[Search the nearest station (GPS)]

..... Measures your current location and searches the surroundings for a station.

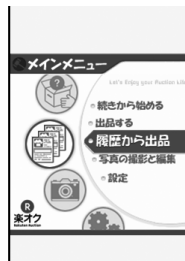
**駅名入力検索 (Search by entering station name)**

..... Enter a station name, and press  (決定). You do not need to enter the whole station name.

**4 Select a station name ▶ Select a line and destination ▶ Highlight a train and press**




 (保存) ▶ はい (YES)

**楽オク出品アプリ (Rakuoku Exhibition Application)**



※ The display is for reference. The actual one may differ.

“楽オク出品アプリ (Rakuoku Exhibition Application)” enables you to easily exhibit your goods on Rakuoku anywhere and anytime. Even if you are a beginner, an instruction guides you through exhibition procedures, so you can use it easily. The convenient functions such as shooting/editing photos and saving records are available so that you can exhibit your goods in a shorter time than you do on sites.

- You need to agree with the usage rules for the first time.
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.
- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- To exhibit on Rakuoku, you need to register with the Rakuten membership and exhibitor membership.
- For the information about Rakuoku, refer to i-mode site.  
 Web page <http://a.rakuten.co.jp/>  
 i-mode site  Menu→楽オク  -オークション- (Rakuoku  -Auction-)



QR code for accessing the site

## i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)

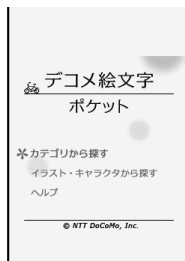


※The display is for reference.  
The actual one may differ.

This is an i-appli program that enables you to conveniently use mobile banking. Mobile banking enables you to use your FOMA phone to check the account balance or account activity statement or to send or transfer money whenever you want and wherever you are. By entering your specified password at the start of this i-appli program, you can use the mobile banking services for up to two banks.

- To use i-appli Banking, you need to have the bank account and subscribe to the mobile banking service of each bank.
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.
- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- For the information about i-appli Banking, refer to i-mode site.

## デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decomail-pictograph Pocket)



“デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decomail-pictograph Pocket)” is the i-appli program dedicated to the Decomail-pictographs. You can easily search for and save Decomail-pictographs that are available as pictographs in i-mode mail messages. You can search for the Decomail-pictographs, which are provided by the information provider, by the theme such as “カテゴリ (category)”, “イラスト (illustration)”, and “キャラクター (character)”, and then easily save them to your FOMA phone.

You can also save multiple Decomail-pictographs at a time. When you find a favorite Decomail-pictograph, you can read the introductory information for the site that provides the pictograph, and can access that site.

- “デコメ絵文字ポケット (Decomail-pictograph Pocket)” is free from monthly information fee. You might be separately charged an i-mode information fee for visiting the site provided by the IP (Information Provider).
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.
- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

## Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote-controller)



※ The display is for reference.  
The actual one differs.  
Local programs according to your region appear on your display.

This is a convenient application program that bundles the TV program list and AV remote-controller function and the monthly charge is free.

Anytime and anywhere you are, you can easily obtain the terrestrial analog or terrestrial digital TV program information for the desired time zone. You can know about titles, contents, and start/end times of TV programs.

If there is any program you want to watch, you can book timer recordings of the program on a DVD hard disk recorder over the Internet. (You need to have a DVD hard disk recorder that supports the remote timer recording function. And you need to perform initial settings of this application program.) Further, you can search for the program information by keywords such as program genres or celebrities you like. You can also remote-control a TV, video recorder, and DVD player. (Some models are not supported.)

- See “Using Infrared Remote-controller Function” on page 361 for details of the infrared remote-controller.
- You need to make the initial settings and to agree with the usage rules for the first time.
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.
- To use this i-appli program overseas, set the date/time for the FOMA phone to Japan time.
- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote-controller) is a mail-linked i-appli program, so you cannot use it in B Mode of 2in1.

## ■ About remote timer recording function

If you have a DVD hard disk recorder that supports the remote timer recording function, you can book timer recordings from the program list of this application program over the Internet even if you are away. For remote timer recording, you need to make initial settings of this application program.

### How to make initial settings

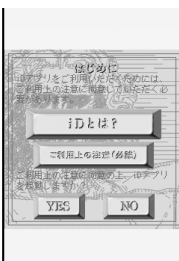
1. Set the Internet connection for the DVD hard disk recorder (Refer to the instruction manual of the DVD hard disk recorder you use.)
2. Software List ▶ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote-controller) ▶ (リモート録画予約) (Remote timer recording)
  - ▶ Operate following the guidance.

### How to book programs

After the initial settings, specify your desired program and select “リモート録画予約 (Remote timer recording)”. Then, the DVD hard disk recorder specified on this application program is connected via the Internet, and you can book timer recordings.

- ※ When a program has already been reserved for the same time, the message to that effect appears on the Program List.
- You are separately charged a packet communication fee.

## ケータイクレジット「iD」 (Mobile Phone Credit “iD”)



※ The display is for reference.  
The actual one may differ.

Mobile Phone Credit “iD” is a credit service that enables you to do shopping or cashing by placing your Osaifu-Keitai over a reader. You can do shopping very easily without taking a card out of your wallet or without signing in.

- To use “iD”, you need to subscribe to your card publishing company that supports “iD”, and to have the iD application program and the card application program provided by that company.
- To start the iD application program for the first time, you need to agree with “ご利用上の注意 (Cautions in use)”, to get ready for use, and then to download the card application program.
- The expense (annual fees, etc.) charged for the credit service that supports “iD” varies depending on the card publishing company.
- You are charged a packet communication fee for downloading the iD application program, and the card application program of the credit card publishing company.
- For the information about “iD”, refer to the iD web page and i-mode site.

Web page <http://id-credit.com>

i-mode site Menu → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search)

→ ケータイクレジット「iD」(Mobile Phone Credit “iD”)



QR code for accessing the site



## DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit Application)



※ The display is for reference.  
The actual one may differ.

“DCMX” is a credit service that supports “iD” and offered by NTT DoCoMo Group. DCMX provides DCMX mini that enables you to use up to ¥10,000 per month and respective DCMX services that enable you to use more amount and save up DoCoMo points.

With “DCMX mini”, you can easily make a subscription from this application program and immediately use Mobile Phone Credit.

### Subscribing for membership/Screening ※1

### Setting card information

#### Use

No troublesome deposit is required!  
Just by placing the setup completed mobile phone over the reader at a shop, you can enjoy shopping without signing※3.

#### Check ※2

You can check, on the application program, the balance for the current month and detailed account!

#### Change

When updating your card or changing models, you can apply from the application program.

※1 The online screening is conducted at your subscription for DCMX mini. For subscribing to a service other than “DCMX mini”, you are connected to the subscription page for i-mode.

※2 The checking function for usage status and others is available for “DCMX mini” only.

※3 You might be required to enter your pin number under certain conditions.

●For service contents and details of subscriptions, refer to the following:

DCMX web page

· From i-mode: ☰ Menu→DCMX

· From personal computers: <http://dcmx.jp/>



QR code for accessing the site

●For inquiries about this service, contact “DoCoMo Information Center” on the back page of this manual.

## Information

- To start this application program for the first time, you need to agree with “ご利用上の注意 (Cautions in use)”.
- You are charged a packet communication fee for settings and operations.

## Cautions on Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- Note that we take no responsibility for any information set on your IC card.

## Starting i-appli Automatically

You can make an i-appli program start automatically at the set date and time. Set the date and time for automatic start using Auto Start Time.

## Auto Start Set

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

You can set whether to enable automatic start of i-appli programs.

1 ▶ i-appli▶ Auto start set▶ ON or OFF

## Auto Start Time

You can set the date and time for automatic start. You can set for up to three software programs.

1 Software List/IC Card List (FUNC)  
▶ Auto start time

2 Put a check mark for an item to be set  
▶ (Finish)

**Time interval set** . . . Starts at an interval specified by the software program. The setting is completed.

**Start time set** . . . . Starts at the set start time automatically.

3 Select start time  
▶ Enter the date and time to be set.

Use to move the cursor and use the numeric keys to enter numbers.

- Enter the A.D. year.
- Enter the time on 24-hour basis.

4 1 time▶ Select an item.

**1 time** . . . . The setting is for no repetition (once only).  
Go to step 6.

**Daily** . . . . Starts the software program every day. Go to step 6.

**Weekly** . . . . Starts the software program on the specified day/days of the week.

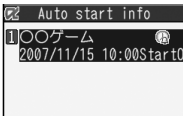
5 Put a check mark for the days of the week to be set (Finish)

6 Press (Finish).

## Auto Start Info

You can check whether a software program has started automatically and properly. Also, you can check the information of start failure from IC card. Up to three records of automatic start and a record of start failure from IC card are stored.

1 **i-opppli info**  
▶ **Auto start info**



Auto Start Info display

**StartO** . . . . Started automatically and properly.

**StartX** . . . . Did not start automatically.

When “**Start**” is displayed, you can press (**Start**) to start the software program.

**Start-** . . . . Has not started yet.

### Information

- Software programs do not start automatically in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA phone is turned off
  - When the date and time are not set
  - When another function is working
  - During Lock All or Personal Data Lock
  - While animation/Flash movie is being played back
  - When the time set for automatic start is identical to the reserved time set for “Software update”, or the time set for an alarm of “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “ToDo”
  - While “Automatic display” is set
  - When a start time has been specified to the same software program within 10 minutes from the previous auto-start
- If automatic start fails, “ (Notrun)” appears on the desktop. Select the icon to bring up the Auto Start Info display.

## <i-opppli Stand-by Display>

# Operating i-opppli Stand-by Display

## Software Setting (Stand-by Set)

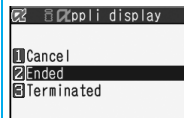
You can set an i-opppli program for the Stand-by display. Once set, the i-opppli Stand-by display automatically appears each time you bring up the Stand-by display.

1 **Software List/IC Card List** (**FUNC**)  
▶ **Software setting** ▶ **Stand-by set**  
▶ **ON or OFF**

2 Press (Finish).

“” is displayed for the software program set as the Stand-by display. “” or “” is displayed while an i-opppli Stand-by display is running.

### To operate an i-opppli program as a normal i-opppli program when an i-opppli Stand-by display is running



From the i-opppli Stand-by display, press (CH277).

“” or “” changes to a blinking “” or “” and then you can operate the i-opppli program as a normal one.

- To return to the i-opppli Stand-by display, press and hold (CH277) for at least one second or press (END); then select “Ended”. To release the i-opppli Stand-by display, select “Terminated”, and select “YES”.

### Information

- With some software programs set as the i-opppli Stand-by display, you can press a key to go from the normal i-opppli status to the i-opppli Stand-by display status. However, you cannot return to the i-opppli Stand-by display if another menu function is operating.

### Information

- If you turn off the FOMA phone while the i-opppli Stand-by display is running, the confirmation display appears asking whether to start the i-opppli program when you turn on the power again.
- You can set only one software program for the i-opppli Stand-by display.
- Some i-opppli programs cannot be set for the Stand-by display.
- Note that you might not be able to receive timely information if you have set “Software setting (Stand-by net)” to “OFF”.
- You cannot use the Web To function and the Phone To/ AV Phone To function from the i-opppli Stand-by display.
- If the software program which connects to the network is set for the i-opppli Stand-by display, it might not operate successfully because of radio wave conditions or other factors.

### Information

- When you bring up the Stand-by display while a menu function is operating, the image set for “Stand-by display” of “Display setting” will be displayed, even when the i-αppli Stand-by display is set.
- When communicating frequency is extremely high in a certain period of time while an i-αppli program is running as the i-αppli Stand-by display, the confirmation display appears. When you press (OK), the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue communication.
- If you set Lock All or Personal Data Lock when the i-αppli Stand-by display is shown, the i-αppli Stand-by display will end. If you set Lock All, the image set for “Stand-by display” of “Display setting” will be displayed and if you set Personal Data Lock, the default Stand-by display will be displayed. The i-αppli Stand-by display will return when you release Lock All or Personal Data Lock.

### Software Setting (Stand-by Net)

You can set whether to permit communication for when the i-αppli Stand-by display is running.

- 1 Software List/IC Card List (FUNC)
  - ▶ Software setting ▶ Stand-by net
  - ▶ ON or OFF (Finish)

### End Stand-by Display

You can temporarily end the running i-αppli Stand-by display. Also, you can release the i-αppli Stand-by display.

- 1 Settings (αppli settings)
  - ▶ End stand-by display
  - ▶ End or Terminate
  - When you select “Terminate”, select “YES”.

### End Stand-by Info

When the i-αppli Stand-by display does not end successfully, you can check the date/time and its reason.

- 1 i-αppli (αppli info)
  - ▶ End stand-by info
  - When “FUNC” is displayed on the End Stand-by Info display, press (FUNC), and select “Copy info” to copy the information. Select “Delete info”, and select “YES” to delete the information.

## Setting Lights and Vibrators for when Running i-αppli

### αBacklight

Setting at purchase	Depend on system
---------------------	------------------

You can set the backlight operation for when an i-αppli program is running.

- 1 Settings (αppli settings)
  - ▶ αBacklight ▶ Select an item.

#### Depend on system

..... Follows the setting of “Backlight”.

#### Depend on software

..... Follows the setting of each software program.

**Constant light** . . . Lights constantly.

### αVibrator

Setting at purchase	Depend on system
---------------------	------------------

- 1 Settings (αppli settings)
  - ▶ αVibrator ▶ Depend on system or

#### Depend on software

#### Depend on system

..... Does not work regardless of the setting of “Vibrator”. With some software programs, vibrator will work.

#### Depend on software

..... Follows the setting of each software program.

### Information



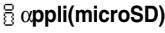
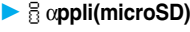
- With some software programs, the backlight and vibrator settings are “OFF”. Consequently, if you set “Depend on software”, the backlight and vibrator will not work; if you want them to work, set “Depend on system”.

< i-appli(microSD)>

## Displaying i-appli Data Files on the microSD Memory Card

Depending on the i-appli program, you can save its data files on the microSD memory card.

You can display the i-appli data files saved on the microSD memory card.


- 1     





### Information

- You can operate only when the same UIM that was used for downloading the i-appli program is used.

### Function Menu while i-appli Data File is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Folder info</b>	You can display the information of the software program that uses the selected folder, available/unavailable for folder usage, and the reason if unavailable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use  to scroll the display to check the information.</li></ul>
<b>Delete folder</b>	You can delete the selected folder and files in the folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></li><li>▶ <b>YES</b></li></ul>

# Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa



What is Osaifu-Keitai? .....	292
What is iC Transfer Service? .....	292
Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli .....	293
What is ToruCa? .....	294
Obtaining ToruCa Files. ....	294
Displaying ToruCa Files .....	295
How to See ToruCa File List/Detailed ToruCa File Display .....	297
Detailed Settings for ToruCa .....	299
Locking IC Card Function. ....	300

## What is Osaifu-Keitai?

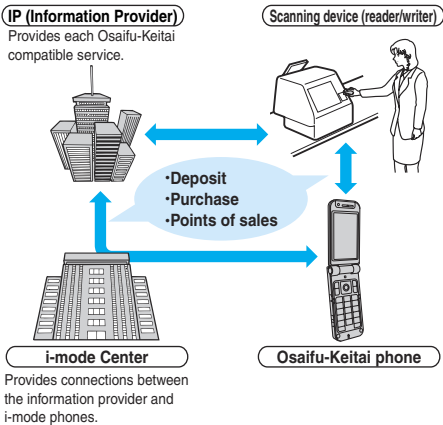
The convenient i-mode function which uses the IC card function of the i-mode phone (i-mode FeliCa), or the i-mode phone with the IC card mounted is called "Osaifu-Keitai".

FeliCa is one of the non-contact IC technologies that enables you to read and write data just by placing it over a scanning device (reader/writer).

You can use Osaifu-Keitai to pay for shopping, as a flight ticket or reward card just by placing it over the scanning device (reader/writer<sup>※</sup>) that supports Osaifu-Keitai. Mobile phones have become one of easy-to-use tools in your daily life.

Further, different from the existing FeliCa compatible non-contact IC card, the new one enables you to deposit electronic money through a site into the IC card inside the Osaifu-Keitai or to check your account for balance or usage details.

※ Device for reading from/writing to the IC card



※ To use IC card function, download the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli program which supports the IC card function.

● The way of subscription to and of usage of each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service differs, so ask your IP (Information Provider). For cautions on using each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

- Take and store a note on names of each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service and where to inquire. Data inside the IC card might be lost or deformed owing to the trouble, repair, model change, or other mishandling of the Osaifu-Keitai. (Note that as a rule, data shall be deleted beforehand by yourself in case of repair.) Also note that we cannot be held responsible for the loss or deformation of data inside the IC card. The countermeasures for the deletion, loss or deformation of data inside the IC card differ depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, so ask your IP (Information Provider) and then make sure the countermeasures beforehand.
- Be careful not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai phone. If you have lost it, ask your IP (Information Provider) about the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service you use. With this FOMA phone, you can restrict the IC card function by IC Card Lock/ Omakase Lock/ ANSHIN-KEY Lock. (See page 161, page 163, and page 300)

## What is iC Transfer Service?

iC transfer service<sup>※1</sup> provides the service of transferring the data files in the IC card at a time<sup>※2</sup> to your new Osaifu-Keitai mobile phone when you replace your Osaifu-Keitai mobile phone. After completing the transfer of data files in the IC card, just download compatible iC application program, and then you can easily use the Osaifu-Keitai services.

iC transfer service is available at the service counters such as a DoCoMo shop nearby.

The service is available among the following iC transfer service compatible models<sup>※3</sup>. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

- ※1 You are charged a handling fee for using iC transfer service. (You might not be charged at times.) In addition, you are charged a packet communication fee for downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- $\alpha$ pli programs and respective settings.
- ※2 Some Osaifu-Keitai services are not supported. The services that are not supported are deleted when you use iC transfer service, so ensure that you use a back-up service for the Osaifu-Keitai services or delete them in advance.
- ※3 903i series, 904i series, 703i series (except D703i, P703i $\mu$ , and N703i $\mu$ )

## Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-oppai

### Read and Write Data inside the IC Card

You can start the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai from the Software List or IC Card List. By using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai, you can read/write the data inside the IC card and use convenient functions such as depositing electronic money or traffic tickets, or checking your account for the balance and usage details on the mobile phone.

- Take care of your Terminal Security Code and password used for each service not to reveal to anyone.
- When you start or download the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai program for the first time, the message "Use IC card for current UIM?" appears. When you select "YES", you cannot use the IC card function afterward unless you insert the same UIM.

To use the IC card function with another UIM, insert the currently supported UIM first and then deleted all the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai programs. Otherwise, you cannot use it.

- Reading and writing data from the software program and to the IC card is suspended in the following cases:  
In that case, the read or written data is discarded. The operation after the communication ends differs depending on the service you use.
  - When a call comes in while i-oppai is running
  - When the battery goes flat

- 1 **Stand-by display** ▶ (電機) (for at least one second) ▶ **Select an Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai program.**

The Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai program starts up.

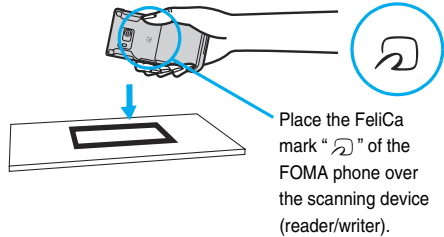
## Use Osaifu-Keitai

Place the FeliCa mark "☞" of the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer), and you can use the FOMA phone as electronic money to pay for shopping or to use it as a traffic ticket. This function is available without starting the software program.

- During a call or i-mode connection, you can use Osaifu-Keitai by placing the FeliCa mark over the scanning device (reader/writer), however, you cannot start the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai.

- 1 **Place the FeliCa mark "☞" of the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer) to use the target service.**

- (HIKARI Icon) lights when you bring your FOMA phone close to a scanning device (reader/writer) and communication becomes ready. (See page 25)



### Information

- Mount the battery pack to use Osaifu-Keitai. Even when the power is turned off or when the battery has gone flat, you can use Osaifu-Keitai by placing the FeliCa mark over the scanning device (reader/writer), however, you cannot start the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai. You might not be able to use Osaifu-Keitai if you have left the battery unused for a long period or not charged it after the low battery alarm sounds. Charge the battery.
- When the FeliCa mark "☞" of the FOMA phone placed over the scanning device (reader/writer) is not identified, slightly move the mark forwards, backwards, to left, or to right.
- Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppai might start when you place the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer).

## What is ToruCa?

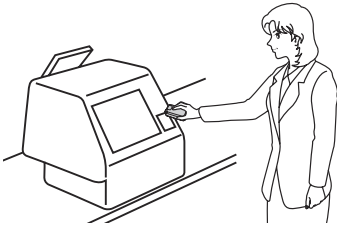
ToruCa is an electronic card that you can obtain with Osaifu-Keitai for use as fliers, restaurant cards, and coupon tickets.

You can obtain ToruCa files from the scanning devices (reader/writer) or sites and can easily exchange them using mail, infrared ray, or a microSD memory card.

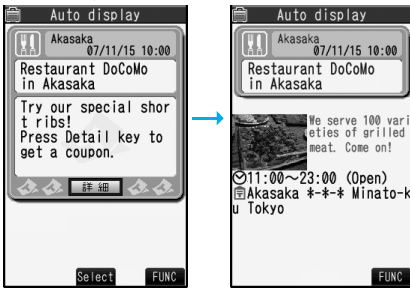
The obtained ToruCa files are saved to "ToruCa" under "LifeKit".

● Available on the ToruCa compatible model. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

### ■ Flow for using ToruCa

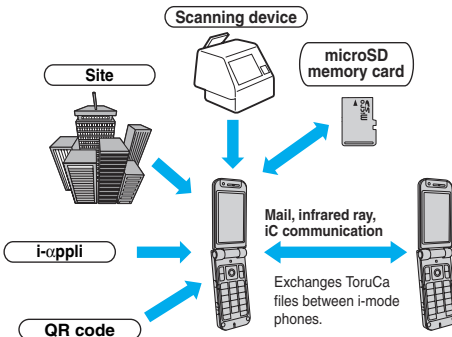


Place your Osaifu-Keitai over a scanning device (reader/writer) to obtain a ToruCa file.



You can view more detailed information by using "詳細 (Details)" key.

### ■ Sources of ToruCa files



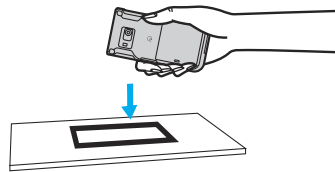
## Obtaining ToruCa Files

### Obtain from Scanning Device (Reader/Writer)

You can obtain the ToruCa file from a scanning device (reader/writer) using the IC card function. By obtaining detailed information, a ToruCa file becomes a ToruCa file (details) which has more pieces of information.

- For a ToruCa file (details), you can download up to 100 Kbytes per file, and for a ToruCa file before obtaining the details, you can download up to 1 Kbyte per file.

### 1 Place the FeliCa mark "☞" of the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer).



### ■ When the ToruCa file is obtained



A ToruCa obtained tone sounds, the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

- When "Receiving display" is set to "ON", detailed display of obtained ToruCa file appears.

- For a ToruCa file before obtaining detailed information, the confirmation display appears asking whether to connect to a site to download detailed information. Select "YES" to display a ToruCa file (details) with detailed information obtained. Select "NO" to display a ToruCa file without detailed information.
- If you have not touched any keys for about 15 seconds, or "Receiving display" is set to "OFF", "New" appears on the desktop. Press , highlight , and press (Select); then the ToruCa File List appears.
- See page 28 for when the FOMA phone is closed.



### ■Using Auto-reading Function of ToruCa

If you set “Auto reading” to “Accept” to use the ToruCa files by placing the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer), the available ToruCa files are automatically recognized. The used ToruCa files are converted into “Used” and then moved to the “Used ToruCa” folder. Up to 20 used ToruCa files are saved, and when the number of the files exceeds 20, the files are deleted from the one downloaded at the oldest date.

●Even if “Auto reading” is set to “Reject”, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to use “Auto reading” when you place the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer). To use ToruCa files, select “YES”, and then set “Auto reading” to “Accept”.

### Information

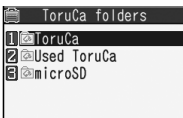
- When you fail to obtain the ToruCa file, a ToruCa failed-to-obtain tone sounds, Call/Charging indicator lights.
- A ToruCa obtained tone and a ToruCa failed-to-obtain tone sound at the volume set for “Phone” of “Ring volume”.
- Depending on the settings by IPs (Information Providers), you might not be able to update ToruCa files or send them by mail or infrared exchange.

## <ToruCa Viewer>

### Displaying ToruCa Files

You can display the ToruCa file obtained using the IC card function, or from sites or mail.

- 1  LifeKit ▶ ToruCa ▶ ToruCa folders  
▶ Select a folder.



ToruCa Folder List

- When the folder contains unread ToruCa files, “NEW” appears.

- 2 Select a ToruCa file.

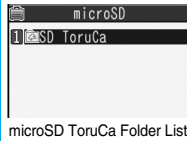


ToruCa File List



Detailed ToruCa File display

### ■When “microSD” is selected on the ToruCa Folder List



The microSD ToruCa Folder List appears.  
Select a folder to list the ToruCa files.

### ■When obtaining detailed information from a ToruCa file







A ToruCa file before obtaining detailed information itself does not show the detailed information. Select “詳細” (Details) on the ToruCa file display and select “YES” to connect to the site to obtain more detailed information. After obtaining the detailed information, the ToruCa file is overwritten and saved.

### Information

- You are charged the ordinary packet fee for obtaining.




## Function Menu of the ToruCa Folder List

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add folder</b>	<p>You can create a user folder. You can create up to 20 folders.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Auto-sort</b>	<p>You can set a ToruCa file that matches the condition to be automatically sorted and saved to the folder when you obtain the ToruCa file from the scanning device (reader/writer).</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a sorting condition.</b></p> <p><b>Genre</b>            . . . . . Put a check mark for the genre to sort into and press  (Finish).            You can put it for multiple genres.</p> <p><b>Title</b>            . . . . . Enter characters from those in the title, to be a sorting condition.</p> <p><b>Index</b>            . . . . . Enter characters from those in the location data, to be a sorting condition.</p> <p><b>Release</b>            . . . . . Select "YES" to release the sorting condition you specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 20 full-pitch characters or 40 half-pitch characters for the Title sort and up to 10 full-pitch characters or 20 half-pitch characters for the Index sort.</li> <li>When a sorting condition is already specified for the folder, it is displayed. Press  (FUNC) to set a sorting condition again.</li> </ul>
<b>Edit folder name</b>	<p>You can edit the folder name for the user folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Memory info</b>	<p>You can display the used and unused memory space (estimate), and the number of saved files.</p>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Search all folders</b>	<p>You can search through all ToruCa files in the FOMA phone (except ToruCa files stored in the "Used ToruCa" folder) by specifying a search condition.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a search condition.</b></p> <p><b>Genre</b> . . . . . Select a genre.            Press  (Detail) to display a list of category icons belonging to the genre.</p> <p><b>Title</b> . . . . . Enter characters to be sorted, from those in the title.</p> <p><b>Index</b> . . . . . Enter characters to be sorted, from those in location data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters for the Title search, and up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for the Index search.</li> </ul>
<b>Send all Ir data</b>	See page 360.
<b>All  transmission</b>	See page 362.
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	<p>You can copy the ToruCa files together with the folder from the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card.</p>
<b>CPY all to microSD</b>	<p>You can copy all the ToruCa files together with the folder from the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Delete folder</b>	<p>All ToruCa files in the folder are deleted.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Delete all</b>	<p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>

### Information

#### <Auto-sort>

- " " is displayed when the Genre sort is set, " " is displayed when the Title sort is set, and " " is displayed when the Index sort is set.

- When a file satisfies multiple conditions, it is sorted into the top of the folder in the ToruCa Folder List.

#### <Copy to microSD>

- The ToruCa file (details) is copied as a ToruCa file before obtaining details if it contains data which is prohibited to output from the FOMA phone or set with UIM restrictions.

#### <CPY all to microSD>

- The ToruCa files in the "ToruCa" folder within the FOMA phone are saved to "SD ToruCa" on the microSD memory card.

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add folder</b>	<p>▶ Enter a folder name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Edit folder name</b>	<p>▶ Enter a folder name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>Copy to phone</b>	<p>You can copy the ToruCa files together with the folder from the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone.</p>
<b>Copy all to phone</b>	<p>You can copy all the ToruCa files together with the folder from the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone.</p> <p>▶ Add or Overwrite</p> <p>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</p> <p>▶ YES</p>
<b>Delete folder</b>	<p>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</p> <p>▶ YES</p>
<b>Select storage</b>	<p>You can set a destination folder for when copying from the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card.</p> <p>▶ YES</p>

**Information**

<Copy all to phone>

- The ToruCa files in the "SD ToruCa" on the microSD memory card are added or overwritten and then saved to "ToruCa" folder in the FOMA phone.

<Select storage>

- "📁" is displayed for the folder set as a destination.
- When you execute Check microSD, or create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the destination folder on the microSD memory card might be changed. When the setting is changed, set the destination folder again.

# How to See ToruCa File List/ Detailed ToruCa File Display

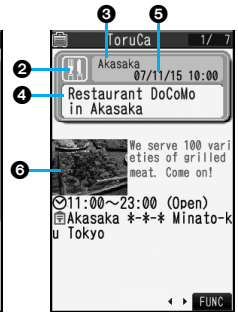
## ToruCa File List and Detailed ToruCa File display



ToruCa File List



Detailed ToruCa File display (for ToruCa file)



Detailed ToruCa File display (for ToruCa file (details))

**1 Indicates the state of ToruCa file**

※1	Unread ToruCa file
	Read ToruCa file
※2	FOMA phone incompatible ToruCa file

※1 Does not apply to the ToruCa file downloaded from a site.

※2 Appears for only ToruCa file on the microSD memory card.

- "🕒" is add to the expired ToruCa file.
- "🚫" is add to the ToruCa file whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited.

**2 Indicates the category**

Displays a category icon that matches the contents of the ToruCa file.

**3 Indicates the Index file**

Displays the location data of the publisher that publishes the information about the ToruCa file.



**4 Indicates the title**



**5 Indicates the date and time the ToruCa file was obtained**

**6 Indicates the ToruCa information**

Simple explanation and the "詳細 (Details)" key are displayed for a ToruCa file. Information about the publisher is displayed for a ToruCa file (details).

## Function Menu of the ToruCa File List/Detailed ToruCa File Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation		
<b>Move</b>	<p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot select “Used ToruCa” folder.</li> </ul>		
<b>Search</b> [List only]	<p>You can search through ToruCa file in the folder by specifying a search condition.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a search condition.</b></p> <p><b>Genre</b> . . . . Select a genre. Press  (Detail) to display a list of category icons belonging to the genre.</p> <p><b>Title</b> . . . . . Enter characters to be sorted, from those in the title.</p> <p><b>Index</b> . . . . . Enter characters to be sorted, from those in location data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters for the Title search, and up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for the Index search.</li> </ul>		
<b>Sort</b>	<p>You can change the order of displayed files.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an order.</b></p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>By date ↑</td> </tr> </table> <p>[List only]</p>	Setting at purchase	By date ↑
Setting at purchase			
By date ↑			
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.		
<b>Attach to mail</b>	<p>You can compose i-mode mail with the ToruCa file attached.</p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 232.</p>		
<b>Send Ir data</b>	See page 359.		
 <b>transmission</b>	See page 361.		
<b>Copy to microSD</b>	The files are copied to the folder as specified by “Select storage” on page 297.		
<b>Copy to phone</b>	You can copy the ToruCa file from the microSD memory card to the ToruCa folder in the FOMA phone.		
<b>Memory info</b> [List only]	You can display the used and unused memory space (estimate), and the number of saved files.		
<b>Update ToruCa</b> [Detailed display only]	<p>You can re-obtain the information about the ToruCa file. The re-obtained ToruCa file (details) is automatically overwritten and then saved.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot update some ToruCa files.</li> <li>See page 215 for when maximum number of ToruCa files is saved.</li> </ul>		

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add to phonebook</b> [Detailed display only]	See page 114.
<b>Save image</b> [Detailed display only]	<p>You can save the image displayed on the ToruCa file and set it for the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an image</b> ▶ <b>YES</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 212.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See page 215 for when saved image files are full.</li> </ul>
<b>Save BG image</b> [Detailed display only]	<p>You can save the background image of the ToruCa file and set it for the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 212.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See page 215 for when saved image files are full.</li> </ul>
<b>Copy</b>	<p>You can copy the ToruCa file you are displaying or selecting to another user folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot select the “Used ToruCa” folder.</li> </ul>
<b>Retry</b> [Detailed display only]	You can play back an animation image or Flash image in the ToruCa file from the beginning.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete selected</b> [List only]	<p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for ToruCa files to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Delete all</b> [List only]	<p>You can delete all ToruCa files in the folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>
<b>Multiple-choice</b> [List only]	<p>You can select multiple ToruCa files and operate.</p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for ToruCa files to be selected</b> ▶  (FUNC)</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Move</b> . . . . . See page 298.</p> <p><b>Send Ir data</b> . . . . . See page 359.</p> <p><b>Copy to microSD</b> . . . . . See page 298.</p> <p><b>Copy to phone</b> . . . . . See page 298.</p> <p><b>Copy</b> . . . . . See page 298.</p> <p><b>Select all</b> . . . . . Selects all files.</p> <p><b>Release all</b> . . . . . Releases all selections.</p>

## Information

### <Attach to mail>

- The ToruCa file (details) that contains data whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited is attached as a ToruCa file before obtaining details.
- You might not be able to attach the ToruCa file to i-mode mail depending on its file size.

### <Copy to microSD>

- The ToruCa file (details) that contains data whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited or the data set with the UIM restrictions is copied as a ToruCa file before obtaining details.
- When the number of files in the destination folder on the microSD memory card is full, a new folder is automatically created and ToruCa files are saved to that folder.  
When copying is completed, the message "Storage is changed to XXXXXX" (XXXXXX denotes a folder name) appears.

- The name of copied ToruCa file is TORUCXXX (XXX denotes a numeral).
- When no folder is set as a destination folder on the microSD memory card, a new folder is created automatically and the file is saved to the folder. After saving, the newly created folder is set as the destination folder.
- You might not be able to execute "Copy to microSD" for the ToruCa file depending on its file size.

### <Copy to phone>

- You might not be able to execute "Copy to phone" for the ToruCa file depending on its file size.

### <Save image> <Save BG image>


- The images that satisfy the following conditions are saved as frames or stamps:
  - The transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file
  - The file extension is "ifm".
  - The image size is CIF (352 x 288), Stand-by (240 x 400), QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (176 x 144), or Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) for frames; and CIF (352 x 288) or smaller except frames for stamps.

### <Copy>

- You cannot copy ToruCa files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited.

## <ToruCa Settings>

# Detailed Settings for ToruCa

- 1  LifeKit ▶ ToruCa ▶ ToruCa settings  
▶ Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Receive ToruCa</b>	You can set whether to obtain ToruCa file from a scanning device (reader/writer) using the IC card function.
Setting at purchase	
Accept	▶ <b>Accept or Reject</b>
<b>Receiving display</b>	You can set whether to display the Detailed ToruCa display when you obtain a ToruCa while the Stand-by display is shown.
Setting at purchase	
ON	▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
<b>Check same data</b>	You can set whether to check the same ToruCa file is already obtained before obtaining a ToruCa file from a scanning device (reader/writer).
Setting at purchase	
ON	▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
	<b>ON</b> . . . Checks and does not obtain a new ToruCa file if the same ToruCa file is already obtained.
	<b>OFF</b> . . . Does not check. Obtains even the same ToruCa file.
<b>Auto reading</b>	You can set whether to have the available ToruCa files automatically read for when you place the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer). When you select "Accept", available ToruCa files are automatically recognized and moved to the "Used ToruCa" folder.
Setting at purchase	
Accept	▶ <b>Accept or Reject</b>

## Information

### <Check same data>

- The ToruCa files stored in "Used ToruCa" or expired ToruCa files are not included as target files.

### <Auto reading>

- If "Auto reading" is set to "Reject", you might not be able to use ToruCa files.
- Even if "Auto reading" is set to "Reject", the confirmation display might appear asking whether to use "Auto reading" when you place the FOMA phone over the scanning device (reader/writer). To use ToruCa files, select "YES", and then set "Auto reading" to "Accept".

## Locking IC Card Function


Setting at purchase	Released
---------------------	----------

To prevent the IC card function from being used by others, you can set the Osaifu-Keitai, obtained ToruCa, or iC communication disabled.

- If the battery runs out when the IC card is locked, the IC card stays locked.

### 1 Stand-by display

▶  (for at least one second)

“” appears and IC Card Lock is set.

- To release IC Card Lock, perform the same operation and enter your Terminal Security Code.  
When you set “Auto lock” to “Timer lock at close” and select “IC card lock” for “Timer lock ON at close”, the display for releasing IC Card Lock appears also by opening the FOMA phone.  
When you set “PIM/IC security mode” to “Face reader”, follow the operation of “Use Face Reader to Release Lock” on page 170.  
When you set it to “Double security”, enter your Terminal Security Code after the operation on page 170.

### IC Lock (Power-off)

Setting at purchase	Setting before OFF
---------------------	--------------------

You can set whether to lock the IC card function while the power is turned off.

### 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Lock/Security

▶ Lock setting

or

 ▶ LifeKit ▶ IC card lock menu

### 2 IC lock (power-off)

▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code


▶ Select an item.

#### Setting before OFF

..... Follows the setting at just before the power-off.

Lock . . . . Sets IC Card Lock.

# GPS Function



What is GPS? .....	302
About Using GPS Function .....	302
Checking Your Location .....	〈Position Location〉 303
Using GPS Compatible i- <del>appli</del> .....	〈GPS Compatible i- <del>appli</del> 〉 303
Providing Location Information upon Request .....	〈Provide Location〉 305
Notifying Location Information .....	〈Notify of Location〉 305
Displaying Location Information History .....	〈Location History〉 306
Configuring GPS Service Settings .....	〈Service Settings〉 306
Detailed Settings for GPS .....	〈GPS Settings〉 306

## What is GPS?

**GPS (Global Positioning System) is the system developed and operated by the United States Department of Defense, which uses radio waves for positioning transmitted from the satellites orbiting around the earth to locate whereabouts (latitude and longitude). You can obtain, by using the radio waves transmitted from the GPS satellites, the location information (latitude and longitude) of your FOMA phone. You can use the obtained location information for a variety of purposes.**

### ■ Things you can do using the GPS function

- **Seeing the map of the place you are currently in, or observing the surroundings (See “Position Location” on page 303)**

You can send the current location information to show the map, or search for the information of the surrounding area.

- **Using GPS compatible i-ϕpli (See “GPS Compatible i-ϕpli” on page 303)**

You can use the i-ϕpli program that uses the location information. You can use the location information for the navigation to go to the destination on foot or by car, or to guide yourself through transferring trains. You can use the pre-installed “NAVITIME for P” as well when you go somewhere on foot or by car. (See page 304)

- **Providing the location information when requested by others (See “Provide Location” on page 305)**

When your FOMA phone is a search target of the location provision service (such as Imadoco-search by DoCoMo), your location information is provided when a request comes in asking where you are. \* “Imadoco-search” is a service that enables a searcher to check the whereabouts of the owner of the i-mode compatible FOMA phone on a map from a mobile phone or personal computer. When you use “Keitai-Osagashi Service”, you can search whereabouts of your lost FOMA phone on a map from a personal computer. For details about “Imadoco-search” or “Keitai-Osagashi Service”, refer to the DoCoMo web page.

※When you set “Location request menu” (see page 308) to “ON”, your location information might be sent to the searcher without any operation on your FOMA phone.

- **Notifying Others of Your Current Location Information (See “Notify of Location” on page 305)**

You can notify others (providers of the services which support the current location information function) of your current location information.

- **Sending Mail with Information of Your Location/Favorite Place Pasted (See “Paste to mail” on page 303)**

You can paste your location information to the i-mode mail text. The receiver can use the URL of the location information to see the map of the surrounding area.

- **Storing the Location Information in the Phonebook (See “Add to phonebook” on page 303)**

You can store the obtained location information in the Phonebook and use it.

## About Using GPS Function

- GPS is operated by the United States Department of Defense, so the GPS radio wave conditions might be controlled (accuracy deterioration, radio wave supply suspension, etc.) depending on the defense strategy of the United States Department of Defense.
- Note that we do not take any responsibility for a loss such as pure economic loss resulting from the facts that you have missed the chance to check the measurement (communication) results, which have been caused by external factors such as malfunctions, erroneous operations, troubles, or power failure (including battery shortage) on the FOMA phone.
- You cannot use the FOMA phone as a navigating system for aircraft, vehicles, and people. Therefore, note that we are not held responsible for any damage resulting from the use of the location information for navigation.
- You cannot use GPS as a high-accuracy measuring device. Note that we do not take any responsibility for the damage caused by an error in the location information.
- You cannot use the GPS function when the FOMA phone is out of the service area (or overseas).

### Information

- You cannot use the GPS function in the following cases:
  - During Lock All\*      · During Personal Data Lock\*<sup>※</sup>
  - During Self Mode      · During Omakase Lock\*<sup>※</sup>
  - During ANSHIN-KEY Lock\*<sup>※</sup>
  - While the UIM is not inserted

\* Provide Location is available.
- As GPS uses radio waves transmitted from the satellites, note that you cannot or might have difficulty to receive radio waves in the following conditions:
  - In a building or right under it
  - In the basement, tunnel, ground, water
  - In a bag or case
  - In densely crowded areas with buildings and houses
  - In densely crowded trees and right under them
  - Close to high-tension wires
  - In a car or train
  - In bad weather such as heavy rain and snow
  - When there are obstacles (persons and articles) around the FOMA phone.
  - When you cover the displays, keys, microphone, or speakers of the FOMA phone with your hand.

In these cases, an error in the obtained location information might become 300 meters or more.

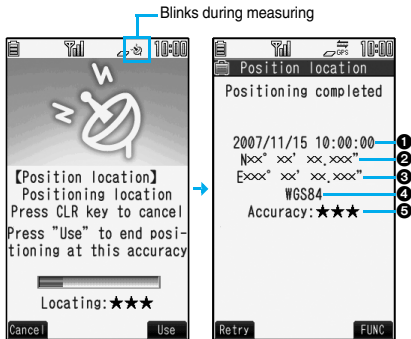


## <Position Location>

# Checking Your Location

You can measure your current location and display it.  
You can display a map of the location, and send the location information by mail as well.

## 1 Stand-by display Position location







The current location is displayed by the latitude and longitude.

- ① Measurement date
- ② Latitude
- ③ Longitude
- ④ Geographic coordinate system
- ⑤ Accuracy


- ★★★: Almost accurate location information (Error is about less than 50 meters)
- ★★☆: Relatively accurate location information (Error is less than about 300 meters)
- ★☆☆: Approximate location information (Error is about 300 meters or more)

The accuracy is an estimate. It might differ from actual one depending on the radio wave conditions in the surrounding area.

- Press  (Retry) to measure again in "Quality mode" (see "Positioning Mode" on page 307).
- When "Use" is displayed at bottom right of the display during measuring, press  and select "OK" to display the location using the information during measuring.
- You can measure the location also by pressing and holding  for at least one second from the Stand-by display. After measuring, the FOMA phone works following the setting of "GPS Button Setting" (see page 306).
- You can display the GPS menu also by 
  - ▶ LifeKit ▶ GPS.

## Function Menu while Current Location is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Read a map</b>	You can display a map by connecting a map site. ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● After displaying the map, you can use "i-area" to search for the surrounding information. For details about "i-area", refer to the DoCoMo web site.</li> </ul>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Run</b> 	You can use the current location information on a GPS compatible i-oppli program. ▶ <b>Select an i-oppli program.</b>
<b>Paste to mail</b>	You can paste the current location information converted to a URL to text and compose i-mode mail. ▶ <b>YES</b> Go to step 2 on page 232. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The location information to be sent is displayed on i-mode compatible phones only.</li> </ul>
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	You can store the current location information in the Phonebook. ▶ <b>YES</b> Go to step 1 on page 109.

## <GPS Compatible i-oppli>

# Using GPS Compatible i-oppli

## 1 Stand-by display i-oppli

The list of i-oppli programs that support GPS is displayed. Select an i-oppli program to start it.  
● See page 277 for the Software List.

### Information

- When you use a GPS compatible i-oppli program, the location information is sent to the information provider of the i-oppli program you use.
- You need to set "Location usage" of "Software setting" to "ON" when you use the GPS function on a GPS compatible i-oppli program.

## NAVITIME for P



This is the GPS compatible i-oppli program that uses the GPS function to guide you through the best route from the start to the destination by public transportation, by cars, on foot respectively. You can bring up a map and search for shops/facilities in the surrounding area as well.

© NAVITIME JAPAN

Map: Sumitomo Electric Industries, Ltd.

- During communication, you might be separately charged a packet communication fee. For the estimate communication fee, refer to "設定 / インフォメーション (Setting/Information)" → "ヘルプ (Help)" → "通話料のご案内 (information of communication fee)".
- NAVITIME for P supports the motion tracking.
- NAVITIME for P is a mail-linked i-oppli program, so you cannot use it in B Mode of 2in1.

[Next Page](#)

## ■About menu

### ナビ (Navigation)

... Searches routes to your destination, displays the routes that satisfy the specified conditions, and provides voice navigation. “ぐるっとナビ (Gurutto navigation)” on which you can specify up to eight way-stops and the function to search for parking lots nearby are available.

### 現在地 (GPS) [Current location (GPS)]

... Brings up a map for your current location. You can specify your current location as a start point to use the navigation function, and search for shops/facilities nearby.

### 地図 / スポット検索 (Map/Spot search)

... Brings up a map of the point you search with a keyword, or the information about recommended spots.

### 乗換 / 時刻表 (Transfer/Timetable)

... Shows how to transfer and easily brings up the timetable of each station.

### ドライブ (Driving)

... Guides drivers through the best route. You can search for parking lots near the point displayed on the map as well.

### 設定 / インフォメーション (Settings/Information)

... You can do settings for NAVITIME for P, or check for how to use or for frequently asked questions.

## Information

- When 90 days elapse after you start using, the use of some functions is restricted, and only four menu items, “トータルナビ (Total navigation)”, “現在地 (GPS) [Current location (GPS)]”, “地図検索 (Map search)”, and “設定 / インフォメーション (Settings/Information)” remain in the menu.

## To make use of Navigation function

You can search for your destination and navigate yourself to the destination.

Example: To navigate yourself using “トータルナビ (Total navigation)”

- 1 Stand-by display  (for at least one second) ▶ NAVITIME for P ▶ Read “ご利用確認 (Use confirmation)” thoroughly ▶ 確認 / 利用規約承諾 (Check/Use agreement recognition)

- If you put a check mark for “次回以降表示しない (Does not show this display from next time.)”, “ご利用確認 (Use confirmation)” does not appear when you start it up next time.

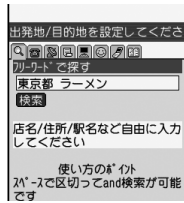
## 2 ナビ (Navigation)

### ▶ トータルナビ (Total navigation)



- When 90 days elapse after you start using, “ナビ (Navigation)” changes to “トータルナビ (Total navigation)”. Go to step 3.

## 3 Highlight a text box and press Enter a destination ▶ 検索 (Search)

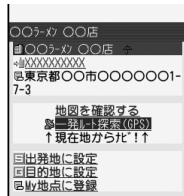


- The destination is searched by a keyword here as an example. You can search by a phone number or postal address as well.

## 4 Highlight a destination and press .



## 5 一発ルート検索 (GPS) [Route search at once (GPS)] ▶ 音声ナビ開始 (Start voice navigation)





- When multiple routes are found, the Route Selection display appears.
- When 90 days elapse after you start using, “一発ルート検索 (GPS) [Route search at once (GPS)]” changes to the choices of “乗物 + 徒歩 (Vehicle + Walking)”, “自動車 (Car)”, and “徒歩のみ (Walking only)”.

## 6 Read the precautions ▶ 確認のうえ利用する (Use with understanding) ▶ OK



- The navigation to your destination starts.
- If you put a check mark for “次回以降表示しない (Does not show this display from next time.)”, the note for displaying a map does not appear when you start it up next time.

## ■Operation while a map is displayed

Press  to show the menu, and configure settings such as how to display a navigation and sound volume adjustment. Press  to show how to operate maps, and check the operating details.

## Information

- When the volume of the voice navigation is low, set “音量調節 (Adjust volume)” to “大 (Large)”. When the volume is still low, increase the volume of “Phone” of “Ring volume” (see page 75). Then the volume of the voice navigation is increased as well.

## <Provide Location>

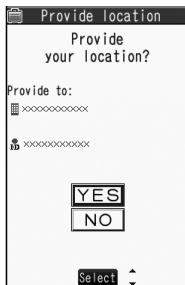
# Providing Location Information upon Request

You can provide your location information upon the request from others. Depending on the service you use, you need to set GPS service settings beforehand. (See page 306) Also, you need to set "Location request menu" to "ON" or set the permitted period by "Permission schedule" beforehand.

<When the setting by service is "毎回確認 (Check every time)">

## 1 When a location provision request arrives

### ▶ YES or NO



**YES** . . . Measures the current location and sends the location information.

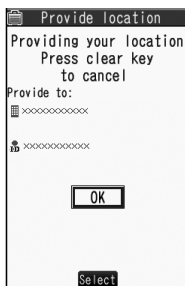
**NO** . . . Rejects to provide the location information.

• When you do nothing for about 20 seconds, the former display returns without providing your current location.

<When the setting by service is "許可 (Accept)">

## 1 When a location provision request arrives

### ▶ OK



• When you select "OK" or about three seconds elapse, the current location provision starts.

- The information of the service provider might not be displayed.
- Press (Clear) to stop providing information. However, your location information might be sent depending on the timing.

## Information

- To use "imadoco-search", you need to set "位置情報利用設定 (イマドコサーチ設定) [Location Information Usage Setting (imadoco-search Setting)] of "オプション設定 (Options)" of "料金&お申込・設定 (Bill & Subscription/Setting)" on 8 Menu.
- To use Provide Location, you might need to subscribe to a service provider which supports the Provider Location function or to pay the service fee.
- Even when you send your location information, it might not be delivered to the service provider depending on the radio wave conditions.

## Information

- When "Location request menu" is set to "OFF", the location information is not displayed, and the request is rejected.
- When you set, by GPS service settings, the location request to be checked every time, the location information is not provided on the location provision request during Public Mode (Drive Mode).
- When you set, by GPS service settings, the location request to be accepted, the location information is provided with a display during Public Mode (Drive Mode) but the positioning tone, vibrator, and illumination do not work.
- Regardless of the mode of 2in1, the location information can be searched for Number A only. When the other party searches you by your Number B, your current location is not provided and the searcher is notified that the search has failed.
- A fee is not charged for using the Provide Location function.
- For using the service, refer to the information on your service provider or the DoCoMo web page.

## <Notify of Location>

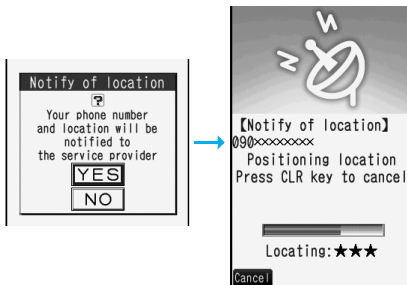
# Notifying Location Information

You can notify a service provider of your current location.

## 1 Stand-by display ▶ (Call) ▶ Notify of location

## 2 Direct input ▶ Enter a party to be notified

### ▶ YES



- You can enter up to 12 digits by using numerals, # and \*.
- If you have stored LCS clients by "Reg. LCS client" beforehand, you can select an LCS client from "View service clients".
- You can press (Call) (Cancel) to stop measuring, but your current location might be notified depending on the timing.

## 3 OK

## Information

- Even when you send your location information, it might not be delivered to the service provider depending on the radio wave conditions.
- You are charged a fee for using the function to notify your current location.
- To use Notify Of Location, you might need to subscribe to a service provider that supports Notify Of Location. Further, you might be charged a fee for using the service.
- You cannot enter any digits during Keypad Dial Lock.

Next Page

### Information

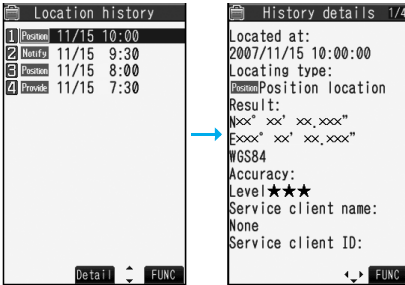
- Regardless of the mode of 2in1, your location information is notified by Number A.
- For using the service, refer to the information on your service provider or the DoCoMo web page.

## <Location History>

### Displaying Location Information History

Up to 50 histories of Position Location, Notify Of Location, and Provide Location are recorded.

- 1 Stand-by display Location history  
▶ Select a location history.



**Position** Position location  
**Notify** Notify of location

**Provide** Provide location

### Information

- When the location histories exceed 50, they are automatically overwritten from the oldest one.
- When you cancel Position Location midway or you fail to measure your current location, its history is not stored in Location History.
- Even when the histories of Provide Location or Notify Of Location are recorded, they might not have been delivered to your service providers.
- You cannot operate other than “Delete this” and “Delete all” for a failed-to-measure history of Provide Location or Notify Of Location.
- When Provide Location was used, the name of the location provision requester is checked against the Phonebook entries which appear in each mode of 2in1 and then shown.

## Function Menu while Location History is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Read a map</b>	You can display a map by connecting a map site. ▶ <b>YES</b> • After displaying the map, you can use “i-area” to search for the information of the surrounding area. For details on “i-area”, refer to the DoCoMo web site.
<b>Run  appli</b>	You can use the current location information on a GPS compatible i-appli program. ▶ <b>Select an i-appli program.</b>

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Paste to mail</b>	You can paste the location information converted to a URL to text and compose i-mode mail. ▶ <b>YES</b> Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Add to phonebook</b>	You can store the location information in the Phonebook. ▶ <b>YES</b> Go to step 1 on page 109.
<b>Delete this</b>	▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Delete all</b>	▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

## <Service Settings>

### Configuring GPS Service Settings

By connecting to GPS service settings (a host set by “Host selection”), you can configure the settings for the Provide Location service such as the permission for location information search and password.

- 1 Stand-by display Service settings  
• See page 205 for operations while a site is displayed.

### Information

- The packet communication fee does not apply for connecting to the site from Japan. From overseas, however, an error display appears and it applies.
- You cannot use the Bookmark or Screen Memo function.

## <GPS Settings>

### Detailed Settings for GPS

#### GPS Button Setting

Setting at purchase	Read a map
---------------------	------------

You can set an operation for after measuring your location by pressing and holding for at least one second from the Stand-by display.

- 1 Stand-by display GPS settings  
▶ GPS button setting


## 2 Select an operation.

- Read a map** . . . . . Displays a map by connecting to a map site.
- Run appli** . . . . . Displays a list of GPS compatible i-appli programs.
- Paste to mail** . . . . . Pastes the location information converted to a URL to text and compose i-mode mail.
- Add to phonebook** . . . Stores the current location information in the Phonebook.
- Confirm every session** . . . . . Selects an operation each time you measure the location.

## Positioning Tone/Illumination

Setting at purchase	Select posit. ring tone:
	"Position location" OFF
	"Notify of location" Pattern 1
	"Location req./Accept" Pattern 2
	"Location req./Confirm" Pattern 2
Ring time setting: 3 seconds	
Select vibrator: OFF	
Select illumination: Color 5	

You can select a tone to sound for when you check your current location or when you are requested to provide location information. You can set a color of the Call/Charging indicator and the vibration pattern as well.

- 1 Stand-by display  GPS settings  
▶ Posit. tone/illum.  
▶ Select an operation to be set.

- 2 Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Select posit. ring tone	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a ring tone. ● While selecting, the selected tone sounds for confirmation.
Ring time setting	You can set a ring time for positioning ring tone. ▶ Enter a ring time (seconds). ● Enter two digits from "00" through "30". For "Location req./Confirm", however, enter two digits from "00" through "20". If you set to 0 seconds, the tone does not sound.
Select vibrator	▶ Select a vibration pattern. ● If you select "Melody linkage", the FOMA phone vibrates in time with ring tone. ● While selecting, the FOMA phone vibrates by the selected pattern for confirmation.
Select illumination	▶ Select a color. ● While selecting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers in the selected color for confirmation.

## Positioning Mode

Setting at purchase	Standard mode
---------------------	---------------

Select a mode for measuring the current location from either "Standard mode" or "Quality mode".

When you select "Quality mode", it takes a longer time for measuring, but the measuring accuracy might be improved as a result.

You can set a measuring mode for Position Location, Notify Of Location, and Provide Location respectively.

- 1 Stand-by display  GPS settings  
▶ Positioning mode

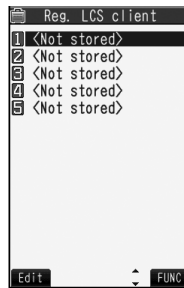
- 2 Select an operation to be set ▶ Standard mode or Quality mode

## Register LCS Client

If you have stored LCS clients, you can select an LCS client when you notify of your current location. Further, you can automatically notify of your current location when you make a call to the stored phone number.


You can store up to five LCS clients.

- 1 Stand-by display  GPS settings  
▶ Reg. LCS client ▶ Highlight <Not stored> and press  (Edit).



- If you select a stored LCS client, you can confirm the stored contents.

- 2 Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Service client name	▶ Enter a service client name. ● You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters.
Service client ID	▶ Enter a service client ID. ● You can enter up to 12 digits by using numerals, # and *. ● Enter the service client ID specified by your service provider.
Phone number	▶ Enter a phone number. ● You can enter up to 26 digits. ● Highlight the phone number field, press  (FUNC), and select "Enter from PB" to call up a phone number from the Phonebook and enter it. ● If you enter a phone number stored in the Phonebook with "Service client name" not entered, the name for the Phonebook entry is entered.
Notify when dialing	You can set whether to notify of your current location for when you make a voice call or videophone call to the stored phone number. ▶ ON, OFF or Confirm every dial ● To check each time you make a call, select "Confirm every dial".

[Next Page](#)

### 3 Press (Finish).

#### Information

- Even if “Notify when dialing” is set to “ON” or to “Confirm every dial”, you cannot notify of your current location when you make a call without notifying of your caller ID.

#### Function Menu while LCS Client is Displayed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ YES
Add to phonebook	You can store the service client name and phone number stored in “Reg. LCS client” into the Phonebook. ▶ YES Go to step 1 on page 109.
Edit	Go to step 2 of “Register LCS Client” on page 307. • You can edit also by pressing  (Edit).

#### Location Request Menu

Setting at purchase	OFF
---------------------	-----

You can set whether to accept a location provision request (provide location information). You can set validity period as well.

### 1 Stand-by display ▶ GPS settings

- ▶ Location request menu
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ Select an item.

- ON . . . . . Accepts location provision requests.  
The setting is completed.
- OFF . . . . . Rejects location provision requests.  
The setting is completed.

**Permission schedule**  
. . . . . Sets a permission time or validity period.

### 2 Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Permit from	▶ Enter the time for starting permission. • Enter the time on 24-hour basis.
Permit to	▶ Enter the time for ending permission. • Enter the time on 24-hour basis.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Repeat	▶ Select an item. 1 time . . . . . Does not repeat (just once). The setting for Repeat is completed. Daily . . . . . Sets the same schedule event daily. The setting for Repeat is completed. Select day . . . Sets the schedule event for the specified days of the week. ▶ Put a check mark for days of the week to be set  (Finish)

Validity period	You can set a validity period when “Repeat” is set to “Daily” or “Select day”. ▶ ON or OFF ▶ Enter a validity date (from). ▶ ON or OFF ▶ Enter a validity date (to).
-----------------	--

### 3 Press (Finish).

#### Information

- You can set “Location request menu” also by “Initial setting” (see page 46).
- When “ON” is set, the location information might be sent without any operation on the FOMA phone, and might be notified to the searcher.
- When “OFF” is set, the location provision is rejected even if its location provision request is received. The history of Provide Location (Result: None) is recorded.
- You can specify from January 1, 2007 through December 31, 2037 for “Permission schedule”.

**Operations when the validity period for location provision is specified**

Example: When the current date and time are 12:00/15/Nov/2007 and you set 14:00 as the start time and 21:00 as the end time

Repeat	Validity period	Period of location provision
1 time	-	14:00/15/Nov/2007 through 21:00/15/Nov/2007
Daily	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	Every day 14:00 through 21:00 from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	Every day 14:00 through 21:00 from 15/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	Every day 14:00 through 21:00 on and after 15/Nov/2007
	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	14:00 through 21:00 of the specified days of the week from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
Select day	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	14:00 through 21:00 of the specified days of the week from 15/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	14:00 through 21:00 of the specified days of the week on and after 15/Nov/2007

Example: When the current date and time are 12:00/15/Nov/2007 and you set 10:00 as the start time and 21:00 as the end time

Repeat	Validity period	Period of location provision
1 time	-	12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 21:00/15/Nov/2007
Daily	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	Every day 10:00 through 21:00 from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 21:00/15/Nov/2007, every day 10:00 through 21:00 from 16/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 21:00/15/Nov/2007, every day 10:00 through 21:00 on and after 16/Nov/2007
	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	10:00 through 21:00 of the specified days of the week from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
Select day	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	If 15/Nov/2007 is the specified day; 12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 21:00/15/Nov/2007, 10:00 through 21:00 of the specified days of the week from 16/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	If 15/Nov/2007 is the specified day; 12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 21:00/15/Nov/2007, 10:00 through 21:00 of the specified days of the week on and after 16/Nov/2007

Example: When the current date and time are 12:00/15/Nov/2007 and you set 14:00 as the start time and 10:00 as the end time

Repeat	Validity period	Period of location provision
1 time	-	14:00/15/Nov/2007 through 10:00/16/Nov/2007
Daily	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	14:00 through 10:00 of the next day from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	14:00 through 10:00 of the next day from 15/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	14:00 through 10:00 of the next day on and after 15/Nov/2007
Select day	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	14:00 through 10:00 of the next days of the specified days of the week from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	14:00 through 10:00 of the next days of the specified days of the week from 15/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	14:00 through 10:00 of the next days of the specified days of the week on and after 15/Nov/2007

Example: When the current date and time are 12:00/15/Nov/2007 and you set 10:00 as the start time and 10:00 as the end time


Repeat	Validity period	Period of location provision
1 time	-	12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 10:00/16/Nov/2007
Daily	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	10:00/20/Nov/2007 through 10:00/1/Dec/2007
	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 10:00/1/Dec/2007
	OFF	12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 10:00/16/Nov/2007, every day 10:00 through 10:00 of the next day on and after 16/Nov/2007
Select day	Start date: 20/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	10:00 through 10:00 of the next days of the specified days of the week from 20/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	Start date: 10/Nov/2007 End date: 30/Nov/2007	If 15/Nov/2007 is the specified day; 12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 10:00/16/Nov/2007, 10:00 through 10:00 of the next days of the specified days of the week from 16/Nov/2007 through 30/Nov/2007
	OFF	If 15/Nov/2007 is the specified day; 12:00/15/Nov/2007 through 10:00/16/Nov/2007, 10:00 through 10:00 of the next day of the specified days of the week on and after 16/Nov/2007

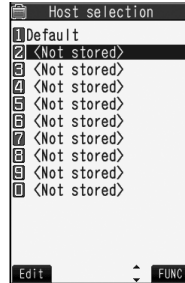
## Host Selection


Setting at purchase	Default
---------------------	---------

※Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can use this setting for changing the host for Service Settings.

1 Stand-by display  GPS settings  
▶ Host selection ▶ Highlight <Not stored> and press  (Edit).



- If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to that host.
- To delete a stored host, press  (FUNC), select "Delete" and select "YES".

2 Do the following operations.

Item	Operation/Explanation
Host name	▶ Enter a host name. • You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
Host number	▶ Enter a host number. • You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶ Enter a URL. • You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

3 Press  (Finish).



# Full Browser



Displaying Web Pages Designed for PC .....	«Full Browser»	312
Setting Full Browser .....	«Full Browser Settings»	316

## Displaying Web Pages Designed for PC

You can browse Internet web pages designed for PCs using the Full Browser function. You can display even the Internet web pages that cannot be correctly displayed by i-mode. However, you cannot display or correctly display some Internet web pages.


- The data such as Home URL or Bookmarks registered via Full Browser cannot be used via i-mode. The contents set by Full Browser are invalid for i-mode, either.
- Note that you are charged a high communication fee for the massive data communication such as browsing Internet web pages having many images or downloading data files. For details on the packet communication fee and billing plan, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- You can browse Internet web pages composed of frames. You can select a frame to display it as well. (See page 314)
- You can display TLS/SSL※-compatible pages via Full Browser.
  - ※ TLS and SSL are the methods of safer data communication using authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy. TLS/SSL pages prevent eavesdropping, web spoofing, and information alteration during communication by exchanging encrypted data files, thus making your personal information such as credit card number or postal address exchanged safer.

# 1 Stand-by display

## ▶ Full Browser ▶ Select an item.

- Home** . . . . . Displays an Internet web page set as Home URL.
- Bookmark** . . . . . Displays an Internet web page stored in Bookmark. (See page 209)
- Go to location** . . . . . Displays an Internet web page by entering a URL. (See "Displaying Internet Web Pages" on page 208)
- Last URL** . . . . . Displays an Internet web page you viewed last time.

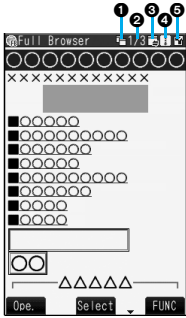
### Full Browser settings

- . . . . . Configures Full Browser settings. (See page 316)
- When "Access setting" is set to "No", the confirmation display appears asking whether to start Full Browser. Highlight "Yes" and select "OK" to switch setting of "Access setting", then Full Browser starts up.
- To end Full Browser, press  with an Internet web page displayed and select "YES".
- When no Home URL is stored and you select "Home", the message appears telling that no Home URL is stored. Select "OK", then the Home URL Storage display appears. (See page 316)

### Information

- It may take long to display some Internet web pages.
- You cannot use the following functions on Full Browser:
  - Phone To function
  - Screen memos
  - Flash images
  - PDF files

## Full Browser Display



Full Browser Display

- 1 ··· : Displaying in multiple windows
- 2 ··· Window number/Number of windows
- 3 ··· : During communication in another window  
 : During communication in another frame
- 4 ··· : Phone Mode  
 : PC Mode
- 5 ··· : Displaying an enlarged frame

### ■ Operations for the Full Browser display

Operation	Key operation
Scroll display	<For Phone Mode> Press . <For PC Mode> Press .
Scroll display page by page	Press / or /. • Press and hold / for at least one second or press / to scroll to the top or end of the page.
Return to previous page	<For Phone Mode> Press  or . <For PC Mode> Press .
Forward to next page	<For Phone Mode> Press  or . <For PC Mode> Press .
Reload	Press .
Enlarge/Reduce display size	Press  to reduce the display size,  to display in standard size, and  to enlarge the display size.
Display Bookmark List	Press .
Switch Display Modes	Press .

## Switch Display Mode

Setting at purchase	Phone mode
---------------------	------------

Two modes, “Phone mode” and “PC mode”, are available for the Full Browser display.

### 1 Stand-by display ()

- ▶ Full Browser ▶ Full Browser settings
- ▶ Display Mode setting ▶ Select an item.

#### Phone mode

... Displays an Internet web page to fit in the display width of the FOMA phone. You do not need to scroll sideways; you can browse Internet web pages by scrolling upward and downward.

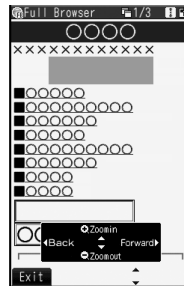
#### PC mode

... Displays an Internet web page in the same format as when it is displayed on your personal computer in 800 (width) x 600 (height) dots. You can browse Internet web pages by scrolling upward, downward, and sideways.

- To switch the display modes with an Internet web page shown, select “Change disp. mode” from the Function menu.

## Use Operation Mode

Press () from the Full Browser display to switch to “Operation mode”. The operation palette is displayed by switching to Operation Mode, then you can move to the previous/next page or enlarge/reduce the display size.



- : Moves to the previous/next page.
- : Enlarges/reduces the display size.

## Open Multiple Windows

You can simultaneously open up to five Internet web pages via Full Browser.

- You can switch the simultaneously opened Internet web pages to show one by one.

### 1 Full Browser display (FUNC)

▶ Open new window ▶ Select an item.

**Bookmark** ... Opens a new window to show an Internet web page stored in Bookmark. (See page 209)

**Enter URL** ... Opens a new window to show an Internet web page by entering a URL. (See "Displaying Internet Web Pages" on page 208)

**Home** ... Opens a new window to show an Internet web page set as Home URL.

**Link** ... Opens a new window to show a page of the link highlighted on the Full Browser display.

- See page 315 for how to switch or close the window.

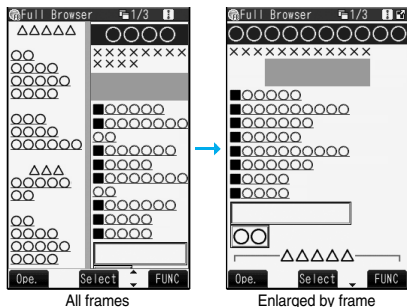
### Information


- Some Internet web pages have links configured to open in new windows. When you open such a link, the new window opens even if you do not perform above operations.

## Display a Page Composed of Frames

You can display Internet web pages composed of frames. You can select a frame, and enlarge each selected frame for displaying.

### 1 From an Internet web page composed of frames ▶ Press to highlight a frame, and press (Select).



- To return to the display for all frames, press  or select "All frames" from the Function menu.

### Information

- When an Internet web page has many divided frames, you might not be able to open all frames. "X" is added to the frames that you could not open.

## Upload Images

You can upload JPEG or GIF images stored in the FOMA phone to an Internet web page.

- Procedure for uploading images differs depending on the Internet web page. Operate by following the onscreen instructions.

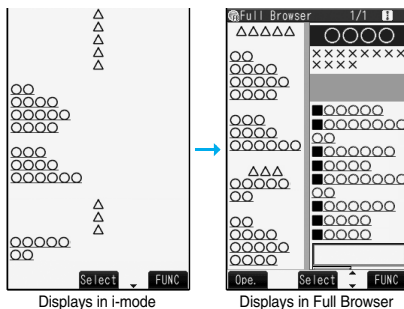
### Information

- When the total size of the selected images exceeds 80 Kbytes, or when the total size of the selected image and other files exceeds 100 Kbytes, you cannot upload the images.
- You may not be able to upload images depending on the Internet web page.
- You cannot upload the images whose output from FOMA phone is prohibited.

## Switch from i-mode to Full Browser

You can switch to Full Browser to show the Internet web pages incorrectly displayed by i-mode.






### 1 While a page to be shown in Full Browser is displayed (FUNC) ▶ Switch to FB ▶ OK







### Information

- You cannot correctly display some Internet web pages.

## Function Menu of Full Browser Display

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Add bookmark</b>	See page 209.
<b>Bookmark</b>	You can display the Bookmark Folder List. (See page 210) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can display the Bookmark Folder List also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Back</b>	You can return to the previous page. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can return to previous page also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Forward</b>	You can forward to the next page. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can forward to next page also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Reload</b>	The contents on the Internet web page is updated to the latest ones. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can upload the contents also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Change disp. mode</b>	You can switch the display modes of the Full Browser display. (See page 313) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can switch the display modes also by pressing .</li> </ul>
<b>Open new window</b>	See page 314.
<b>Change window</b>	You can switch the windows while displaying the Internet web pages in multiple windows. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a window.</b></li> </ul>
<b>Close window</b>	You can close the window while displaying the Internet web pages in multiple windows.
<b>Save image</b>	See page 212.
<b>Add desktop icon</b>	See page 151.
<b>Compose message</b>	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the URL of the displayed Internet web page pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 232.
<b>Home (Set as home URL)</b>	You can set the displayed Internet web page as Home URL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Set as home URL</b> ▶ YES</li> </ul>
<b>Home (Display home)</b>	You can display the Internet web page set as Home URL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Display home</b></li> </ul>
<b>Enter URL</b>	You can enter a URL to display an Internet web page. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a URL</b> ▶ OK ▶ OK</li> </ul>
<b>Scroll (Speed)</b>	You can set scroll speed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Speed</b> ▶ High speed or Low speed</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase	High speed

Function menu	Operation/Explanation
<b>Scroll (Focus while scroll)</b>	You can set whether to highlight links while scrolling. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Focus while scroll</b> ▶ ON or OFF</li> </ul>
Setting at purchase	OFF
<b>Zoom</b>	You can enlarge/reduce the display size of the Internet web page. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a display size.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press  to reduce the display size,  to display in standard size, and  to enlarge the display size.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Setting at purchase	Standard
<b>All frames</b>	You can return to the display for all frames from the display for the enlarged frame.
<b>Retry</b>	You can play back the displayed animation from the beginning.
<b>Page info</b>	You can display information of the displayed Internet web page. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>URL or Title</b></li> </ul>
<b>Others (Set image display)</b>	You can set whether to display images on the Internet web page. (See page 216)
<b>Others (Change CHR code)</b>	When characters are not correctly displayed, you can convert them to the correct ones. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Change CHR code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● This setting is valid only for the Internet web page being displayed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Others (Cookie setting)</b>	See page 317.
<b>Others (Delete Cookies)</b>	See page 317.
<b>Others (Referer setting)</b>	See page 317.
<b>Others (Certificate)</b>	You can check the subject name, author, validity period and serial number of the certificate used in the SSL communication. Up to five certificates are displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Certificate</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Use  to scroll the display to check the information.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



### Information

#### <Save image>

- You cannot save some images. You can save images in BMP format and PNG format only on the microSD memory card.

# Setting Full Browser

You can perform the setting of Full Browser.

- 1 **Stand-by display**  
  - ▶ **Full Browser** ▶ **Full Browser settings**
  - ▶ **Do the following operations.**

Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Display Mode setting</b>	See page 313.
<b>Scroll (Speed)</b>	See page 315.
<b>Scroll (Focus while scroll)</b>	See page 315.
<b>Zoom</b>	See page 315.
<b>Access setting</b>	You can set whether to use Full Browser. <b>Yes</b> . . . . Uses Full Browser.
Setting at purchase Not stored	<b>No</b> . . . . Displays the cautions at the start of Full Browser. Check the cautions, highlight "Yes" and then select "OK", then the setting switches to "Yes", and Full Browser becomes available.
<b>Home URL</b>	You can set Home URL. ▶ <b>Select the URL field</b> ▶ <b>Enter a URL</b> ▶ <b>OK</b>
<b>Set image display</b>	You can set whether to display images. ▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>
Setting at purchase ON	• To set this while showing the Full Browser display, select "Others" from the Function menu, then select "Set image display".
<b>Cookie setting</b>	See page 317.
<b>Delete Cookies</b>	See page 317.
<b>Referer setting</b>	See page 317.



Item	Operation/Explanation
<b>Script setting</b>	You can set whether to validate JavaScript. JavaScript is a simple program language that runs on Internet web pages. It is widely used to create Internet web pages with movements. When "Valid" is set, you can use the JavaScript function to browse Internet web pages on Full Browser. ▶ <b>Valid or Invalid</b>
Setting at purchase Valid	
<b>Window Open Guard</b>	You can set whether to prevent a new window from opening automatically by JavaScript. ▶ <b>Valid or Invalid</b>
Setting at purchase Invalid	
<b>Check settings</b>	You can check respective Full Browser settings.
<b>Reset last URL</b>	You can erase the URL of the Internet web page you viewed last. ▶ <b>YES</b>
<b>Reset</b>	You can reset each of "Full Browser settings" to their defaults and delete all the cookies. See "Function List" for the items to be reset. (See page 456) ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>

**Information**

<Access setting>

- If you replace the UIM with a new one when "Yes" is set, the setting switches to "No".

<Set image display>

- Even when "ON" is set, images might not be displayed correctly. In this case, "  " is displayed.
- When "OFF" is set, "  " is displayed and the data file is not received.

<Script setting>

- Some Internet web pages may not be displayed correctly unless "Valid" is set.
- Even when "Valid" is set, it might not work depending on JavaScript.

## Cookie

By using cookies, you can effectively access the Internet web pages you have accessed once. A cookie is the system to temporarily save personal information such as the date/time or number of times you accessed an Internet web page. The information from the server is written into the FOMA phone, temporarily saved, and used for content services.

● If a cookie is sent, the information such as the date/time or number of times you accessed an Internet web page is also sent to the web page. Note that even if your information is detected by a third party by sending a cookie, we cannot be held responsible for that. However, you may not be able to correctly display or use some Internet web pages or content services unless the cookie setting is valid.

### Cookie Setting

|                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|
| Setting at purchase | Valid |
|---------------------|-------|

You can set whether to validate cookies.

#### 1 Stand-by display

- ▶ Full Browser ▶ Full Browser settings
- ▶ Cookie setting ▶ Select an item.

**Valid** . . . . . Always validates cookies. A confirmation display does not appear before a cookie is sent or received.

**Invalid** . . . . . Always invalidates cookies.

#### Notify (sending)

. . . . . Validates cookies to be sent only.  
A confirmation display appears each time before a cookie is sent.

#### Notify (receiving)

. . . . . Validates cookies to be received only.  
A confirmation display appears each time before a cookie is received.

#### Notify (send/recv.)

. . . . . A confirmation display appears asking whether to permit a cookie to be sent or received each time before a cookie is sent or received.

- If you change the setting, the display for entering your Terminal Security Code might appear.
- To set this while showing the Full Browser display, select "Others" from the Function menu, then select "Cookie setting".

### Information

- When "Notify" is set, the confirmation display might consecutively appear asking whether to send/receive (update) cookies depending on the Internet web page.

## Delete Cookies

#### 1 Stand-by display

- ▶ Full Browser ▶ Full Browser settings
- ▶ Delete Cookies
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES

- To set this while showing the Full Browser display, select "Others" from the Function menu, then select "Delete Cookies".

## Referer

The referer denotes the link source information. When a referer is sent, the information about from which page you have accessed it is sent to the site. Note that even if your information is detected by a third party by sending a referer, we cannot be held responsible for that.

### Referer Setting

|                     |      |
|---------------------|------|
| Setting at purchase | Send |
|---------------------|------|

You can set whether to send a referer while a Internet web page is open.

#### 1 Stand-by display

- ▶ Full Browser ▶ Full Browser settings
- ▶ Referer setting ▶ Select an item.

**Send** . . . . . Sends a referer.

**Unsend** . . . . . Does not send a referer.

**Notify** . . . . . When a referer is sent, the confirmation display appears asking whether to send it.

- To set this while showing the Full Browser display, select "Others" from the Function menu, then select "Referer setting".  
In this case, "Send" is displayed as "Valid", "Unsend" is displayed as "Invalid", and "Notify" is displayed as "Every session".

### Information

- When "Notify" is set, the confirmation display might consecutively appear asking whether to send a referer depending on the Internet web page.





# Data Display/Edit/Management

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| About Data Box .....  | 320 |
| <b>Making Full Use of Still Images</b>  |     |
| Displaying Images..... <Picture Viewer>                                       | 322 |
| Editing Still Images..... <Edit Picture>                                      | 328 |
| Creating Animations..... <Original Animation>                                 | 332 |
| <b>Making Full Use of Moving Images</b>                                       |     |
| Playing Back Moving Images/i-motion Movies..... <i-motion Player>             | 332 |
| Using Playlist.....   | 337 |
| Editing Moving Images/i-motion Movies..... <Edit i-motion>                    | 338 |
| <b>Making Full Use of Chara-den</b>   |     |
| What is Chara-den?..... <Chara-den>   | 341 |
| Displaying/Operating Chara-den Images..... <Chara-den Player>                 | 341 |
| Recording Chara-den Images..... <Record Chara-den>                            | 343 |
| <b>Making Full Use of Melodies</b>  |     |
| Playing Back Melodies..... <Melody Player>                                    | 344 |
| <b>Making Full Use of microSD Memory Card</b>                                 |     |
| About microSD Memory Card.....  | 347 |
| Inserting/Removing microSD Memory Card.....                                   | 348 |
| Displaying Data Items on microSD Memory Card..... <SD-PIM>                    | 349 |
| Copying Still Images, Moving Images, etc.....                                 | 351 |
| Moving Copyrighted Files..... <Movable Contents>                              | 352 |
| Managing Unsupported Files..... <SD Other Files>                              | 353 |
| Formatting microSD Memory Card..... <microSD Format>                          | 353 |
| Checking microSD Memory Card..... <Check microSD>                             | 354 |
| Displaying Capacity of microSD Memory Card..... <microSD Info>                | 354 |
| <b>Making Full Use of Data</b>  |     |
| Using a microSD Memory Card with a Personal Computer.....                     | 354 |
| Folder Configuration on microSD Memory Card.....                              | 355 |
| <b>Making Full Use of Infrared Data Exchange</b>                              |     |
| About Infrared Data Exchange.....   | 357 |
| Sending/Receiving One or Multiple Data Files.....                             | 359 |
| Sending/Receiving All Data Files.....   | 360 |
| Using Infrared Remote-controller Function.....                                | 361 |
| Communication Setting..... <Forwarding Image>                                 | 361 |
| <b>Making Full Use of iC Communication</b>                                    |     |
| About iC Communication..... <iC Transmission>                                 | 361 |
| Sending/Receiving One Data File.....  | 361 |
| Sending/Receiving All Data Files.....   | 362 |
| <b>Making Full Use of PDF Viewer</b>  |     |
| Displaying PDF Files..... <PDF Viewer>  | 363 |
| <b>Printing Still Images</b>  |     |
| Printing Saved Images.....  | 367 |
| <b>Displaying Images on TV</b>  |     |
| Displaying Still Images, Moving Images/i-motion Movies on TV..... <AV Output> | 367 |

## About Data Box

Data Box contains the items and folders as listed below. Data is saved to respective folders according to the contents.

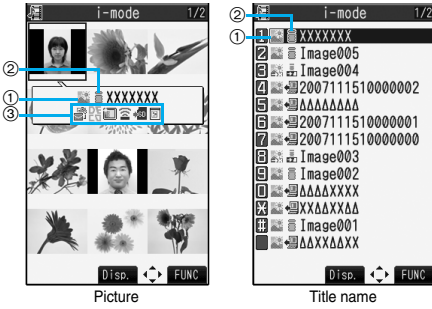
| My picture                   |  |   |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| i-mode                       | Downloaded still images, etc.                                |   |
| Camera                       | Still images shot by the camera, shot Chara-den images, etc. |   |
| Decomail-picture             | Still images to be used for composing Deco-mail              |   |
| Decomail-pictograph          | お気に入り※1 (Favorite)   | Pictographs to be used for composing Deco-mail<br>● You can delete the pre-installed Decomail-pictographs (see page 469). You can re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site.<br>If you use a UIM other than the one used for downloading, the UIM restrictions apply to it. (See page 39) |
|                              | 絵文字※1 ( pictograph)  |   |
|                              | ハート・キラキラ※1 (Heart/Sparkling)                                 |   |
|                              | 天気・季節※1 (Weather/Season)                                     |   |
|                              | 電話・メール※1 (Phone/Mail)  |   |
|                              | 食べ物※1 (Food)   |   |
|                              | 移動・生活※1 (Transfer/Life)                                      |   |
| 装飾※1 (Decoration)            |  |   |
| キャラクター※1 (Cartoon character) |  |   |
| 文字※1 (Character)             |  |   |
| Pre-installed                | Pre-installed still images                                   |   |
| User folder※2                | Still images in the user folder                              |   |
| Original animation           | The function of displaying still images continuously         |   |
| micro SD                     | Picture  | Still images shot by the camera, and images in JPEG format and GIF format that conform to the DCF standard and were copied from the FOMA phone  |
|                              | Image Box  | Animation images in GIF format copied from the FOMA phone, and images in JPEG format that do not conform to the DCF standard  |
|                              | Movable contents   | Copyrighted still images moved from the FOMA phone  |
|                              | Decomail-pictograph  | Pictographs for Deco-mail copied from the FOMA phone  |
| Frame                        | Still images to be used for frames                           |   |
| Stamp                        | Still images to be used for marker stamps and cushy marks    |   |
| MUSIC                        |  |   |
| Playlist/SD-Audio            | Creating or editing playlist                                 |   |
| i-mode                       | Initial folder   | Chaku-uta Full® music files obtained from sites   |
|                              | User folder※2  | Chaku-uta Full® music files in the user folder  |
|                              | microSD  | Copyrighted Chaku-uta Full® music files downloaded or moved from the FOMA phone   |

| WMA                         | WMA files obtained from personal computer                           |   |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| motion                      |   |   |
| i-mode                      | i-motion movies obtained from sites, etc.                           |   |
| Camera                      | i-motion movies recorded by the camera, shot Chara-den movies, etc. |   |
| Pre-installed               | Pre-installed i-motion movies                                       |   |
| User folder※2               | i-motion movies in the user folder                                  |   |
| micro SD                    | Movie   | Moving images shot by the camera or copied from the FOMA phone  |
|                             | Movable contents  | Copyrighted moving images moved from the FOMA phone   |
|                             | Other contents  | Voice-only i-motion movies recorded by using the camera function, voice-only i-motion movies copied from the FOMA phone, or video-unplayable i-motion movies copied from the FOMA phone |
| Playlist                    | Playback of playlist  |   |
| Position memory             | Playback of marker position   |   |
| Melody                      |   |   |
| i-mode                      | Downloaded melodies, etc.   |   |
| Pre-installed               | Pre-installed melodies  |   |
| User folder※2               | Melodies in the user folder   |   |
| Voice announce              | Data files recorded by using "Voice announce"                       |   |
| micro SD                    | Melody  | Melodies copied from the FOMA phone   |
|                             | Movable contents  | Copyrighted melodies moved from the FOMA phone  |
| Playlist                    | Playback of playlist  |   |
| My documents                |   |   |
| i-mode                      | Downloaded PDF files, etc.  |   |
| microSD                     | PDF files downloaded or copied from the FOMA phone                  |   |
| Chara-den                   |   |   |
| Pre-installed or downloaded | Chara-den images  |   |
| SD other files              |   |   |
| SD others                   | Incompatible files saved from mail (attached files)                 |   |

※1 Displayed folder names vary depending on "Edit folder name". However, the default folder name is displayed during Personal Data Lock.

※2 Displayed folder names vary depending on "Add folder" or "Edit folder name".

## Icons in the File List



### ① File Type

| Icon     | Type                           | File format            |
|----------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| (blue)   | Still image                    | JPEG                   |
| (orange) | Still image                    | GIF                    |
|          | Frame                          | GIF                    |
|          | Marker stamp                   | GIF                    |
|          | Cushy mark                     | GIF                    |
|          | Flash movie                    | SWF                    |
|          | i-motion movie                 | MP4(AMR)               |
|          | i-motion movie                 | MP4(AAC)               |
|          | i-motion movie                 | MP4 (AAC+[HE-AAC])     |
|          | i-motion movie                 | MP4 (Enhanced aacPlus) |
|          | i-motion movie                 | ASF                    |
|          | Partially saved i-motion movie | —                      |
|          | Melody                         | SMF                    |
|          | Melody                         | MFi                    |
|          | Complete PDF file              | PDF                    |
|          | Partial PDF file               | PDF                    |
|          | Incomplete PDF file            | PDF                    |
|          | Damaged PDF file               | PDF                    |
|          | Chara-den image                | —                      |
|          | Incompatible file              | —                      |

- For the file with the file restrictions, “” is added to each icon. This is not added to Flash movies.
- Some files have restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable period, or playable deadline. “” is added to the icon of the file with playback restrictions and “” is added to the icon of the file with playback restrictions expired.

## ② Acquired source

| Icon | Description  |
|------|--|
|      | Obtained from sites or i-mode mail attachment                              |
|      | Files shot by the FOMA phone   |
|      | Obtained from infrared exchange or iC communication or microSD memory card |
|      | Files of recorded Chara-den images   |

※ For the copyrighted file movable to the microSD memory card, “” is displayed.

### ③ Available operation

| Icon | Description                    |
|------|--------------------------------|
|      | Attach to i-mode mail          |
|      | Insert image into Deco-mail    |
|      | Set display                    |
|      | Send Ir data, iC communication |
|      | Copy to microSD memory card    |
|      | Upload                         |

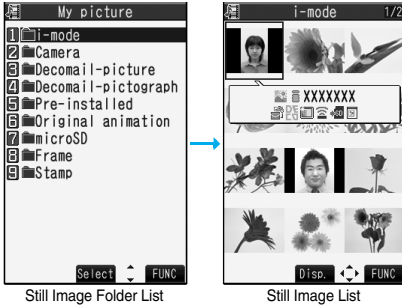
### Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to save the contents stored in the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

# Displaying Images

You can display the still images saved to the FOMA phone or the microSD memory card.

- 1 Data box ▶ My picture
- ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file.



- The following image is displayed when you cannot display a preview image:



- For folders, the following preview images are displayed.



Set as a destination folder

- When selecting folders or still images by another function, some folders or still images may not be displayed depending on the function. You may at times be able to confirm the still image by pressing (Play) while you are selecting it.

### Operations when playing back still images

- See page 327 for when you operate from the Function menu.

| Operation                                       | Key operation   |
|---|---|
| Display the next file <sup>※1</sup>             | Press .   |
| Display the previous file <sup>※1</sup>         | Press .   |
| Display in normal (or large) size <sup>※2</sup> | Press  (Normal / Large).<br>Press  (Return) again to return to the former file. |

※1 Files are displayed in the order on the Still Image List.  
 ※2 You cannot operate depending on the image size or file format.

### Specifications for playing back still image files

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| File format | JPEG <sup>※1</sup> , GIF, Flash                         |
| Extension   | jpg, gif, swf, ifm                                      |
| Pixels      | Files of 3M (1536 x 2048) size or smaller <sup>※2</sup> |
| File size   | Still images of 2 Mbytes or less                        |

- ※1 The types of JPEG file you can play back are Baseline and Progressive of the Exif/CIF/JFIF format.
- ※2 For the file in the progressive format, you can display the file of VGA (480 x 640) size or smaller.

- You cannot display some files even if their file formats are supported.

### When you select "microSD" from the Still Image Folder List

1. Select an item.

Picture

.....Displays still images shot by the camera and those copied from the FOMA phone.

Image Box

.....Displays animation GIF images copied from the FOMA phone.

Movable contents

.....Displays copyrighted still images moved from the FOMA phone.

Decomail-pictograph

.....Displays Decomail-pictographs copied from the FOMA phone.

2. Select a folder.

The list of still images is displayed.



### Function Menu of the Still Image Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Add folder</b>       | You can create a user folder. You can create up to 20 folders.<br>▶ Enter a folder name.<br>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. |
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | You can edit the name of a user folder.<br>▶ Enter a folder name.<br>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.                        |





| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | You can delete a user folder and all images in the folder.<br>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete all image</b> | You cannot delete the pre-installed files. (However, Decomail-pictographs are deleted.) The files on the microSD memory card are not deleted, either.<br>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b> |

| <b>Information</b>   |  |
|--|--|
| <Delete folder> <Delete all image>   |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Even if you delete the source still image of the attached image, you cannot delete the image attached to mail.</li> </ul> |  |


### Function Menu of the microSD Still Image Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | ▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b><br>• You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder in the "Movable contents" folder. |
| <b>Add folder</b>       | ▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b><br>• You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder in the "Movable contents" folder. |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Select storage</b>   | You can set the destination folder for when you save the shot still/moving images or the PDF files obtained by downloading or data communication to the microSD memory card.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>                   |

| <b>Information</b>  |  |
|---|--|
| <Add folder>  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot add folders in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· When the "Picture" folder contains 900 folders</li> <li>· When the "Image Box" folder contains 999 folders</li> <li>· When the "Decomail-pictograph" folder contains 999 folders</li> <li>· When the "Movie" folder contains 4,095 folders</li> <li>· When the "Other contents" folder contains 999 folders</li> <li>· When the "My documents" folder contains 999 folders</li> <li>· When the "SD other files" folder contains 999 folders</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |  |
| <Delete folder>   |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot delete the "SD image" folder in "Image Box", and the "SD Deco-pictograph" folder in "Decomail-pictograph".</li> </ul>   |  |




| <b>Information</b>   |  |
|--|--|
| <Select storage>   |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The following icons are displayed for the folder set as a destination folder: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>“” ... The folders in the "Picture" folder and "Movie" folder</li> <li>“” ... The folders in the "Decomail-pictograph" folder, "Image Box" folder, and "Melody" folder</li> <li>The folders in "My documents" and "SD other files"</li> <li>“” ... The folders in the "Movable contents" folder</li> <li>“” ... The folders in the "Other contents" folder</li> </ul> </li> <li>• When you execute Check microSD, or create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the destination folder on the microSD memory card might be changed. When the setting is changed, set the destination folder again.</li> </ul> |  |

### Function Menu of the Still Image List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Edit picture</b>     | You can edit the still image. (See page 328)   |
| <b>Edit title</b>       | ▶ <b>Enter a title.</b><br>• For a file in the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.<br>• For a file on the microSD memory card, you can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.  |
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | You can change the name of a folder in the "Movable contents" folder.<br>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b><br>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.   |
| <b>Display picture</b>  | You can display the image.<br>• You can switch between the normal (or large) size and the display size each time you press  . (You may not be able to switch depending on the setting of "Display size", the file size, or image size.) |
| <b>Set display</b>      | You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and others for displaying. (See page 326)  |
| <b>Picture info</b>     | You can display information. (See page 327)  |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>   | Go to step 2 on page 232.  |
| <b>Send Ir data</b>     | See page 359.  |
| <b>Ir transmission</b>  | See page 361.  |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Decorate mail</b>    | You can compose Deco-mail using data in the "Decomail-picture" folder or "Decomail-pictograph" folder. Go to step 2 on page 232. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● See page 236 for Deco-mail.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b> | See page 151.  |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>  | You can copy a still image from the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card. (See page 351)  |
| <b>Store in Center</b>  | You can save the still image stored in the FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center. Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></li> <li>▶ <b>Put a check mark for still images to be saved</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can select up to 10 still images.</li> <li>● You can switch between "Picture" and "Title name" by pressing  (FUNC).</li> <li>● While a still image is displayed, you do not need to put a check mark for the still image.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| <b>Copy to phone</b>    | You can copy the still image to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)   |
| <b>Move to microSD</b>  | You can move the still image to the microSD memory card. (See page 352)  |
| <b>Move to phone</b>    | You can move the still image in the "Movable contents" folder to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)  |
| <b>Positioning</b>      | You can set the position for when you paste the still image to the Stand-by display, etc. See page 326 for "Set display". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a position for displaying.</b></li> </ul>   |
| <b>Clipping area</b>    | You can set the clipping area for when you paste the still image to the Stand-by display, etc. See page 326 for "Set display". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select an area for displaying.</b></li> </ul>   |
| <b>Edit file name</b>   | ▶ <b>Enter a file name.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>File restriction</b> | If you set "File restricted" for the file, the operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled at the receiving end who receives the image as the first distribution. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>File unrestricted or File restricted</b></li> <li>● See page 195 for the file restrictions.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>DPOF setting</b>     | See page 367.  |

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Slideshow</b>       | All still images are consecutively displayed starting from the still image selected in the folder. You can select the speed the still image switches at. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Normal or Slow</b></li> <li>Press  (Stop) to stop Slideshow.</li> <li>Press  (Resume) again to resume Slideshow.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Copy</b>            | You can copy the still image, moving image, PDF file, or SD other file on the microSD memory card to another folder on the microSD memory card. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></li> </ul>  |
| <b>Move</b>            | You can move the still image, moving image, PDF file, or SD other file to another folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></li> <li>● Press  (Mail)  (Folder) to display folders at the second-tier level or lower, if they exist. Press  (Up) to return to the upper level.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Delete this</b>     | ▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Delete all</b>      | You can delete all files in the folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></li> <li>▶ <b>YES</b></li> </ul>   |
| <b>Multiple-choice</b> | You can select multiple files and operate them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Put a check mark for the files to be operated</b> ▶  (FUNC) ▶ <b>Select an item. Picture/Title name/Listing</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>..... See page 327 and page 364.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Delete</b> ..... See "Delete this" on page 324.</li> <li><b>DPOF setting</b> ..... See page 367.</li> <li><b>Copy</b> ..... See page 324.</li> <li><b>Move</b> ..... See page 324.</li> <li><b>Copy to microSD</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>..... See page 351.</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Copy to phone</b> ..... See page 352.</li> <li><b>Send Ir data</b> ..... See page 359.</li> <li><b>Select all</b> ..... Selects all files.</li> <li><b>Release all</b> ..... Releases all selected files.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Memory info</b>     | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.   |
| <b>Sort</b>            | You can change displayed order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select an order.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot sort the files on microSD memory card.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |

| Function menu                  | Operation/Explanation  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <b>Picture/<br/>Title name</b> | You can switch the lists of still images.<br>(See page 327)  |
| <b>Composite<br/>image</b>     | <p>You can create a single image by combining four images.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an image location from among, &lt;Upper left&gt;, &lt;Upper right&gt;, &lt;Lower left&gt;, and &lt;Lower right&gt;</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a folder ▶ Select an image.</b></p> <p>Repeat the above procedure and position four images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can select JPEG files only.</li> <li>• To release the positioned image, select the positioned image, and select "Release this".</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Finish) ▶  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To return to the steps to select the image location, press  (Cancel).</li> <li>• See page 215 for when images are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Add folder</b>              | You can create a folder in the "Movable contents" folder. You can create it at each level up to the seventh-tier level.<br>(See page 323)  |
| <b>Delete folder</b>           | You can delete the folder in the "Movable contents" folder. (See page 323)   |
| <b>Select storage</b>          | You can select a destination folder in the "Movable contents" folder. You can set it for up to seventh-tier-level folders.<br>(See page 323)   |

### Information

#### <Edit title>

- You may not be able to edit the title when the unused space on the microSD memory card is short.
- You may not be able to edit the title depending on the file.
- You cannot edit the titles of the pre-installed images in the "Decomail-picture", "Frame", "Stamp", and "Pre-installed" folders.

#### <Display picture>




- You may not be able to execute Display Picture depending on the file.
- Flash movies are played back at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". When "Phone" of "Ring volume" is set to "Step", they are played back at "Level 2".

#### <Attach to mail>

- You may not be able to compose i-mode mail depending on the image.
- See page 195 for attaching a file set with the file restriction to mail.

### Information

#### <Decorate mail>

- When an image size is larger than Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size, the display for selecting how to convert the image size appears. The converted still image is saved as a separate new file.
  - Select "Attach directly"; then the image size does not change.
  - Select "Sub-QCIF scale down"; then the image size is scaled down to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size or smaller with its proportional ratio retained.
  - Select "Sub-QCIF trim away"; then the image size is scaled down or cut out to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size or smaller with its proportional ratio retained.
- If the file size exceeds the maximum size to create Deco-mail, its size is converted to the maximum size to create Deco-mail or less.
- Even if you scale down or cut out the still image to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size, you can again scale down or cut it out by pressing  (Cancel), or pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Cancel". When you press  (FUNC) and select "Set", the Message Composition display appears.
- You may not be able to create Deco-mail depending on the image.

#### <Store in Center>

- You cannot save the following still images:
  - Images whose sizes exceed 100 Kbytes
  - Images whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited
  - Images other than in JPEG or GIF format
- You cannot use Data Security Service when you are out of the service area.
- When you have not signed up for Data Security Service, the message to that effect appears.
- You can download the saved still images from the Data Storage Center site to your FOMA phone. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

#### <Positioning> <Clipping area>

- You cannot set "Positioning" for Flash movies.
- The set display position or clipping area is valid for "Stand-by display", "Wake-up display", the displays for "Dialing", "Calling", "Videophone dial", "V.phone incoming", "Mail sending", "Mail receiving", and "Checking". However, the set display position or clipping area might not work on some images depending on their sizes.

#### <Edit file name>

- You may not be able to edit the file name depending on the file.
- You cannot use half-pitch space for the file name.

#### <File restriction>

- You may not be able to set the file restrictions depending on the file.

## Information

### <Slideshow>

- The time interval to show the images might differ depending on the image.

### <Copy> <Move>

- If a call comes in while copying/moving multiple files, copying/moving is canceled even midway.






### <Delete this> <Delete all>

- If you delete the files set for other functions, the setting returns to the default. However the image set for the videophone related items except “Videophone dial” or “V.phone incoming” does not change.
- Even if you delete the source still image of the attached still image, you cannot delete the still image attached to mail.
- If a call comes in while deleting multiple files, deleting is canceled.

### <Multiple-choice>

- You can select up to 1,800 still images and PDF files, up to 500 moving images, up to 400 melodies, and up to 100 SD other files.

### <Composite image>

- You cannot select the still image in excess of CIF (352 x 288) size except VGA (480 x 640) size.
- The acquired source of the combined image is the same as the one for the component images. However, when there are multiple acquired sources, the priority order is as follows:  or  →  →  → .

## Set Display

You can paste the image to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying.


See “Positioning” and “Clipping area” on page 324 for the position or area in which you paste the still image.

### 1 Still Image List/Still image in play

 (FUNC) ▶ Set display

▶ Select the display you paste it to.

- “★” is displayed for the pasted items but not for the videophone related items other than “Videophone dial” or “V.phone incoming” even if already pasted.
- If you select the videophone related items other than “Videophone dial” or “V.phone incoming”, “応答保留/On Hold”, “保留/Holding”, “カメラオフ/Camera off”, “伝言メモ録画中/Recording”, “伝言メモ準備中/Preparing”, or “動画メモ録画中/Recording” is displayed at the center of the still image.

| Display pasting to   | File format              |                       |                          |
|--|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
|  | GIF                      | JPEG                  | Flash                    |
| Stand-by display (See page 137)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Wake-up display (See page 138)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Dialing (See page 138)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Calling (See page 138)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Videophone dial (See page 138)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| V.phone incoming (See page 138)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Mail sending (See page 138)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Mail receiving (See page 138)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>    |
| Checking (See page 138)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Phonebook (See page 114)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| On hold (See page 88)  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Holding (See page 88)  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Substitute image (See page 88)   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Record message (See page 88)   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Preparing VP Msg (See page 88)   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| VP movie memo (See page 88)  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon Mail (See page 144)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon i-mode (See page 144)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon  appli (See page 144) | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon Settings (See page 144)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon Data box (See page 144)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon LifeKit (See page 144)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon Service (See page 144)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon Phonebook (See page 144)   | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon Stationery (See page 144)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| Menu icon BG image (See page 144)  | <input type="radio"/>    | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

○: Pasting enabled

×: Pasting disabled

## Information


- The displayed size might differ from actual size depending on the image size or the display pasted to.
- If the image edited with Funny Transform II is pasted to other than “Stand-by display”, the first frame is displayed without playing back the animation.
- You cannot execute “Set display” for some image files.



## Picture Info

### 1 Still Image List/Still image in play

#### ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Picture info

- Use  to scroll the display to check the information.
- The item of “Set display” only is displayed for “Picture info” of original animations.

| Item             | Contents   |
|------------------|--|
| File name        | Displays the file name.  |
| Format           | Displays the file format. It is not displayed for the file of Flash movie.   |
| File size        | Displays the file size.  |
| Saved at         | Displays the date/time the file was saved. If there is no information, “----/--/--:--:--” is displayed.  |
| File restriction | Displays File restricted/File unrestricted.  |
| Display size     | Displays the display size. It is not displayed for the file of Flash movie.  |
| Received from    | Displays the acquired file source.   |
| Set display      | Displays the destination the image is set to. (Videophone related items other than “Videophone dial” and “Videophone incoming” are not displayed.)   |
| DPOF setting     | Displays whether the DPOF setting is set or not (the number of frames when the DPOF setting is set). “*-*” indicates that 100 or more frames are set. (Only still images in the “Picture” folder on the microSD memory card) |
| Moved to microSD | Displays “Available/Unavailable/Available (Same model)” for whether it is possible to move or copy the file to the microSD memory card. Displays “Available” when either moving or copying is possible.                      |
| Moved to phone   | Displays “Available/Unavailable/Available (Same model)” for whether it is possible to move or copy the file from the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone. Displays “Available” when either moving or copying is possible.  |

#### Information

- For the files in the “microSD” folder, “Received from” and “Set display” are not displayed. However, for the files in the “Movable contents” folder, “Received from” and “Set display” are displayed.
- You cannot move the file of “Available (Same model)” to the FOMA phone other than P904i.

## Picture/Title Name

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Setting at purchase | Picture |
|---------------------|---------|

### 1 Still Image List (FUNC)

#### ▶ Picture or Title name



Picture






Title name

#### Information

- When you use “Picture” to display still images, some images may appear different.

## Function Menu while Playing Back Still Image

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation  |
|---|--|
| <b>Edit picture</b>   | You can edit the still image. (See page 328)   |
| <b>Set display</b>  | You can paste the still image to the Stand-by display and others for displaying. (See page 326)  |
| <b>Picture info</b>   | You can display information. (See page 327)  |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>   | You can compose i-mode mail. You can compose it also by pressing  (  ). (See page 323)       |
| <b>Decorate mail</b>  | You can compose Deco-mail. (See page 324)  |
| <b>Send Ir data</b>   | See page 359.  |
| <b> transmission</b> | See page 361.  |
| <b>Display size</b>   | You can set whether to display the still image in original size (normal size) or to fit to the display size.<br>▶ <b>Normal or Fit in display</b><br>● Even if you set “Normal”, the still image in excess of the display size is reduced to the display size. |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b>   | See page 151.  |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>  | See page 351.  |

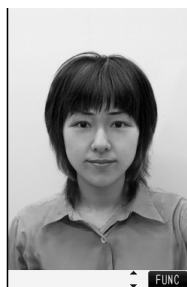
| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Store in Center</b> | You can save the still image to the Data Storage Center. (See page 324)       |
| <b>Copy to phone</b>   | You can copy the still image to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)                |
| <b>Positioning</b>     | You can set the position for pasting and displaying the image. (See page 324) |
| <b>Clipping area</b>   | You can set the area for pasting and displaying the image. (See page 324)     |
| <b>DPOF setting</b>    | See page 367.   |
| <b>Delete this</b>     | See page 324.   |
| <b>Retry</b>           | You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning.            |

<Edit Picture>

## Editing Still Images

### 1 Still Image List/Still image in play

(FUNC) ▶ Edit picture



Edit Picture display

- When the still image is larger than VGA size, the image is shrunk to VGA size.
- When the still image to be edited is larger than the display size, use to scroll it.

### 2 (FUNC) ▶ Edit the still image.

See page 329 to page 331 for how to operate.

### 3 (Save) ▶ YES or NO

**YES** . . . Overwrites the image to be saved.

**NO** . . . Saves the image as a new still image.

The edited still image is saved.

- To edit and save an edited still image on the microSD memory card, press (Save) in step 3; then it is saved to the “i-mode” folder anew.
- Not to save the edited still image, press (CH???) or ; then select “YES”.
- See page 215 when images are stored to the maximum.

### ■ The size of still image you can edit

| Edit menu          | 3M<br>2.7M<br>2M<br>1M | VGA | CIF | Stand-by<br>(Screen)<br>QVGA |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|------------------------------|
| Marker stamp       | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |
| Frame              | ×                      | ×   | ○   | ○                            |
| Character stamp    | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |
| Funny transform    | ×                      | ×   | ○   | ○                            |
| Funny transform II | ×                      | ×   | ○   | ○                            |
| Cushy mark         | ×                      | ×   | ○   | ○                            |
| Change size        | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |
| Trim away          | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |
| Retouch            | ×                      | ×   | ○   | ○                            |
| Rotate             | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |
| Brightness         | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |
| Attach to mail     | ○                      | ○   | ○   | ○                            |

| Edit menu          | QCIF | Sub-<br>QCIF | Smaller<br>than<br>VGA and<br>larger<br>than CIF | Other<br>sizes<br>smaller<br>than CIF |
|--------------------|------|--------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| Marker stamp       | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○                                     |
| Frame              | ○    | ○            | ×  | ×                                     |
| Character stamp    | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○※1                                   |
| Funny transform    | ○    | ○            | ×  | ○                                     |
| Funny transform II | ○    | ×            | ×  | ○※2                                   |
| Cushy mark         | ○    | ○            | ×  | ○                                     |
| Change size        | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○                                     |
| Trim away          | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○※3                                   |
| Retouch            | ○    | ○            | ×  | ○                                     |
| Rotate             | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○                                     |
| Brightness         | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○                                     |
| Attach to mail     | ○    | ○            | ○  | ○                                     |

○: Editing picture is enabled. ×: Editing picture is disabled.

※1 You cannot edit the still image smaller than 24 x 24 dots.

※2 You cannot edit the still image smaller than QCIF (176 x 144) size.














※3 You cannot edit the still image of Chat Picture (80 x 80) size or smaller.

•You can edit the still images of 1,616 x 1,212 dots, and 1,632 x 1,224 dots as well.

## Information

- You can execute "Edit picture" only for the "File unrestricted" files of still images shot by the cameras, obtained by data communication, downloaded from sites, or retrieved from i-mode mail.
- You may not be able to execute "Edit picture" depending on the still image.
- If you repeat editing image such as pasting frames or marker stamps to the shot still image, the image quality may deteriorate or the file size may become larger.
- You cannot edit some still images as you like.
- If the battery runs out during editing, the edited contents are discarded.
- The file name, title, storage location, and acquired source of the newly saved still image are as follows:
  - File name: "YYYYMMDDhhmmnnn"  
(Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute, n: number)
  - Title: "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm"  
(Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)
  - Storage location: Folder the source file is saved to (Still images on the microSD memory card are saved to the "i-mode" folder.)
  - Acquired source: The same as the source file

## Function Menu of the Edit Picture Display

| Function menu       | Operation/Explanation  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Marker stamp</b> | <p>You can add the marker stamp in the "Stamp" folder.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ <b>Select a marker stamp.</b><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● You can rotate the marker stamp by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "90° to right/90° to left/180°". Select "Scale up/Scale down" to enlarge or shrink the marker stamp.</li><li>● You can reselect a marker stamp by pressing  (Cancel).</li><li>● See page 468 for the pre-installed marker stamps.</li></ul></li><li>▶ <b>Use  to position the marker stamp and press  (Put).</b></li><li>● You can add a marker stamp by pressing  (Add).</li><li>▶  (Set)</li></ul> |
| <b>Frame</b>        |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ <b>Select a frame</b> ▶  (Set)</li><li>● You can add the frame whose size is the same as the size of the image you are editing.</li><li>● You can display the previous or next frame by pressing . Press and hold  for at least one second to display sequentially.</li><li>● You can rotate the frame by pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "180° rotation".</li><li>● You can reselect a frame by pressing  (Cancel).</li><li>● See page 468 for the pre-installed frames.</li></ul>   |

**Function menu**      **Operation/Explanation**

**Character stamp**



You can add text.

▶ **Enter characters.**

You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters you can enter decreases depending on the size of the still image.

● Press ( **FUNC** ) and select "Character color" to select a color; then, you can change the color of characters. You can switch between "16 Color" and "256 Color" by pressing ( **Change** ).

Select "Font" and "Font 1/Font 2" to change the character fonts.

Select "Character size" and "Enlargement size/Standard size/Reduction size" to enlarge or shrink characters.

Select "Character input" to edit entered characters.

▶ Use to position the characters and press ( **Put** ).

▶ ( **Set** )

● You can reselect a position by pressing ( **Cancel** ).

**Funny transform**



You can change the person's expression.

▶ **Select an expression pattern**

▶ ( **Set** )

● You can reselect an expression pattern by pressing ( **Cancel** ).

**Function menu**      **Operation/Explanation**

**Funny transform II**



You can move the person's expression in accordance with a type.

▶ ( **Type** )

● The outline and each region of the face are automatically detected. To adjust each region of the face, press ( **Edit** ).

Use to select the region of the face, and press ( **OK** ).

▶ **Select a type.**

● Press ( **Play** ) to play back a demo. To cancel, press ( **Stop** ) or ( **CHG** ).

▶ ( **Set** )

**Cushy mark**



You can compound a cushy mark in the "Stamp" folder. The person's facial region is automatically recognized and the cushy mark is pasted to an appropriate position.

▶ **Select a cushy mark.**

● Press ( **FUNC** ) and select "Scale up/Scale down" to enlarge or shrink the cushy mark.

● To cancel, press ( **Cancel** ).



● See page 468 for the pre-installed cushy marks.






▶ Use to position the cushy mark and press ( **Put** ).







● The cushy mark that comes out of the still image is cut off.



● You can add a cushy mark by pressing ( **Add** ).

▶ ( **Set** )

| Function menu      | Operation/Explanation  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>Change size</b> | <p>▶ <b>Select an image size to change to.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select the size different in proportional ratio from the source still image, the still image is enlarged or shrunk so that it does not exceed the selected size with its proportional ratio retained.</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Set)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can reselect a size by pressing  (Cancel).</li> </ul> |

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>Trim away</b> | <p>You can trim the still image to a certain size.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an image size to trim to.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot select a trimming frame larger than the still image you are editing.</li> <li>• When you select “Screen (240 x 400)”, “Dial/recv. PIC (240 x 144)” or “CIF (288 x 352)”, the still image you are editing or the trimming frame are halved at both lengthwise and sidewise to be displayed.</li> </ul> <p>▶ Use  to select a part to be trimmed and press  (Set).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can reselect a size to trim by pressing  (Cancel).</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Set)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can reselect a part to be trimmed by pressing  (Cancel).</li> </ul> |
|------------------|---|

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Retouch</b> | <p>You can set texture and color tone of the still image.</p>  <p>  </p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Sharp</b> . . . . . Stresses the outline.</p> <p><b>Blur</b> . . . . . Softens the outline.</p> <p><b>Sepia</b> . . . . . Makes the color tone sepia.</p> <p><b>Emboss</b> . . . . . Makes the still image rugged.</p> <p><b>Negative</b> . . . . . Reverses the color tone.</p> <p><b>Horizontal flip</b><br/> . . . . . Flips the image horizontally.</p> <p><b>Super clear shadow</b><br/> . . . . . Makes the dark still image clear.</p> <p><b>Memory color</b><br/> . . . . . Corrects the color and contrast.</p> <p>▶  (Set)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can reselect an effect by pressing  (Cancel).</li> </ul> |
|----------------|--|

| Function menu         | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>Rotate</b>         | <p>▶ <b>90° to right, 90° to left or 180°</b></p> <p>▶  (Set)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can reselect the rotation angle by pressing  (Cancel).</li> </ul> |
| <b>Brightness</b>     | <p>You can adjust the brightness to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a brightness level.</b></p>  |
| <b>Attach to mail</b> | You can compose i-mode mail. (See page 323)  |
| <b>Save</b>           | You can save the edited still image. (See page 328)  |

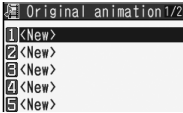
| Information   |
|---|
| <p><b>&lt;Marker stamp&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot select the marker stamp with following sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· When the size is larger than the still image to be edited</li> <li>· CIF (352 x 288)</li> <li>· Stand-by (240 x 400)</li> <li>· QVGA (240 x 320)</li> <li>· QCIF (176 x 144)</li> <li>· Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• You cannot enlarge a marker stamp to the size larger than the still image you are editing.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Character stamp&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot set some character colors depending on the image to be edited. In that case, select another color.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Funny transform&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person’s face or outline might not be recognized correctly. When multiple persons’ faces are found, a single person’s face only is recognized. In addition, if no person is found, the image might be deformed.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Funny transform II &gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person’s face or outline might not be recognized correctly. When multiple persons’ faces are found, a single person’s face only is recognized. In addition, if no person is found, the image might be deformed.</li> <li>• If the saved Funny transform II image is re-edited, “Funny transform II” is released.</li> <li>• When you use the desktop icon to display a Funny transform II image, it is displayed as an ordinary still image.</li> <li>• You can play back Funny transform II images only on the compatible models. The images are played back as ordinary still images on other devices such as personal computers.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Cushy mark&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You cannot select a cushy mark larger than CIF (352 x 288) size.</li> <li>• You can enlarge or shrink a cushy mark up to three times, but cannot enlarge it to the size larger than CIF (352 x 288) size.</li> <li>• Person’s face or outline might not be recognized correctly. When multiple persons’ faces are found, a single person’s face only is recognized.</li> </ul> |

## <Original Animation>

# Creating Animations

You can select up to 20 JPEG files (20 frames) of VGA (480 x 640) size or smaller from the “i-mode” folder, “Camera” folder and user folders, and play them back as an animation. You can store 20 original animations.


- 1  Data box ▶ My picture  
▶ Original animation ▶ <New>



Original Animation List

- To change, select an original animation you have set.

- 2 Select a frame position from <1st> to <20th>.
- 3 Select a folder ▶ Select a still image.
- 4 Repeat step 2 and step 3.

After storing all still images, press  (Finish).

## Function Menu of the Original Animation List

| Function menu            | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit title</b>        | ▶ Enter a title.<br>• You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.                   |
| <b>Org. animation</b>    | Go to step 2 on page 332.   |
| <b>Display picture</b>   | You can play back the original animation.   |
| <b>Set display</b>       | You can paste the animation to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying. (See page 326) |
| <b>Picture info</b>      | You can display information. (See page 327)   |
| <b>Release animation</b> | ▶ YES   |

## Function Menu while Playing Back Original Animation

| Function menu       | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------|---|
| <b>Set display</b>  | You can paste the animation to the Stand-by display and other displays for displaying. (See page 326) |
| <b>Display size</b> | See page 327.   |
| <b>Retry</b>        | You can play back the original animation again.   |

### Information

- If you delete a still image stored in an original animation, the original animation which contains the still image is released.

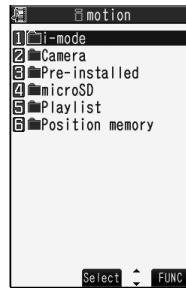
## <i-motion Player>

# Playing Back Moving Images/ i-motion Movies

You can play back moving images saved to the FOMA phone or the microSD memory card.

- You can play back the sound of moving images from a commercial Bluetooth device. (See page 411)

- 1  Data box  i-motion  
▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file.



Moving Image Folder List



Moving Image List

- The following images are displayed when you cannot display the preview images:



Cannot be played back




No preview images



Playback restrictions have expired, and the like.



Incomplete download

- When you select a folder or i-motion movie from another function, some folders or i-motion movies may not be displayed depending on the function. You may be able to confirm the i-motion movie by pressing  (Play) while selecting an i-motion movie.
- Depending on the i-motion movie, you can play back by selecting a chapter set for the i-motion movie. (See page 336)

## Operations when playing back moving image

● See page 336 for when you operate from the Function menu.

| Operation                                  | Key operation  |
|--|--|
| <b>Quick View</b>                          | Press  (). (See page 336)  |
| <b>Mute</b>                                | Press  ().<br>To play back sound, press  () again or adjust the sound volume.  |
| <b>Pause</b> *1                            | Press  (). To resume, press  ().   |
| <b>Play back frame by frame</b> *2         | Press  () during pause. Each time you press  () , the playback proceeds frame by frame.  |
| <b>Sound volume adjustment</b>             | Press  or . Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially.<br>You can adjust by pressing   even when the FOMA phone is closed. You can set the sound volume from Level 0 through 6. |
| Setting at purchase<br>Level 4             |  |
| <b>Display next file or chapter</b> *3     | Press .  |
| <b>Display previous file or chapter</b> *3 | Press .*4  |
| <b>Search (fast forward)</b> *2            | Press and hold  to fast-forward the video.   |
| <b>Search (fast rewind)</b> *2             | Press and hold  to fast-rewind the video.  |

\*1 You cannot operate a streaming type of i-motion movie.

\*2 You might not be able to operate a streaming type of i-motion movie, i-motion movies of QVGA (320 x 240) size, or when you are playing back an i-motion movie while obtaining it.

\*3 Moving images having no chapters are switched in the order on the Moving Image List. This operation is available when you play back from the Moving Image List. Moving images having chapters are switched in the order that the chapters are stored.

\*4 When three seconds have elapsed after starting playback, this operation returns the position to the beginning of the file. (A moving image having chapters returns to the top of the chapter.)

## Specifications for moving image playback

|               |                    |  |
|---------------|--------------------|--|
| File format   | MP4, ASF           |  |
| Coding system | MP4 file           | Image: MPEG4, H.263, H.264<br>Audio: AMR, AAC, AAC+ (HE-AAC), Enhanced aacPlus |
|               | ASF file           | Image: MPEG4<br>Audio: G.726   |
| Pixels        | MPEG4:             | Files of QVGA (320 x 240) size or smaller                                      |
|               | H.263:             | Files of Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144) size only                     |
|               | H.264:             | Files of QVGA (320 x 240) size or smaller                                      |
| Extension     | sdv, 3gp, mp4, asf |  |

● Even when the file format is supported, you might not be able to play back some files.

### When you select "microSD" on the Moving Image Folder List

1. Select an item.

Movie

..... Displays moving images shot by the camera or moving images copied from the FOMA phone.

Movable contents

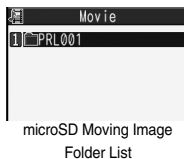
..... Displays copyrighted i-motion movies moved from the FOMA phone.

Other contents

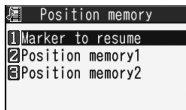
..... Displays voice-only i-motion movies recorded by using the camera function, voice-only i-motion movies copied from the FOMA phone, or video-unplayable i-motion movies copied from the FOMA phone.

2. Select a folder.

The moving image list appears.



## ■ When you select “Position memory” on the Moving Image Folder List



Position Memory Selection display

The Position Memory Selection display appears. There are two types of markers; one is “Position memory” and the other is “Marker to resume”.

“Position memory” is the marker that has been stored in an optional frame of moving images. You can create up to two position memories. (See page 336)

“Marker to resume” is the marker that will automatically be recorded if playback is suspended such as when a call comes in, an alarm sounds, or the battery level goes flat.

1. Select a marker (position memory).

The moving image is played back from the stored marker position.

- You can delete the position memory by pressing (FUNC) and selecting “Delete”. However, you cannot delete the “Marker to resume”.
- When the moving image with a position memory has been deleted or moved to another folder, you cannot play it back.

### Information

- While searching (fast forward or fast rewind) a moving image or playing it back frame by frame, it does not sound. Also, tickers are not displayed. You can search (fast forward or fast rewind) while pausing or playing back the moving image (including slow and quick view).
- If you receive mail or a Message R/F when playing back an i-motion movie, the video or sound might be interrupted.

## Function Menu of the Moving Image Folder List

| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Add folder       | See page 322.         |
| Edit folder name | See page 322.         |
| Delete folder    | See page 323.         |

## Function Menu of the microSD Moving Image Folder List

| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Edit folder name | See page 323.         |
| Add folder       | See page 323.         |
| Delete folder    | See page 323.         |
| Select storage   | See page 323.         |

## Function Menu of the Moving Image List


| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------|--|
| Edit  motion     | You can edit the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 338)   |
| Edit title       | See page 323.  |
| Edit folder name | You can change the name of a folder in the “Movable contents” folder. (See page 323)   |
| Set  motion      | You can set the moving image for the ring tone. (See page 335)   |
| motion info      | You can display information. (See page 335)  |
| Attach to mail   | You can compose i-motion mail with the file attached.<br>Go to step 2 on page 232.   |
| Send Ir data     | See page 359.  |
| transmission     | See page 361.  |
| Copy to microSD  | You can copy the moving image/i-motion movie to the microSD memory card. (See page 351)  |
| Copy to phone    | You can copy the moving image/i-motion movie to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)   |
| Move to microSD  | You can move the moving image/i-motion movie to the microSD memory card. (See page 352)  |
| Move to phone    | You can move the moving image in the “Movable contents” folder to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)                                       |
| Move             | See page 324.  |
| Copy             | See page 324.  |
| Add desktop icon | See page 151.  |
| Edit file name   | See page 324.  |
| File restriction | See page 324.  |
| Reset title      | You can reset the title to the default.<br>▶ YES   |
| Delete this      | See page 324.  |
| Delete all       | See page 324.  |
| Multiple-choice  | You can select multiple files. (See page 324)  |
| Memory info      | You can display the used memory space (estimate).  |
| Sort             | You can change the displaying order. (See page 324)  |
| Listing          | You can switch the lists of moving images. (See page 336)  |
| Add folder       | You can create a folder in the “Movable contents” folder. You can create it at each level up to the seventh-tier level. (See page 323) |



| Function menu         | Operation/Explanation   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <b>Delete folder</b>  | You can delete the folder in the "Movable contents" folder. (See page 323)  |
| <b>Select storage</b> | You can select a destination folder in the "Movable contents" folder. You can set it for up to seventh-tier-level folders. (See page 323) |

**Information**


**<Attach to mail>**

- When the file size is larger than 2 Mbytes, the confirmation display appears asking whether to cut it out to the mail size. Select "YES" to cut out the i-motion movie from the beginning to the about 1.99-Mbyte point. For the i-motion movie with a ticker, the confirmation display appears telling that you cannot cut out the ticker. Select "YES".
- You may not be able to compose i-mode mail depending on the i-motion movie.
- Depending on the i-motion movie, its file size may become larger or smaller.
- You cannot attach an i-motion movie in excess of 2 Mbytes to mail from the Edit  motion display. See "Trim for mail" for how to cut out the i-motion movie for attaching to i-motion mail.

## Set motion

You can set a moving image to any of a ring tone, Stand-by display, and the Wake-up display.

**1 Moving Image List/During pause/At the end of playback**  (FUNC)


▶ Set  motion

**2 Do the following operations.**

| Item                    | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Ring tone</b>        | ▶ Select an incoming type.<br>• The set item is indicated by "★". |
| <b>Stand-by display</b> | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Wake-up display</b>  | ▶ YES   |

**3 Press**  (Finish).


**Information**

- You cannot set the i-motion movie whose acquired source is "

## motion Info

**1 Moving Image List/During pause/At the end of playback**  (FUNC)  motion info

• Use  to scroll the display to check the information.

| Item   | Contents  |  |
|--|---|--|
| File name  | Displays the file name.   |  |
| Format   | Displays the file format.   |  |
| Title  | Displays the default title for the file. When no default title is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.  |  |
| Creator  | Displays the information about the creator of the file. When no information is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.   |  |
| Copyright  | Displays if the file contains the information about copyright or not. When no information is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.   |  |
| Saved at   | Displays the date/time the file was saved. When no information is contained, "--/--/-- --:--" is displayed.   |  |
| Description  | Displays the description for the file. When no description is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.  |  |
| File size  | Displays the file size.   |  |
| Display size   | Displays the display size. For the voice-only i-motion movie or unplayable file, "Unknown" is displayed.  |  |
| Received from  | Displays the acquired source.   |  |
| Ring tone  | Displays Available/Unavailable. When the file is set for a ring tone, the setting end is displayed. When no information is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.   |  |
| Receive display  | Displays Available/Unavailable. When the file is set for the Calling display, the setting end is displayed.   |  |
|  motion setting | Displays the setting end of i-motion movie. When the file is not set to any end, "No set" is displayed.   |  |
| File restriction   | Displays File restricted/File unrestricted.   |  |
| Replay restriction   | When the number of playbacks is restricted  | "y times left (y/x)" (y: Play frequency, x: Max. play frequency) is displayed. |
|  | When the playable deadline is specified   | "Play limit date/time" is displayed.   |
|  | When the playable period is restricted  | "Date/time play enabled" ~ "Play limit date/time" is displayed.                |
|  | When no playback restrictions are specified   | "Not restricted" is displayed.   |
| Moved to microSD   | Displays "Available/Unavailable/Available (Same model)" for whether it is possible to move or copy the file to the microSD memory card. Displays "Available" when either moving or copying is possible. |  |

Next Page

| Item           | Contents  |
|----------------|---|
| Moved to phone | Displays "Available/Unavailable/Available (Same model)" for whether it is possible to move or copy the file from the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone. Displays "Available" when either moving or copying is possible. |
| Video          | Displays Included/Not included/Unplayable.  |
| Audio          | Displays AAC/HE-AAC/AMR/Enhanced aacPlus/Not included/Unplayable/Playable.  |
| Text           | Displays Included/Not included/Unplayable.  |

### Information

- For the files in the "microSD" folder, "Received from" is not displayed. However, for the files in the "Movable contents" folder, "Received from" is displayed.
- For the files in the "Movable contents" folder, "Receive display" is not displayed.
- You cannot move the file of "Available (Same model)" to the FOMA phone other than P904i.

### Listing

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| Setting at purchase | Title + Image |
|---------------------|---------------|

You can change the displayed contents for Moving Image List. You can select whether the title or file name is displayed in the microSD Memory Card List.

## 1 Moving Image List (FUNC) Listing ▶ Select a display format.

**Title** . . . . . The titles or file names are listed.

**Title + Image** . . . . The title or file name, and image are displayed at a time. The displayed image is the first frame of moving image.

**Title/File name** . . . You can select whether to display the title or file name.

- In the case of the microSD Memory Card List, "Title" is displayed as "Name", and "Title + Image" is displayed as "Name + Image".


















Title



Title + Image

### Function Menu during Pause/at the End of Playback

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation   |
|---|---|
| <b>Normal play</b>  | The moving image is played back at the normal speed.  |
| <b>Chapter list</b>   | You can display the list of chapters stored in the moving image and select a chapter to be played back.<br>▶ <b>Select a chapter to be played back.</b>   |
| <b>Slow</b>   | The moving image is played back at half the normal speed.<br>• To cancel Slow playback, press  (  ) , or perform "Normal play".   |
| <b>Quick View (1.25x)</b>   | The moving image is played back at the speed 1.25 times the normal speed.<br>• Press  (  ) to play back the moving image at twice the normal speed. Press  (  ) to play back at the normal speed. |
| <b>Quick View (2x)</b>  | The moving image is played back at twice the normal speed.<br>• To cancel Quick View, press  (  ) , or perform "Normal play".   |
| <b>Stop</b>   | You can end playback.   |
| <b>Position to play</b>   | You can set the start point for playing back the moving image.<br>▶ Use  to move the cursor position of the Time bar and press  (Set) .<br>• To cancel, press  .   |
| <b>Position memory</b>  | You can store a position memory in the moving image. Store it at the desired position in pause state.<br>▶ <b>Position memory1 or Position memory2</b>  |
| <b>Edit  motion</b>    | You can edit the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 338)  |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>   | You can compose i-motion mail with the file attached. (See page 334)  |
| <b>Set  motion</b>   | You can set the moving image as a ring tone. (See page 335)   |
| <b> motion info</b>  | You can display information. (See page 335)   |
| <b>Send Ir data</b>   | See page 359.   |
| <b> transmission</b> | See page 361.   |
| <b>Copy to phone</b>  | You can copy the moving image/i-motion movie to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)  |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b>   | See page 151.   |
| <b>Display size</b>   | You can set the display whether to display a moving image in the original size (Actual size) or to fit to the display size.<br>▶ <b>Actual size or Fit in display</b><br>• Even if you set "Actual size", the moving image in excess of the display size is reduced to the display size.  |

|                     |             |
|---------------------|-------------|
| Setting at purchase | Actual size |
|---------------------|-------------|

| Function menu               | Operation/Explanation   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <b>Hor. full disp. play</b> | The moving image is played back in the full screen, by rotating it 90 degrees horizontally.   |
| Setting at purchase         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When it is already played back horizontally, the vertical display returns.</li> <li>You can switch also by pressing  during playback or pause, or at the end of playback.</li> </ul> |
| Vertical display playback   |   |

### Information

#### <Chapter list>

- When restrictions on chapter forward are applied, you cannot select chapters after the one you are currently playing back. When restrictions on chapter rewind are applied, you cannot select chapters before the one you are currently playing back.

#### <Slow>

- No sound is output during slow playback.
- You cannot slow-play the following i-motion movie:
  - A streaming type of i-motion movie
  - An i-motion movie being played back while obtaining data

#### <Quick View>

- You cannot execute Quick View for some i-motion movies.
- You cannot execute Quick View for the following i-motion movies:
  - A streaming type of i-motion movie
  - An i-motion movie being played back while obtaining data
  - An i-motion movie played back from the Stand-by display
- i-motion movies are not played back in stereo sound during Quick View.

#### <Position to play>

- You might not be able to select the position to play depending on the moving image/i-motion movie.

#### <Position memory>

- You might not be able to store the position memory depending on the moving image/i-motion movie.

#### <Display size>

- The image may be cut at the right side or at the lower side depending on the image size.

## Using Playlist

You can store moving images in a playlist, and continuously play them back in the order you like. You can create up to five playlists, and can store up to 30 moving images per playlist.

### Store Playlist

- Data box motion ▶ Playlist  
▶ Select Playlist 1 through 5.



- Select <1st> through <30th>  
▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving image.

- Repeat step 2 ▶ (Finish)

- To release a stored moving image, press (FUNC) and select "DEL one from list". Select "DEL all from list" to release all the stored moving images.
- To change the order of stored moving images, press (FUNC) and select "Order to play", and select a moving image whose position to be changed. Then, select the destination position to change the order.

### Information

- You cannot store partially saved i-motion movies to the playlist.

## Play Back Playlist

- Playlist List  
▶ Highlight a playlist and press (Play).

### Function Menu of the Playlist List

| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <b>Play</b>               | You can play back the playlist. (See page 337)  |
| <b>Edit playlist</b>      | You can edit the playlist.<br>Go to step 2 of "Store Playlist" on page 337.   |
| <b>Release playlist</b>   | You can release all moving images stored in the playlist.<br>▶ YES  |
| <b>Edit playlist name</b> | You can edit the name of the playlist.<br>▶ Edit a playlist name.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul> |




<Edit  motion>

## Editing Moving Images/ i-motion Movies

You can edit the moving image/i-motion movie. The moving image/i-motion movie you edited is saved to the folder containing the source moving image/i-motion movie.

### 1 Moving Image List/During pause/At the end of playback (FUNC) Edit motion





• Use  or  /  to adjust the sound volume.

### 2 (FUNC) Edit the moving image/ i-motion movie.

See page 338 to page 341 for how to operate.

### 3 Press (Save).












• Not to save the edited moving image/i-motion movie, press  or ; then select “YES”.

### 4 YES

The edited moving image/i-motion movie is saved.


• See page 215 for when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

### ■ Operations during editing an i-motion movie or demo playback








| Operation               | Key operation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Pause                   | Press  (  ).<br>Press  (  ) again to resume play back. |
| Fast forward            | Press and hold  to fast-forward the video.  |
| Fast rewind             | Press and hold  to fast-rewind the video.   |
| Forward frame by frame  | During pause, press  .  |
| Rewind frame by frame   | During pause, press  .  |
| Sound volume adjustment | Press  or  /  .   |

• You cannot do some operations depending on the state.

### Information

- You cannot edit the following moving images/i-motion movies:
  - The files with “File restriction” and “Replay restriction” obtained from sites or i-mode mail
  - The files other than QCIF (176 x 144) and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size
  - The files stored on the microSD memory card
- You might not be able to edit some i-motion movies.
- The image quality may deteriorate or the file size may become larger or smaller by executing “Edit  motion”.
- When a call comes in, the battery level goes flat, or you close the FOMA phone while editing, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save the fixed edited contents.

### Function Menu of the Edit motion Display

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation   |
|---|---|
| <b>Trim</b><br> motion | You can cut out the moving image/i-motion movie. (See page 339)   |
| <b>Trim for picture</b>   | You can cut out the still image and save it.<br>▶ Use  to display a frame and press  (Set) ▶ YES ▶ Select a folder.<br>• See page 215 for when still images are stored to the maximum.  |
| <b>Rerecord sound</b>   | See page 339.   |
| <b>Edit ticker</b>  | You can edit the ticker. (See page 339)   |
| <b>Trim for mail</b>  | You can cut out the moving image/i-motion movie to the size attachable to i-mode mail.<br>▶ <b>Mail size (S) or Mail size</b><br><b>Mail size (S)</b> . . . Cut out to the size of about 490 Kbytes or less.<br><b>Mail size</b> . . . . Cut out to the size of about 2038 Kbytes or less.<br><br>• For the moving image/i-motion movie containing a ticker, the confirmation display appears telling that you cannot cut out the ticker. Select “YES”.<br>▶ Use  to display a start frame and press  (Start).<br>The moving image/i-motion movie is played back. When the file size reaches about 490 Kbytes, about 2038 Kbytes, or at the end of playback, the playback stops automatically.<br><br>▶  (Set)<br><br>• Press  (Play) to play back a demo and you can check the edited moving image/i-motion movie. |

| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------|--|
| Attach to mail   | You can compose i-motion mail with the file attached. (See page 334) |
| File restriction | See page 324.  |

## Trim an i-motion Movie

You can cut out a certain range from an i-motion movie.

- 1 **Edit** **motion display** ▶ (FUNC)  
▶ **Trim** **motion**
- 2 **Use** **to display a start frame and press** (Start).  
The start frame is set and the moving image/i-motion movie is played back.
- 3 **Press** **at the position you want to cut out.**  
Playing back the moving image/i-motion movie pauses.
- 4 **Use** **to display an end frame and press** (End).  
The cut out range is played back.
  - When the file size reaches about 10 Mbytes, the end frame is automatically set.
- 5 **Press** (Set).
  - Press (Play) to play back a demo to check the edited moving image/i-motion movie.

### Information

- If you execute "Trim motion", the file size may become larger.

## Rerecord Sound

You can record the sound over a certain range of an i-motion movie.

- 1 **Edit** **motion display** ▶ (FUNC)  
▶ **Rerecord sound**
- 2 **Press** (Start).  
Recording starts. Speak into the microphone.
  - When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, record the sound from the microphone of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.
  - To record the sound from a midway position of the moving image/i-motion movie, press (Play) to play it back.
- 3 **Press** (End).  
Recording ends.
  - To record in succession, repeat step 2 to step 3.

- 4 **Press** (Finish).

Rerecord Sound is finished.

- 5 **Press** (Set).

- Press (Play) to play back a demo to check the edited moving image/i-motion movie.

## Edit Ticker



You can create and edit the ticker information (text information displayed during playback) of i-motion movie.

### For "New"

You can create up to five tickers per moving image/i-motion movie.

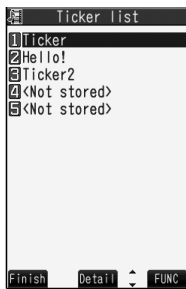
- 1 **Edit** **motion display** ▶ (FUNC)  
▶ **Edit ticker** ▶ **New**
- 2 **Use** **to display a start frame and press** (Start).
  - When the end point of the ticker previously specified is reached by fast rewind, the confirmation display appears telling that the start point is defined. Select "YES"; then the start point is fixed and you can create a ticker with no gap from the previous ticker.
- 3 **Enter a ticker.**
  - You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters.
- 4 **Select a ticker effect** ▶ **Select an item of the ticker effect.**
  - To set the ticker effect in succession, repeat step 4.
  - To complete setting the ticker effect, select "Finish setting".
- 5 **Use** **to display an end frame and press** (End).
  - When no sufficient interval is between the start frame and end frame, you might not be able to select the end frame.
  - If you display the frame with another ticker set, the confirmation display appears asking whether to fix the end frame. Select "YES" to fix the end frame; then you can create the ticker with no gap from another ticker.
  - To compose another ticker in succession, repeat step 2 to step 5.
- 6 (FUNC) ▶ **Finish editing**

## 7 Press (Set).

- Press  (Play) to play back a demo to check the edited moving image/i-motion movie.
- Press  (Edit) to bring up the Ticker List and you can edit the composed ticker.

### For "Edit"


## 1 Edit motion display (FUNC) ▶ Edit ticker ▶ YES ▶ Edit



Ticker List

The stored tickers are displayed.

## 2 Highlight a ticker and press (FUNC) ▶ Select an item.

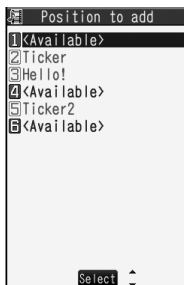
- Change text** . . . . . See step 3 of "New" on page 339.
- Change effect** . . . . . See step 4 of "New" on page 339.
- Change start po.** . . . . . See step 2 of "New" on page 339.
- Change end point** . . . . . See step 5 of "New" on page 339.
- Add ticker** . . . . . See "Add Ticker" on page 340.
- Delete ticker** . . . . . Deletes a ticker. Select "YES".
- Highlight a ticker and press  (Detail); then you can check the details of the ticker.
- To edit another ticker in succession, repeat step 2.

## 3 Press (Finish) from the Ticker List ▶ (Set)

### Add Ticker

You can add tickers. You can create up to five tickers per moving image/i-motion movie.



## 1 Ticker List (FUNC) ▶ Add ticker



Regarding the top as the leading frame and the bottom as the trailing frame, the positions you can add tickers into are displayed.

## 2 <Available>

Go to step 2 through step 5 of "New" on page 339.

- When you have created five tickers, the Ticker List returns. Press  (Finish); then press  (Set).
- When the tickers are fewer than five, go to step 6 and step 7 on page 339.

### Information

- If an i-motion movie obtained using infrared exchange or data communication contains six or more tickers, the tickers from and after the sixth one are deleted at editing. Also, the characters for the ticker in excess of 20 full-pitch characters are deleted from and after the 21st character. Incompatible ticker effects are also deleted.
- Ticker effects that do not support FOMA P904i may be deleted or changed.
- If you edit the ticker, you cannot set the edited data for the ring tone.

### Function Menu while i-motion Movie is Edited or Demo Playback is in Pause

| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>Normal play</b>        | You can play back at the normal speed.                             |
| <b>Slow</b>               | You can play back at half the normal speed.                        |
| <b>Quick View (1.25x)</b> | You can play back at the speed 1.25 times the normal speed.        |
| <b>Quick View (2x)</b>    | You can play back at twice the normal speed.                       |
| <b>Starting point</b>     | You can set the start frame for "Trim motion" and "Trim for mail". |
| <b>Ending point</b>       | You can set the end frame for "Trim motion".                       |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation                          |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Determine</b>        | You can set the frame for "Trim for picture".  |
| <b>Stop</b>             | You can stop playing back.                     |
| <b>Ticker start PNT</b> | You can set the start frame for "Edit ticker". |
| <b>Ticker end point</b> | You can set the end frame for "Edit ticker".   |
| <b>Finish editing</b>   | You can finish "Edit ticker".                  |

## <Chara-den>

### What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is an animation character representing yourself. You can send it as your image during videophone calls.

You can use the Chara-den player to play back Chara-den images and can shoot them.

#### ■Pre-installed Chara-den images



男性 (Male)



女性 (Female)



Dimo

#### ■Operations of pre-installed Chara-den images

- See page 342 for when you operate from the Function menu.

| Key operation | 男性 (Male)   | 女性 (Female) | Dimo                |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|
| ①             | Waves hand  | Waves hand  | Laughs              |
| ②             | Smiles      | Smiles      | Wails               |
| ③             | Sad         | Sad         | Angry               |
| ④             | Delighted   | Delighted   | Hello               |
| ⑤             | Embarrassed | Embarrassed | OK                  |
| ⑥             | Yes         | Yes         | NG                  |
| ⑦             | No          | No          | Shark               |
| ⑧             | Claps hands | Claps hands | Glasses of a doctor |
| ⑨             | Surprised   | Surprised   | Shocked             |

- Parts actions are not prepared for the pre-installed Chara-den images.

- You can delete these Chara-den images. You can re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site. (See page 215)

When you use a UIM other than the one used for downloading, the UIM restrictions apply to it. (See page 39)

## <Chara-den Player>

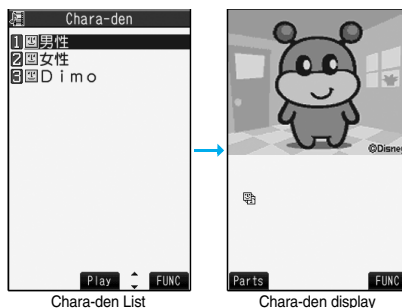
### Displaying/Operating Chara-den Images

You can display stored Chara-den images.

You can press keys to make the Chara-den image move.

- Some Chara-den images synchronize their movement with your voice spoken into the microphone.

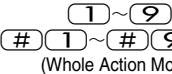




- 1 Data box Chara-den  
▶ Select a Chara-den image.





Next Page

## ■ Key assignment of operating Chara-den

You can use the Action List to check the actions that you can operate.

| Key operation   | Details   |
|---|---|
|   | Whole action:<br>expresses an action with whole of the body.  |
|  | Parts action:<br>expresses an action with a part of the body. |
|  | Suspends the running action.                                  |
|  | Displays the Action List.                                     |
|  | Switches action modes.  |


※1 You cannot operate for the pre-installed Chara-den images.


※2 Press  again to cancel the first .

### Information

- The number of actions you can operate differs depending on the Chara-den image.

### Function Menu of the Chara-den List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Chara-den call</b>   | You can make a videophone call by using Chara-den. (See page 83)  |
| <b>Substitute image</b> | See page 83.  |
| <b>Rec. Chara-den</b>   | See page 343.   |
| <b>Edit title</b>       | ▶ <b>Enter a title.</b><br>• You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.   |
| <b>File property</b>    | You can display the title, file name, and others of the Chara-den image.<br>• Use  to scroll the display to check the information. |
| <b>Memory info</b>      | You can display the used memory space (estimate).   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b> | See page 151.   |
| <b>Delete</b>           | ▶ <b>YES</b>  |

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Delete all</b>      | ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b><br>• This operation deletes the pre-installed Chara-den images as well.   |
| <b>Multiple-choice</b> | You can select and delete multiple Chara-den images.<br>▶ <b>Put a check mark for Chara-den images to be deleted</b> ▶  <b>[FUNC]</b><br>▶ <b>Delete</b> ▶ <b>YES</b> |
| <b>Display size</b>    | You can set whether to display the Chara-den image in "Actual size" or "Fit in display".<br><small>Setting at purchase</small><br><small>Fit in display</small> ▶ <b>Actual size or Fit in display</b>   |
| <b>Reset title</b>     | You can reset the title to the default one.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>  |

### Information







#### <File property>

- "Rec. file restriction" denotes whether to restrict the operation such as attaching still images/moving images created by "Rec. Chara-den" to mail, saving them to microSD memory card, or editing them.

#### <Delete> <Delete all> <Multiple-choice>

- If you delete a Chara-den image set for the substitute image except Dimo, Dimo is set for the substitute image. If you delete Dimo, a pre-installed substitute image will be sent.

### Function Menu of the Chara-den Display

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Chara-den call</b>   | You can make a videophone call by using Chara-den. (See page 83)  |
| <b>Substitute image</b> | See page 83.  |
| <b>Rec. Chara-den</b>   | See page 343.   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b> | See page 151.   |
| <b>Action list</b>      | You can display the list for actions that you can operate.<br>• Highlight an action, and press  <b>[Select]</b> to run the action; and press  <b>[Detail]</b> to check the details of the action.<br>• You can display the Action List also by pressing  . |
| <b>Change action</b>    | You can switch the action modes between <small>Setting at purchase</small> Whole Action Mode (  ) and Parts Action Mode (  )<br><small>Whole Action Mode</small><br>• You can switch modes also by pressing  .  |
| <b>File property</b>    | See page 342.   |
| <b>Display size</b>     | See page 342.   |



## <Record Chara-den>

# Recording Chara-den Images

You can shoot the displayed Chara-den image as a still image or moving image.



- 1  **Data box** ▶ **Chara-den**  
▶ **Select a Chara-den image to be shot**  
▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Rec. Chara-den**






Chara-den Recording display

- You can select a Chara-den image also from the Function menu of the Chara-den List.

## Shoot Still Images

- 1 Display “” on the Chara-den Recording display and press  (Record).



A still image of the displayed Chara-den image is shot.

- While “” is displayed, press  to display “”.




- 2 Press  (Save).

The still image you have shot is saved to the “Camera” folder.

## Record Moving Images

- 1 Display “” on the Chara-den Recording display and press  (Record).

Recording of the displayed Chara-den image starts.

- While “” is displayed, press  to display “”.

- 2  (Stop) ▶  (Save)

The recorded moving image is saved to the “Camera” folder.

### Information

- The image size is fixed to QCIF (176 x 144).
- In Manner Mode or when “Phone” or “Mail” of “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, the recording confirmation tone, the recording start tone, and the recording end tone do not sound.
- When “Recording type” is set to “Video + voice”, the voice is recorded as well. [When a Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the voice is recorded via the Earphone/Microphone.]

## Function Menu of the Chara-den Recording Display

| Function menu     | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------|---|
| Switch Chara-den  | ▶ Select a Chara-den image to be displayed.   |
| Substitute image  | See page 83.  |
| Action list       | See page 342.   |
| Change action     | See page 342.   |
| Display size      | See page 342.   |
| Recording size    | You can set the size of the image for recording and saving a still Chara-den image. You can set only in Photo Mode.<br>Setting at purchase: QCIF (176 x 144)<br>▶ <b>QCIF (176 x 144) or Small (117 x 96)</b> |
| Recording type    | You can set whether to record video or voice for recording and saving moving Chara-den images. You can set only in Movie Mode.<br>Setting at purchase: Video + voice<br>▶ <b>Video + voice or Video</b>       |
| Recording quality | You can set the quality for saving a moving Chara-den image. You can set only in Movie Mode.<br>Setting at purchase: Normal<br>▶ <b>Select a quality.</b>   |

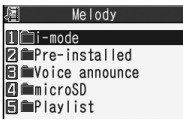
### Information

#### <Switch Chara-den>

- If you switch Chara-den images, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.

# Playing Back Melodies

## 1 Data box ▶ Melody

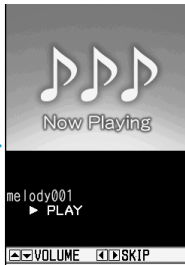


Melody Folder List

## 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a melody.



Melody List



Melody Playback display

- When selecting folders and melodies by another function, some folders or melodies may not be displayed depending on the function. Some melodies may be played back for confirmation while being selected, or you may at times be able to play back the melody by pressing (Play).

## Play Back Playlist

You can repeatedly play back the melodies selected by "Edit playlist".

## 1 Data box ▶ Melody ▶ Playlist

### ■ Operation while playing back a melody

| Operation               | Key operation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Halt                    | Press (Stop), (Back), (Home), (Power) through (Search), (X), (#), (Mail), (Camera), or (F).         |
| Sound volume adjustment | Press (Volume Up) or (Volume Down). Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially. |
| Replay next file**      | Press (Next).   |
| Replay previous file**  | Press (Previous).   |

\*\*Valid when played back from the Melody List.

### ■ When you select "microSD" on the Melody Folder List

- Select an item.
  - Melody
    - ... Displays melodies copied from the FOMA phone.
  - Movable contents
    - ... Displays copyrighted melodies moved from the FOMA phone.
- Select a folder.
  - The list of melodies is displayed.



microSD Melody Folder List

### Information

- Even if the FOMA phone is closed, a melody is played back.
- The melodies are played back at the volume set for "Phone" or "Ring volume". When "Phone" or "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or "Step", they are played back at "Level 2". However, the melody played back when it is selected does not sound.
- Even if you change the volume while playing back, the volume set for "Phone" or "Ring volume" returns when you exit the Melody player.

## Function Menu of the Melody Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Add folder</b>       | You can create a user folder. You can create up to 20 folders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Enter a folder name.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | You can edit the name of a user folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Enter a folder name.</li> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>                        |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | You can delete a user folder and all melodies in the folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</li> <li>▶ YES</li> </ul>   |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit playlist</b>    | <p>You can select up to 10 files from melodies and program them in order as you like. This is displayed while you are selecting "Playlist".</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a playing order from &lt;1st&gt; through &lt;10th&gt;</b> ▶ <b>Select a folder</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a melody.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To release a programmed melody, select "Release this".</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Repeat the operations and complete the playlist editing</b> ▶  </p> |
| <b>Release playlist</b> | <p>You can release all the programmed melodies from the playlist. This is displayed while you are selecting "Playlist".</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>   |

| Information   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>&lt;Delete folder&gt;</b>  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When a melody set for another function is deleted, the setting returns to the default. (When the melody is set for an alarm tone of "Schedule" or "ToDo", or for "Alarm", it switches to "Clock Alarm Tone".)</li> </ul> |  |
| <b>&lt;Edit playlist&gt;</b>  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If you change or delete the file name, title, or contents of the melody stored in the playlist, all the melodies are released from the playlist.</li> </ul>  |  |

### Function Menu of the microSD Melody Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder in the "Movable contents" folder.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Add folder</b>       | <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder in the "Movable contents" folder.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Select storage</b>   | <p>You can select a destination folder on the microSD memory card for saving melodies.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>   |




| Information  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>&lt;Edit folder name&gt;</b>  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot edit the folder name for "SD melody".</li> </ul>   |  |
| <b>&lt;Add folder&gt;</b>  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When the number of folders in the "Melody" folder on the microSD memory card is 999, you cannot create any more folders.</li> </ul> |  |





| Information  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>&lt;Delete folder&gt;</b>   |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You cannot delete the "SD melody" folder.</li> <li>● You cannot delete the folder that contains incompatible files.</li> </ul>  |  |
| <b>&lt;Select storage&gt;</b>  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The following icons are displayed for the folder set as a destination folder: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> ... The folder in the "Melody" folder</li> <li> ... The folder in the "Movable contents" folder</li> </ul> </li> <li>● When you execute Check microSD, or create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the destination folder on the microSD memory card might be changed. When the setting is changed, set the destination folder again.</li> </ul> |  |

### Function Menu of the Melody List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit title</b>       | <p>▶ <b>Edit the title.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● For a file in the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>● For a file on the microSD memory card, you can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Edit file name</b>   | <p>▶ <b>Edit the file name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (except extension).</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | You can change the name of a folder in the "Movable contents" folder. (See page 345)  |
| <b>Play melody</b>      | See page 344.   |
| <b>Set as ring tone</b> | <p>▶ <b>Select an incoming type.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● "★" indicates the set item.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>File restriction</b> | <p>You can set the file restrictions on the selected melody.</p> <p>▶ <b>File unrestricted or File restricted</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● See page 195 for the file restrictions.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b> | See page 151.   |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>   | <p>You can compose i-mode mail with the selected melody attached.</p> <p>Go to step 2 on page 232.</p>  |
| <b>Send Ir data</b>     | See page 359.   |
| <b>transmission</b>     | See page 361.   |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>  | You can copy the melody to the microSD memory card. (See page 351)  |





[Next Page](#)

| Function menu                   | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>Melody info</b>              | You can display the melody title, file name and others.<br>●Use  to scroll the display to check the information.   |
| <b>Copy to phone</b>            | You can copy the melody to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)   |
| <b>Move to phone</b>            | You can move the melody in the “Movable contents” folder to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)  |
| <b>Copy</b>                     | You can copy the melody from a folder on the microSD memory card to another folder on the microSD memory card.<br>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b>   |
| <b>Memory info</b>              | You can display the used memory space (estimate).   |
| <b>Reset title</b>              | You can reset the title to the default.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Delete (Delete this)</b>     | You can delete the melody stored in the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Delete this</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete (Delete selected)</b> | You can select and delete multiple melodies stored in the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Delete selected</b> ▶ <b>Put a check mark for melodies to be deleted</b> ▶  (Finish)<br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Delete (Delete all)</b>      | You can delete all melodies stored in the selected folder in the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Delete all</b> ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Delete this</b>              | You can delete the melody stored on the microSD memory card.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete all</b>               | You can delete all melodies stored in the selected folder on the microSD memory card.<br>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Multiple-choice</b>          | You can select multiple melodies stored on the microSD memory card and operate them.<br>▶ <b>Put a check mark for the melodies to be operated</b> ▶  (FUNC)<br>▶ <b>Select an item.</b><br><b>Delete</b> . . . . . See “Delete this” on page 346.<br><b>Copy</b> . . . . . See page 346.<br><b>Move</b> . . . . . See page 346.<br><b>Select all</b> . . . . You can select all melodies.<br><b>Release all</b> . . . You can release all selected melodies. |
| <b>Sort</b>                     | You can change displayed order.<br>▶ <b>Select an order.</b>  |

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Move</b>            | You can move the melody to another folder.<br>▶ <b>Select a destination folder</b><br>▶ <b>Put a check mark for melodies to be moved</b> ▶  (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b><br>●Press  (  ) to display folders at the second-tier level or lower, if they exist. Press  to return to the upper level.<br>●For the microSD memory card, you do not need to put a check mark for the melodies. |
| <b>Move to microSD</b> | You can move the melody to the microSD memory card. (See page 352)   |
| <b>Add folder</b>      | You can create a folder in the “Movable contents” folder. You can create it at each level up to the seventh-tier level. (See page 345)   |
| <b>Delete folder</b>   | You can delete the folder in the “Movable contents” folder. (See page 345)   |
| <b>Select storage</b>  | You can select a destination folder in the “Movable contents” folder. You can set it for up to seventh-tier-level folders. (See page 345)  |


### Information

#### <Edit file name>

●When the icon of the acquired source is “ ” or “ ” and the icon such as “ ” or “ ” is displayed for that melody, you cannot change the file name.





●You cannot use some characters such as symbols for a file name.

#### <File restriction>

●You can set the file restrictions only to the melody with the acquired source icon “ ”.

●When the melody file exceeds 100 Kbytes by applying the restriction, you cannot set the file restrictions.

#### <Attach to mail>

●You cannot attach the melody with “ ” or “ ”, or the melody in excess of 100 Kbytes, whose acquired source icon is “ ” or “ ”.

#### <Melody info>

●You may not be able to attach to i-mode mail even when the file restriction in the melody information is “File unrestricted”.

#### <Delete>

●When a melody set for another function is deleted, the setting returns to the default. (When the melody is set for an alarm tone of “Schedule” or “ToDo”, or for “Alarm”, it switches to “Clock Alarm Tone”.)

#### <Sort>

●When you close the display after displaying the Melody List by Sort and display the Melody List again, “By date ↑” returns.

## Function Menu of the Melody Playback Display

| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation                                     |
|------------------|---|
| Set as ring tone | See page 345.   |
| Add desktop icon | See page 151.   |
| Attach to mail   | You can compose i-mode mail. (See page 345)               |
| Melody info      | You can display the melody information. (See page 346)    |
| Copy to microSD  | See page 351.   |
| Copy to phone    | You can copy the melody to the FOMA phone. (See page 352) |

## About microSD Memory Card

You need to obtain a microSD memory card separately to use the functions related to the microSD memory card. The microSD memory card is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances etc.

- FOMA P904i supports a commercial microSD memory card of up to 2 Gbytes (As of May 2007).

For the latest operation check information such as the memory capacity and manufacturers of microSD memory cards, access the following sites (Japanese only). Note that the microSD memory cards other than published in the sites might not correctly work.

- From i-mode to P-SQUARE (As of May 2007)

☰ Menu → メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search)

→ ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker)


→ P-SQUARE

- From personal computers <http://panasonic.jp/mobile/>



QR code for accessing the site

Note that the published information is the result obtained from the operation check, which does not necessarily guarantee all performances of those microSD memory cards.

- During processing of the card, “” is displayed. During processing of the card, never remove the microSD memory card, or turn off the FOMA phone. Check that processing of the card does not go on before turning off the FOMA phone, and then remove the microSD memory card.
- When the FOMA phone or microSD memory card has many data files, it may take longer to access the files.
- The microSD memory card has an operating life. If you use the microSD memory card for a long time, you may not be able to write new data on it, or the card may be disabled.
- With the FOMA phone, you can save the downloaded still images, i-motion movies, melodies, Chaku-uta Full® music files, and i-oppli programs with the file restrictions to the microSD memory card. You cannot save the files IPs (Information Providers) do not permit.

### Information

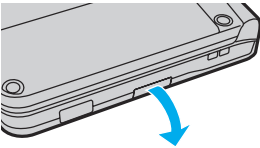
- You may not be able to use the microSD memory card formatted using a personal computer and other devices. Be sure to use the microSD memory card formatted with FOMA P904i.
- If you read/write data from/on a microSD memory card using a device other than this FOMA phone, the microSD memory card might become unusable depending on the device or operations.
- When you insert a microSD memory card which has been used with another device such as a personal computer into FOMA P904i, new files and folders to be used in FOMA P904i are created.

**Note that formatting deletes all the contents of the microSD memory card.**

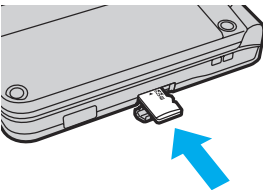
## Inserting/Removing microSD Memory Card

### Inserting

- 1 Open the cover of the microSD memory card slot.

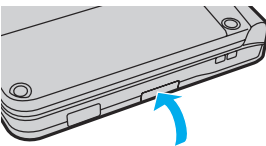


- 2 Face the front surface of the microSD memory card upwards and insert the memory card.



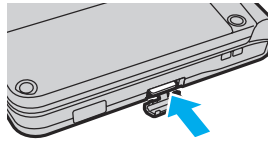
- Push it until it clicks.

- 3 Close the cover of the microSD memory card slot.



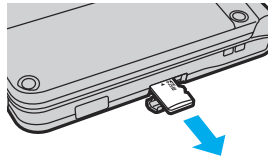
### Removing

- 1 Open the cover following step 1 of “Inserting” and push the microSD memory card until it stops.




- Pushing the microSD memory card inside pops up the card.


- 2 Remove the microSD memory card.





### Icons

The following icons appear when you insert the microSD memory card:

: You can save and read data.

: The microSD memory card is write-protected. You cannot save data, and execute “Check microSD” and “microSD format”.

: You cannot use the microSD memory card. Remove the microSD memory card and then insert it again. If “” is still displayed, execute “Check microSD” or “microSD format”.

### Information

- Do not insert or remove the microSD memory card with the FOMA phone turned on. It may damage the microSD memory card or its data.
- Note that microSD memory card may pop out when you insert or remove it.
- Check the direction of the microSD memory card, and then insert or remove it straight. If you obliquely insert the microSD memory card into the slot, the microSD memory card may be damaged.
- It may take long to initially read or write data after inserting the microSD memory card.

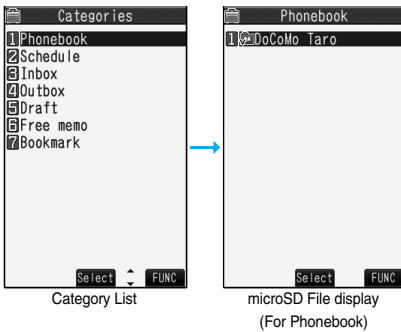
## <SD-PIM>

# Displaying Data Items on microSD Memory Card

You can display the Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, mail messages, free memos, and bookmarks (i-mode/Full Browser) stored on the microSD memory card.

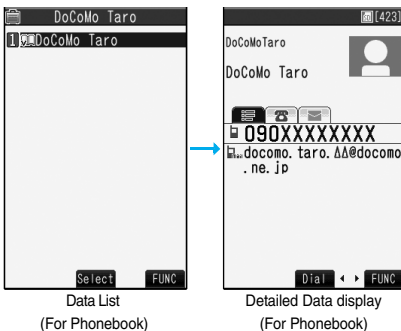
- You can operate in the same way on the detailed Phonebook display, detailed Mail display, and detailed Bookmarks display as when you display data stored in your FOMA phone.  
See page 121 for detailed operations of the Phonebook.  
See page 257 for detailed operations of mail.  
See page 210 for detailed operations of bookmarks.

## 1 LifeKit SD-PIM ▶ Select a category.



- If you select "Schedule", ToDo items are also displayed.

## 2 Select a file ▶ Select a data item.



## Function Menu of the Category List/microSD File Display/Data List/Detailed Data Display

| Function menu     | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------|---|
| <b>Edit title</b> | ▶ Enter a title. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters.</li></ul> |

| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <b>Add to phone</b>       | See page 350.   |
| <b>Overwrite to phone</b> | See page 351.   |
| <b>Add one to phone</b>   | See page 350.   |
| <b>Add all to phone</b>   | See page 350.   |
| <b>Overwr. all to ph.</b> | See page 350.   |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>    | See page 349.   |
| <b>Delete this</b>        | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Delete all</b>         | You can delete all files in the currently displayed category.<br>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ YES |
| <b>microSD info</b>       | You can display the memory capacity of the microSD memory card. (See page 354)                                |
| <b>Property</b>           | You can display the detailed data display.  |
| <b>microSD format</b>     | See page 353.   |
| <b>Check microSD</b>      | See page 354.   |

### Information

#### <Delete this> <Delete all>

- When the access right is set for read only by devices such as a personal computer, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the data.

## Copy Data Items in the FOMA Phone to the microSD Memory Card

You can copy the Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, mail messages, free memos, and bookmarks stored in the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card.

### Copy one to microSD

You can copy a single file from the FOMA phone onto the microSD memory card. A copied data item is saved as a single file.

You cannot copy the secret code stored in a Phonebook entry.


- 1 Display for a data item to be copied  
▶  (FUNC) ▶ Copy to microSD  
▶ YES

### Copy all to microSD

You can copy the data items of the category selected on the Category List or of the category displayed on the microSD File display from the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card. The copied data items are all saved as a single file.

You cannot copy secret codes or voice dial entries stored in the Phonebook entries.

#### 1 Category List/microSD File display

- ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Copy to microSD
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES

- To copy scheduled events, select “Schedule”, “ToDo”, or “All” (Schedule and ToDo).
- To copy bookmarks, select “i-mode”, “Full Browser”, or “All” (i-mode and Full Browser).

#### Information

- When you copy a file stored as secret data, the file is copied as an ordinary file.
- When you copy all files, the files stored as secret data are also copied.
- When you copy all the Phonebook entries, the information from the PushTalk Phonebook entry and the contents of “Own number” are also copied.
- For copying mail, some files attached to mail may be deleted depending on file format.
- When you copy mail containing links to start an i-oppli program, the information about starting the i-oppli program in that mail is deleted.
- During copying, the FOMA phone is placed in the same status as it is out of the service area.

### Copy Data Items on the microSD Memory Card to the FOMA Phone


You can copy the Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, mail messages, free memos, and bookmarks (i-mode/Full Browser) stored on the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone.

- See page 356 for the number of data items that can be saved to the microSD memory card.

### Add one to phone

You can copy the data item selected on the Data List or displayed on the detailed Data display to the FOMA phone.

#### 1 Data List/Detailed Data display

- ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Add one to phone or Copy to phone ▶ YES

### Add all to phone

You can copy all data items in all files of the category selected on the Category List or all data items in all files displayed on the microSD File display to the FOMA phone.

The copied data items are added to the FOMA phone.

#### 1 Category List ▶ (FUNC)

- ▶ Add all to phone
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES

or

#### microSD File display ▶ (FUNC)

- ▶ Add all to phone
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES

### Add to phone

You can copy all data items in a file selected on the microSD File display or all data items displayed on the Data List to the FOMA phone.

The copied data items are added to the FOMA phone.

#### 1 microSD File display ▶ (FUNC)

- ▶ Add to phone
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES

or

#### Data List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add all to phone

- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES

### Overwrite all to phone

You can copy all data items in all files of the category selected on the Category List or all data items in all files displayed on the microSD File display to the FOMA phone.

Note that the data items already stored in the FOMA phone are overwritten and deleted.

#### 1 Category List ▶ (FUNC)

- ▶ Overwr. all to ph.
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES ▶ YES

or

#### microSD File display ▶ (FUNC)



- ▶ Overwr. all to ph.
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
- ▶ YES ▶ YES



## Overwrite to phone

You can copy all data items in a file selected on the microSD File display or all data items displayed on the Data List to the FOMA phone.

Note that the data items already stored in the FOMA phone are overwritten and deleted.

- 1 **microSD File display**  ( **FUNC** )
  - ▶ **Overwrite to phone**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **YES ▶ YES**or
  - Data List**  ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **Overwr. all to ph.**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **YES ▶ YES**

### Information

- If the memory capacity of the FOMA phone runs short during copying, copying is suspended midway; however, the data already copied is stored.
- When you copy a Phonebook entry to the FOMA phone, the group is not set if the group number or group name stored in the microSD file differs from that stored in the FOMA phone.
- The copied Phonebook entries are also stored in the PushTalk Phonebook. When you overwrite the Phonebook entries, the contents of the PushTalk group are also overwritten.

When you execute “Add one to phone”, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it. Select “YES” (select a phone number when multiple phone numbers are stored) to store the entry also to the PushTalk Phonebook.

- When you overwrite the Phonebook entries, the voice dial entries are deleted.
- If you try to overwrite the Phonebook entries, the confirmation display appears asking whether to set the first data as “Own number”. Select “YES” to set it as “Own number”. If you select “NO”, “Own number” is not set and all data items are stored in the Phonebook.
- When you copy a mail message with the Outbox or Inbox full, the oldest unprotected mail message is overwritten (the read one for the Inbox).
- When you execute “Add all to phone”, you cannot copy the following data:
  - Schedule events set for the same date and time
  - Bookmarks of the same URL
- If the number of files stored on the microSD memory card increases, it may take long to read or write data.
- During copying, the FOMA phone is placed in the same status as it is out of the service area.

## Copying Still Images, Moving Images, etc.

### Copy Files from the FOMA Phone to the microSD Memory Card

File name and the destination folder are as follows:

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Still image (DCF standard)        | The destination folder in the “Picture” folder<br>PXXXXXXX (X denotes a numeral.)             |
| Still image (Non DCF standard)    | The destination folder in the “Image Box” folder<br>STLXXXX (X denotes a numeral.)            |
| Still image (Decomail-pictograph) | The destination folder in the “Decomail-pictograph” folder<br>DIMGXXXX (X denotes a numeral.) |
| Moving image (With video)         | The destination folder in the “Movie” folder<br>MOLXXX (X denotes an alpha-numeral.)          |
| Moving image (With only sound)    | The destination folder in the “Other contents” folder<br>MMFXXXX (X denotes a numeral.)       |
| Melody                            | The destination folder<br>RINGXXXX (X denotes a numeral.)                                     |
| PDF file                          | The destination folder<br>PDFDCXXX (X denotes a numeral.)                                     |

### 1 Still Image List/Still image in play/Moving Image List/Melody List/During Melody Playback/PDF File List ( **FUNC** )

#### ▶ Copy to microSD

- When you have selected “Multiple-choice” to select the files to be copied, you can copy multiple files at a time.

### Information

- You can copy JPEG, GIF, MP4, MFi, SMF and PDF files in the “i-mode” folder, “Camera” folder, “Decomail-picture” folder, “Decomail-pictograph” folder and a user folder.
- You can copy multiple JPEG, GIF, and MP4 files at a time but not others.
- When the files in the destination folder are stored to the maximum, a new folder is automatically created and files are saved to that folder.

For the files other than still images, the message “Storage is changed to XXXXXXX” (XXXXXXX denotes a folder name) appears when copying is completed.
- You cannot copy the following files:
  - Files that you shot Chara-den models whose “Rec. file restriction” is “File restricted”
  - Files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited
  - Pre-installed Decomail-pictures
  - Files set with playback restrictions
  - Partially saved i-motion movies or Chaku-uta Full® music files
  - PDF files partially downloaded page by page
- If you copy the file to the microSD memory card, the image quality may deteriorate or the file size becomes larger.

## Copy Files from the microSD Memory Card to the FOMA Phone

You can copy files from the microSD memory card to the i-mode folder in the FOMA phone.

(Decomail-pictographs are copied to the “お気に入り (Favorite)” folder in the “Decomail-pictograph” folder.)

### 1 Still Image List/Still image in play/Moving Image List/Moving image in pause/At the end of moving image playback/Melody List/During Melody Playback/PDF File List on the microSD memory card

▶  (FUNC) ▶ Copy to phone

- When you have selected “Multiple-choice” to select the files to be copied, you can copy multiple files at a time.
- See page 215 when images/i-motion movies/Melodies/PDF files are stored to the maximum.

#### Information

- Do not pull out the microSD memory card during copying.
- You can copy JPEG, GIF, MP4, MFI, SMF and PDF files. However, you cannot copy a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- You can copy multiple JPEG, GIF and MP4 files only at a time. However, you cannot copy multiple moving images of ASF format, QVGA (320 x 240) size, or in excess of 10 Mbytes.
- When copying moving images, the images are cut out, converted or shrunk; therefore the image quality may deteriorate or the file size may become larger or smaller. However, a moving image whose video codec is H.264 is copied without being converted or shrunk.
- When copying QVGA (320 x 240) size of moving images, the image will be converted into QCIF (176 x 144) size and the ticker information will be lost. When copying QVGA (320 x 240) size of moving images, ASF file, or the file in excess of 10 Mbytes, it might take a longer time.
- You cannot copy the moving image in excess of 10 Mbytes in the following cases:
  - When the video codec is H.264
  - When the audio codec is AAC, AAC+ (HE-AAC), or Enhanced aacPlus
  - When the bit rate of the moving image is in excess of the restriction
  - When searching (fast forward or fast rewind) is disabled
  - When the moving image size is other than QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144) or Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)Some moving images cannot be copied in the conditions other than the above.
- Playing back a copied ASF file may take a longer time.

#### Information

- The file after copying takes the title of the one set on the microSD memory card. When no title is set on the microSD memory card or the default title is unknown, the file name will be the title.

#### <Movable Contents>

## Moving Copyrighted Files

### Move Files in the FOMA Phone to the microSD Memory Card


You can move the copyrighted file obtained from a site to the microSD memory card after encoding. The moved file is then saved to the destination folder in the “Movable contents” folder (the specified destination folder for Chaku-uta Full® music files). Some files you moved to the microSD memory card can be operated only with the UIM you used when moving, and some files can be operated with the UIM and the phone you used when moving.

- You can move i-appli programs to the microSD memory card as well. (See page 279)

### 1 Still image List/Moving image List/Melody List/Chaku-uta Full® Music List

▶  (FUNC) ▶ Move to microSD ▶ OK

#### Information

- You can move a file to the microSD memory card only when the acquired source icon is “”.
- Partially saved i-motion movies and Chaku-uta Full® music files cannot be moved to the microSD memory card.
- The setting is released if you move a file set for another function.

## Move Files from the microSD Memory Card to the FOMA Phone

You can move a copyrighted file from the microSD memory card to the “i-mode” folder in the FOMA phone.

### 1 Still Image List/Moving Image List/Melody List/Chaku-uta Full® Music List on the microSD memory card ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Move to phone

### Information

- You can move a copyrighted file (with restriction) to the FOMA phone only if its property for “Moved to phone” is “Available” or “Available (Same model)”. In addition, you cannot move a file of “Available (Same model)” to the FOMA phone other than P904i. See “Picture info”, “Motion info”, “Melody info”, or “Music info” to check whether the file is “Available”, “Unavailable” or “Available (Same model)”.
- The setting is released if you move a file set for another function.
- The moved files are saved to the “i-mode” folder.

### <SD Other Files>

## Managing Unsupported Files

You can save a variety of files, which are not supported by the FOMA phone, to the microSD memory card. (See page 248 and page 315)

You can attach the saved files to an i-mode mail message to send, or check them on a personal computer.

- 1  Data box ▶ SD other files  
▶ Select a folder.



- You cannot display the contents of the file using the FOMA phone.

### Function Menu of the SD Other Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation                   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | See page 323.                           |
| <b>Add folder</b>       | You can create a folder. (See page 323) |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | See page 323.                           |
| <b>Select storage</b>   | See page 323.                           |

### Function Menu of the SD Other File List

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit title</b>      | See page 323.   |
| <b>File info</b>       | You can display the name and type of files.   |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>  | You can compose an i-mode mail message with the file attached.<br>Go to step 2 on page 232. |
| <b>Copy</b>            | See page 324.   |
| <b>Move</b>            | See page 324.   |
| <b>Delete this</b>     | See page 324.   |
| <b>Delete all</b>      | See page 324.   |
| <b>Multiple-choice</b> | You can select multiple files.<br>(See page 324)  |
| <b>Memory info</b>     | You can display the used memory space (estimate).   |

### <microSD Format>



## Formatting microSD Memory Card

When you use the microSD memory card for the first time, you need to format (initialize) it. Be sure to use FOMA P904i for formatting. The microSD memory card formatted using other devices such as personal computers may not be used properly.

Note that formatting deletes all the contents of the microSD memory card.

- 1  LifeKit ▶ SD-PIM ▶  (FUNC)  
▶ microSD format  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ YES

### Information

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during formatting. Malfunction of the FOMA phone or microSD memory card could result.
- If you press  (Quit) or , or receive a voice call or videophone call while formatting the microSD memory card, formatting is canceled. Format it again.
- Files that have been saved on the microSD memory card whose formatting is suspended becomes unfixd.
- You cannot format the incompatible microSD memory card.
- Required folders are automatically created when you save data to the microSD memory card after formatting.



## <Check microSD>

### Checking microSD Memory Card

You can check and recover the microSD memory card.

- 1  LifeKit  SD-PIM  (FUNC)  
▶ Check microSD ▶ YES

#### Information

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during Check microSD. Malfunction of the FOMA phone or microSD memory card could result.
- You cannot execute Check microSD for the unformatted or incompatible microSD memory card.
- When you execute Check microSD, the microSD memory card may not be recovered correctly, the data existed before executing Check microSD may be deleted, or the microSD memory card itself may be initialized depending on the condition of the microSD memory card.
- If you press  (Exit) or , or receive a voice call or videophone call during Check microSD, Check microSD is canceled.
- If you cancel Check microSD midway, data not recovered may remain. Try Check microSD again.
- It may take long to complete Check microSD depending on the data volume stored on the microSD memory card.

## <microSD Info>

### Displaying Capacity of microSD Memory Card

You can display the used and unused memory space (estimate) on the microSD memory card.

- See page 324 for checking the used memory space for the still images or moving images.

- 1  LifeKit  SD-PIM  (FUNC)  
▶ microSD info

#### Information

- As the microSD memory card contains the system files for the card, the memory space is smaller than that described on the microSD memory card even if it contains no data.

## Using a microSD Memory Card with a Personal Computer

By connecting the microSD memory card to the microSD memory card adapter, you can use the microSD memory card on a personal computer which supports SD memory card.

The microSD memory card adapter is available at mass retailers for home electric appliances etc. For installing the microSD memory card adapter, refer to the instruction manual for the microSD memory card adapter.

## Use FOMA Phone as microSD Reader/Writer



|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Setting at purchase | Communication mode |
|---------------------|--------------------|

With a microSD memory card inserted, connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer; then you can read the data from or write the data onto the microSD memory card.

The following equipment is required:



- Connector Cable: FOMA USB Cable (option)
- Personal Computer:
  - Personal computer having the USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1 compliant) that can be connected with the FOMA USB Cable (option)
- Compatible Operating Systems:
  - Windows® 2000, Windows® XP, Windows Vista™ (Japanese version in each)

- 1  Settings  Other settings  
▶ USB mode setting ▶ microSD mode

- When you set to “microSD mode”,  appears on the Stand-by display.
- To save WMA files from your personal computer to the microSD memory card, set to “MTP mode”. When you set to “MTP mode”,  appears on the Stand-by display.
- To use the FOMA phone for packet communication, 64K data communication, data sending/receiving (OBEX), and for calls with USB Hands-free compatible device, set mode to “Communication mode”.

- 2 **Connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer using the FOMA USB Cable (option).**

The personal computer recognizes the microSD memory card.

-  appears on the Stand-by display. Also,  is displayed while the microSD memory card is inserted.

## Information

- If the FOMA phone and personal computer are not correctly connected, or the remaining battery level of the FOMA phone shows very low or goes flat, you cannot send or receive data. In addition, you may lose data.
- While data is being read or written, do not pull the FOMA USB Cable off. Not only you cannot send or receive data, but also you may lose the data.
- While data is being read or written, you cannot set this function. Further, make sure that you do not "Reset settings" or "Initialize" during reading/writing. Malfunction of the microSD memory card could result.
- You cannot read from/write to a personal computer while reading from/writing to the FOMA phone, and vice versa.
- To use the DoCoMo keitai datalink, use it in "Communication mode".

## Folder Configuration on microSD Memory Card

The FOMA phone creates the following folders on the microSD memory card to save data files. You can check from a personal computer.

- DCIM (Folder for DCF standard still image)
  - △△△\_PANA
- MISC  
[Folder for DPOF (This folder is created automatically when "DPOF setting" on page 367 is set.)]
- SD\_VIDEO [Folder for moving images (include music data)]
  - PRL◇◇◇◇ (Folder for Movie)
- PRIVATE
  - DOCOMO
    - STILL (Folder for non-DCF standard still image)
      - SUD□□□
    - DOCUMENT (Folder for PDF file)
      - PUD□□□
    - RINGER (Folder for melody)
      - RUD□□□
    - TORUCA (Folder for ToruCa file)
      - TRC□□□
    - MMFILE (Folder for non-SD-VIDEO standard moving image)
      - MUD□□□
      - WM\_SYSTEM
      - WM
    - DECOIMG (Folder for Decomail-pictograph)
      - DUD□□□
    - OTHER (Folder for SD other files)
      - ODU□□□
    - TABLE (Folder for additional information)
- SD\_PIM  
(Folder for Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Mail, Free Memo, and Bookmark)
- SD\_AUDIO (Folder for SD-Audio)
- SD\_BIND  
(Folder for i-øppli or movable contents)
  - SVC▲▲▲▲▲
  - ■ ■ ■ ■ ◆ ◆ ◆ ◆ ◆

△△△: A three-digit half-pitch numeral of 100 through 999

□□□: A three-digit half-pitch numeral of 001 through 999

◇◇◇◇: A hexadecimal numeral<sup>※</sup> of 001 through FFF using half-pitch numerals of 0 through 9 and half-pitch alphabets of A through F

▲▲▲▲▲: Five-digit half-pitch numerals of 00001 through 65535

■ ■ ■ ■ ■ and ◆ ◆ ◆ ◆ ◆: Hexadecimal numerals<sup>※</sup> of 0001 through FFFF using half-pitch numerals of 0 through 9 and half-pitch alphabets of A through F

<sup>※</sup>The hexadecimal numerals are carried up every 16, unlike the way the decimal numerals are carried up every 10.

[Next Page](#)

■ **When writing files from a personal computer to the microSD memory card**

To write files on the microSD memory card from a personal computer, you need to write the files in the respective folders with the specified file names. The file names are as shown in the table below:

| File   | File name   |
|--|---|
| <b>Still image (DCF standard)</b>                      | Pxxxxxx.JPG (JPEG file)   |
|  | Pxxxxxx.GIF (GIF file)  |
| <b>Still image (non-DCF standard)</b>                  | STLxxxxx.JPG (JPEG file)  |
|  | STLxxxxx.GIF (Animation GIF file)   |
| <b>Moving image (Movie)</b>                            | MOL* * * *.3GP (3GP file)   |
|  | MOL* * * *.SDV (SDV file)   |
|  | MOL* * * *.ASF (ASF file)   |
|  | MOL* * * *.MP4 (MP4 file)   |
| <b>Moving image (non-SD-VIDEO standard)</b>            | MMFzzzz.3GP (3GP file)  |
|  | MMFzzzz.SDV (SDV file)  |
|  | MMFzzzz.ASF (ASF file)  |
|  | MMFzzzz.MP4 (MP4 file)  |
| <b>Melody</b>  | RINGzzzz.MLD (MFI file)   |
|  | RINGzzzz.SMF (SMF file)   |
| <b>PDF file</b>  | PDFCyyy.PDF (PDF file)  |
|  | ● You can freely write in a file with up to 227 characters regardless of full-pitch/half-pitch, but the file name changes when you copy or move the file on the FOMA phone. |
| <b>ToruCa file</b>                                     | TORUCyyy.TRC (ToruCa file)  |
| <b>Decomail-pictograph</b>                             | DIMGzzzz.JPG (JPEG file)  |
|  | DIMGzzzz.GIF (GIF file)   |
| <b>SD other file</b>                                   | OTHERyyy.###  |
|  | ● You can freely write in a file with up to 230 characters regardless of full-pitch/half-pitch, but the file name changes when you copy or move the file on the FOMA phone. |
| <b>Phonebook Schedule ToDo Mail Free Memo Bookmark</b> | PIM\$\$\$\$\$.VCF (vCard file)  |
|  | PIM\$\$\$\$\$.VCS (vCalendar file)  |
|  | PIM\$\$\$\$\$.VMG (vMessage file)   |
|  | PIM\$\$\$\$\$.VNT (vNote file)  |
|  | PIM\$\$\$\$\$.VBM (vBookmark file)  |
|  |   |

xxx: The same half-pitch numeral with the folder name "△△△"

zzzz: A four-digits half-pitch numeral of 0001 through 9999

\* \* \*: Hexadecimal numerals<sup>※</sup> of 001 through FFF using half-pitch numerals of 0 through 9 and half-pitch alphabets of A through F

※ The hexadecimal numerals are carried up every 16, unlike the way the decimal numerals are carried up every 10.

yyy: A three-digit half-pitch numeral of 001 through 999

###: An up to three-digits extension that the FOMA phone cannot be recognized

\$\$\$\$\$: A five-digit half-pitch numeral of 00001 through 65535

■ **The number of files and time that can be saved to the microSD memory card**

The number of files and time that can be saved to the microSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the microSD memory card. You can save more files by adding folders to copy files to. However, you might not be able to save the maximum number of files depending on the file size.

| File   | Folder   | Number of savable files/time |
|--|----------|------------------------------|
| Still image (DCF standard)                           | DCIM     | See page 184.                |
| Still image (Non-DCF standard)                       | STILL    | Approx. 58,390               |
| Moving image (Movie)                                 | SD_VIDEO | See page 185.                |
| Moving image (Non-SD-VIDEO standard)                 | MMFILE   | Approx. 58,390               |
| Melody   | RINGER   | Approx. 58,390               |
| PDF file   | DOCUMENT | Approx. 58,390               |
| SD-Audio   | SD_AUDIO | 999                          |
| ToruCa file  | TORUCA   | Approx. 58,390               |
| Decomail-pictograph                                  | DECOIMG  | Approx. 58,390               |
| SD other file  | OTHER    | Approx. 58,390               |
| Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Mail, Free Memo, Bookmark | SD_PIM   | Approx. 58,390               |
| i-oppli  | SD_BIND  | Approx. 58,390               |
| Movable contents                                     | SD_BIND  |                              |

You can check used and unused space of the microSD memory card by "microSD info".

As the microSD memory card contains the system files for the card, the memory space is smaller than that described on the microSD memory card even if it contains no data.

**Information**

- Folder and file names may be displayed in lowercase characters depending on the personal computer you use.
- When the personal computer is set not to display extensions and hidden folders, change the setting and then operate. For how to change the setting, refer to the instruction manual for your personal computer or Help.
- Do not use the personal computer to delete or move the folders on the microSD memory card. The microSD memory card might not be read by FOMA P904i.
- You cannot see the files in the "SD\_AUDIO" and "SD\_BIND" folders on a personal computer, as they are encrypted.

**Information**

- When you delete, overwrite, or write a file on a personal computer, ensure that you do not use the same file name you have once used. Even when you have deleted that file, use a different file name.
- On the FOMA phone, you might not be able to display or play back a data item which was saved to the microSD memory card from other devices. On other devices, you might not be able to display or play back a data item which was saved to the microSD memory card from the FOMA phone.
- To procure the reader/writer for the microSD memory card and PC card read adapter, inquire respective manufacturers for the operation of microSD memory card beforehand.

**■ Glossary of Terms**

- **DCF**  
DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File System that denotes the standard for file systems.
- **MPEG4**  
MPEG4 is an abbreviation of Moving Picture Experts Group Phase4 and denotes moving images optimized by encoding (data compression) method for mobile communications or the Internet.
- **MP4 format (Extension: 3gp)**  
“3gp” is a format specified by 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project).
- **MP4 format (Extension: mp4)**  
“mp4” is a format specified by MPEG4 that is a standard of video compression coding.
- **ASF format (Extension: asf)**  
ASF is an abbreviation of Advanced Streaming Format that is appropriate for the streaming distribution and can contain the information of video, voice, and characters.

|          |         | Movie type |              |
|----------|---------|------------|--------------|
|          |         | Voice      | Normal/Video |
| Store in | Phone   | MP4 (3gp)  | MP4 (3gp)    |
|          | microSD | MP4 (mp4)  | ASF (asf)    |

When you copy or move a file between the FOMA phone and the microSD memory card, its file format changes.

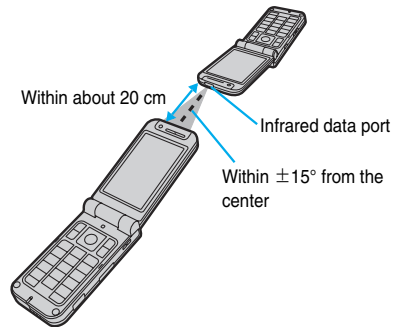
**About Infrared Data Exchange**

The FOMA phone conforms to IrMC version 1.1.

You can exchange data files with the devices supporting the infrared exchange function.

However, you cannot exchange some files depending on the other party's device.

- The distance for infrared exchange should be within about 20 cm. Do not move the FOMA phone with the infrared data port pointed to the receiving end until data transfer ends.
- Hold the FOMA phone with your hands securely so that it does not move.
- If you expose the FOMA phone to direct sunlight or put it under fluorescent lights or near an infrared equipment, you may not be able to transmit infrared ray normally due to their influence.
- First set at the receiving end and begin sending data from the sending end within 30 seconds.
- During exchange, the FOMA phone is placed in the same state as it is out of the service area, so you cannot make/receive voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls, use packet communication such as i-mode or mail, or do data communication.



### ■ List of data files you can transfer using infrared rays

| Transferable data                 | One item | Multiple items | All items  |
|-----------------------------------|----------|----------------|--|
| Phonebook (Own Number)            | ○        | ×              | Up to 1,000 items                                |
| Schedule**1                       | ○        | ×              | Up to 1,000 items                                |
| ToDo                              | ○        | ×              | Up to 100 items                                  |
| Received mail                     | ○        | ×              | Up to 2,500 items                                |
| Sent mail                         | ○        | ×              | Up to 1,000 items                                |
| Draft mail                        | ○        | ×              | Up to 20 items                                   |
| Free memo                         | ○        | ×              | Up to 20 items                                   |
| Melody**2, **3                    | ○        | ×              | ×  |
| Still image file**3, **4          | ○        | ○              | ×  |
| Moving image file**3, **5         | ○        | ○              | ×  |
| PDF file**2, **3, **6             | ○        | ×              | ×  |
| ToruCa file**3                    | ○        | ○              | Up to 495 items                                  |
| Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)**7 | ○        | ×              | Up to 100 items each for i-mode and Full Browser |

\*\*1 You cannot send/receive holidays and anniversaries using infrared rays.

\*\*2 You cannot send/receive some files.

\*\*3 The file is converted to the vnt file and sent or received.

\*\*4 You cannot send/receive original animations.

\*\*5 You cannot send/receive ASF files.

\*\*6 The i-mode bookmarks may be deleted depending on the forwarding destination.

\*\*7 When sending/receiving bookmarks, the folder-sort setting may not be reflected depending on the model of the other end.

### ■ Storage location and order of received files

| Data                    |                  | Storage location/Order   |
|-------------------------|------------------|--|
| Phone book (Own number) | receive one data | The phone number is stored to the lowest empty memory number in "010" through "999" in the Phonebook. If all memory numbers "010" through "999" are occupied, the phone number is stored to the lowest empty memory numbers in "000" through "009" (two-touch dial). |
|                         | receive all data | Stored in the same memory number as that of the sender.  |
| Schedule                | receive one data | Stored with the starting date/time of the schedule event.  |
|                         | receive all data | Stored with the same date and time as those of the sender.   |
| ToDo                    | receive one data | Stored on the top of the ToDo list.  |
|                         | receive all data | Stored in the same order as that of the sender.  |

| Data              |  | Storage location/Order   |
|-------------------|--|--|
| Received mail     | receive one data                       | Stored in the "Inbox" folder on the Inbox Folder List with the same date and time as that of the sender.   |
|                   | receive all data                       | Stored in the same folder as that of the sender with the same date and time.                               |
| Sent mail         | receive one data                       | Stored in the "Outbox" folder on the Outbox Folder List with the same date and time as that of the sender. |
|                   | receive all data                       | Stored in the same folder as that of the sender with the same date and time.                               |
| Draft mail        | receive one data                       | Stored with the same date and time as that of the sender.  |
|                   | receive all data                       | Stored with the same date and time as that of the sender.  |
| Free Memo         | receive one data                       | Stored on the top <Not recorded> in the list.  |
|                   | receive all data                       | Stored in the same order as that of the sender from the top of the list.                                   |
| Melody            | receive one data                       | Stored on the top in the "i-mode" folder in "Melody" inside "Data box".                                    |
| Still Image file  | receive one data/receive multiple data | Stored on the top in the "i-mode" folder in "My picture" inside "Data box".                                |
| Moving Image file | receive one data/receive multiple data | Stored on the top in the "i-mode" folder in "i-motion" inside "Data box".                                  |
| PDF file          | receive one data                       | Stored on the top in the "i-mode" folder in "My documents" inside "Data box".                              |
| ToruCa file       | receive one data/receive multiple data | Stored on the top in the "ToruCa" folder.  |
|                   | receive all data                       | Stored in the same folder as that of the sender in the same order.   |
| Book mark         | receive one data                       | Stored on the top in the "Bookmark" folder each for i-mode and Full Browser.                               |
|                   | receive all data                       | Stored in the same folder as that of the sender in the same order.   |

### Information

- You cannot send the following files:
  - Files whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited
  - Partially saved files
  - Pre-installed Decomail-pictures
  - Phonebook entries and SMS messages on the UIM
- You cannot send the data files on the microSD memory card. Copy or move to the FOMA phone and then send.
- You can send and receive up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters for a title of a still image, moving image, or PDF file, or up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters for a title of a melody.



## Information

- When you send a mail message, the file attached to the mail message is also sent. However some files cannot be sent depending on the file type.
- The mail message with an attached file which has not been obtained, or the mail message containing the link information for starting an i-coppli program is sent after the file or information is deleted.
- When the maximum number of storable received mail messages (see page 515) is exceeded, the messages are overwritten in the following order; messages in the "Trash box" folder → the oldest received message.
- When the maximum number of storable sent mail messages (see page 515) is exceeded, the oldest unprotected mail message in the Outbox folder is overwritten.
- When you send a ToruCa file using infrared rays, the confirmation display appears asking whether to forward the file including the detailed information. For the ToruCa file (details), select "YES" to send it with the detailed information. Select "NO" to send the ToruCa file as a file before obtaining the detailed information. For the ToruCa file before obtaining the detailed information, the file is sent as it is regardless of your selection, "YES" or "NO".
- The ToruCa file (details) that contains data whose output from the FOMA phone is prohibited is sent as a ToruCa file before obtaining the detailed information.
- You cannot receive Phonebook entries while Restrict Dialing is activated. At sending, you can send only the Phonebook entries set with Restrict Dialing and data of Own Number.
- It may take long to forward data or you might not be able to receive data depending on the data size.
- You cannot store a still image in excess of 2 Mbytes, moving image in excess of 10 Mbytes, melody in excess of 100 Kbytes, PDF file in excess of 1 Mbyte, ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte, or ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- If you connect the FOMA USB Cable (option) to the FOMA phone, you may not be able to perform infrared exchange.
- You cannot send files that are not supported by the device on the receiving end.

## Sending/Receiving One or Multiple Data Files

You can send/receive the data files one by one using infrared rays.

You can send/receive multiple still images, moving images, and ToruCa files at a time.


### Notes on send or receive

- In Secret Mode, you can send secret data as well. However, in Secret Data Only, you can send only the secret data.
- If you receive a Phonebook entry stored as secret data in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only", the Phonebook entry is stored as an ordinary one.
- When sending a Phonebook entry, you cannot send the stored secret code and voice dial entry.

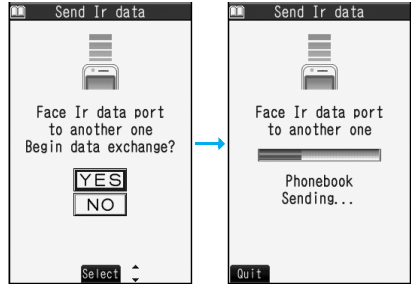
## Send One or Multiple Data Files

### 1 Display for a data item to be sent

▶  (FUNC) ▶ Send Ir data

- To send a Phonebook entry, select "Send Ir data" from the Function menu and select "Send phonebook".
- To send multiple files, select the files you want to send by "Multiple-choice". Press  (FUNC) to select "Send Ir data".

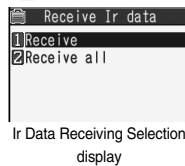
### 2 YES



- To send multiple files, select "YES" by a factor of selected number of files, and send them.

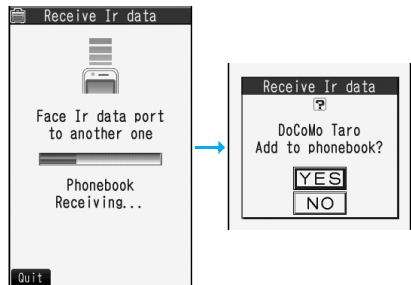
## Receive One or Multiple Data Files

### 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Receive Ir data



- You can paste the Ir data receiving function to the desktop. (See page 151)



### 2 Receive ▶ YES



- When you receive Phonebook entries, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them also in the PushTalk Phonebook.
- The confirmation display appears asking whether to continue receiving after receiving one data file. When you received multiple files, select "YES".

[Next Page](#)

### Information

- When you receive an instruction for starting a software program, and you have already downloaded a compatible software program, that software program starts. If you have not put a check mark for "Ir  appli To" of "Set  appli To", the software program does not start up automatically.

## Sending/Receiving All Data Files

You can send/receive the following data files all at once via infrared exchange; the Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, free memos, bookmarks, mail messages, and ToruCa files.

To send all data files, enter a session number (any four-digit number). The receiving end needs to enter the same session number.

### Notes on sending/receiving all data files

- Receiving all data files deletes all data you have stored including the secret data and protected data, and the received data overwrites the existing data. The data stored in "Secret mode" is deleted as well. Check that no important data is stored before receiving all data files.
- If you send all Phonebook entries, the "Own number" data is also sent. All the data of "Own number" at the receiving end is overwritten except the own number. Mail address is also overwritten by sender's address, so change it at the receiving end.
- If you send all Phonebook entries, PushTalk Phonebook entries are also sent. Information of voice dial entries are not sent.
- The Phonebook entries stored as secret data are sent not only during Secret Mode but also any other time. The sent secret data is stored as secret data at the receiving end, too.
- The group names in the Phonebook you have received are stored, so the data set in "Group setting" is also overwritten.
- Note that the schedule events at the receiving end are all deleted if you send all ToDo items to the phone that does not support ToDo.
- You can send/receive the protected sent/received mail messages.

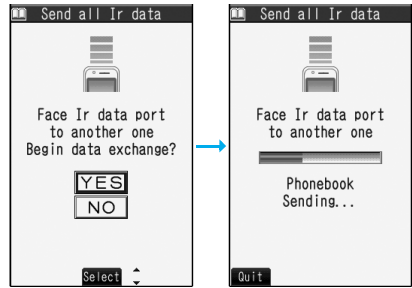
## Send All Data Files

### 1 Display for a data item to be sent

- ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Send all Ir data
- ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- To send the Phonebook entries, select "Send Ir data" from the Function menu and select "Send all phonebook".

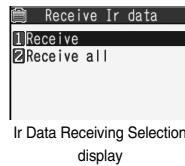
### 2 Enter the session number ▶ YES



- Enter any four-digit number as the session number.

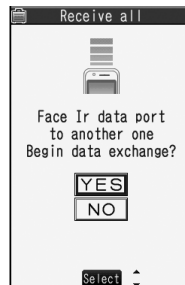
## Receive All Data Files

### 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Receive Ir data

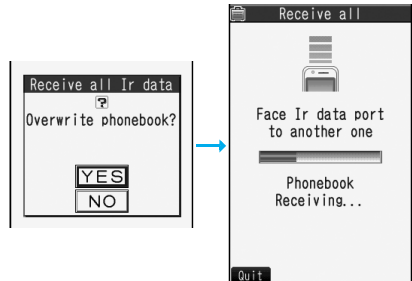


- You can paste the Ir data receiving function to the desktop. (See page 151)

### 2 Receive all ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Enter the same session number as that entered at the sending end ▶ YES



### 3 YES



The stored data is deleted, then receiving starts.

### Information

- When you receive Phonebook entries in which still images are stored or mail to which files are attached, and the multiple same still images or files are found, only one image or file is stored.

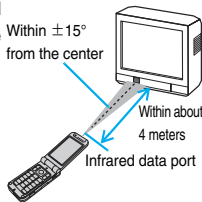
## Using Infrared Remote-controller Function

You can use the FOMA phone as a TV remote-controller by starting the i-rcpli program.

- To use remote-control devices, you may need to download the software program for those devices. [The pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン (G Guide Program List Remote-controller)” supports the infrared remote-controller function.] The key operation for the remote-controller differs depending on the software program.
- This function does not work with some devices.
- Communication might be affected by compatible devices and the ambient light.
- You cannot use the infrared remote-controller during Self Mode.

### Infrared Remote-controller

- Aim the FOMA phone's Infrared data port at the front of a device to be operated. You can operate within about 4 meters away from the device.
- The radiation angle of the infrared rays is within  $\pm 15^\circ$  from the center.



## <Forwarding Image> Communication Setting

2 6

|                     |    |
|---------------------|----|
| Setting at purchase | ON |
|---------------------|----|

For when you forward Phonebook entries using infrared rays, iC communication, SD-PIM, or DoCoMo keitai datalink, you can specify whether to forward the stored still images together.

- 1 Phonebook Phonebook settings Forwarding image ON or OFF

### <iC Transmission>

## About iC Communication

iC communication is the function that enables you to send/receive data files to/from another FOMA phone using the FeliCa reader/writer function.

You can send/receive data files by overlapping the FeliCa “” mark of your FOMA phone with that of another FOMA phone supporting the iC communication function.

- The type of files and conditions of forwarding are the same as those of infrared data exchange. (See page 358)  
However, you cannot send multiple files at a time.
- (HIKARI Icon) lights during iC communication. (See page 25)
- You cannot execute iC communication while “IC card lock” is activated.
- You might have difficulty in sending or receiving files depending on the destination FOMA phone. In that case, move a FeliCa mark “” close to or away from the other FeliCa mark or move each side up, down, left, or right.



Overlap one another's FeliCa mark “”.

## Sending/Receiving One Data File

You can send/receive the data files one by one using iC communication.

- See “ Notes on send or receive” on page 359 as well.

### Send One Data File

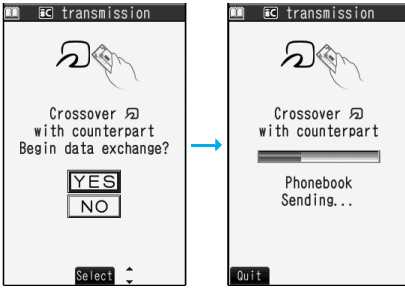
- You cannot use this function during charging.

- 1 Display of the data to be sent (FUNC) transmission


- To send a Phonebook entry, select “ transmission” from the Function menu and select “Send phonebook”.

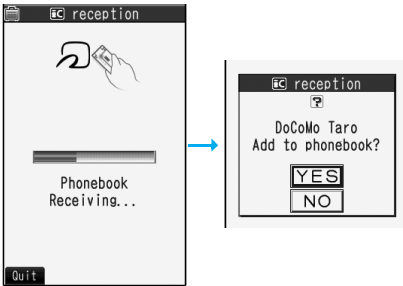
Next Page

## 2 YES



### Receive One Data File


- 1 Overlap the FeliCa mark “” at the sending end with that of your FOMA phone while the Stand-by display is shown ▶ YES



- When you receive a Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it also in the PushTalk Phonebook.

### Sending/Receiving All Data Files


You can send/receive the following data files all at once using iC communication; Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, free memos, bookmarks, mail messages, and ToruCa files. To send all data files, enter a session number (any four-digits number). The receiving end needs to enter the same session number.

- See “ Notes on sending/receiving all data files” on page 360 as well.

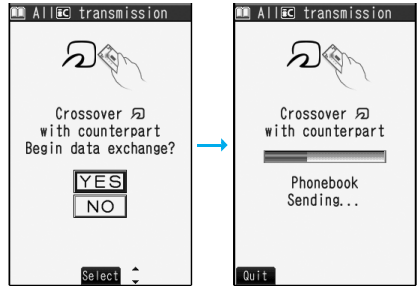
### Send All Data Files

- You cannot use this function during charging.

- 1 Display of the data to be sent  
▶  (FUNC) ▶ All  transmission  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code


- To send the Phonebook entries, select “ transmission” from the Function menu and select “Send all phonebook”.

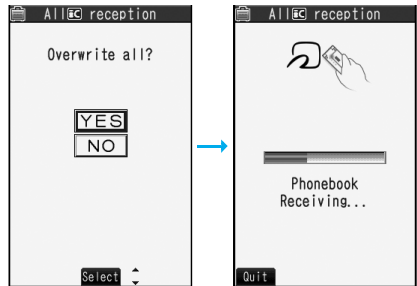
## 2 Enter the session number ▶ YES



- Enter any four-digits number as the session number.

### Receive All Data Files

- 1 Overlap the FeliCa mark “” at the sending end with that of your FOMA phone while the Stand-by display is shown.
- 2 YES ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ Enter the same session number as that entered at the sending end.



The stored data is deleted, and then receiving starts.

### Information

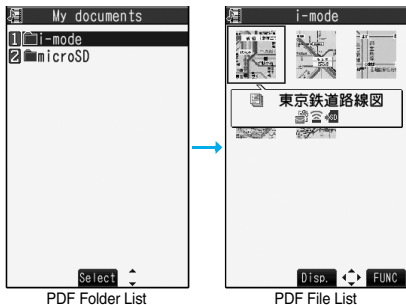
- When you receive Phonebook entries in which still images are stored, and the multiple same still images are found, only one image is stored.

# Displaying PDF Files

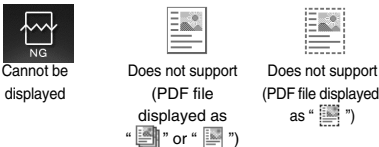
You can display the PDF files saved by downloading from sites.

- “東京鉄道路線図 (Tokyo Railway Route Map)”, “名古屋鉄道路線図 (Nagoya Railway Route Map)”, “大阪鉄道路線図 (Osaka Railway Route Map)”, “東京近郊鉄道路線図 (Tokyo Outskirts Railway Route Map)”, and “大阪近郊鉄道路線図 (Osaka Outskirts Railway Route Map)” are pre-installed.
- © 2006 CHIRI Geographic Information Service Co., Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

1. Data box ▶ My documents  
▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a PDF file.



- If you cannot display a preview image, the following images are displayed:



- See page 213 when the PDF file is set with a password.

## Operations when displaying a PDF file

- See page 364 for when you operate from the Function menu.

| Operation                    | Key operation | Operation              | Key operation             |
|------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Upper scroll                 |               | Next page              |                           |
| Lower scroll                 |               | Previous page          |                           |
| Left scroll                  |               | Search                 |                           |
| Right scroll                 |               | Search next            |                           |
| Bring up key operation guide |               | Search previous        |                           |
| Zoom in                      |               | Bring up bookmark list |                           |
| Zoom out                     |               | Add bookmark           | (for at least one second) |
| Fit page                     |               |                        |                           |

## When you select “microSD” from the PDF Folder List



1. Select a folder.  
You can display the list of PDF files.

## Information

- When many files are stored in the FOMA phone or the microSD memory card, it may take long to access them. It may take long to display the PDF file depending on the PDF file.
- A PDF file that contains the complicated design or in the format not compatible with the PDF viewer might not be correctly displayed.
- When you try to display undownloaded pages while the PDF file partially downloaded is displayed, downloading of the page starts.
- When you download the pages which you have not downloaded yet, if the PDF file has been updated at the server's end, the confirmation display appears asking whether to download from the first page.

## Function Menu of the microSD PDF Folder List

| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Edit folder name | See page 323.         |
| Add folder       | See page 323.         |
| Delete folder    | See page 323.         |
| Select storage   | See page 323.         |

## Function Menu of the PDF File List

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation   |
|-----------------|---|
| Edit title      | See page 323.   |
| Document info   | You can display the PDF file name, saved date/time and so on.<br>● Use  to scroll the display to check the information. |
| Attach to mail  | You can compose i-mode mail with the PDF files attached.<br>Go to step 2 on page 232.                                   |
| Send Ir data    | See page 359.   |
| Ir transmission | See page 361.   |
| Copy to microSD | You can copy the PDF file to the microSD memory card. (See page 351)  |
| Copy to phone   | You can copy the PDF file in the FOMA phone. (See page 352)   |

[Next Page](#)

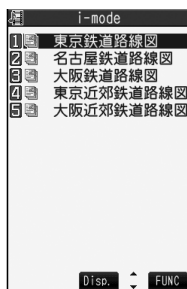
| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------|--|
| Copy             | See page 324.  |
| Move             | See page 324.  |
| Add desktop icon | See page 151.  |
| Delete this      | See page 324.  |
| Delete all       | See page 324.  |
| Multiple-choice  | You can select multiple PDF files. (See page 324)                        |
| Memory info      | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items. |
| Sort             | You can change the displayed order. (See page 324)                       |
| Listing          | See page 364.  |

## Listing

|                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|
| Setting at purchase | Image |
|---------------------|-------|

You can change the displayed contents of the PDF File List.

### 1 PDF File List (FUNC) Listing ▶ Title or Image



Title







Image


#### Information

- When you use "Image" to display PDF files, they might appear different from the actual images depending on the PDF files.

### Function Menu while PDF File is Displayed


| Function menu | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| Zoom in       | You can zoom in the PDF file. You can zoom in the PDF file up to 1,000%. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can zoom in the PDF file also by pressing  while it is displayed.</li> </ul> |
| Zoom out      | You can zoom out the PDF file. You can zoom out the PDF file up to 8%. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can zoom out the PDF file also by pressing  while it is displayed.</li> </ul>  |




| Function menu | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| Go to         | You can move to another page of the PDF file. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>▶ Select the page you want to move to.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you select "Specified page", enter the page number you want to move to in the page number field, and select "OK"; then the specified page is accessed.</li> <li>You can move to the previous page also by pressing , or to the next page also by pressing  while the PDF file is displayed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| View types | You can change display format of the PDF file. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>▶ Select a display format.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you select "User defined", enter the magnification value in the magnification specification field, and select "OK"; then the page is displayed at the specified magnification.</li> <li>The magnification you can specify is 8 through 1,000%.</li> <li>You can display the whole page also by pressing  while the PDF file is displayed.</li> <li>If you save a file after changing the display format, it is displayed at the saved magnification next time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
|------------|--|

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Page layout | You can change the layout the PDF file is displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>▶ Single page, Continuous or Continuous-facing</b></li> </ul> |
|-------------|--|

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Rotate view | <b>▶ 90° to right or 90° to left</b> |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Display link | You can display links set in the PDF file. Internal links (links set in the PDF file displayed), Web To, Mail To, and Phone To/AV Phone To are available for the links. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>▶ Select a link.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When multiple links are found in the display, you can select a link by pressing .</li> <li>When you select an internal link, the page moves to the linked page in the PDF file. See page 215 for another link.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
|--------------|--|

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| Search | You can display the screen in which the specified character string is contained. The point that matches the specified character is marked in yellow green. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>▶ Select the search string field</b></li> <li><b>▶ Enter a character string to be searched for.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.</li> <li><b>▶ Put a check mark for search conditions to be specified</b>  </li> <li>You can start up the search function also by pressing  while PDF file is displayed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
|--------|---|

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Search next</b>      | You can display the next area that matches the search conditions.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can search for the next area also by pressing <b>(G)</b> while the PDF file is displayed.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Search prev.</b>     | You can display the previous area that matches the search conditions.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can search for the previous area also by pressing <b>(A)</b> while the PDF file is displayed.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Disp. bookmark</b>   | You can display the bookmark set for the PDF file. (See page 365)   |
| <b>Add bookmark</b>     | You can set a bookmark (i-mode bookmark) for the page currently displayed and can display the desired page easily by selecting the bookmark. You can set up to 10 bookmarks.<br><b>▶ YES ▶ Select the title field</b><br><b>▶ Enter a title ▶ OK</b><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter the title of up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>You can add a bookmark also by pressing and holding <b>(S)</b> for at least one second while the PDF file is displayed.</li> <li>See page 366 when bookmarks are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Display mark</b>     | You can display the list of the marks stored in the PDF file. (See page 366)  |
| <b>Add mark</b>         | You can store the currently displayed page number and the position within the page as the mark. You can use the stored mark as the sign of the reference point. You can set up to 10 marks.<br><b>▶ YES</b><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See page 366 when marks are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Save</b>             | You can save the PDF file as it is. (See page 366)  |
| <b>Download remain</b>  | You can download all pages of the PDF file which you have not completely downloaded yet such as partially downloaded page by page or failed to be downloaded owing to disconnection of communication midway.<br><b>▶ YES</b>  |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>   | You can compose an i-mode mail message. (See page 363)  |
| <b>Capture screen</b>   | You can cut out a part of the display and save it as JPEG image.<br><b>(Select) ▶ YES ▶ Select a folder.</b><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See page 215 when images are stored to the maximum.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Page info ON/OFF</b> | You can set whether to display the zoom magnification, page number, and scroll bar for displaying the PDF file.<br><b>▶ Select an item ▶ Display or Not display</b>   |

At Viewer start-up  
Display

| Function menu        | Operation/Explanation   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Document info</b> | You can display the information of the PDF file. (See page 363) |

| Information   |
|---|
| <p><b>&lt;View types&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At viewer start-up, the page is displayed in the size set by "Doc. display settings".</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Page layout&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot change the layout of the partial PDF file.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Search&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The search conditions work as shown below:<br/>Match case:<br/>Identifies between uppercase and lowercase for search.<br/>Whole words only:<br/>Searches for character strings that completely match by unit of a word.<br/>Search upward:<br/>When you do "Search next", you can search backwards to the first page from the start page.<br/>Search "?" as wildcard:<br/>"?" mark (half-pitch) entered in the search string field is set for a search condition as a random character.<br/>Search in this page:<br/>Searches in the currently displayed page only.</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Add bookmark&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you do not enter the title, this is stored with "無題 (No title)".</li> </ul> <p><b>&lt;Capture screen&gt;</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You might not be able to cut out the display depending on the security setting of the PDF file.</li> </ul> |

## Display Bookmark

You can list the bookmarks set for the PDF file and the i-mode bookmarks additionally set.

By selecting a bookmark, you can display the page for which the bookmark is set.

### 1 While a PDF file is displayed

- (Func) ▶ Disp. bookmark**
- ▶ Bookmark or i-mode bookmark**
- ▶ Select a bookmark.**

- You can display the bookmarks also by pressing **(S)** while a PDF file is displayed.
- Some bookmarks that have been set beforehand are categorized into tier-levels. Press **(Next)** to display the bookmarks at the lower level. However, all the bookmarks at the third-tier level or lower are displayed at the third-tier level.

## Function Menu while i-mode Bookmark is Displayed

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation   |
|-----------------|---|
| Edit title      | ▶ Enter a title.<br>● You can enter up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters. |
| Delete          | ▶ YES   |
| Delete selected | ▶ Put a check mark for bookmarks to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES                      |
| Delete all      | ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ YES  |

## Display Mark

You can list the marked pages and positions stored in the PDF file.

When you select a mark, you can display the page in which the mark is stored.

- 1 While a PDF file is displayed ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Display mark ▶ Select a mark.

## Function Menu while the Mark List is Displayed

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------|--|
| Delete          | ▶ YES  |
| Delete selected | ▶ Put a check mark for marks to be deleted ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES |
| Delete all      | ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ YES                 |

## Save

You can save the PDF files. You can save the newly downloaded pages and added bookmarks/marks. You can save up to 1,800 PDF files (including the number of stored Chaku-uta Full® music files and still images). (The actual number of savable PDF files may decrease depending on the data size.)

- 1 While a PDF file is displayed  
▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save ▶ YES

The PDF file once saved to the FOMA phone or microSD memory card is overwritten each time you save it. (The operation in step 2 is not required.)

The PDF file that is not saved to the FOMA phone or microSD memory card is newly saved.

- With the PDF file that was re-downloaded from the first page owing to updating at the server's end, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite the current data. Select "YES" to overwrite it. Select "NO" to newly save.

- 2 Select a destination folder.

- See page 215 when PDF files in the FOMA phone are stored to the maximum.

### ■ When bookmarks or marks are set to the maximum

If you try to add a bookmark or mark to the PDF file for which 10 bookmarks or marks have been set, or if you try to save the PDF file for which 11 or more bookmarks or marks have been set, the confirmation display appears asking whether to add/save the bookmark or mark after unnecessary ones are deleted.

1. YES
  2. Select bookmarks/marks to be deleted ▶ YES  
or  
Put a check mark for bookmarks/marks to be deleted  
▶ (Finish) ▶ YES
- Continue putting a check mark until "Finish" appears.

## Document Display Settings

|                     |          |
|---------------------|----------|
| Setting at purchase | Fit page |
|---------------------|----------|

You can set a display format for when the PDF files are displayed from sites.

- 1 Stand-by display ▶ ( )  
▶ i-mode settings ▶ Doc. display settings  
▶ Select a display format.



## Printing Saved Images

### Select a Method to Print the Images Saved in the microSD Memory Card

DPOF is the format for recording the print information about the still image you shot with a digital camera. You can input the information into the still image on the microSD memory card about whether to print it out and how many copies you print out. You can take the card to DPE service shops or use a DPOF compatible printer to print photos as you specify.



#### 1 Still image in play/Still image List

▶  (FUNC) ▶ DPOF setting ▶ Print

▶ Enter the number of copies to be printed out.

- Enter "01" through "99" in two digits.
- To cancel printing the selected still image, select "Print OFF". To cancel printing all still images, select "All print OFF".

#### Information

- The classification icon of the images set DPOF Setting is "  " or "  ".
- You can set DPOF Setting for up to 999 image files.
- You cannot set DPOF Setting for the image in excess of 2 Mbytes or 3M (1536 x 2048) size.
- DPOF Setting by other devices such as personal computers is disabled except the information about the number of copies to be printed out.
- If unused space on the microSD memory card is not enough, DPOF Setting might not be set. (The icon and Picture Information, however, indicate DPOF is set.) Delete unnecessary files, make memory space, and then try again.
- Still images shot by P904i also support PRINT Image Matching III. You can accurately reproduce the conditions at shooting and your intention when you print the still image out from a PRINT Image Matching compatible printer, or when you process it by using a compatible software program. Some functions are not reproduced by the compatible printer of earlier version than PRINT Image Matching III.

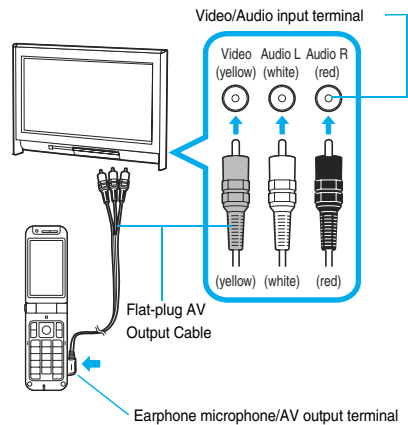
#### <AV Output>

## Displaying Still Images, Moving Images/i-motion Movies on TV

When you connect the FOMA phone to a TV using the Flat-plug AV Output Cable P01 (option), you can display still images, moving images/i-motion movies, and images during a videophone call on the TV. You cannot display any other images.

### Connect FOMA Phone to TV

Open the cover of the Earphone microphone/AV output terminal on the FOMA phone and connect the Flat-plug AV Output Cable to it. Then connect the Flat-plug AV Output Cable to the video/audio input terminal on the TV.







#### Information

- You can connect to the devices other than TV sets for output.
- When connecting the Flat-plug AV Output Cable, make sure that you firmly insert it. Do not pull the cable forcibly, twist it by the plug, or apply an excessive force.
- Before connecting or disconnecting the Flat-plug AV Output Cable to and from the device such as a TV, turn off the sound volume of the connected device.
- To pull the plug out, take hold of the plug and then pull it out softly.



## Display Still Images on TV

- 1 Play back a still image while the Flat-plug AV Output Cable is connected  
or  
connect the Flat-plug AV Output Cable while a still image is being played back.



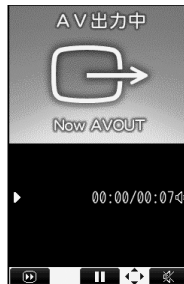
- Press  (Auto) to start a slide show. Press  (Stop) again to stop it.
- You can press  to display a previous or next still image.
- Each time you press  (Rotate), the still image rotates clockwise by 90 degrees.
- See page 322 for how to display still images.
- To cancel AV output, pull the Flat-plug AV Output Cable off of the FOMA phone. When the playback ends, or when another function starts up, AV output is canceled as well.

### Information

- AV output is not available in the following cases:
  - When the still image is played back from any other than the Still Image List or icon pasted to the desktop
  - When the still image is played back from any other than the "i-mode" folder, "Camera" folder, user folders, "Picture" folder (microSD), and "Image Box" folder (microSD)
  - When displaying a still image whose acquired source icon is  or , and whose "File restriction" is "File restricted"
  - When playing back a Chara-den picture you shot a Chara-den model whose "Rec. file restriction" is "File restricted"
  - While the still image is played back in an actual size or by slide show
- When a still image is larger than the VGA (480 x 640) size, it is reduced to VGA (480 x 640) or smaller with its proportional ratio retained for displaying on the TV.
- The Funny transform II image is not displayed as an animation; its first frame is displayed.



## Display Moving Images/i-motion Movies on TV

- 1 Play back a moving image/i-motion movie while the Flat-plug AV Output Cable is connected  
or  
connect the Flat-plug AV Output Cable while a moving image/i-motion movie is being played back.



- See page 332 for how to play back moving images/i-motion movies and how to operate during playback.
- To cancel AV output, pull the Flat-plug AV Output Cable off of the FOMA phone. When another function starts up, AV output is canceled as well.

### Information

- AV output is not available in the following cases:
  - When the image is played back from any other than the Moving Image List or icon pasted to the desktop
  - When playing back a moving image/i-motion movie whose acquired source icon is  or , and whose "File restriction" is "File restricted"
  - When playing back a Chara-den movie you shot a Chara-den model whose "Rec. file restriction" is "File restricted"
  - When a moving image/i-motion movie in the "Pre-installed" folder, or "Movable contents" folder (microSD) is played back
  - When a moving image/i-motion movie that contains tickers is played back

## Display Images during a Videophone Call on TV

- 1 Make a videophone call while the Flat-plug AV Output Cable is connected or connect the Flat-plug AV Output Cable during a videophone call.



- “G” appears during AV output.
- To cancel AV output, pull the Flat-plug AV Output Cable off of the FOMA phone. When the videophone call ends, or another function starts up, AV output is canceled as well.

### Information

- You cannot execute AV output for the images of Remote Monitoring.
- The sensitivity of the microphone is improved during AV output.
- “H” (Hands-free icon) does not appear during AV output. However, the voice is output from the connected device. You cannot switch to Hands-free.



# Music Playback

## Listening to Music

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Playing Back Music ..... | 372 |
| Saving Music Files ..... | 372 |
| Using MUSIC Player ..... | 374 |
| Using Playlist .....     | 381 |
| About SD-Jukebox .....   | 384 |

## Playing Back Music

You can play back music files on your FOMA phone by using MUSIC Player or i-motion player.

### ■MUSIC Player (See page 374)

By "MUSIC Player" of "LifeKit", you can play back Chaku-uta Full® music files or music files saved from music CDs to the microSD memory card via a personal computer.

### ■i-motion Player (See page 332)

From the "i-motion" folder in "Data box", you can play back the voice-only i-motion movie or AAC format files stored on the microSD memory card.

- You can use mail functions, display sites, and so on, while listening to music using MUSIC Player (Play Background). (See page 486)

### ■Important

You can use music files saved on the microSD memory card for personal use only. Before using, give enough consideration not to infringe on the third part's intellectual property rights or other rights such as copyright.

## Saving Music Files

### Download Chaku-uta Full® Music Files

You can save up to about 41 Mbytes of data for Chaku-uta Full® music files (including the size of stored still images and PDF files).

- 1 Bring up a Chaku-uta Full® music file downloadable site ▶ Select a Chaku-uta Full® music file ▶ Save ▶ YES



Obtaining Completion display

- Select "Play" to play back the Chaku-uta Full® music file. See page 376 for operations while a Chaku-uta Full® music file is being played back.
- Select "Property" to display the Chaku-uta Full® music file information. (See page 379)
- See page 215 when Chaku-uta Full® music files are saved to the maximum.

- 2 Select a destination folder.

- Press (Ⓜ) (📁) to display folders at the second-tier level or lower, if they exist.  
Press (Ⓜ) (🏠) to return to the upper level.

### ■When downloading Chaku-uta Full® music file is suspended

When you press (Ⓜ) (Quit) to suspend downloading a Chaku-uta Full® music file, or when the Download display returns after downloading is suspended by receiving an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading. Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the Obtaining Completion display if any part of the file has been downloaded. To save it, select "Save pt.", and select the "i-mode" folder in "MUSIC" in "Data box", and then save. You can re-download the partially saved file by selecting it from "Data box".

- The title of the partially saved Chaku-uta Full® music file takes the date and time when it is downloaded.
- When the playable period or playable deadline of the partially saved Chaku-uta Full® music file has expired, you cannot download the remaining segments of the file. Further, the partially saved file is deleted when you perform obtaining operation.

### ■About Uta-hodai

Uta-hodai files are the Chaku-uta Full® music files you can play back just for a period of the contract with a content provider. The playable deadline is specified in the license information that is downloaded together with the music file.

Even when the playable deadline has expired, you can play back the music file by updating the license.

- When a music file (Chaku-uta Full® music file downloaded on the membership service basis) whose playable deadline has expired is found at the start of MUSIC Player, the confirmation display appears asking whether to update the playable deadline. Select "YES" to update the file (Packet communication fee is charged). Select "NO" not to use the music file. See page 374 for starting MUSIC Player.
- Some Uta-hodai music files are applied with surplus playable days even after the playable deadline has passed. During this period, you can play back files without updating the playable deadline information. When the surplus playable days are over, you cannot play back the files. If you download music files with the playable deadline not updated, you cannot play back the files before saving.
- When the upper limit of the (membership) music services you can register is exceeded, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite them. Select "YES" to overwrite a music service whose playable deadline is the oldest. You can no longer play back the music files downloaded from the overwritten service.
- The Chaku-uta Full® music information and deadline information on the display that notifies you of a playable deadline are shown by the date/time of Japan.
- Packet communication fee charged for updating a playable deadline during international roaming is not supported by Pake-Houdai and Pake-Houdai Full.
- If you insert the UIM with a phone number different from the one you used to download Uta-hodai music files, you cannot download/play back the files. When you use Uta-hodai with a new UIM, execute "Initialize" (see page 413).

### Information

- You can save up to 5 Mbytes per Chaku-uta Full® music file.
- After the Uta-hodai music file set for the ring tone or alarm tone needs to be updated because the playable deadline has expired, the default tone sounds when you play back a demo, a call comes in, or an alarm sounds/vibrates.
- For a Chaku-uta Full® music file that has restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable period, or playable deadline, “Ⓜ” is displayed at the head of the title. If you remove the battery and keep it aside for a long time, the date/time information in the FOMA phone might be reset. In that case, you cannot play back the Chaku-uta Full® music file that has restrictions on the playable period or playable deadline. See “Music info” for checking the playback restrictions.
- Partially saved Chaku-uta Full® music files cannot be played back from Data Box.

### Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. Note that we cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents.

## Save WMA Files

You can use Windows Media Player 11 to save Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files from a personal computer to the microSD memory card.

- As well as music files, you can save playlists, jacket images, and license keys.

### STEP

#### 1 Prepare devices required for saving WMA files

First, prepare the devices required for saving WMA files.

- FOMA P904i
- microSD memory card
- FOMA USB Cable (option)
- Personal computer with Windows Media Player 11 installed  
· Operating Systems of personal computer: Windows XP Service Pack 2/Windows Vista™  
[However, when you use Windows XP, you can use version of Windows Media Player 10 (10.00.00.3802 or later) as well.]
- Before connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer, you need to check the version of Windows Media Player.

### STEP

#### 2 Use the FOMA phone as reader/writer

Set “USB mode setting” to “MTP mode”. (See page 354)

### STEP

#### 3 Save music files to the microSD memory card

Start Windows Media Player 11 and save WMA files to the microSD memory card.

- You cannot save WMA files to the FOMA phone.
- For how to operate Windows Media Player 11, refer to Help for Windows Media Player 11.

- When you finish saving, remove the FOMA USB Cable from the FOMA phone.  
When you remove the FOMA USB Cable, remove it after finishing the software in use.

### About the Napster® Application

You have the ability to save music files using the Napster® application.

- Please download the Napster® application from the following web page:  
<http://www.napster.jp/> (Japanese only)
- If you have any questions about the Napster® application, refer to the following web page:  
<http://www.napster.jp/support/> (Japanese only)

### Information

- Do not remove the microSD memory card during saving a file. You may lose the file.
- Music files and jacket images are saved to PRIVATE/ DOCOMO/MMFILE/WM/ on the microSD memory card.
- You cannot play back the saved files on other FOMA phones. (You might be able to play them back depending on your license key.)
- When you insert the microSD memory card which contains WMA files, the WMA files saved by other than P904i might not be displayed.
- When you add or delete the WMA files on the microSD memory card repeatedly, the size of license files might become large, and memory space on the microSD memory card might become low. In this case, you can delete the license files. After you perform “DEL all licenses” for WMA files, connect your FOMA phone to your personal computer and update the license files. You cannot play back the WMA files unless you update the license files.

## Save Music Files by Using SD-Audio

By using SD-Jukebox contained in the provided FOMA P904i CD-ROM, you can save the music files in AAC format from music CDs to the microSD memory card.

- By using the microSD memory card adapter (option), you can save music files to the microSD memory card directly from a personal computer as well.

※ The following steps are an example for when the FOMA phone is used as a microSD reader/writer for saving music files.

### STEP

#### 1 Prepare devices required for saving music files

First, prepare the devices required for saving music files.

- FOMA P904i
- microSD memory card
- FOMA USB Cable (option)
- Personal computer (Windows® XP, Windows® 2000 Professional, or Windows Vista™)
- SD-Jukebox (provided FOMA P904i CD-ROM)
- Music CD you want to saved

[Next Page](#)

## STEP

### 2 Install SD-Jukebox

Install SD-Jukebox from the provided FOMA P904i CD-ROM on the personal computer.

- See page 384 for SD-Jukebox.

## STEP

### 3 Use the FOMA phone as reader/writer

Set “USB mode setting” to “microSD mode”.  
(See page 354)

## STEP

### 4 Save music files to the microSD memory card

Start SD-Jukebox and set a music CD on the personal computer. Then use SD-Jukebox to save music files to the microSD memory card.

- For how to operate SD-Jukebox, refer to Help for SD-Jukebox.
- When you finish saving, remove the FOMA USB Cable from the FOMA phone.

## <MUSIC Player>

### Using MUSIC Player

You can play back Chaku-uta Full® music files obtained from sites or music files saved to the microSD memory card.

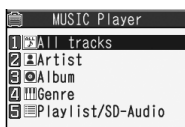
To play back music files, select “MUSIC Player” from “LifeKit” on the Main menu. Play Background is available so that you can use mail functions, display sites, and so on, while listening to music.

To create/edit folders or data files, select “MUSIC” from “Data box” on the Main menu.

- Note that battery consumption will be faster when you use MUSIC Player.
- You can enjoy playing back music in stereo sound by connecting the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (option).  
Also, you can enjoy listening to music wirelessly by using a commercial Bluetooth device. (See page 411)
- If the number of stored files increases, it may take long to start MUSIC Player.

## Use from LifeKit

### 1 LifeKit ▶ MUSIC Player



Player Menu display

- You can start MUSIC Player also by pressing and holding for at least one second from the Stand-by display. When you press and hold for at least one second with the FOMA phone closed, all the music files in the playlist are played back from the top when no information about the previously played music file is found.
- The playback display (in pause state) appears when the information about the previously played music file remains.
- The “★” mark is added to the playlist which is currently played back or was previously played back.

## 2 Select an item.

### All tracks

..... Displays all the music files saved on the FOMA phone and microSD memory card.

### Artist

..... Displays all the artist names.  
Highlight the name of the artist you want to listen to and press (Select), then all the album names of the selected artist are displayed. (Go to Album)

### Album

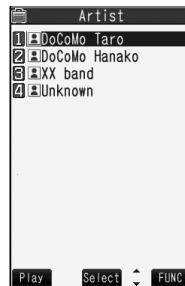
..... Displays all the albums.  
Highlight the name of the album you want to listen to and press (Select).

### Genre

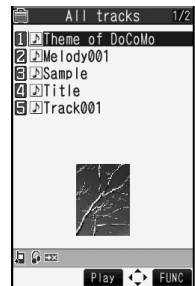
..... Displays all the genres.  
Highlight the genre you want to listen to and press (Select).

### Playlist/SD-Audio

..... Displays all the playlists created by the FOMA phone and personal computer.  
See page 382 for the playback of playlists.



Type List  
(For Artist)



Music List

- When you select “Artist”, “Album”, or “Genre”, and press (Play) from the Type List, all the music files stored in the selected item are played back.
- You might not be able to display all the stored music files depending on their file size.
- The following images are displayed when you cannot display a preview image:



BGM playing  
During playback/  
During pause



Incomplete data  
download



Cannot be  
displayed



No image, etc.



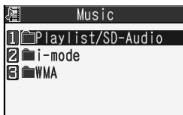
### 3 Select a music file.

Playback starts from the selected music file in the order listed on the Type List or playlist.

- The “★” mark is added to the music file which is currently played back or was previously played back.
- Playback continues even if you close the FOMA phone during playback.
- When you press and hold **[P]** for at least one second during playback, pause, or halt, or press **[⏸]**, MUSIC Player ends.

#### Use from Data Box

### 1 **[Data Box]** ▶ Data box ▶ MUSIC



Music Folder List

### 2 Select a folder.



i-mode (Chaku-uta Full®)  
Folder List

### 3 Select a folder.



Chaku-uta Full® Music List

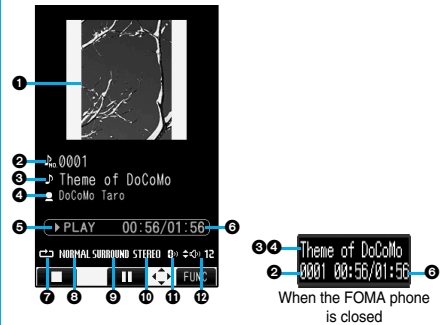
- When you select “Playlist/SD-Audio”, all the playlists are listed. When you select a playlist, the Music List of a playlist appears.
- You cannot play back music files as a playlist.
- See page 381 for creating or editing a playlist.
- See page 374 when you cannot display a preview image.

### 4 Select a Chaku-uta Full® music file or music file.

Only the selected music file is played back as a demo.

- When you close the FOMA phone during playback, the playback stops.
- To terminate playback, press and hold **[P]** for at least one second or press **[⏸]** during playback or pause.
- You might be able to play back a Chaku-uta Full® music file by pressing **[Play]** or selecting “Play” from the Function menu while selecting it on another function.
- Chaku-uta Full® music files are shown by titles for control when you display them from the “i-mode” folder, and by music titles stored in the music information when you operate them from the “Playlist/SD-Audio” folder or LifeKit.

#### About display during using MUSIC Player



When the FOMA phone is closed

- 1 The image<sup>※1</sup> which is stored in the music file
- 2 Track number
- 3 Title
- 4 Artist name
- 5 Playback state
- 6 Playback time/Total playback time
- 7 Play mode (No indication for “Normal”)
  - [▶]**: Play only one
  - [↺]**: Repeat one
  - [↻]**: Repeat all
  - [⚡]**: Random
  - [↻↻]**: Random play & repeat
  - [DEMO]**: Demo<sup>※2</sup>
- 8 Sound quality mode
  - NORMAL**: Normal
  - S-XBS**: S-XBS
  - TRAIN**: Train
- 9 Surround
  - SURROUND**: ON
- 10 Stereo/Monaural
  - STEREO**: Stereo
  - MONO**: Monaural
- 11 Icon of Bluetooth connection
  - [B]**: Being connected
- 12 Sound volume

※1 When no images are stored, an animation appears.

※2 Displayed only in demo playbacks.

## ■Operations of MUSIC Player in use

| Operation                | Key operation  |                     |          |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------|----------|
| Halt                     | Press  (  ). Press  (  ) or  (  ) to play back.  |                     |          |
| Pause                    | Press  (  ) or  (  ). Press  (  ) or  (  ) to play back.<br>You can pause or play back by pressing  (  ) even when the FOMA phone is closed.   |                     |          |
| Sound volume adjustment  | Press  (  ) or  (  ). Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially.<br>You can adjust by pressing  (  ) even when the FOMA phone is closed.<br>You can set the sound volume from Level 0 (silent) through 25.<br><table border="1" style="width: 100px; margin-top: 5px;"> <tr> <td>Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Level 12</td> </tr> </table> | Setting at purchase | Level 12 |
| Setting at purchase      |  |                     |          |
| Level 12                 |  |                     |          |
| Replay next file         | Press  (  ).   |                     |          |
| Replay previous file**1  | Press  (  ). When playback time is over three seconds, this operation returns the position to the beginning of the file.   |                     |          |
| Search (fast forward)**2 | Press and hold  (  ) to fast-forward the file.   |                     |          |
| Search (fast rewind)**2  | Press and hold  (  ) to fast-rewind the file.  |                     |          |
| Change images            | You can switch the jacket image and lyric image each time you press  (  ).   |                     |          |
| Display next image       | Press  (  ).   |                     |          |
| Display previous image   | Press  (  ).   |                     |          |

※1 This operation returns the position to the beginning of the music file when "Random" or "Random play&repeat" is set or no previous music file is found.

※2 You cannot operate during halt or pause.

●You cannot use some operations during playback of a demo.

**From the MUSIC Player In-use display, you can operate the following by using the switch of the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (option) or the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option):**

●You can operate them when the FOMA phone is closed as well.

| Operation              | Switch operation  |
|------------------------|---|
| Pause                  | Press the switch once. To play back, press again.   |
| Replay next file       | Press the switch twice in succession.   |
| Replay previous file** | Press the switch three times in succession. When playback time is over three seconds, this operation returns the position to the beginning of the file. |

※This operation returns the position to the beginning of the music file when "Random" or "Random play&repeat" is set or no previous music file is found.

## ■Playback specifications of Chaku-uta Full® music files

|             |                      |               |
|-------------|----------------------|---------------|
| File format | MP4                  |               |
| Bit rate    | MPEG-4 AAC           | 8 to 128 kbps |
|             | MPEG-4 AAC+ (HE-AAC) | 8 to 64 kbps  |
|             | Enhanced aacPlus     | 16 to 48 kbps |
| Extension   | 3gp                  |               |

## ■Playback specifications of SD-Audio files and number of storable files

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| File format                      | MPEG-2 AAC, MPEG-2 AAC+SBR                                      |  |
| Bit rate                         | 32 to 128 kbps  |  |
| Maximum number of storable files | 999 files   |  |
| Maximum number of playlist       | 99 files (Up to 99 files can be stored in a single playlist.**) |  |

\*\*Except "All tracks".

## ■Playback specifications of WMA files and number of storable files

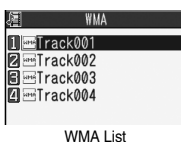
|                                  |   |                |
|----------------------------------|---|----------------|
| Codec                            | WMA (Windows Media Audio 9 standard)                            |                |
| Bit rate                         | 32 KHz (2ch)  | 32 to 64 kbps  |
|                                  | 44.1 KHz (2ch)  | 64 to 192 kbps |
|                                  | 48 KHz (2ch)  | 96 to 192 kbps |
| Maximum number of storable files | Maximum 600 files   |                |
| Maximum number of playlist       | 100 files (Up to 250 files can be stored in a single playlist.) |                |

### ■When you select "microSD" on the i-mode (Chaku-uta Full®) Folder List



1. Select a folder.  
You can display the list of Chaku-uta Full® music files.

### ■When you select the "WMA" folder on the Music Folder List



You can display the list of WMA files.

Some WMA files have playable license (number/period/deadline).

### Icons on the Music List

When you select a music file from “LifeKit ► MUSIC Player”, the following icons are displayed:

#### <State of music>

| Icon | Description  |
|------|--|
|      | Stored in the FOMA phone   |
|      | Stored on the microSD memory card  |
|      | SD-Audio file type   |
|      | Chaku-uta Full® file type  |
|      | WMA file type  |
|      | File with UIM restrictions   |
|      | Chaku-uta Full® music file with playback restrictions                                    |
|      | Chaku-uta Full® music file with playback restrictions expired                            |
|      | Playable Uta-hodai music file  |
|      | Uta-hodai music file which needs to be updated because the playable deadline has expired |
|      | Uta-hodai music file not permitted to play back  |
|      | File with file restrictions  |

### Icons on the Chaku-uta Full® Music List

When you select a Chaku-uta Full® music file from “Data box→MUSIC”, the following icons are displayed:

#### <File format>

| Icon | Audio format                        | Type  |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|
|      | AAC, AAC+(HE-AAC), Enhanced aacPlus | MP4 file                                    |
|      | —                                   | Partially saved Chaku-uta Full® music files |

● Some Chaku-uta Full® music files and Uta-hodai music files have restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable deadline, or playable period. The following icons are added.

- File with playback restrictions . . . . . “ ”
- File with playback restrictions expired. . . . . “ ”
- Playable Uta-hodai music file . . . . . “ ”
- Uta-hodai music file which needs to be updated because the playable deadline has expired . . . . . “ ”
- Chaku-uta Full® music file or Uta-hodai music file not permitted. . . . . “ ”

You can check the playback restrictions for the file by “Music info”.

● All Chaku-uta Full® music files are set with file restrictions. See page 195 for file restrictions.

#### <Acquired source>

| Icon | Acquired source |
|------|-----------------|
| ※    | Sites           |

※ For the copyrighted file movable to the microSD memory card, “ ” is displayed.

### Information

- Even when the file format is supported, you might not be able to play back some files.
- The information of the previously played music file is erased if you do the following operations:
  - When you remove/insert the microSD memory card
  - When you turn on/off the FOMA phone
  - When you execute “Reset settings” or “Initialize”
  - When you delete the previously played music file or move it between the FOMA phone and microSD memory card
  - When you delete the previously played playlist
  - When you do not insert the microSD memory card on which the previously played music file is stored
  - When you set “USB mode setting” to “microSD mode” or “MTP mode” and connect to a personal computer
  - When you played back a music file from other than a playlist last time, and then when you perform “Edit music info” or “Reset music info”, or when you newly download, save or delete a Chaku-uta Full® music file
  - When the music file previously played is an Uta-hodai music file which needs to be updated because the playable deadline has expired
  - When the previously played music file is a WMA file and when you delete all the WMA licenses
  - When the WMA license becomes invalid
- Partially saved Chaku-uta Full® music files are not displayed when you operate from LifeKit.
- Note that the battery is consumed sooner if you perform the fast-forward and other similar operations frequently.
- When you start up Chat Mail and receive a chat mail message during playback, a tone for the chat mail message does not sound.
- In the following cases, the playback pauses and resumes after you finish each operation:
  - When you make/receive a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call
  - When you receive a mail message or Message R/F while “Receiving display” is set to “Alarm preferred” or the Stand-by display is shown
  - When an alarm tone of “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” sounds while “Alarm setting” is set to “Alarm preferred” Depending on the event which occurred, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to end MUSIC Player.
- When a music file is switched to the previous or next one, the music file whose playable deadline or playable period has expired, or WMA file whose WMA license is deleted is skipped. When the Chaku-uta Full® music file has restrictions on the number of playbacks, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back regardless of the remaining number of playbacks. However, the music file whose number of playbacks has finished is skipped.

## Function Menu of the Music Folder List/i-mode (Chaku-uta Full®) Folder List/Player Menu Display

| Function menu            | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Display in play</b>   | You can show the In-use MUSIC Player display for the music file which is currently played back or is in pause (the file with "★" added in the list).  |
| <b>Play mode setting</b> | <p>▶ <b>Select a play mode.</b><br/> <b>Normal</b></p> <p>Setting at purchase<br/>Normal</p> <p>... Plays back the music files sorted by type or in the playlist in order as listed. Finishes after the last music file is played back.</p> <p><b>Play only one</b><br/>           ... Plays back the selected music file once.</p> <p><b>Repeat one</b><br/>           ... Plays back the selected music file repeatedly.</p> <p><b>Repeat all</b><br/>           ... Plays back the music files sorted by type or in the playlist in order as listed repeatedly.</p> <p><b>Random</b><br/>           ... Plays back the music files sorted by type or in the playlist at random. Finishes after all the music files are played back.</p> <p><b>Random play&amp;repeat</b><br/>           ... Plays back the music files sorted by type or in the playlist at random repeatedly.</p> |
| <b>Sound quality</b>     | <p>You can change the sound quality when you listen with an earphone.</p> <p>Setting at purchase<br/>Normal</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a sound quality.</b><br/> <b>Normal</b> ... Normal sound quality<br/> <b>S-XBS</b> ... Lays stress on the low sound.<br/> <b>Train</b> ... Minimizes abnormal sound that causes sound leakage.</p>   |
| <b>Surround</b>          | <p>You can play back music in a natural and stereophonic sound.</p> <p>Setting at purchase<br/>OFF</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>  |
| <b>Add folder</b>        | <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>You can create a total of 25 folders at each level up to the second-tier level in the FOMA phone.</li> </ul> <p>You can create folders at each level up to the seventh-tier level on the microSD memory card.</p>   |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | <p>▶ <b>Enter a folder name.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>                |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | <p>You can delete a user folder and all Chaku-uta Full® music files in the folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br/>           ▶ <b>YES</b></p> |
| <b>Memory info</b>      | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.   |

### Information

#### <Delete folder>


- If you delete the Chaku-uta Full® music file set for another function, the setting returns to the default.

## Function Menu of the microSD (Chaku-uta Full®) Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Sound quality</b>    | See page 378.   |
| <b>Surround</b>         | See page 378.   |
| <b>Add folder</b>       | See page 378.   |
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | See page 378.   |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | See page 378.   |
| <b>Memory info</b>      | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.  |
| <b>Select storage</b>   | <p>You can set the destination folder for when you move the Chaku-uta Full® music file to the microSD memory card. You can set it for up to seventh-tier-level folders.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> |

### Information

#### <Select storage>

- " " is displayed for the folder set as a destination.
- When you execute Check microSD, or create or edit a folder by using a personal computer, the destination folder on the microSD memory card might be changed. When the setting is changed, set the destination folder again.

## Function Menu of the Chaku-uta Full® Music List/ Type List/Music List/WMA List

| Function menu            | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Display in play</b>   | See page 378.   |
| <b>Player menu</b>       | You can show the Player Menu display from the Type List or Music List.  |
| <b>Play mode setting</b> | See page 378.   |
| <b>Sound quality</b>     | See page 378.   |
| <b>Surround</b>          | See page 378.   |
| <b>Edit title</b>        | <p>You can edit the title of Chaku-uta Full® music file.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a title.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For a Chaku-uta Full® music file in the FOMA phone, you can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>For a Chaku-uta Full® music file on the microSD memory card, you can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Set as ring tone</b>  | See page 380.   |
| <b>Music info</b>        | <p>You can display the title, artist name, playback time, etc.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use  to scroll the display to check the information.</li> <li>Press  ( <b>FUNC</b> ) with the music information of Chaku-uta Full® music file displayed and select "Edit music info"; then you can edit the information contents. Select a desired item and then edit it. To return the edited information to the unedited one, select "Reset music info". Select a desired item and select "YES".</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Add to playlist</b>   | <p>▶ <b>Select a storing method.</b></p> <p><b>Add one to P-list</b><br/>         . . . . . You can store the music file.</p> <p><b>Add some to P-list</b><br/>         . . . . . Select the music files to be stored, and press  ( <b>Finish</b> ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The music files are stored in the displayed order.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Select a playlist you store music files to.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you select a playlist already stored, the storing is completed.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Enter a playlist name.</b></p> |
| <b>Connect to URL</b>    | <p>You can access the URL when the Chaku-uta Full® music file has the URL information.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>  |
| <b>Display image</b>     | <p>You can display jacket images stored in the music file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When multiple jacket images are stored, press  to display a previous or next jacket image.</li> <li>When the image is storable, press  ( <b>Save</b> ) and select "YES", then select any destination folder to save it.</li> </ul>  |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Display lyric</b>    | <p>You can display lyric images stored in the Chaku-uta Full® music file.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When multiple lyric images are stored, press  to display a previous or next lyric image. You can display up to seven lyric images.</li> <li>When the image is storable, press  ( <b>Save</b> ) and select "YES", then select any destination folder to save it.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Move to microSD</b>  | <p>You can move the Chaku-uta Full® music file to the microSD memory card. (See page 352)</p>   |
| <b>Move to phone</b>    | <p>You can move the Chaku-uta Full® music file on the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone. (See page 352)</p>   |
| <b>Move</b>             | <p>You can move the Chaku-uta Full® music file in the FOMA phone to another folder inside it, or can move the Chaku-uta Full® music file on the microSD memory card to another folder inside it.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select a destination folder.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  (  ) to display folders at the second-tier level or lower, if they exist. Press  ( <b>Up</b> ) to return to the upper level.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Add folder</b>       | See page 378.   |
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | See page 378.   |
| <b>Delete folder</b>    | See page 378.   |
| <b>Delete this</b>      | ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete all</b>       | <p>You can delete all Chaku-uta Full® music files or WMA files in the folder.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If there is a user folder in a folder, you cannot delete the user folder or Chaku-uta Full® music files in the user folder.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Reset title</b>      | <p>You can reset the title of Chaku-uta Full® music file to the default.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p>  |
| <b>Multiple-choice</b>  | <p>You can select multiple Chaku-uta Full® music files and operate them.</p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for Chaku-uta Full® music files to be operated</b> ▶  ( <b>FUNC</b> )</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Delete</b> . . . . . See "Delete this" on page 379.</p> <p><b>Move</b> . . . . . See page 379.</p> <p><b>Select all</b> . . . You can select all music files.</p> <p><b>Release all</b> . . . You can release all selected music files.</p> <p><b>Listing</b> . . . . . See page 380.</p> |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Memory info</b>      | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.              |
| <b>Select storage</b>   | See page 378.   |
| <b>DEL all licenses</b> | You can delete the WMA license files.<br>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ YES |
| <b>Listing</b>          | See page 380.   |

**Information**

<Display image>

- Some images may not be displayed correctly.

<Add folder>

- You cannot create a user folder in the WMA folder.

<Delete this> <Delete all>

- If you delete the Chaku-uta Full® music file set for another function, the setting returns to the default.
- If you delete the WMA file stored in the WMA playlist, it is released from WMA playlist.

<Multiple-choice>

- You can select up to 1,800 Chaku-uta Full® music files.

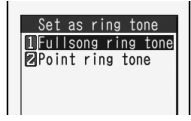
## Set as Ring Tone

“Fullsong ring tone” that uses a full piece of a music file and “Point ring tone” that uses a part of a music file are available.

### 1 Chaku-uta Full® Music List

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Set as ring tone

- You cannot set this for Chaku-uta Full® music files on the microSD memory card.



### 2 For Fullsong Ring Tone

Fullsong ring tone ▶ Select an item.

#### For Point Ring Tone

Point ring tone ▶ Select a range to be set  
▶ Select an item.

- You can check the range to be set by pressing (Play).

**Information**

- When an Uta-hodai music file set for a ring tone cannot be played back, needs to be updated because the playable deadline has expired, or becomes the file with UIM restrictions, the default ring tone returns.

## Listing

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| Setting at purchase | Title + Image |
|---------------------|---------------|

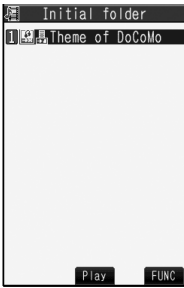
You can change the displayed contents for the Chaku-uta Full® Music List, Music List, or WMA List.

### 1 Chaku-uta Full® Music List/Music List/WMA List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Listing

▶ Select a display format.

**Title** . . . . . The titles are listed.

**Title + Image** . . . The titles and an image are displayed at a time. The displayed image is the first frame of the jacket.



Title  
(For Chaku-uta Full® Music List)



Title + Image  
(For Chaku-uta Full® Music List)

## Function Menu during Playback/Halt/Pause

| Function menu                        | Operation/Explanation  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Player menu</b>                   | You can show the Player Menu display from the display during using MUSIC Player.<br>• Playback state continues even when you show the Player Menu display.               |
| <b>Play mode setting</b>             | See page 378.  |
| <b>Sound quality</b>                 | See page 378.  |
| <b>Surround</b>                      | See page 378.  |
| <b>Music info</b>                    | See page 379.  |
| <b>Connect to URL</b>                | See page 379.  |
| <b>Display image/Display lyric</b>   | You can display jacket images or lyric images stored in the music file.<br>• The jacket image and lyric image are switched each time you press  on the playback display. |
| <b>Previous image/Previous lyric</b> | You can display a previous jacket image or lyric image.<br>• You can display a previous image also by pressing  from the playback display.                               |

| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Next image/<br>Next lyric | You can display a next jacket image or lyric image.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can display a next image also by pressing (3) from the playback display.</li> </ul> |

### Information

<Display image/Display lyric> <Previous image/Previous lyric> <Next image/Next lyric>

- For Chaku-uta Full® music files, you can display up to 3 jacket images and up to 7 lyric images.

For music files saved via SD-Jukebox, you can display up to 20 jacket images, and for WMA file, you can display 1 image buried in a file. When you use the Napster® application program, you can display 1 image stored as a jacket image. There are no lyric images for them.

## Using Playlist

You can create the list of music files you want to listen to, and play them back in the order you like.

You can play back using the playlists created by the FOMA phone or Windows Media Player, or the SD-Audio playlists created by SD-Jukebox.

- The maximum number of playlists that can be created and the number of music files that can be stored per playlist are as follows:

| Creating source                           | Number of playlist                  | Number of music files that can be stored per playlist |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| Playlists created by FOMA phone           | Maximum 30<br>(Except "All tracks") | 100   |
| Playlists created by Windows Media Player | Maximum 100                         | 250   |
| Playlists created by SD-Jukebox           | Maximum 99<br>(Except "All tracks") | 99  |

- When you create a playlist on the FOMA phone, you can store the Chaku-uta Full® music files saved on the FOMA phone or microSD memory card and the music files saved via SD-Jukebox to the same playlist.

### Icons on the Playlist List

<Type>

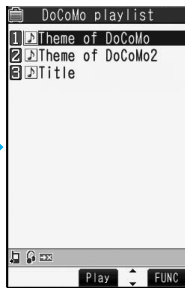
| Icon | Type                    |
|------|-------------------------|
|      | All tracks              |
|      | All tracks for SD-Audio |
|      | FOMA playlist           |
|      | SD-Audio playlist       |
|      | WMA playlist            |

## Create Playlist from LifeKit

- LifeKit ▶ MUSIC Player  
▶ Playlist/SD-Audio



Playlist List



Music List of a Playlist

- Press (Select) from the Playlist List to display the Music List of a Playlist.

- (FUNC) ▶ Create playlist  
▶ Put a check mark for music files to be stored ▶ (Finish)

- The music files are stored in the displayed order.

- Enter a playlist name.

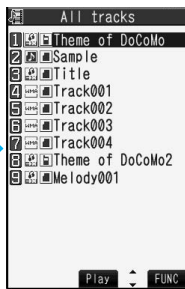
- You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.

## Create/Edit Playlist from Data Box

- Data box ▶ MUSIC  
▶ Playlist/SD-Audio ▶ Select a playlist



Playlist List



Music List of a Playlist

- You can create a playlist from all the music files by selecting "All tracks".

Next Page

## 2

### (FUNC) ▶ Create/Edit list

▶ Put a check mark for music files to be operated ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select an item.

#### Create playlist

..... Creates a new playlist from selected music files.

- The music files are stored in the displayed order.

#### Add to playlist

..... Adds selected music files to another playlist. Select a playlist to add the music files. The added music files are stored at the end of the playlist. The operation is completed.

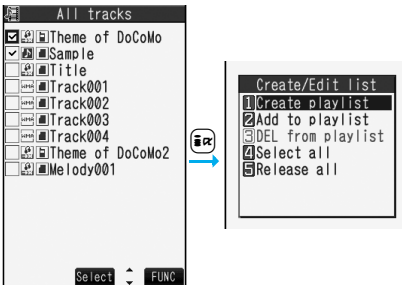
- The music files are stored in the displayed order.

#### DEL from playlist

..... Releases selected music files from the playlist. Select "YES". The operation is completed.

**Select all** .... Selects all the music files.

**Release all** ... Releases all the selected music files.




## 3

### Enter a playlist name.

- You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.

#### ■ When you want to immediately play back the playlist you have created/edited

From the Playlist List or the Music List of a Playlist, press

 (FUNC) and select "SW MUSIC player" to immediately switch to MUSIC Player.

#### Information

- You cannot add or release music files to or from the playlists created on a personal computer.
- In a playlist, you cannot store the partially saved Chaku-uta Full® music files or the files with playback restrictions expired.


## Play Back Playlist

## 1

### ▶ LifeKit ▶ MUSIC Player

▶ Playlist/SD-Audio ▶ Select a playlist


▶ Select a music file.

- Press  (Play) from the Playlist List to play back the music files from the top one in the selected playlist.
- When you operate from Data Box, you cannot play back music files as a playlist.

#### Information

- When you move a Chaku-uta Full® music file stored in a playlist by using "Move to microSD" or "Move to phone", "No file" appears in the playlist and you cannot play it back. Store it again.

### Function Menu of the Playlist List

| Function menu      | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------|---|
| Display in play    | See page 378.   |
| Player menu        | You can show the Player Menu display.   |
| SW MUSIC player    | You can switch to MUSIC Player from the Playlist List in Data Box.  |
| Play mode setting  | See page 378.   |
| Sound quality      | See page 378.   |
| Surround           | See page 378.   |
| Edit playlist name | You can edit the name of the playlist created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ Edit the playlist name.<br>• You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.   |
| Copy playlist      | ▶ Enter a playlist name.<br>• You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.<br>• When you copy the SD-Audio playlist or WMA playlist, it is copied to the FOMA phone as the FOMA playlist.   |
| Delete playlist    | You can delete the playlist created on the [From MUSIC FOMA phone. Player only]<br>▶ Select a deleting method.<br><b>Delete this</b><br>..... You can delete the playlist.<br><b>Delete selected</b><br>..... Select the playlists to be deleted, and press  (Finish).<br><b>Delete all</b><br>..... Enter your Terminal Security Code.<br>▶ YES |



| Function menu                                  | Operation/Explanation  |
|--|--|
| <b>Create playlist</b>                         | See page 381.  |
| <b>Add</b>                                     | You can add the music files to the playlist created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Put a check mark for the music files to be added</b> ▶  (Finish)<br>● The music files are stored at the end of the list in the displayed order. |
| <b>Delete playlist</b><br>[From Data Box only] | You can delete the playlist created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>DEL all playlists</b>                       | You can delete all the playlist created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Multiple-choice</b>                         | You can select and delete multiple playlists created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Put a check mark for playlists to be deleted</b> ▶  (FUNC) ▶ <b>Delete playlist</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Memory info</b>                             | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.   |

#### Information

##### <Copy playlist>

- You cannot copy the WMA playlist with no music files stored.

### Function Menu of the Music List of a Playlist

| Function menu            | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>Display in play</b>   | See page 378.   |
| <b>Player menu</b>       | See page 382.<br>● Playback state continues even when you show the Player Menu display.   |
| <b>SW MUSIC player</b>   | See page 382.   |
| <b>Play mode setting</b> | See page 378.   |
| <b>Sound quality</b>     | See page 378.   |
| <b>Surround</b>          | See page 378.   |
| <b>Music info</b>        | See page 379.   |
| <b>Add</b>               | See page 383.   |
| <b>Add to playlist</b>   | ▶ <b>Select a storing method.</b><br><b>Add one to P-list</b><br>..... You can store the music file.<br><b>Add some to P-list</b><br>..... Select the music files to be stored, and press  (Finish).<br>● The music files are stored in the displayed order.<br>▶ <b>Select a playlist you store music files to.</b><br>● If you select a playlist already stored, the storing is completed.<br>▶ <b>Enter a playlist name.</b> |

| Function menu            | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>DEL from playlist</b> | You can release the music files from the playlist created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Select a deleting method.</b><br><b>DEL one from list</b><br>..... You can release the music file.<br><b>DEL some from list</b><br>..... Select the music files to be released, and press  (Finish).<br><b>DEL all from list</b><br>..... You can delete the whole playlist.<br>▶ <b>YES</b> |
| <b>Display image</b>     | See page 379.   |
| <b>Display lyric</b>     | See page 379.   |
| <b>Create/Edit list</b>  | See page 381.   |
| <b>Order to play</b>     | You can change the order of playlist created on the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Select a file whose position is to be changed</b> ▶ Use  to change the position of the music file ▶  (Select)<br>Repeat the above procedure to change the order of the music files.<br>▶  (Set)   |
| <b>Listing</b>           | See page 380.   |
| <b>Memory info</b>       | You can display the used memory space (estimate)/number of stored items.  |

## About SD-Jukebox

**SD-Jukebox is the software program that enables you to record music files from CDs to a personal computer and to write them on the microSD memory card to play them back on P904i.**

- You can connect P904i to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) and write the recorded music files on the microSD memory card. (See page 354)
- Make sure to read “SD オーディオ簡易操作ガイド (SD-Audio simplified operation guide, the separate volume or PDF version on the provided CD-ROM)”, and Help of SD-Jukebox for how to use SD-Jukebox.

### Compatible data format

| Item          | Compatible data format               |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| Input format  | Music CD, WMA, MP3, WAV, MPEG-4 AAC  |
| Output format | WMA, MPEG-2 AAC, MPEG-2 AAC+SBR, MP3 |

- Some files cannot be converted depending on the environment of the personal computer.
- SD-Jukebox does not support playback/recording of the music CD of which the “ ” mark is not printed on the disc label surface.
- You can play back music files only in MPEG-2 AAC or MPEG-2 AAC+SBR format on P904i.

### Operating environment

**To use SD-Jukebox, you need to use the personal computer that satisfies the following performance:**

| Item                             | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Compatible OS (Japanese version) | Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional, Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition, Microsoft® Windows Vista™      |
| Necessary software               | DirectX® 8.1 or later<br>(When the software program is not installed, install it from the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM”) |

- Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to see “SD-Jukebox Help” (Manual). If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe Reader from the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” to see it. For details such as how to use it, refer to Adobe Reader Help.
- You can use SD-Jukebox for the personal computer with the SD memory card slot or the SD memory card reader/writer if these devices support the copyright protection function.

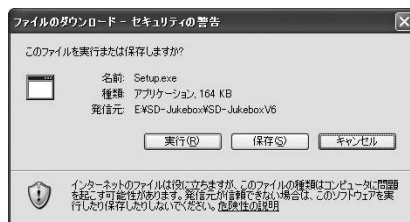
### Installing SD-Jukebox

**Set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” on a personal computer, click “エンターテインメントツール (Entertainment tool)” when the “TOP” display appears, and then click “インストール (Install)” on the SD-Jukebox program. The installer starts up. Operate following the onscreen instructions.**

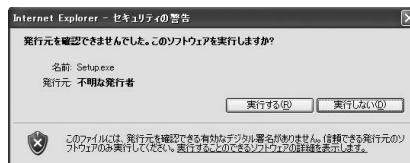
When you click “インストール (Install)”, an alert message might appear on the display as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but you can use your computer without any problem.

※ The display below is for when you use Windows® XP. It might differ depending on the environment of the personal computer you use.

- When the “ファイルのダウンロード – セキュリティの警告 (File download – Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行 (Execute)”.



- When the “Internet Explorer – セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer – Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行する (Execute)”.



- The recommended environment that the “TOP” display operates is Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. When the personal computer you use does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the “TOP” display does not appear after you set the CD-ROM, operate as follows:
  1. Click in “ファイル名を指定して実行 (Execute the specified file name)” from the start menu of Windows®.
  2. Enter “<CD-ROM drive ID>:\\$SD-Jukebox¥SD-JukeboxV6¥Setup.exe” and click “OK”.
 Then, operate following the onscreen instructions.
- You need to enter the serial number printed on a sticker of the attached CD-ROM for installing SD-Jukebox. You cannot install unless you enter the serial number, so keep the number with care.

For this software program, contact

**Panasonic Software Help Desk (In Japanese only)**  
**Everyday/Open: 9:00 - 20:00**

From landline phones 0120-853-334

From mobile phones 0570-087-555 (Charged)

※ Cannot be called from PHSS.

- Make sure that you dial the correct number.

- You can also refer to the web page.

<http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb/>

# Other Convenient Functions

|  |                             |     |
|--|-----------------------------|-----|
| Multiaccess .....  | ⟨Multiaccess⟩               | 386 |
| Multitask.....   | ⟨Multitask⟩                 | 386 |
| Informing You of an Incoming Call/Mail Message by Voice .....                | ⟨Reading Aloud⟩             | 388 |
| Turning Power On/Off Automatically at a Specified Time.....                  | ⟨Auto Power ON/OFF⟩         | 389 |
| Using Alarm.....   | ⟨Alarm⟩                     | 390 |
| Using Calendar to Manage Schedule .....                                      | ⟨Schedule⟩                  | 393 |
| Using ToDo to Manage Schedule .....  | ⟨ToDo⟩                      | 397 |
| Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm.....                                   | ⟨Alarm Setting⟩             | 398 |
| Using Your Original Menu .....   | ⟨Private Menu Setting⟩      | 398 |
| Storing Your Name, Mail Address and Other Information.....                   | ⟨Own Number⟩                | 399 |
| Recording Voice during a Call or Standby as Voice Memo<br>.....              | ⟨Voice Memo during a Call⟩  | 400 |
| Recording Images during a Videophone Call as a Movie Memo .....              | ⟨Movie Memo⟩                | 401 |
| Checking Call Duration and Cost .....  | ⟨Call Data⟩                 | 401 |
| Resetting Total Duration/Total Cost .....                                    | ⟨Reset Total Cost&Duration⟩ | 402 |
| Setting Call Cost Limit .....  | ⟨Notice Call Cost⟩          | 402 |
| Using Calculator .....   | ⟨Calculator⟩                | 402 |
| Making Free Memos .....  | ⟨Free Memo⟩                 | 403 |
| Copying/Deleting Data Items in FOMA Phone or UIM .....                       | ⟨UIM Operation⟩             | 403 |
| Making/Receiving Calls Using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch ..... |                             | 404 |
| Answering a Call Automatically when Earphone is Connected .....              | ⟨Automatic Answer⟩          | 405 |
| Using Bluetooth.....   | ⟨Bluetooth⟩                 | 405 |
| Resetting Function Settings.....   | ⟨Reset Settings⟩            | 412 |
| Deleting Stored Data All at Once.....  | ⟨Initialize⟩                | 413 |

## <Multiaccess>

# Multiaccess

Multiaccess enables you to simultaneously connect to three lines; a voice call, packet communication, and SMS.

See page 485 for details of combination of Multiaccess.

|   |             |
|---|-------------|
| Voice call  | Single line |
| i-mode, i-appli, i-mode mail, packet communication via PC | Single line |
| SMS   | Single line |

### Information

- You are charged a fee for each line during Multiaccess.

## Make a Voice Call during i-mode or during Packet Communication

You can make a voice call without disconnecting i-mode or packet communication.

### 1 During i-mode or packet communication

▶ ( ) (for at least one second)

The Stand-by display appears.

### 2 Make a call.

- If you make a videophone call during i-mode, i-mode is disconnected and the videophone call is made. After you finish the videophone call, the i-mode display returns.
- To switch the displays, press and hold ( ) for at least one second; or press ( ) and switch from TASK MENU. (See page 387)

## Receive a Voice Call during i-mode or during Packet Communication

You can receive a voice call without disconnecting i-mode or packet communication.

### 1 The Call Receiving display appears when a call comes in ▶ Press ( ) to answer the call.

- To switch the displays, press and hold ( ) for at least one second; or press ( ) and switch from TASK MENU. (See page 387)
- To return to the display for i-mode or packet communication without answering the call, press and hold ( ) for at least one second. Press and hold ( ) for at least one second again to return to the Call Receiving display.  
The caller hears not a message but a ringing tone.

## Use Communication during Voice Call

You can use i-mode, send/receive i-mode mail, etc, without disconnecting a voice call.

### 1 During a voice call ▶ ( )

Select an icon to operate each function.

- To switch the displays, press and hold ( ) for at least one second; or press ( ) and switch from TASK MENU. (See page 387)

### Information

- When a mail message or Message R/F comes in during a call, the ring tone does not sound and illumination does not flicker regardless of the "Receiving display" setting.
- A ring tone sounds and the Receiving Result display appears when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred" except for the following cases:
  - During communication
  - While a camera is activated
  - When an i-appli program set for the Stand-by display is running as an ordinary i-appli program
- When you perform packet communication via a personal computer, make a call-out operation from the personal computer during a voice call.

## <Multitask>

# Multitask

The FOMA phone supports "Multitask" that enables you to use up to three functions such as menu functions (see page 31) at the same time.

By combining Multiaccess and Multitask, you can use following functions simultaneously (see page 486 for the combination patterns of Multitask):

#### ■ Mail group

i-mode mail and SMS functions

#### ■ i-mode group

Menu functions inside "i-mode group" on the Main menu

#### ■ Setting group

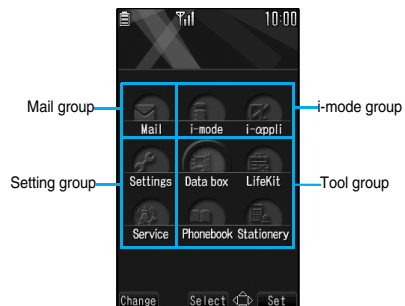
Menu functions inside "Setting group" on the Main menu

#### ■ Tool group

Menu functions inside "Tool group" on the Main menu

#### ■ Other functions which do not belong to the groups

Voice call, videophone call, 64K data communication, etc.



## Start Another Function

### 1 When a function is running


▶ Start another function.




When a function in the Tool group is running

### ■ To check usage status of functions

#### To check with icons

“” ... Displayed when a single function is used.

“” ... Displayed when multiple functions are used.

#### To check with TASK MENU

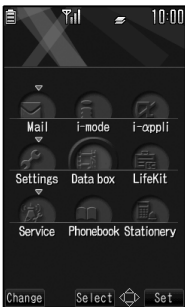


Press .

The menu list for functions in use is displayed.

You can also switch functions by selecting a function from the list.

### ■ To check a group in Multitask



When “Menu icon setting” is set to “Asphalt”, “Champagne”, “Rose”, or “Platinum”, “♥” or another mark is added to the icon of the group that is being used. When set to “Normal” or “Customize”, it is framed.

### ■ When you call up a menu function

If another menu function in the same group has already been called up, the confirmation display appears asking whether to switch the functions.


Select “YES” to close the current menu function and the new menu function will be called up.

If you try to start up another function when three functions have already been started up, “Cannot start any more functions” is displayed.



### Information

- You are charged a call fee even when you are running other functions during a call.
- If a call comes in while another function is working, the call might not be received correctly. In that case, “Record message” or “Call Forwarding Service” may start in a shorter time than the ring time specified for them.
- If you use Multitask to switch functions while executing another function whose load of processing is high, delay may occur in displaying operation, and so on.

## Switch Displays



When multiple menu functions are working, you can switch the displays by pressing and holding  for at least one second. The display switches from the latest one in chronological order.

### Information

- The Stand-by display appears by pressing and holding  for at least one second from other than the Main menu and the display on which sub-menu items are shown.
- Even if you press  to switch the displays, neither menu function in use is closed nor the call is disconnected. Also, even when you switch the Character Entry display (see page 416) to another menu and use that menu for editing text, you can continue the previous text editing if you switch tasks.

## Exit a Function

To close a menu function, press  with the menu function displayed.

- Press  ( End) from TASK MENU, and select “YES” to close all menu functions and to return to the Stand-by display.

<Reading Aloud>


## Informing You of an Incoming Call/Mail Message by Voice

You can set to be notified of incoming calls by voice instead of a ring tone, or to have the mail contents automatically read aloud. Further, the voice guidance instructs you through the operations of Voice Dial or Search by Voice. This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

### Read Aloud Settings

|                     |     |
|---------------------|-----|
| Setting at purchase | OFF |
|---------------------|-----|

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings  
▶ Voice settings ▶ Read aloud settings  
▶ ON or OFF

- 2 Put a check mark for items to be read aloud  

#### Voice dial

... Instructs you through the Voice Dial operation by voice guidance.

#### Search by voice

... Instructs you through the Voice Search operation by voice guidance.

#### Incoming call

... Notifies you of the caller information by voice while a voice call is coming in.

#### Videophone incoming

... Notifies you of the caller information by voice while a videophone call is coming in.

#### Number of mails/messages.

... Notifies you of the number of mail messages/ Messages R/F by voice at reception. The setting of "Mail/Msg. ring time" is invalid.

#### Mail list

... Reads aloud the sender/destination address and subject on the Inbox/Outbox List.

#### Displaying mail



... Reads aloud the sender/destination address, subject, and text on the detailed mail display. However, the voice guidance is not provided when a melody is automatically played back while "Auto melody play" is set to "ON".

#### Send mail preview

- ... Reads aloud the destination address and text when previewed.
- You can stop the voice guidance for a mail message midway by pressing any key. However, it continues if you scroll the display.
  - The voice guidance is not provided for mail messages stored on the microSD memory card.

### Read Aloud Volume

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Setting at purchase | Level 4 |
|---------------------|---------|

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings  
▶ Voice settings ▶ Read aloud volume  
▶ Use  to adjust the volume.

### Read Aloud Output

|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Setting at purchase | Speaker |
|---------------------|---------|

You can set whether to play back the voice guidance from the speaker or hear it from the earpiece.

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings  
▶ Voice settings ▶ Read aloud output  
▶ Speaker or Earpiece


#### Information

- The voice guidance of "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming" and "Number of mails/messages." is output from the speaker even when this function is set to "Earpiece".
- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the voice guidance is output according to the setting of "Earphone" of "External option". However, when "Read aloud output" is set to "Earpiece" and "Earphone" of "External option" is set to "Earphone+Speaker", the voice guidance is output from the earphone except for "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming" and "Number of mails/messages".
- From a Hands-free device, the voice guidance for "Incoming call" and "Videophone incoming" only might be provided.
- You might not be able to stop the voice guidance even by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option).

### Read Aloud Valid Setting

|                     |        |
|---------------------|--------|
| Setting at purchase | Normal |
|---------------------|--------|

You can set the voice guidance to be provided only when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected.

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings  
▶ Voice settings ▶ Read aloud valid set.  
▶ Normal or Earphone

**Normal.** . . . Always provides the voice guidance.

**Earpiece.** . . . Provides the voice guidance only when the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is connected.

#### Information

- When you set to "Earphone", the voice guidance continues even if you remove the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch during the voice guidance. When a call comes in while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is removed, the voice guidance does not start even if you connect it.

## ■Rules of Voice Guidance

The contents of Phonebook entries and mail messages are read aloud generally according to the rules as described below:

- They may not be read aloud as specified in the following rules depending on the function you use:

### <Numerics>

- A numeric string up to 16 digits is read aloud as a number. When a numeric string begins with "0" or it is identified as a URL or mail address, it is read aloud digit by digit rather than as a number.

<Example> 12345: イチマンニセンサンビャクヨンジュウゴ

- When numerals are separated by "/" or ".", they are read aloud as dates.

<Example> 2007/11/15 (2007.11.15)

: ニセンナナネンジュウイチガツジュウゴニチ

07/11/15 (07.11.15)

: ゼロナナネンジュウイチガツジュウゴニチ

- "1日" is differently read aloud for the meaning of the date (1st date of a month) and for others. The kanji characters of dates other than "1日" are always read aloud as for the dates.

<Example> 11月1日: ジュウイチガツツイタチ  
1日後: イチニチゴ

- When numerals are separated by ".", they are read aloud as time.

<Example> 10:30: ジュウジサンジュッポン  
AM 10:30: ゴゼンジュウジサンジュッポン  
22:30:30: ニジュウニサンジュッポンサンジュウビョウ

- "¥", "(" and ")" contained in a phone number or zip code are not read aloud, and numbers only are read aloud.

<Example> 090-1234-xxxx: ゼロキューゼロイチニサンヨンxxxx

- When a numeric string begins with "¥", "\$", "Φ", or "£", it is read aloud as the meaning of money amount. When "¥" is used, the numeric string before "¥" is identified as money amount and that after "¥" is identified as a number, unless it is separated by every three digits.

<Example> ¥980: キューヒャクハチジュウエン  
¥2,980: ニセンキューヒャクハチジュウエン  
¥29,80: ニジュウキューエンハチジュウ

- "(Numeral) 分の (numeral)" is read as a fraction.

### <Alphabet>

- Alphabetical letters are read aloud according to the voice guidance dictionary pre-installed in the FOMA phone.
- When a word consists of four or more letters and can be read in romaji-reading, it is read aloud in romaji-reading.
- The alphabetical letters after a numeral might be read aloud as a unit.
- "M", "T", "S", and "H" before a date are converted to the Japanese era name and then read aloud.
- Alphabetical letters other than above are read aloud in alphabetical reading.

### <Symbol>

- Reads aloud according to the Symbol List. When the same symbol continues three times or more, that symbol is not read aloud.

- "ハンション" is read aloud for the following character strings: "Re:", "Re>", "Re2:", "Re2>" and "Re2\*\*"

- "テンソー" is read aloud for the following character strings: "Fw:", "Fw>", "Fw2:", "Fw2>", "Fw2\*\*", "Fwd:", "Fwd>", "Fwd2:", "Fwd2>" and "Fwd2\*\*"

- When symbols for "Reply" or "Forward" are consecutively repeated, they are read aloud only once.

<Example> Re:Re: ハンション

Fw>Fw:: テンソー

Re:Fw:Fw:Re:Re:Re:: ハンションテンソーハンション

### <Pictograph>

- Reads aloud according to the Pictograph List.

### <Smiley>

- Smileys are read aloud according to the dictionary pre-installed in the FOMA phone. When they are identified as a URL or mail address, however, they are read aloud as symbols.

### <Other items>

- Texts are read aloud separated by punctuation marks and symbols such as "!", or "?".

- When the kanji character that expresses the day of the week is put between "(" and ")", it is read aloud as the day of the week.

<Example> 11/15(木): ジュウイチガツジュウゴニチモクヨロビ

- Words might not be correctly read aloud depending on the context of the text (especially place names and proper nouns).

## <Auto Power ON/OFF>

# Turning Power On/Off Automatically at a Specified Time

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| Setting at purchase | Auto power ON: OFF<br>Auto power OFF: OFF |
|---------------------|---|

## 1 Settings Clock

### ▶ Auto power ON/OFF

### ▶ Auto power ON or Auto power OFF

### ▶ Select an item.

**OFF** . . . Does not set Auto Power ON/OFF. The setting is completed.

**1 time** . . . Sets to turn on/off the power automatically at the specified time only once.

**Daily** . . . Sets to turn on/off the power automatically at a specified time everyday repeatedly.

## 2 Enter a time.

- Enter the time on 24-hour basis.

**Information**

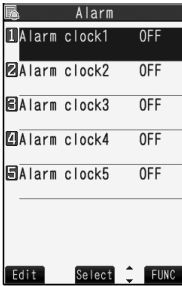
- When you set “Auto power ON” and “Auto power OFF” to the same time, and the specified time arrives, the FOMA phone will turn on if it is turned off, and the FOMA phone will turn off, if it is turned on.
- When you set “Auto power OFF” to the same time of an alarm or schedule alarm, the alarm or schedule alarm preferentially works.
- Even when you set “Auto power OFF”, the power does not turn off at the specified time if other than the Stand-by display is displayed. The power turns off after the function in working is finished.
- Turn off the FOMA phone after setting “Auto power ON” to “OFF” when you are near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals, or where the use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

**<Alarm>**  
**Using Alarm**

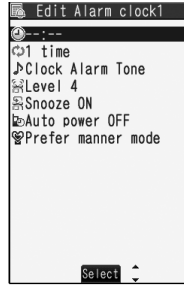
Setting at purchase    OFF

You can set Alarm to alert you at the specified time with an alarm tone, animation and illumination. You can store up to five alarms.

**1** **Stationery** ▶ **Alarm**






**2** Highlight an alarm and press (**Edit**)  
▶ Do the following operations.



- Select the stored alarm or press (**FUNC**) then select “Display detail” to confirm the stored contents.
- To set Alarm to “OFF”, press (**FUNC**), and select “Release this” or “Release all”, then select “YES”.

| Item           | Operation/Explanation   |
|----------------|---|
| (Time setting) | ▶ Enter the time for sounding the alarm.<br>• Enter the time on 24-hour basis.<br>• You cannot set the same time as the time set for the stored alarm.  |
| (Repeat)       | ▶ Select a type of repeat.<br>1 time . . . . . Does not repeat (just once). The setting for Repeat is completed.<br>Daily . . . . . Sets the alarm to sound every day. “D” is displayed on the detailed display. The setting for Repeat is completed.<br>Select day . . . Sets the alarm for the specified day of the week.<br>▶ Put a check mark for days of the week to be set  ( <b>Finish</b> )<br>• “” is displayed on the detailed display. |
| (Alarm tone)   | ▶ Select a type of alarm tone<br>▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an alarm tone.  |
| (Volume)       | ▶ Use  to adjust the volume.<br>• If you set “Step”, the alarm tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every about three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.  |



| Item  | Operation/Explanation  |
|---|--|
| <br><b>(Snooze setting)</b>      | <p>You can set whether to activate Snooze. If you set to "OFF", set the duration that the alarm tone is to continue sounding.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select "ON", the setting is completed.</li> <li>• See page 391 for how Snooze works.</li> </ul> <p>▶ <b>Enter a ring time (minutes).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter from "01" through "10" in two digits.</li> </ul> |
| <br><b>(Auto power ON)</b>      | <p>You can set whether to turn on the power automatically to make an alarm sound when the alarm time arrives during power off.</p> <p>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></p>   |
| <br><b>(Prefer manner mode)</b> | <p>You can set the alarm tone which sounds at the specified time during Manner Mode.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Prefer manner mode</b></p> <p>... Sounds at the same volume as set for "Alarm volume" on page 135.</p> <p><b>Prefer alarm</b></p> <p>... Sounds at the volume set for this function.</p>  |


**3** Press  (**Finish**).


### Information

- If the alarm tone sounds during a call, press any key to stop it. Once again press any key to end the alarm including Snooze. If the other party on the phone hangs up, an alarm including Snooze ends.
- During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
- If any of the following events occurs in Snooze state, Snooze is released:
  - When you receive a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call
  - When you receive a mail message or Message R/F while "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred"
  - When you receive a location provision request while "Location request menu" or the setting by service is set to other than "OFF"
- When you set the power to automatically turn on and an alarm to sound, the default alarm tone sounds if the alarm which is affected by the UIM restrictions has been selected.
- Turn off the FOMA phone after setting "Auto power ON" to "OFF" when you are near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals, or where the use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

### ■ When you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"


If you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo", the icons appear on the desktop.

""... Displayed when an alarm is set for today (except the setting for past time).

""... Displayed when an alarm is set for tomorrow or onward only.

- If you set "Display" of "Clock display" to "OFF", or set the alarm of the stored schedule event/ToDo item to "OFF", the icons are not displayed.

### ■ When the time specified for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "ToDo" comes

The alarm sounds for about five minutes (in the case of "Alarm", the alarm sounds for specified time), and illumination lights. The vibrator works as you set for "Phone" of "Vibrator". If you set "Snooze setting" of "Alarm" to "ON", the alarm sounds for about one minute at an interval of five minutes, up to six times, until Snooze is released by pressing . During a call, the alarm sounds from the earpiece three times repeatedly. The set alarm message and an animation or i-motion movie linking to the selected icon appear on the display.

- During operations

By "Alarm setting", you can set the way of notifying during operations. (See page 398)

- When you set some alarms to the same time

The alarm sounds in the following priority order of "Alarm"→"ToDo"→"Schedule". A missed schedule event or ToDo is notified by the "Missed alarm" icon.

- When the power is turned off

<Alarm>

When "Auto power ON" is set to "ON", the power automatically turns on to make an alarm notification sound. When the auto-power setting is set to "OFF", an alarm does not sound with the power stayed off. Even after turning the power on, the "Missed alarm" icon is not displayed.

<Schedule/ToDo>

The alarm does not sound. The "Missed alarm" icon is not displayed even after turning the power on.

● In Manner Mode

<Alarm>

The vibrator works and illumination lights. However, the alarm sounds if you have set the operations for Manner Mode to "Original" and set "Alarm vol." to other than "Silent" in that setting.

<Schedule/ToDo>

The vibrator works, a message is displayed and illumination lights. However, the alarm sounds if you have set the operations for Manner Mode to "Original" and set "Phone vol." to other than "Silent" in that setting.

● During Lock All and Personal Data Lock

The alarm does not sound. After releasing Lock All or Personal Data Lock, the "Missed alarm" icon is displayed to inform you of the missed alarm. Further, if the power is turned off, the power does not turn on and the "Missed alarm" icon does not appear even after releasing Lock All or Personal Data Lock.

● While SD-PIM is activated or during infrared exchange

The alarm tone does not sound.


After each function is finished, the "Missed alarm" icon is displayed.

● While updating a software program

The alarm does not sound.

When the specified time comes during rewriting the software program, the "Missed alarm" icon is not displayed even after updating is completed.

■ To clear alarm tone/alarm message, and animation/i-motion movie from the display

Press any key to stop the alarm tone but the animation/i-motion movie changes to a still image and the alarm message remains displayed. Press any key again (press  if you set "Snooze setting" of "Alarm" to "ON") to clear the display. However, you cannot clear the alarm message for the schedule event by pressing a side key, with the FOMA phone closed. When a call comes in, the alarm stops sounding.

**Information**



- You might not be able to set some i-motion movies or Chaku-uta Full® music files for the alarm.
- Some i-motion movies set for the alarm might be played back only with sound at the specified time.
- The Chaku-uta Full® music file set for the alarm is played back only with sound at the specified time. The illumination for when you play back a demo to select an alarm tone might differ from for when you are notified by an alarm.

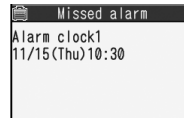
■ When "Alarm" did not work

When Alarm did not work, "Missed alarm" icon is displayed on the desktop. You can check that icon for the contents of the missed alarm (Missed alarm information).

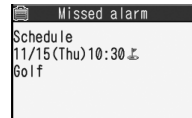
The latest missed alarm information that could not be notified is displayed.

1. Stand-by display  Select  Miss

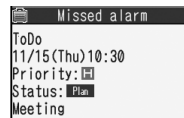
- Press  or  to return to the former display.
- After checking the missed alarm information, the "Missed alarm" icon is cleared.



For Alarm



For Schedule



For ToDo

**Information**

- If you set "Alarm setting" to "Alarm preferred" and the alarm time has come when you are dialing, the alarm sounds after calling up the other party. If the alarm time has come when receiving a call, the alarm sounds after starting communication.

# Using Calendar to Manage Schedule

You can display the calendar by month or week to check the stored schedule events.

You can display or store from January 1, 2007 through December 31, 2037.

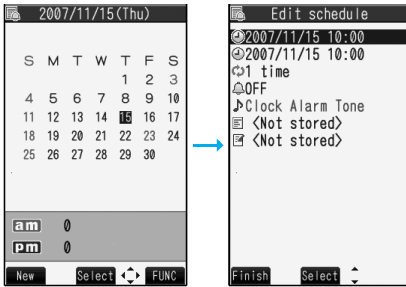
- See page 391 for how alarm works.

## Store Schedule Events

When the specified date and time come, an alarm tone, an illumination, alarm message (summary or contents of the schedule event) and an animation corresponding to the set icon notify you of the schedule event.

You can store up to 1,000 schedule events.

- 1 ▶ Stationery ▶ Schedule ▶ (New) ▶ Schedule ▶ Do the following operations.



Calendar display

| Item                  | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------------|--|
| [Date setting (from)] | ▶ Enter the date and time for starting the schedule.<br>• Enter the time on 24-hour basis. |
| [Date setting (to)]   | ▶ Enter the date and time for ending the schedule.<br>• Enter the time on 24-hour basis.   |

| Item            | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------|--|
| (Repeat)        | ▶ Select a type of repeat.<br><b>1 time</b> . . . . . Does not repeat (just once). The setting for Repeat is completed.<br><b>Daily</b> . . . . . Sets the same schedule event daily. The setting for Repeat is completed.<br><b>Select day</b> . . . Sets the schedule event for the specified day of the week.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Every schedule event set by repeat (Daily/Select day) is counted as one event.</li> </ul> ▶ Put a check mark for days of the week to be set ▶  (Finish) |
| (Alarm)         | ▶ Select an alarm method.<br><b>ON</b><br>. . . Alerts you at the time of the starting date/time you set. The setting for alarm notification is completed.<br><b>ON/Set time</b><br>. . . Alerts you at the time set as the prenotification.<br><b>OFF</b><br>. . . Does not alert. The setting for alarm notification is completed.<br>▶ Enter how many minutes before the specified time to be alerted.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.</li> </ul> |
| (Alarm tone)    | ▶ Select a type of alarm tone<br>▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an alarm tone.   |
| (Edit summary)  | ▶ Enter the summary of the schedule event.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>   |
| (Edit schedule) | ▶ Enter schedule contents.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul> ▶ Select an icon.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "  " through "  " are displayed if you set the user icon.</li> <li>• When the alarm tone alerts you, the animation corresponding to the selected icon is displayed.</li> <li>• When you press  (Finish) without entering contents, "Plans" is displayed.</li> </ul>                                 |

## 2 Press (Finish).



• The following icons appear on the display depending on the setting:

: Alarm sounds.

: Repeats daily.

: Repeats on the specified day of the week.

### ■ When you attempt to set two schedule events to the same date and time

You can set the schedule events to the same setting time only by a combination of “Repeat” (Daily/Select day) and “1 time”. When both two events are set to “1 time” or “Repeat” (Daily/Select day), the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite on each.

When one event is set to “1 time” and the other is set to “Repeat”, the confirmation display appears telling that “1 time” has priority.

### Information

- For the schedule event stored as secret data, an animation for secret data appears when the alarm sounds in ordinary mode (not in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”). An alarm message is not displayed.
- During standby, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for “Phone” of “Ring volume”. During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for “Volume” (earpiece volume).
- If you set an i-motion movie, Chaku-uta Full® music file, “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” as an alarm tone for the schedule event set with an i-motion user icon, the set user icon becomes invalid.
- You cannot set the i-motion user icon for the schedule event set with an i-motion movie, Chaku-uta Full® music file, “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” as an alarm tone.

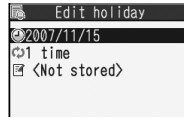
### ■ Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the stored contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

## Store Holidays/Anniversaries

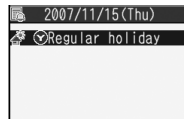
You can store up to 100 holidays and anniversaries; one each per day.

- 1 ▶ Stationery ▶ Schedule ▶ (New) ▶ Holiday or Anniversary ▶ Do the following operations.



| Item                              | Operation/Explanation   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (Date setting)                    | ▶ Enter the date.   |
| (Repeat)                          | ▶ Select a type of repeat.<br><b>1 time</b> . . . . . Does not repeat (just once).<br><b>Annually</b> . . . . . Sets the same holiday/ anniversary for every year.<br>• The holiday or anniversary set for repeat (Annually) is counted as one event. |
| (Edit holiday) (Edit anniversary) | ▶ Enter the contents of the holiday or anniversary.<br>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.   |

## 2 Press (Finish).



The holiday () or anniversary () you set is stored.

: Repeats yearly.

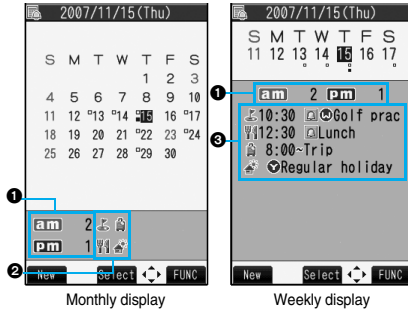
## Check Schedule Events

You can check the details of schedule events, holidays, or anniversaries.

### 1 Stationary ▶ Schedule

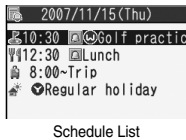
The Calendar display appears.

- The selected date is highlighted and the schedule events of the day are displayed at the bottom of the display.
- Display on the Calendar
  - ☐: Today
  - ☐: Schedule set for a.m.
  - : Schedule set for p.m.
- Holidays are displayed in red, and anniversaries are marked with a red circle.



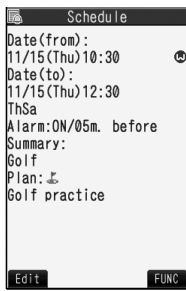
- Monthly display                      Weekly display
- 1 Number of schedule events
  - 2 The icons of schedule events, holidays and anniversaries
  - 3 The icons and contents of schedule events, holidays and anniversaries

### 2 Select a date.



The Schedule List for the selected date is displayed in time order.

### 3 Select a schedule event, holiday, or anniversary.



Detailed Schedule display



## Information

- National holidays on the calendar are conformance with “Law on National Holidays” (Law No.178, 1948) and its partially revised laws enforced up to May 2005. Spring Equinox Day and Autumn Equinox Day are announced on the official gazette of February 1 in the previous year, therefore, they may differ from the days on the calendar.
- On the Monthly Calendar display, the icons for a holiday and anniversary appear in the p.m. field.
- For a scheduled event that continues two days or more, ☐ (Schedule set for a.m.) is added to the dates.



## Function Menu of the Calendar Display


| Function menu                          | Operation/Explanation   |
|--|---|
| <b>New</b>                             | ▶ Select an item.<br><b>Schedule</b> . . . . . Go to step 1 on page 393.<br><b>Holiday</b> . . . . . Go to step 1 on page 394.<br><b>Anniversary</b> . . . Go to step 1 on page 394.  |
| <b>Monthly display/ Weekly display</b> | You can switch the Calendar displays.<br>▶ Monthly display or Weekly display  |
| <b>Setting at purchase</b>             | Monthly display   |
| <b>Icon display</b>                    | ▶ Select an icon to be displayed.<br>The Schedule Event List for the selected icon is displayed.<br>• Select a schedule event to display the details.   |
| <b>User icon set.</b>                  | See page 396.   |
| <b>No. of schedules</b>                | You can display the number of schedule events, holidays, and anniversaries. You can display the number of the schedule events stored as secret data during Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b>                | See page 151.   |
| <b>Send all Ir data</b>                | See page 360.   |
| <b>All transmission</b>                | See page 362.   |
| <b>Delete past</b>                     | You can delete the schedule events, holidays or anniversaries stored for up to a preceding day of the selected day.<br>▶ Select an item to be deleted ▶ YES   |
| <b>Delete all</b>                      | You can delete all the schedule events, holidays or anniversaries.<br>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ Select an item to be deleted ▶ YES<br>• When you delete all holidays, the setting for national holidays will be reset. |

| Function menu        | Operation/Explanation   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Reset holiday</b> | You can restore the national holidays you deleted to its default. You cannot reset the holidays you have set.<br>▶ <b>YES</b> |

| Information  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>&lt;Icon display&gt;</b>  |  |
| ● On the Icon display, the repeated schedule (“  ” or “  ”) is displayed as a single event. For the date, the nearest date of the schedule event is displayed. |  |

## User Icon Setting

If you store still images, animations, or i-motion movies as user icons, those stored images are displayed to notify you of the schedule event. Up to five user icons can be stored and they are displayed as “” through “” on the Icon Selection display.

- Calendar display/Schedule List/Detailed Schedule display ▶  (FUNC)  
▶ **User icon set.** ▶ **<Not recorded>**





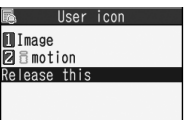
- When no still image, animation, or i-motion movie is stored, you cannot select “User icon set.”
- To change the stored user icon, select it.

- Select a type of user icon  
▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select an image.**


- When the selected image is large, it is displayed at the position set by “Positioning”.

| Information                                   |  |
|---|--|
| ● You cannot set some images for a user icon. |  |

| To release the setting for user icons  |  |
|--|--|
|  | Select “Release all” from the display in step 1, and select “YES”.<br><br>The icon of the schedule event that has used the released icon changes to “  ”. |

| To release only a selected user icon   |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
|  | Select “Release this” in step 2. |

## Function Menu of the Schedule List/Detailed Schedule Display

| Function menu                    | Operation/Explanation  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>New</b>                       | ▶ <b>Select an item.</b><br><b>Schedule</b> . . . . . Go to step 1 on page 393.<br><b>Holiday</b> . . . . . Go to step 1 on page 394.<br><b>Anniversary</b> . . . Go to step 1 on page 394.  |
| <b>Edit</b>                      | Go to step 1 on page 393 for the schedule event. Go to step 1 on page 394 for the holiday and anniversary.<br>● You can edit also by pressing  (Edit).<br>● You cannot edit national holidays.  |
| <b>Copy</b>                      | You can copy the schedule event, holiday or anniversary and store it for another date.<br>▶ <b>Enter the date and time you are pasting to.</b><br>Go to step 1 on page 393 for the schedule event. Go to step 1 on page 394 for the holiday and anniversary.<br>● Even if the copy source is set to “Repeat (Daily/Select day/Annually)”, the pasted one is set to “1 time”.<br>● You cannot copy national holidays. |
| <b>Calendar display</b>          | You can return to the calendar display from the Icon display. You can operate this only when the Icon display is displayed.  |
| <b>Icon display</b>              | You can display schedule events by icon. (See page 395)  |
| <b>User icon set.</b>            | See page 396.  |
| <b>Set secret/Release secret</b> | You can have the schedule event set to or release from secret.<br>▶ <b>YES</b><br>● When you select “Set secret” in ordinary mode (not in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only”), enter your Terminal Security Code.   |
| <b>Compose message</b>           | You can compose an i-mode mail whose text contains the date and contents of the schedule event.<br>Go to step 2 on page 232.   |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>            | You can attach the schedule events to i-mode mail to send.<br>Go to step 2 on page 232.  |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Send Ir data</b>     | See page 359.  |
| <b>Send all Ir data</b> | See page 360.  |
| <b>Transmission</b>     | See page 361.  |
| <b>All transmission</b> | See page 362.  |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>  | You can copy the schedule event to the microSD memory card. (See page 349)   |
| <b>Delete this</b>      | <p>▶ <b>YES</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you delete a schedule event, holiday or anniversary set for repeat (Daily/Select day/Annually), the all data items set for repeat will be deleted.</li> <li>• You can delete national holidays only by "Delete this".</li> </ul> |
| <b>Delete past</b>      | The schedule events stored for up to a preceding day of the selected day are deleted. (See page 395)   |
| <b>Delete select</b>    | ▶ <b>Put a check mark for schedule events to be deleted</b> ▶ (Finish) ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete all</b>       | You can delete all schedule events, holidays or anniversaries. You can operate this only when the Icon display is displayed. (See page 395)  |

<ToDo>

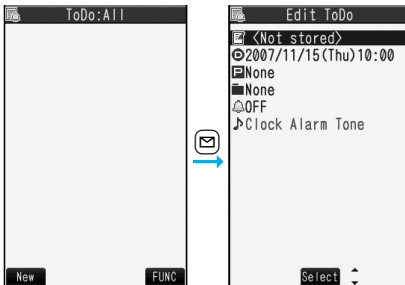


## Using ToDo to Manage Schedule

You can manage your schedule events in the list and make an alarm tone sound when the specified time comes. You can store up to 100 ToDo items to manage your schedule.

• See page 391 for how alarm works.

- 1 ▶ **Stationery** ▶ **ToDo** ▶ (New)  
▶ Do the following operations.



- If ToDo items are already stored, select "New" from the Function menu.
- Select a stored ToDo item to check the stored contents.

| Item               | Operation/Explanation  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>(Edit ToDo)</b> | <p>▶ <b>Enter text (ToDo contents).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul> |

| Item                | Operation/Explanation  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>(Due date)</b>   | <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Enter date.</b> . . . . . Enter the date (due date) directly.</p> <p><b>Choose date.</b> . . . . . Select a date (due date) from the calendar. Check the date and press  (Set).</p> <p><b>No date.</b> . . . . . Does not set the date (due date). The alarm does not work.</p>  |
| <b>(Priority)</b>   | <p>▶ <b>Select a priority.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you sort the items in due date order, the items for the same date are displayed from the higher priority.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>(Category)</b>   | ▶ <b>Select a category.</b>  |
| <b>(Alarm)</b>      | <p>▶ <b>Select an alarm method.</b></p> <p><b>ON.</b> . . . . . Alerts you at the set time. The setting for alarm notification is completed.</p> <p><b>ON/Set time.</b> . . . Alerts you at the time set as the prenotification.</p> <p><b>OFF.</b> . . . . . Does not alert you. The setting for alarm notification is completed.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter how many minutes before the specified time to be alerted.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.</li> </ul> |
| <b>(Alarm tone)</b> | <p>▶ <b>Select a type of alarm tone</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an alarm tone.</b></p>   |

- 2 Press (Finish).








- H**: Priority high
- L**: Priority low

- If you do not enter text (ToDo contents), "Finish" is not displayed, and you cannot store the ToDo item.

### Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the stored contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

## Function Menu while ToDo Item is Displayed

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation   |
|---|---|
| <b>New</b>  | Go to step 1 on page 397.   |
| <b>Edit</b>   | Go to step 1 on page 397. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can edit also by pressing  (Edit).</li> <li>To edit "Completion date" of the ToDo item set with "Completion", select , and perform the same operation as in "Due date" of step 1 on page 397.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Change status</b>  | The set status icons are displayed on the ToDo List. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Select a status.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The status icons switch from blue to red after the due date.</li> <li>If you select "Completion", perform the same operation as in "Due date" of step 1 on page 397.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |
| <b>Category display</b>   | <b>Select a category.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a ToDo item to display the details of it.</li> </ul>  |
| Setting at purchase<br>All  |   |
| <b>Sort/Filter</b>  | You can sort ToDo items for display. You can also list them up by the specified status. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Select the order or state you want to display.</b></li> </ul>   |
| Setting at purchase<br>By entered time  |   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b>   | See page 151.   |
| <b>Attach to mail</b>   | You can attach the ToDo items to i-mode mail to send.<br>Go to step 2 on page 232.  |
| <b>Send Ir data</b>   | See page 359.   |
| <b>Send all Ir data</b>   | See page 360.   |
|  <b>transmission</b>      | See page 361.   |
| <b>All  transmission</b> | See page 362.   |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>  | You can copy the ToDo item to the microSD memory card. (See page 349)   |
| <b>Delete this</b>  | <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete select</b>  | <b>Put a check mark for ToDo items to be deleted</b>  <b>Finish</b> <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Delete completed</b>   | You can delete the "Completion" ToDo items. <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Delete all</b>   | <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b> <b>YES</b>   |

### Information

- During standby, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Phone" or "Ring volume". During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).

## <Alarm Setting>

# Setting Operating Conditions of Alarm

Setting at purchase Alarm preferred

You can set whether to make an alarm notification of "Alarm", "Schedule" and "ToDo", for when operating another function.

-  **Settings** **Clock** **Alarm setting**  
**Operation preferred or Alarm preferred**

### Operation preferred

... Alerts you only during the Stand-by display.

### Alarm preferred

... Alerts you even when you are operating the FOMA phone or during a call.

### Information

- When you could not be alerted, the "Missed alarm" icon appears on the desktop.

## <Private Menu Setting>


# Using Your Original Menu

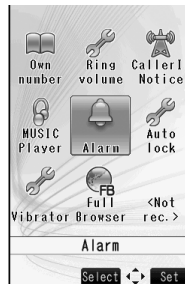
Setting at purchase Own number Ring volume  
Caller ID notification MUSIC Player  
Alarm Auto lock Vibrator  
Full Browser

You can store frequently used functions in the Private menu.

You can store a total of nine items from respective functions in "Phonebook", "Settings", "Data box", "LifeKit", "Stationery", "Service", "i-mode", "Mail", and "i-appli" (see page 456).


## Select a Function from the Private Menu

- Press  twice.



Private menu

Private menu is displayed.

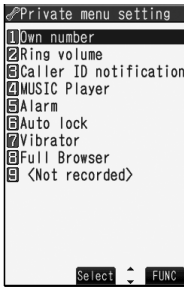
- Press  (Set) to display the Private Menu List.
- If you have not touched any keys for at least 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

- Select an icon.

The display for the selected function is displayed.



1 Settings ▶ Display  
▶ Private menu setting



Private Menu List

Function Menu of the Private Menu List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |                     |          |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------|----------|
| <b>Add to menu</b>      | You can store the frequently used function in the Private menu.<br>▶ <b>Select a function to be stored.</b><br>● Press  to display the storable functions by main menu item or sub-menu item. Press  to highlight the function you store.            |                     |          |
| <b>Change BG image</b>  | ▶ <b>Select a folder</b> ▶ <b>Select an image.</b><br><table border="1" style="width: 100%; margin-top: 5px;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Setting at purchase</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Standard</td> </tr> </table> | Setting at purchase | Standard |
| Setting at purchase     |  |                     |          |
| Standard                |  |                     |          |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b> | See page 151.  |                     |          |
| <b>Reset menu</b>       | You can reset the Private menu to the default.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |                     |          |
| <b>Release this</b>     | ▶ <b>YES</b>   |                     |          |
| <b>Release all</b>      | ▶ <b>YES</b>   |                     |          |

**Information**

- <Add to menu>
- For "i-mode", "oppli", and "Mail", you can store only the main menu items of the menu function. Functions in the main menu items cannot be stored.
- <Change BG image>
- The image you can set is a JPEG or GIF image whose size is VGA (480 x 640) or smaller and up to 100 Kbytes. Perform "Change size" or "Trim away" for other images to set. However, when you set a GIF animation, the first frame is displayed.

<Own Number>

## Storing Your Name, Mail Address and Other Information

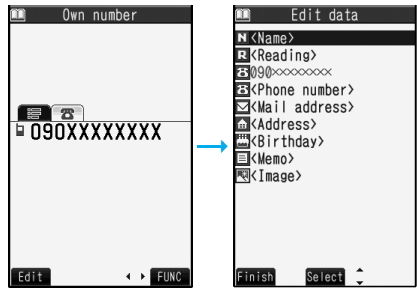
In addition to the phone number (own number) you have signed up, you can store your personal information such as your name, reading of your name, phone numbers (up to three), mail addresses (up to three), a postal address, a birthday, memorandums, and a still image.

If you change the mail address or register a secret code, change the mail address in this function as well.

1 Phonebook ▶ Own number



▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.



Perform the operation in step 2 on page 109 to store personal information.



- You cannot change or delete own number.
- If you have already entered your Terminal Security Code by operating another function such as "Display all data", the display for entering your Terminal Security Code does not appear.

2 Press (Finish).

**Information**

- The items other than own number are displayed even if you use another UIM, because they are stored in the FOMA phone.
- The mail address you can change using this function is limited to the mail address displayed by "Own number". You cannot change the actual mail address.

## Function Menu of the Own Number Display

| Function menu  | Operation/Explanation   |
|--|---|
| <b>Edit</b>  | Go to step 1 of "Storing Your Name, Mail Address and Other Information" on page 399.  |
| <b>Display all data</b>  | You can display all the stored phone numbers and mail addresses.<br>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code.</b> Use  to display each item. |
| <b>Copy name</b>   | You can copy a name.  |
| <b>Copy phone number/<br/>Copy mail add./<br/>Copy address/<br/>Copy birthday/<br/>Copy memorandums</b>                        | You can copy each item.<br>● The items in the Function menu differ depending on the displayed item.   |
| <b>Send Ir data</b>  | See page 359.   |
|  <b>transmission</b>                           | See page 361.   |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>   | You can copy the data item to the microSD memory card. (See page 349)   |
| <b>Erase phone number/<br/>Erase mail add./<br/>Erase address/<br/>Erase birthday/<br/>Erase memorandums/<br/>Delete image</b> | You can delete each item.<br>▶ <b>YES</b><br>● When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code appears, enter the code.<br>● The items in the Function menu differ depending on the displayed item.               |
| <b>Reset</b>   | You can reset (delete) all the stored personal data such as phone numbers or mail addresses except own number.<br>▶ <b>YES</b><br>● When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code appears, enter the code.      |
| <b>Auto acquire No. B</b>  | You can check if the 2in1 service is contracted. When it has been contracted, Number B is stored.   |

<Voice Memo during a Call> <Voice Memo>

## Recording Voice during a Call or Standby as Voice Memo





Two types of Voice Memo are available; one is "Voice memo" (during a call) for recording the other party's voice during a call and the other is "Record voice memo" for recording your own voice during standby. You can record either one of "Voice memo" (during a call) or "Voice memo" for about three minutes.

- See page 82 for playing back/erasing "Voice memo" (during a call) or "Voice memo".

### Record Other Party's Voice during a Call

#### 1 During a voice call ▶ (for at least one second)

A beep sounds and recording starts.

- To suspend the recording midway, press  (Stop) or , or press and hold  (for at least one second).
- Press  to end the recording and the call.
- A beep sounds about five seconds before the recording time (for about three minutes) ends. The beep sounds twice when the recording ends and the "Talking" display returns.




#### Information

- If you record a voice memo when either "Voice memo" (during a call) or "Voice memo" has already been saved, the old one is overwritten regardless of whether you have played back or not.
- You cannot record a voice memo while operating each item in the Function menu.

### Record Your Voice during Standby

#### 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Rec. msg/voice memo ▶ Voice memo ▶ YES

A beep sounds and recording starts. Speak into the microphone.

- To suspend the recording midway, press  (Stop), , or .
- A beep sounds about five seconds before the recording time (for about three minutes) ends. The beep sounds twice when the recording ends and the former display returns.

#### Information

- The recording is suspended when a call comes in, when an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "ToDo" sounds, or when you switch the displays by Multitask.

#### Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents saved to the FOMA phone and store them separately.

## Recording Images during a Videophone Call as a Movie Memo

During a videophone call, you can record other party's photo image and voice.




You can record up to five items for about 20 seconds per item.

- See page 82 for playing back/erasing "Movie memo".

### 1 During a videophone call

▶  (for at least one second)

A beep sounds and recording starts. "REC" is displayed during recording.

- A still image specified by "Movie memo" of "Select image" is shown on the other party's display.
- To suspend the recording midway, press  (Stop) or press and hold  (for at least one second).
- Press  to end the recording and the call.
- A beep sounds about 5 seconds before the recording time (for about 20 seconds) ends.

The beep sounds twice when the recording ends and the "Talking" display returns.

#### Information

- If you record a movie memo when five movie memos have already been recorded, the oldest movie memo is overwritten regardless of whether you have played it back or not.
- You cannot record a movie memo while operating each item in the Function menu.

#### Important

The saved contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents saved to the FOMA phone and store them separately.

## Checking Call Duration and Cost

You can confirm the last and accumulated call duration and cost for voice calls and videophone calls.

- Displayed call duration and cost are for reference and might differ from the actual ones. In addition, the consumption tax is not included in the call cost.
- Both the voice call duration and digital communications duration (videophone call duration + 64K data communication duration) are displayed and both incoming and outgoing calls are included in the duration.
- The call cost is for the outgoing calls only. However, "¥0" or "¥\*\*" is displayed for toll free calls such as Free Dial or for Directory Assistance Service (104), etc.
- The call cost is accumulated on the UIM. Therefore, when you replace the UIM, the charge accumulated on the UIM in use is displayed. (accumulation from December 2004)
  - ※ You cannot display the accumulated cost on the UIM using the FOMA phones that were released before the 901i series. (The cost is accumulated on the UIM.)
- You can reset the displayed call duration and call cost.

### 1 Settings ▶ Call time/cost ▶ Call data

#### Last call duration

Talk: Displays the call duration of the latest voice call.

Videophone: Displays the call duration of the latest videophone call.

Non-limiting digital: Displays the call duration of the latest 64K data communication.

#### Last call cost

Talk: Displays the call cost for the latest voice call.

Videophone: Displays the call cost for the latest videophone call.

Non-limiting digital: Displays the call cost for the latest 64K data communication.

#### Total calls duration

Talk: Displays the call duration of voice call from the time Reset Total Duration was executed until the current time.

Digital: Displays the call duration of videophone call and 64K data communication from the time Reset Total Duration was executed until the current time.

#### Total calls

Displays the call cost from the time Reset Total Cost was executed to the current call.

#### Calls reset

Displays the date and time when Reset Total Duration was executed last time.

#### Cost reset

Displays the date and time when Reset Total Cost was executed last time.

### Information

- When Last Call Duration exceeds "19 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds", or Total Calls Duration exceeds "199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds", "0 s" returns to re-count the time.
- If you switch between the voice call and videophone call during a call, the call duration and call cost are counted respectively for the calls. You are not charged while "Changing" (see page 58) is displayed.
- The duration/charge for PushTalk, i-mode communication and packet communication are not counted. For how to check the i-mode fee, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" which is supplied on your i-mode contract.
- The charge for Chaku-moji is not counted.
- The international call fee for using WORLD CALL is counted. The fees for using other international call services are not counted.
- The duration for ringing and calling is not counted as call duration.
- If you turn off the power or remove the UIM, Last Call Duration is reset to "0 s"; and Last Call Cost is reset to "¥\*\*".

### <Reset Total Cost&Duration>

## Resetting Total Duration/Total Cost

- 1 **Settings** ▶ **Call time/cost**
  - ▶ **Reset total cost&dura.**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **Do the following operations.**

| Item                        | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Reset total duration</b> | You can reset Last Call Duration and Total Calls Duration to "0 s".<br>▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Reset total cost</b>     | You can reset Last Call Cost and Total Calls to "¥0".<br>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Enter the PIN2 code.</b><br>• See page 157 for PIN2 code. |

### <Notice Call Cost>

## Setting Call Cost Limit

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Setting at purchase | Notice call cost: OFF<br>Max cost: ¥0 (when "Notice call cost" is set to "ON")<br>Method to alert: Icon (when "Notice call cost" is set to "ON")<br>Auto reset setting: OFF (when "Notice call cost" is set to "ON") |
|---------------------|--|

You can set the call cost limit for Total Calls and can be notified when it is exceeded. If you set "Auto reset setting" to "ON", the call cost is reset at midnight on the 1st of the month and "¥" is deleted.

- 1 **Settings** ▶ **Call time/cost**
  - ▶ **Notice call cost**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **ON or OFF**

## 2 Enter a max cost.

You can set from ¥10 through ¥100,000 in unit of ¥10.

## 3 Select a method to alert ▶ ON or OFF

- ▶ **Enter the PIN2 code.**
- See page 157 for PIN2 code.

### ■ When Total Calls has exceeded the max cost

"¥" appears. When "Icon + alarm" is set as a notice method and the Stand-by display returns, the message to the effect that the call cost has exceeded the maximum cost is displayed, and a warning tone sounds from the speakers.

## Clear Max Cost Icon

You can clear "¥" displayed by Notice Call Cost.

- 1 **Settings** ▶ **Call time/cost**
  - ▶ **CLR max cost icon**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

### Information

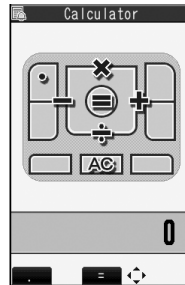
- "¥" is cleared also by executing Reset Total Cost, Reset Settings, or Initialize.
- To be re-notified of the set limit after the maximum cost is exceeded, reset Total Calls.

### <Calculator>

## Using Calculator

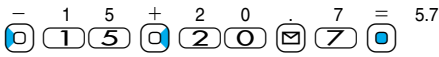
You can display Calculator to make the four rules of calculation (+, -, ×, ÷). You can display up to 10 digits.

- 1 **Stationary** ▶ **Calculator** ▶ Follow the operation below to make a calculation.



|  |  |  |   |  |               |
|--|--|--|---|--|---------------|
|  | +  |  | × |  | =             |
|  | -  |  | ÷ |  | Decimal point |
|  | C (Clear)<br>Clears the numeral you have entered last.     |  |   |  |               |
|  | AC (All clear)<br>Clears all the calculations you entered. |  |   |  |               |

### ■ Calculation example (Calculate “-15 + 20.7”.)



### Information

- You cannot enter a minus sign while you are performing calculation.
- When the calculated result exceeds 10 digits or invalid calculation like “divided by 0” is performed, “.E” is displayed.

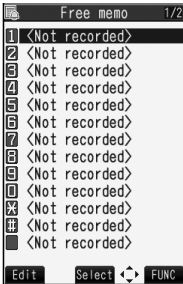
<Free Memo>



## Making Free Memos

You can store up to 20 free memos.

- 1 ▶ **Stationery** ▶ **Free memo**  
▶ **Highlight <Not recorded>** and press (**Edit**).



- Select a stored free memo to check the stored contents. When the free memo is long, use to scroll the display to check it.

- 2 **Enter a free memo.**

- You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters.

### ■ Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the stored contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347).

### Function Menu while Free Memo is Displayed

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit</b>            | Go to step 2 of “Making Free Memos” on page 403.<br>• You can edit also by pressing  ( <b>Edit</b> ).                       |
| <b>Compose message</b> | You can compose an i-mode mail containing the contents of the free memo. Go to step 2 on page 232.                          |
| <b>Edit schedule</b>   | You can create a schedule event containing the contents of the free memo.<br>▶ <b>Schedule</b><br>Go to step 1 on page 393. |

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Send Ir data</b>     | See page 359.  |
| <b>Send all Ir data</b> | See page 360.  |
| <b>transmission</b>     | See page 361.  |
| <b>All transmission</b> | See page 362.  |
| <b>Copy to microSD</b>  | You can copy the free memo to the microSD memory card. (See page 349)  |
| <b>Free memo info</b>   | You can display the date and time when the free memo was created, the date and time of the latest update, and the category.    |
| <b>Category</b>         | You can classify free memos by category.<br>▶ <b>Select a category.</b><br>• If you do not set, the category is set to “None”. |
| <b>Delete this</b>      | ▶ <b>YES</b>   |
| <b>Delete selected</b>  | ▶ <b>Put a check mark for free memos to be deleted</b> ▶  ( <b>Finish</b> ) ▶ <b>YES</b>                                       |
| <b>Delete all</b>       | ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b><br>▶ <b>YES</b>   |

<UIM Operation>

## Copying/Deleting Data Items in FOMA Phone or UIM

You can exchange the Phonebook entries or SMS messages between the FOMA phone and the UIM. You can also delete the Phonebook entries or SMS messages memorized in the FOMA phone or the UIM. You can save a total of 20 received and sent SMS messages to the UIM.

### Copy/Delete Data Items

- 1 ▶ **Phonebook** ▶ **UIM operation**  
▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

When you enter your Terminal Security Code, “” appears, and you cannot use phone and mail functions.

- When a call comes in just before entering the code, UIM Operation ends.

- 2 **Copy or Delete** ▶ **Select a copy end or delete source** ▶ **Phonebook or SMS**

**Phonebook**

Search the Phonebook to list the entries.

**SMS**

**Inbox** . . . Copies or deletes the data in the Inbox.

**Outbox** . . . Copies or deletes the data in the Outbox.

Select a folder and show the list.

- 3 **Put a check mark for data items to be copied or deleted** ▶ (**Finish**) ▶ **YES**


## Function Menu while the Phonebook List or SMS List is Displayed


| Function menu                         | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Start copy/<br/>Start deletion</b> | You can start copy or deletion.   |
| <b>Select this</b>                    | You can select the data item.   |
| <b>Select all in<br/>tab</b>          | You can select all the Phonebook entries in the displayed tab.              |
| <b>Select all</b>                     | You can select all data items.  |
| <b>Release this</b>                   | You can release the selection.  |
| <b>Release all in<br/>tab</b>         | You can release all the selected Phonebook entries in the displayed tab.    |
| <b>Release all</b>                    | You can release all selections.   |
| <b>Detail</b>                         | You can display the detailed Phonebook display or the detailed SMS display. |

## Copy from Function Menu of Phonebook

- Detailed Phonebook display**  **(FUNC)**  
▶ **Copy to UIM or Copy from UIM** ▶ **YES**

## Move or Copy from Function Menu of Mail

- Outbox List/Detailed Sent Mail display/  
Inbox List/Detailed Received Mail display**  
▶  **(FUNC)** ▶ **UIM operation**  
▶ **Select a move method or copy method**  
▶ **YES**

“ (blue)” indicates an SMS message in the FOMA phone.

“ ” indicates an SMS message on the UIM.

### Information

- The number of phone numbers/mail addresses you can store in a single Phonebook entry differs between the FOMA phone and the UIM. Therefore, you cannot copy the second or later phone numbers/mail addresses stored in the FOMA phone to the UIM. You cannot copy the data that cannot be stored on the UIM such as a postal address, either.
- The types of character fonts you can use differ between the FOMA phone and the UIM; therefore a pictograph is converted into a space.
- When copying Phonebook entries from the FOMA phone to the UIM, the name of up to 10 full-pitch characters or 21 half-pitch characters and the reading of up to 12 half-pitch characters are converted to full-pitch katakana characters and copied. The rest characters are not copied.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied to the UIM even in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

### Information

- If the same group name is set in the FOMA phone and the UIM, the group settings for the Phonebook are retained. If different group names are set in the FOMA phone and the UIM, the group settings are not retained.
- You can neither move nor copy SMS reports.
- You cannot protect SMS messages you have moved or copied to the UIM. If you copy or move protected SMS messages to the UIM, SMS messages on the UIM are unprotected. Also, the reply and forward icons become the read icons.
- If SMS messages are moved or copied from the FOMA phone to the UIM, you can check them in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.  
While you use 2in1, all the SMS messages are saved as the ones for Number A, regardless of the current mode.
- When you move or copy SMS messages from the UIM to the FOMA phone, they are moved or copied to the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

## Making/Receiving Calls Using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Open the cover of the Earphone/Microphone/AV output terminal (see page 25) and insert the connecting plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option).


## Make Calls Using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

- Enter a phone number**  
or  
**bring up a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.**
- Press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for at least one second** ▶ **Start talking when the other party answers.**  
A beep sounds and you are connected.
  - You cannot make a videophone call by pressing the switch of Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.
- After talking, press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for at least one second to end the call.**  
A beep sounds twice and you are disconnected.

## Receive Calls Using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

### 1 During ringing ▶ Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

A beep sounds and you are connected.



With a videophone call, an image through your camera is sent to the other party. You can switch between the image through your camera and the substitute image by pressing  during the videophone call. (See page 84)

- You can use it also with the FOMA phone closed.
- You can answer calls also by operating the FOMA phone.
- When "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", a call is answered automatically after the ring time elapses.

### 2 After talking, press and hold the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for at least one second to end the call.

A beep sounds twice and you are disconnected.

#### Information

- Regardless of the setting for "Keypad sound", a tone for connecting and disconnecting the line sounds.
- Note that you might be connected if you try to connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch after the ring tone sounds.
- To release hold, press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch during answer-hold and a call hold. (When a videophone call is put on hold, an image through your camera is sent and the videophone call starts.)
- Do not press or release the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch in succession. You might be automatically connected.
- If you have signed up for Call Waiting Service and "Multi calling" is displayed during a call, you can switch two calls by pressing and holding the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for at least one second. You cannot, however, use the switch to end the call.
- You can adjust the earpiece volume by pressing  (raise) or  (lower) during a call.

## <Automatic Answer>



## Answering a Call Automatically when Earphone is Connected

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Setting at purchase | Automatic answer: OFF<br>Ring time: 6 seconds (when "Automatic answer" is set to "ON") |
|---------------------|--|


If a call comes in while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, the FOMA phone automatically answers the call after the specified ring time elapses.

### 1 Settings ▶ External option ▶ Automatic answer ▶ ON or OFF

### 2 Enter a ring time (seconds).

- Enter from "001" through "120" in three digits.
- You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Automatic Answer and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.

#### Information

- When the FOMA phone automatically answers a videophone call, a substitute image is sent to the other party. You can switch between the substitute image and the image through your camera by pressing  during the videophone call. (See page 84)
- If you activate Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service together with Automatic Answer and want to give priority to Automatic Answer over the service, set its ring time shorter than that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- Even if you connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch while ringing, Automatic Answer does not work. However, if you disconnect it while ringing, Automatic Answer works.
- During 64K data communication or connecting Flat-plug AV Output Cable (option), Automatic Answer does not work.

## <Bluetooth> Using Bluetooth

You can connect between Bluetooth devices wirelessly. When you connect, for an example, your FOMA phone to a Bluetooth headset (commercial) using Bluetooth, you can talk on the phone or listen to music with your FOMA phone carried in a bag.

- Note that battery consumption will be faster when you use Bluetooth connection.

## What You can Do with Bluetooth

With your FOMA phone, the following six services are available:

**Headset, Hands-free, Audio, Dial-up Communication, Object Push and Serial Port services. Also, the Audio/Video remote control service might be available when you use the Audio service. (Only with compatible Bluetooth devices)**

| Supported version   |
|---|
| Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.2 compliant  |
| Supported profiles (Supported services)   |
| HSP: Headset Profile<br>HFP: Hands-Free Profile<br>A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile<br>AVRCP: Audio Video Remote Control Profile<br>DUNP: Dial-up Networking Profile<br>OPP: Object Push Profile<br>SPP: Serial Port Profile |

### ■ Talk through Headset

When you connect Bluetooth Headset F01 (option) or a Bluetooth headset (commercial) to the FOMA phone using Bluetooth, you can talk wirelessly.

- Use the Headset service.

### ■ Talk Hands-free

When you connect a Bluetooth device such as a car navigation system (commercial) to the FOMA phone using Bluetooth, you can communicate hands-free using the microphone and speaker on the car navigation system.

- Use the Hands-free service.

### ■ Play back on Audio Equipment

When you connect Wireless Earphone Set P01 (option) or Bluetooth audio equipment (commercial) to the FOMA phone using Bluetooth, you can play back a stereophonic high-quality sound wirelessly.

- Use the Audio service.

### ■ Communicate wirelessly

When you connect a Bluetooth compatible personal computer to the FOMA phone using Bluetooth, you can perform packet communication or 64K data communication using the FOMA phone as a modem.

- Use the Dial-up Communication service.
- For details, refer to “Manual for Data Communication” in PDF file.

### ■ Send Phonebook via Bluetooth

You can send the Phonebook entries by connecting the Bluetooth device to the FOMA phone using Bluetooth.

You can send them from the Function menu of the Phonebook.

- Use the Object Push service.

### ■ Use Bluetooth from i-øppli

By connecting the FOMA phone with another mobile phone or Bluetooth compatible device using Bluetooth, you can play a match game with your friends or manage data files on an i-øppli program.

- Use the Serial Port service.

### ■ Tone from Bluetooth devices

|  |                     | Connected service |     |      |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|-----|------|
|  |                     | HSP               | HFP | A2DP |
| Voice call dial tone                             |                     | ○                 | ○   | —    |
| Voice/Videophone call ring tone                  |                     | ○※1               | ○   | —    |
| Calling tone at voice/videophone call            |                     | ○                 | ○   | —    |
| The other party's voice at voice/videophone call |                     | ○                 | ○   | —    |
| Caller's voice from Record Message at voice call |                     | ○                 | ○   | —    |
| i-motion playback tone                           |                     | —                 | —   | ○※2  |
| MUSIC Player playback tone                       |                     | —                 | —   | ○    |
| Alarm tone                                       | Alarm preferred     | ○※3               | ○※3 | ○※5  |
|  | Operation preferred | —※4               | —※4 | —※4  |
| Mail ring tone                                   | Alarm preferred     | —                 | —   | ○※5  |
|  | Operation preferred | —※4               | —※4 | —※4  |
| PushTalk ring tone                               |                     | —                 | —   | ○※5  |

○: Output from the Bluetooth device.

—: Not output from the Bluetooth device, instead it is played back from the FOMA phone.

※1 The ring tone sounds from both the Bluetooth device and FOMA phone when “Earphone” of “External option” is set to “Earphone+Speaker”.

※2 The i-motion playback tone does not sound during obtaining from sites.

※3 The alarm tone sounds from the Bluetooth device only during a call. The alarm tone that sounds from the Bluetooth device is not the one set for Alarm. It beeps.

※4 The alarm tone/mail ring tone does not sound when a display other than the Stand-by display is shown.

※5 The tone sounds only during music playback.

● Some Bluetooth devices might not work as specified in the table above.

### Information

- Refer to the instruction manual for a Bluetooth device as well.



## Bluetooth Usage Flow

For a Bluetooth device to be available, you need to register the Bluetooth device to your FOMA phone beforehand and connect them using a service that supports each function.

<Example> For connecting Wireless Earphone Set P01 (option)

Register Wireless Earphone Set P01 to the FOMA phone. (See page 408)



Connect using the compatible service for the desired function. (See page 409)

To talk on the phone using Bluetooth

To play back the audio of moving images or music files using Bluetooth



Connect using the Hands-free service.



Connect using the Audio service.



Make a call using Wireless Earphone Set P01. (See page 410)



Play back the audio of moving images or music files using Wireless Earphone Set P01. (See page 411)

## Terminology

### Bluetooth passkey

This is the password that disables other persons to use the Bluetooth device without permission and you can set it for each device to be connected. You can enter up to 16 digits of half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

However, some devices are set with the password in advance and you cannot change it. In some cases, you need to enter the password on both the FOMA phone and Bluetooth device wirelessly connected, and in some cases on the FOMA phone only.

For safety purpose, you are advised to enter the Bluetooth passkey in long digits possible, up to 16 digits. Make sure that you do not use the easily guessable characters as the Bluetooth passkey, such as your name or birthday.

### Device registration (Pairing)

This means that the Bluetooth device searches for a connectable Bluetooth device around and checks to see whether the Bluetooth passkey matches that device to register.

### Profile

This means that the connecting procedures of Bluetooth are standardized by the characteristics of each product.

### Service

This is used in the same meanings as with Profile. Communication with a Bluetooth device having the same characteristics is called "xx service".

### Search

This means the operation the Bluetooth device searches for a connectable Bluetooth device around. Even when the connectable Bluetooth device is found, you cannot connect unless the Bluetooth passkey matches.

### Encryption

Some Bluetooth devices can encrypt data when exchanging data with other Bluetooth devices. The encrypted data will hardly be wiretapped by a third party.

## Notes on using Bluetooth devices

### ■ Observe the following to make a good connection:

- The distance between your mobile phone and another Bluetooth device must be within 10 meters under line-of-sight conditions. The allowable connection distance may be shorter, depending on the ambient environment (such as walls or furniture) and the structure of a building. When there are any obstructions between the FOMA phone and Bluetooth device, the allowable connection distance may also be shorter. Particularly, if there is a wall or floor of reinforced concrete between them, they may be unable to connect with each other. Above mentioned connection distance is not guaranteed.
- During connection, keep Bluetooth devices as possible as away from other electric devices (such as home electric appliances, AV devices, OA devices). (The Bluetooth device is liable to be adversely affected by a microwave oven so keep as possible as away from the microwave oven.) Otherwise, normal connection cannot be performed when electric devices are powered on or Bluetooth devices may cause noises or a reception failure on a television or radio set (television images may degrade for particular channels of UHF or satellite broadcasting).
- If there is a broadcast station or radio near a Bluetooth device to which you want to connect, your FOMA phone may be unable to connect with the Bluetooth device. In such a case, move the Bluetooth device to a place where connection is possible. Strong radio waves may prevent connection between Bluetooth devices.
- With a Bluetooth device put in your bag or pocket, you can make a wireless connection. However, if the Bluetooth device and FOMA phone is separated by your body, communications speed might be lowered or noise could result.

### ■ Radio interference with wireless LANs

Bluetooth devices use the same frequency band (2.4GHz) as wireless LANs (IEEE802.11b/g). Therefore, if a Bluetooth device is used near a wireless LAN device, radio interference may cause lowering of the communication speed, noise or connection fail. In this case, take the following measures:

- Keep your FOMA phone and the wireless connection-target Bluetooth device away from the wireless LAN device 10 meters or more.
- When you use them within a distance of 10 meters, turn off the power to the wireless LAN device.

### ■ Radio waves generated from the Bluetooth device may possibly give an adverse effect on electronic medical appliances.

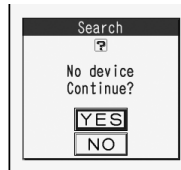
As an accident could result in some cases, make sure that you turn off the power to the FOMA phone and Bluetooth devices in places as shown below:

- On trains · In airplanes · In hospitals
- Nearby automatic doors or fire alarms
- In places such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated


## Register Bluetooth Device

You can register a Bluetooth device to the FOMA phone. You can register up to 10 Bluetooth devices.

- 1  LifeKit ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Device list  
▶ YES



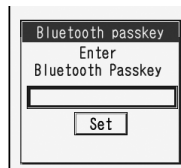
The Bluetooth devices around the FOMA phone are searched. The searched devices are listed on the Device List up to 20 items maximum.

- You can search for Bluetooth devices also by pressing  (Search) from the Device List.
- When any Bluetooth devices have already been registered, Device List is displayed and those registered ones are displayed.



- 2 Select a Bluetooth device to be registered  
▶ YES ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- 3 Select the text box for entering the Bluetooth passkey  
▶ Enter the Bluetooth passkey ▶ Set



Then make a connection with the Bluetooth device. Go to step 1 on page 409.

- For the Bluetooth passkey, refer to the instruction manual for the Bluetooth device.

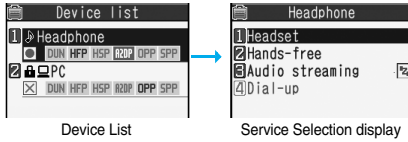
### Information



- When 10 Bluetooth devices have already been registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to overwrite them. When you select "YES", the Bluetooth device that is not protected, or not set for "Preferred device" and with the oldest communication data/time, except in communicating or in standby state, is overwritten.



## Connect to Bluetooth Device

You can connect the registered Bluetooth device to the FOMA phone.


-  LifeKit ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Device list
  - ▶ Select a Bluetooth device to be connected
  - ▶ Select a service to be connected.



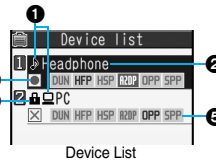
The Bluetooth device is connected and “” (blue) blinks. When no communication with the Bluetooth device is made for a certain period of time, your FOMA phone is placed in low power consumption mode, and “” (black) stays on.

-  (HIKARI Icon) flickers during connecting to a Bluetooth device. (See page 25)
- When you use the Bluetooth device which is able to connect multiple services, the confirmation display appears asking whether to connect another service in succession. Select “YES” to select another service.
- “” (gray) is displayed next to the service name on standby for connection.
- If you select “Dial-up”, the FOMA phone is placed on standby for connection.

### To disconnect

- Device List ▶ Select the Bluetooth device that is connected.
  - Select the service that is connected ▶ YES  
“” (blue) is displayed next to the service name during connection.
- See “Accept registered” for how to cancel the service on standby.

### Device List



#### 1 Device class

Following icons are displayed according to the type of Bluetooth device:




“”, “”, “”, “”, “”, “”, “”

#### 2 Device name

The name of Bluetooth device is displayed.

When no name is detected by search, the device address is displayed.

#### 3 Connecting status







 : Being connected    : Not connected  
 : Not detected    : Not registered

#### 4 Protect

Displayed when the registered contents are protected.

#### 5 Profile state

The state of each profile is displayed in color.

| Mark   | Character color | Background color | Frame color | Status                       |
|--|-----------------|------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
|   | Blue            | Gray             | None        | Not connected (unregistered) |
|   | Blue            | Gray             | Blue        | Not connected (registered)   |
|   | White           | Green            | None        | Being connected              |
|   | Blue            | Gray             | Green       | Standby for connection       |
|   | White           | Light green      | None        | Preferred device             |
|  | Gray            | Gray             | None        | Not supported                |

### Information

- When the Bluetooth device is turned off or when the Bluetooth device does not respond while a connection is being established or being disconnected, it takes maximum about 110 seconds for processing.
- When your FOMA phone is connected using the Headset service, Hands-free service, or Dial-up Communication service, and is disconnected from the Bluetooth device, the FOMA phone is placed on standby for connection. Also, your FOMA phone is placed on standby for connection the next time the power is turned on after the FOMA phone is turned off while it is connected or is on standby for connection. When the FOMA phone is connected using the Audio service, it is set disconnected in both cases.

## Function Menu of the Device List

| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <b>Register devices</b>   | ▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code.</b><br>Go to step 3 on page 408.  |
| <b>Preferred device</b>   | You can set a Bluetooth device to be connected taking priority over other devices when a call comes in. You can set this for the Headset service compatible Bluetooth device only. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When another Bluetooth device has already been set for "Preferred device", that setting is canceled, and the selected Bluetooth device is set for the priority device.</li> <li>• To release it, perform the same operation.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Protect/release</b>    | You can protect the registered Bluetooth device so that it is not deleted or overwritten. You can protect up to five devices. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To release it, perform the same operation.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Change device name</b> | You can change the name of the registered Bluetooth device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Enter a device name.</b></li> <li>• You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Delete</b>             | You can delete the registered Bluetooth device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>YES</b></li> </ul>  |
| <b>Description</b>        | You can display the device name, device address, device class, and supported service.   |
| <b>Add desktop icon</b>   | See page 151.   |

### Information

#### <Register devices>

- When you select a registered Bluetooth device, the registered profile is updated. (When the device name has been changed, the profile is retained as it is.) When you select a profile that is different from the registered one, the profile is added and then registered.

#### <Preferred device>

- Even when a priority device is selected, you cannot connect that device unless the Headset service is placed on standby for connection. When other Bluetooth device is connected with the Headset service, the Bluetooth device that is being connected has priority.

#### <Delete>

- You cannot delete when the status of Bluetooth device is as follows:
  - During connection
  - On standby for connection

## Place the Bluetooth Devices on Standby for Connection

You can place the connecting state of all the registered Bluetooth devices on standby for connection by **Headset service**, **Hands-free service**, and **Dial-up Communication service**.

-  ▶ **LifeKit** ▶ **Bluetooth**  
 ▶ **Accept registered** ▶ Put a check mark for the services to be placed on standby  
 (Finish)  
  - To release, remove the check mark and press  (Finish).
  - During standby, "Bluetooth" (blue) lights.

## Suspend the Bluetooth Function of the FOMA Phone

You can suspend services that are connecting, or are on standby for connection, and can turn off the Bluetooth function of the FOMA phone.

-  ▶ **LifeKit** ▶ **Bluetooth**  
 ▶ **Bluetooth power OFF** ▶ **YES**

## Make a Call Using Bluetooth Device

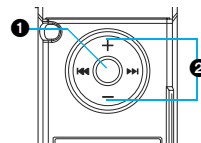
You can make a call wirelessly when the FOMA phone is connected to a Bluetooth device using **Headset service** or **Hands-free service**.

- Connect a Bluetooth device using Headset service or Hands-free service.**
  - See page 409 for connecting a Bluetooth device.
- Make/Receive a call via the Bluetooth device.**

"Bluetooth" is displayed during a call via the Bluetooth device.

  - Refer to the instruction manual for the Bluetooth device you use.

### Operations when using Wireless Earphone Set P01 (option)




- Press the key during ringing to answer a call. Press and hold it for at least one second from the Stand-by display to make a call to the party stored in the Phonebook with memory number 000.  
You cannot answer a call by pressing it while the answer message is played back or a voice/video message is being recorded.
  - Press the key to adjust the earpiece volume during a call. You can adjust the volume consecutively by pressing and holding it.
- For detailed operations, refer to the instruction manual for Wireless Earphone Set P01.

### Switching devices during a call

You can select whether to talk over the FOMA phone or a Bluetooth device.

#### When connected using Headset service


You need to operate from the device not used for the call.


1. During a call via Bluetooth device ▶  (for at least one second)

- Operate from the Bluetooth device during a call on the FOMA phone. Refer to the instruction manual for the Bluetooth device you use.

#### When connected using Hands-free service

You can operate from either the FOMA phone or Bluetooth device.

1. During a call on the FOMA phone or a Bluetooth device ▶  (for at least one second)

- You can switch between the FOMA phone and the Bluetooth device each time you press and hold  for at least one second.
- For operations from the Bluetooth device, refer to the instruction manual for the Bluetooth device you use.

### Information

- You cannot talk over a Bluetooth device while USB Hands-free compatible device or Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) or Flat-plug AV Output Cable (option) is connected even if you switch to the Bluetooth device.
- You cannot switch to a Bluetooth device while Remote Monitoring is activated.

### Information

- When a call comes in while the Bluetooth device is connected using Headset service or Hands-free service, the ring tone sounds from the Bluetooth device even if Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" on the FOMA phone.
- During a call on the Bluetooth device, you cannot adjust the sound volume of the Bluetooth device by adjusting that on your FOMA phone.
- During a call on the Bluetooth device, the call state does not change by closing the FOMA phone regardless of the setting of "Setting when folded".
- When the Bluetooth is disconnected during a call on the Bluetooth device, the call state follows the setting of "Disconnection settings". However, when it is disconnected while the FOMA phone is closed and "Disconnection settings" is set to "Continue on the phone", the call shifts to the state as specified by "Setting when folded". When "Setting when folded" is set to "End the call", the call shifts to "No tone" state.

## Play Back Sound/Music of Moving Image or Music File Using Bluetooth Device

When you connect your FOMA phone to a Bluetooth device using Audio service, you can output the sound of moving images, music via MUSIC Player, etc., from the Bluetooth device.

### 1 Connect a Bluetooth device using Audio service.

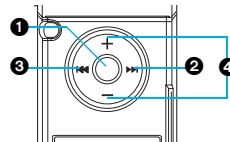
- See page 409 for connecting a Bluetooth device.

### 2 Play back a moving image or music file.

The sound is output from the Bluetooth device.

- For operations from the Bluetooth device, refer to the instruction manual for the Bluetooth device you use.
- Once you connect the FOMA phone to the Bluetooth device using Audio service, a connection history is recorded. When the connection history is found, the FOMA phone tries to connect to the Bluetooth device automatically for playing back a file even if it is not connected using Audio service. When the connection is successfully completed, the sound is output from the Bluetooth device. When the connection fails, the confirmation display appears asking whether to output sound from the FOMA phone. The connection history is overwritten each time the Bluetooth device is connected using Audio service.
- When playing back an i-motion movie, the confirmation display appears asking whether to start output to the Bluetooth device. Select "YES", then the sound is output from the Bluetooth device.

### Operations when using Wireless Earphone Set P01 (option)



- 1 Play back or pause  
Repeat playback and pause each time you press the key. Press and hold it for at least one second to halt.
  - 2 Play back a next file or music file.
  - 3 Play back a previous file or music file.  
When playback time is over three seconds, this operation returns the position to the beginning of the file.
  - 4 Adjust the sound volume.  
You can adjust the volume consecutively by pressing and holding it.
- For detailed operations, refer to the instruction manual for Wireless Earphone Set P01.

### Information

- While you are playing back the sound of a moving image or music file from a Bluetooth device, you cannot adjust the sound volume by adjusting that on your FOMA phone.
  - When the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (option) or Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option) is connected, you cannot play back any files on the Bluetooth device.
  - If the sound of a moving image or music file stops while it is played back on the Bluetooth device, check your FOMA phone as the possible causes are as follows:
    - When the Bluetooth device is disconnected
    - When a location provision request of GPS function is received
    - When the battery runs short
    - When the low battery alarm sounds
- In these cases, the Audio service might be disconnected depending on the Bluetooth device. To resume playback on the Bluetooth device, you need to re-connect the Audio service.

## Bluetooth Settings

- 1 ▶ LifeKit ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Bluetooth settings ▶ Do the following operations.
- You cannot operate during a call or data communication.

| Item   | Operation/Explanation  |
|--|--|
| <b>Set authentications</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>OFF             | You can set whether to set authentication and whether to encrypt the data when sending a Phonebook entry via a Bluetooth device.<br>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b><br>• When you select "OFF", the setting is completed.<br>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>   |
| <b>Session number setting</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>OFF          | You can set whether to enter the password for sending all Phonebook entries.<br>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b>   |
| <b>Time-out to search</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>5 seconds        | You can set the time for searching for Bluetooth devices around the FOMA phone.<br>▶ <b>Enter a device search time (seconds).</b><br>• Enter two-digit numerals as in "05" through "20".   |
| <b>Forward ring tone</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>ON                | You can set whether to send a ring tone for the voice call and videophone call to the connected Headset or Hands-free device. When the device is specified as "Preferred device", connection is made to send the ring tone even if the device is on standby.<br>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b> |
| <b>Disconnection settings</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>End the call | You can select whether to end talking or continue talking on the FOMA phone when Bluetooth is disconnected while talking through the Headset or Hands-free device.<br>▶ <b>End the call or Continue on the phone</b>   |

| Item   | Operation/Explanation  |
|--|--|
| <b>Dial from headset</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>Valid | You can set whether to make a call by pressing the switch on the Headset.<br>▶ <b>Valid or Invalid</b>   |
| <b>Bluetooth info</b>                                    | You can display the device name, device address, device class, and supported services of Bluetooth mounted on the FOMA phone. You can change the device name.<br>• To change the device name, press  (Edit), enter the device name. You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. |

### Information

#### <Set authentications>

- While a Bluetooth device to which Phonebook entries are sent is connected using a service other than Object Push, the Phonebook entries are sent with authentication and with encryption regardless of this setting.
- You cannot set this function while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.

#### <Forward ring tone>

- You cannot set this function while a Bluetooth device using the Headset service or Hands-free service is connected or on standby.

#### <Bluetooth info>

- If you select a pictograph for the device name, it might not be correctly displayed depending on the destination Bluetooth device.

### <Reset Settings>

## Resetting Function Settings

You can reset the items indicated by of "Function List" to their default. (See page 456)

- 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings
- ▶ **Reset settings**
  - ▶ **Enter your Terminal Security Code**
  - ▶ **YES**

### Information

- You cannot execute "Reset settings" during Personal Data Lock or while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.
- You cannot execute "Reset settings" during IC Card Lock while "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".
- After you execute "Reset settings", the tickers are not displayed. Then, when the information is automatically updated or you press to receive the latest information, the tickers automatically flow.


<Initialize>

## Deleting Stored Data All at Once

You can delete the stored data and reset the setting contents of each function to the default.


See “Function List” for the setting at purchase. (See page 456)

- You cannot delete the pre-installed data. However, all downloaded dictionaries are deleted including the pre-installed dictionaries.
- You cannot delete the pre-installed i-appli programs.
- You can delete the data stored in the pre-installed i-appli programs. However, you cannot delete the data stored in the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli programs.
- The protected data is also deleted.
- All the stored data files are deleted regardless of the mode of 2in1.
- Even if you have deleted the pre-installed Deco-mail templates, Chara-den images, PDF files, or Decomail-pictographs, they are restored when you execute “Initialize”. However, if you delete the pre-installed i-appli programs, they are not restored.
- Charge the battery full before initializing the FOMA phone. When the battery level is not enough, you may not be able to initialize the FOMA phone.
- During initialization, never turn off the power of the FOMA phone.
- You cannot use other functions during initialization. Also, you cannot receive calls or mail messages.

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Initialize  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ YES ▶ YES

When initializing ends, the power automatically turns off and then turns on and the “Initial setting” display appears.

### Information

- You cannot execute “Initialize” during Personal Data Lock or while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.
- You cannot execute “Initialize” during IC Card Lock while “PIM/IC security mode” is set to “Face reader” or “Double security”.
- You cannot delete the data saved to, stored in, or set for the UIM or the microSD memory card.
- You cannot delete the setting of data communication set by a personal computer.
- To restore the downloaded dictionaries and i-appli programs, download them from the “P-SQUARE” site. For downloading, you are charged an additional communication fee.
- After you execute “Initialize”, the tickers are not displayed. Then, when the information is automatically updated or you press  to receive the latest information, the tickers automatically flow.

### Information

- Initialization may take a while if the data to be deleted is bulky.





# Character Entry

|  |                       |     |
|--|-----------------------|-----|
| Entering Characters .....                        | ⟨Character Entry⟩     | 416 |
| Entering Characters in Mode 1 (5-touch) .....    | ⟨Mode 1 (5-touch)⟩    | 416 |
| Using Common Phrases .....                       | ⟨Common Phrases⟩      | 420 |
| Cutting/Copying/Pasting Characters .....         |                       | 421 |
| Storing Words in Own Dictionary .....            | ⟨Own Dictionary⟩      | 421 |
| Checking Learned Words .....                     |                       | 422 |
| Using Downloaded Dictionary .....                | ⟨Download Dictionary⟩ | 422 |
| Entering Characters in Mode 2 (2-touch) .....    | ⟨Mode 2 (2-touch)⟩    | 423 |
| Entering Characters in Mode 3 (NIKO-touch) ..... | ⟨Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)⟩ | 423 |

For details on “Kuten Code List”, refer to the PDF version of “Kuten Code List” on the provided CD-ROM. Install “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” on your personal computer, and click “Manuals”, and then “Kuten Code List (PDF file)”.

To see the PDF version of “Kuten Code List”, you need to have Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher recommended).

If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe Reader from the provided CD-ROM to see it.

For details such as how to use it, refer to Adobe Reader Help.

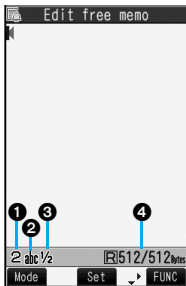
## <Character Entry>

# Entering Characters

The FOMA phone is provided with many functions that require to enter characters such as when creating the Phonebook or composing mail messages.

## Character Entry Display

On the Character Entry (Edit) display, the information of character input method, input mode, and the remaining number of characters and others are displayed.



### ① Character input method

- 2 : Mode 2 (2-touch)
- 3 : Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)
- Not displayed in Mode 1 (5-touch).

### ② Input mode

- abc : Alphabet input mode
- 123 : Numeral input mode
- 漢 : Kanji/Hiragana input mode
- か : Katakana input mode

### ③ Full/Half-pitch

- 1/1 : Full-pitch input mode
- 1/2 : Half-pitch input mode

### ④ Remaining/Maximum bytes that can be entered



- “Number of entered characters” might be displayed depending on the function.

## Select Character Input Method

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Setting at purchase | Input mode: All checked<br>Priority input method: Mode 1 (5-touch) |
|---------------------|--|

Three types of character input methods are available as shown below:

- Mode 1 (5-touch)** ..... See page 416  
Multiple characters are assigned to a single key. Each time you press the key, characters switch.
- Mode 2 (2-touch)** ..... See page 423  
Enter characters by pairs of numerals.
- Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)** ..... See page 423  
Enter characters by pairs of numerals.

-  **Settings** ▶ **Other settings**  
▶ **Character input method** ▶ **Input mode**  
▶ **Put a check mark for modes to be used**  
▶  **(Finish)**


- Select at least two modes.

## 2 Select a priority mode.

- Select a mode you use preferentially from modes selected in step 1.


### ■ Switching modes on the Character Entry (Edit) display

On the Character Entry (Edit) display, you can switch between modes by the two methods described below:

- Press and hold  **(Mode)** for at least one second.
- Select “Change input mode” from the Function menu. (See page 420)

## <Mode 1 (5-touch)>

# Entering Characters in Mode 1 (5-touch)

In the step for entering characters, press  **(Mode)** to switch input modes. You might not be able to switch to some modes depending on the function you enter.

## Enter Characters

You can enter characters by using Prediction Conversion which converts the entered few words into the predicted ones and Context Forecast which displays the next conversion candidates inferred from the relation between words.








- The FOMA phone increases prediction conversion candidates and context forecast candidates by learning characters.

<Example> Enter “タダの菓子” into a free memo.

-  **Stationery** ▶ **Free memo**  
▶  **(Edit)**


The Character Entry (Edit) display appears in prediction conversion mode.

## 2 Enter hiragana characters in Kanji/Hiragana input mode.






- た → Press  once and  once.
- た → Press  once and  once.
- の → Press  five times.
- か → Press  once.
- し → Press  twice.

- You can enter up to 24 characters at a time.

However, if you enter 6 or more characters, the conversion mode is automatically switched to the ordinary conversion mode.

- When a character on the same key comes after a character, press  to move the cursor, and enter the next character.




If you set “Character set time”, you can omit the operation to move the cursor.

- To switch between uppercase and lowercase, press  after you have entered characters.
- Each time you press , characters are displayed in reverse order.
- Each time you press , ordinary conversion mode and prediction conversion mode switch.
- You can press  **(a1kana)** to display the candidate list of alphanumeric or katakana characters.
- Not to convert and fix the character as it is, press  **(Set)**.

## 3 Use to move the cursor onto “の”.




- The conversion mode is automatically switched to the ordinary conversion mode.

#### 4 Use to move the cursor onto the candidate list ▶ Use to highlight “タダの” and press (Select).

- When “Candid. auto-disp.” is set to “OFF”, the candidate list is not displayed. Press  to convert the character.
- When you press  while you are selecting conversion candidates, the Character Entry (Edit) display returns.
- Press  to fix the whole paragraph.

#### 5 Use to move the cursor onto the candidate list ▶ Use to highlight “菓子” and press (Select).

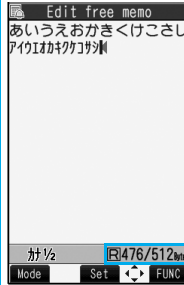
The selected characters are fixed.

- When “Candid. auto-disp.” is set to “OFF”, the candidate list is not displayed. Press  to convert the character.
- When the character strings that are assumed to be the context forecast candidates are found after fixing the characters, that context forecast candidates are displayed. Press  to move the cursor onto the candidate list to enter the context forecast candidates.
- When you press  while you are selecting the context forecast candidates, the Character Entry (Edit) display returns.

#### Information

- The learning function stores up to 1,000 words, and the character of a high conversion rate goes up in the character order list.
- The candidate character strings are displayed from characters converted as usual and from a dictionary downloaded from sites.
  - Only a small number of character strings are registered by default so candidate characters might not be displayed in some cases. By doing the character conversion as usual, the converted characters are added to the candidate characters.
  - You can download a dictionary from sites and add candidate characters from the dictionary. However, when you delete the downloaded dictionary, the added candidate characters are also deleted from the existing candidate characters. (See page 214 and page 422)
- You can use Prediction Conversion and Context Forecast with 2-touch and NIKO-touch in Kanji/Hiragana input mode.
- The number of kanji characters that you can convert to is limited so you might not be able to convert to some kanji characters. You can use Kuten Code to enter kanji characters that you cannot convert to. The number of characters you can enter is 6355 in the JIS level-1 and level-2 kanji sets.
- Part of a complicated kanji character is deformed or left out.

#### Numbers of remaining characters and entered characters



On the Character Entry display, the number of remaining characters and the maximum number of characters you can enter are displayed in bytes. (The number of entered characters is displayed by unit of characters, depending on the function such as entering SMS text.)

The number of characters in the Character Entry (Edit) display is counted according to the following rules:

- One half-pitch character is counted as one byte and one full-pitch character as two bytes.
- Full pitch: あいうえお 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)  
Half pitch: アイウエオカキクケコ 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

#### Combination of characters

When entering characters, pay attention to the combination of characters.

<Example> When you are entering “ドコモ” in half-pitch Katakana input mode and “の携帯電話” in Kanji/Hiragana input mode

ト コ ム の 携 帯 電 話  
1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2

- The number of characters that appears on the display is 9 and counted as 14 bytes that equal 14 half-pitch characters.
- Half-pitch character “ ” and “ ” are counted as one character.

## Other Entry Functions

| Item               | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------|---|
| Katakana input     | Press  (Mode) a few times to move to Katakana input mode ▶ Press keys to enter characters.  |
| Alphanumeric input | Press  (Mode) a few times to move to Alphabet input mode ▶ Press keys to enter characters.  |
| Numeral input      | Press  (Mode) a few times to move to Numeral input mode ▶ Press keys to enter numerals.   |
| Line feed          | Press .<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the cursor is at the end of text and characters are fixed, you can press  to break a line.</li> </ul>  |
| Smiley input       | Enter “かお” ▶ Use  to move the cursor onto the candidate list<br>▶ Use  to select a smiley.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Smileys are stored in the pre-installed common phrases.</li> </ul> |

### Information

#### <Line feed>

- A line feed is counted as one full-pitch character.
- You cannot break a line depending on the function such as editing in the text box for i-mode.

## Correct Characters

### 1 Move the cursor to the left of the character you want to correct ▶

The character at the right of the cursor is deleted.  
Press and hold for at least one second to delete all characters on and after the cursor.

- When no character is found to the right side of the cursor, the character to the left side of the cursor is deleted. Press and hold for at least one second to delete all characters.

### 2 Enter a correct character.

The character is entered over the cursor.

### ■ Data while editing

#### When the battery level goes flat

When the battery runs short while you are editing a free memo or a new mail message, editing text is automatically suspended and the low battery alarm sounds. As the data you have been editing is automatically fixed and saved, charge the battery or replace it with a new charged battery. Then you can resume editing once again. However, you cannot save the unfixed data being converted.

#### When you press

##### • When you discard the data to finish editing

Select “YES”.

You discard the data you are editing and return to the previous display or Stand-by display.

※ You can also press to discard the data and return to the previous display or Stand-by display.

##### • To continue editing

Select “NO”.

The former display returns with the data being edited as it is.

※ You can press to return to the former display.

#### When you use the Multitask function

Even when you switch to other Character Entry (Edit) display while you are editing using the Multitask function, the previous Editing display on the way is retained as it is. Switch the task to resume editing.

#### When a call or mail comes in

Even when a call or mail comes in while you are editing, the Multitask function works so the data you are editing is retained, and you can answer the call or receive the mail.

## Intelligent with Secret

3 5











|                     |    |
|---------------------|----|
| Setting at purchase | ON |
|---------------------|----|





You can set whether to store the characters converted in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only as learned words.




- 1 ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings
  - ▶ Character input method
  - ▶ Int.with secret
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ ON or OFF

## Function Menu while Entering (Editing) Characters

- See page 235 for the Function menu of the Message Entry display.

| Function menu                | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Pictograph</b>            | <p>You can enter pictographs while seeing them on the display.</p> <p>▶ <b>Highlight a pictograph and press</b> .</p> <p>Repeat the above step and enter other pictographs consecutively.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can display the Pictograph List also by pressing  in Kanji/Hiragana input mode.</li> <li>● Press  to switch the pictograph lists in order of "Pictograph 1" → "Pictograph 2" → "Decomail-pictograph" [お気に入り (Favorite) through 文字 (Characters)]. However, you can enter "Decomail-pictograph" [お気に入り (Favorite) through 文字 (Characters)] only while editing the i-mode mail text.</li> <li>● Press  to switch them in the reverse order.</li> <li>● You can select a pictograph also by pressing a column number (number to the left) and then a row number (number at the top).</li> <li>● See page 482 for the Pictographs List.</li> <li>● See page 469 for the pre-installed Decomail-pictographs.</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Select)</p> <p>The selected pictograph is entered and the Character Entry (Edit) display returns.</p> |
| <b>Symbols</b>               | <p>You can enter symbols while seeing them on the display.</p> <p>▶ <b>Highlight a symbol and press</b> .</p> <p>Repeat the above step and enter other symbols consecutively.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can display the Symbol List also by pressing and holding  for at least one second.</li> <li>● Press  to switch the symbol lists in order of Half-pitch symbols → Full-pitch symbols.</li> <li>● Press  to switch them in the reverse order.</li> <li>● You can select a symbol also by pressing a column number (number to the left) and then a row number (number at the top).</li> <li>● See page 480 for the Symbol List.</li> </ul> <p>▶  (Select)</p> <p>The selected symbol is entered and the Character Entry (Edit) display returns.</p>  |
| <b>Full pitch/Half pitch</b> | You can switch between full pitch and half pitch.  |
| <b>Copy</b>                  | You can copy characters. (See page 421)  |
| <b>Cut</b>                   | You can cut out characters. (See page 421)   |
| <b>Paste</b>                 | You can paste cut or copied characters. (See page 421)   |

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Common phrases</b>  | <p>▶ <b>Select a folder</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a common phrase.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● In the mode other than numeral input mode, you can bring up the folder list for common phrases also by pressing and holding  for at least one second.</li> <li>● See page 484 for the common phrase folder list.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Space</b>           | <p>You can enter a full-pitch space in full-pitch input mode, and a half-pitch space in half-pitch input mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When the cursor is at the end of text, you can enter a space also by pressing .</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Kuten code</b>      | <p>You can enter characters, numerals, and symbols on the Kuten Code List (see the PDF version of "Kuten Code List" on the provided CD-ROM).</p> <p>You can operate in Kanji/Hiragana input mode.</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter a four-digit Kuten code.</b></p> <p>A character that matches the entered Kuten code is displayed, and the former input mode returns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When a character that matches the entered Kuten code is not found, a space is inserted.</li> </ul>                |
| <b>Quote phonebook</b> | <p>You can access and quote Phonebook entries. The following are the items you can quote:</p> <p>&lt;Inside FOMA phone&gt;<br/>Name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, memorandums</p> <p>&lt;Inside UIM&gt;<br/>Name, reading, phone number, mail address</p> <p>▶ <b>Search the Phonebook</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Select a Phonebook entry</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for items to be quoted</b> ▶ </p> |
| <b>Quote own data</b>  | <p>You can access and quote your personal information. The following are the items you can quote:</p> <p>Name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, memorandums</p> <p>▶ <b>Enter your Terminal Security Code</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Put a check mark for items to be quoted</b> ▶ </p>   |
| <b>Bar code reader</b> | You can start Bar Code Reader. (See page 196)   |
| <b>Input time</b>      | <p>▶ <b>Select a format for entering the date/time</b></p> <p>▶ <b>Enter the date/time.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can enter the date/time using the numeric keys.</li> <li>● You can enter years 1800 through 2099.</li> </ul>   |


| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>Own dictionary</b>     | You can store words in Own dictionary. (See page 421)  |
| <b>Learned words</b>      | You can check or delete learned words. (See page 422)  |
| <b>Change input mode</b>  | You can switch the character input methods. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select an input mode.</b></li> <li>● You cannot select the input mode that is not selected in "Input mode" of "Character input method" (see page 416).</li> <li>● You can switch the input modes also by pressing and holding  (Mode) for at least one second from the Character Entry (Edit) display.</li> </ul> |
| <b>2/NIKO-touch guide</b> | You can select whether to list character conversion candidates at the lower part of the display when you press the first-digit key while you are entering characters in Mode 2 (2-touch) or Mode 3 (NIKO-touch). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></li> </ul>  |
| <b>Candid. auto-disp.</b> | See page 153.  |
| <b>Candidate display</b>  | You can select whether to use context forecast candidates. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>ON or OFF</b></li> </ul>  |
| <b>Character set time</b> | You can select whether to automatically fix the entered characters while you are entering characters in Mode 1 (5-touch). In addition, you can specify the time until characters are fixed. You can omit the operation of pressing  to move the cursor for the entry of characters on the same key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Fast, Normal, Slow, or OFF</b></li> </ul>                 |
| <b>Help</b>               | You can check the operating procedures for entering characters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></li> </ul>   |
| <b>Undo</b>               | You can undo the deleted or cut text. You can do it up to 10 times. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can undo the operation also by pressing .</li> </ul>   |
| <b>JUMP</b>               | You can move the cursor to the top or end of text. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>To beginning or To end</b></li> <li>● When the Character Entry (Edit) display ranges over multiple pages, the cursor moves to the beginning or end of the page.</li> </ul>  |

## Information

### <Pictograph>

- You might not be able to enter pictographs depending on the Character Entry (Edit) display.
- Once you have entered pictographs, "History" appears first.
- Up to 27 records of the pictographs entered in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 and up to 36 records of Decomail-pictograph are displayed on "History".
- You can enter up to 20 Decomail-pictographs. When you insert other images, however, the number of Decomail-pictographs that can be entered is reduced by the number of inserted images.

### <Symbols>

- You can enter "+" by pressing and holding  for at least one second in Numerical input mode.
- You might not be able to enter some symbols depending on the Character Entry (Edit) display.
- Once you have entered symbols, "History" appears first.
- Up to 27 records of the symbols entered in half-pitch and up to 36 records in full-pitch are displayed on "History".

### <Full pitch/Half pitch>

- When you switch to half-pitch mode in Kanji/Hiragana input mode of NIKO-touch, the input mode switches to half-pitch Katakana input mode.

### <Common phrases>

- You might not be able to enter common phrases depending on the Character Entry (Edit) display.
- In Japanese Mode, the called-up contents of common phrases pre-installed in the FOMA phone differ depending on the input mode.

### <Quote phonebook>

- When you quote a postal address, you cannot quote "〒" or "-" of the postal code.

### <Quote own data>

- When you quote a postal address, you cannot quote "〒" or "-" of the postal code.
- The personal data of Number A is quoted in A Mode of 2in1, the personal data of Number B is quoted in B Mode, and the personal data of both Number A and Number B is quoted in Dual Mode.

### <Character set time>

- You might not be able to enter characters as you like depending on this setting and your speed of operating keys.

## <Common Phrases>



## Using Common Phrases

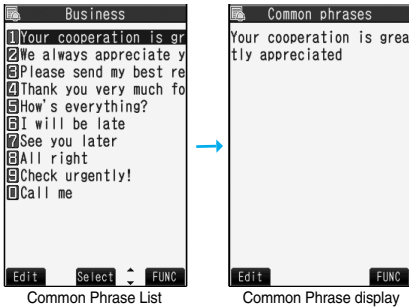
You can call up and enter, on the Character Entry (Edit) display, the common phrases pre-installed in the FOMA phone, or your own created common phrases. The common phrases are sorted into five folders and each folder contains 10 of them. You can edit the pre-installed common phrases to save as your own common phrases.

## Display Common Phrases

- ▶ Stationery ▶ Common phrase/dic.  
▶ Common phrases ▶ Select a folder.



## 2 Select a common phrase.



- See page 484 for the Common Phrase List.

### Information

- Do not use half-pitch katakana characters and pictographs for your own common phrases used for composing mail. They might not be correctly displayed. (Pictographs can be used between i-mode mail messages.)
- In Japanese Mode, the common phrases pre-installed in the “あいさつ (Greeting)” and “ビジネス (Business)” folders are called up as kanji/hiragana common phrases in Kanji/Hiragana input mode and in other input mode, called up as half-pitch katakana common phrases.

### Function Menu of the Common Phrase Folder List

| Function menu           | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit folder name</b> | <p>▶ Enter a folder name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>• When you delete all the characters entered as a folder name, the folder name is reset to the default.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Reset name</b>       | <p>You can reset the folder name to the default.</p> <p>▶ YES</p>   |

### Function Menu of the Common Phrase List/ Common Phrase Display

| Function menu     | Operation/Explanation  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>Edit</b>       | <p>▶ Enter a common phrase.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You can enter up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters.</li> <li>• When you delete all the characters in a common phrase, the common phrase is reset to the default.</li> <li>• You can edit a common phrase by pressing (Edit).</li> </ul> |
| <b>Reset this</b> | <p>You can reset the common phrase to the default.</p> <p>▶ YES</p>  |

| Function menu    | Operation/Explanation   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>Reset all</b> | <p>You can reset all the common phrases in the folder to the default.</p> <p>▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code</p> <p>▶ YES</p> |

## Cutting/Copying/Pasting Characters

### Cut/Copy

You can cut or copy up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

#### 1 Character Entry (Edit) display

▶ (Cut) (FUNC) ▶ Cut or Copy

#### 2 Select a start point.

- You can press (All) to select all characters.

#### 3 Select an end point.

### Information

- If you copy/cut the Deco-mail text during composing and paste it, the information about the decoration is pasted as well.
- You might not be able to cut or copy data such as Deco-mail text because the memory space runs short.

## Paste

You can paste cut or copied characters.

#### 1 Character Entry (Edit) display

▶ Move the cursor to a start position for pasting ▶ (Paste) (FUNC) ▶ Paste

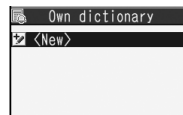
### <Own Dictionary>

(3) (8)

## Storing Words in Own Dictionary

In Own Dictionary, you can store up to 100 frequently used words with your favorite reading.

#### 1 (Stationery) ▶ Common phrase/dic. ▶ Own dictionary ▶ <New>



- Select a stored Own dictionary to check the stored contents.

#### 2 Enter a word.

- You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. However, you cannot enter line feeds.

Next Page

### 3 Enter a reading.

- You can enter up to 10 hiragana characters.  
Also, you cannot store symbols other than “Long vowel (—)”. However, you can store “ ” or “ ” for the words to which “ ” or “ ” can be attached.
- Even if you enter a space, the word is stored with the space automatically deleted.

#### Function Menu while Own Dictionary is Displayed

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>New</b>             | Go to step 2 of “Storing Words in Own Dictionary” on page 421.   |
| <b>Edit</b>            | Go to step 2 of “Storing Words in Own Dictionary” on page 421.<br>• You can edit also by pressing  (Edit). |
| <b>Delete this</b>     | ▶ YES  |
| <b>Delete selected</b> | ▶ Put a check mark for own dictionaries to be deleted  (Finish)<br>▶ YES                                   |
| <b>Delete all</b>      | ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ YES   |

#### Information

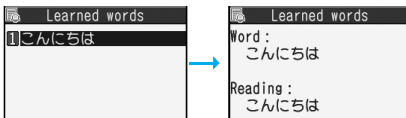
##### <Delete selected>

- “Delete selected” does not appear when you display Own Dictionary from the Function menu of the Character Entry (Edit) display.

## Checking Learned Words

The FOMA phone automatically memorizes the character strings once you entered and displays as the conversion candidates of learned words.

- Function menu while entering (editing) characters ▶ Learned words ▶ Select a column ▶ Select a record.



- To delete learned words, press (FUNC) and select “Delete this” or “Delete all”, then select “YES”. If you select “Delete all”, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

## Reset Learned Words

You can reset the learned words.

- ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings
  - ▶ Character input method
  - ▶ Reset learned words
  - ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code
  - ▶ YES

## <Download Dictionary>

3 8

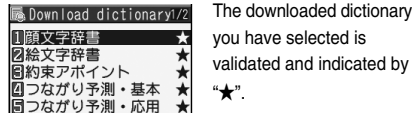
## Using Downloaded Dictionary

You can make dictionaries downloaded (see page 214) from sites valid.

- ▶ Stationery ▶ Common phrase/dic.

- ▶ Download dictionary

- ▶ Select a downloaded dictionary.



The downloaded dictionary you have selected is validated and indicated by “★”.

- To invalidate a downloaded dictionary, perform the same operation.
- You can validate up to five downloaded dictionaries.
- “顔文字辞書 (Smiley dictionary)”, “絵文字辞書 (Pictograph dictionary)”, “約束アポイント (Appointment)”, “つながり予測・基本 (Link forecast/basic)”, and “つながり予測・応用 (Link forecast/application)” are pre-installed.

## Function Menu while Downloaded Dictionary is Displayed

| Function menu          | Operation/Explanation   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Edit title</b>      | ▶ Edit the title.<br>• You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. |
| <b>Set dictionary</b>  | You can set the dictionary valid/invalid.   |
| Setting at purchase    | Each time you operate, valid and invalid switch.                                      |
| All valid              |   |
| <b>Dictionary info</b> | You can display the dictionary title and version.                                     |
| <b>Delete this</b>     | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Delete all</b>      | ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code<br>▶ YES  |

#### Information

##### <Edit title>

- If you delete all the characters entered as a title, the title is reset to the default.



<Mode 2 (2-touch)>

## Entering Characters in Mode 2 (2-touch)

When you press two numeric keys to enter two-digit numerals, a character (symbol) that corresponds to the numerals is entered. Press the first key to list candidate characters (symbols) at the lower part of the display. To list candidate characters, you need to set “2/NIKO-touch guide” to “ON” in advance.

- See page 478 for how characters are assigned to the numeric keys (2-touch).
- See page 416 for switching to “2-touch”.

### Switch Input Modes (2-touch)

Press (Mode) from the Character Entry (Edit) display to switch input modes. You might not be able to switch to some modes depending on the function you enter.

### Enter Characters

<Example> Enter “タダの菓子” into a free memo.

- 1 ▶ Stationery ▶ Free memo  
▶ (Edit)

The Character Entry (Edit) display appears.

- 2 Enter hiragana characters in Kanji/  
Hiragana input mode.

た →   
だ → ,   
の →   
か →   
し →

- To enter “ ” or “ ”, enter the character and then press .
- Press to switch between uppercase and lowercase. You can switch uppercase and lowercase also by entering the character that can be switched between uppercase and lowercase and pressing .

After entering hiragana characters, go to step 3 on page 416.

<Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)>

## Entering Characters in Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)

When you press two numeric keys to enter two-digit numerals, a character (symbol) that corresponds to the numerals is entered. Press the first key to list candidate characters (symbols) at the lower part of the display. To list candidate characters, you need to set “2/NIKO-touch guide” to “ON” in advance.

- See page 479 for how characters are assigned to the numeric keys (NIKO-touch).
- See page 416 for switching to “NIKO-touch”.

### Switch Input Modes (NIKO-touch)

Press (Mode) from the Character Entry (Edit) display to switch input modes. You might not be able to switch to some modes depending on the function you enter.

### Enter Characters

<Example> Enter “タダの菓子” into a free memo.

- 1 ▶ Stationery ▶ Free memo  
▶ (Edit)

The Character Entry (Edit) display appears.

- 2 Enter hiragana characters in Kanji/  
Hiragana input mode.

た →   
だ → ,   
の →   
か →   
し →

- To enter “ ” or “ ”, enter the character and then press .
- Enter the character that can be switched between uppercase and lowercase and press ; then you can switch.

After entering hiragana characters, go to step 3 on page 416.



# Network Services

In this manual, a brief outline for each network service is described following the procedure using the menus of the FOMA phone. For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Network Services Available from FOMA Phone .....               | 426 |
| Checking New Voice Mail Messages .....                         | 426 |
| <Check Network Information>                                    |     |
| Using Voice Mail Service .....                                 | 427 |
| <Voice Mail>   |     |
| Using Call Waiting Service .....                               | 428 |
| <Call Waiting>   |     |
| Using Call Forwarding Service .....                            | 430 |
| <Call Forwarding>  |     |
| Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....                     | 431 |
| <Nuisance Call Blocking>                                       |     |
| Using Caller ID Display Request Service .....                  | 432 |
| <Caller ID Request>  |     |
| Using Dual Network Service .....                               | 432 |
| <Dual Network>   |     |
| Switching Guidance Language between Japanese and English ..... | 433 |
| <English Guidance>   |     |
| Using Service Numbers .....                                    | 433 |
| <Service Numbers>  |     |
| Selecting Response to Incoming Calls during a Call .....       | 433 |
| <In-call Management>   |     |
| Setting Remote Access .....                                    | 434 |
| <Remote Access>  |     |
| Setting Additional Number .....                                | 434 |
| <Multi Number>   |     |
| Using 2in1 .....   | 435 |
| <2in1>   |     |
| Using OFFICEED .....   | 440 |
| Using Additional Services .....                                | 440 |
| <Additional Service>   |     |

## Network Services Available from FOMA Phone

The following are the DoCoMo network services available from the FOMA phone:

For the outline and usage method of each service, see the reference page in the table below.

- The network services are not available when you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- For subscriptions and inquiries, contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

| Service                           | Application  | Monthly fee | Reference |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| Voice Mail Service                | Required     | Charged     | P.427     |
| Call Waiting Service              | Required     | Charged     | P.428     |
| Call Forwarding Service           | Required     | Free        | P.430     |
| Nuisance Call Blocking Service    | Required     | Free        | P.431     |
| Caller ID Notification Service    | Not required | Free        | P.48      |
| Caller ID Display Request Service | Not required | Free        | P.432     |
| Dual Network Service              | Required     | Charged     | P.432     |
| English Guidance                  | Not required | Free        | P.433     |
| Multi Number                      | Required     | Charged     | P.434     |
| 2in1                              | Required     | Charged     | P.435     |
| Public Mode (Drive Mode)          | Not required | Free        | P.77      |
| Public Mode (Power Off)           | Not required | Free        | P.79      |
| OFFICEED                          | Required     | Charged     | P.440     |

- "Deactivate" does not mean that the contract for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or other services is canceled.

### Information

- You can store new network services in the menu when they are provided by DoCoMo. (See page 440)

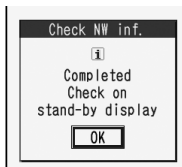
<Check Network Information>

2 5

## Checking New Voice Mail Messages

You can check whether any message is held at the Voice Mail Service Center.

1 Service > Check NW inf. > OK



### About checked results

- If any voice mail message is held, the "Voice mail" icon ( ) and another Voice Mail icon such as " " appear to inform you of the held message.
- To erase the Voice Mail icon such as " ", dial at the Voice Mail Service Center for saving or erasing the voice mail message or follow the operations of "Erase icon".
- The Voice Mail icons switch among , , , etc., and (10 or more messages) according to the number of the messages held at the Voice Mail Service Center. The displayed number is the number of messages informed by the guidance when you play back new messages. Saved messages are not included.
- If you set "Message notification", the ring tone sounds each time a message is added.
- See page 427 for how to play back voice mail messages.

### When " " appears

You cannot check voice mail messages. Move to a place where " " is cleared.

## Using Voice Mail Service

This service provides an answer message for incoming voice calls/videophone calls and then holds voice mail messages on behalf of you when you are in a place where radio waves do not reach, the power is turned off, or you cannot answer calls.

- When Record Message (see page 80) is simultaneously activated and you want to give Voice Mail Service priority, set its ring time shorter than that for Record Message.
- When you do not answer an incoming voice call or videophone call while Voice Mail Service is set to “Activate”, the call is recorded as a missed call in “Received calls”, and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the Stand-by display.

### ■ About Voice Mail Service

- Voice Mail Service is valid for voice calls and videophone calls.
- A voice mail message can be recorded for up to three minutes. Twenty messages can be recorded respectively for voice calls and videophone calls and held at the Center for up to 72 hours.
- When a voice mail message of a videophone call is retained at the Voice Mail Service Center, you are notified by an SMS message.
- Make a voice call at “1412” to change the Voice Mail setting for videophone calls.
- 32K videophone calls cannot be connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- When a Chara-den call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center, DTMF operation is not available. Switch to “Send DTMF tone” on the Function menu. (See page 87)
- When a call comes in while Voice Mail Service is set to “Activate”, the ring tone (specified by “Select ring tone”) will sound. (You can change the ring time for incoming calls. See page 427.) If you answer the call within the specified time, you can start talking. If you do not answer, the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
- You can just press keys to connect an incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center. Also, you can connect the call that comes in during a call to the Center.

## Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

**Step 1: Set the service to “Activate”.**


**Step 2: The caller records a voice/video message.\***

**Step 3: Play back the message.**

\* If the caller wants to skip playback of the answer message and record a message such as when in a hurry, he/she can immediately switch to the recording mode by pressing “#” while the answer message is played back.

## Use Voice Mail Service

- 1  **Service** ▶ **Voice mail**  
▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                          | Operation/Explanation   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <b>Play messages</b>          | You can play back messages recorded as the Voice Mail.<br>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ Operate following the voice guidance.  |
| <b>Activate</b>               | ▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>YES</b><br>▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).<br>• Enter from “000” through “120” in three digits.  |
| <b>Deactivate</b>             | ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Set ring time</b>          | You can set the ring time until the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.<br>▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).<br>• Enter from “000” through “120” in three digits.  |
| <b>Check setting</b>          | You can check the setting contents of Voice Mail Service.   |
| <b>Setting</b>                | You can switch the setting contents of Voice Mail Service.<br>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ Operate following the voice guidance.  |
| <b>Message notification</b>   | You can set the ring tone to sound when a new message is recorded. The ring tone set for “Mail” of “Select ring tone” sounds for about five seconds.<br>▶ <b>YES</b> or <b>NO</b>   |
| <b>Erase icon</b>             | You can erase the Voice Mail icons (such as  ) from the Stand-by display.<br>▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Activate notice call</b>   | When you are out of reach of radio waves or the power is turned off, you are informed by SMS of the received call records. Up to five received call records per an SMS message are notified.<br>▶ Select an item.<br><b>All calls</b><br>... Informs you of all received calls.<br><b>Calls w/ caller ID</b><br>... Informs you of only the calls that notified the phone number.<br>▶ <b>YES</b> |
| <b>Deactivate notice call</b> | ▶ <b>YES</b>  |
| <b>Notice call status</b>     | You can check the setting contents of notice call.  |

### Information

#### <Play messages> <Setting>

- You cannot operate during a call.
- If you press through , , or following the voice guidance, you may not end the call by pressing . In this case, press again.

#### <Set ring time>

- If "Set ring time" is set to 0 seconds, the calls are not recorded in Received Calls.

#### <Erase icon>

- Even if you erase the Voice Mail icons, the messages held at the Voice Mail Service Center are not erased.

#### <Activate notice call>

- Even when you set to reject all SMS messages, you are informed by SMS message of the received call records.

## Forward an Incoming Call to Voice Mail Service Center during Ringing

You can connect an incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center just by a simple key operation. Even if you do not set Voice Mail Service to "Activate", the service will be available using this function.

### 1 During ringing (FUNC) ▶ Voice mail

- You can connect the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center also by pressing (FUNC), and pressing .

## Forward Specified Calls to Voice Mail Center

You can automatically connect the calls coming from the phone numbers stored in the Phonebook to the Voice Mail Service Center regardless of the Activate/Deactivate setting for the Service.

You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This setting is valid only when the caller notifies his/her phone number.

It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" at the same time.

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC)

▶ Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Voice mail

"Voice mail" is indicated by "★".

- To release "Voice mail", perform the same operation.

### Information

- When a call comes in from the phone number set with this function, the ring tone sounds for about one second and then the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. You will be notified of the call by the icons on the desktop (see page 80 and page 150) and "Received calls".

### Information

- Even if you set this function, all incoming calls are not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center when you set "Personal data lock" while Voice Mail Service is deactivated.

### <Call Waiting>

## Using Call Waiting Service

When a call comes in during a call, this service notifies you of it by the ring tone in call, and enables you to place the current call on hold to answer the new call.

Further, you can make a call to another person putting the current call on hold.

- To use Call Waiting Service, set "In-call management" (see page 433) to "Answer" in advance. When another option is set, you cannot answer a voice call during a voice call even if you set "Call waiting" to "Activate".

## Use Call Waiting Service

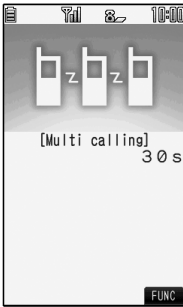
- ▶ Service ▶ Call waiting  
▶ Do the following operations.

| Item          | Operation/Explanation                                       |
|---------------|---|
| Activate      | ▶ YES   |
| Deactivate    | ▶ YES   |
| Check setting | You can check the setting contents of Call Waiting Service. |


## Answer an Incoming Call during a Call

You can answer another call putting the current call on hold.



### 1 Another call comes in during a call



The current call is automatically put on hold so that you can receive another call.

- "Multi calling" is displayed when there is the party on hold.
- Each time you press , you can switch the parties you can talk with.

#### Information

- For an incoming call or communication that is not supported by Call Waiting, press  from the Call Receiving display to show the confirmation display telling that you can answer a new call if you end the current call. Press  to end the current call, and then the Call Receiving display appears. When you select "OK", the Call Receiving display during a call returns.
- If a call comes in during a videophone call, the FOMA phone operates as follows:
  - The moving image, i-motion movie or Flash movie set as the image for incoming calls is not displayed.
  - A "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party of the current call.
  - The vibrator does not work.
- When a voice call comes in while dialing 117, you hear an in-call ring tone but cannot answer that call. The call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls.

## End a Call to Answer Another Call

You can answer another call after finishing the current call.

### 1 Another call comes in during a call

The ring tone sounds. You can answer the new call.

## Continue the Current Call

### 1 Another call comes in during a call Do the following operations.

| Function menu  | Operation/Explanation   |
|----------------|---|
| Call rejection | You can reject a new incoming call and resume the current call. |

| Function menu   | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------|--|
| Call forwarding | You can forward a new incoming call to the forwarding destination and resume the current call. |
| Voice mail      | You can connect a new incoming call to the Voice Mail Center and resume the current call.      |

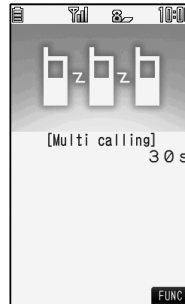
#### Information

- Incoming calls are rejected during a videophone call, Remote Monitoring or call hold, or while Record Message is working. The "Missed call" icon appears when the current call ends, and the call is recorded in Received Calls. (The "Missed call" icon might not appear and the received call record might not be recorded depending on the contracts and setting for Voice Mail, Call Waiting, and Call Forwarding Services.)


## Hold a Call to Make a New Call

You can make a call to another party putting the current call on hold.

### 1 Enter another party's phone number during a call



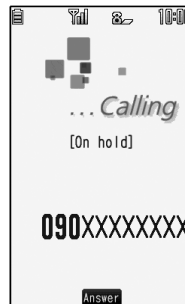
You can talk with the party you have dialed. The call with the first party is automatically put on hold.

- "Multi calling" is displayed when there is the party on hold.
- Each time you press , you can switch the parties you can talk with.

## End a Call to Answer the Held Call




You can answer the held call after finishing the current call.

### 1 During Multi calling




The ring tone sounds.


[Next Page](#)

- 2** Press  or  (ANSWER).
- When the other party you have been talking with ends the call, press  to talk with the party on hold.

## End a Held Call

- 1** During Multi calling  (FUNC)  
▶ End held call

### Information

- When another call comes in while the current call is put on hold, the held call is released.
- When another call comes in during Multi-calling, the Call Receiving display appears. Press  (FUNC) and select “End held call” to end the held call. If you select “End talk”, you can end the current call.

## <Call Forwarding> Using Call Forwarding Service

This service forwards incoming voice calls/ videophone calls when you are in a place where radio waves do not reach, the power is turned off, or you do not answer calls within a specified time.

- When Record Message (see page 80) or Remote Monitoring (see page 90) is simultaneously activated and you want to give Call Forwarding Service priority, set its ring time shorter than that for “Record message setting” or “Remote monitoring”.
- When you do not answer an incoming voice call or videophone call while Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”, the call is recorded as a missed call in “Received calls”, and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the Stand-by display.

### ■About Call Forwarding Service



- When a call comes in while Call Forwarding Service is set to “Activate”, the ring tone (specified by “Select ring tone”) will sound. (You can change the ring time for incoming calls. See page 430.) If you answer the call within the specified time, you can start talking.
- You can just press keys to forward incoming calls. Also, you can forward the call that comes in during a call.

## Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1:** Store the phone number of forwarding destination.
- Step 2:** Set Call Forwarding Service to “Activate”.
- Step 3:** A call comes into your FOMA phone.
- Step 4:** The call is automatically forwarded to the specified destination if you do not answer.

## Use Call Forwarding Service

- 1**  ▶ Service ▶ Call forwarding  
▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                     | Operation/Explanation   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Activate                 | ▶ Register fwd number ▶ Enter the phone number of forwarding destination.<br>• Press  to select the phone number in the Search Phonebook display. (See page 116)<br><br>▶ Set ring time<br>▶ Enter a ring time (seconds).<br>• Enter from “000” through “120” in three digits.<br><br>▶ Activate ▶ YES   |
| Deactivate               | ▶ YES   |
| Change forwarding No.    | ▶ Enter the phone number of forwarding destination ▶ Select an item.<br><b>Change No.</b><br>... Select this when Call Forwarding Service is activated.<br><b>Change No. +Activate</b><br>... Select this while Call Forwarding Service is deactivated and you want to activate the Service as soon as the forwarding destination is changed.<br>• Press  to select the phone number in the Search Phonebook display. (See page 116) |
| Setting if fwd. No. busy | You can set an incoming call to be connected to the Voice Mail Service Center when the forwarding destination is busy. You need to subscribe to Voice Mail Service to use it.<br>▶ YES  |
| Check setting            | You can check the phone number and ring time of forwarding destination.   |

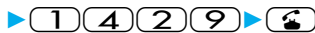
### Information

- If you answer the call while ringing, the call is not forwarded; you can talk.
- If you are out of reach of radio waves or the power is turned off, the ring tone does not sound and the call is automatically forwarded. The call fee from the forwarder to the forwarding destination is charged for the forwarder who has subscribed for the service.
- If the ring time for Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 seconds, the calls are not recorded in Received Calls.



## Set On/Off of Forwarding Guidance

### 1 Stand-by display



Operate following the voice guidance.

- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

## Forward an Incoming Call during Ringing

You can forward an incoming call to the phone number you specified as a “Forwarding number” by a simple key operation. Even if you do not set Call Forwarding Service to “Activate”, the service will be available using this function.

### 1 During ringing (FUNC)

▶ Call forwarding

## Forward Specified Calls to Specified Destination

You can automatically forward the calls from the specified phone numbers stored in the Phonebook after the ring tone sounds for about one second, regardless of the Activate/Deactivate setting for Call Forwarding Service.

You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This setting is valid only when the caller notifies his/her phone number.

It is advisable to activate “Caller ID request” at the same time.

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display (FUNC)

▶ Restrictions ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Call forwarding

“Call forwarding” is indicated by “★”.

- To release “Call forwarding”, perform the same operation.

#### Information

- Even if you set this function, all incoming calls are not forwarded when you set “Personal data lock” while Call Forwarding Service is deactivated.
- If you have not signed up for Call Forwarding Service or have not set the forwarding destination, the call will be a missed call.

## <Nuisance Call Blocking>

## Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can register so as not to receive “nuisance calls” such as crank calls.

Once you register a phone number for rejection, calls from that phone number is automatically rejected and the guidance answers the caller.




- When a call comes in from the phone number stored for rejection, the ring tone does not sound. The call is not recorded in Received Calls, either.

### ■ Relation between each Service and incoming calls while Nuisance Call Blocking Service is activated

| Service                           | Handling of incoming calls from the caller rejected as Register Caller                          |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Voice Mail Service                | Call Rejection guidance is played back. (Message is not held.)                                  |
| Call Forwarding Service           | Call Rejection guidance is played back. (Not forwarded to forwarding destination.)              |
| Call Waiting Service              | Call Rejection guidance is played back.   |
| Caller ID Display Request Service | Call Rejection guidance is played back.   |
| Public Mode (Drive Mode)          | Call Rejection guidance is played back. [Public Mode (Drive Mode) guidance is not played back.] |

For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network Services]”.

### 1 Service ▶ Nuis. call blocking ▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                  | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------------|--|
| Register caller       | You can register the phone number of the call that arrived last for rejection.<br>▶ YES ▶ OK   |
| Register selected No. | You can register the specified phone number for rejection so that the call from that phone number does not come in.<br>▶ Enter a phone number ▶ YES<br>• Press  to select the phone number from the Search Phonebook display, and press  to select from the Dialed Call List, and press  to select from the Received Call List. |
| Delete last entry     | You can delete the phone number registered last. Repeat the same procedures to delete phone numbers one by one from the one registered last.<br>▶ YES ▶ OK   |
| Delete all entries    | ▶ YES ▶ OK   |
| Check No. of entries  | You can check the number of phone numbers registered for rejection.  |

## <Caller ID Request>

# Using Caller ID Display Request Service

This service provides the guidance asking the caller ID notification against incoming voice calls/ videophone calls without caller IDs, and then automatically disconnects the call.

- The call rejected by Caller ID Display Request Service is not recorded in "Received calls", and the "Missed call" desktop icon does not appear.

### ■ Relation between each Service and incoming calls while Caller ID Display Request Service is activated

| Service                        | Handling incoming call from the caller who does not notify a caller ID                              |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Voice Mail Service             | Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (Message is not held.)                                   |
| Call Forwarding Service        | Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (Not forwarded to the forwarding destination.)           |
| Call Waiting Service           | Caller ID Request guidance is played back.  |
| Nuisance Call Blocking Service | For the call from the number registered to be rejected, the Call Rejection guidance is played back. |
| Public Mode (Drive Mode)       | Caller ID Request guidance is played back. [Public Mode (Drive Mode) guidance is not played back.]  |

## 1 ▶ Service ▶ Caller ID request ▶ Do the following operations.

| Item          | Operation/Explanation  |
|---------------|--|
| Activate      | ▶ YES ▶ OK   |
| Deactivate    | ▶ YES ▶ OK   |
| Check setting | You can check the setting contents of Caller ID Display Request Service. |

### Information

- If you activate this service while you set "Call setting w/o ID" to "Reject", this service has priority.
- You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from landline phones, public phones, and other mobile phones.

## <Dual Network>

# Using Dual Network Service

You can use a mova phone with the phone number for your FOMA phone. You can use either your FOMA phone or mova phone depending on the service area.

- You cannot use your FOMA phone and mova phone at the same time.
- You need to operate Dual Network Switching from the phone which is not using the service.

## 1 ▶ Service ▶ Dual network ▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                   | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------------|--|
| Dual network switching | You can switch to the FOMA phone so that you can use it. Operate when the FOMA is in the FOMA service area.<br>▶ YES<br>▶ Enter your Network Security Code.<br>● See page 156 for the Network Security Code. |
| Check setting          | You can check the setting contents of Dual Network Service.  |

## Dual Network Service by Key Operations

You can press a few keys to use Dual Network Service instead of using the menu function in the FOMA phone.







### ■ To switch the phones (from the phone which is not using the service)

      → Enter your Network Security Code → Guidance for switching → 

### ■ Check network status (from the phone you want to check)

      → Check → 

### Information

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- If you press  through , , or  following the voice guidance, you may not be able to end the call by pressing . In this case, press  again.

## <English Guidance>

# Switching Guidance Language between Japanese and English

You can set the guidance for network services such as “Voice mail” or the voice guidance such as for the out-of-service area, to be played back in English.

### ■ Outgoing (Guidance to yourself)

| Language | Description                          |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| Japanese | Plays back the guidance in Japanese. |
| English  | Plays back the guidance in English.  |

### ■ Incoming (Guidance to the caller)

| Language         | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| Japanese         | Plays back the guidance in Japanese.                           |
| Japanese+English | Plays back the guidance first in Japanese and then in English. |
| English+Japanese | Plays back the guidance first in English and then in Japanese. |

## 1 Service ▶ English guidance ▶ Do the following operations.

| Item             | Operation/Explanation  |
|------------------|--|
| Guidance setting | ▶ Select an item.<br><b>Outgoing+Incoming</b><br>... Sets the guidance for outgoing and incoming calls at a time.  |
|                  | <b>Outgoing call</b><br>... Sets the guidance for outgoing calls.  |
|                  | <b>Incoming call</b><br>... Sets the guidance for incoming calls.  |
|                  | ▶ Select a guidance language to be set<br>▶ YES<br>● If you select “Outgoing+Incoming”, set the guidance for outgoing calls, and then set the guidance for incoming calls. |

**Check setting** You can check the setting contents of the English guidance.

### Information

- You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from landline phones, public phones, and other mobile phones.



## <Service Numbers>

# Using Service Numbers

You can make calls to the DoCoMo Information Center or DoCoMo repair counter.

- Depending on the UIM you use, the displayed items might differ or no items are displayed.

## 1 Service ▶ Service numbers ▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                                  | Operation/Explanation  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo repair counter)      |  You can make a call to the repair counter. Dialing 113 starts.     |
| ドコモ総合案内受付 (DoCoMo Information Center) |  You can make a call to the Information Center. Dialing 151 starts. |

## <In-call Management>

# Selecting Response to Incoming Calls during a Call

| Setting at purchase | Answer |
|---------------------|--------|
|---------------------|--------|

You can set how to manage a voice call/videophone call or 64K data communication that comes in during a call when you have signed up for “Voice mail”, “Call forwarding” or “Call waiting”.

- When you have not signed up for “Voice mail”, “Call forwarding”, or “Call waiting”, you cannot answer calls that come in during a call.
- To use “In-call management”, you need to set “Set in-call arrival act” to “Activate”.

## 1 Service ▶ In-call management ▶ Do the following operations.

| Item            | Operation/Explanation  |
|-----------------|--|
| Voice mail      | You can connect voice calls or videophone calls that come in during a call to the Voice Mail Service Center, regardless of the setting for “Call waiting” or “Voice mail”.   |
| Call forwarding | You can forward voice calls or videophone calls that come in during a call to the forwarding destination, regardless of the setting for “Call waiting” or “Call forwarding”. |
| Call rejection  | You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, or 64K data communication that come in during a call.  |

| Item          | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Answer</b> | <p>If you have set "Call waiting" to "Activate" and receive a voice call during a voice call, you can use "Call waiting". Any of the following operations is available during a voice call (when "Call waiting" is set to "Deactivate"), during a videophone call, or during 64K data communication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can answer incoming voice calls, videophone calls, or 64K data communication after finishing the current voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication.</li> <li>From the Function menu, you can manually operate voice calls, videophone calls, or 64K data communication that come in during a call.</li> <li>When "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is set to "Activate", your FOMA phone follows that setting.</li> </ul> |

### Set In-call Arrival Act

You can activate/deactivate the functions you selected in In-call Management and can check the setting contents.

- 1 ▶ **Service** ▶ **Set in-call arrival act**  
▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                 | Operation/Explanation                                     |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Activate</b>      | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Deactivate</b>    | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Check setting</b> | You can check the setting contents of In-call Management. |

#### Information

- You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from landline phones, public phones, and other mobile phones.

### <Remote Access>

## Setting Remote Access

You can set "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" to be operated from touch-tone landline phones, public phones, DoCoMo mobile phones, or others.

- To use "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" overseas, you need to set "Remote access" to "Activate" in advance.

- 1 ▶ **Service** ▶ **Remote access**  
▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                 | Operation/Explanation                                |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>Activate</b>      | ▶ YES  |
| <b>Deactivate</b>    | ▶ YES  |
| <b>Check setting</b> | You can check the setting contents of Remote Access. |

#### Information

- You can set and confirm this setting from the FOMA phone with your own UIM inserted. You cannot remote-access the setting from landline phones, public phones, and other mobile phones.

### <Multi Number>

## Setting Additional Number

You can add and use the additional number 1 and 2 at maximum as the phone numbers of your FOMA phone besides the basic number.

- When you remove or replace the UIM, the multi number settings (name, phone number, etc.) stored in the FOMA phone might be erased. In this case, store them again.
- The name that corresponds to each multi number (Basic Number/Additional Number1/Additional Number2) appears on the Dialing display/Call Receiving display.
- When you make a call from Redial, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls, the multi number of the call you dialed/received at that time appears and is dialed.

### Number Setting

You can register additional numbers.

- 1 ▶ **Service** ▶ **Multi number** ▶ **Number setting** ▶ Select an additional number.

- You can register/edit an additional number also by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Edit" or by pressing (Edit).
- Select the registered additional number to check the registered name and phone number.
- To delete the registered additional number, press (FUNC) and select "Delete this" or "Delete all", then select "YES".

- 2 **Enter a registration name**

▶ Enter a phone number.

- You can enter up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters for a registration name.

## Set Multi Number

By switching this setting, you can make all calls from a specified phone number.

- 1  ▶ Service ▶ Multi number ▶ Set multi number ▶ Select a phone number.

### Basic Number

...Dials by the contracted phone number.

### Additional Number1 and 2

...Dials by an additional number. When the registration name is changed, each registration name is displayed. However, the registration name is not displayed during Personal Data Lock.

## 2 YES

## Set Own Phone Number when Making a Call

Before making a call, you can select a phone number to be notified to the other party from a Function menu, and then make a call.

- 1 Enter a phone number  
or  
bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

- 2  (FUNC) ▶ Multi number  
▶ Select a phone number.

- To cancel the additional number, select "Cancel prefix".
- When you have not signed up for Multi Number, your basic number is used for dialing even if you select an additional number.

### Information

- If you select "Basic Number" or "Additional Number1 or 2", "×590 #", "×591 #", or "×592 #" is added after the phone numbers.

## Check Setting

You can check a phone number set for "Set multi number".

- 1  ▶ Service ▶ Multi number  
▶ Check setting

## Set as Ring Tone

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| Setting at purchase | Same as ring tone |
|---------------------|-------------------|

You can set a ring tone for calls that come in to the additional number.

- 1  ▶ Service ▶ Multi number ▶ Set as ring tone ▶ Select an additional number.

Go to step 2 on page 129.

When the ring tone is set to "Same as ring tone", the ring tone will be the one set for "Phone" or "Videophone" of "Select ring tone".

## <2in1>

## Using 2in1

You can use two phone numbers/mail addresses on your single FOMA phone. By using respective modes, you can operate your FOMA phone as if you are using two sets of them.

The following three modes are available with 2in1:

### A Mode

You can use your phone number (Number A) to make calls and your i-mode mail address (Address A) to send/receive mail messages, and can browse their related data.

### B Mode

You can use your 2in1 phone number (Number B) to make calls and access the sites for Web mail (Address B), and can browse their related data.


### Dual Mode

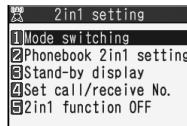
This mode has the functions of both A Mode and B Mode.

- For details on 2in1, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".
  - Address B is used to send/receive mail messages via the dedicated Web mail site.
  - You can use packet communication even in B Mode if you subscribe to i-mode.
  - You can subscribe to either 2in1 or Multi Number.
  - When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor → 2in1 contractor) while using 2in1, perform "2in1 function OFF" (see page 436) and then set "2in1 setting" to "YES", or perform "Auto acquire No. B" (see page 400), to acquire the correct Number B.
- When you replace a UIM with another one (2in1 contractor → 2in1 non-contractor), perform "2in1 function OFF" as well to update the owner's information to the correct one.
- See page 437 for how this service works for each mode.

## Activate 2in1


|                     |             |
|---------------------|-------------|
| Setting at purchase | Deactivated |
|---------------------|-------------|

- 1  ▶ Service ▶ 2in1 setting  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code  
▶ YES



2in1 Menu display

When you activate 2in1, the 2in1 Menu display appears.

- This display appears also by pressing and holding  for at least one second with the FOMA phone open and entering your Terminal Security Code.

## Configure 2in1 Setting

- 2in1 Menu display
  - Do the following operations.

| Item   | Operation/Explanation   |
|--|---|
| <b>Mode switching</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>Dual mode                                | You can switch to the mode you use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a mode.</li> <li>When 2in1 is activated, the display for selecting the mode appears also by pressing and holding  for at least one second with the Stand-by display shown, and entering your Terminal Security Code.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Phonebook 2in1 setting</b>  | You can change Phonebook 2in1 Setting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select an item.</li> <li>Set to A . . . . Sets as the Phonebook entry for A. You can use it in A Mode and Dual Mode.</li> <li>Set to B . . . . Sets as the Phonebook entry for B. You can use it in B Mode and Dual Mode.</li> <li>Set to Common . . . . . Sets as the common Phonebook entry for A and B. You can use it in all modes.</li> <li>Select a setting method.</li> <li>Set one . . . . Sets a Phonebook entry you call up.</li> <li>Set some . . . Select multiple Phonebook entries from the Phonebook List you call up, then press  (Finish).</li> <li>Set group . . . Sets a Phonebook group you call up.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Stand-by display</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>Dual mode: flower<br>B mode: tree      | You can set the Stand-by display that appears in Dual Mode or B Mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a mode▶ Set the Stand-by display.</li> <li>See page 137 for how to set the Stand-by display. However, “ appli display” is not displayed.</li> <li>If you select “Release”, the setting returns to the default.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Set call/receive No. (Disp. call/receive No.)</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>Pattern 2 | You can set the character font of phone numbers displayed on the Dialing/Call Receiving display, detailed Dialed/Received Call display, detailed Redial display, and detailed Sent Chaku-moji Message display for when you make/receive calls by Number B. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pattern 1 or Pattern 2</li> </ul>   |

| Item  | Operation/Explanation   |
|---|---|
| <b>Set call/receive No. (Ringtone set. for No. B)</b><br>Setting at purchase<br>Phone: Pattern 4<br>Video-Phone: Pattern 4<br>Mail: Pattern 5 | You can set a ring tone for Number B and a mail ring tone for Address B. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select an item.</li> <li>Phone . . . . Sets a ring tone for voice calls.</li> <li>Video-Phone . . . . . Sets a ring tone for videophone calls.</li> <li>Mail . . . . . Sets a ring tone for i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.</li> <li>Select a type of ring tone.</li> <li>Go to step 3 on page 129.</li> <li>If you select “Release”, the setting returns to the default.</li> </ul> |
| <b>2in1 function OFF</b>  | You can deactivate 2in1. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>YES</li> </ul>  |

| Information   |
|---|
| <b>&lt;Stand-by display&gt;</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See “Set Stand-by Display” on page 137 to set the Stand-by display in A Mode.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>&lt;Set call/receive No. (Disp. call/receive No.)&gt;</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The setting is retained during Personal Data Lock.</li> <li>See “Disp. call/receive No.” on page 152 to set the font of phone numbers displayed for when you make/receive calls by Number A.</li> </ul> |
| <b>&lt;Set call/receive No. (Ringtone set. for No. B)&gt;</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See “Select Ring Tone” on page 128 to set a ring tone for Number A and a mail ring tone for Address A.</li> </ul>  |

## Make a Call in Dual Mode

In Dual Mode, Number A dialing is the default setting when you make a call from the Phonebook entry of A/ common setting or the dialed/received call record of Number A, and Number B dialing is the default setting when you make a call from the Phonebook entry of B setting or the dialed/received call record of Number B. Further, you can select a phone number to be notified to the other party before making a call by the following operations.

### When Entering a Phone Number to Make a Call

- Enter a phone number
  - or (Dial)
- Number A or Number B
  - To cancel, select “Cancel”.

### When Selecting Your Caller ID from Phonebook or Call Records

- Bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.
- (FUNC)▶ 2in1 dial
  - Number A or Number B
  - To cancel, select “2in1 dial OFF”.

■ **Services available to each mode**

● The items whose operations differ depending on the mode are listed. (Items that work the same way as with A Mode are omitted.)

| Item  | A Mode   | B Mode   | Dual Mode   |   |
|---|--|--|---|---|
| Voice call  | Dialing  | Number A   | Number B  |   |
| Videophone call   | Receiving  | Receiving all calls  |   |   |
| Phonebook <sup>**2</sup>  | Displaying <sup>**3</sup>  | Phonebook entries with A setting/common setting  | Phonebook entries with B setting/common setting   | All Phonebook entries   |
|   | Changing to name <sup>**4</sup>  | Phonebook entries with A setting/common setting  | Phonebook entries with B setting/common setting   | All Phonebook entries   |
|   | 2in1 setting when newly storing  | Phonebook entries with A setting   | Phonebook entries with B setting  | Phonebook entries with A setting  |
|   | Receiving all entries using infrared rays/iC or from microSD memory card | Copying sender's 2in1 setting <sup>**5</sup>   |   |   |
|   | Receiving one entry using infrared rays/iC or from microSD memory card   | Phonebook entries with A setting   | Phonebook entries with B setting  | Phonebook entries with A setting  |
|   | "Copy to UIM"  | At the time of "Copy to UIM", 2in1 setting becomes common  |   |   |
|   | "Copy from UIM"  | Phonebook entries with A setting   | Phonebook entries with B setting  | Phonebook entries with A setting  |
| Redial<br>Dialed calls<br>Received calls<br>Received address records<br>Detailed sent<br>Chaku-moji message | Displaying   | Records for Number A/<br>Address A   | Records for Number B/<br>Address B  | All records   |
| Mail/SMS  | Displaying <sup>**3</sup>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Sent/Received mail messages for Address A</li> <li>● Sent/Received SMS messages for Number A</li> </ul> | <FOMA phone><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Received mail messages saved to the FOMA phone for Address B [mail messages you performed "端末に保存 (save to the FOMA phone)" on Web mail site], notification mail for new mail, and alarm notification mail</li> <li>● Received SMS messages for Number B</li> </ul><br><Web mail site><br>Sent/Received mail messages for Address B | <FOMA phone><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Sent/Received mail messages for Address A, received mail messages saved to the FOMA phone for Address B, notification mail for new mail, and alarm notification mail</li> <li>● Sent/Received SMS messages for Number A</li> <li>● Received SMS messages for Number B</li> </ul><br><Web mail site><br>Sent/Received mail messages for Address B |

| Item            |   | A Mode  | B Mode  | Dual Mode  |
|-----------------|---|---|---|--|
| Mail/SMS        | Sending   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mail messages from Address A</li> <li>SMS messages from Number A</li> </ul>  | <FOMA phone><br>Unable to send mail/SMS messages<br><br><Web mail site><br>Mail messages from Address B   | <FOMA phone><br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mail messages from Address A**6</li> <li>SMS messages from Number A</li> </ul> <Web mail site><br>Mail messages from Address B  |
|                 | Receiving   | Mail messages to Address A/<br>SMS messages to Number A<br>(with ring tone/vibration)<br>Mail messages to Address B<br>that you performed the saving<br>operation to the FOMA phone/<br>Notification mail for new mail or<br>alarm notification mail/SMS<br>messages to Number B (without<br>ring tone/vibration) | Mail messages to Address A/<br>SMS messages to Number A<br>(without ring tone/vibration)<br>Mail messages to Address B<br>that you performed the saving<br>operation to the FOMA phone/<br>Notification mail for new mail or<br>alarm notification mail/SMS<br>messages to Number B (with<br>ring tone/vibration) | Mail messages to Address A/<br>SMS messages to Number A<br>(with ring tone/vibration)<br>Mail messages to Address B<br>that you performed the saving<br>operation to the FOMA phone/<br>Notification mail for new mail or<br>alarm notification mail/SMS<br>messages to Number B (with<br>ring tone/vibration) |
|                 | Receiving all messages using infrared rays/iC or from microSD memory card | Copying sender's state**5   |   |  |
|                 | Receiving one message using infrared rays/iC or from microSD memory card  | Mail for Address A/SMS messages for Number A  |   |  |
|                 | "Copy to UIM" (SMS only)  | SMS messages for Number A   |   |  |
|                 | "Copy from UIM" (SMS only)  | SMS messages for Number A   | Undisplayable   | SMS messages for Number A  |
| PushTalk        | Dialing   | Number A  | Unusable  | Number A   |
|                 | Receiving   | Number A  |   |  |
|                 | PushTalk Phonebook  | Displayable   | Undisplayable   | Displayable  |
| i-appli         | All usable  | Usable**7   | Usable**8   |  |
| Own number      | Number A  | Number B  | Number A/Number B   |  |
| Voice mail      | Recording voice mail messages   | Recording all voice mail messages**9  |   |  |
|                 | Connection number for the service**10                                     | Number A  | Number B**11  | Selectable when dialing  |
| Call forwarding | Forwarding to the forwarding destination                                  | Forwarding all calls  |   |  |
|                 | Connection number for the service**10                                     | Number A  | Number B**12  | Selectable when dialing  |

\*\*1 The Phonebook entry with A setting or common setting is dialed by Number A and the Phonebook entry with B setting is dialed by Number B by default.



\*\*2 When you set a Phonebook entry as secret data, secret mode has priority.

\*\*3 Regardless of the mode, all the Phonebook entries/mail messages/SMS messages on the microSD memory card are displayed.

\*\*4 This function checks the phone number/mail address with the Phonebook, and changes it to the name of the Phonebook entry for displaying when the caller's phone number, receiver's phone number, sender's phone number, sender's mail address, or receiver's mail address is stored in the Phonebook.

\*\*5 When the sender's model does not support 2in1, all data files are set with A setting.



- ※6 When you compose a mail message in Dual Mode, you can select a receiver's mail address from the Phonebook entries set with B setting, however, note that the mail message is sent from Address A.
- ※7 Except message application programs, mail-linked i-øpli programs, and the i-øpli Stand-by display.
- ※8 Except the i-øpli Stand-by display.
- ※9 Up to 20 voice mail messages for Number A and Number B can be recorded in total.  
The icon such as “” appears when the voice mail messages for Number A are recorded, and the icon such as “” appears when the voice mail messages for Number B are recorded.
- ※10 You can activate/deactivate the service and make other settings for Number A and Number B respectively.
- ※11 When you execute “Check setting” of “Voice mail”, the confirmation display appears asking which number you use for dialing, Number A or Number B.
- ※12 When you execute “Check setting” of “Call forwarding”, the confirmation display appears asking which number you use for dialing, Number A or Number B.

### Information

- When you delete an image or melody set to a Phonebook entry with B setting or move it to the microSD memory card in A Mode (or a Phonebook entry with A setting in B Mode), the message telling that the file is set to another function does not appear.
- In B Mode, you cannot use the following mail functions:
 

|                                      |  |   |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| · Composing i-mode mail/SMS messages | · Templates                                | · Photo-sending                               |
| · Receive option                     | · Forward                                  | · Reply/Reply with quote/Reply with reference |
| · Mail settings                      | · Chat mail                                | · Displaying Outbox/Draft                     |
| · Mail To function                   | · i-øpli To function from i-mode mail text |   |
- In Dual Mode, you cannot compose i-mode mail/SMS messages, make a PushTalk call, and use Photo-sending from a redial item/dialed call record for Number B, and received call record for Number B.
- In Dual Mode, you cannot execute “Reply”, “Reply with quote”, and “Reply with ref” from the mail/SMS message sent to Number B/Address B.
- When you perform following operations in Dual Mode, calls are made from Number A:
  - When you make a call from Pause Dial
  - When you make a call from Record Message
  - When you make an emergency call at 110, 119 or 118 during Lock All
- When you make a call/AT command call from an external device, the call is made from Number A, regardless of the mode of 2in1.
- Regardless of the current mode, you can save up to 2,500 i-mode mail messages including SMS messages in the Inbox.
- The i-mode mail/SMS messages sent to Address B/Number B cannot be replied to, however, they are not saved to the folder set to “Reply impossible”.
- “DEL all read mails”, “DEL all recv. mails”, “Delete read mails”, “Delete all SMS-R”, and “Delete all” apply to all the i-mode mail/SMS messages.
- Regardless of the current mode, “Delete all” of the Phonebook applies to all the Phonebook entries.

## Using OFFICEED


“OFFICEED” is an in-group fixed bill service that applies to the specified IMCS (In-building Mobile Communication System). The separate subscription is required for use. For details, check the DoCoMo enterprise-oriented web page (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>).

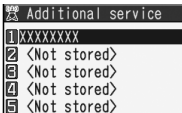
<Additional Service>



## Using Additional Services

When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you can register that service in the menu to use it.

### Add New Service

- 1  **Service** ▶ **Additional service**  
▶ **Additional service**  
▶ **Highlight <Not stored> and press**  
 **( FUNC )** ▶ **Add new service**



- You can change the setting for the registered service by pressing  **( FUNC )** and selecting “Edit”.
- To delete the registered service, press  **( FUNC )** and select “Delete this” or “Delete all”, then select “YES” → “OK”.
- You can register up to 10 network services.

- 2 **Enter a service name**  
▶ **Enter number or Enter USSD number**

Select either “Enter number” or “Enter USSD number” according to the service contents you add.


- You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a service name.

- 3 **Enter either a special number or a service code (USSD number) ▶ YES**

#### Information

- You need to check and enter “Special number” or “Service code” supplied by DoCoMo for using the services.  
Special number  
..... Number for connecting the Service Center.  
Service code (USSD number)  
..... With the FOMA phone, enter it as USSD. The code is for notifying to the Service Center.



## Use Registered Service

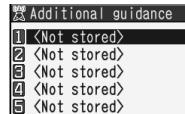
- 1  **Service** ▶ **Additional service**  
▶ **Additional service** ▶ **Select a service**  
▶  **( Send )**



Dialing to the Service Center starts.

## Register Additional Guidance

For when you execute the additional services, you can register up to 10 additional guidance items which correspond to the codes (USSD) that are returned from the Service Center. The additional guidance name is displayed when the registered command is returned as a reply.

- 1  **Service** ▶ **Additional service**  
▶ **Additional guidance**  
▶ **Highlight <Not stored> and press**  
 **( FUNC )** ▶ **Add new guidance**



- You can check the setting by selecting the registered guidance.
- You can change the setting of the registered guidance by pressing  **( FUNC )** and selecting “Edit”.
- To delete the registered guidance, press  **( FUNC )** and select “Delete this” or “Delete all”, then select “YES” → “OK”.


- 2 **Enter a command.**

- Enter the code (USSD) provided by DoCoMo.

- 3 **Enter an additional guidance name ▶ YES**

- You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

# Data Communication



|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>Data Communication Available from FOMA Phone</b> ..... | <b>442</b> |
| <b>Before Using</b> .....                                 | <b>442</b> |
| <b>Preparation Flow for Data Communication</b> .....      | <b>444</b> |
| <b>AT Command</b> .....                                   | <b>445</b> |
| <b>About CD-ROM</b> .....                                 | <b>445</b> |
| <b>Introduction of DoCoMo Keitai Datalink</b> .....       | <b>446</b> |

For details on data communication, refer to the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication” on the provided CD-ROM.

Set “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” in your personal computer, and click “Manuals”, and then “Manual for Data Communication (PDF file)”.

To see the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”, you need to have Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher recommended).

If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe Reader from the provided CD-ROM to see it.

For details such as how to use Adobe Reader, refer to Help.

## Data Communication Available from FOMA Phone

The data communication services you can use by connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer are classified as follows: packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer (OBEX).

The FOMA phone is equipped with the adapter function for packet communication.

- You might not be able to activate or operate other functions during data communication. See “Multiaccess Combination Patterns” on page 485 for details.
- Packet communication by connecting with a personal computer and 64K data communication are not available overseas.

### Packet Communication

This service requires a communication fee according to the amount of data you sent and received. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) It uses an access point which supports FOMA packet communication such as DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U”/“mopera”.

To use this service, connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) or Bluetooth, and then carry out settings. The packet communication is suitable for using applications through the high-speed communication.

- The packet communication is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received. Note that you are charged a high communication fee for the massive data communication such as browsing Internet web pages having many images or downloading data files.

### 64K Data Communication

This service requires a communication fee according to the duration of connection. By connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) or Bluetooth, you can execute 64 kbps communication.

To use this service, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U”/“mopera”, or an ISDN-synchronous 64K access point.

- The 64K data communication is charged according to the duration of connection. Note that a communication fee becomes expensive if you use this service for a long time.

### Data Transfer (OBEX)

This service sends/receives data using infrared rays or the FOMA USB Cable (option). By infrared exchange, you can exchange data with another FOMA phone or a device having the infrared exchange function such as a personal computer.

To perform data transfer (OBEX) between the FOMA phone and personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable, install the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446).

### Information

- You cannot use PHS services such as PIAFS (32K/64K data communication) from the FOMA phone.
- The FOMA phone does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA phone does not support the FAX communication.
- You can perform data communications by connecting the FOMA phone with DoCoMo's PDA “sigmarion II”, “sigmarion III”, or “musea”. When you use “sigmarion II” or “musea”, the update is required. For details such as how to update them, refer to the DoCoMo web page.

## Before Using

### Charge of Internet service provider

To use the Internet, you need to pay the charge for the Internet service provider you use. Besides the FOMA service fee, you need to directly pay this charge to the Internet service provider. For details on the charge, contact the Internet service provider you use.

You can use the DoCoMo Internet access service, “mopera U”/“mopera”.

To use “mopera U”, subscription (charged) is required.

To use “mopera”, subscription and monthly charge are not required.

### Setting access point (Internet service provider, etc.)

The access points for the packet communication and 64K data communication differ. To use the packet communication, connect to an access point which support packet communication. To use the 64K data communication, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN-synchronous 64K.

- You cannot connect to the DoPa access point.
- You cannot connect to PHS 64K/32K data communication access point such as PIAFS.

### About user authentication for accessing network

User authentication (ID and password) may be required at connection to some access points. In this case, enter your ID and password on the communication software program (dial-up network). ID and password are specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator of the access point. For details, contact the provider or network administrator.

### About access authentication for using browser

If you need FirstPass (user certificate), install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM and make the setting.

For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM.

Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to see “FirstPassManual” (PDF format). If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe Reader from the provided CD-ROM to see it.

For details such as how to use it, refer to Adobe Reader Help.

### Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To carry out the communication using the FOMA phone, the following conditions are required:

- The personal computer to be used can use the FOMA USB Cable (option).
- When connecting using Bluetooth, the personal computer should support Dial-up Networking Profile of Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.1 or Ver. 1.2.
- The PDA to be used should support FOMA packet communication and 64K data communication.
- Within the FOMA service area
- For packet communication, the access point should support packet communication of the FOMA.
- For 64K data communication, the access point should support the FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN-synchronous 64K.

Even when these conditions are satisfied, if the base station is congested or the radio wave conditions are bad, you may not carry out the communication.

### About Operating Environment

For the data communication, the following operating environment is required for your personal computer:

#### ■ PC main unit

PC/AT compatible model

When using the FOMA USB Cable (option):

USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 compliant)

When using Bluetooth:

Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.1 or Ver. 1.2 compliant (Dial-up Networking Profile)

Display resolution 800 x 600 dots, High Color 16 bits or more recommended.

#### ■ OS

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition Windows Vista™ (Japanese version in each)

#### ■ Memory requirements

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional:

64 Mbytes or more

Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition:

128 Mbytes or more

Windows Vista™:

512 Mbytes or more

#### ■ Hard disk space size

Unused memory space of 5 Mbytes or more

- The operation on the upgraded OS is not guaranteed.
- The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on the system environment.

### Necessary Devices

The following hardware and software programs are required besides the FOMA phone and personal computer:

- FOMA USB Cable (option) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option)\*\*
- Provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM”

※ For USB connection

#### Information

- Purchase a dedicated “FOMA USB Cable” or “FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01”. The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used because the shape of the connector differs.
- In this manual, operations are described for the case of using FOMA USB Cable.

## Connect FOMA Phone to Other Devices

The following three ways are available for connecting the FOMA phone to another device:

### Using FOMA USB Cable

Connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer provided with the USB port using the FOMA USB Cable (option).

This way of connection applies to all types of communications such as packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer.

- Set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”. (See page 354)
- You need to install the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) before use.

### Using Bluetooth

Connect a Bluetooth compatible personal computer wirelessly to the FOMA phone.

This way of connection applies to packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Use a Bluetooth-linked standard modem or a Bluetooth modem provided by the Bluetooth maker. Contact the maker of your personal computer or Bluetooth maker for how to install and to set up.

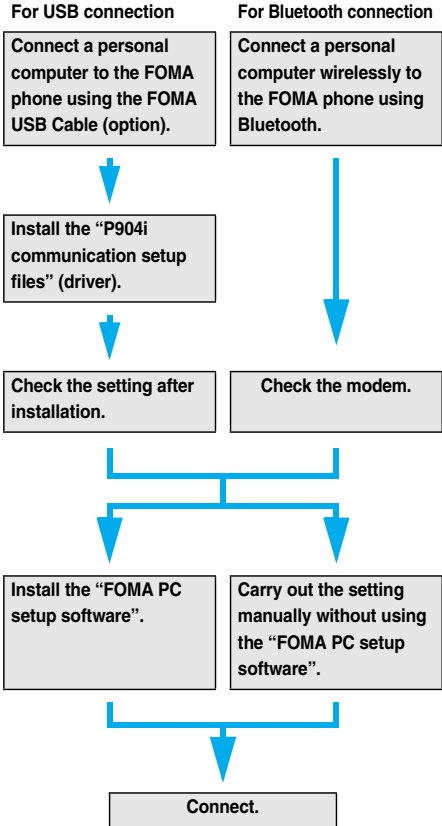
### Using Infrared Data Exchange

By using infrared rays, you can send/receive data between your FOMA phone and another FOMA phone, mobile phone, or personal computer provided with the infrared data exchange function. (See page 357)

This applies to data transfer only.

## Preparation Flow for Data Communication

The following outline shows a preparation flow for packet communication or 64K data communication: For details, refer to the PDF version of “Manual for Data Communication”.



### ■ Provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM”

When connecting the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable for packet communication, install the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) from the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” onto the personal computer. You are advised to install “FOMA PC setup software” for establishing the APN or dial-up setting easily when you communicate.

## Install Communication Setup Files (Driver)

Installing the communication setup files (driver) is required when you connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable for the first time.

## Prepare Bluetooth Communication

You can make data communication by connecting a Bluetooth compatible personal computer wirelessly to your FOMA phone.

- See page 405 for details on Bluetooth.

## FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet communication or 64K data communication, you need to configure various settings for the communication. By using the “FOMA PC setup software”, you can easily carry out the settings. If required, you can set the packet communication and 64K data communication without using the “FOMA PC setup software”.

## AT Command

AT commands are used to specify and modify the functions of the FOMA phone on the personal computer.

## About CD-ROM

The provided CD-ROM contains the software programs for using data communication on your FOMA phone, “Manual for Data Communication” and “Kuten Code List” (PDF file). For details, refer to the provided CD-ROM.

<Contained software programs/PDF>

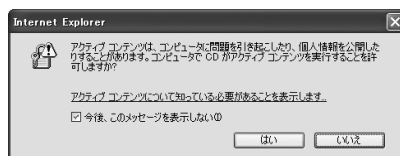
- ・ P904i通信設定ファイル (ドライバ)  
[P904i Communication Setup Files (Driver)]
- ・ FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software)
- ・ FOMA バイトカウンタ (FOMA byte counter)
- ・ ドコモケータイdatalinkのご案内  
(DoCoMo keitai datalink information)
- ・ FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC Software)
- ・ mopera Uのご案内 (mopera Uかんたんスタート/Uかんたん接続設定ソフト/Uオリジナルデータ取得ソフト)  
[mopera U information (mopera U start up tool/mopera U connection & setting tool/mopera U requesting original data)]
- ・ SD-Jukebox
- ・ PDF version of “SDオーディオ簡易操作ガイド (SD-Audio simplified operation guide)”
- ・ PDF version of “データ通信マニュアル”  
“Manual for Data Communication”
- ・ PDF version of “区点コード一覧”/“Kuten Code List”
- ・ Adobe®Reader®8.0
- ・ ナップスター®のご案内 (Napster® information)

When you set the CD-ROM on your personal computer, an alert message might appear on the display as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, however, you can use your computer without any problem.

Click “はい” (YES).

※ The display below is for when you use Windows® XP.

It might differ depending on the environment of the computer you use.



## Introduction of DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

“DoCoMo keitai datalink” is the software program that enables you to back up your Phonebook entries and i-mode mail messages to your personal computer and edit them. The software program is distributed from the DoCoMo web page. For details and how to download, refer to the web page below. You can access the web page below from the provided CD-ROM as well.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp>

For details on how to download, transferable data, operating environments such as compatible OS, installation method, operating method, and restrictions, refer to the web page above. For operations after installation, refer to Help contained in the software program. To use the DoCoMo keitai datalink, you need to separately have the FOMA USB Cable.



# Overseas Use



|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING) . . . . .  | 448                         |
| Services Available Overseas . . . . .                    | 448                         |
| Confirmation for Using . . . . .                         | 449                         |
| Making a Call from the Country You Stay . . . . .        | 451                         |
| Receiving a Call . . . . .                               | 452                         |
| Setting a Search Method of Carrier . . . . .             | «Network Search Mode» 452   |
| Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to . . . . . | «PLMN Setting» 452          |
| Displaying a Carrier on the Stand-by Display . . . . .   | «Operator Name Display» 453 |
| Setting Response during Roaming . . . . .                | «Roaming Setting» 453       |
| Using Network Service during Roaming . . . . .           | «Overseas Service» 454      |

## Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

**International Roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that enables you, using local carrier's networks, to make calls or to communicate in foreign countries where are out of the service area of the FOMA network.**

- You can use this FOMA phone in the 3G roaming area. For details on the area, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page. (You cannot use this FOMA phone in the service area of GSM/GPRS.)
- The 3G roaming area is the third-generation mobile communication network that conforms to the world-standard specifications 3GPP<sup>※</sup>.  
<sup>※</sup>3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is a regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).
- At the time of purchase, the FOMA phone is set to automatically switch networks in foreign countries. (See page 452)
- You are advised to read the following booklets to use your FOMA phone overseas:

| Booklet title   | Contents   |
|---|--|
| <b>Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]</b> | Describes the details of International Roaming Service such as the contents of the service, billing, and cautions. |
| <b>Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]</b>       | Describes the contents of each local network service and cautions.   |

### Information

- Quick Manual "For Overseas Use" is attached to the end of this manual. Refer to it when you use the FOMA phone overseas.
- For the country codes, international prefix numbers for the universal number, and international call access codes, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or the DoCoMo Global Service web page.
- Overseas use fee is added to your monthly bill. You might be requested, however, to pay according to the invoice for the following month on and after depending on the overseas carrier of your stay. Note that the invoice for the total of the fees to be paid for the month might be separately issued.

## Services Available Overseas

| Communication Service               | Explanation  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Voice call<sup>※1</sup></b>      | In the country you stay, you can use the phone number as used in Japan to make or take local calls, or to make international calls to Japan or to other countries. |
| <b>Videophone call<sup>※1</sup></b> | You can make international videophone calls to users of the specified 3G mobile phone carriers overseas and FOMA users.  |
| <b>i-mode</b>                       | You can use i-mode overseas. Perform the overseas usage settings. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".                                      |
| <b>i-mode mail</b>                  | You can send/receive i-mode mail overseas by the same address as used in Japan.  |
| <b>SMS</b>                          | You can send/receive SMS messages overseas.  |
| <b>i-Channel<sup>※2</sup></b>       | You can use i-Channel overseas.  |

<sup>※1</sup> In B Mode or Dual Mode of 2in1, you cannot make calls from Number B.

<sup>※2</sup> Auto-updates are automatically suspended when you are connected to an overseas carrier. To resume the auto-updates of i-Channel, you need to make the i-Channel settings again. When you use i-Channel overseas, the communication fee for auto-updates of the basic channel also applies. (In Japan, the fee is included in the monthly service bill.)

- The GPS functions are not available overseas.
- Some services are not available depending on the carrier or network. For connectable countries, regions, and carriers, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.
- Packet communication by connecting with a personal computer and 64K data communication are not available overseas.

### ■ Respective communication systems and communication services available

Communication services available differ between the Japanese and overseas networks.

- The communication services also differ depending on the overseas carrier you use. For details on the communication services available during international roaming, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.

## Confirmation for Using

### Confirmation before Departure

Confirm below in Japan before you use the FOMA phone overseas.

#### ■ About contract

- You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING if you have subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005. If you offered that you do not need WORLD WING at the time you signed up for the FOMA service, or when you have canceled WORLD WING midway, you are required to newly subscribe to WORLD WING.
- If you have signed up for the FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not yet subscribed to WORLD WING, you are required to subscribe to it.
- Insert the UIM (other than blue one) that supports "WORLD WING" into the FOMA phone. (See page 38)
- This service is not available with some billing plans.

#### ■ About charging batteries

- See page 18 for cautions for handling AC adapter.
- See page 42 and page 43 for charging batteries using AC adapter.

#### ■ About the setting of network service

When you have signed up for network services, you can operate to activate/deactivate the network services from overseas except some operations.

- Even with the network services that you can operate to activate/deactivate, you might not be able to use the services depending on the overseas carrier. Also, some network services are available only in Japan. To use network services overseas, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" before departure.

#### ■ About SMS

Even during international roaming, you can send/receive SMS messages to and from the other party who uses the FOMA phone in Japan or overseas or who uses overseas carriers.

- As the destination address, enter "+" and a country code to the head of the destination phone number. When the destination phone number begins with "0", however, enter the phone number except for the "0". However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- When the text of an SMS message sent to the other party who is using an overseas carrier contains characters that do not support those on the destination phone, the characters might not be correctly displayed. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

## Check Required at the Country You Stay

You can use the FOMA phone in the 3G roaming areas. After your arrival at the country where you are going to stay, once turn the power off and then turn on to automatically select an available carrier in that country. When "Operator name display" is set to "Display ON", the carrier you are connected to appears on the Stand-by display.

- When you move out of the service area of the network you are connected to, the available network of another carrier is automatically searched, and you are re-connected to it.
- When you receive the clock information overseas and the time difference correction value differs from the previously received one, the confirmation display appears asking whether to correct the time difference. Select "YES" to correct the time difference. Select "NO" not to correct it.

#### ■ About inquiries

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of your FOMA phone overseas, refer to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back page of this manual. Note that you are still charged the call and communication fees incurred after you lose it or have it stolen.

- You need to add "international prefix number for the universal number" that is assigned to the country you stay or "international call access code for the country you stay", to the head of the phone number for inquiries.
- For the latest information about the international prefix numbers for the universal number and international call access codes, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.

**International call access codes for major countries (Table 1)**

The international call access codes for major countries are listed below. (As of May 2007)

| Service area   | Access code            | Service area             | Access code |
|----------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| Australia      | 0011                   | Malaysia                 | 00          |
| Belgium        | 00                     | Monaco                   | 00          |
| Brazil         | 0041/<br>0021/<br>0023 | Netherlands              | 00          |
|                |                        | New Zealand              | 00          |
|                |                        | Norway                   | 00          |
| Canada         | 011                    | Philippines              | 00          |
| China          | 00                     | Poland                   | 00          |
| Czech Republic | 00                     | Portugal                 | 00          |
| Denmark        | 00                     | Russia                   | 810         |
| Finland        | 00/<br>990             | Singapore                | 001         |
|                |                        | South Korea              | 001         |
| France         | 00                     | Spain                    | 00          |
| Germany        | 00                     | Sweden                   | 00          |
| Greece         | 00                     | Switzerland              | 00          |
| Hong Kong      | 001                    | Taiwan                   | 002         |
| Hungary        | 00                     | Thailand                 | 001         |
| India          | 00                     | Turkey                   | 00          |
| Indonesia      | 001                    | United Arab Emirates     | 00          |
| Ireland        | 00                     | United Kingdom           | 00          |
| Italy          | 00                     | United States of America | 011         |
| Luxembourg     | 00                     | Vietnam                  | 00          |
| Macau          | 00                     |                          |             |

**International prefix numbers for the universal number (Table 2)**

The international prefix numbers for the universal number for major countries are listed below. (As of May 2007)

| Service area | Inter-national prefix number | Service area             | Inter-national prefix number |
|--------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| Argentina    | 00                           | Luxembourg               | 00                           |
| Australia    | 0011                         | Malaysia                 | 00                           |
| Austria      | 00                           | Netherlands              | 00                           |
| Belgium      | 00                           | New Zealand              | 00                           |
| Brazil       | 0021                         | Norway                   | 00                           |
| Canada       | 011                          | Philippines              | 00                           |
| China        | 00                           | Singapore                | 001                          |
| Colombia     | 009                          | South Korea              | 001                          |
| Denmark      | 00                           | Spain                    | 00                           |
| Finland      | 990                          | Sweden                   | 00                           |
| France       | 00                           | Switzerland              | 00                           |
| Germany      | 00                           | Taiwan                   | 00                           |
| Hong Kong    | 001                          | Thailand                 | 001                          |
| Ireland      | 00                           | United Kingdom           | 00                           |
| Israel       | 014                          | United States of America | 011                          |
| Italy        | 00                           |                          |                              |

- The numbers are not available in some areas.
- You can use the universal numbers only in countries listed in the table above.
- When making a call from a hotel, you may be separately charged the phone usage fee from the hotel. (You are responsible for the fee.) You should check with the hotel before making a call.
- Note that, in many cases, the universal number may not be used from a mobile phone, public phone, or hotel phone, etc.

**Check Required after Homecoming**

After you return to Japan, the FOMA network is automatically searched and set. When you have set to switch networks manually, re-connect to the FOMA network (DoCoMo) by "Network search mode" on page 452.

## Making a Call from the Country You Stay

You can make voice calls or videophone calls from overseas using international roaming service.

## Make a Call to Outside the Country You Stay (Including Japan)

### Use Phonebook to Make an International Call to Japan


You can easily make an international call from the country you stay to a landline phone or mobile phone in Japan if you store its phone number in the Phonebook.

- This is available only when the phone number stored in the Phonebook begins with “0”. You need to set “Auto assist setting” of “Int'l dial assist” to “ON” and to “Japan (81)” in advance. (Setting at purchase)

### 1 Detailed Phonebook display

▶  or  (Dial)



- Press  to make an international videophone call.

### 2 Dial


“0” at the head of the phone number is replaced with “+81” when dialed.

- When you select “Original phone No.,” the phone number is dialed as stored in the Phonebook.




#### Information


- In the same way, you can make international calls also from redial items or dialed call records for the case you used the Phonebook to make calls.

### Use “+” to Make an International Call

Press and hold  for at least one second, then you can enter “+” when dialing.

By using “+”, you can make international calls from the country you stay to other overseas countries such as Japan.




1  (for at least one second) ▶ Enter numbers in order of country code → area code (city code) → destination phone number ▶  or  (Dial)

- Enter “81” as a country code when you make an international call to Japan.
- When the area code (city code) begins with “0”, enter it except for the “0”. However, include “0” when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.
- Press  to make an international videophone call.

### International Dial

If you have stored an international call access code by IDD Prefix Setting (see page 57) and a country code by Country Code Setting (see page 57), you can use the international call access code of the country you stay to make international calls to another country such as Japan. The following procedures are available overseas only:

1 Enter a phone number or bring up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2  (FUNC) ▶ Int'l dial assist ▶ Select the name of the country you make a call to ▶  or  (Dial)

- Press  to make an international videophone call.

## Make a Call to a Phone in the Country You Stay

In the same way as you do in Japan, you can make a voice call or videophone call by entering the destination's phone number. (See page 52)

- To make a call in the country you stay using the Phonebook, select “Original phone No.” in step 2 of “Make a Call to Outside the Country You Stay (Including Japan)” on page 451.

## Make a Call to a Person who is Staying Overseas and Using WORLD WING

When you make a call to a person who is also internationally roaming, make the call in the same way as to make international calls to Japan even if he/she is in the country you stay.

## Receiving a Call

In the same operation as you do in Japan, you can answer voice calls and videophone calls overseas. (See page 70)

### ■ Having calls to your FOMA phone made from Japan

You can receive international calls from Japan by just having your phone number entered in the same way as the callers usually do in Japan.

**Making a call entering "090-XXXX-XXXX"**

or

**Making a call entering "080-XXXX-XXXX"**

### ■ Having calls to your FOMA phone made from countries other than Japan

Regardless of the country you stay, you receive calls via Japan; therefore, have the caller enter "international call access code of his/her country" and "81" (Japan) in the same way as the caller makes a call to Japan and then enter your phone number whose "0" is excluded from the head.

**Making a call entering "international call access code of the country of the caller-81-90-XXXX-XXXX"**

or

**Making a call entering "international call access code of the country of the caller-81-80-XXXX-XXXX"**

### Information

- Even for incoming calls, you are charged a receiving fee including an international forwarding fee, depending on the country or region.
- Even when a caller tried to notify of his/her caller ID, it might not be notified depending on the overseas carrier. Also, a different number from the other party's caller ID might be notified depending on the caller's network.
- While you use the FOMA phone overseas, "Call setting w/o ID", "Reject unknown", and "Restrictions (except Restrict Dialing)" might not work. In addition, it might work as "Answer" regardless of the setting of "In-call management".
- When a call comes in during international roaming, the call is forwarded from Japan regardless of whatever country the call is from. The caller is charged a call fee to Japan and the receiver is charged a receiving fee including an international forwarding fee.

## <Network Search Mode>

## Setting a Search Method of Carrier

Setting at purchase

Auto

You can set whether to automatically search a network and connect to another carrier when you move out of the service area.

- 1  Settings ▶ Network setting  
▶ Network search mode ▶ Select an item.

### Auto

... Automatically re-connects to another carrier. The setting is completed.


### Manual

... Displays the list of carriers. "X" is displayed for unavailable carriers.

### Network re-search

... When set to "Auto", automatically switches to an available carrier. The setting is completed.  
When set to "Manual", displays the list of carriers.

- 2 Select a carrier.

- Press  (Update) to display the list of carriers again.

### Information

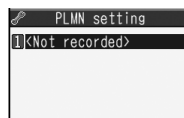
- You cannot set this function if the UIM is not inserted.
- When you move out of the service area while this function is set to "Manual", "G" appears.
- If you turn off and on the FOMA phone while this function is set to "Manual", select a carrier.

## <PLMN Setting>

## Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to



You can specify the priority order of carriers you are connected to for when "Network search mode" is set to "Auto". You can store up to 20 carriers.

- 1  Settings ▶ Network setting  
▶ PLMN setting








- You can select the stored carrier to check the stored contents.

## 2 (FUNC) ▶ PLMN list select

- To search for a carrier by a name of country, press  (Search) and select a country name. You can search also by pressing  (Search) again from the Country List and entering a country name.

## 3 Select a carrier (Set) ▶ (Finish) ▶ YES

### Function Menu while PLMN Setting is Displayed

| Function menu             | Operation/Explanation   |
|---------------------------|---|
| <b>PLMN manual select</b> | You can store a carrier by entering a country code and operator code.<br>You can store carriers not found in the list.<br>▶ Enter a country code (3 digits) and operator code (2 to 3 digits)<br>▶  (Finish) ▶ YES |
| <b>PLMN list select</b>   | You can store carriers from the list.<br>(See "Setting a Carrier to Preferentially Connect to" on page 452)   |
| <b>Set VPLMN to UPLMN</b> | You can store the carrier you are currently connected to.<br>▶  (Finish) ▶ YES   |
| <b>Change priority</b>    | ▶ Select a number to change to.<br>▶  (Finish) ▶ YES   |
| <b>Delete this</b>        | ▶ YES ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES  |
| <b>Delete all</b>         | ▶ YES ▶  (Finish) ▶ YES  |


#### Information

- When the "DoCoMo" network is available, you are preferentially connected to it regardless of this setting.
- This setting is stored on the UIM.
- You cannot set this function if the UIM is not inserted.

### <Operator Name Display> Displaying a Carrier on the Stand-by Display

|                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| Setting at purchase | Display ON |
|---------------------|------------|

You can select whether to display, on the Stand-by display, the carrier you are currently connected to.

-  ▶ Settings ▶ Network setting  
▶ Operator name display  
▶ Display ON or Display OFF

#### ■ When you set to "Display ON"

11/15 (Thu) 10:00  
Japan X XXX  
11/15 (Thu) 18:00

The carrier's name is displayed under the clock on the Stand-by display.

#### Information

- When you use the "DoCoMo" network, the carrier is not displayed even when "Display ON" has been set.

### <Roaming Setting>


## Setting Response during Roaming

You can set how the FOMA phone responds to incoming voice calls or videophone calls during international roaming.

### Set Roaming Guidance

For an incoming voice call or videophone call during international roaming, you can have the voice guidance played back to the caller to that effect.

- Even when you activate Roaming Guidance, the caller may hear the guidance in a foreign language depending on the overseas carrier.
- Even when you deactivate Roaming Guidance, the caller hears a calling tone set by the overseas carrier.


-  ▶ Service ▶ Roaming setting  
▶ Set Roaming guidance  
▶ Do the following operations.

| Item                 | Operation/Explanation   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Activate</b>      | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Deactivate</b>    | ▶ YES   |
| <b>Check setting</b> | You can check the setting contents of "Set Roaming guidance". |

## Call Barring during Roaming

You can set your FOMA phone to reject calls during international roaming.

- This setting is not available with some overseas carriers.

- 1  **Service** ▶ **Roaming setting**  
▶ **Call barring** ▶ **Do the following operations.**

| Item                 | Operation/Explanation   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Activate</b>      | <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Bar all incoming</b><br/>                     . . . . . Bars all calls including voice calls and videophone calls.</p> <p><b>Bar.VP call/data ex.</b><br/>                     . . . . . Bars only videophone calls.</p> <p>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Enter your Network Security Code.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 156 for the Network Security Code.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Deactivate</b>    | <p>▶ <b>YES</b> ▶ <b>Enter your Network Security Code.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See page 156 for the Network Security Code.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>Check setting</b> | You can check the setting contents of "Call barring".   |

## <Overseas Service>

## Using Network Service during Roaming

You can use functions for such as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from overseas.

- When you use those services from overseas, you are charged an international call fee of the country you stay.

- 1  **Service** ▶ **Overseas service**  
▶ **Do the following operations.**

| Item                           | Operation/Explanation  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <b>Voice mail (Int.)</b>       | <p>You can operate Voice Mail Service from overseas.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Activate</b><br/>                     . . . Activates Voice Mail Service.</p> <p><b>Deactivate</b><br/>                     . . . Deactivates Voice Mail Service.</p> <p><b>Play messages</b><br/>                     . . . Plays back voice mail messages.</p> <p><b>Setting</b><br/>                     . . . Changes the setting of Voice Mail Service.</p> <p><b>Set ring time*</b><br/>                     . . . Sets the ring time for Voice Mail Service.</p> |
| <b>Call forwarding (Int.)</b>  | <p>You can operate Call Forwarding Service from overseas.</p> <p>▶ <b>Select an item.</b></p> <p><b>Activate</b><br/>                     . . . Activates Call Forwarding Service.</p> <p><b>Deactivate</b><br/>                     . . . Deactivates Call Forwarding Service.</p> <p><b>Setting*</b><br/>                     . . . Changes the setting of Call Forwarding Service.</p>  |
| <b>Roaming guidance (Int.)</b> | You can operate "Set Roaming guidance" from overseas.  |
| <b>Remote access (Int.)*</b>   | You can operate Remote Access from overseas.   |
| <b>Caller ID req. (Int.)*</b>  | You can operate Caller ID Request from overseas.   |

\*This function is not available as of May 2007.


- 2 **YES** ▶ **Operate following the voice guidance.**



# Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Function List .....   | 456 |
| Pre-installed Data .....  | 467 |
| List of Characters Assigned to Keys (5-touch Input Method) .....    | 477 |
| List of Characters Assigned to Keys (2-touch Input Method) .....    | 478 |
| List of Characters Assigned to Keys (NIKO-touch Input Method) ..... | 479 |
| Symbol List .....   | 480 |
| Pictograph List .....   | 482 |
| Common Phrase List .....  | 484 |
| Multiaccess Combination Patterns .....                              | 485 |
| Multitask Combination Patterns .....                                | 486 |
| Services Available with FOMA Phones .....                           | 487 |
| Jacket Style and Non-Jacket Style .....                             | 488 |
| Introduction of Options and Related Equipment .....                 | 489 |
| <b>Interfacing to External Devices</b>                              |     |
| Introduction of Software for Playing Back Moving Images .....       | 490 |
| Links with AV Equipment .....                                       | 490 |
| <b>Troubleshooting</b>  |     |
| Troubleshooting .....   | 491 |
| Error Messages .....  | 492 |
| Warranty and Maintenance Services .....                             | 503 |
| i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site .....                                 | 504 |
| Updating Software .....   | 505 |
| Protecting FOMA Phone from Data Causing Failure .....               | 511 |
| Specifications .....  | 514 |
| Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items in FOMA Phone .....    | 515 |
| SAR Certification Information and Other Information .....           | 516 |
| Export Administration Regulations .....                             | 517 |

# Function List

Execute “Reset settings (all reset)” on page 412 for the items indicated by , “Reset (mail)” on page 263 for the items indicated by ※1, “Reset (i-mode)” on page 217 for the items indicated by ※2, and “Reset (Full Browser)” on page 316 for the items indicated by ※3 to return to the respective defaults.

If you execute “Initialize” on page 413, all items return to the defaults.

- When you execute “Initialize”, the downloaded dictionaries including pre-installed ones are all deleted.
- Even if you execute “Initialize”, the pre-installed i-appli programs you have deleted are not restored.

| Mail                                    | Menu              | Function name   | Setting at purchase | Reference |
|---|-------------------|---|---------------------|-----------|
| Mail                                    | Inbox             | No messages (except inside the UIM)   |                     | P.248     |
|   |                   | User created folder: None   |                     |           |
|   |                   | i-appli mail folder: None   |                     |           |
|   | Outbox            | No messages (except inside the UIM)   |                     | P.249     |
|   |                   | User created folder: None   |                     |           |
|   |                   | i-appli mail folder: None   |                     |           |
|   | Draft             | No messages (except inside the UIM)   |                     | P.249     |
|   | Compose message   | –   |                     | P.232     |
|   | Template          | Pre-installed data only   |                     | P.239     |
|   | Web mail          | –   |                     | P.272     |
|   | Check new message | –   |                     | P.245     |
|   | Compose SMS       | –   |                     | P.269     |
|   | Check new SMS     | –   |                     | P.271     |
|   | Chat mail         | Chat member: Not recorded (except “Own”)  |                     | P.265     |
|   | Receive option    | –   |                     | P.245     |
|   | Mail settings※1   | Scroll: 1 line  |                     | P.262     |
|   |                   | Character size: Standard  |                     | P.153     |
|   |                   | Mail list display: Date+sender/receiver subject (Checked)<br>Message (Checked)<br>Name in phonebook (Checked) |                     | P.262     |
|   |                   | Message display: Standard   |                     | P.262     |
|   |                   | Auto melody play: ON  |                     | P.262     |
|   |                   | Pred. conv. at reply: ON  |                     | P.262     |
|   |                   | Mail blind: OFF   |                     | P.263     |
|   |                   | Header/Signature<br>Header: Blank (Insert ON)<br>Signature: Blank (Insert ON)<br>Quotation marks: >           |                     | P.264     |
|   |                   | Mail security: All unchecked  |                     | P.173     |
|   |                   | Receiving display: Alarm preferred  |                     | P.263     |
|   |                   | Receive option setting: OFF   |                     | P.245     |
|   |                   | Attachment preference: All checked  |                     | P.263     |
|   |                   | Photo auto display: ON  |                     | P.263     |
|   |                   | Kirari Mail: All checked  |                     | P.245     |
|   |                   | Chat setting<br>Sound setting: Pattern1<br>Chat image: ON<br>User setting: Own (User name)<br>Penguin (Image) |                     | P.268     |
|   |                   | SMS report request: OFF   |                     | P.271     |
| SMS validity period: 3 days             |                   |   | P.272               |           |
| SMS input character: Japanese (70char.) |                   |   | P.272               |           |
| Secret mail display: ON                 |                   |   | P.173               |           |
| Auto color label: Not stored            |                   |   | P.263               |           |

|          | Menu  | Function name                  | Setting at purchase                              | Reference |
|----------|---|--------------------------------|--|-----------|
| i-mode   |   | Menu                           | —  | P.204     |
|          |   | Bookmark                       | Not stored<br>User created folder: None          | P.209     |
|          |   | Screen memo                    | Not stored<br>User created folder: None          | P.211     |
|          |   | Go to location                 | URL history: No histories                        | P.208     |
|          |   | Last URL <sup>**2</sup>        | Menu   | P.207     |
|          |   | Message R/F                    | No messages                                      | P.219     |
|          |   | i-Channel                      | —  | P.228     |
|          |   | Check new message              | —  | P.245     |
|          |   | Client certificate             | —  | P.222     |
|          |   | i-mode settings <sup>**2</sup> | Scroll: 1 line                                   | P.216     |
|          |   |                                | Character size: Standard                         | P.153     |
|          |   |                                | Set image display: ON                            | P.216     |
|          |   |                                | motion setting<br>Automatic replay: ON           | P.226     |
|          |   |                                | Auto-display: MessageR preferred                 | P.219     |
|          |   |                                | Auto melody play: ON                             | P.219     |
|          |   |                                | Use phone information: YES                       | P.217     |
|          |   |                                | Sound effect setting: ON                         | P.217     |
|          |   |                                | Doc. display settings: Fit page                  | P.366     |
|          |   |                                | i-mode arrival act: PushTalk preferred           | P.105     |
|          |   | Full Browser                   | Bookmark: Not stored (User created folder: None) | P.209     |
|          | Go to location<br>URL history: No histories   |                                | P.208  |           |
|          | Full Browser settings <sup>**3</sup><br>Display Mode setting: Phone mode<br>Scroll (Speed): High speed<br>(Focus while scroll): OFF<br>Zoom: Standard<br>Access setting: No<br>Home URL: Not stored<br>Set image display: ON<br>Cookie setting: Valid<br>Referer setting: Send<br>Script setting: Valid<br>Window Open Guard: Invalid |                                | P.316  |           |
|          |   |                                |  |           |
|          |   |                                |  |           |
|          |   |                                |  |           |
| i-oppli  |   | Software list(phone)           | Pre-installed i-oppli only                       | P.277     |
|          |   | oppli(microSD)                 | —  | P.290     |
|          |   | Auto start set                 | OFF  | P.287     |
|          |   | oppli info                     | No information/histories                         | P.288     |
| Settings |   | Incoming call                  |  |           |
|          | 50  | Ring volume                    | Level 4  | P.75      |
|          | 13  | Select ring tone               | Phone: Pattern 1                                 | P.128     |
|          |   |                                | PushTalk: Pattern 1                              |           |
|          |   |                                | Videophone: Pattern 1                            |           |
|          |   |                                | Mail: Pattern 2                                  |           |
|          |   |                                | Chat mail: Pattern 2                             |           |
|          |   |                                | MessageR: Pattern 3                              |           |
|          |   |                                | MessageF: Pattern 3                              |           |
|          | 64  | Sound effect                   | i-motion stereo: OFF<br>Stereo&3DSound: ON       | P.130     |
| 54       | Vibrator  | OFF                            | P.130  |           |

|   | Menu  | Function name                                     | Setting at purchase   | Reference |       |
|---|---|---|---|-----------|-------|
| Settings                                  | 20  | Manner mode set                                   | Manner mode   | P.135     |       |
|   |   |   | when "Original" is set<br>Record msg.: OFF<br>Vibrator: ON<br>Phone vol.: Silent<br>Mail vol.: Silent<br>Alarm vol.: Silent<br>VM tone: ON<br>Keypad sound: OFF<br>Mic sensitiv.: Up<br>LVA tone: OFF |           |       |
|   |   |   | Disp. PH-book image   | ON        | P.139 |
|   | 58  | Answer setting                                    | Any key answer  | P.73      |       |
|   |   | Disp. call/receive No.                            | Pattern 1   | P.152     |       |
|   | 68  | Mail/Msg. ring time                               | ON  | P.133     |       |
|   |   |   | Ring time: 5 seconds  |           |       |
|   | 90  | Ring time   | Ring start time: OFF  | P.176     |       |
|   |   |   | Start time: 1 second (when "Ring start time" is set to "ON")  |           |       |
|   |   |   | Missed calls display: Display   |           |       |
|   | 65  | Info notice setting                               | ON  | P.149     |       |
|   |   | Set when opened                                   | Keep ringing  | P.74      |       |
|   |   | V-phone while packet                              | V-phone priority  | P.89      |       |
|   |   |   | Display   |           |       |
|   | 56  | Display setting                                   | Stand-by display  | P.137     |       |
|   |   |   | "bridge" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline"  |           |       |
|   |   |   | "gold" for body color "Champagne × Circular"  |           |       |
| "pink" for body color "Rose × Facet"      |   |   |   |           |       |
| "zebra" for body color "Platinum × Frost" |   |   |   |           |       |
| Wake-up display: Wake up                  |   |   |   |           |       |
|   | Dialing/Calling/VP Dialing/VP Calling/Mail sending/Mail receiving/<br>Check new message |   |   |           |       |
|   | "Console" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline"   |   |   |           |       |
|   | "Champagne" for body color "Champagne × Circular"                                       |   |   |           |       |
|   | "Rose" for body color "Rose × Facet"  |   |   |           |       |
|   | "Console" for body color "Platinum × Frost"   |   |   |           |       |
|   | Power saver mode: ON  |   |   |           |       |
| 70  | Backlight   | Lighting: ON+Saver (Lighting: ON)                 | P.142   |           |       |
|   |   | (Power saver mode: ON)                            |   |           |       |
|   |   | (Light time: 5 minutes)                           |   |           |       |
|   |   | Charging: Standard                                |   |           |       |
|   |   | Area: LCD+Keys                                    |   |           |       |
|   | Brightness: Level 2   |   |   |           |       |
|   | Light sensor: Auto ON   |   |   |           |       |
| 86  | Color pattern   | "Asphalt" for body color "Asphalt × Hairline"     | P.143   |           |       |
|   |   | "Champagne" for body color "Champagne × Circular" |   |           |       |
|   |   | "Rose" for body color "Rose × Facet"              |   |           |       |
|   |   | "Platinum" for body color "Platinum × Frost"      |   |           |       |

|                | Menu                   | Function name   | Setting at purchase                               | Reference |
|----------------|------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| Settings       | 93                     | Private window  | ON  | P.140     |
|                |                        |   | Brightness: Level 3                               |           |
|                |                        |   | Orientation: Pattern 1                            |           |
|                |                        |   | Clock   |           |
|                |                        |   | “Pattern 1” for body color “Asphalt × Hairline”   |           |
|                |                        |   | “Pattern 2” for body color “Champagne × Circular” |           |
|                |                        |   | “Pattern 2” for body color “Rose × Facet”         |           |
|                |                        |   | “Pattern 3” for body color “Platinum × Frost”     |           |
|                |                        |   | Called: ON (Chaku-moji: OFF)                      |           |
|                |                        |   | Mail: OFF   |           |
|                | i-Channel ticker: OFF  |   |   |           |
|                | Disp. connection: ON   |   |   |           |
|                |                        | i-Channel ticker  | Ticker ON/OFF: ON                                 | P.228     |
|                |                        |   | Ticker scroll speed: Normal                       |           |
|                | 66                     | Font  | Font 1  | P.152     |
|                |                        | Character size  | Mail: Standard                                    | P.153     |
|                |                        |   | i-mode: Standard                                  |           |
|                |                        |   | Phonebook: Standard                               |           |
|                |                        |   | Dialed/recv. calls: Standard                      |           |
|                |                        |   | Character input: Standard                         |           |
|                |                        | Candidate auto display: ON (Standard)   |   |           |
| 63             | Desktop icon           | Guide (使いかたナビ), Bluetooth   | P.150   |           |
| 15             | Select language        | Japanese (日本語)  | P.46  |           |
| 52             | Private menu setting   | Own number, Ring volume, Caller ID notification, MUSIC Player, Alarm, Auto lock, Vibrator, Full Browser | P.398   |           |
|                |                        | Change BG image: Standard   |   |           |
| 57             | Menu icon setting      | “Asphalt” for body color “Asphalt × Hairline”   | P.144   |           |
|                |                        | “Champagne” for body color “Champagne × Circular”   |   |           |
|                |                        | “Rose” for body color “Rose × Facet”  |   |           |
|                |                        | “Platinum” for body color “Platinum × Frost”  |   |           |
|                | Recv.mail/call at open | OFF   | P.141   |           |
| 47             | Automatic display      | OFF   | P.141   |           |
|                | LCD AI                 | ON  | P.143   |           |
| 36             | Icons                  | —   | P.28  |           |
|                | Illumination setting   |   |   |           |
| 89             | Illumination           | Set color   | P.148   |           |
|                |                        | Phone: call   |   |           |
|                |                        | PushTalk: poc   |   |           |
|                |                        | Videophone: call  |   |           |
|                |                        | Mail: mail  |   |           |
|                |                        | Chat mail: mail   |   |           |
| MessageR: mail |                        |   |   |           |
| MessageF: mail |                        |   |   |           |
|                |                        | (The illumination at purchase differs depending on the body color.)                                     |   |           |
|                |                        | Set pattern: Standard   |   |           |
|                |                        | Color setting: Default  |   |           |
|                | Illumination in talk   | OFF   | P.147   |           |
|                | Missed call illum.     | ON  | P.147   |           |
|                | Unread mail illum.     | ON  | P.147   |           |
|                | Illum. when folded     | ON  | P.147   |           |

|          | Menu                     | Function name                     | Setting at purchase   | Reference |
|----------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|-----------|
| Settings |                          | <b>MUSIC illumination</b>         | ON  | P.147     |
|          |                          | <b>Bluetooth illumination</b>     | ON  | P.147     |
|          |                          | <b>IC card illumination</b>       | ON  | P.147     |
|          |                          | <b>PushTalk illumination</b>      | ON  | P.147     |
|          |                          | <b>Side key illumination</b>      | view<br>(The illumination at purchase differs depending on the body color.) | P.147     |
|          |                          | <b>Check settings</b>             | —   | P.148     |
|          |                          | <b>Lock/Security</b>              |   |           |
|          |                          | <b>Self mode</b>                  | Released  | P.161     |
|          |                          | <b>Lock all</b>                   | Released  | P.160     |
|          |                          | <b>Personal data lock</b>         | Released  | P.162     |
|          |                          | <b>IC card lock</b>               | Released  | P.300     |
|          |                          | <b>Auto lock</b>                  | OFF   | P.166     |
|          | 40                       | <b>Secret mode</b>                | Released  | P.172     |
|          | 41                       | <b>Secret data only</b>           | Released  | P.172     |
|          |                          | <b>Keypad dial lock</b>           | Released  | P.171     |
|          |                          | <b>Reject unknown</b>             | Accept  | P.176     |
|          | 10                       | <b>Call setting w/o ID</b>        | All accept/Same as ring tone  | P.175     |
|          | 29                       | <b>Change security code</b>       | 0000  | P.158     |
|          |                          | <b>UIM setting</b>                | —   | P.158     |
|          |                          | <b>Scanning function</b>          | Scan: Valid<br>Message scan: Valid  | P.511     |
|          |                          | <b>Lock setting</b>               | ANSHIN-KEY area set.: Wide  | P.166     |
|          |                          |                                   | Store/DEL ANSHIN-KEY: Not stored  | P.165     |
|          |                          |                                   | ANSHIN-KEY info: OFF  | P.166     |
|          |                          |                                   | Timer lock ON at close: 5 minutes   | P.167     |
|          |                          |                                   | PIM/IC security mode: Security code   |           |
|          |                          |                                   | IC lock(power-off): Setting before OFF                                      | P.300     |
|          |                          |                                   | Face reader setting: Not stored   | P.168     |
|          |                          | Face reader security: Normal      |   |           |
|          |                          | Change security code: 0000        |   |           |
|          |                          | <b>Call time/cost</b>             |   |           |
|          | 61                       | <b>Call data</b>                  | Last call duration/Total calls duration: 0 seconds                          | P.401     |
|          |                          |                                   | Last call cost: ¥***  |           |
|          |                          |                                   | Calls reset/Cost reset: --/-- --:--   |           |
|          | 60                       | <b>Reset total cost&amp;dura.</b> | —   | P.402     |
|          |                          | <b>Notice call cost</b>           | OFF   | P.402     |
|          |                          |                                   | Max cost: ¥0 (when "Notice call cost" is set to "ON")                       |           |
|          |                          |                                   | Method to alert: Icon (when "Notice call cost" is set to "ON")              |           |
|          |                          |                                   | Auto reset setting: OFF (when "Notice call cost" is set to "ON")            |           |
|          |                          | <b>CLR max cost icon</b>          | —   | P.402     |
|          |                          | <b>Clock</b>                      |   |           |
| 31       | <b>Set time</b>          | Auto time adjust ON               | P.47  |           |
| 39       | <b>Clock display</b>     | Display: ON                       | P.154   |           |
|          |                          | Size: Big                         |   |           |
|          | <b>Auto power ON/OFF</b> | Auto power ON: OFF                | P.389   |           |
|          |                          | Auto power OFF: OFF               |   |           |
|          | <b>Alarm setting</b>     | Alarm preferred                   | P.398   |           |
|          | <b>Talk</b>              |                                   |   |           |
|          | <b>Volume</b>            | Level 4                           | P.75  |           |

|          | Menu | Function name          | Setting at purchase  | Reference |
|----------|------|------------------------|--|-----------|
| Settings | 76   | Noise reduction        | ON   | P.68      |
|          | 75   | Quality alarm          | High tone  | P.132     |
|          | 77   | Reconnect signal       | High tone  | P.68      |
|          | 18   | Setting when folded    | Phone/Videophone: End the call<br>PushTalk: Speaker call   | P.74      |
|          |      | Set hold tone          | On hold tone: Tone 1<br>Holding tone: JESU JOY OF MAN'S DESIRING   | P.77      |
|          |      | PushTalk               |  |           |
|          |      | Auto answer setting    | OFF  | P.104     |
|          |      | Ring time setting      | 30 seconds   | P.104     |
|          |      | Hands-free w/ PushTalk | ON   | P.104     |
|          |      | Caller ID setting      | Not notify   | P.104     |
|          |      | PushTalk arrival act   | Answer   | P.105     |
|          |      | Videophone             |  |           |
|          |      | Visual preference      | Normal   | P.87      |
|          |      | Select image           | On hold: Pre-installed<br>Holding: Pre-installed<br>Substitute image: Chara-den (Dimo)<br>Record message: Pre-installed<br>Preparing: Pre-installed<br>Movie memo: Pre-installed | P.88      |
|          |      | Hands-free w/ V. phone | ON   | P.87      |
|          |      | Voice call auto redial | OFF  | P.89      |
|          |      | Remote monitoring      | Other ID: Not recorded<br>Ring time: 5 seconds<br>Set: OFF   | P.90      |
|          |      | Notify switchable mode | —  | P.89      |
|          |      | Connection setting     |  |           |
|          |      | Set connection timeout | 60 seconds   | P.217     |
|          |      | Set check new message  | All checked  | P.246     |
|          | 81   | Host selection         | i-mode   | P.218     |
|          |      | SMS center selection   | DoCoMo   | P.272     |
|          |      | Certificate            | All valid  | P.221     |
|          |      | Certificate host       | DoCoMo<br>User setting host: Not recorded  | P.223     |
|          |      | ⓘ appli settings       |  |           |
|          |      | Disp. software info    | Not display  | P.276     |
|          |      | αBacklight             | Depend on system   | P.289     |
|          |      | αVibrator              | Depend on system   | P.289     |
|          |      | End stand-by display   | —  | P.289     |
|          |      | External option        |  |           |
|          | 51   | Earphone               | Earphone+Speaker   | P.133     |
|          | 94   | Automatic answer       | OFF<br>Ring time: 6 seconds (when "Automatic answer" is set to "ON")   | P.405     |
|          |      | Feel settings          |  |           |
|          |      | Feel * Talk            | Display after talk: ON<br>Disp. /play in history: ON<br>Illumination: ON   | P.145     |
|          |      | Feel * Mail            | Disp. /play new one: ON<br>Disp. /play in history: ON  | P.146     |

|                        | Menu                           | Function name                 | Setting at purchase                        | Reference                               |       |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|---|-------|
| Settings               |                                | <b>Network setting</b>        |  |   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Prefix setting</b>         | WORLD CALL (009130010)                     | P.67                                    |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Int'l dial assist</b>      | Auto assist setting: ON                    | P.56                                    |       |
|                        |                                |                               | IDD prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) |   |       |
|                        |                                |                               | Country Code set.: Japan (81)              |   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Network search mode</b>    | Auto                                       | P.452                                   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>PLMN setting</b>           | —  | P.452                                   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Operator name display</b>  | Display ON                                 | P.453                                   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Other settings</b>         |  |   |       |
|                        |                                | 30                            | <b>Keypad sound</b>                        | ON                                      | P.132 |
|                        |                                |                               | <b>Charge sound</b>                        | ON                                      | P.132 |
|                        |                                | 71                            | <b>Battery level</b>                       | —                                       | P.44  |
|                        |                                |                               | <b>Side keys guard</b>                     | OFF                                     | P.171 |
|                        |                                | 35                            | <b>Character input method</b>              | Input mode: All checked                 | P.416 |
|                        |                                |                               |  | Priority input method: Mode 1 (5-touch) |       |
|                        |                                |                               |  | Int.with secret: ON                     |       |
|                        |                                |                               | <b>Record display set</b>                  | Received calls: ON                      | P.172 |
|                        |                                |                               |  | Redial/Dialed calls: ON                 |       |
|                        |                                | 84                            | <b>Pause dial</b>                          | Not stored                              | P.66  |
|                        |                                |                               | <b>Sub-address setting</b>                 | ON                                      | P.67  |
|                        |                                |                               | <b>Voice settings</b>                      | Auto voice dial: OFF                    | P.125 |
|                        |                                |                               |  | Voice earphone dial: OFF                |       |
|                        |                                |                               |  | Identify as: Male voice                 |       |
|                        | Read aloud settings: OFF       |                               |  |   |       |
|                        | Read aloud volume: Level 4     |                               |  |   |       |
|                        | Read aloud output: Speaker     |                               |  |   |       |
|                        |                                | Read aloud valid set.: Normal |  |   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>USB mode setting</b>       | Communication mode                         | P.354                                   |       |
|                        | 23                             | <b>Reset settings</b>         | —  | P.412                                   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Initialize</b>             | —  | P.413                                   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>Software update</b>        | —  | P.505                                   |       |
| Data box               | 46                             | <b>My picture</b>             | Pre-installed data only                    | P.322                                   |       |
|                        |                                |                               | User created folder: None                  |   |       |
|                        |                                |                               | Set display: All released                  |   | P.326 |
|                        |                                |                               | Positioning: Center                        |   | P.324 |
|                        |                                |                               | Clipping area: Center                      |   | P.324 |
|                        |                                |                               | Sort: By date ↑                            |   | P.324 |
|                        |                                |                               | Picture/Title name: Picture                |   | P.327 |
|                        |                                |                               | Display size: Normal                       |   | P.327 |
|                        |                                |                               | Character stamp                            |   | P.330 |
|                        |                                |                               | Character color: 16 Color, Black           |   |       |
|                        | Font: Font 1                   |                               |  |   |       |
|                        | Character size: Standard size  |                               |  |   |       |
|                        | Original animation: Not stored | P.332                         |  |   |       |
|                        |                                | <b>MUSIC</b>                  | User created folder: None                  | P.374                                   |       |
|                        |                                |                               | Playlist: Not stored                       | P.381                                   |       |
|                        |                                |                               | Volume: Level 12                           | P.376                                   |       |
|                        |                                |                               | Sound quality: Normal                      | P.378                                   |       |
| Surround: OFF          |                                |                               | P.378                                      |   |       |
| Listing: Title + Image |                                |                               | P.380                                      |   |       |



|                                  | Menu                | Function name                          | Setting at purchase                                    | Reference |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|--|--|-----------|
| Data box                         |                     | motion                                 | Pre-installed data only                                | P.332     |
|                                  |                     |  | User created folder: None                              |           |
|                                  |                     |  | Playlist: Not stored                                   | P.337     |
|                                  |                     |  | Volume: Level 4  | P.333     |
|                                  |                     |  | Set motion: All released                               | P.335     |
|                                  |                     |  | Sort: By date ↑  | P.324     |
|                                  |                     |  | Listing: Title + Image                                 | P.336     |
|                                  |                     |  | Display size: Actual size                              | P.336     |
|                                  |                     |  | Hor. full disp. play: Vertical display playback        | P.337     |
|                                  | 16                  | Melody                                 | Pre-installed data only                                | P.344     |
|                                  |                     |  | User created folder: None                              |           |
|                                  |                     |  | Edit playlist: Not stored                              | P.345     |
|                                  |                     |  | Set as ring tone: All released                         | P.345     |
|                                  |                     | My documents                           | Pre-installed data only                                | P.363     |
|                                  |                     |  | Sort: By date ↑  | P.324     |
|                                  |                     |  | Listing: Image   | P.364     |
|                                  |                     | Chara-den                              | Pre-installed data only                                | P.341     |
|                                  |                     |  | Substitute image: Dimo                                 | P.83      |
|                                  |                     |  | Display size: Fit in display                           | P.342     |
|                                  |                     |  | Camera mode: Photo mode                                | P.343     |
| Recording size: QCIF (176 x 144) |                     |  | P.343  |           |
| Recording type: Video + voice    |                     |  | P.343  |           |
|                                  |                     | Recording quality: Normal              | P.343  |           |
|                                  | SD other files      | —                                      | P.353  |           |
| LifeKit                          |                     | MUSIC Player                           | Playlist: Not stored                                   | P.381     |
|                                  |                     |  | Volume: Level 12                                       | P.376     |
|                                  |                     |  | Play mode setting: Normal                              | P.378     |
|                                  |                     |  | Sound quality: Normal                                  | P.378     |
|                                  |                     |  | Surround: OFF  | P.378     |
|                                  |                     |  | Listing: Title + Image                                 | P.380     |
|                                  |                     |  | Information of previously played back music file: None | P.374     |
|                                  |                     | Bar code reader                        | Saved data: None                                       | P.196     |
|                                  | 79                  | Receive Ir data                        | —  | P.359     |
|                                  |                     | ToruCa                                 | None   | P.295     |
|                                  |                     |  | User created folder: None                              |           |
|                                  |                     |  | Sort: By date ↑  | P.298     |
|                                  |                     |  | Receive ToruCa: Accept                                 | P.299     |
|                                  |                     |  | Receiving display: ON                                  |           |
|                                  | Check same data: ON |  |  |           |
|                                  |                     | Auto reading: Accept                   |  |           |
|                                  | IC card content     | Pre-installed i-oppli only             | P.277  |           |
|                                  | IC card lock menu   | IC card lock: Released                 | P.300  |           |
|                                  |                     | IC lock(power-off): Setting before OFF |  |           |
|                                  | SD-PIM              | —                                      | P.349  |           |

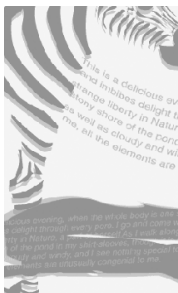
| Menu        | Function name             | Setting at purchase   | Reference |
|-------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| LifeKit     | Camera                    | Outside camera  | P.191     |
|             |                           | Image size setting<br>Photo mode: Stand-by (240 x 400)<br>Continuous mode: CIF (352 x 288)<br>Shooting a photo for sending during a voice call: QCIF (176 x 144)                  | P.192     |
|             |                           | File size setting: Mail restrict'n (L)  | P.192     |
|             |                           | Image quality set.<br>Photo mode/Continuous mode: Fine<br>Movie mode: Normal  | P.192     |
|             |                           | Shutter sound: Sound 1  | P.193     |
|             |                           | Flicker correction: Auto  | P.193     |
|             |                           | Store in: Phone   | P.193     |
|             |                           | Auto save set: OFF  | P.193     |
|             |                           | File restriction: File unrestricted   | P.195     |
|             |                           | Image stabilizer: Auto  | P.193     |
|             |                           | Shooting date: OFF  | P.193     |
|             |                           | Continuous mode: Auto   | P.193     |
|             |                           | Shot interval<br>CIF (352 x 288): 1.0 second<br>Stand-by (240 x 400)/QVGA (240 x 320)/QCIF (176 x 144)/<br>Sub-QCIF (128 x 96): 0.5 second  | P.193     |
|             |                           | Shot number<br>CIF (352 x 288): 4 shots (Fixed)<br>Stand-by (240 x 400)/QVGA (240 x 320)/QCIF (176 x 144)/<br>Sub-QCIF (128 x 96): 5 shots  | P.193     |
|             | Display size: Actual size | P.194   |           |
|             | Bluetooth                 | Not stored  | P.408     |
|             |                           | Preferred device: Not set   | P.410     |
|             |                           | Set authentications: OFF  | P.412     |
|             |                           | Session number setting: OFF   |           |
|             |                           | Time-out to search: 5 seconds   |           |
|             |                           | Forward ring tone: ON   |           |
|             |                           | Disconnection settings: End the call  |           |
|             | Dial from headset: Valid  |   |           |
|             | GPS                       | Location history: No histories  | P.306     |
|             |                           | GPS button setting: Read a map  | P.306     |
|             |                           | Posit. tone/illum.<br>Select posit. ring tone: "Position location" OFF<br>"Notify of location" Pattern 1<br>"Location req./Accept" Pattern 2<br>"Location req./Confirm" Pattern 2 | P.307     |
|             |                           | Ring time setting: 3 seconds  |           |
|             |                           | Select vibrator: OFF  |           |
|             |                           | Select illumination: Color 5  |           |
|             |                           | Positioning mode: Standard mode   | P.307     |
|             |                           | Reg. LCS client: Not stored   | P.307     |
|             |                           | Location request menu: OFF  | P.308     |
|             | Host selection: Default   | P.310   |           |
| Text reader | Saved data: None          | P.199   |           |

|         | Menu | Function name           | Setting at purchase  | Reference   |   |       |
|---------|------|-------------------------|--|---|---|-------|
| LifeKit | 55   | Rec. msg/voice memo     | Record message: Not recorded   | P.82  |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Videophone record message: Not recorded  |   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Record message setting: OFF  | P.80  |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Answer message: Japanese 1<br>(when "Record message setting" is set to "ON")   |   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Ring time: 13 seconds<br>(when "Record message setting" is set to "ON")  |   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Voice memo: Not recorded   |   | P.400   |       |
|         |      |                         | Movie memo: Not recorded   | P.401   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Voice announce: Not recorded   | P.131   |   |       |
|         |      |                         |  | Voice memo<br>(available only during a call)                      | Not recorded  | P.400 |
|         |      |                         |  | Data Security Service   | Sent/recv.PB data list: No histories<br>PB image sending: OFF | P.126 |
| Service | 25   | Check NW inf.           | —  | P.426   |   |       |
|         | 17   | Caller ID notification  | —  | P.48  |   |       |
|         |      | Voice mail              | Message notification: YES  | P.427   |   |       |
|         |      | Call waiting            | —  | P.428   |   |       |
|         |      | Call forwarding         | —  | P.430   |   |       |
|         |      | Nuis. call blocking     | —  | P.431   |   |       |
|         |      | Caller ID request       | —  | P.432   |   |       |
|         |      | In-call management      | Answer   | P.433   |   |       |
|         |      | Set in-call arrival act | —  | P.434   |   |       |
|         |      | Remote access           | —  | P.434   |   |       |
|         |      | Dual network            | —  | P.432   |   |       |
|         |      | English guidance        | —  | P.433   |   |       |
|         |      | Overseas service        | —  | P.454   |   |       |
|         |      | Roaming setting         | —  | P.453   |   |       |
|         |      | Additional service      | Not stored   | P.440   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Additional guidance: Not stored  |   |   |       |
|         |      | Service numbers         | —  | P.433   |   |       |
|         |      | 2in1 setting            | Deactivated  | P.435   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Mode switching: Dual mode  | P.436   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Stand-by display<br>Dual mode: flower<br>B mode: tree  | P.436   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Set call/receive No.<br>Disp. call/receive No.: Pattern 2<br>Ringtone set. for No. B: "Phone" Pattern 4<br>"Video-Phone" Pattern 4<br>"Mail" Pattern 5 | P.436   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Multi number   | Number setting: Not stored<br>Set as ring tone: Same as ring tone | P.434   |       |
|         |      | Chaku-moji              | Create message: Not stored   | P.63  |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Message disp. settings: Calls with callerID  |   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Sent messages: No records  |   |   |       |
|         |      |                         | Prefer Chaku-moji: OFF   |   |   |       |

|   | Menu                                    | Function name   | Setting at purchase   | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|-----------|
| Phonebook   |   | <b>Add to phonebook</b>   | Not stored (except inside the UIM)  | P.109     |
|   |   | <b>Search phonebook</b>   | —   | P.116     |
|   |   | <b>PushTalk phonebook</b>   | Not stored  | P.99      |
|   | 24                                      | <b>Dialed/recv. calls</b>   | No records  | P.59      |
|   |   |   | Sent address: No records  | P.258     |
|   |   |   | Received address: No records  |           |
|   |   | <b>UIM operation</b>  | —   | P.403     |
|   | 0                                       | <b>Own number</b>   | Not stored (except "Own number" for Number A)   | P.399     |
|   | 26                                      | <b>Phonebook settings</b>   | Group setting: Not stored (Group name: Group 01 to 19<br>except inside the UIM)<br>(Settings: None) | P.115     |
|   |   |   | Voice dial setting: Not stored  | P.123     |
|   |   |   | Mail group: Not stored (Group name: Group 1 to 20)  | P.261     |
| Chat group: Not stored (Group name: Group 1 to 5)                     |   |   | P.268   |           |
| Restrictions: All released  |   |   | P.174   |           |
| Forwarding image: ON  |   |   | P.361   |           |
| Character size<br>Phonebook: Standard<br>Dialed/recv. calls: Standard |   |   | P.153   |           |
|   |   |   |   |           |
| Stationery  | 44                                      | <b>Alarm</b>  | Not stored  | P.390     |
|   |   |   | OFF   |           |
|   | 45                                      | <b>Schedule</b>   | Not stored  | P.393     |
|   |   |   | Monthly display/Weekly display: Monthly display   | P.395     |
|   |   |   | User icon set.: Not recorded  | P.396     |
|   | 95                                      | <b>ToDo</b>   | Not stored  | P.397     |
|   |   |   | Category display: All   | P.398     |
|   |   |   | Sort/Filter: By entered time  | P.398     |
|   | 42                                      | <b>Free memo</b>  | Not recorded  | P.403     |
|   | 85                                      | <b>Calculator</b>   | —   | P.402     |
|   |   | <b>Guide</b>  | —   | P.36      |
| 38  | <b>Common phrase/dic.</b>               | Common phrases: Default   | P.420   |           |
|   |   | Own dictionary: Not stored  | P.421   |           |
|   |   | Download dictionary: Pre-installed data only<br>(Set dictionary: All valid) | P.422   |           |
| Others  |   | <b>Clock display (Private window)</b>                                       | icons and date/time   | P.29      |
|   |   | <b>Videophone</b>   | Backlight: Constant light   | P.86      |
|   |   | <b>Photo-sending</b>  | Image size setting: QCIF (176 x 144)  | P.192     |
|   |   | <b>Manner mode</b>  | Released  | P.134     |
|   |   | <b>Public Mode (Drive Mode)</b>   | Released  | P.77      |
|   |   | <b>Redial</b>   | No records  | P.59      |
|   |   | <b>Character input</b>  | 2/NIKO-touch guide: ON  | P.420     |
|   |   |   | Candid. auto-disp.: ON (Standard)   | P.153     |
|   |   |   | Candidate display: ON   | P.420     |
|   |   |   | Character set time: OFF   | P.420     |
|   |   |   | Learned words: Not stored   | P.422     |
|   | <b>Menu Display setting (EASY Mode)</b> | Pattern 1   | P.36  |           |

# Pre-installed Data

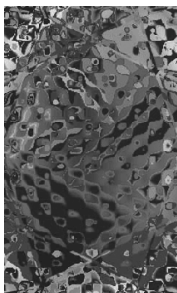
## Stand-by Display/Wake-up Display



zebra



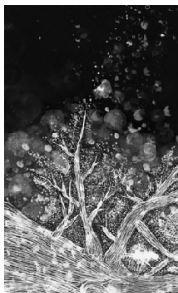
bridge



pink



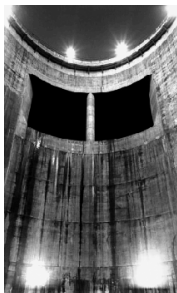
gold



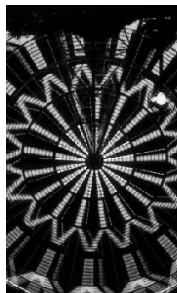
tree



flower

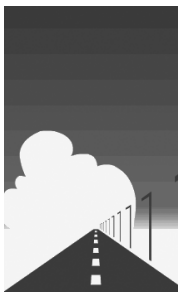


dam



Ferris wheel

※1  
※2



road

※1  
※2



line

※1  
※2



Wake up

※1



[Funny Transform] 1

※3



[Funny Transform] 2

※3

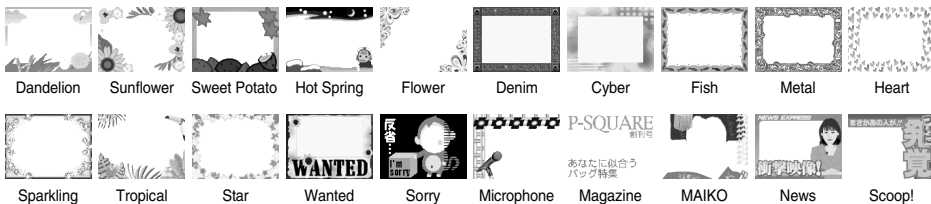
※1 Flash movie

※2 The background and design change.

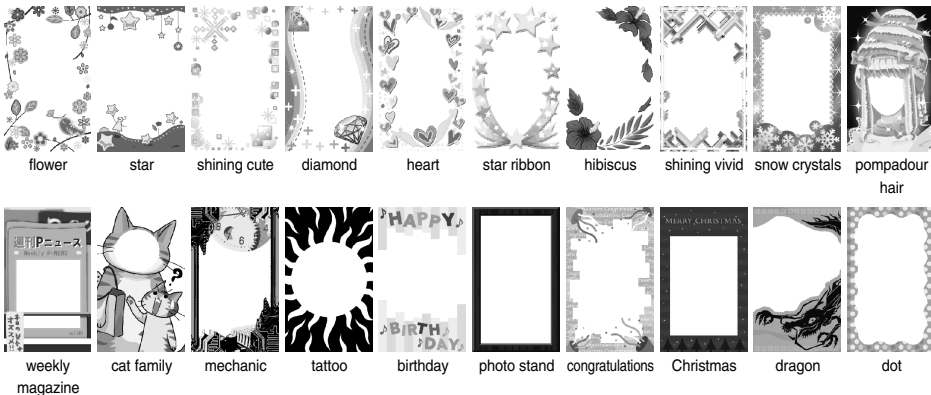
※3 Funny Transform II image

## Frame

■Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)/QCIF (176 x 144)/QVGA (240 x 320)/CIF (352 x 288)



■Stand-by (240 x 400)



## Stamp



### Information

- The marks you can select from Cushy Mark are from "Cat Ear" through "ZZZ".

# Decomail-pictograph

| お気に入り (Favorite) |                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 01 (Feel * Character 01) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 02 (Feel * Character 02) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 03 (Feel * Character 03) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 04 (Feel * Character 04) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 05 (Feel * Character 05) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 06 (Feel * Character 06) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 07 (Feel * Character 07) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 08 (Feel * Character 08) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 09 (Feel * Character 09) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 10 (Feel * Character 10) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 11 (Feel * Character 11) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 12 (Feel * Character 12) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 13 (Feel * Character 13) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 14 (Feel * Character 14) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 15 (Feel * Character 15) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 16 (Feel * Character 16) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 17 (Feel * Character 17) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 18 (Feel * Character 18) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 19 (Feel * Character 19) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 20 (Feel * Character 20) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 21 (Feel * Character 21) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 22 (Feel * Character 22) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 23 (Feel * Character 23) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 24 (Feel * Character 24) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 25 (Feel * Character 25) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 26 (Feel * Character 26) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 27 (Feel * Character 27) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 28 (Feel * Character 28) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 29 (Feel * Character 29) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 30 (Feel * Character 30) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 31 (Feel * Character 31) |
|                  | フィール*キャラクター 32 (Feel * Character 32) |

|                   | フィール*キャラクター 33 (Feel * Character 33) |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 34 (Feel * Character 34) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 35 (Feel * Character 35) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 36 (Feel * Character 36) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 37 (Feel * Character 37) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 38 (Feel * Character 38) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 39 (Feel * Character 39) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 40 (Feel * Character 40) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 41 (Feel * Character 41) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 42 (Feel * Character 42) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 43 (Feel * Character 43) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 44 (Feel * Character 44) |
|                   | フィール*キャラクター 45 (Feel * Character 45) |
| 絵文字 ( pictograph) |                                      |
|                   | 笑う 1 (Laugh 1)                       |
|                   | 笑う 2 (Laugh 2)                       |
|                   | ニコッリ (Smile)                         |
|                   | ウィンク (Wink)                          |
|                   | ひや〜 (Embarrassed)                    |
|                   | 目がハート (Crush)                        |
|                   | 冷や汗 1 (Cold sweat 1)                 |
|                   | 冷や汗 2 (Cold sweat 2)                 |
|                   | 眠い (Sleepy)                          |
|                   | 悲しい (Sad)                            |
|                   | がまん (Patience)                       |
|                   | 泣く (Wail)                            |
|                   | 涙 (Cry)                              |
|                   | 怒る (Angry)                           |
|                   | ぶつくつく (Bad mood)                     |
|                   | ペー (Sticking out a tongue)           |
|                   | げっそり (Gaunt)                         |
|                   | 走る (Dash)                            |
|                   | バイバイ (Good-bye)                      |
|                   | グッド (Good)                           |
|                   | OK                                   |
|                   | BAD!                                 |
|                   | ピース! (V sign)                        |
|                   | パチパチ (Clap)                          |
|                   | アップ (Up)                             |
|                   | ダウン (Down)                           |

| ハート・キラキラ (Heart/Sparkling) |  |
|----------------------------|--|
|                            | ハート 1 (Heart 1)                        |
|                            | ハート 2 (Heart 2)                        |
|                            | ハート 3 (Heart 3)                        |
|                            | ハート 4 (Heart 4)                        |
|                            | ハート 5 (Heart 5)                        |
|                            | ハート 6 (Heart 6)                        |
|                            | ハート 7 (Heart 7)*1                      |
|                            | ハート 8 (Heart 8)*1                      |
|                            | ハート 9 (Heart 9)*1                      |
|                            | ハート 10 (Heart 10)*1                    |
|                            | ハート 11 (Heart 11)*1                    |
|                            | ハート 12 (Heart 12)*1                    |
|                            | ハート3つ (Three hearts)*1                 |
|                            | 重なり合うハート (Overlapped hearts)*1         |
|                            | ハートがツイバイ (Many hearts)                 |
|                            | カラフルハート (Colorful hearts)              |
|                            | レインボーハート (Rainbow heart)               |
|                            | ハートストーン(青) (Heart blue stone)          |
|                            | ハートストーン(ピンク) (Heart pink stone)        |
|                            | ドッキドキ (Heart beats faster)             |
|                            | 手描きハート (Handwritten heart)             |
|                            | ドキドキ 1 (Heart beats 1)*1               |
|                            | ドキドキ 2 (Heart beats 2)*1               |
|                            | 矢が刺さったハート (Arrowed heart)*1            |
|                            | ハートブレイク (Broken heart)                 |
|                            | 羽が生えたハート (Heart with wings)*1          |
|                            | ハネハート (Heart with wings)*1             |
|                            | 失恋 (Heartbreak)*1                      |
|                            | 宝石ハート (Heart jewelry)*1                |
|                            | 宝石花 (Flower jewelry)*1                 |
|                            | 花 1 (Flower 1)                         |
|                            | 花 2 (Flower 2)                         |
|                            | 花 3 (Flower 3)                         |
|                            | ダイヤモンド (Diamond)                       |
|                            | ルビー (Ruby)                             |
|                            | エメラルド (Emerald)                        |
|                            | くるくるブルー (Spinning blue stars)          |
|                            | くるくるイエロー (Spinning yellow stars)       |
|                            | 赤く星 (Pink) [Twinking stars (pink)]     |
|                            | 黄く星 (Yellow) [Twinking stars (yellow)] |
|                            | 星キラキラ (Star twinkle)                   |
|                            | 星 1 (Star 1)                           |
|                            | 星 2 (Star 2)                           |
|                            | 星 3 (Star 3)*1                         |




















































































































































































|                        | 星 4 (Star 4)*1                    |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                        | 星 5 (Star 5)*1                    |
|                        | 流れ星 (Shooting star)*1             |
|                        | 星2つ (Two stars)*1                 |
|                        | 星3つ (Three stars)*1               |
|                        | キラキラ 1 (Sparkling 1)*1            |
|                        | キラキラ 2 (Sparkling 2)*1            |
|                        | 音符 1 (Note 1)                     |
|                        | 音符 2 (Note 2)                     |
|                        | 音符 3 (Note 3)                     |
|                        | 音符 4 (Note 4)*1                   |
|                        | 音符 5 (Note 5)*1                   |
|                        | 音符 6 (Note 6)*1                   |
|                        | 音符 7 (Note 7)*1                   |
|                        | ルンルン (Euphoric mood)*1            |
|                        | 五線譜 (Staff notation)*1            |
|                        | ハートジュエル (Heart jewelry)           |
|                        | ピンクラインストーン (Pink line stone)      |
|                        | ブルーラインストーン (Blue line stone)      |
|                        | ピンクブローチ (Pink brooch)             |
|                        | ブルーブローチ (Blue brooch)             |
|                        | ピンクリボンジュエル (Pink ribbon)          |
|                        | イエローリボンジュエル (Yellow ribbon)       |
|                        | ブルージュエリー (Blue jewels)            |
|                        | ピンクジュエリー (Pink jewels)            |
|                        | ピンクラメ (Pink spangles)             |
|                        | 紫ラメ (Purple spangles)             |
|                        | キラキラクロス (Twinkle cross)           |
|                        | キラキラスター (Twinkle star)            |
|                        | ピンクフラワージュエル (Pink flower jewelry) |
|                        | ブルーフラワージュエル (Blue flower jewelry) |
|                        | 水色キラキラ (Light blue twinkle)       |
|                        | 星の輝き (Shining star)               |
|                        | 黄色キラキラ (Yellow twinkle)           |
|                        | ピンクキラキラ (Pink twinkle)            |
|                        | 星の瞬き (Twinking star)              |
|                        | ピンクシャイン (Pink shining)            |
| 天気・季節 (Weather/Season) |                                   |
|                        | 晴 (Fair weather)                  |
|                        | 太陽(赤) [Sun (red)]*1               |
|                        | 太陽(黄色) [Sun (yellow)]*1           |
|                        | 太陽(雲) [Sun (cloud)]*1             |
|                        | 太陽(緑) [Sun (green)]*1             |
|                        | 太陽 (Sun)*1                        |
|                        | 天気 (Good weather)*1               |

[Next Page](#)

|                                   |  |                                      |                           |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 雲 (Cloud)                         | テント (Tent)*1                             | 年賀状 (New Year's card)*1              | ぎょうざ (Chinese dumpling)*1 |
| 雲 1 (Cloud 1)*1                   | 線香花火 (Sparkling firework)                | お年玉 (New Year's present)*1           | ハンバーグ (Hamburger)*1       |
| 雲 2 (Cloud 2)*1                   | 花火 1 (Firework 1)*1                      | 初日の出 (First sunrise of a new year)*1 | カレー (Curry)*1             |
| 雨 1 (Rain 1)                      | 花火 2 (Firework 2)                        | 福袋 (Lucky grab bag)*1                | パスタ (Pasta)*1             |
| 雨 2 (Rain 2)*1                    | 花火 3 (Firework 3)*1                      | 福助 (FUKUSUKE)*1                      | ラーメン (Chinese noodle)*1   |
| 傘 1 (Umbrella 1)*1                | 金魚すくい (Goldfish scooping)*1              | 元旦 (New Year's day)*1                | てんぷら (TEMPURA)*1          |
| 傘 2 (Umbrella 2)*1                | お祭り (Festival)*1                         | 賀正赤 (New Year's Greetings Red)*1     | とんかつ (Pork cutlet)*1      |
| 傘 3 (Umbrella 3)*1                | 太鼓 (Drum)*1                              | 賀正白 (New Year's Greetings White)*1   | うどん (Japanese noodle)*1   |
| 傘 4 (Umbrella 4)*1                | ハッピー (HAPPY)*1                           | ギリ (Obligation)*1                    | おでん (ODEN)*1              |
| 雨がえる (Frog)                       | 海 (Sea)*1                                | 本命 (Favorite)*1                      | 肉まん (Pork bun)*1          |
| 雪 (Snow)                          | うきわ (Inner tube)*1                       | <b>電話・メール (Phone/Mail)</b>           | サンドウィッチ (Sandwich)*1      |
| 雪だるま 1 (Snowman 1)*1              | やしの木 (Cocoon palm)*1                     | 電話です (Phone call for you)            | サラダ 1 (Salad 1)*1         |
| 雪だるま 2 (Snowman 2)*1              | ビーチパラソル (Beach umbrella)*1               | 送信 (Send mail)                       | サラダ 2 (Salad 2)*1         |
| 雪だるま 3 (Snowman 3)*1              | ビーチサンダル (Flip-flop)*1                    | ラブレター (Love letter)                  | ポテト (French fries)*1      |
| 雷 (Thunder)                       | ビキニ (Bikini)*1                           | 封筒 (Envelope)*1                      | バーベキュー (Barbecue)*1       |
| 風 (Wind)                          | 月とススキ (Moon and silver grass)*1          | 手紙 (Letter)*1                        | サカナ (Fish)*1              |
| 月 (Moon)*1                        | 月見だんご (Dumplings offered to the moon)*1  | 電話 1 (Phone 1)*1                     | さくらんぼ 1 (Cherry 1)        |
| 満月 (Full moon)*1                  | コスモス (Cosmos)*1                          | 電話 2 (Phone 2)*1                     | さくらんぼ 2 (Cherry 2)*1      |
| 三日月 (Crescent)*1                  | イチョウの葉 (Leaf of a ginkgo)*1              | 電話 3 (Phone 3)*1                     | いちご 1 (Strawberry 1)      |
| 門松 (KADOMATSU)                    | 梨 (Pear)*1                               | ケータイ (Mobile phone)*1                | いちご 2 (Strawberry 2)*1    |
| 羽子板 (HAGOITA)                     | くり (Chestnut)*1                          | Newケータイ (New mobile phone)           | みかん 1 (Orange 1)          |
| 花粉症 (Hay fever)*1                 | きのこと (Mushroom)*1                        | ノーマル (Normal)                        | みかん 2 (Orange 2)*1        |
| ランドセル 1 (School bag 1)*1          | どんぐり (Acom)*1                            | ペンギン (Penguin)                       | りんご (Apple)               |
| ランドセル 2 (School bag 2)*1          | かき (Persimmon)*1                         | レッサーパンダ (Lesser panda)               | バナナ 1 (Banana 1)*1        |
| つくし (Horse tail)*1                | さつまいも (Sweet potato)*1                   | レッサーパンダ (Lesser panda)               | バナナ 2 (Banana 2)*1        |
| 開花宣言 (Declaration of blooming)*1  | トンボ (Dragonfly)*1                        | 着信 (Receiving)                       | ぶどう (Grape)*1             |
| お弁当 (Lunchbox)*1                  | 紅葉 (Colored leaves)*1                    | <b>食べ物 (Food)</b>                    | メロン (Melon)*1             |
| お酒 (Rice wine)*1                  | 枯れ葉 (Dead leaf)*1                        | コーヒー 1 (Coffee 1)                    | もも (Peach)*1              |
| 五分咲き (Started to bloom)*1         | ハロウィン (Halloween)*1                      | コーヒー 2 (Coffee 2)                    | レモン (Lemon)*1             |
| 桜 (Cherry blossom)*1              | お鍋 (Pot)*1                               | ペットボトル (Plastic bottle)*1            | スイカ 1 (Watermelon 1)*1    |
| 桜吹雪 (Cherry blossom petals)*1     | はんでん (HANTEN)*1                          | 牛乳 (Milk)*1                          | スイカ 2 (Watermelon 2)*1    |
| 桜並木 (Cherry blossom-lined road)*1 | ストープ (Heater)*1                          | ビール 1 (Beer 1)                       | 大根 (Japanese radish)*1    |
| 夜桜 (Cherry blossoms at night)*1   | 雪だるま (Snowman)*1                         | ビール 2 (Beer 2)                       | 白菜 (Celery cabbage)*1     |
| 花粉 (Pollen)*1                     | サンタクロース (Santa Claus)*1                  | お酒 (Rice wine)*1                     | ほうれんそう (Spinach)*1        |
| 風鈴 (Wind bell)*1                  | トナカイ (Reindeer)*1                        | ワイン (Wine)*1                         | かぼちゃ (Pumpkin)*1          |
| うちわ 1 (Fan 1)*1                   | 天使 (Angel)*1                             | トロピカルジュース (Tropical juice)*1         | かぶ (Turnip)*1             |
| うちわ 2 (Fan 2)*1                   | 嬉クリスマス (Glad christmas)*1                | ジュース (Juice)*1                       | キャベツ (Cabbage)*1          |
| スイカ (Watermelon)*1                | 悲クリスマス (Sad christmas)*1                 | オレンジジュース (Orange juice)*1            | なす (Eggplant)*1           |
| ひまわり (Sunflower)*1                | クリスマス 1 (Christmas 1)                    | ごはん (Rice)                           | にんじん (Carrot)*1           |
| 朝顔 (Morning glory)*1              | クリスマス 2 (Christmas 2)                    | おにぎり 1 (Rice ball 1)                 | ピーマン (Green pepper)*1     |
| 浴衣 (YUKATA)*1                     | プレゼント (Present)*1                        | おにぎり 2 (Rice ball 2)*1               | たまねぎ (Onion)*1            |
| 蚊 (Mosquito)*1                    | リース (Wreath)*1                           | おにぎり 3 (Rice ball 3)*1               | トマト (Tomato)*1            |
| 蚊取り線香 (Mosquito coil)*1           | ベル (Bell)*1                              | おにぎり 4 (Rice ball 4)*1               | ケーキ小 (Small cake)         |
| 蚊取り線香(ブタ) (Mosquito coil (pig))*1 | 天体観測 (Astronomical observation)*1        | 弁当 (Lunchbox)*1                      | ショートケーキ (Sponge cake)*1   |
| キャンプファイヤー (Campfire)*1            | 除夜の鐘 (Pinging bells on New Year's eve)*1 | 寿司 (SUSHI)                           | チーズケーキ (Cheesecake)*1     |



|  |  |  |   |
|--|--|--|---|
|  ロールケーキ (Roll cake)※1         |  サイクリング (Cycling)※1                |  キャンプ (Camp)※1                   |  床屋 (Barbershop)              |
|  ホールケーキ (Whole cake)※1       |  一方通行 (One way)※1                 |  山歩き (Hiking)                   |  家でゴロゴロ (Be home)※1          |
|  ケーキ大 (Large cake)           |  駐車禁止 (No parking)※1              |  トレッキング (Trekking)※1            |  コピー (Copy)※1                |
|  カキ氷 1 (Snow cone 1)         |  駐停車禁止 (No stopping)※1            |  バードウォッチング (Birding)※1          |  0円 (0 yen)※1                |
|  カキ氷 2 (Snow cone 2)※1       |  初心者 (Beginner)※1                 |  温泉 (Hot spring)※1              |  100円 (100 yen)※1            |
|  ハートチョコ (Chocolate)※1        |  朝 (Morning)※1                    |  ボーリング (Bowling)                |  500円 (500 yen)※1            |
|  アイス (Ice candy)※1           |  おはよう (Good morning)※1            |  ゴルフ (Golf)                     |  ドル (Dollar)※1               |
|  あめ (Candy)※1                |  いただきます (Let's eat)※1             |  ゴルフ(グリーン) [Golf (green)]※1     |  円 (Yen)※1                   |
|  あめ赤 (Red candy)※1           |  ござうさま (Thank you for the food)※1 |  スキー (Skiing)                   |  お礼羽 (Bill)※1                |
|  キャンディー (Candies)※1          |  行ってきます (I'm going now)※1         |  テニス (Tennis)                   |  コイン羽 (Coin)※1               |
|  ビスケット (Biscuit)※1           |  夕方 (Evening)※1                   |  テニス(ラケット) [Tennis (racket)]※1  |  ATM※1                       |
|  チョコレート (Chocolate)※1        |  お疲れ様 (Good work today)※1         |  バスケ (Basketball)※1             |  先生 (Teacher)※1              |
|  スナック (Snacks)※1             |  さようなら (Good-bye)※1               |  ホッケー (Hockey)※1                |  机 (Desk)※1                  |
|  デザート (Dessert)※1            |  ただいま (I'm home)※1                |  卓球 (Ping-pong)※1               |  教室 (Classroom)※1            |
|  プリン (Pudding)※1             |  ただいま~ (I'm home)※1               |  バドミントン (Badminton)※1           |  建物 (School)※1               |
|  シュークリーム (Cream puff)※1      |  夜 (Night)※1                      |  野球 (Baseball)※1                |  一升瓶 (Bottle)※1              |
|  ワッフル (Waffle)※1             |  おやすみ (Good night)※1              |  バレー (Volleyball)※1             |  酔っ払い (Drunken)※1            |
|  ガトーショコラ (Gateau chocolat)※1 |  アルバイト (Part-time job)※1          |  柔道 (JUDO)※1                    |  どんちゃん騒 (Party)※1            |
|  ティラミス (Tiramisu)※1          |  部活 体育会系 (Club sports)※1          |  剣道 (KENDO)※1                   |  目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)※1      |
|  モンブラン (Mont blanc)※1        |  引越し (Moving)※1                   |  相撲 (SUMO)※1                    |  スーツケース (Suitcase)※1         |
|  アイスクリーム (Ice cream)※1       |  ポイッ (Cast away)※1                |  ダンベル (Dumbbell)※1              |  エアコン (Air conditioner)※1    |
|  ケーキ (Cake)※1                |  サークル (Circle)※1                  |  月桂樹 (Bay laurel)※1             |  アイロン (Clothes iron)※1       |
|  団子 (Rice dumpling)※1        |  友達 (Friends)※1                   |  金メダル (Gold medal)※1            |  掃除機 (Vacuum cleaner)※1      |
| <b>移動・生活 (Transfer/Life)</b>   |  リクルートスーツ (Suit)※1                |  銀メダル (Silver medal)※1          |  ベッド (Bed)※1                 |
|  電車 (Train)                  |  新人 (Freshman)※1                  |  銅メダル (Bronze medal)※1          |  ハンガー (Hanger)※1             |
|  バス (Bus)                    |  OL (Female office worker)※1      |  トロフィー (Trophy)※1               |  ソファ (Sofa)※1                |
|  トラック (Truck)※1              |  花見 (Cherry blossom party)        |  見る (Watching movie)            |  バイオリン (Violin)※1            |
|  車 (Car)                     |  場所取り (Hold a place)※1            |  チケット (Ticket)※1                |  ドラム (Drams)※1               |
|  タクシー (Taxi)                 |  南国 (Southern country)※1         |  コーヒーカップ (Coffee cup)※1        |  ギター (Guitar)※1             |
|  救急車 (Ambulance)            |  海 (Sea)※1                      |  ゴカート (Go-cart)※1             |  ハーモニカ (Harmonica)※1       |
|  バトカー (Patrol car)         |  ビーチ (Beach)※1                  |  デパート (Department store)※1    |  ピアノ (Piano)※1             |
|  消防車 (Fire engine)※1       |  サーフィン 1 (Surfing 1)            |  ジェットコースター (Roller coaster)※1 |  サックス (Saxophone)※1        |
|  飛行機 (Plane)               |  サーフィン 2 (Surfing 2)※1          |  観覧車 (Ferris wheel)※1         |  トランペット (Trumpet)※1        |
|  バイク 1 (Motorbike 1)       |  ボディーボード (Bodyboarding)※1       |  公園 (Park)※1                  |  ステレオ (Stereo)※1           |
|  バイク 2 (Motorbike 2)※1     |  救命ベスト (Life jacket)※1          |  動物園 (Zoo)※1                  |  ヘッドフォン (Headphones)※1     |
|  スクーター (Scooter)           |  水上バイク (Personal watercraft)※1  |  水族館 (Aquarium)※1             |  ハサミ (Scissors)※1          |
|  自転車 (Bicycle)             |  シュノーケル (Snorkel)※1             |  マイク (Microphone)             |  辞書 (Dictionary)※1         |
|  走る (Running man)          |  ウェークボード (Wakeboarding)※1       |  時計 (Clock)                   |  ノート (Notebook)※1          |
|  ドライブ (Drive)              |  ヨット (Yacht)※1                  |  料理 (Cooking)                 |  スケジュール帳 (Schedule book)※1 |
|  バス停 (Bus stop)※1          |  釣り (Fishing)                   |  掃除 (Cleaning)                |  電卓 (Calculator)※1         |
|  ブルドーザー (Bulldozer)※1      |  フィッシング (Fishing)※1             |  洗濯 (Washing)                 |  メモ帳 (Memo pad)※1          |
|  フォークリフト (Forklift)※1      |  ゴムボート (Rat)※1                  |  風呂 (Bath)                    |  油性ペン (Felt-tip pen)※1     |
|  クレーン車 (Crane vehicle)※1   |  カヌー (Canoeing)※1               |  うんち (Poop)                   | <b>装飾 (Decoration)</b>  |
|  清掃車 (Garbage truck)※1     |  手漕ぎボート (Foyboat)※1             |  病院 (Hospital)                |  揺れるお花 (Swinging flower)   |
|  ショベルカー (Excavator)※1      |  山 (Mountain)※1                 |  注射 (Injection)               |  チューリップ 1 (Tulip 1)        |

|  |   |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|
|  チューリップ 2 (Tulip 2)                 |  蝶々 1 (Butterfly 1)     |  さかな (Fish)*1                          |  いて (Sagittarius)          |
|  チューリップ 3 (Tulip 3)                |  蝶々 2 (Butterfly 2)*1  |  ひよこ (Chick)*1                        |  やぎ (Capricorn)           |
|  チューリップ 4 (Tulip 4)*1              |  蝶々 3 (Butterfly 3)*1  |  かえる 1 (Frog 1)*1                     |  みずがめ (Aquarius)          |
|  ピンクマーガレット (Pink marguerite)       |  赤ちゃん天使 (Baby angel)   |  かえる 2 (Frog 2)*1                     |  うお (Pisces)              |
|  青マーガレット (Blue marguerite)         |  天使の羽 (Angel's wings)  |  うさぎ (Rabbit)*1                       |  子 (Rat)*1                |
|  ピンクバラ (Pink rose)                 |  赤ちゃん (Baby)           |  ハムスター (Hamster)*1                    |  丑 (Ox)*1                 |
|  黄色バラ (Yellow rose)                |  にゃん (Foot print)      |  猫 (Cat)*1                            |  寅 (Tiger)*1              |
|  バラ 1 (Rose 1)                     |  王冠 (Crown)            |  イルカ (Dolphin)*1                      |  卯 (Hare)*1               |
|  バラ 2 (Rose 2)*1                   |  ティアラ (Tiara)          |  バッタ (Grasshopper)*1                  |  辰 (Dragon)*1             |
|  オレンジクローバー (Orange clover)         |  流れ星 (Shooting star)   |  カブトムシ (Beetle)*1                     |  巳 (Serpent)*1            |
|  クローバー (Clover)                    |  水滴 (Dropping)*1       |  クワガタ (Stag beetle)*1                 |  午 (Horse)*1              |
|  ハイビスカス (Hibiscus)*1               |  しずく 1 (Dew 1)*1       |  いかり (Anchor)*1                       |  未 (Sheep)*1              |
|  ピンクブチお花 (Pink flower)             |  しずく 2 (Dew 2)*1       |  ブーツ (Boots)*1                        |  申 (Monkey)*1             |
|  黄色ブチお花 (Yellow flower)            |  リボン 1 (Ribbon 1)      |  ファーニット (Knit)*1                      |  酉 (Rooster)*1            |
|  花 1 (Flower 1)*1                  |  リボン 2 (Ribbon 2)*1    |  キャミソール (Camisole)*1                  |  戌 (Dog)*1                |
|  花 2 (Flower 2)*1                  |  リボン 3 (Ribbon 3)*1    |  キャミソール(緑) [Camisole (green)]*1       |  亥 (Boar)*1               |
|  花 3 (Flower 3)*1                  |  いちご (Strawberry)*1    |  カットソー(緑) [V-neck pullover (green)]*1 | <b>キャラクター (Cartoon character)</b>  |
|  花 4 (Flower 4)*1                  |  たまご 1 (Egg 1)*1       |  スカート (Skirt)*1                       |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  バンジー (Pansy)*1                    |  たまご 2 (Egg 2)*1       |  シャツ (Shirt)*1                        |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  あじさい (Hydrangea)*1                |  けむり 1 (Fog 1)*1       |  スーツ (Suit)*1                         |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  スズラン (Lily bell)*1                |  けむり 2 (Fog 2)*1       |  ネックレス (Necklace)*1                   |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  タンポポ (Dandelion)*1                |  けむり 3 (Fog 3)*1       |  ピアス (Pierced earring)*1              |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  タイル(黄緑) [Tile (yellow & green)]   |  ニッコロ (Smiling)*1      |  ポーチ (Makeup bag)*1                   |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  タイル(ピンク紫) [Tile (pink & purple)]  |  スマイル (Smile)*1        |  アイシャドウ (Eye shadow)*1                |  女の子 1 (Girl 1)           |
|  ピンクスクエア (Pink square)             |  OK*1                  |  チーク (Cheek shadow)*1                 |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)           |
|  ブルースクエア (Blue square)             |  指 (Fingers)*1         |  コンパクト (Powder compact)*1             |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)           |
|  レインボータイル (Rainbow tile)           |  マイク (Microphone)*1    |  香水 (Perfume)*1                       |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)           |
|  ピンクボーダー (Pink stripes)            |  おやじ (Big buddy)*1     |  口紅 1 (Lipstick 1)*1                  |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)           |
|  緑ボーダー (Green stripes)             |  UFO                   |  口紅 2 (Lipstick 2)*1                  |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)           |
|  ピンクローバーモチーフ (Pink clover motif)  |  アンテナ (Antenna)       |  フォドラント (Spray deodorant)*1          |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)          |
|  紫ローバーモチーフ (Purple clover motif) |  炎 (Flame)           |  手鏡 (Hand mirror)*1                 |  女の子 2 (Girl 2)         |
|  赤地ドット (Dots on red ground)      |  クマ (Bear)           |  ハンカチ (Handkerchief)*1              |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  黒地ドット (Dots on black ground)    |  パンダ 1 (Panda 1)*1   |  サイフ (Purse)*1                      |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  黒格子 (Black grillage)            |  パンダ 2 (Panda 2)*1   |  手帳 (Notebook)*1                    |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  ピンク格子 (Pink grillage)           |  プタ 1 (Pig 1)*1      |  麦わら帽子 (Straw hat)*1                |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  ピンクミニフラワー (Pink mini flower)    |  プタ 2 (Pig 2)*1      |  カバン (Bag)                          |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  緑ミニフラワー (Green mini flower)     |  ソウ (Elephant)*1     |  カード (Card)                         |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  ピンクライン (Pink line)              |  キリン (Giraffe)*1     |  おひつじ (Aries)                       |  女の子 3 (Girl 3)         |
|  緑ライン (Green line)               |  カバ (Hippopotamus)*1 |  おうし (Taurus)                       |  ピンクウサギ (Pink rabbit)   |
|  サンモチーフライン (Sun motif line)      |  ゴリラ (Gorilla)*1     |  ふたご (Gemini)                       |  ピンクウサギ (Pink rabbit)   |
|  葉っぱ(緑) [Leaf (green)]           |  コアラ (Koala)*1       |  かに (Cancer)                        |  ブルークマ (Blue bear)      |
|  葉っぱ(紫) [Leaf (purple)]          |  フラミンゴ (Flamingo)*1  |  しし (Leo)                           |  ブルークマ (Blue bear)      |
|  キャンディー (Candy)                  |  アシカ (Sea lion)*1    |  おとめ (Virgo)                        |  ブルーペンギン (Blue penguin) |
|  きのこ (Mushroom)                  |  アザラシ (Seal)*1       |  てんびん (Libra)                       |  ブルーペンギン (Blue penguin) |
|  てんと虫 (Ladybug)                  |  フクロウ (Owl)*1        |  さそり (Scorpio)                      |  ネコ (Cat)               |

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
|  | ネコ (Cat)           |
|  | カエル (Frog)         |
|  | カエル (Frog)         |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)        |
|  | ぱんだ (Panda)        |
|  | ねこ (Cat)           |
|  | うさぎ (Rabbit)       |
|  | くま (Bear)          |
|  | ハコ太 (HAKOTA)       |
|  | かえる (Frog)         |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)     |
|  | アメーバ (Amoeba)      |
|  | アイス (Ice cream)    |
|  | くらげ (Jellyfish)    |
|  | 顔文字 (Emoticon)     |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)        |
|  | ズボンジャンプ (Pants)*1  |
|  | スカートジャンプ (Skirt)*1 |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)     |
|  | Good*1             |
|  | 拍手 (Clap)*1        |
|  | 口 (Mouth)*1        |
|  | 横顔 (Side face)*1   |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)        |
|  | ぱんだ (Panda)        |
|  | ねこ (Cat)           |
|  | うさぎ (Rabbit)       |
|  | くま (Bear)          |
|  | ハコ太 (HAKOTA)       |
|  | かえる (Frog)         |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)     |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)     |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)     |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)     |
|  | アイス (Ice cream)    |
|  | 顔文字 (Emoticon)     |
|  | アメーバ (Amoeba)      |
|  | アメーバ (Amoeba)      |
|  | ウィンク (Wink)*1      |
|  | キラッ (Glint)*1      |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)        |
|  | ぱんだ (Panda)        |
|  | ねこ (Cat)           |
|  | うさぎ (Rabbit)       |
|  | くま (Bear)          |

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
|  | ハコ太 (HAKOTA)            |
|  | かえる (Frog)              |
|  | おわん (Bowl)              |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)          |
|  | くらげ (Jellyfish)         |
|  | ドクロ (Skull)             |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)             |
|  | ぱんだ (Panda)             |
|  | ねこ (Cat)                |
|  | うさぎ (Rabbit)            |
|  | くま (Bear)               |
|  | ハコ太 (HAKOTA)            |
|  | かえる (Frog)              |
|  | くらげ (Jellyfish)         |
|  | ドクロ (Skull)             |
|  | びよこねこ (Cat)             |
|  | びよこたん (PYOKOTAN)        |
|  | 顔文字 (Emoticon)          |
|  | 鼻水 (Runny nose)*1       |
|  | 涙目 (Tear-filled eye)*1  |
|  | 大涙する横顔 (Wail)*1         |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)          |
|  | うつむく横顔 (Downcast)*1     |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)             |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)             |
|  | ぱんだ (Panda)             |
|  | ねこ (Cat)                |
|  | うさぎ (Rabbit)            |
|  | くま (Bear)               |
|  | ハコ太 (HAKOTA)            |
|  | かえる (Frog)              |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)          |
|  | ペンギンバー (Penguin bleah)  |
|  | ペンギンフン (Penguin ignore) |
|  | ペンギン鼻息 (Penguin snort)  |
|  | くらげ (Jellyfish)         |
|  | ドクロ (Skull)             |
|  | びよこねこ (Cat)             |
|  | おわん (Bowl)              |
|  | びよこたん (PYOKOTAN)        |
|  | 顔文字 (Emoticon)          |
|  | 爆発 (Explosion)          |
|  | ちゃぶ台 (Low dining table) |
|  | 鼻息 (Snort)*1            |
|  | パンチ (Punch)*1           |

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
|  | 口 イーツ (Mouth bleah)*1 |
|  | にらみ目 (Stare)*1        |
|  | キック (Kick)*1          |
|  | にらむ正面顔 (Glare)*1      |
|  | モヒカン男 (Mohawk)*1      |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)           |
|  | ぱんだ (Panda)           |
|  | ねこ (Cat)              |
|  | うさぎ (Rabbit)          |
|  | くま (Bear)             |
|  | くま (Bear)             |
|  | ハコ太 (HAKOTA)          |
|  | かえる (Frog)            |
|  | 顔文字 (Emoticon)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | アイス (Ice cream)       |
|  | ドクロ (Skull)           |
|  | びよこねこ (Cat)           |
|  | おわん (Bowl)            |
|  | おじさん (Man)            |
|  | びよこたん (PYOKOTAN)      |
|  | 顔文字 (Emoticon)        |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)           |
|  | アイス (Ice cream)       |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | びよこねこ (Cat)           |
|  | びよこたん (PYOKOTAN)      |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |
|  | ひよこ (Chick)           |
|  | おわん (Bowl)            |
|  | ペンギン (Penguin)        |

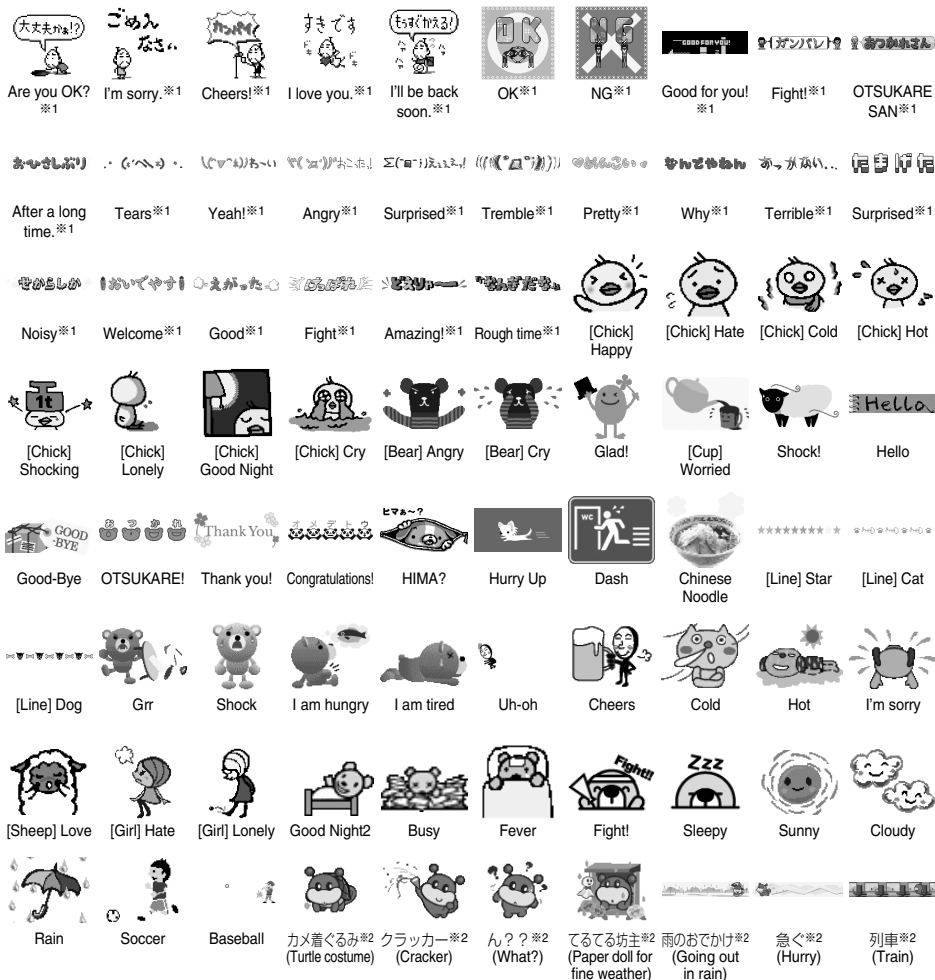
|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | アメーバ (Amoeba)                              |
|  | への字口 (Complain)*1                          |
|  | 鼻 (Nose)*1                                 |
|  | 手 (Hand)*1                                 |
|  | おばけ (Ghost)                                |
|  | ねこがぶり (Man becomes cat)                    |
|  | 殿 (King)                                   |
|  | はこわ (Clay figure)                          |
|  | よだれ口 (Slobber)*1                           |
|  | キヨロ目 (Shifty eye)*1                        |
|  | あつかんべえ Dimo (Bleah)*2                      |
|  | 見ざる聞かざる Dimo (See No-Evil, Hear No-Evil)*2 |
|  | ムンクの叫び Dimo (Cry of Munch)*2               |
|  | パンダが尻に (Panda becomes rabbit)              |
|  | 熊がパンダに (Bear becomes panda)                |
|  | 赤ちゃん (Baby)*1                              |
|  | おばあちゃん (Gramma)*1                          |
|  | おじいちゃん (Grampa)*1                          |
|  | お母さん (Mother)*1                            |
|  | スパルタママ (Strict mother)*1                   |
|  | お父さん (Father)*1                            |
|  | 外国人 (Foreigner)*1                          |
|  | 博士 (Doctor)*1                              |
|  | サラリーマン (Businessman)*1                     |
|  | 歌 (Song)*1                                 |
|  | ビックリ 1 (Surprised 1)*1                     |
|  | ビックリ 2 (Surprised 2)*1                     |
|  | エヘ 1 (Grin 1)*1                            |
|  | エヘ 2 (Grin 2)*1                            |
|  | エヘヘ (Grin)*1                               |
|  | 冷や汗 (Cold sweat)*1                         |
|  | ラブラリー (Lovely)*1                           |
|  | 怒った 1 (Angry 1)*1                          |
|  | 怒った 2 (Angry 2)*1                          |
|  | 大泣き (Wail)*1                               |
|  | ショック 1 (Shock 1)*1                         |
|  | ショック 2 (Shock 2)*1                         |
|  | ショック 3 (Shock 3)*1                         |
|  | 嬉しい (Gleeful)*1                            |
|  | ウィンク 1 (Wink 1)*1                          |
|  | ウィンク 2 (Wink 2)*1                          |
|  | zzz 1*1                                    |
|  | zzz 2*1                                    |
|  | ドキドキ (Heart beats)*1                       |

|  |                            |  |                      |  |                              |  |                  |
|--|----------------------------|--|----------------------|--|------------------------------|--|------------------|
|  | ベロ (Tongue)*1              |  | ハッ!? (Whatt!)*1      |  | クエスチョン1 (Question mark 1)    |  | ハート (Heart)*1    |
|  | ベロリ (Lick lip)*1           |  | ヘンツ (Sulry look)*1   |  | クエスチョン2 (Question mark 2)*1  |  | ホツ (HO)*1        |
|  | まばたき (Blink)*1             |  | シラ〜 (Cynical mood)*1 |  | クエスチョン3 (Question mark 3)*1  |  | ゲエ (GE)*1        |
|  | ニコニコ1 (Smile 1)*1          |  | Vサイン (V sign)*1      |  | ビックリ1 (Exclamation mark 1)   |  | 無言 (Silence)*1   |
|  | ニコニコ2 (Smile 2)*1          |  | 蝶ネクタイ (Bow tie)*1    |  | ビックリ2 (Exclamation mark 2)*1 |  | Zz*1             |
|  | ニコニコ3 (Smile 3)*1          |  | かぶりくま (KABURIKUMA)   |  | ビックリ3 (Exclamation mark 3)*1 |  | VS*1             |
|  | にっこり (Smile)*1             |  | かぶりくま (KABURIKUMA)   |  | ビックリ4 (Exclamation mark 4)*1 |  | 満 (Occupied)     |
|  | ニコリ (Smile)*1              |  | かぶりくま (KABURIKUMA)   |  | !?*1                         |  | 空 (Unoccupied)   |
|  | chu 1*1                    |  | かぶりくま (KABURIKUMA)   |  | レッドカード (Red card)*1          |  | 割 (Discount)     |
|  | chu 2*1                    |  | ぺんぎん (Penguin)       |  | イエローカード (Yellow card)*1      |  | 指 (Reserved)     |
|  | イイ (Angry)*1               |  | ぺんぎん (Penguin)       |  | チュ (CHU)                     |  | 秘 (Secret)       |
|  | 怒り (Angry)*1               |  | ぺんぎん (Penguin)       |  | ウフ (UHU)                     |  | 得 (Benefit)      |
|  | 悲しい (Sad)*1                |  | ぺんぎん (Penguin)       |  | フニャ〜 (FUNYA)                 |  | 有 (Yes)          |
|  | 泣く (Cry)*1                 |  | ぺんぎん (Penguin)       |  | マジ (MAJII?)                  |  | 無 (No)           |
|  | 涙1 (Tear 1)*1              |  | ぺんぎん (Penguin)       |  | ムリ (MURI)                    |  | 愛 (Love)*1       |
|  | 涙2 (Tear 2)*1              |  | ぶた (Pig)             |  | ガン (GAHN)                    |  | 悪 (Evil)*1       |
|  | 苦しい (Agonizing)*1          |  | ぶた (Pig)             |  | 笑 (WARAI)                    |  | 甘 (Sweet)*1      |
|  | ガーン (Shock)*1              |  | ぶた (Pig)             |  | 着 (Chaku-moji)               |  | 汗 (Sweat)*1      |
|  | ネコ1 (Cat 1)*1              |  | ぶた (Pig)             |  | テレ電 (TELE-DEN)               |  | 美 (Beauty)*1     |
|  | ネコ2 (Cat 2)*1              |  | ぶた (Pig)             |  | プッシュトーク (PushTalk)           |  | 怒 (Anger)*1      |
|  | やった1 (Yeah 1)*1            |  | ぶた (Pig)             |  | デコメ (Deco-mail)              |  | 激 (Blowup)*1     |
|  | やった2 (Yeah 2)*1            |  | 犬しっぽ (Dog's tail)    |  | GW*1                         |  | 貧 (Poon)*1       |
|  | 顔 (Face)*1                 |  | ねこしっぽ (Cat's tail)   |  | OK                           |  | 悲 (Sad)*1        |
|  | ブンブン (Fume)*1              |  | 文字 (Character)       |  | NG                           |  | 辛 (Harrowing)*1  |
|  | しくしく (Weeping)*1           |  | バナナ (Banana)         |  | Yes                          |  | 金 (Money)*1      |
|  | 無言 (Silence)*1             |  | ピチピチ (Fresh)         |  | NO 1                         |  | 泣 (Cry)*1        |
|  | ベロ (Sticking out tongue)*1 |  | ありがとう (Thank you)    |  | NO 2*1                       |  | 熱 (Fever)*1      |
|  | アヒル口 (Pout)*1              |  | おはよう (Good morning)  |  | oh                           |  | 楽 (Joy)*1        |
|  | エッ! (Ahhhhh)*1             |  | おやすみ (Good night)    |  | new*1                        |  | 苦 (Agonizing)*1  |
|  | エエッ! (Oh..)*1              |  | 印鑑OK (Seal OK)       |  | マル (OK)*1                    |  | 好 (Like)*1       |
|  | フツ (Little chuckle)*1      |  | 印鑑NG (Seal NG)       |  | バツ (NG)*1                    |  | 友 (Friendship)*1 |
|  | フン (Hmm)*1                 |  | 吹き出し (Balloon)       |  | Go*1                         |  | 良 (Good)*1       |

\*1 © I-FREEK CO., INC.

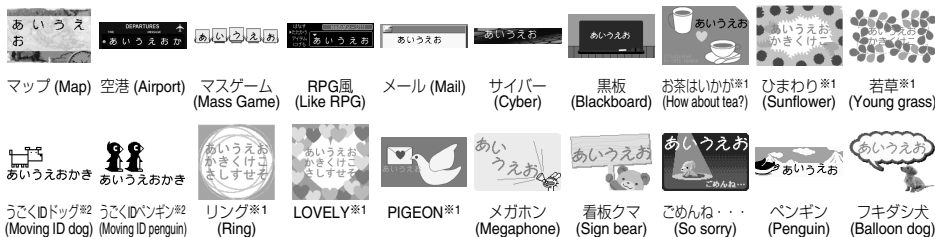
\*2 © Disney

## Decomail-picture



※1 © I-FREEK CO.,INC.  
※2 © Disney

## Moving Font Effect



※1 © CHIE TANAKA  
※2 © motion-id



Good morning!※



Fight!※



OK※



NG※



I LOVE YOU.※



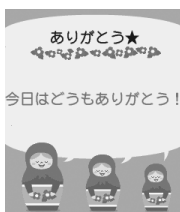
Trip※



Let's go out!※



OTSUKARE※



Thank you.※



Good night.※



Happy!!※



Cheers!!※



See you.※



Congratulations!※



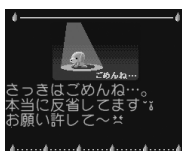
Are you all right?※



Surprised!※



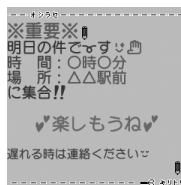
Hello※



Sorry



Cheers!



Note

# List of Characters Assigned to Keys (5-touch Input Method)

| Display<br>Key | abc  | 123 | 漢                  | か                                 |
|----------------|--|-----|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ①              | . - @ _ / : ; * <sup>※2</sup> — <sup>※1</sup><br>1   | 1   | あいうえ<br>おあいうえお     | アイウエ<br>オアイウエオ                    |
| ②              | a b c A B C 2  | 2   | かきくけこ              | カキクケコ                             |
| ③              | d e f D E F 3  | 3   | さしすせそ              | サシスセソ                             |
| ④              | g h i G H I 4  | 4   | たちつてとっ             | タチツテトツ                            |
| ⑤              | j k l J K L 5  | 5   | なにぬねの              | ナニヌネノ                             |
| ⑥              | m n o M N O 6  | 6   | はひふへほ              | ハヒフヘホ                             |
| ⑦              | p q r s P Q R S 7  | 7   | まみむめも              | マミムメモ                             |
| ⑧              | t u v T U V 8  | 8   | やゆよやゆよ             | ヤユヨヤユヨ                            |
| ⑨              | w x y z W X Y Z 9  | 9   | らりるれろ              | ラリルレロ                             |
| ⑩              | 0 □ (space)  | 0   | わをんわー<br>□ (space) | ワワンワ <sup>※1</sup> ー<br>□ (space) |
| ✕              | .ne.jp .co.jp .or.jp .com<br>http://www.<br>https://www.<br>@docomo.ne.jp<br><sup>※2</sup> | *   | 。 。 <sup>※3</sup>  | 。 。                               |
| #              | , ! ? ¥ & ( ) *<br># " ' = ^ + ;   | #   | 、 。 ・ ! ?          | 、 。 ・ ! ?                         |

※1: Displayed when entering the character in full pitch.

※2: Displayed when entering the character in half pitch.

※3: Displayed when entering characters consecutively.

If you press (✕) after fixing a character, pictographs are displayed.

- If you press (↶) after entering a character, characters can be scrolled in the reverse order.
- After entering hiragana, katakana, or alphabetic characters, you can switch uppercase and lowercase characters by pressing (↷).
- You can enter “+” by pressing and holding (0) for at least one second in Numeral input mode.

# List of Characters Assigned to Keys (2-touch Input Method)

## Kanji/Hiragana input mode

<Uppercase input mode>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | あ            | い | う | え | お | A | B | C | D | E |
|             | 2 | か            | き | く | け | こ | F | G | H | I | J |
|             | 3 | さ            | し | す | せ | そ | K | L | M | N | O |
|             | 4 | た            | ち | つ | て | と | P | Q | R | S | T |
|             | 5 | な            | に | ぬ | ね | の | U | V | W | X | Y |
|             | 6 | は            | ひ | ふ | へ | ほ | Z | ? | ! | - | / |
|             | 7 | ま            | み | む | め | も | ¥ | & |   |   |   |
|             | 8 | や            | ( | ゆ | ) | よ | * | # |   |   |   |
|             | 9 | ら            | り | る | れ | ろ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|             | 0 | わ            | を | ん | * | ° | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |

<Lowercase input mode>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | あ            | い | う | え | お | a | b | c | d | e |
|             | 2 |              |   |   |   |   | f | g | h | i | j |
|             | 3 |              |   |   |   |   | k | l | m | n | o |
|             | 4 |              |   | つ |   |   | p | q | r | s | t |
|             | 5 |              |   |   |   |   | u | v | w | x | y |
|             | 6 |              |   |   |   |   | z |   |   |   |   |
|             | 7 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 8 | や            |   | ゆ |   | よ |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 9 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 0 | わ            |   |   | , | ° |   |   |   |   |   |

## Katakana input mode

<Uppercase input mode>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | ア            | イ | ウ | エ | オ | A | B | C | D | E |
|             | 2 | カ            | キ | ク | ケ | コ | F | G | H | I | J |
|             | 3 | サ            | シ | ス | セ | ソ | K | L | M | N | O |
|             | 4 | タ            | チ | ツ | テ | ト | P | Q | R | S | T |
|             | 5 | ナ            | ニ | ヌ | ネ | ノ | U | V | W | X | Y |
|             | 6 | ハ            | ヒ | フ | ヘ | ホ | Z | ? | ! | - | / |
|             | 7 | マ            | ミ | ム | メ | モ | ¥ | & |   |   |   |
|             | 8 | ヤ            | ( | ユ | ) | ヨ | * | # |   |   |   |
|             | 9 | ラ            | リ | ル | レ | ロ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|             | 0 | ワ            | ヲ | ン | * | ° | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |

<Lowercase input mode>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | ア            | イ | ウ | エ | オ | a | b | c | d | e |
|             | 2 |              |   |   |   |   | f | g | h | i | j |
|             | 3 |              |   |   |   |   | k | l | m | n | o |
|             | 4 |              |   | ツ |   |   | p | q | r | s | t |
|             | 5 |              |   |   |   |   | u | v | w | x | y |
|             | 6 |              |   |   |   |   | z |   |   |   |   |
|             | 7 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 8 | ヤ            |   | ユ |   | ヨ |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 9 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 0 | ワ            | ヲ | ン | * | ° |   |   |   |   |   |

## Alphabet input mode

|             |   | Second digit |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2   | 3   | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | "            | \$  | %   | ' | + | a | b | c | d | e |
|             | 2 | ,            | .   | :   | ; | < | f | g | h | i | j |
|             | 3 | =            | >   | @   | [ | ] | k | l | m | n | o |
|             | 4 | ^            | -   | **1 |   |   | p | q | r | s | t |
|             | 5 | }            | **1 | **2 |   |   | u | v | w | x | y |
|             | 6 |              |     |     |   |   | z | ? | ! | - | / |
|             | 7 |              |     |     |   |   | ¥ | & |   |   |   |
|             | 8 |              | (   | )   |   |   | * | # |   |   |   |
|             | 9 |              |     |     |   |   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|             | 0 |              |     |     |   |   | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |

■ : Switches between uppercase input mode and lowercase input mode.

\*\*1: Displayed when entering characters in full pitch.

\*\*2: Displayed when entering characters in half pitch.

### Information

- A space is entered if you press keys that correspond to a blank where no character is assigned.
- In Kanji/Hiragana or Katakana input mode, you can enter " " and " ° " also by pressing (X) just after entering a character. For " ", press (X) once. For " ° ", press (X) twice.
- You can enter "+" by pressing and holding (O) for at least one second in Numeral input mode.



# List of Characters Assigned to Keys (NIKO-touch Input Method)

## Kanji/Hiragana input mode

<Lowercase input>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | あ            | い | う | え | お | . | - | @ | _ | 1 |
|             | 2 | か            | き | く | け | こ |   | a | b | c | 2 |
|             | 3 | さ            | し | す | せ | そ |   | d | e | f | 3 |
|             | 4 | た            | ち | つ | て | と | っ | g | h | i | 4 |
|             | 5 | な            | に | ぬ | ね | の |   | j | k | l | 5 |
|             | 6 | は            | ひ | ふ | へ | ほ |   | m | n | o | 6 |
|             | 7 | ま            | み | む | め | も | p | q | r | s | 7 |
|             | 8 | や            | ゆ | よ | ゃ | ゅ | ょ | t | u | v | 8 |
|             | 9 | ら            | り | る | れ | ろ | w | x | y | z | 9 |
|             | 0 | わ            | を | ん | , | 。 | - | . | ! | ? | 0 |

<Uppercase input>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | あ            | い | う | え | お |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 2 | カ            |   |   | ケ |   |   | A | B | C |   |
|             | 3 |              |   |   |   |   |   | D | E | F |   |
|             | 4 |              |   | っ |   | っ | G | H | I |   |   |
|             | 5 |              |   |   |   |   |   | J | K | L |   |
|             | 6 |              |   |   |   |   |   | M | N | O |   |
|             | 7 |              |   |   |   |   | P | Q | R | S |   |
|             | 8 | ヤ            | ユ | ヨ | ャ | ュ | ョ | T | U | V |   |
|             | 9 |              |   |   |   |   | W | X | Y | Z |   |
|             | 0 | わ            |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

## Katakana input mode

<Lowercase input>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | ア            | イ | ウ | エ | オ | . | - | @ | _ | 1 |
|             | 2 | カ            | キ | ク | ケ | コ |   | a | b | c | 2 |
|             | 3 | サ            | シ | ス | セ | ソ |   | d | e | f | 3 |
|             | 4 | タ            | チ | ツ | テ | ト | ッ | g | h | i | 4 |
|             | 5 | ナ            | ニ | ヌ | ネ | ノ |   | j | k | l | 5 |
|             | 6 | ハ            | ヒ | フ | ヘ | ホ |   | m | n | o | 6 |
|             | 7 | マ            | ミ | ム | メ | モ | p | q | r | s | 7 |
|             | 8 | ヤ            | ユ | ヨ | ャ | ュ | ョ | t | u | v | 8 |
|             | 9 | ラ            | リ | ル | レ | ロ | w | x | y | z | 9 |
|             | 0 | ワ            | ヲ | ン | , | 。 | - | . | ! | ? | 0 |

<Uppercase input>

|             |   | Second digit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|             |   | 1            | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 |
| First digit | 1 | ア            | イ | ウ | エ | オ |   |   |   |   |   |
|             | 2 |              |   |   |   |   |   | A | B | C |   |
|             | 3 |              |   |   |   |   |   | D | E | F |   |
|             | 4 |              |   | ッ |   | ッ | G | H | I |   |   |
|             | 5 |              |   |   |   |   |   | J | K | L |   |
|             | 6 |              |   |   |   |   |   | M | N | O |   |
|             | 7 |              |   |   |   |   | P | Q | R | S |   |
|             | 8 | ヤ            | ユ | ヨ | ャ | ュ | ョ | T | U | V |   |
|             | 9 |              |   |   |   |   | W | X | Y | Z |   |
|             | 0 |              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

### Information

- A space is entered if you press keys that correspond to a blank where no character is assigned.
- You can enter “ ” and “ ° ” by pressing (✖). For “ ”, press (✖) once. For “ ° ”, press (✖) twice.  
In Kanji/Hiragana input mode, you can enter them by pressing the key just after entering a character.
- You can enter “+” by pressing and holding (○) for at least one second in Numeral input mode.

# Symbol List

When “Read aloud settings” is set to “ON”, symbols are read aloud.

| Symbol | Voice guidance |
|--------|----------------|
| 、      | —              |
| 。      | —              |
| ・      | コンマ※1          |
| 。      | ドット※1          |
| ・      | テン             |
| :      | コロソ            |
| :      | セミコロソ          |
| ?      | ギモンフ※1         |
| !      | カンタンフ※1        |
| °      | ダクテン           |
| °      | ハンダクテン         |
| 、      | —              |
| 、      | —              |
| 〃      | ウムラウト          |
| ^      | ヤマガタキゴウ※1      |
| —      | オーバーライン        |
| —      | アンダーライン        |
| 、      | —              |
| 、      | —              |
| 、      | —              |
| 、      | —              |
| 、      | —              |
| //     | —              |
| 全      | ドウ             |
| 々      | —              |
| メ      | シメ             |
| ○      | ゼロ             |
| —      | チョーオン※2        |
| —      | ダッシュ           |
| -      | ハイフン           |
| /      | スラッシュ          |
| 、      | バックスラッシュ       |
| ~      | カラ※3           |
|        | —              |
|        | タテセン※1         |
| …      | テンテンデン         |
| ..     | テンテン           |
| ・      | —              |
| ’      | アポストロフィ※1      |
| ”      | —              |
| ”      | インヨウフ※1        |
| (      | カッコ            |
| )      | トジカッコ          |
| [      | カッコ            |
| ]      | トジカッコ          |
| [      | カッコ            |
| ]      | トジカッコ          |
| {      | カッコ            |
| }      | トジカッコ          |

| Symbol | Voice guidance |
|--------|----------------|
| <      | カッコ            |
| >      | トジカッコ          |
| <      | カッコ            |
| >      | トジカッコ          |
| 「      | カギカッコ          |
| 」      | トジカギカッコ        |
| 『      | カギカッコ          |
| 』      | トジカギカッコ        |
| 【      | カッコ            |
| 】      | トジカッコ          |
| +      | プラス            |
| -      | マイナス※4         |
| ±      | プラスマイナス        |
| ×      | カケル            |
| ÷      | ワル             |
| =      | イコール           |
| ≠      | ノットイコール        |
| <      | ショーナリ          |
| >      | ダイナリ           |
| ≤      | ショーナリイコール      |
| ≥      | ダイナリイコール       |
| ∞      | ムゲンダイ          |
| ∴      | ユエニ            |
| ♂      | オス             |
| ♀      | メス             |
| °      | ド              |
| ’      | フン             |
| ”      | ビョー            |
| ℃      | ドシー            |
| ¥      | エン             |
| \$     | ドル             |
| ¢      | セント            |
| £      | ポンド            |
| %      | パーセント          |
| #      | イゲタ            |
| &      | アンド            |
| *      | アスタリスク         |
| @      | アットマーク         |
| §      | セクション          |
| ☆      | ホシ             |
| ★      | クロホシ           |
| ○      | マル             |
| ●      | クロマル           |
| ◎      | ニジューマル         |
| ◇      | ヒシガタ           |
| ◆      | クロヒシガタ         |
| □      | シカク            |
| ■      | クロシカク          |

| Symbol | Voice guidance |
|--------|----------------|
| △      | サンカク           |
| ▲      | クロサンカク         |
| ▽      | ギャクサンカク        |
| ▼      | クロギャクサンカク      |
| ※      | コメジルシ          |
| 〒      | ユービンバンゴー       |
| →      | ミギヤジルシ         |
| ←      | ヒダリヤジルシ        |
| ↑      | ウエヤジルシ         |
| ↓      | シタヤジルシ         |
| ■      | ゲタキゴー          |
| ∈      | ゾクスル           |
| ∉      | フクム            |
| ⊂      | ブブンシューゴー       |
| ⊃      | ブブンシューゴーフクム    |
| ⊆      | シンブブンシューゴー     |
| ⊇      | シンブブンシューゴーフクム  |
| U      | ガッペー           |
| ∩      | キョーツウ          |
| ∧      | オヨビ            |
| ∨      | マタフ            |
| ¬      | ヒテラ            |
| ⇒      | ナラバ            |
| ⇔      | ドーチ            |
| ∀      | スベテノ           |
| ∃      | アル             |
| ∠      | カク             |
| ⊥      | スイチョク          |
| ∩      | コ              |
| ∅      | ラウンドディー        |
| ∇      | ナブラ            |
| ≡      | ゴードー           |
| ≐      | ニアリーイコール       |
| ≪      | ショーナリ          |
| ≫      | ショーナリ          |
| ≫      | ダイナリダイナリ       |
| √      | ルート            |
| ∞      | ソージ            |
| ∞      | ヒレー            |
| ∴      | ナゼナラバ          |
| ∫      | インテグラル         |
| ∫      | ダブルインテグラル      |
| ∫      | オングストローム       |

| Symbol | Voice guidance |
|--------|----------------|
| ‰      | パーミル           |
| #      | シャープ           |
| b      | フラット           |
| ♪      | オンブ            |
| †      | ダガー            |
| ‡      | ダブルダガー         |
| ¶      | ダンラクキゴー        |
| ○      | マル             |
| ゐ      | イ              |
| ゑ      | エ              |
| い      | イ              |
| え      | エ              |
| ヴ      | ヴ              |
| カ      | カ              |
| ケ      | ケ              |
| A      | アルファ           |
| B      | ベータ            |
| Γ      | ガンマ            |
| Δ      | デルタ            |
| E      | イプシロン          |
| Z      | ゼータ            |
| H      | ヘータ            |
| θ      | シータ            |
| I      | イオタ            |
| K      | カッパ            |
| Λ      | ラムダ            |
| M      | ミュー            |
| N      | ニュー            |
| Ξ      | グザイ            |
| O      | オミクロン          |
| Π      | パイ             |
| P      | ロー             |
| Σ      | シグマ            |
| T      | タウ             |
| Υ      | ユブシロン          |
| Φ      | ファイ            |
| X      | カイ             |
| Ψ      | プサイ            |
| Ω      | オメガ            |
| α      | アルファ           |
| β      | ベータ            |
| γ      | ガンマ            |
| δ      | デルタ            |
| ε      | イプシロン          |
| ζ      | ゼータ            |
| η      | ヘータ            |
| θ      | シータ            |
| ι      | イオタ            |



### Information

- Special symbols “①” through “U” might not be correctly displayed if they are sent to mobile phones which do not support i-mode or personal computers. Further, you cannot enter special symbols of [ ] into the text of SMS messages, and they are replaced by half-pitch spaces.

## Symbol Candidate List

On the Character Entry (Edit) display, enter “きごう” to convert it to bring up symbol candidates. Further, you can enter characters listed below to convert them into respective symbols.

| Input | Conversion          |
|-------|---------------------|
| おなじ   | // ♪                |
| から    | ~                   |
| かんま   | ,                   |
| こんま   | ,                   |
| たてせん  | //                  |
| てんでん  | … …                 |
| りーだ   | …                   |
| しめ    | メ                   |
| かっこ   | “( )<br>[ ] { } < > |
| たす    | +                   |
| ひく    | -                   |
| ぷらすまい | ±                   |
| なす    | ×                   |
| かける   | ×                   |
| わる    | ÷                   |

| Input | Conversion |
|-------|------------|
| いこーる  | =          |
| ふとうごう | <> ≤ ≥     |
| しょうなり | <          |
| だいなり  | >          |
| しょうなり | ≒          |
| いこーる  | ≒          |
| だいなり  | ≒          |
| いこーる  | ≒          |
| むげんだい | ∞          |
| おす    | ♂          |
| めす    | ♀          |
| ならば   | ⇒          |
| どうち   | ⇔          |
| にあり   | ≒          |
| いこーる  | ≒          |
| ちいさい  | ≪          |
| おおきい  | ≫          |

| Input | Conversion |
|-------|------------|
| るーと   | √          |
| ど     | ° °C       |
| ぶん    | '          |
| びょう   | ”          |
| どる    | \$         |
| せんと   | ¢          |
| ぼんど   | £          |
| せつ    | §          |
| ほし    | * ☆ ★      |
| あっと   | @          |
| まる    | ○ ●<br>◎   |
| しかく   | ◇ ◆ □ ■    |
| さんかく  | △ ▲ ▼ ▽    |
| こめ    | ※          |
| ゆうびん  | 〒          |
| やじるし  | ↔ ↑ ↓      |

| Input  | Conversion |
|--------|------------|
| うえ     | ↑          |
| した     | ↓          |
| みぎ     | →          |
| ひだり    | ←          |
| あすたりすく | *          |
| おんぐすと  | Å          |
| ろーむ    | ∞          |
| しゃーぷ   | #          |
| ぶらっと   | b          |
| おんぷ    | ♪          |
| だがー    | †          |
| だぶるだ   | ‡          |
| がー     | ‡          |
| だんらく   | ¶          |
| おーむ    | Ω          |
| でんわ    | TEL        |

## Pictograph List

When “Read aloud settings” is set to “ON”, pictographs are read aloud.

| Pictograph | Voice guidance |
|------------|----------------|
|            | ハートマーク         |
|            | ユレルハートマーク      |
|            | シツレンマーク        |
|            | フクスーハートマーク     |
|            | ワーイマーク         |
|            | ポンポンマーク        |
|            | ガクーマーク         |
|            | モウヤダーマーク       |
|            | フラフラマーク        |
|            | ルンルンマーク        |
|            | オンセンマーク        |
|            | カワイイマーク        |
|            | チュッマーク         |
|            | ピカピカマーク        |
|            | ヒラメキマーク        |
|            | ムカママーク         |
|            | パンチマーク         |
|            | バクダンマーク        |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance |
|------------|----------------|
|            | ムードマーク         |
|            | ネムイマーク         |
|            | ビックリマーク        |
|            | ビックリハテナマーク     |
|            | ニジュービックリマーク    |
|            | ドーンマーク         |
|            | アセアセマーク        |
|            | アセタラーマーク       |
|            | ダッシュマーク        |
|            | ウーマーク          |
|            | ウーンマーク         |
|            | グッドマーク         |
|            | パッドマーク         |
|            | ミギナナメウエヤジルシマーク |
|            | ミギナナメシタヤジルシマーク |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance  |
|------------|-----------------|
|            | ヒダリナナメウエヤジルシマーク |
|            | ヒダリナナメシタヤジルシマーク |
|            | ハレマーク           |
|            | クモリマーク          |
|            | アメマーク           |
|            | ユキマーク           |
|            | カミナリマーク         |
|            | タイフーマーク         |
|            | キリマーク           |
|            | コサメマーク          |
|            | オヒツジガマーク        |
|            | オウシガマーク         |
|            | フタゴザマーク         |
|            | カニガマーク          |
|            | シシガマーク          |
|            | オトメガマーク         |
|            | テンビンガマーク        |
|            | サンリガマーク         |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance |
|------------|----------------|
|            | イテザマーク         |
|            | ヤギザマーク         |
|            | ミズガメザマーク       |
|            | ウオザマーク         |
|            | スポーツマーク        |
|            | ヤキューマーク        |
|            | ゴルフマーク         |
|            | テニスマーク         |
|            | サッカーマーク        |
|            | スキーマーク         |
|            | バスケットマーク       |
|            | モータースポーツマーク    |
|            | ページマーク         |
|            | デンジャマーク        |
|            | チカテツマーク        |
|            | シンカンセンマーク      |
|            | セダンマーク         |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance  |
|------------|-----------------|
|            | アールプライマーク       |
|            | バスマーク           |
|            | フネマーク           |
|            | ヒコーキマーク         |
|            | イエマーク           |
|            | ビルマーク           |
|            | ユービシヨク<br>マーク   |
|            | ビョーインマーク        |
|            | ギンコーマーク         |
|            | エーティーエム<br>マーク  |
|            | ホテルマーク          |
|            | コンビニマーク         |
|            | ガソリンスタンド<br>マーク |
|            | チューシャジョー<br>マーク |
|            | シンコーマーク         |
|            | トイレマーク          |
|            | レストランマーク        |
|            | キッサテンマーク        |
|            | パーマーク           |
|            | ビールマーク          |
|            | ファーストフード<br>マーク |
|            | プティックマーク        |
|            | ビョーインマーク        |
|            | カラオケマーク         |
|            | エーガマーク          |
|            | ユーエンチマーク        |
|            | オンガクマーク         |
|            | アートマーク          |
|            | エンゲキマーク         |
|            | イベントマーク         |
|            | チケットマーク         |
|            | キットエンマーク        |
|            | キンエンマーク         |
|            | カメラマーク          |
|            | カバンマーク          |
|            | ホンマーク           |
|            | リボンマーク          |
|            | プレゼントマーク        |
|            | パースデーマーク        |
|            | デンワマーク          |
|            | ケータイデンワ<br>マーク  |
|            | メモマーク           |
|            | テレビマーク          |
|            | ゲームマーク          |
|            | シーディーマーク        |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance  |
|------------|-----------------|
|            | ハートマーク          |
|            | スペードマーク         |
|            | ダイヤマーク          |
|            | クラブマーク          |
|            | メマーク            |
|            | ミミマーク           |
|            | グーマーク           |
|            | チョコマーク          |
|            | パーマーク           |
|            | アシマーク           |
|            | クツマーク           |
|            | メガネマーク          |
|            | クルマイスマーク        |
|            | シングヅマーク         |
|            | カケツキマーク         |
|            | ハンゲツマーク         |
|            | ミカツキマーク         |
|            | マンゲツマーク         |
|            | イヌマーク           |
|            | ネコマーク           |
|            | リゾートマーク         |
|            | クリスマスマーク        |
|            | カチンコマーク         |
|            | フクロマーク          |
|            | ペンマーク           |
|            | ヒトカゲマーク         |
|            | イスマーク           |
|            | ヨルマーク           |
|            | スーンマーク          |
|            | オンマーク           |
|            | エンドマーク          |
|            | トケマーク           |
|            | デンワヘマーク         |
|            | メールヘマーク         |
|            | ファックスヘマ<br>ーク   |
|            | アイモードマ<br>ーク    |
|            | アイモードマ<br>ーク    |
|            | メールマーク          |
|            | ドコモケーキョ<br>ーマーク |
|            | ドコモポイント<br>マーク  |
|            | ユーリョーマ<br>ーク    |
|            | ムリョーマ<br>ーク     |
|            | アイディーマ<br>ーク    |
|            | パスワードマ<br>ーク    |
|            | ツギアリマ<br>ーク     |
|            | クリアマ<br>ーク      |
|            | サーチマ<br>ーク      |
|            | ニューマ<br>ーク      |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance  |
|------------|-----------------|
|            | イチジョーホー<br>マーク  |
|            | フリーダイヤル<br>マーク  |
|            | シャープダイヤル<br>マーク |
|            | モバキューマ<br>ーク    |
|            | シカクイチ           |
|            | シカクニ            |
|            | シカクサン           |
|            | シカクヨン           |
|            | シカクゴ            |
|            | シカクロク           |
|            | シカクナナ           |
|            | シカクハチ           |
|            | シカクキュー          |
|            | シカクゼロ           |
|            | ケットーマ<br>ーク     |
|            | アイアプリマ<br>ーク    |
|            | アイアプリマ<br>ーク    |
|            | ディーシャツマ<br>ーク   |
|            | ガガチサイフ<br>マーク   |
|            | ケショーマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ジーンズマ<br>ーク     |
|            | スノボマ<br>ーク      |
|            | チャペルマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ドアマ<br>ーク       |
|            | ドルブックマ<br>ーク    |
|            | パソコンマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ラブレターマ<br>ーク    |
|            | レン手マ<br>ーク      |
|            | エンピツマ<br>ーク     |
|            | オーカンマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ユビワマ<br>ーク      |
|            | スナドケマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ジテンシャマ<br>ーク    |
|            | ユノミマ<br>ーク      |
|            | ウデドケマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ムムマ<br>ーク       |
|            | ホッマ<br>ーク       |
|            | ヒヤアセマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ヒヤアセマ<br>ーク     |
|            | ブクマ<br>ーク       |
|            | ポケッマ<br>ーク      |
|            | ラブラマ<br>ーク      |
|            | オーケマ<br>ーク      |
|            | アッカンベマ<br>ーク    |
|            | ウィンクマ<br>ーク     |

| Pictograph | Voice guidance             |
|------------|----------------------------|
|            | ウレシイマ<br>ーク                |
|            | ガマンマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | ネコマ<br>ーク                  |
|            | ナキマ<br>ーク                  |
|            | ナミダマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | エヌジマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | クリップマ<br>ーク                |
|            | コビーライ<br>トマ<br>ーク          |
|            | トレードマ<br>ーク                |
|            | ハシルヒ<br>トマ<br>ーク           |
|            | マルヒマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | リサイクルマ<br>ーク               |
|            | レジスト<br>ロッド<br>マ<br>ーク     |
|            | キケンマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | キンシマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | クーシツマ<br>ーク                |
|            | ゴカクマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | マンシツマ<br>ーク                |
|            | サユマ<br>ーク                  |
|            | ジョーグマ<br>ーク                |
|            | ガッコマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | ナミマ<br>ーク                  |
|            | フジサンマ<br>ーク                |
|            | クローバ<br>ーマ<br>ーク           |
|            | サクラン<br>ボマ<br>ーク           |
|            | チューリ<br>ップ<br>マ<br>ーク      |
|            | バナナマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | リンゴマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | ワカバ<br>マ<br>ーク             |
|            | モミジマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | サクラマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | オニギリ<br>マ<br>ーク            |
|            | ショート<br>ケー<br>キ<br>マ<br>ーク |
|            | トックリ<br>マ<br>ーク            |
|            | ドンブリ<br>マ<br>ーク            |
|            | パンマ<br>ーク                  |
|            | カタツ<br>ムリ<br>マ<br>ーク       |
|            | ヒヨコマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | ペンギン<br>マ<br>ーク            |
|            | サカナマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | ウマイマ<br>ーク                 |
|            | ウッシシ<br>シマ<br>ーク           |
|            | ウママ<br>ーク                  |
|            | ブタマ<br>ーク                  |
|            | ウィング<br>ラス<br>マ<br>ーク      |
|            | ゲッソリ<br>マ<br>ーク            |

### Information

- Entered pictographs are all counted as full-pitch characters.
- Pictographs are not correctly displayed if they are sent to mobile phones which do not support i-mode or to personal computers. Further, the pictographs from “☎” through “📞” are correctly displayed only when sent to i-mode phones which support those pictographs.
- The pictographs framed by the yellow box on the display support Kirari Mail.

## Common Phrase List

| No.                       | Expressions                             |
|---------------------------|---|
| <b>“Greetings” folder</b> |   |
| 1                         | Good morning                            |
| 2                         | Good afternoon                          |
| 3                         | Good evening                            |
| 4                         | Good night                              |
| 5                         | I'm going                               |
| 6                         | Have a nice day                         |
| 7                         | I'm back                                |
| 8                         | Welcome back                            |
| 9                         | I'm sorry                               |
| 10                        | Good-bye                                |
| <b>“Business” folder</b>  |   |
| 1                         | Your cooperation is greatly appreciated |
| 2                         | We always appreciate your business      |
| 3                         | Please send my best regards to everyone |
| 4                         | Thank you very much for the other day   |
| 5                         | How's everything?                       |
| 6                         | I will be late                          |
| 7                         | See you later                           |
| 8                         | All right                               |
| 9                         | Check urgently!                         |
| 10                        | Call me                                 |

| No.                      | Expressions            |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>“Internet” folder</b> |                        |
| 1                        | @docomo.ne.jp          |
| 2                        | .ne.jp/                |
| 3                        | .co.jp/                |
| 4                        | .or.jp/                |
| 5                        | .ac.jp/                |
| 6                        | .com/                  |
| 7                        | http://www.            |
| 8                        | https://www.           |
| 9                        | www.                   |
| 10                       | .html                  |
| <b>“Smiley 1” folder</b> |                        |
| 1                        | (☺)                    |
| 2                        | ♪(∇)                   |
| 3                        | (_ _)                  |
| 4                        | <(_ _ ;)>              |
| 5                        | (^ ^)                  |
| 6                        | ○(≧▽≦)○                |
| 7                        | ( p _ q ) E - n        |
| 8                        | ( T _ T )              |
| 9                        | Σ ( ∩ ∪ ) I E ッ        |
| 10                       | ( * ≧ ≡ ≦ * ) プ ブ ッ    |
| <b>“Smiley 2” folder</b> |                        |
| 1                        | (   ' 0 ` )   オーイ      |
| 2                        | ツンツン ( ° ° - ° ) σ     |
| 3                        | ∖ ( • ε • ) オイオイ       |
| 4                        | ( • o • ) > 了解!        |
| 5                        | ( ; _ _ ) アヤシイ         |
| 6                        | ∖ ( ≧ ∇ ≦ ) // ヤダヤダ    |
| 7                        | σ ( ∇ )                |
| 8                        | << ( ^ ^ ) >> エハン      |
| 9                        | ∩ ( _ _ ) ∩ フッ         |
| 10                       | ~~~~ - ( • ∨ • ) - ブーン |

# Multiaccess Combination Patterns

| Communication event \ Communication status | Voice call |          | Videophone call |          | PushTalk |          | i-mode     | i-mode mail |           |
|--|------------|----------|-----------------|----------|----------|----------|------------|-------------|-----------|
|  | Outgoing   | Incoming | Outgoing        | Incoming | Outgoing | Incoming | Connecting | Sending     | Receiving |
| Voice call                                 | △※1        | △※2      | ×               | ×※3      | ×        | ×※4      | ○          | ○           | △※5       |
| Videophone call                            | ×          | ×※3      | ×               | ×※3      | ×        | ×        | ×          | ×           | ×         |
| PushTalk                                   | ×          | △※6      | ×               | ×        | ×※7      | ×        | ×          | ×           | ×         |
| i-mode                                     | ○          | ○        | △※8             | △※9      | △※8      | △※10     | ×          | ○           | ○         |
| i-mode mail                                | ○          | ○        | △※8             | △※9      | △※8      | △※10     | ○          | ×           | ×         |
| SMS  | ○          | ○        | ○               | ○        | ○        | ○        | ○          | ×           | △※5※11    |
| i-oppli※12                                 | ×          | ○        | ×               | △※9      | ×        | △※10     | ×          | ×           | △※5       |
| i-oppli software running                   | ○          | ○        | △※8             | △※9      | △※8      | △※10     | ×          | ○           | △※5       |
| Packet communication (Data communication)  | ○          | ○        | ×               | ×※4      | ×        | ×        | ×          | ×           | ×         |
| 64K data communication                     | ×          | ×※3      | ×               | ×        | ×        | ×        | ×          | ×           | ×         |

| Communication event \ Communication status | SMS     |           | i-oppli  | i-oppli software running | Packet communication (Data communication) |           | 64K data communication |           |
|--|---------|-----------|----------|--------------------------|---|-----------|------------------------|-----------|
|  | Sending | Receiving | Outgoing | Outgoing                 | Sending                                   | Receiving | Sending                | Receiving |
| Voice call                                 | ○       | △※5       | ×        | ×                        | ○   | △※5       | ×                      | ×※3       |
| Videophone call                            | ×       | △※5       | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×※3       |
| PushTalk                                   | ×       | △※5       | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×         |
| i-mode                                     | ○       | ○         | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×         |
| i-mode mail                                | ×       | △※5※11    | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×         |
| SMS  | ×       | △※5       | ○        | ○                        | ○   | △※5       | ○                      | △※5       |
| i-oppli※12                                 | ×       | △※5       | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×         |
| i-oppli software running                   | ○       | △※5       | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×         |
| Packet communication (Data communication)  | ○       | ○         | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×※3       | ×                      | ×         |
| 64K data communication                     | ×       | ○         | ×        | ×                        | ×   | ×         | ×                      | ×※3       |

○: Can start.

△: Can start by condition.

×: Cannot start simultaneously. The current communication continues (the started communication is rejected).

※1: If you have signed up for "Call waiting", you can make another call with the current voice call put on hold.

※2: In the condition of the maximum number of voice line+1, you can activate Voice Mail, Call Waiting, or Call Forwarding. (See page 427, page 428, and page 430)

※3: If you have signed up for "Call waiting", "Voice mail", or "Call forwarding", you can answer an incoming call after finishing a call or communication. (See page 434)

※4: The call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls.

※5: "☐ (white)" appears to notify of incoming mail.

※6: The FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "PushTalk arrival act".

※7: Only when you are the caller, you can make calls to add members.

※8: i-mode communication is cut off, and you can make a call.

※9: The FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "V-phone while packet".

※10: The FOMA phone works in accordance with the setting of "i-mode arrival act".

※11: For i-mode mail and SMS, you can use a single line each at a time.

※12: This is the case for when you are updating or downloading an i-oppli program.

# Multitask Combination Patterns

When the functions in the same group (part in the table) conflict, the display for switching the active function appears. However, it might not appear depending on the operation.

| Function in operation | Voice call | Video phone call | Push Talk | Mail | i-mode group |         | Setting group |         | Tool group |            |               |            | Private menu |
|-----------------------|------------|------------------|-----------|------|--------------|---------|---------------|---------|------------|------------|---------------|------------|--------------|
|                       |            |                  |           |      | i-mode       | i-oppli | Settings ※1   | Service | Data box   | LifeKit ※2 | Phone book ※3 | Stationery |              |
| Voice call            | ×          | ×                | ×         | ○    | ○            | ×       | ○             | ○※4     | ×          | ○※5        | ○             | ○※6        | ○            |
| Videophone call       | ×          | ×                | ×         | ×    | ×            | ×       | ×             | ×       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ×            |
| PushTalk              | ×          | ×                | ×         | ×    | ×            | ×       | ×             | ×       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ×            |
| Mail                  | ○          | ○                | ○         | ×    | ○            | ○       | ○             | ○       | ○          | ○          | ○             | ○          | ○            |
| i-mode※8              | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ×            | ×       | ○             | ○       | ○          | ○          | ○             | ○          | ○            |
| i-oppli               | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ×            | ×       | ○             | ○       | ○※9        | ○※9        | ○             | ○          | ○            |
| Settings              | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ○            | ○       | ×             | ×       | ○          | ○          | ○             | ○          | ○            |
| Service               | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ○            | ○       | ×             | ×       | ○          | ○          | ○             | ○          | ○            |
| Data box ※8※10※12     | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ○            | ○       | ○             | ○       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ○            |
| i-motion              | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ○            | ○       | ○             | ○       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ○            |
| LifeKit※2※10          | ○※17       | ○※17             | ○※17      | ○※18 | ○            | ○       | ○             | ○       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ○            |
| MUSIC Player          | ○※19       | ○※19             | ○※19      | ○※20 | ○            | ×       | ○             | ○※21    | ○※13       | ×          | ○※14          | ○※15       | ×            |
| Phonebook             | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ○            | ○       | ○             | ○       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ○            |
| Stationery            | ○          | ○                | ○         | ○    | ○            | ○       | ○             | ○       | ×          | ×          | ×             | ×          | ○            |

○: Can be activated simultaneously.      ×: Cannot be activated simultaneously.

※1: You cannot use it depending on the function.

※2: You cannot use Multitask to start up "Receive Ir data" and "SD-PIM".

※3: You cannot start up "UIM operation".

※4: You cannot start up "Caller ID notification" during a call.

※5: LifeKit functions you can start up during a call are limited to Bar Code Reader, ToruCa, Camera (still image shot only), Bluetooth, GPS, Text Reader, Voice Memo (during a call), and Data Security Service.

※6: Stationery functions you can start up during a call are limited to "Schedule", "ToDo", "Free memo", "Calculator", and "使いかたナビ (Guide)".

※7: During a call, you can receive a GPS location provision request. When the service setting by service is set to other than "Reject", you can provide your location information.

※8: While a PDF file is displayed, the i-mode group and Tool group are in use.

※9: You cannot simultaneously start an i-oppli program with MUSIC Player, MUSIC, IC Card Content, or IC Card Lock Menu.

※10: If you use Multitask to switch functions while you are using the Picture viewer (microSD memory card), i-motion player, Chara-den player, or Melody player, or while playing back a demo from MUSIC in Data Box, playback or displaying ends. You cannot switch functions while you are editing an i-motion movie.

※11: You can receive a GPS location provision request. When each service setting is set to other than "拒否 (Reject)", you can provide your location information.

※12: Play Background is not available with the Melody player or i-motion player.

※13: You cannot simultaneously start, MUSIC Player and MUSIC.

※14: You can simultaneously start it with Bar Code Reader, Text Reader, Camera, ToruCa, or GPS.

※15: You can simultaneously start MUSIC Player with Phonebook functions other than PushTalk Phonebook and UIM Operation.

※16: You can simultaneously start MUSIC Player with Stationery functions other than 使いかたナビ (Guide).

※17: Playback/Recording stops when a call comes in while you are playing back "Record message", "Videophone record message", "Voice memo", or "Movie memo", or while recording "Voice memo". When a call comes in while you are reading data using Bar Code Reader or Text Reader, the reading data is discarded.

※18: If you set "Receiving display" to "Alarm preferred" and a mail message comes in while you are scanning data using Bar Code Reader or Text Reader, the data being scanned is discarded.

※19: Play Background is not available.

※20: If you set "Receiving display" to "Alarm preferred" and a mail message comes in, the playback is suspended.

※21: You cannot use "2in1 setting" and "Chaku-moji" while using MUSIC Player.



## Services Available with FOMA Phones

| Available services  | Phone number                        |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Directory assistance service (Charges apply: guidance fee + call fee)<br>※Listed phone numbers only can be given. | (No prefix) 104                     |
| Telegrams (Telegram charges apply)  | (No prefix) 115                     |
| Time check (Charges apply)  | (No prefix) 117                     |
| Weather forecast (Charges apply)  | City code of the desired area + 177 |
| Emergency calls to police   | (No prefix) 110                     |
| Emergency calls to fire station and ambulance   | (No prefix) 119                     |
| Emergency calls for accidents at sea  | (No prefix) 118                     |
| Disaster messaging service (Charges apply)  | (No prefix) 171                     |
| Collect calls (Charges apply: guidance fee + call fee)  | (No prefix) 106                     |

### Information

- When using the collect call (106), the recipient is charged a call fee and handling fee ¥90 (¥94.5 with tax) for each call. (As of May 2007)
- When using the directory assistance service (104), you are charged a guidance fee ¥100 (¥105 with tax) plus a call fee. For whom having weak eyesight or handicapped arms, the guidance is available charge free. For more details, dial 116 (NTT inquiry counter) from landline phones. (As of May 2007)
- Your FOMA phone supports “Emergency Location Report”.  
When you make an emergency call such as 110, 118, or 119, information about from where you are dialing (location information) is automatically notified to emergency-response agencies such as police stations. It might happen that your correct location is not detected by emergency-response agencies depending on the location you dialed or radio wave conditions.  
When your location information is notified, the name of emergency-response agency is displayed on the Stand-by display. When you do not notify your phone number by call such as by adding “184”, your location information and phone number are not notified. However, when an emergency-response agency has judged that the location information and phone number should be detected because of emergency priority such as protection of human life, they might be notified.  
To which regions and when “Emergency Location Report” is introduced differs depending on the preparation of respective emergency-response agencies.
- When you dial 110/119/118 from the FOMA phone, tell an operator that you are calling from a mobile phone and then notify your phone number and a correct description of your current location. Further, remain still while talking to prevent your call from being disconnected. Do not turn off the power immediately after the call, but instead make sure that your phone can receive calls for at least 10 minutes.
- You might not be connected to regional police/fire station depending on the area from where you call. If this happens, use public phones or landline phones.
- If you use “Call Forwarding Service” for the landline phone and specify a mobile phone as the forwarding destination, callers may hear ringing tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of the service area, or the power is turned off depending on the settings of the landline phone/mobile phone.
- Note that the FOMA phone is not available to 116 (NTT inquiry counter), Dial Q2, Message Dial, and credit call services. (You can use auto credit call to the FOMA phone from landline phones or public phones)

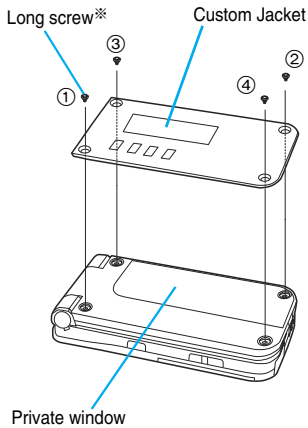
# Jacket Style and Non-Jacket Style

## Jacket Style

You can attach the provided Custom Jacket or optional Custom Jacket P07. (Design of the provided Custom Jacket differs by the body color.)

For details, refer to the instruction manual for the Custom Jacket P07.

- When replacing the Custom Jacket, make sure that you turn off the power.



### ■Removing

#### 1 Unscrew the four screws of the FOMA phone.

- When the Custom Jacket is attached to the FOMA phone, remove the Custom Jacket.
- Store the removed screws in an appropriate place.

### ■Attaching

#### 1 Attach the new Custom Jacket securely in place using the dedicated four screws provided with the Custom Jacket.

Attach it carefully so that no screws are loosened.

Be careful not to damage the FOMA phone's body. Also make sure no foreign object is caught between the Custom Jacket and the FOMA phone.

- Fit securely the screw holes on the Custom Jacket with those of the FOMA phone, and then tighten screws ① to ④ in that order.

※Use the short screws for Non-Jacket Style.

## Non-Jacket Style

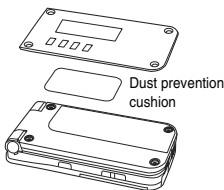
You can use the FOMA phone also in Non-Jacket Style with the Custom Jacket removed.

To use the FOMA phone in Non-Jacket Style, attach the four screws provided for Non-Jacket Style to the FOMA phone.

- When removing the Custom Jacket, make sure that you turn off the power.

### ■How to use dust prevention cushion

Custom Jacket



- When you care about dust on the Private window, paste the provided dust prevention cushion alongside the outline of the Private window under the Custom Jacket.
- When the dust prevention cushion gets dirty, lightly wash with water and completely dry it before using.
- When you do not use the dust prevention cushion, store in a place where it is free from dust.

### Information

- Use the exclusive driver provided to remove or attach the Custom Jacket.
- Make sure that you do not handle the Custom Jacket forcibly. Otherwise, it may be damaged.
- If dust enters into between the FOMA phone and Custom Jacket, remove the Custom Jacket and wipe the dust off using a soft cloth.
- Note that some shops do not deal in Custom Jacket P07.

## Introduction of Options and Related Equipment

Combining various options with the FOMA phone, you can realize more versatile use from personal purpose to business purposes. Some products may not be dealt in depending on the area. Consult a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop for details. For details on options, refer to the user's manuals of respective options and related equipment.

- Battery Pack P12
- Back Cover P18
- Flat-plug Connector/Stereo Mini-jack Conversion Adapter P01
- ANSHIN-KEY P01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use<sup>※1</sup>
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder P20
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable
- Custom Jacket P07
- Wireless Earphone Set P01
- Bluetooth Headset F01<sup>※2</sup>
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/P002<sup>※3</sup>
- Stereo Earphone Set P001<sup>※3</sup>
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- Flat-plug AV Output Cable P01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01<sup>※4</sup>
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
- AC Adapter for Bluetooth Headset F01

※1 To use this overseas, you need to have a conversion plug adapter that matches the specifications of the country you stay.

※2 AC Adapter for Bluetooth Headset F01 is required.

※3 Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.

※4 To use/charge the FOMA phone via USB connection, FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required.

## Introduction of Software for Playing Back Moving Images

To play back moving images (MP4 format file) using your personal computer, you need to have QuickTimePlayer (free) ver. 6.4 or higher (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) of Apple Computer Inc.

You can download QuickTime from the following web page:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

### Information

- For download, a personal computer connected to the Internet is required. You are charged a communication fee to download.
- For details such as operating environments, how to download, and how to operate, refer to the web page above.

## Links with AV Equipment

On the FOMA phone, you may be able to play back some moving images in ASF format, which are saved from another AV equipment to the microSD memory card. Also, you may be able to play back some moving images recorded with the FOMA phone on another AV equipment. For information about links with compatible AV equipment, refer to the following:

<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/>

## Inquiry Center for Links with Compatible AV Equipment

### Panasonic Mobile Communications Customer Service Center

From landline phones: ☎ 0120-15-8729

Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.

From mobile phones or PHS: 045-938-4023

(Excluding Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, and specified holidays)

- Make sure that you dial the correct number.


# Troubleshooting

● First of all, check to see if you need to update the software program and then update it if required. See page 505 for how to update software programs.

| Problem  | Check point   | Reference                        |
|--|---|----------------------------------|
| The FOMA phone does not turn on. (Cannot use)  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the battery is attached to the FOMA phone correctly.</li> <li>● Make sure the battery is fully charged.</li> <li>● If the mova is usable in Dual Network Service, the FOMA phone service is not available. Is the FOMA phone usable? For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".</li> </ul>  | P.41<br>P.42<br>P.432            |
| Cannot dial by pressing numeric keys.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure Keypad Dial Lock is deactivated.</li> <li>● Make sure Restrict Dialing is deactivated.</li> <li>● Make sure Lock All is deactivated.</li> <li>● Make sure Self Mode is deactivated.</li> </ul>   | P.171<br>P.174<br>P.160<br>P.161 |
| Dial but cannot connect; a busy tone sounds.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the phone number contains a city code.</li> <li>● Enter the phone number after you hear the dial tone.</li> <li>● If "☎" appears, move to a place where it disappears.</li> </ul>  | P.52<br>P.45                     |
| "☎" appears and a busy tone sounds.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You may be out of the service area or weak radio waves are being received.</li> </ul>  | P.45                             |
| "☎" and "Lock all" are displayed and pressing keys are null.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● This may be because Lock All is activated.</li> </ul>  | P.160                            |
| Pressing the side keys does not work when the FOMA phone is closed.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● This may be because "Side keys guard" is set to "ON".</li> </ul>   | P.171                            |
| Alert beeps.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The battery runs short. You need to charge.</li> </ul>   | P.42                             |
| Cannot charge. (The Call/Charging indicator does not light, or it flickers.)                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the battery is attached to the FOMA phone correctly.</li> <li>● Make sure the power plug of the adapter is securely inserted into outlet.</li> <li>● Make sure the adapter and the FOMA phone is firmly connected. For AC adapter (option), make sure its connector is firmly connected to the FOMA phone or a desktop holder (option).</li> </ul>   | P.41<br>P.43                     |
| The display grows dark, showing nothing.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure "Power saver mode" is deactivated.</li> </ul>  | P.139                            |
| Different ring tones sound for incoming mail.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● This may be the mail from a party whose mail ring tone is set by the setting items in the Phonebook.</li> <li>● This may be the mail from a party stored in a group set with a mail ring tone by Group Setting.</li> </ul>   | P.112<br>P.115                   |
| When a call or mail message comes in, the Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers differently.                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● This may be the call or mail message from a party for whom you have set "Illumination/Mail illumination" by setting items in the Phonebook.</li> <li>● This may be the call or mail message from a party stored in a group set with "Illumination/Mail illumination" by Group Setting.</li> </ul>  | P.112<br>P.115                   |
| Images or melodies selected in the functions are not played back; they are played back at the default setting. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the UIM that was inserted when you downloaded images or melodies is inserted.</li> </ul>   | P.39                             |
| Cannot count total calls cost.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure that total calls cost accumulated on the UIM does not exceed the limit (about ¥16,770,000). Perform Reset Total Cost to return to ¥0.</li> </ul>   | P.402                            |
| Cannot store the ANSHIN-KEY.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the power of the ANSHIN-KEY is turned on.</li> <li>● Make sure the ID number of the ANSHIN-KEY is entered correctly.</li> </ul>  | P.163<br>P.165                   |
| Cannot activate ANSHIN-KEY Lock.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the power of the ANSHIN-KEY is turned on.</li> <li>● Make sure Self Mode is deactivated.</li> <li>● Does the distance from the ANSHIN-KEY to your FOMA phone exceed the active area?<br/>The distance within which the lock is activated varies depending on the environment, so change the setting of "ANSHIN-KEY area set."</li> </ul>   | P.163<br>P.161<br>P.166          |
| Cannot deactivate ANSHIN-KEY Lock.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the battery of the ANSHIN-KEY is not flat.</li> <li>● Make sure Self Mode or Omakase Lock is deactivated.</li> <li>● Make sure metals or contactless IC cards are not near the ANSHIN-KEY.</li> <li>● Make sure the state of ANSHIN-KEY Lock has not continued for a long time.<br/>The ANSHIN-KEY has automatically turned off. Turn on the power of the ANSHIN-KEY, and then open the FOMA phone again.</li> </ul> | P.163<br>P.161                   |

# Error Messages


- “(numerals)” in error messages are the code sent from the i-mode Center for discriminating the error.

| Message  | Description  | Reference           |
|--|--|---------------------|
| <b>Abnormal end</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not scan.  | –                   |
| <b>“Accept dialup networking devices” failed</b>                         | An error occurred, so you could not execute “Accept dialup devices”.   | –                   |
| <b>Accept registered failed</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not execute Accept Registered for the registered devices.  | –                   |
| <b>“Accept serial port devices” failed</b>                               | An error occurred during the standby for registering the serial port, so the serial port was not placed on standby for registration.   | –                   |
| <b>Activating</b>  | Receive Option Setting is set to “OFF”. Switch the setting to “ON” and try again.  | P.245               |
| <b>Activating camera failed</b>  | An error occurred, so the camera could not start up.   | –                   |
| <b>Activating keypad dial lock</b>                                       | Keypad Dial Lock is activated. Release Keypad Dial Lock and try again.   | P.171               |
| <b>Activating mail security Cannot download</b>                          | Mail Security is activated, so you cannot download. Deactivate Mail Security and try again.  | P.173, P.254        |
| <b>Activating personal data lock</b>                                     | Personal Data Lock is set. Release Personal Data Lock and try again.   | P.162               |
| <b>Activating personal data lock Send pre-installed substitute image</b> | During Personal Data Lock, a “Pre-installed” substitute image is sent.   | –                   |
| <b>Activating record display OFF</b>                                     | Record Display Set is set to “OFF”. Switch the setting to “ON” and try again.  | P.172               |
| <b>Activating reject unknown</b>   | “Reject unknown” is set to “Reject”. Set to “Accept” and try again.  | P.176               |
| <b>Activating ring time</b>  | “Ring time” is set to “ON”. Set to “OFF” and try again.  | P.176               |
| <b>Additional number1 denied</b>   | You have not contracted for any additional numbers, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.  | Back page           |
| <b>Additional number2 denied</b>   |  |                     |
| <b>Address is not valid (451)</b>  | You could not send the mail correctly. Check the address and try again.  | P.232, P.268, P.270 |
| <b>All protected Cannot delete</b>                                       | All data items are protected, so cannot be deleted. Release the protection and try again.  | P.211, P.220 P.256  |
| <b>Another function is active Cannot operate</b>                         | The function is not available simultaneously in Multitask. End the functions not in use and try again.   | P.387               |
| <b>ANSHIN-KEY lock Unable to set</b>                                     | The ANSHIN-KEY is not registered, so “Auto lock” cannot be set to “ANSHIN-KEY lock”. Register the ANSHIN-KEY, and then operate.  | P.165               |
| <b>Authentication failed</b>   | An authentication error occurred.  | –                   |
| <b>Authentication type is not supported (401)</b>                        | Incompatible authentication type, so cannot be connected.  | –                   |
| <b>Auto time adjust info is not received Unable to play</b>              | You have not received the auto time adjust information, so could not play back the i-motion movie or Chaku-uta Full® music file with restrictions on the playable period or playable deadline.   | –                   |
| <b>Bar code reader Cannot operate</b>                                    | An error occurred, so you could not start up Bar Code Reader.  | –                   |
| <b>Call forwarding denied</b>  | You have not subscribed to Call Forwarding Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.  | Back page           |
| <b>Call waiting denied</b>   | You have not subscribed to Call Waiting Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.   | Back page           |
| <b>Canceling accept registered failed</b>                                | An error occurred, so you could not release Accept Registered for the registered devices.  | –                   |
| <b>Cannot compose because too large data</b>                             | The size of the recorded moving image is too large to attach to i-mode mail. Use “Trim  motion” or “Trim for mail” to trim the moving image, then compose mail. | P.338               |
|  | The size of the shot image is too large to attach to i-mode mail.  | –                   |
| <b>Cannot delete</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not delete.  | –                   |
| <b>Cannot delete Unsupported file exists</b>                             | Incompatible data is contained, so you cannot delete.  | –                   |
| <b>Cannot dial</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not dial.  | –                   |
| <b>Cannot display</b>  | Corresponding software program is running. End the software program and try again.   | P.277               |
| <b>Cannot edit message</b>   | The attached file reaches 10,000 bytes, so you cannot enter the text.  | –                   |
| <b>Cannot execute because of other tasks</b>                             | The function is not available simultaneously in Multitask. End the functions not in use and try again.   | P.387               |
| <b>Cannot filter or search mail</b>                                      | Filtering is already done the maximum number of times, so no more filtering can be done.   | –                   |
| <b>Cannot operate</b>  | An error occurred when you tried to set the Chaku-uta Full® music file for a ring tone by “Point ring tone”, so could not set it.  | –                   |

| Message  | Description   | Reference                 |
|--|---|---------------------------|
| Cannot play audio data                           | Not supported data, so the sound cannot be played back.   | –                         |
| Cannot play audio/text data                      | Not supported data, so the sound or ticker cannot be played back.   | –                         |
| Cannot play picture data                         | Not supported data, so the image cannot be played back.   | –                         |
| Cannot play text data                            | Not supported data, so the ticker cannot be played back.  | –                         |
| Cannot play video/audio data                     | Not supported data, so the video image or sound cannot be played back.  | –                         |
| Cannot play video data                           | Not supported data, so the video image cannot be played back.   | –                         |
| Cannot play video/text data                      | Not supported data, so the video image or ticker cannot be played back.   | –                         |
| Cannot recognize                                 | The text could not be scanned. Change Recognition Mode or NEGA/POSI Mode, and scan the text again.  | P.200                     |
| Cannot record                                    | An error occurred, so you could not save.   | –                         |
| Cannot resend<br>Send after edit                 | The address is invalid or the text exceeds the size that can be entered, so you cannot re-send. Edit the text again and send.   | P.255                     |
| Cannot save                                      | The data could not be obtained from a site, so could not be saved.<br>You could not save the mail as a template.  | –                         |
| Cannot save attached file                        | Full of images, so data other than the image was stored.<br>The Phonebook is full of images, so data other than the image was stored.   | –                         |
| Cannot save some attached files                  | Full of images, so part of the images could not be stored into the Phonebook.   | –                         |
| Cannot select link<br>Zoom in                    | The characters on the displayed PDF file are too small, so you cannot select the link. Zoom in and try again.   | P.364                     |
| Cannot set holiday and anniversary               | The received holiday/anniversary and already stored data are set to the same date, so you cannot store it.  | –                         |
| Cannot set this anniversary                      | The received anniversary and already stored data are set to the same date, so you cannot store it.  | –                         |
| Cannot set this holiday                          | The received holiday and already stored data are set to the same date, so you cannot store it.  | –                         |
| Cannot set this schedule                         | The received schedule event and already stored data are set to the same date and time, so you cannot store it.  | –                         |
| Cannot set this word                             | Characters that cannot be stored are used, so cannot be stored in Own Dictionary.   | –                         |
| Cannot start any more functions                  | The maximum number of functions is already running using Multitask.<br>End the functions not in use and try again.  | P.387                     |
| Cannot start because use mail folder             | Corresponding software program is running. End the software program and try again.  | P.277                     |
| Cannot use network transmission                  | “Network set” is set to “OFF”. Set it to “ON” and try again.  | P.278                     |
| Certificate is rejected                          | You received an altered TLS/SSL certificate, so could not connect.  | –                         |
| Certificate is rejected (tampered)               |   | –                         |
| Check failed<br>Messages are left in server      | The maximum number of received mail messages has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive some of the messages. Delete unnecessary messages, read unread messages, or release protection, and try again.<br>The specified time for receiving SMS messages had elapsed, so SMS messages could not be received.  | P.248, P.256<br>–         |
| Check new message is set all OFF                 | No check marks are placed to the items for “Set check new message”. Put a check mark for items to be checked and try again.   | P.246                     |
| Check SMS center selection                       | The SMS Center is not correctly specified by SMS Center Selection. Specify the SMS Center and try again.  | P.272                     |
| Connection failed                                | An error occurred, so the Bluetooth device could not be connected.<br>Failed to connect to the Bluetooth device while switching the voice to it during the call.<br>Radio waves are weak, so you cannot connect. Move to a place where radio waves are strong enough and try again.<br>The destination address set by Host Selection is wrong, so you cannot connect to it. Check the setting and try again.<br>You could not connect because of network trouble. Wait a while and try again. | –<br>–<br>–<br>P.218<br>– |
| Connection failed (403)                          | You cannot connect to a site or Internet web page.  | –                         |
| Connection failed (503)                          | You could not connect because of network trouble. Wait a while and try again.   | –                         |
| Connection failed (562)                          |   | –                         |
| Connection failed<br>Check the other side device | The Bluetooth device is not compatible with the service supported by the FOMA phone, so could not be registered.<br>The service you tried to connect to is invalid for the other end’s Bluetooth device, so you could not connect to it.  | –<br>–                    |

| Message   | Description   | Reference    |
|---|---|--------------|
| <b>Connection interrupted</b>   | Disconnected from the personal computer during data communication.  | –            |
| <b>Connection is not valid</b>  | The destination address set by Host Selection is not compatible, so you cannot operate. Check the setting and try again.  | P.218        |
|   | The user certificate is being operated, so you cannot connect. Complete operating the user certificate and try again.   | –            |
| <b>Connection suspended</b>   | An error occurred, so the connection was suspended.   | –            |
| <b>Could not add</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not store.  | –            |
| <b>Could not be found</b>   | No response from the Bluetooth device, so you could not store or connect it.  | –            |
| <b>Could not change</b>   | An error occurred, so the order of music files could not be changed.  | –            |
| <b>Could not delete</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not delete.   | –            |
| <b>Could not find your blinks</b>   | Failed to detect your blinks. Change the direction of your face or the place, and then try again.   | P.170        |
| <b>Could not match</b>  | You could not concatenate the scanned data. The scanned data up to now is discarded.  | –            |
| <b>Could not scan</b>   | Failed to read.   | –            |
| <b>Data error</b>   | An error occurred, so you cannot obtain the data.   | –            |
| <b>Unable to download</b>   |   | –            |
| <b>Data in IC card is full<br/>Unable to download<br/>Delete service?</b> | This is displayed when the memory space within the IC card is short for downloading the i-oppli program that supports Osaifu-Keitai. Select "YES" to display the service names of Osaifu-Keitai already registered and the space within the IC card (in bytes). Check the area size for shortage, select the service to delete, start up the i-oppli program, and then delete it. | –            |
| <b>Data is full</b>   | The maximum number of anniversaries is stored. Delete unnecessary ones and try again.   | P.395, P.397 |
|   | The maximum number of holidays/anniversaries is stored. Delete unnecessary ones and try again.  |              |
|   | The maximum number of holidays is stored. Delete unnecessary ones and try again.  | P.324        |
|   | The maximum number of images is stored, so you cannot store any more. Delete unnecessary images.  |              |
|   | The maximum number of Phonebook entries has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive a new one. Delete unnecessary Phonebook entries and try again.  | P.119        |
|   | The maximum number of schedule events has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive a new one. Delete unnecessary schedule events and try again.  | P.395, P.397 |
|   | The maximum number of ToDo items has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive a new one. Delete unnecessary ToDo items and try again.  | P.398        |
|   | The maximum number of ToruCa files has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive a new one. Delete unnecessary ToruCa files and try again.  | P.298        |
| <b>Data is too long<br/>A part is deleted</b>                             | Characters for one (or plural) of address, subject, and text of the mail exceeded the maximum, so part of them was deleted.   | –            |
| <b>Data not applicable</b>  | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded.  | –            |
| <b>Data size is too big to save</b>                                       | The file exceeded the maximum storable size by setting "File restriction", so could not be set.   | –            |
| <b>Details can not be saved</b>   | The ToruCa detailed data was not supported, so was not saved.   | –            |
| <b>Device list is full<br/>No device to overwrite</b>                     | The maximum number of Bluetooth devices is stored, so you cannot store any more. Delete unnecessary Bluetooth devices.  | P.410        |
| <b>Don't accept</b>   | "Use phone information" has been set to "NO", so the information from the FOMA phone was not sent.  | P.217        |
| <b>Download linked page</b>   | The PDF file has a link but the linked end has not been downloaded, so the linked page could not be displayed.  | –            |
| <b>Downloading interrupted</b>  | An error occurred, so downloading was suspended.  | –            |
|   | Another function was running or an error occurred, so you could not download.   | –            |
| <b>Dual network service denied</b>  | You have not subscribed to Dual Network Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.  | Back page    |
| <b>Editing now<br/>Cannot delete</b>                                      | Being used for another function, so you cannot delete. End the function and try again.  | P.387        |
| <b>Encryption failed</b>  | An error occurred during encryption, so you could not store or connect the Bluetooth device.  | –            |
| <b>Enter zoom size</b>  | No magnification is entered. Enter the magnification and try again.   | P.364        |
| <b>Enter "+" in right position</b>  | "+" is wrongly positioned. Enter it to the beginning of the phone number.   | P.56         |
| <b>Error</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not operate.  | –            |



| Message   | Description  | Reference |
|---|--|-----------|
| <b>Error in IC card data</b>  | The data within the IC card had an error, so you could not operate.  | –         |
| <b>Error in IC card data<br/>Unable to delete software</b>  | The data within the IC card had an error, so you could not delete.   | –         |
| <b>Error in image<br/>Does not work correctly</b>   | The Flash movie had an error, so you could not play it back normally.  | –         |
| <b>Error in ToruCa data<br/>Unable to download</b>  | The ToruCa file is invalid, so could not be obtained.  | –         |
| <b>Exchanging now<br/>Cannot operate</b>  | You cannot switch during 64K data communication. End the 64K data communication and try again.   | –         |
|   | You could not set during data communication. End the data communication and try again.   | –         |
|   | You could not start up during data communication. End the data communication and try again.  | –         |
| <b>External option is connecting<br/>Cannot operate</b>   | An external device has been connected, so you could not start up. Disconnect the external device and try again.  | –         |
| <b>Failed</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not operate.   | –         |
|   | Face Reader authentication or storage failed.  | –         |
| <b>Failed in  transmission</b> | An error occurred, so you could not perform iC transmission.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to add folder</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not add the folder.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to authenticate</b>   | An authentication error occurred.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to copy</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not copy.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to copy all to microSD</b>  | An error occurred, so you could copy none of the data to the microSD memory card.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to copy all to phone</b>  | An error occurred, so you could copy none of the data to the FOMA phone.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to copy one to microSD</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not copy to the microSD memory card.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to copy one to phone</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not copy a single data item to the FOMA phone.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to copy to microSD</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not copy to the microSD memory card.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to create playlist</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not create the playlist.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to delete</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not delete.  | –         |
|   | An error occurred, so you could not release the music files.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to delete folder</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not delete the folder.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to dial</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not dial.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to edit</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not edit.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to edit folder name</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not edit the folder name.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to edit playlist name</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not edit the playlist name.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to move</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not move it.   | –         |
|   | An error occurred, so you could not move the folder.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to read</b>   | An error occurred while reading information from the microSD memory card.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to read<br/>Quitting</b>  | An error occurred when playing back the moving image.  | –         |
|   | The file cannot be read because you tried to play back the file in the "Movable contents" folder with a UIM that was not inserted when that file was saved. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the file was saved, and try again. | P.38      |
|   | The microSD memory card was removed while reading the information from it. Insert the microSD memory card and try again.   | P.348     |
| <b>Failed to receive channel info</b>   | Failed to obtain the i-Channel information because part or all of it could not be obtained.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to remove</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not delete.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to reset</b>  | An error occurred, so you failed to reset the face data.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to save</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not copy the ToruCa file.  | –         |
|   | An error occurred, so you could not save.  | –         |
|   | An error occurred, so you could not store.   | –         |
|   | You could not save the shot image.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to scan</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not scan.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to send Ir data</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not send the data using infrared rays.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to set</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not set.   | –         |
| <b>Failed to set stand-by display</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not paste to the desktop.  | –         |
| <b>Failed to store</b>  | An error occurred, so you could not store.   | –         |

| Message   | Description  | Reference |
|---|--|-----------|
| Failed to store in PushTalk phonebook   | Could not be stored because the phone number was the number that could not be stored in the PushTalk Phonebook.  | –         |
| Failed to turn off  | An error occurred, so you could not turn off the Bluetooth device.   | –         |
| Format error<br>Insert microSD formatted                                      | The format of microSD memory card is incompatible with FOMA P904i. Use FOMA P904i to format it.  | P.353     |
| i-oppli stand-by display terminated due to security error                     | i-oppli DX has forcibly been ended.  | P.277     |
| “i-oppli To” function is not set  | A check mark is not put for “Set i-oppli To”, so you cannot start up i-oppli. Put the check mark and try again.  | P.278     |
| IC card function inactive<br>Unable to download                               | IC card has been locked, so you could not download or upgrade. Release IC Card Lock and try again.   | P.300     |
| Image display is OFF<br>Cannot receive  | “Set image display” is set to “OFF”, so you cannot obtain the image. Set to “ON” and try again.  | P.216     |
| Image in message will be deleted  | The output-prohibited image from the FOMA phone is attached to the mail text, so deleted.  | –         |
| i-mode Center is busy<br>Please try again later (555)                         | The line facility has trouble or the line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.  | –         |
| i-mode group function ON<br>Cannot operate                                    | The function of i-mode Group is running, so you could not start up. End the function of i-mode Group and try again.  | P.387     |
| i-mode mail service is busy<br>Please try again later (553)                   | The line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.   | –         |
| Incomplete data<br>Unable to start  | The i-oppli program you tried to start up does not start because partial data only is saved. Download the whole i-oppli program and try again.                         | P.275     |
| Input error (205)   | The entered contents are wrong. Check the contents and try again.  | –         |
| Invalid<br>Cannot resend  | The address is invalid or the text exceeds the size that can be entered, so you cannot re-send.  | –         |
| Invalid code  | The entered USSD is incorrect. Enter the correct one.  | P.440     |
| Invalid content<br>Download failed  | The data is invalid, so cannot be downloaded.  | –         |
| Invalid data  | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded.<br>The data contains invalid parts.                                       | –         |
| Invalid data (xxx)  | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded. A three-digit numeral is displayed for (xxx).                             | –         |
| Invalid data<br>Connection cannot be established (400)                        | The access point had an error, so you could not connect to it normally.  | –         |
| Invalid data<br>Data size is not supported (xxx)                              | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded. A three-digit numeral is displayed for (xxx).                             | –         |
| Invalid file (493)  | The obtained file is damaged, so cannot be operated.   | –         |
| Invalid func in this UIM  | The function cannot be operated from the inserted UIM.   | –         |
| Invalid ID  | The entered ID is wrong. Enter the correct ID.   | P.307     |
| Invalid UIM auto start not display<br>Invalid UIM<br>i-oppli is unable to run | You cannot start up the i-oppli program because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM which had been inserted when the i-oppli program was downloaded and try again. | P.39      |
| Invalid UIM<br>Incorrect display  | The screen memo cannot be correctly displayed because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM that had been inserted when the screen memo was saved, and try again.    | –         |
| Invalid UIM<br>Requested service not available                                | You cannot operate because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM which had been inserted when the data or file was obtained and try again.                           | P.39      |
| Invalid UIM requested service not available                                   |  |           |
| Invalid UIM<br>Requested software failed to start                             | You cannot start up the i-oppli program because of the UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM which had been inserted when the data or file was obtained and try again.      | P.39      |
| Invalid UIM requested software failed to start                                |  |           |


| Message   | Description  | Reference |
|---|--|-----------|
| Invalid UIM<br>Unable to download   | You cannot move, start up, delete, download or upgrade because a UIM different from the one set for the IC card is inserted.   |           |
| Invalid UIM<br>Unable to move   | Insert the UIM set for the IC card, and try again.   | P.39      |
| Invalid UIM<br>Unable to start  |  |           |
| Invalid UIM<br>Unable to upgrade  |  |           |
| Location provision failed   | An error occurred because the FOMA phone is out of the service area or by other reasons, so it failed to measure the current location or to provide the location information. Move to a place where radio waves are strong enough and try again. | -         |
| 以下の宛先にはメール送信できません<br>でした (561)<br>Mails could not be sent to following<br>address. (561)<br>●●@△△△.ne.jp※ | You could not send the mail message correctly to the displayed address.<br>※The mail address differs depending on the destination.   | -         |
| Max cost icon is not displayed  | The Max Cost icon is not displayed, so cannot be deleted.  | -         |
| Memory full   | There is no usable memory space, so you cannot operate.  | -         |
| Memory function active<br>Cannot operate  | The microSD memory card is in use, so you cannot set.  | -         |
| Memory No. : xxx<br>Cannot overwrite  | You cannot store in the same memory number with the Phonebook entry stored as secret data or set for "Automatic display". Store in a different memory number.<br>A three-digit numeral is displayed for (xxx).                                   | P.112     |
| Memory shortage   | The memory space is not enough, so processing is suspended.  |           |
| Memory shortage<br>Cancel update  |  |           |
| Memory shortage<br>Failed to create font effect   |  | -         |
| Memory shortage<br>Return to Full Browser menu  |  |           |
| Memory shortage<br>Return to i-mode menu  |  |           |
| Memory shortage<br>Return to ToruCa list  |  |           |
| Missed call notification denied   | You have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.   | Back page |
| Multi number denied   | You have not subscribed to Multi Number, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.   | Back page |
| No data in phonebook<br>Cannot operate  | The phone number and mail address of the other party are not stored in the Phonebook. Store them and try again.  | P.110     |
| No images   | No images are stored in the Chaku-uta Full® music file, so you cannot display.   | -         |
| No i-mode bookmark  | No i-mode bookmarks are set.   | -         |
| No picture  | No frames to fit the size are found.   | -         |
| No requested file (492)   | There is no selected file in the FOMA phone.   | -         |
| No response   | No Bluetooth devices were found around the FOMA phone.<br>Sending end was not found while using iC communication.  | -         |
| No response (408)   | No response from the site or Internet web page, so you could not connect to it. Try again.   | -         |
| No SD-PIM   | The microSD memory card does not contain Phonebook entries or schedule events.   | -         |
| No set melody   | This is displayed when you try to play back melodies with the playlist unprogrammed. Program the melodies and then play them back.   | P.345     |
| No SMS report<br>Cannot delete  | There are no SMS reports, so you could not delete.   | -         |
| No ToruCa   | No saved ToruCa files are found.   | -         |
| Not notify phone No.<br>Cannot operate  | You could not start up because the other party's phone number was not notified.  | -         |
| Not registered  | An error occurred, so you could not store.   | -         |
| Not secret data<br>Cannot call  | You have switched to Secret Data Only, so you cannot access.<br>Release Secret Data Only and try again.  | P.172     |

| Message  | Description  | Reference           |
|--|--|---------------------|
| <b>Notification failed</b>                                 | You failed to notify the current location because you moved out the service area during the notification or by other reasons. Move to a place where the radio waves are strong enough and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Nuisance call blocking service denied</b>               | You have not subscribed to Nuisance Call Blocking Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.   | Back page           |
| <b>Operation canceled</b>                                  | A mail message or Message R/F was received while the selected Messages R/F were deleted, so operation was suspended.   | –                   |
| <b>Operation failed</b>                                    | An error occurred, so you could not operate.<br>An error occurred, so you could not set.   | –<br>–              |
| <b>Operation may not be performed</b>                      | The microSD memory card is removed while it is in progress or an error occurred, so it might be possible that no operation is done. Check "Movie" folder for the data.   | P.333               |
| <b>Other function active on IC card Unable to delete</b>   | The IC card function is running, so you cannot delete. Finish operating IC card function and try again.  | –                   |
| <b>Other function active on IC card Unable to download</b> | The IC card function is running, so you could not download or upgrade. Finish operating IC card function and try again.  | –                   |
| <b>Other function is running Unable to receiving</b>       | Another function is running, so you cannot obtain. Finish the function and try again.  | P.387               |
| <b>Out of service</b>                                      | Radio waves are not received. Move to a place where the radio waves are strong enough and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Page is not found (404)</b>                             | The site or Internet web page does not exist, or URL is wrong. Check the URL and try again.  | P.209               |
| <b>Pattern definitions are up-to-date</b>                  | The latest pattern data, so no update is required.   | –                   |
| <b>PIN1 code blocked</b>                                   | Three times erroneous entry of the PIN1 code blocks the code. Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code).  | P.159               |
| <b>PIN1 code blocked Enter PUK</b>                         |  |                     |
| <b>PIN1 code not recognized</b>                            |  |                     |
| <b>Please activate "To type" receiver</b>                  | No address is in the "To" field. Fill in the "To" field and try again.   | P.232, P.234        |
| <b>Please wait</b>   | The audio line/packet communication facility has trouble or the audio line network/packet communication network is very congested. Wait a while and try again. 110, 119, and 118 can be called. However, calls might not be connected by the situation.  | –                   |
| <b>Please wait for a while (packet)</b>                    | The packet communication facility has trouble or the packet communication network is very congested. Wait a while and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Positioning failed</b>                                  | An error occurred because the FOMA phone is out of the service area or by other reasons, so it failed to measure the current location or to provide the location information. Move to a place where radio waves are strong enough and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Pred. conv. at reply failed</b>                         | An error occurred, so Prediction Conversion at Reply failed. Wait a while and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Protected all Cannot delete</b>                         | All data items are protected, so cannot be deleted. Release the protection and try again.  | P.211, P.220, P.256 |
| <b>Protected Cannot delete</b>                             | Protected data, so could not be deleted. Release protection and try again.   | P.220               |
| <b>Protected is full</b>                                   | The maximum number of data is already protected, so you cannot protect any more. Release the protection for other data and try again.  | P.211, P.220, P.256 |
| <b>PUK blocked</b>   | Ten times erroneous entry of the PUK (PIN unblock code) blocks the code. Contact the handling counter of a DoCoMo shop.  | Back page           |
| <b>PUK code blocked</b>                                    |  |                     |
| <b>PUK code not recognized</b>                             |  |                     |
| <b>Quitting service failed</b>                             | An error occurred, so you could not quit the service.  | –                   |
| <b>Read error</b>  | An error occurred while reading information from the microSD memory card.  | –                   |
| <b>Received invalid data</b>                               | Received data has an error, so it cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded.  | –                   |
| <b>Receiver cannot save data</b>                           | The receiving end blocks data.   | –                   |
| <b>Receiving description failed</b>                        | An error occurred, so you could not obtain the stored Bluetooth device information.  | –                   |
| <b>Receiving failed</b>                                    | The destination address set by Host Selection is wrong, so you cannot select and receive. Check the setting and try again.   | P.218               |
| <b>Receiving failed Messages are left in server</b>        | The maximum number of received mail messages has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive some of the messages. Delete unnecessary messages, read unread messages, or release protection, and try again.<br>The specified time for receiving SMS messages had elapsed, so SMS messages could not be received. | P.248, P.256<br>–   |
| <b>Registration is in progress (554)</b>                   | You cannot operate because the user is being registered. Wait a while and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Remote accessible services denied</b>                   | Not available because you have not subscribed to remote-access services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Subscribe to the service and try again.   | Back page           |

| Message   | Description  | Reference |
|---|--|-----------|
| Replace with a new one or check the disk  | The microSD memory card formatting is abnormal. Execute Check microSD.   | P.354     |
| Replay period has not yet started   | Playable date has not come yet, so you cannot play back the i-motion movie or Chaku-uta Full® music file.  | –         |
| Reply with ref active<br>Cannot use template                                      | "Reply with ref" is active, so you cannot use templates.   | –         |
| Retention period has expired (492)  | You could not download attached files held at the i-mode Center because the save period had been over.   | –         |
| Rewrite failed  | Failed to update the software program. Contact a handling counter such as a DoCoMo shop.   | Back page |
| Root certificate has expired<br>Terminate SSL session                             | Expiration date of SSL certificate has passed, so the connection is suspended.   | –         |
| Root certificate is not valid   | The SSL certificate of that server is set to "Invalid" for "Certificate" setting. Set to "Valid" and try again.  | P.221     |
|   | The TLS/SSL certificate of that server is set to "Invalid" for "Certificate" setting. Set to "Valid" and try again.  | P.221     |
| Run software and delete data on IC card<br>Then delete software                   | Data is left inside the IC card, so you cannot delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ϕpli. Start up the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-ϕpli, delete the stored data, and try again.  | –         |
| Secret data   | You have not switched to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, so cannot access. Switch to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only and try again.   | P.172     |
| Server is busy  | The line facility has trouble or the line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.  | –         |
|   | The line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.   | –         |
| Server is full (551)  | The receiving end can receive no more mail.  | –         |
| Service is used by a previous software<br>Unable to download<br>Delete a service? | When the software program with the service that uses the same IC card has already been downloaded, you cannot download or upgrade a new service unless you delete the existing service that has already been stored. Select "YES" to display the service to be deleted, and then delete that service already stored. | –         |
| Service is used by a previous software<br>Unable to upgrade<br>Delete a service?  |  |           |
| Service unavailable   | An error occurred, so you could not operate.   | –         |
|   | The function cannot be operated with the inserted UIM.   | –         |
| Setting auto assist<br>Cannot delete  | The international call access code or country code set by Auto Assist Setting cannot be deleted. Change/Cancel the setting and try again.  | P.56      |
| Setting auto assist<br>Cannot delete all  |  |           |
| Setting IC card lock  | IC Card Lock is set. Release IC Card Lock and try again.   | P.300     |
| Setting receive option<br>Cannot start  | Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", so you cannot start up. Switch to "OFF" and try again.  | P.245     |
| Setting ticker to ON<br>Cannot operate  | "Ticker ON/OFF" is set to "ON", so you cannot set the i-ϕpli to the Stand-by display. Set to "OFF" and try again.  | P.228     |
| Size of data is not supported   | Data size exceeded the maximum, so you could not download normally.  | –         |
| Size of this page is not supported  | The size of site or Internet web page is large, so obtaining is suspended, and only obtained portion is displayed.   | –         |
| Software downloading now<br>Cannot start  | You could not start up during downloading. After downloading, try again.   | –         |
| Software failed   | Failed to start up i-ϕpli DX.  | –         |
| Software for this folder deleted<br>Refer to Open folder                          | The corresponding mail-linked i-ϕpli has been deleted.   | –         |
| Software for this folder exists<br>Cannot delete                                  | The corresponding mail-linked i-ϕpli is contained, so you cannot delete.   | –         |
| Software is stopped because of an error   | An error occurred while starting up or running i-ϕpli.   | –         |
| Software terminated due to security error   | i-ϕpli DX has forcibly been ended.   | P.277     |
| Software update active<br>Cannot operate  | You could not start up during updating the software program. After the software update is completed, try again.  | –         |
| Software update is aborted<br>Please retry  | The FOMA phone was turned off during updating the software program. Try updating it again.   | P.505     |

| Message   | Description  | Reference           |
|---|--|---------------------|
| <b>Software upgraded</b>  | The target software program is not updated, so you cannot execute.   | –                   |
| <b>Some addresses are not valid</b>   | Some addresses are incorrect. Enter the addresses correctly and send.  | P.232, P.268, P.270 |
| <b>Some data could not be copied</b>  | The selected files contained ones that could not be copied, so you could not copy some data.   | –                   |
| <b>Some data could not be moved</b>   | The selected files contained ones that could not be moved, so you could not move some data.  | –                   |
| <b>Some data could not be saved</b>   | The selected files contained ones that could not be copied to the FOMA phone or microSD memory card, so you could not save some data.        | –                   |
| <b>Some images cannot be saved</b>  | An error occurred, so some images cannot be saved.   | –                   |
| <b>Sort is full<br/>Cannot add</b>  | The maximum number of settings is already set. Release unnecessary settings and try again.   | P.261               |
| <b>Specified page number is not valid</b>                                   | The entered page number is invalid. Enter the correct page number and try again.   | P.364               |
| <b>Specify max cost within ¥10-100,000</b>                                  | Set the limit of Notice Call Cost to ¥10 through ¥100,000.   | P.402               |
| <b>SSL session cannot be established</b>                                    | Either an altered SSL certificate was received or an SSL error occurred, so you could not connect.   | –                   |
| <b>SSL session failed</b>   | An authentication error occurred at the server, so you cannot connect.   | –                   |
| <b>Syntax error</b>   | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded.   | –                   |
| <b>Talking now<br/>Cannot dial</b>  | You could not dial during a call. End the call and try again.  | P.53, P.70          |
| <b>Talking now<br/>Cannot operate</b>                                       | You could not operate during a call. End the call and try again.   | P.53, P.70          |
|   | You could not set during a call. End the call and try again.   | P.53, P.70          |
|   | You could not start up during a call. End the call and try again.  | P.53, P.70          |
| <b>Text reader<br/>Cannot operate</b>                                       | An error occurred, so you could not start up Text Reader.  | –                   |
| <b>This certificate has expired<br/>Terminate SSL session</b>               | Expiration date of SSL certificate has passed, so the connection is suspended.   | –                   |
| <b>This certificate is not valid for this URL<br/>Terminate SSL session</b> | The contents of this SSL certificate do not match, so the connection is suspended.   | –                   |
| <b>This character is not valid<br/>Cannot store</b>                         | Characters that cannot be stored are used, so cannot be stored.  | –                   |
| <b>This data cannot be replayed</b>   | An error occurred, so you cannot play back the Chaku-uta Full® music file.   | –                   |
| <b>The data cannot be saved</b>   | The data obtained from the site is invalid, so cannot be saved.  | –                   |
| <b>This data is not valid</b>   | You are trying to paste characters that cannot be used. Check the characters to be pasted and try again.                                     | P.421               |
| <b>This dictionary is not valid</b>   | The downloaded dictionary is invalid, so cannot be saved.  | –                   |
| <b>This file is not attachable<br/>Cannot resend</b>                        | The output-prohibited file from the FOMA phone has been attached to the mail, so you could not re-send it.                                   | –                   |
| <b>This file is not valid</b>   | The file is incompatible, so cannot be displayed.  | –                   |
| <b>This image is not valid</b>  | The image cannot be attached to i-mode mail.   | –                   |
|   | The image could not be displayed normally, so cannot be saved. Even if normally displayed, it may not be saved depending on the file format. | –                   |
|   | The image data is invalid, so cannot be displayed.   | –                   |
| <b>This i-motion is not valid</b>   | The i-motion movie is invalid, so cannot be played back.   | –                   |
| <b>This mail is broken<br/>Cannot resend</b>                                | The size of the mail text is too large or the attachment information about the text is damaged, so you could not re-send.                    | –                   |
| <b>This melody is not valid</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not play back the melody.  | –                   |
|   | The melody is invalid, so cannot be played back.   | –                   |
|   | The melody is invalid, so cannot be saved.   | –                   |
| <b>This picture is not valid</b>  | The image data is invalid, so cannot be displayed.   | –                   |
| <b>This site is not certified<br/>Terminate SSL session</b>                 | This SSL certificate was not supported, so the connection was suspended.   | –                   |
| <b>This software contains an error</b>                                      | The software program contains invalid data, so cannot be downloaded or upgraded.   | –                   |
| <b>This software contains an error<br/>Unable to download</b>               |  | –                   |
| <b>This software contains an error<br/>Upgrade canceled</b>                 | The software program contained invalid data, so upgrading was suspended.   | –                   |
| <b>This software is not supported by<br/>this phone</b>                     | The software program to be downloaded or upgraded does not support the FOMA phone.   | –                   |

| Message   | Description   | Reference         |
|---|---|-------------------|
| <b>This software is presently out of use</b>                          | You cannot start up the software program because the effective period is expired or the server has put it in unavailable state.   | –                 |
| <b>This ToruCa can not be saved</b>                                   | The ToruCa file is invalid, so cannot be saved.   | –                 |
| <b>This UIM cannot be recognized</b>                                  | An error occurred on the UIM or the PUK (PIN unblock code) is blocked. Contact the handling counter of a DoCoMo shop.<br>Check to see if the correct UIM is inserted.   | Back page<br>P.38 |
| <b>Time out</b>   | Disconnected from the other end's Bluetooth device during entering a Bluetooth passkey.<br>No response from the Bluetooth device, so you could not store or connect it.<br>The maximum stand-by time for "Accept dialup devices" had elapsed, so "Accept dialup devices" was deactivated. | –<br>–<br>–       |
| <b>TLS/SSL session cannot be established</b>                          | Either an altered TLS/SSL certificate was received or a TLS/SSL error occurred, so you could not connect.   | –                 |
| <b>TLS/SSL session failed</b>   | An authentication error occurred at the server, so you cannot connect.  | –                 |
| <b>Too much data was entered</b>                                      | Too many entered characters to send. Decrease the number of characters and send again.  | P.206             |
| <b>ToruCa is full</b>   | The maximum number of ToruCa files has been stored in the FOMA phone, so you could not receive a new one. Delete unnecessary ToruCa files and try again.  | P.298             |
| <b>ToruCa limit reached<br/>Unable to copy<br/>Delete ToruCa</b>      | The maximum number of ToruCa files is stored, so you cannot copy them. Delete unnecessary ToruCa files.   | P.298             |
| <b>ToruCa limit reached<br/>Unable to download<br/>Delete ToruCa</b>  | The maximum number of ToruCa files is stored, so you cannot store any more. Delete unnecessary ToruCa files.  | P.298             |
| <b>ToruCa limit reached<br/>Unable to receive<br/>Delete ToruCa</b>   | The maximum number of ToruCa files is stored, so you cannot obtain any more. Delete unnecessary ToruCa files.   | P.298             |
| <b>Transmission failed</b>  | You could not send the mail correctly. A three-digit numeral is displayed for (xxx).  |                   |
| <b>Transmission failed (552)</b>                                      |   | –                 |
| <b>Transmission failed (XXX)</b>                                      |   |                   |
| <b>Unable to acquire</b>  | The data is invalid or an error occurred, so the data cannot be obtained.   | –                 |
| <b>Unable to change title</b>   | You could not edit the title because entering no characters or entering only space is disabled while editing the title. Enter characters and try again.   | P.323             |
| <b>Unable to compose</b>  | You could not compose i-mode mail because the FOMA phone was reading data. Wait a while and try again.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to compose message</b>                                      |   |                   |
| <b>Unable to delete</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not delete a single data item from the microSD memory card.   | –                 |
| <b>Unable to delete all</b>   | An error occurred, so you could delete none of the data items.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to display version info</b>                                 | An error occurred, so the version could not be displayed.   | –                 |
| <b>Unable to download</b>   | Another function was running or an error occurred, so you could not download.<br>The data is invalid, so cannot be downloaded.  | –<br>–            |
| <b>Unable to download<br/>Cancel update</b>                           | Another function was running or an error occurred, so you could not download.   | –                 |
| <b>Unable to download<br/>Data exceeds maximum size</b>               | You tried to download the PDF file exceeding the maximum size, so could not download it.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to download<br/>Data exceeds maximum size (452)</b>         | You tried to receive data exceeding the maximum size, so could not receive it.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to download remaining data<br/>Delete data</b>              | An error occurred when downloading the remaining data of the file that was partially saved, so the data was deleted.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to edit file name</b>                                       | You cannot change the file name to the one starting with a period or containing prohibited characters except half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Enter the correct file name and try again.   | P.324             |
| <b>Unable to exchange</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not send the data using infrared rays.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to input because of<br/>exceeding maximum size</b>          | You could not enter the Decomail-pictograph because it exceeded the maximum size of the images to be inserted.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to input because of<br/>exceeding the number of images</b>  | You could not enter the image because it exceeded the maximum number of the images to be inserted.  | –                 |
| <b>Unable to move</b>   | An error occurred, so you could not move it.<br>The i-ϕpli is the one that cannot be moved to the FOMA phone, so could not be moved from the microSD memory card to the FOMA phone.   | –<br>–            |
| <b>Unable to obtain data due to replay<br/>restriction data error</b> | Playback restriction data for the i-motion movie or Chaku-uta Full® music file is invalid, so you could not obtain.   | –                 |

| Message  | Description   | Reference           |
|--|---|---------------------|
| <b>Unable to perform AV output</b>                         | An error occurred, so the AV output is suspended.   | –                   |
| <b>Unable to play because of wrong UIM or license info</b> | This music file cannot be played back due to UIM restrictions. Insert the UIM you used for obtaining the Chaku-uta Full <sup>®</sup> music file, and try again.<br>If the UIM is the one inserted for obtaining the Chaku-uta Full <sup>®</sup> music file, the license information of the music file in the FOMA phone is invalid, so cannot be played back. Perform "Initialize" and try again. | P.413               |
| <b>Unable to protect any more</b>                          | The maximum number of data is already protected, so you cannot protect any more. Release the protection for other data and try again.   | P.211, P.220, P.256 |
| <b>Unable to receive</b>                                   | The i-motion movie or Chaku-uta Full <sup>®</sup> music file is invalid, so could not be obtained.<br>The ToruCa file is invalid, so could not be obtained.   | –<br>–              |
| <b>Unable to receive all Ir data</b>                       | An error occurred, so you could not receive all Ir data.  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to receive ToruCa</b>                            | The received ToruCa file is invalid, so cannot be obtained.   | –                   |
| <b>Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)</b>          | No response from the server, so you cannot connect.   | –                   |
| <b>Unable to select</b>                                    | When selecting the end point for "Trim  motion" or "Edit ticker", you tried to select the point before the start point or the same point as the start point. So, the end point could not be selected. Reselect the start point again, then proceed.  | P.339               |
| <b>Unable to send all Ir data</b>                          | All the selected files were output-prohibited from the FOMA phone, so could not be sent.  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to set</b>                                       | An error occurred when you tried to set the Chaku-uta Full <sup>®</sup> music file for a ring tone by "Point ring tone", so could not set it.<br>An error occurred, so you could not set.   | –<br>–              |
| <b>Unable to set auto-update</b>                           | An error occurred, so you could not set "Set auto-update".  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to set for storage</b>                           | There are no unoccupied memory numbers within the folder, so you cannot set.  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to support this card</b>                         | The inserted memory card cannot be used on FOMA P904i. Use FOMA P904i compatible microSD memory card.   | P.347               |
| <b>Unable to upgrade</b>                                   | An error occurred, so you could not upgrade.  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to use B address history</b>                     | You cannot make a PushTalk call from Number B/Address B while using 2in1.   |                     |
| <b>Unable to use PushTalk from call logs of Number B</b>   | Switch to A Mode or Dual Mode, or make a PushTalk call from Number A/Address A.   | P.436               |
| <b>Unable to use PushTalk in B mode</b>                    |   |                     |
| <b>Unable to use this function</b>                         | The function cannot be operated with the inserted UIM.  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to view file Access to URL is limited (491)</b>  | The number of times you can access had exceeded the maximum, so you could not display.  | –                   |
| <b>Unable to write</b>                                     | You cannot write on the microSD memory card because it is write-protected. Use external devices to unlock the protection and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Unsupported contents exist</b>                          | The data that the FOMA phone does not support is contained.   | –                   |
| <b>Update pattern definitions</b>                          | An error occurred, so you cannot use Scanning Function. Update the pattern data and try again.  | P.511               |
| <b>Upgrade interrupted</b>                                 | An error occurred, so you could not upgrade.  | –                   |
| <b>URL address is not valid</b>                            | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded.  | –                   |
| <b>URL address is not valid (xxx)</b>                      | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded. A three-digit numeral is displayed for (xxx).  | –                   |
| <b>Usage is currently restricted Try again later</b>       | When a Pake-Houdai user communicates a large amount of data within a certain duration, the connection might be restricted for a certain duration. Wait a while and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Using mail folder Cannot delete</b>                     | Corresponding software program is running. End the software program and try again.  |                     |
| <b>Using mail folder Cannot download</b>                   |   | P.277               |
| <b>Using mail folder Cannot start</b>                      |   |                     |
| <b>Videophone talking now Cannot dial</b>                  | You could not dial during a videophone call. End the videophone call and try again.   | P.53, P.70          |
| <b>Voice mail denied</b>                                   | You have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.  | Back page           |
| <b>Voice mail or call forwarding denied</b>                | You have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, so cannot use it. Subscribe to the service and try again.   | Back page           |
| <b>Wait for a while to retry</b>                           | Currently, it is placed inactive. Wait a while and try again.   | –                   |
| <b>Wrong PIN1 code</b>                                     | The entered PIN1 code is wrong. Enter the correct one.  | P.157               |
| <b>Your HTTP version is not supported (xxx)</b>            | Received data has an error, so cannot be displayed or saved. The received data is discarded. A three-digit numeral is displayed for (xxx).  | –                   |



# Warranty and Maintenance Services

## Warranty

- Make sure that you have received a warranty card provided at purchase. After checking the contents of the warranty card as well as “Shop name and date of purchase”, keep the warranty card in a safe place. If you notice that necessary items of the warranty card are not filled in, immediately contact the shop where you purchased the FOMA phone. The term of the warranty is one year from the date of purchase.
- All or part of this product including the accessories may be modified for improvement without notice.
- Data stored in the Phonebook and others might be changed or lost owing to a malfunction, repairs, or other mishandling of your FOMA phone. You are advised to take a note of Phonebook entries and other files in preparation for such incidents. After we repair your FOMA phone, we cannot move, with some exceptions, the information downloaded by using i-mode or i-appli to your repaired FOMA phone because of the copyright law.
  - ※ You can save data files such as Phonebook entries from the FOMA phone to the microSD memory card.
  - ※ From your FOMA phone to the microSD memory card, you can move the data files that i-motion or i-appli uses.
  - ※ You can use Data Security Service (pay service that is available on a subscription basis) to save the data files such as Phonebook entries from the FOMA phone to the Data Storage Center.
  - ※ If you have a personal computer, you can transfer and save the data files from the Phonebook to your personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option).

## Maintenance Services

### ◎ When there is a problem with the FOMA phone

Before asking repairs, check “Troubleshooting” in this manual.

If the problem remains unsolved, contact the “Repairs” counter listed on the back page of this manual for malfunction and consult them.

### ◎ When repairs are necessitated as a result of consultation:

Bring your FOMA phone to a repair counter specified by DoCoMo. Note that your FOMA phone is accepted for repair during the repair counter’s business hours. Also, make sure that you will bring the warranty card with you to the counter.

#### ■ In warranty period

- Your FOMA phone is repaired charge free in accordance with the terms of warranty.
- Make sure that you bring the warranty card to the counter for the repair. If you do not show the warranty card, or when troubles or malfunctions are regarded to be caused by your mishandling, the repair cost is charged even within the warranty period.
- The cost for troubles caused by the use of devices and consumables other than those specified by DoCoMo is charged even within the warranty period.

#### ■ Repairs may not be performed in the following cases:

When wet-detecting sticker is colored; when corrosion due to soaking, dew condensation, or perspiration was found by the test; when the internal parts are damaged or deformed, repair may not be feasible. Even if repair is feasible, repair due to the reasons above is not covered by the warranty, so the repair cost is charged.

#### ■ After the warranty period

We will repair your FOMA phone on request (charges will apply).

#### ■ Spare parts availability period

The minimum storage period of the performance spare parts (parts required for maintaining performance) for the FOMA phone is basically six years after the closure of its production. Note, however, that your FOMA phone might not be repaired depending on the parts because of shortage of the spare parts. Even after the storage period, some FOMA phones can be repaired depending on the troubled portions. Contact the “Repairs” counter listed on the back page of this manual.

## ◎Other points to note

- Make sure not to modify the FOMA phone or its accessories.
  - Catching fire, giving injury, or causing malfunctions may result.
  - To avoid radio wave interference or Network troubles, a technological standard for the FOMA phone and the UIM is specified by the law; you cannot use the FOMA phone and the UIM that do not satisfy the technological standard.
  - If you make modifications (parts replacement, modification, paints, etc.), we can repair the FOMA phone only when you restore the modified portions to their previous status before the modifications (to the DoCoMo genuine product). We may refuse repairing depending on the modifications.
  - Repairs of troubles or malfunctions resulting from the modifications are charged even within the warranty period.
- Do not peel the name plate off the FOMA phone.

The name plate is a certificate for ensuring the technological standard. If someone intentionally peel off the name plate or replace it, the contents described in the name plate cannot be checked, as we cannot verify the conformity of the product to the technical standard. Note that we may refuse repair for some malfunctions in this case.
- The information such as function settings and Total Calls Duration, etc. might be reset depending on troubles or repairs, or the way you handle the FOMA phone. Set the settings again.
- The following parts of the FOMA phone uses the parts generating magnetic field: Note that if you put a card such as cash card liable to be influenced by magnetic field close to it, the card might be adversely affected.

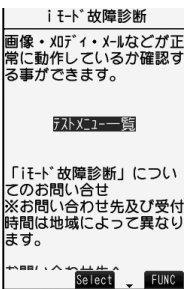
Using parts: speaker, earpiece
- If the FOMA phone gets wet or becomes moist, immediately turn off the power and remove the battery pack; then visit a repair counter. The FOMA phone may not be repaired depending on its condition.

## ◎Memory dial (Phonebook function) and downloaded information

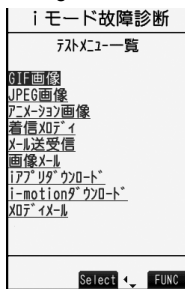
- It is recommended to take a note of the information you have stored in the FOMA phone. We are not responsible for any change in or loss of information.
- When replacing or repairing your FOMA phone, the data you created, obtained from external devices, or downloaded may be changed or lost. We do not take any responsibility for the loss or change incurred to the data. We may replace your FOMA phone with a new one instead of repairing, for our convenience sake. With this FOMA phone, we move the files including the images and ring melodies downloaded to the FOMA phone or the files you created to the new FOMA phone so far as your existing FOMA phone is troubled or repaired. (We cannot move some files. Also, some files might not be movable depending on the degree of malfunction.)
  - ※ It may take a while to move files, or it might occur that moving files is not possible depending on the memory size of the files stored in the FOMA phone.

# i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site

You can check on your FOMA phone whether sending/receiving mail messages, downloading images/melodies, and others are normally working.



Top display



Test Menu List

- To connect to “iモード故障診断サイト (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site)”
  - i-mode site: Menu→お知らせ (News)
  - サービス・機能 (Services & Functions)
  - iモード (i-mode)→iモード故障診断 (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis) (Japanese only)



QR code for accessing the site

- A packet communication fee for connecting to the i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site is free. (When you access it from overseas, you are charged the fee.)
- The test items differ by model of FOMA phones. Further the test items might be changed.
- When you check operations of your FOMA phone according to each test item, read the cautions on the site thoroughly and then perform the test.
- When you connect to the i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Site and test on sending mail messages, the proper information about your FOMA phone (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode Trouble Diagnosis Server). We never use the sent information for other purposes than for the i-mode trouble diagnosis.
- When you think your FOMA phone is in trouble as a result of your check, contact the “Repairs” counter listed on the back page of this manual.

## Updating Software

This function is to check whether you need to update software programs in the FOMA phone, and if necessary, you can download some parts of software programs using packet communication, and can update the software programs.

※You are not charged a packet communication fee for updating software programs.

If you need to update the software programs, the DoCoMo web page and “お知らせ (News)” in ☰ Menu let you know about it.

Also, if you set “Update notification” (see page 506) to “Enable”, you can receive notification of Software Update when Software Update is needed.



“Update now” and “Reserve Update” are available for updating software programs.

[Update now] : If you want to, immediately update.

[Reserve Update] : Reserve the date and time for updating software programs, and they are automatically updated at the reserved date and time.

- Never remove the battery pack while updating software programs. You may fail to update.
- You can update software programs with the Phonebook entries, images shot by the camera, or downloaded data retained in the FOMA phone; however note that data may not be protected depending on the conditions (such as malfunction, damage, or drench) your FOMA phone is placed in. You are advised to backup important data. Note that some data such as downloaded ones might not be backed up.


### ■ Before Using Software Update

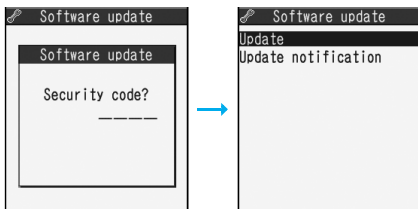
- You can update software programs even when you set “Host selection” to a user designated destination.
- Fully charge the battery before updating software programs.
- You cannot update software programs in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA phone is off
  - Out of the service area
  - During Lock All
  - During Personal Data Lock
  - When the UIM is not inserted
  - When date and time are not set
  - When using overseas
  - During Omakase Lock
  - During ANSHIN-KEY Lock
  - While connecting to external devices such as a personal computer
  - During a call
  - During PIN1 code lock
  - During Self Mode
  - While using other functions
- It may take time to update (download or rewrite) software programs.
- If you execute Software Update while PIN1 Code Entry Set is set to “ON”, the PIN1 Code Entry display appears at auto-restart after the software rewriting is finished. You cannot make/receive calls, or operate communication functions unless you enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot make/receive calls, use communication functions, and use other functions while updating software programs. (You can receive voice calls, forward calls or operate Record Message during download.)
- When updating, the FOMA phone is connected to the server (DoCoMo site) using SSL communication. You need to validate the SSL certificate. (Setting at purchase: Valid See page 221 for how to set.)
- It is recommended to update software programs when radio wave is strong enough with the three antennas displayed and while you are not moving.
  - ※If radio wave conditions get worse while downloading software programs, or download is suspended, move to a place with good radio wave conditions and try again to update software programs.
- If you check Software Update with the software programs already updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” is displayed.
- When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON” and mail comes in during software update, the display for notifying you of the arrival of mail may not be displayed after software update is completed.
- When updating software programs, the proper information about your mobile phone (model name or serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo-managed server for Software Update). We at DoCoMo never use the sent information for other purposes than for updating software programs.
- If you fail to update software programs, “Rewrite failed” is displayed and you cannot do all the operations. In that case, you are kindly requested to come to a repair counter specified by DoCoMo.
- If the software update is completed without your confirmation, the “Notification icon” of “ Update complete” (Update complete) appears on the Stand-by display. If there is any of contents you need to confirm, the “ Check update” icon (Check update) appears. Select “ Check update” and enter your Terminal Security Code; then the contents of update result are displayed.

## Receive Notification of Software Update (Update Notification)

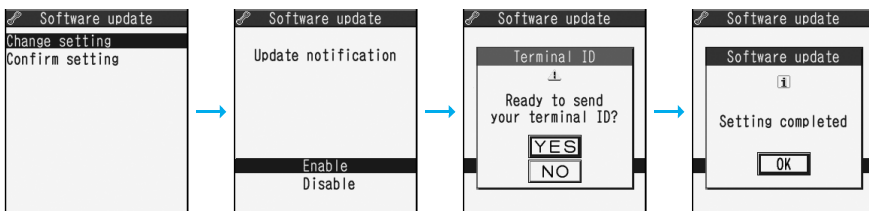
|                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| Setting at purchase | Disable |
|---------------------|---------|

If you have set “Update notification” to “Enable”, “Update notification icon” appears on the Stand-by display when Software Update is needed.

- 1  Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Software update  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.



- 2 Update notification ▶ Change setting ▶ Enable or Disable ▶ YES



• You can check the setting by selecting “Confirm setting”.

### Information

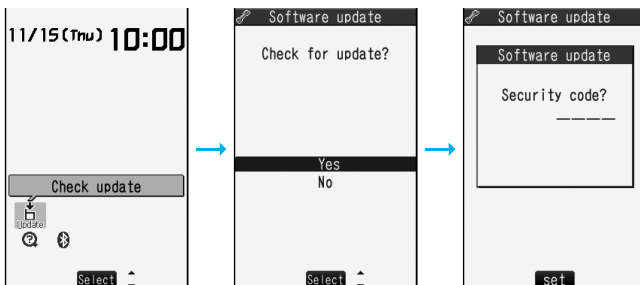
- “Update notification icon” appears in the following cases:
  - When notification is provided by DoCoMo
  - When “Update is needed” is displayed in step 3 on page 507
  - When you fail to update software programs during updating in Reserve Update
  - When you cancel the reservation for the software update
  - When you execute “Initialize”

## Start Software Update

You can start Software Update by selecting “Update notification icon”, or from the Main menu.

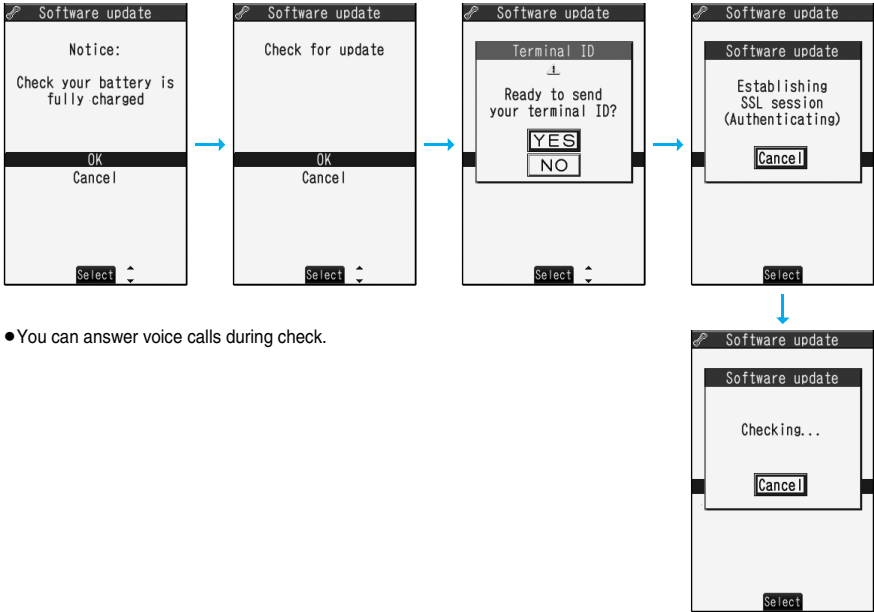
### Start Software Update by Selecting “Update notification Icon”

- 1 Select “Update notification icon” on the Stand-by display ▶ YES  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.



• If you select “NO”, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the notification icon.

## 2 Confirm the notice, then check whether the software programs need to be updated.



- You can answer voice calls during check.

## 3 When updating is not necessary, “No update is needed” is displayed. Use the FOMA phone as it is. When updating is necessary, “Update is needed” is displayed. You can select either “Now update” or “Reserve”.



Software Update display



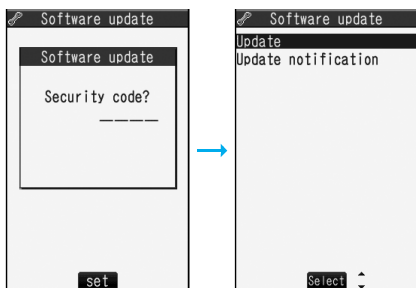
※ When updating is not necessary.



※ The display for when the software update is unavailable because of the server congestion. (Wait for a while and then start the software update again.)

## Start Software Update from the Main Menu

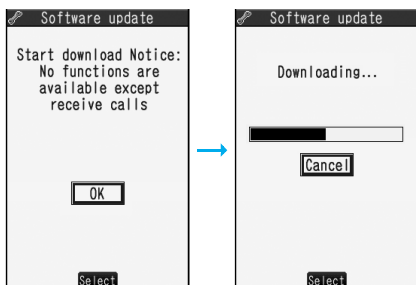
- 1  ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ Software update  
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code.



- 2 Select “Update” and go to step 2 on page 507.

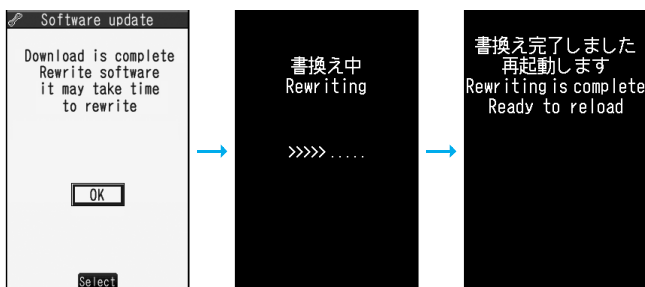
## Update Software Now (Update Now)

- 1 When you select “Now update”, “Start download” is displayed and downloading starts after a while. (Select “OK” to start downloading right now.)



- You can answer voice calls during download.
- If you cancel downloading midway, the data downloaded up to that point is deleted.
- Once downloading starts, updating proceeds automatically; you do not need to select menu items.

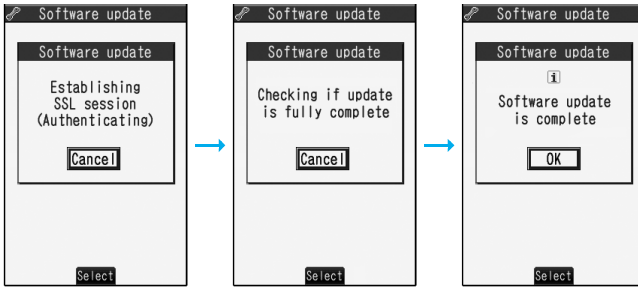
- 2 When downloading is completed, rewriting the software programs starts. (Select “OK” to start rewriting right now.)  
When rewriting is completed, your FOMA phone automatically restarts.



- It may take a while to start rewriting.
- You cannot even answer calls while rewriting.

※While rewriting the software programs, all key operations are disabled. You cannot even stop updating. Also, charging temporarily stops even if the AC adapter (option) is connected.

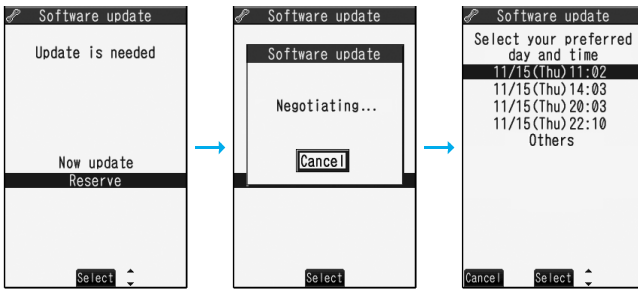
**3** After restart, your FOMA phone starts to communicate again with the server, so wait for a while. After confirming the update completion, select “OK”.



**Reserve Date and Time for Updating Software (Reserve Update)**

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set in advance the date and time for starting the software update by communicating with the server.

**1** Select “Reserve” from the Software Update display.



The date and time which can be reserved are displayed.

- The server’s time table appears for the software update reservation.

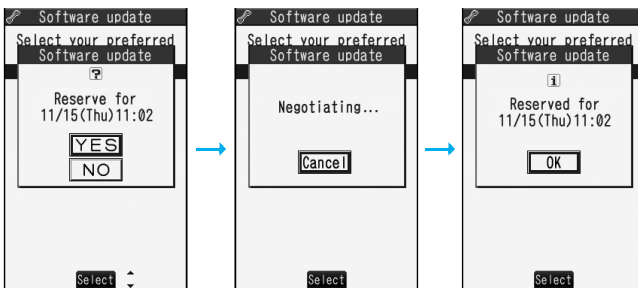
**When you select “Others”**

After communicating with the server, you can select the date and time you want. The availability of each time zone is displayed on the time selection display as follows:

○: Available, △: Almost full, ×: Not available

When you select one time zone you want, you can communicate with the server again to display candidates for reserving time.

**2** Confirm the date and time you selected. Select “YES”. Your FOMA phone communicates with the server again and then the reservation is completed.



### ■ When the reserved time comes



When the reserved time comes, the display on the left appears and about five seconds later the software update starts automatically.

Before the reserved time, fully charge the battery pack, place the FOMA phone with the Stand-by display shown in a place within reach of radio wave. Note that updating may not start even when the reserved time has arrived if you are using other functions.

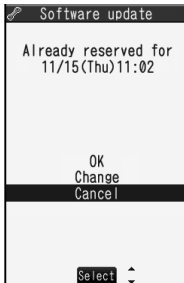
- During Lock All or Personal Data Lock, the message to the effect that the software update starts is not displayed and the software update does not start. Follow step 1 on page 508 to display the reason for the failure to start the software update.

### Information

- The software update may not start if an alarm is activated.
- The software update does not start during receiving i-mode mail, SMS messages, or Message R/F. The receiving continues and "Notification icon" appears on the Stand-by display.
- If you execute "Initialize" after completing the reservation (see page 413), the software update does not start even when the reserved time arrives. Make a reservation for the software update again.

### Check, Change, or Cancel the Reserved Date and Time

Select "Software update" from the setting menu and enter your Terminal Security Code; then you can confirm the reserved time.



You can change or cancel the reserved date and time from the display for checking reservation. To change, select "Change". To cancel, select "Cancel".

### End Software Update

If you select "NO" or "Cancel" from each display, the display for ending the operation appears.

Select "YES"; then the software update ends and the Stand-by display returns. To return to the previous display, select "NO".

### Information

- If the battery level points "⚡" during operation, the software downloading or rewriting is not done and the operation ends.



## <Scanning Function>

# Protecting FOMA Phone from Data Causing Failure

First of all, update the pattern data to make it the latest.

Regarding data and programs downloaded or obtained from sites, i-mode mail messages or SMS messages to the FOMA phone, you can detect data that might cause failure, can delete it, and can stop starting an application program.

- Use the pattern data for checking. Update the pattern data, because it is updated each time new trouble is found. (See page 511)
- The scan function is for filtering out the data that causes failure to mobile phones at the time of browsing web pages or receiving mail messages. Note that this function works only when the pattern data for each failure has been downloaded to your mobile phone and when the pattern data for each failure is found.
- The data contained in the pattern data varies depending on the mobile phone model. Therefore, note that we may stop distributing the pattern data to mobile phones that have been on the market for three years or more.

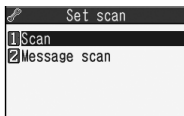
## Set Scanning Function <Set Scan>

|                     |             |                     |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| Setting at purchase | Scan: Valid | Message scan: Valid |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|

If you set "Scan" to "Valid", data or a program is automatically checked when you try to run it.

In addition, if you set "Message scan" to "Valid", a received SMS message is automatically checked when you display it.

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Scanning function ▶ Set scan  
▶ Select an item.



**Scan** . . . . . Sets whether to run the scanning function.

**Message scan** . . . . . Sets whether to run the scanning function when displaying an SMS message.

- While "Scan" is set to "Invalid", you cannot set "Message scan".

- 2 **Valid or Invalid** ▶ YES

- When the scan function is set, an alert is shown by five levels if data that might cause failure is detected. (See page 513)

### Information

- The scanning is not available for the SMS message which notifies you of receiving mopera mail or of incoming calls for Voice Mail Service.

## Update Pattern Data <Update>

- 1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Scanning function ▶ Update ▶ YES ▶ YES



- To cancel during i-mode connection, select "Cancel".

## 2 OK



- When pattern data update is not necessary, “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” is displayed. Use the pattern data as it is.

### Information

- When updating the pattern data, the proper information about your mobile phone (model name, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo-managed server for the scanning function). We at DoCoMo never use the sent information for other purposes than for the scanning function.
- Set the date (year/month/date) correctly in advance.
- The pattern data is not updated in the following cases:
  - When the date/time is not set
  - During a call
  - Out of the service area
  - When the UIM is not inserted
  - During Lock All
  - While another function is working
  - When connecting to external devices such as personal computers
  - While Self Mode is activated
  - During Personal Data Lock
- If you cancel downloading midway, the data downloaded up to that point is deleted.

## Update Pattern Data Automatically <Set Auto-update>

You can set whether to update the pattern data inside your FOMA phone when the pattern data is created anew.

- 1 Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Scanning function ▶ Set auto-update  
▶ ON or OFF

- 2 YES ▶ OK

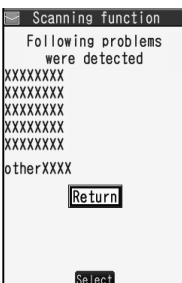
- When you select “ON” in step 1, the confirmation display appears telling that your mobile phone information is sent at auto-update. Select “YES”.
- To cancel during i-mode connection, select “Cancel”.

### Information

- When setting auto-update or updating automatically, the proper information about your mobile phone (model name, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo-managed server for the scanning function). We at DoCoMo never use the sent information for other purposes than for the scanning function.
- When auto-update is completed, the notification icon of “ ” (Update completed) appears on the Stand-by display. If it is failed, “ ” (Pattern update failed) appears. Select “ ” to display the update result.

## Displays for Scanning Result


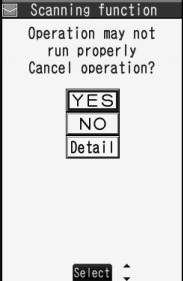
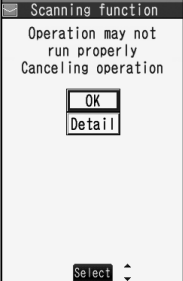


### About the display for scanned problem elements



A warning display appears when problematic data is found. Select “Detail” from the warning display to bring up the name of the problem element.

- When six or more problem elements are found, the sixth and later problem elements are omitted.
- “Detail” might not appear depending on the detected problem element.

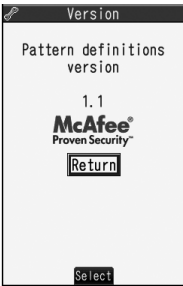
■ The displays for scanning result

| Alert level 0  | Alert level 1   | Alert level 2   |
|--|---|---|
|                 |  |  |
| <p>OK .....Continues the operation.</p>  | <p>YES ...Stops and ends the operation.<br/>NO .....Continues the operation.</p>  | <p>OK .....Stops and ends the operation.</p>                                      |
| Alert level 3  | Alert level 4   |   |
|                 |  |   |
| <p>YES ...Deletes the data and ends the operation.<br/>NO .....Stops and ends the operation.</p> | <p>OK .....Deletes the data and ends the operation.</p>                           |   |

● The alert displays for when displaying i-mode mail messages or SMS messages may differ from the ones above.

**Check Pattern Data Version <Version>**

1  Settings ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Scanning function ▶ Version



# Specifications

|  |   |  |  |                                      |
|--|---|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Model</b>                                   |   | FOMA P904i   |  |                                      |
| <b>Dimensions (when closed)</b>                |   | Height: 102 mm<br>Width: 49 mm<br>Depth: 17.9 mm (in Jacket Style: 19.4 mm)  |  |                                      |
| <b>Weight (with the battery pack attached)</b> |   | Approx. 115 g (in Jacket Style: Approx. 122 g)   |  |                                      |
| <b>Continuous standby time</b>                 |   | Standstill: Approx. 630 hours  |  | In motion: Approx. 400 hours         |
| <b>Continuous talk time</b>                    |   | Voice call: Approx. 170 minutes  |  | Videophone call: Approx. 100 minutes |
| <b>Charging time</b>                           |   | AC adapter: Approx. 130 minutes  |  | DC adapter: Approx. 130 minutes      |
| <b>LCD</b>                                     | <b>Type</b>                                 | Display: TFT 262,144 colors<br>Private window: Organic EL one color  |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Size</b>                                 | Display: Approx. 2.8 inches<br>Private window: Approx. 0.8 inches  |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Number of pixels</b>                     | Display: 96,000 pixels (240 dots x 400 dots)<br>Private window: 2,400 pixels (96 dots x 25 dots)   |  |                                      |
| <b>Image pickup device</b>                     | <b>Type</b>                                 | Inside camera: CMOS  |  | Outside camera: √Maicovicon®         |
|  | <b>Size</b>                                 | Inside camera: 1/7 inches  |  | Outside camera: 1/3.2 inches         |
| <b>Camera</b>                                  | <b>Number of effective pixels</b>           | Inside camera: Approx. 110,000 pixels<br>Outside camera: Approx. 3,200,000 pixels  |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Number of recording Pixels (maximum)</b> | Inside camera: Approx. 100,000 pixels<br>Outside camera: Approx. 3,200,000 pixels  |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Digital zooming</b>                      | Inside camera: 2.7 times max.<br>Outside camera: 12.0 times max.   |  |                                      |
| <b>Recording</b>                               | <b>Number of recordable still images</b>    | Approx. 795 (When stored in the FOMA phone)**1   |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Number of continuous shooting</b>        | CIF: 4<br>QCIF: 5 through 20   | Stand-by: 5 through 10<br>Sub-QCIF: 5 through 20 | QVGA: 5 through 10                   |
|  | <b>Still image file format</b>              | JPEG   |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Moving image recording time</b>          | Phone: Approx. 483 seconds**2<br>microSD memory card (64MB): Approx. 33 minutes**3   |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Moving image file format</b>             | Phone: MP4<br>microSD memory card: ASF   |  |                                      |
| <b>Music playback</b>                          | <b>Continuous play back time**4</b>         | SD-Audio file (supports Play Background): Approx. 3840 minutes**5<br>Chaku-uta Full® music file (supports Play Background): Approx. 3600 minutes**5<br>i-motion movie (including Chaku-uta® music file): Approx. 960 minutes**5<br>WMA file (supports Play Background): Approx. 2820 minutes |  |                                      |
| <b>Memory capacity</b>                         | <b>Chaku-uta®</b>                           | Approx. 20 Mbytes**6   |  |                                      |
|  | <b>Chaku-uta Full®</b>                      | Approx. 41 Mbytes**7   |  |                                      |

● √ Maicovicon® is the abbreviation for New Matsushita Advanced Image Converter for Vision Construction, the image sensor of next generation with high-performance and low power consumption.

\*\*1 Image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), Image quality: Normal, File size: 10 Kbytes

\*\*2 The maximum recording time per moving image which can be saved to the FOMA phone with the following conditions:  
Image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), File size restriction: Mail restriction (L), Image quality: Long duration mode,  
Type: Video + voice

\*\*3 The maximum recording time per moving image which can be saved to the microSD memory card with the following conditions:

Image size: QCIF (176 x 144), File size restriction: None, Image quality: Normal, Type: Video + voice

\*\*4 The continuous playback time is the estimated time that the FOMA phone can play back using the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (option) with the FOMA phone closed.

\*\*5 File format: AAC

\*\*6 Shares with i-motion movies.

\*\*7 Shares with "My picture" and "My documents".

# Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items in FOMA Phone

|  |                              | Number of savable/storable items | Number of protectable items | Reference page |
|--|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| <b>Phonebook</b>                                       |                              | 1,000 max. ※1                    | —                           | P.109          |
| <b>Schedule</b>  | Schedule                     | 1,000                            | —                           | P.393          |
|  | Holiday                      | 100                              | —                           | P.394          |
|  | Anniversary                  | 100                              | —                           | P.394          |
| <b>ToDo</b>  |                              | 100                              | —                           | P.397          |
| <b>Free Memo</b>                                       |                              | 20                               | —                           | P.403          |
| <b>Mail</b><br>(total of SMS messages and i-mode mail) | Received mail                | 2,500 max. ※2, ※3, ※4            | 2,500 max. ※2               | P.248          |
|  | Sent mail                    | 1,000 max. ※2, ※4, ※5            | 1,000 max. ※2               | P.249          |
|  | Draft mail※6                 | 20 max. ※2                       | —                           | P.249          |
|  | User created folder (Inbox)  | 22                               | —                           | P.254          |
|  | User created folder (Outbox) | 22                               | —                           | P.254          |
| <b>Template</b>  |                              | 45 max. ※7                       | —                           | P.239          |
| <b>Message</b>   | Message R                    | 100 max. ※2                      | 50 max. ※2                  | P.219          |
|  | Message F                    | 100 max. ※2                      | 50 max. ※2                  | P.219          |
| <b>Bookmark (i-mode)</b>                               | Bookmark                     | 100                              | —                           | P.209          |
|  | Bookmark folder              | 10 (incl. "Bookmark")            | —                           | P.210          |
| <b>Bookmark (Full Browser)</b>                         | Bookmark                     | 100                              | —                           | P.209          |
|  | Bookmark folder              | 10 (incl. "Bookmark")            | —                           | P.210          |
| <b>Screen memo</b>                                     | Screen memo                  | 100 max. ※2                      | 50 max. ※2                  | P.211          |
|  | Screen memo folder           | 10 (incl. "Screen memo")         | —                           | P.211          |
| <b>i-ϕpli</b>  |                              | 100 max. ※2                      | —                           | P.274          |
|  | Mail-linked i-ϕpli           | 5                                | —                           | P.276          |
| <b>Still image</b>                                     |                              | 1,800 max. ※2, ※9, ※10           | —                           | P.322          |
|  | User created folder          | 20                               | —                           | P.322          |
| <b>Moving image/i-motion movie</b>                     |                              | 500 max. ※2, ※8                  | —                           | P.332          |
|  | User created folder          | 20                               | —                           | P.334          |
| <b>Melody</b>  |                              | 400 max. ※2, ※8                  | —                           | P.344          |
|  | User created folder          | 20                               | —                           | P.344          |
| <b>Chara-den</b>                                       |                              | 10※7                             | —                           | P.341          |
| <b>PDF file</b>  |                              | 1,800 max. ※2, ※9, ※10           | —                           | P.363          |
| <b>ToruCa file</b>                                     |                              | 495 max. ※2                      | —                           | P.294          |
|  | User created folder          | 20                               | —                           | P.296          |

※1: Up to 50 Phonebook entries can be stored on the UIM.

※2: The number of savable, storable, or protectable items may decrease depending on the data size.

※3: Includes mail in the "Chat" folder, "Trash box" folder and the i-ϕpli mail folder.

※4: In addition, a total of 20 received and sent SMS messages can be saved to the UIM. (See page 403)

※5: Includes mail in the "Chat" folder and the i-ϕpli mail folder.

※6: Can save unsent mail you are composing.

※7: Includes pre-installed data.

※8: Does not include pre-installed data.

※9: PDF files, music files, and still images share the number of savable/storable items.

※10: Among pre-installed data, the number of savable/storable items includes only the following data:

- PDF files
- Decomail-pictographs

## ■ Important ■

The saved/stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other mishandling of the FOMA phone. We cannot be held responsible for loss of the saved/stored contents, so, for just in case, you are advised to take notes of the contents saved/stored in the FOMA phone, or save them to the microSD memory card (see page 347). If you have a personal computer, you can save them also to the personal computer by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (see page 446) via the FOMA USB Cable (option).

# SAR Certification Information and Other Information

## SAR Certification Information

This model phone FOMA P904i meets the MIC's\* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP\*\*\*.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.582 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following web pages:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| World Health Organization (WHO)           | <a href="http://www.who.int/peh-em/">http://www.who.int/peh-em/</a>   |
| ICNIRP                                    | <a href="http://www.icnirp.de/">http://www.icnirp.de/</a>   |
| MIC                                       | <a href="http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm">http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm</a> |
| TELEC                                     | <a href="http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm">http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm</a>                     |
| NTT DoCoMo                                | <a href="http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/">http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/</a>           |
| Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. | <a href="http://panasonic.jp/mobile/">http://panasonic.jp/mobile/</a> (Japanese only)                           |

\* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

\*\* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

\*\*\* International Commission on Non-ionizing Radiation Protection

## Declaration of Conformity

**The product "FOMA P904i" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on <http://panasonic.co.jp/pmc/products/en/support/index.html>.**

**This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.**

**Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR\* limits\*\* for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR\* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.584 W/kg.**

**While there may be differences between the SAR\* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet\*\*\* the EU requirements for RF exposure.**

\* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

\*\* The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

\*\*\*Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

※The European RTTE approval of this product is limited to the use of the P904i handset, Battery Pack and FOMA AC Adapter for Global use (100 to 240 V AC) only. Other accessories are not part of the approval.

## Important Safety Information

### AIRCRAFT

Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers a 'flight mode' or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

### DRIVING

Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

### HOSPITALS

Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

### PETROL STATIONS

Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

### INTERFERENCE

Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

#### Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and do not carry it in a breast pocket.

#### Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

#### For other Medical Devices:

Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

## Export Administration Regulations

**This product and its accessories follow the Japan Export Administration Regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and its related laws). To export this product and its accessories, take the required measures on your responsibility and at your expenses.**

**For details on the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.**





# MEMO



# Index/Quick Manual



|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| Index .....        | 522 |
| Quick Manual ..... | 530 |

# Index

## How to refer to Index

● The Index contains the terms and terminologies summarizing the descriptive contents by sorting in alphabetical order.

If you cannot find the term or terminology you want to know, search it using a different term or terminology.

<Example: To set the i-appli Stand-by display using “Software setting” on i-appli>

|                       |            |                               |            |                                 |                      |
|-----------------------|------------|-------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| Software setting      | 278        | Spam mail prevention          | 231        | i-appli mail                    | 276                  |
| Change melody/image   | 279        | Specifications                | 514        | <b>i-appli stand-by display</b> | <b>137, 275, 288</b> |
| Icon info             | 279        | SSL certificate               | 221        | i-appli to function             | 216                  |
| Location usage        | 279        | Stand-by display              | 45         | IC card                         | 292                  |
| Network set           | 278        | <b>Stand-by set (i-appli)</b> | <b>288</b> | IC card content                 | 277                  |
| See phonebook/history | 279        | Still image                   | 322        | IC card list                    | 277                  |
| Stand-by net          | 289        | Still image folder list       | 322        | IC card lock                    | 300                  |
| <b>Stand-by set</b>   | <b>288</b> | Still image list              | 322        | IC lock with power off          | 300                  |

## ◆◆◆ A ◆◆◆

|                               |          |                                |          |  |                   |
|-------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|----------|--|-------------------|
| αBacklight                    | 289      | Attaching/removing batteries   | 41       | Bookmark (PDF)                           | 365               |
| AC adapter                    | 43       | Attachment preference          | 263      | Add bookmark                             | 365               |
| Accept registered (Bluetooth) | 410      | Attachments                    | 240, 247 | Display bookmark                         | 365               |
| Access authentication         | 443      | Auto answer setting (PushTalk) | 104      | Bookmark folder list                     | 210               |
| Access setting                | 316      | Auto assist setting            | 56       | Bookmark list                            | 210               |
| Accessories                   | 22       | Auto color label               | 263      | Brightness                               | 86, 169, 192, 331 |
| Action list                   | 84, 342  | Auto lock                      | 166      |  |                   |
| Add desktop icon              | 151      | Auto melody play               | 219, 262 |  |                   |
| Add folder (Chaku-uta full®)  | 378      | Auto power on/off              | 389      |  |                   |
| Add folder (i-motion)         | 322      | Auto save set                  | 193      |  |                   |
| Add folder (Mail)             | 254      | Auto start info                | 288      | Calculator                               | 402               |
| Add folder (Melody)           | 344      | Auto start info display        | 288      | Calendar                                 | 137, 393          |
| Add folder (Picture)          | 322      | Auto start set                 | 287      | Calendar display                         | 393               |
| Add folder (ToruCa)           | 296      | Auto start time                | 287      | Call acceptance                          | 174               |
| Add mark                      | 365      | Auto timer                     | 195      | Call barring during roaming              | 454               |
| Add member (PushTalk)         | 97       | Auto voice dial                | 125      | Call/charging indicator                  | 25                |
| Add to a phonebook entry      | 114      | Auto-display                   | 219      | Call data                                | 401               |
| Add to phonebook (Phone)      | 109, 114 | Autofocus                      | 191      | Call forwarding                          | 430               |
| Add to phonebook (UIM)        | 109, 114 | Automatic answer               | 405      | Call rejection                           | 71, 174           |
| Additional service            | 440      | Automatic display              | 141      | Call setting without ID                  | 175               |
| Additional guidance           | 440      | Auto-sort (Mail)               | 260      | Call waiting                             | 428               |
| Address link function         | 216      | Auto-sort (ToruCa)             | 296      | Answer an incoming call during a call    | 429               |
| Alarm                         | 390      | Auto-sort menu display         | 260      | Continue the current call                | 429               |
| Alarm setting                 | 398      | Auto-sort setting display      | 260      | End a call to answer another call        | 429               |
| ANSHIN-KEY area setting       | 166      | AV output                      | 367      | End a call to answer the held call       | 429               |
| ANSHIN-KEY info               | 166      | AV phone to function           | 216      | End a held call                          | 430               |
| ANSHIN-KEY lock               | 163, 166 | αVibrator                      | 289      | Hold a call to make a new call           | 429               |
| Answer setting                | 73       |                                |          | Caller ID notification                   | 48                |
| Any key answer                | 73       |                                |          | Caller ID request                        | 432               |
| asf                           | 357      |                                |          | Caller ID setting (PushTalk)             | 104               |
| AT command                    | 445      |                                |          | Camera                                   | 180               |
| Attach bookmarks              | 241      |                                |          | Number of storable still images          | 184               |
| Attach i-motion movies        | 240      |                                |          | Recordable time                          | 185               |
| Attach melodies               | 240      |                                |          | Specifications for moving image shooting | 185               |
| Attach PDF files              | 241      |                                |          | Specifications for still image shooting  | 184               |
| Attach phonebook entries      | 241      |                                |          | Camera menu                              | 186, 189          |
| Attach pictures               | 240      |                                |          | Capture screen                           | 365               |
| Attach schedule events        | 241      |                                |          | Category list                            | 349               |
| Attach SD other files         | 241      |                                |          | Certificate                              | 221               |
| Attach ToDo items             | 241      |                                |          | Certificate host                         | 223               |
| Attach ToruCa files           | 241      |                                |          | Chaku-moji                               | 63                |
|                               |          |                                |          | Chaku-motion                             | 128, 139          |
|                               |          |                                |          | Chaku-uta full® music list               | 375               |

## ◆◆◆ B ◆◆◆

|                                   |     |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----|--|--|--|--|
| Backlight                         | 142 |  |  |  |  |
| Bar code reader                   | 196 |  |  |  |  |
| Bar code reader list              | 198 |  |  |  |  |
| Bar code reader selection display | 196 |  |  |  |  |
| Batteries                         | 41  |  |  |  |  |
| Battery charging time             | 42  |  |  |  |  |
| Battery level                     | 44  |  |  |  |  |
| Battery usable time               | 42  |  |  |  |  |
| Bluetooth                         | 405 |  |  |  |  |
| Bluetooth power off               | 410 |  |  |  |  |
| Bluetooth settings                | 412 |  |  |  |  |
| Bookmark                          | 209 |  |  |  |  |



# Index

## ◆◆◆ E ◆◆◆

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Earphone                               | 133 |
| Earphone/microphone                    | 404 |
| Earphone/microphone/AV output terminal | 25  |
| Earpiece volume                        | 75  |
| EASY mode                              | 35  |
| Edit folder name (Chaku-uta full®)     | 378 |
| Edit folder name (i-motion)            | 322 |
| Edit folder name (Mail)                | 254 |
| Edit folder name (Melody)              | 344 |
| Edit folder name (Picture)             | 322 |
| Edit folder name (ToruCa)              | 296 |
| Edit  motion                           | 338 |
| Edit  motion display                   | 338 |
| Edit phonebook                         | 118 |
| Edit picture                           | 328 |
| Edit picture display                   | 328 |
| Edit ticker                            | 339 |
| Effector display                       | 187 |
| End stand-by display                   | 289 |
| End stand-by info                      | 289 |
| English display                        | 46  |
| English guidance                       | 433 |
| Enter URL                              | 208 |
| Entering PIN1 code                     | 157 |
| Entering PIN2 code                     | 157 |
| Error messages                         | 492 |
| Export administration regulations      | 517 |

## ◆◆◆ F ◆◆◆

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Face data reading display                        | 168, 170           |
| Face reader security                             | 169                |
| Face reader setting                              | 168                |
| Feel settings                                    | 145                |
| Feel * Mail                                      | 146                |
| Feel * Talk                                      | 145                |
| FeliCa   | 292                |
| FeliCa mark                                      | 25                 |
| File restriction                                 | 195, 324           |
| File size setting                                | 192                |
| Finder display                                   | 182, 186, 189, 242 |
| FirstPass center                                 | 221                |
| Flash  | 206                |
| Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch        | 404                |
| Flicker correction                               | 193                |
| Focus  | 86, 192            |
| FOMA PC setup software                           | 445                |
| Font   | 152                |
| Forward specified calls to specified destination | 431                |
| Forward specified calls to voice mail center     | 428                |
| Forwarding guidance                              | 431                |
| Forwarding image                                 | 361                |
| Frame  | 188, 314, 329      |

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Free memo             | 403 |
| Full browser          | 312 |
| Full browser settings | 316 |
| Full-pitch character  | 417 |
| Fullscreen ring tone  | 380 |
| Function list         | 456 |
| Function menu         | 34  |
| Funny transform       | 330 |
| Funny transform II    | 330 |

## ◆◆◆ G ◆◆◆

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| G guide program list remote-controller | 286      |
| Game selection display                 | 282      |
| Go to                                  | 364      |
| GPS                                    | 302      |
| GPS button setting                     | 306      |
| GPS compatible i-oppli                 | 275, 303 |
| GPS settings                           | 306      |
| Group member list                      | 100      |
| Group member selection display         | 100      |
| Group setting                          | 115      |
| Guide                                  | 36       |
| Guide display                          | 36       |

## ◆◆◆ H ◆◆◆

|                            |          |
|----------------------------|----------|
| Half-pitch character       | 417      |
| Hands-free                 | 68       |
| Hands-free with PushTalk   | 104      |
| Hands-free with videophone | 87       |
| Header/signature           | 264      |
| HIKARI icon                | 25       |
| Holding                    | 76       |
| Holding (during a call)    | 76       |
| Home URL                   | 316      |
| Host selection             | 218, 310 |
| How to see finder display  | 182      |

## ◆◆◆ I ◆◆◆

|                          |               |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| oppli                    | 303           |
| i-oppli                  | 274           |
| Automatic start          | 287           |
| Download                 | 275           |
| Run                      | 277           |
| Software description     | 279           |
| Start up                 | 277           |
| Upgrade                  | 279           |
| oppli(microSD)           | 290           |
| i-oppli banking          | 285           |
| i-oppli DX               | 274           |
| i-oppli mail             | 276           |
| i-oppli stand-by display | 137, 275, 288 |
| i-oppli to function      | 216           |
| IC card                  | 292           |
| IC card content          | 277           |

|                                      |             |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| IC card list                         | 277         |
| IC card lock                         | 300         |
| IC lock with power off               | 300         |
| iC transfer service                  | 292         |
| iC transmission                      | 361         |
| Receive all data files               | 362         |
| Receive one data file                | 362         |
| Send all data files                  | 362         |
| Send one data file                   | 361         |
| i-Channel                            | 226         |
| i-Channel ticker                     | 228         |
| Icon                                 | 28, 31, 150 |
| Icon/background selection display    | 144         |
| Icons                                | 28          |
| IDD prefix setting                   | 57          |
| Identify as                          | 125         |
| Illumination                         | 148         |
| Illumination setting                 | 147         |
| Image quality setting                | 192         |
| Image selection display              | 88          |
| Image size setting                   | 192         |
| Image stabilizer                     | 193         |
| menu                                 | 204         |
| menu in English                      | 205         |
| i-mode                               | 204         |
| i-mode (Chaku-uta full®) folder list | 375         |
| i-mode arrival act (PushTalk)        | 105         |
| i-mode FeliCa                        | 292         |
| i-mode mail                          | 230         |
| Compose                              | 232         |
| Forward                              | 247         |
| Receive                              | 243         |
| Reply                                | 246         |
| Reply with quote                     | 246         |
| Reply with reference                 | 246         |
| Save                                 | 233         |
| Send                                 | 232         |
| i-mode menu                          | 204         |
| i-mode password                      | 156         |
| i-mode settings                      | 216         |
| i-mode trouble diagnosis site        | 504         |
| i-motion                             | 224         |
| motion info                          | 335         |
| i-motion player                      | 332         |
| motion setting                       | 226         |
| Inbox                                | 248         |
| Inbox folder list                    | 248, 250    |
| Inbox list                           | 249, 250    |
| In-call management                   | 433         |
| In-call ring tone                    | 71          |
| In-car hands-free                    | 69          |
| Info notice setting                  | 149         |
| Infrared data port                   | 25          |
| Infrared exchange                    | 357         |
| Receive all data files               | 360         |
| Receive one or multiple data files   | 359         |
| Send all data files                  | 360         |
| Send one or multiple data files      | 359         |
| Infrared remote-controller           | 275, 361    |
| Initial setting                      | 46          |

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| Initialize                                 | 413     |
| Inside camera                              | 25, 181 |
| Intellectual property rights               | 20      |
| International calls                        | 55      |
| International dial (International roaming) | 451     |
| International dial assist                  | 56      |
| International roaming                      | 448     |
| Internet                                   | 208     |
| Ir data receiving selection display        | 359     |
| ISP connection communication               | 218     |

## ◆◆◆ J ◆◆◆

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| Jacket style     | 488 |
| JAN code         | 196 |
| Japanese display | 46  |

## ◆◆◆ K ◆◆◆

|                             |          |
|-----------------------------|----------|
| Katamari Damacy mobile      | 281      |
| Key guide                   | 87       |
| Keypad dial lock            | 171      |
| Keypad sound                | 132      |
| Kirari mail                 | 244, 245 |
| Kirari mail pictograph list | 244      |

## ◆◆◆ L ◆◆◆

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| Last URL  | 207          |
| LCD AI  | 143          |
| Learned words   | 422          |
| Light sensor  | 24, 142      |
| Limit mail size   | 231          |
| Line feed   | 418          |
| Links with AV equipment                                       | 490          |
| List of characters assigned to keys (NIKO-touch input method) | 479          |
| List of characters assigned to keys (2-touch input method)    | 478          |
| List of characters assigned to keys (5-touch input method)    | 477          |
| List setting (Mail)   | 256          |
| Listing (Chaku-uta full®)                                     | 380          |
| Listing (i-motion)  | 336          |
| Listing (PDF)   | 364          |
| Location history  | 306          |
| Location request menu   | 308          |
| Lock all  | 160          |
| Lock setting  | 167          |
| Look-up address   | 91, 260, 262 |
| Low battery alarm   | 45           |

## ◆◆◆ M ◆◆◆

|      |     |
|------|-----|
| Mail | 230 |
|------|-----|

|  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| Mail auto-receive                                | 243                |
| Mail blind                                       | 263                |
| Mail group                                       | 261                |
| Mail group address confirmation display          | 262                |
| Mail group list                                  | 261                |
| Mail list display                                | 262                |
| Mail menu  | 250                |
| Mail/message ring time                           | 133                |
| Mail security                                    | 173, 254           |
| Mail settings                                    | 230, 262           |
| Mail to function                                 | 216                |
| Mail-linked i-oppli                              | 274                |
| Main menu  | 31                 |
| i-mode group                                     | 386                |
| Mail group                                       | 386                |
| Setting group                                    | 386                |
| Tool group                                       | 386                |
| Maintenance services                             | 503                |
| Making a call                                    | 52                 |
| Making a call (International roaming)            | 451                |
| Making a PushTalk call                           | 95                 |
| Making a videophone call                         | 52                 |
| Making a videophone call (International roaming) | 451                |
| Making/receiving a PushTalk group call           | 96                 |
| Manner mode                                      | 134, 135           |
| Manner mode set                                  | 135                |
| Marker stamp                                     | 329                |
| Melody folder list                               | 344                |
| Melody list                                      | 344                |
| Melody playback display                          | 344                |
| Melody player                                    | 344                |
| Memory info                                      | 194, 324, 346, 380 |
| Menu function                                    | 31                 |
| Menu icon  | 31                 |
| Menu icon setting                                | 144                |
| Menu number selection                            | 33                 |
| Message composition display                      | 232                |
| Message display                                  | 262                |
| Message display settings                         | 65                 |
| Message entry display                            | 233                |
| Message list                                     | 63                 |
| Message R/F                                      | 218                |
| Display  | 219                |
| Message R/F list                                 | 219, 220           |
| microSD (Chaku-uta full®) folder list            | 376                |
| microSD file display                             | 349                |
| microSD format                                   | 353                |
| microSD info                                     | 354                |
| microSD melody folder list                       | 344                |
| microSD memory card                              | 347                |
| File name  | 356                |
| Folder configuration                             | 355                |
| Inserting/removing                               | 348                |
| Using with a personal computer                   | 354                |
| microSD memory card slot                         | 25                 |
| microSD moving image folder list                 | 333                |
| microSD PDF folder list                          | 363                |
| microSD reader/writer                            | 354                |

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| microSD still image folder list   | 322 |
| microSD ToruCa folder list        | 295 |
| Missed calls                      | 80  |
| Mobile phone coordinator          | 283 |
| Mobile phone credit "ID"          | 286 |
| Motion tracking                   | 281 |
| Movable contents                  | 352 |
| Move to microSD (Chaku-uta full®) | 352 |
| Move to microSD (i-oppli)         | 279 |
| Move to microSD (i-motion)        | 352 |
| Move to microSD (Melody)          | 352 |
| Move to microSD (Picture)         | 352 |
| Move to phone (Chaku-uta full®)   | 352 |
| Move to phone (i-oppli)           | 279 |
| Move to phone (i-motion)          | 352 |
| Move to phone (Melody)            | 352 |
| Move to phone (Picture)           | 352 |
| Movie memo                        | 401 |
| Movie mode                        | 189 |
| Movie type set                    | 194 |
| Moving image                      | 332 |
| Moving image folder list          | 332 |
| Moving image list                 | 332 |
| Moving image shoot                | 189 |
| mp4                               | 357 |
| Multi number                      | 434 |
| Multiaccess                       | 386 |
| Multiaccess combination patterns  | 485 |
| Multiple windows                  | 314 |
| Multitask                         | 386 |
| Multitask combination patterns    | 486 |
| Music info                        | 379 |
| Music list                        | 374 |
| Music list of a playlist          | 381 |
| MUSIC player                      | 374 |
| MUSIC player playback display     | 375 |
| My documents                      | 363 |
| My menu                           | 208 |
| My picture                        | 322 |

## ◆◆◆ N ◆◆◆

|                        |          |
|------------------------|----------|
| Navigation displays    | 30       |
| NAVITIME for P         | 284, 303 |
| NEGA/POSI mode         | 201      |
| Network search mode    | 452      |
| Network security code  | 156      |
| Network services       | 426      |
| Night mode             | 86       |
| Noise reduction        | 68       |
| Non-jacket style       | 488      |
| Notice call cost       | 402      |
| Notification icon      | 80, 150  |
| Notify caller ID       | 48       |
| Notify of location     | 305      |
| Notify switchable mode | 89       |
| No. of phonebook       | 120      |
| Nuisance call blocking | 431      |

# Index

|   |             |   |               |  |                 |
|---|-------------|---|---------------|--|-----------------|
| Number of entered characters                          | 417         | PDF viewer                              | 363           | Answer message                           | 81              |
| Number of protectable items                           | 515         | Perform remote monitoring               | 91            | Auto-sort                                | 260             |
| Number of remaining characters                        | 417         | Permission schedule                     | 308           | Call receiving image                     | 140             |
| Number of savable items                               | 515         | Personal data lock                      | 162           | Connection speed                         | 55              |
| Number of storable items                              | 515         | Personal information                    | 399           | Illumination                             | 148             |
| <hr/>   |             |   |               |  |                 |
| ◆◆◆ O ◆◆◆   |             |   |               |  |                 |
| Obtain i-motion movie                                 | 225         | Phone mode                              | 313           | Nuisance call prevention                 | 178             |
| Obtain ToruCa files                                   | 294         | Phone to function                       | 216           | Ring tone                                | 129             |
| Obtaining completion display<br>(Chaku-uta full®)     | 372         | Phonebook                               | 108           | Substitute image                         | 83, 85          |
| Obtaining completion display<br>(Chara-den)           | 215         | Phonebook image sending                 | 126           | Vibrator                                 | 131             |
| Obtaining completion display<br>(Download dictionary) | 214         | Phonebook list                          | 117           | Private menu                             | 398             |
| Obtaining completion display (i-motion)               | 225         | Photo auto display                      | 263           | Private menu list                        | 399             |
| Obtaining completion display (Melody)                 | 212         | Photo light                             | 25, 86, 191   | Private menu setting                     | 398             |
| Obtaining completion display<br>(Template)            | 214         | Photo mode                              | 186, 192      | Private window                           | 25, 26, 28, 140 |
| Obtaining completion display (ToruCa)                 | 213         | Photo-sending                           | 241           | Protect (Bluetooth)                      | 410             |
| OFFICEED  | 440         | Pictograph list                         | 482           | Protect on (Mail)                        | 256             |
| Omakase lock  | 161         | Picture                                 | 327           | Protect on (MessageR/F)                  | 220             |
| On hold   | 76          | Picture info                            | 327           | Protect on (Screen memo)                 | 211             |
| One-push open   | 44          | Picture viewer                          | 322           | Provide location                         | 305             |
| Operation mode  | 313         | PIM/iC security mode                    | 167           | Public mode (Drive mode)                 | 77              |
| Operations during manner mode                         | 135         | PIN1 code                               | 157           | Public mode (Power off)                  | 79              |
| Operator name display                                 | 453         | PIN1 code entry set                     | 158           | PUK (PIN unlock code)                    | 157             |
| Options   | 22, 489     | PIN2 code                               | 157           | Pull down menu                           | 206             |
| Order to play   | 383         | Play background                         | 372, 514      | PushTalk                                 | 94              |
| Original  | 136         | Play/erase messages                     | 82            | PushTalk arrival act                     | 105             |
| Original animation                                    | 332         | Play/erase videophone messages          | 82            | PushTalk group list                      | 100             |
| Original animation list                               | 332         | Play mode setting (MUSIC player)        | 378           | PushTalk phonebook list                  | 99              |
| Osaifu-Keitai   | 292         | Player menu display                     | 374           | PushTalkPlus                             | 94              |
| Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-oppli                      | 274, 293    | Playing back record messages            | 82            | PuyoPuyon & COLUMNS                      | 282             |
| Other ID list   | 90          | <hr/>                                   |               |  |                 |
| Outbox  | 249         | Playlist (i-motion)                     |               |  |                 |
| Outbox folder list                                    | 249, 251    | Play back playlist                      | 337           | ◆◆◆ Q ◆◆◆                                |                 |
| Outbox list   | 249, 252    | Store playlist                          | 337           | QR code                                  | 196             |
| Out-of-service-area indication                        | 26, 45      | Playlist (Melody)                       | 344           | Quality alarm                            | 132             |
| Outside camera  | 25, 181     | Edit playlist                           | 345           | Quick manual                             | 530             |
| Overseas service                                      | 454         | Play back playlist                      | 344           | Quick record message                     | 81              |
| Own dictionary  | 421         | Playlist (MUSIC player)                 | 381           | Quick silent                             | 73              |
| Own number  | 49, 87, 399 | Create/edit playlist                    | 381           | <hr/>                                    |                 |
| Own number display                                    | 49, 399     | Play back playlist                      | 382           | ◆◆◆ R ◆◆◆                                |                 |
| <hr/>   |             |   |               |  |                 |
| ◆◆◆ P ◆◆◆   |             |   |               |  |                 |
| Packet communication                                  | 442         | Playlist list (i-motion)                | 337           | Radio button                             | 206             |
| Page info on/off                                      | 365         | Playlist list (MUSIC player)            | 381           | Radio waves reception level              | 26              |
| Page layout   | 364         | PLMN setting                            | 452           | Rakuoku exhibition application           | 284             |
| Palette   | 237         | Point ring tone                         | 380           | Read a map                               | 303, 306        |
| Passwords   | 156         | Position location                       | 303           | Read aloud output                        | 388             |
| Paste   | 421         | Position memory (i-motion)              | 334           | Read aloud settings                      | 388             |
| Pause dial  | 66          | Position memory                         | 336           | Read aloud valid setting                 | 388             |
| PC mode   | 313         | Position memory selection display       | 334           | Read aloud volume                        | 388             |
| PDF file list   | 363         | Positioning                             | 324           | Reading aloud                            | 388             |
| PDF folder list                                       | 363         | Positioning mode                        | 307           | Reason for no caller ID                  | 175             |
| <hr/>   |             |   |               |  |                 |
| ◆◆◆ O ◆◆◆   |             |   |               |  |                 |
|   |             | Positioning tone/illumination           | 307           | Receive mail/call at open                | 141             |
|   |             | Post view display                       | 186, 187, 190 | Receive option                           | 245             |
|   |             | Power on/off                            | 45            | Receive option setting                   | 245             |
|   |             | Power saver mode                        | 139           | Received address                         | 258             |
|   |             | Prediction conversion at reply          | 262           | Received address list                    | 259             |
|   |             | Preferred device                        | 65            | Received call list                       | 60              |
|   |             | Preferred device                        | 410           | Received calls                           | 59              |
|   |             | Prefix setting                          | 67            | Receiving a call                         | 70              |
|   |             | Pre-installed data                      | 467           | Receiving a call (International roaming) | 452             |
|   |             | Preparation flow for data communication |               |  |                 |
|   |             |   | 444           |  |                 |
|   |             | Priority order                          |               |  |                 |
|   |             | Alarm                                   | 391           |  |                 |



|   |                              |   |               |   |          |
|---|------------------------------|---|---------------|---|----------|
| Receiving a PushTalk call                           | 98                           | Scanned code result display                     | 197           | Set image display                       | 216      |
| Receiving a videophone call                         | 70                           | Scanned text confirmation display               | 199           | Set $\mathbb{H}$ motion                 | 335      |
| Receiving a videophone call (International roaming) | 452                          | Scanned text result display                     | 200           | Set in-call arrival act                 | 434      |
| Receiving display                                   | 263                          | Scanning code display                           | 196           | Set roaming guidance                    | 453      |
| Reception result display                            | 243, 270                     | Scanning function                               | 511           | Set time                                | 47       |
| Recharge battery display                            | 45                           | Scanning text display                           | 199           | Set when opened                         | 74       |
| Recognition mode                                    | 200                          | Schedule  | 393           | Setting when folded                     | 74       |
| Recognition-failed image                            | 169                          | Schedule list                                   | 395           | Shoot with frame                        | 193      |
| Reconnect signal                                    | 68                           | Screen memo                                     | 211           | Shooting date                           | 193      |
| Record Chara-den                                    | 343                          | Screen memo folder list                         | 211           | Shot interval                           | 193      |
| Record display set                                  | 172                          | Screen memo list                                | 211           | Shot number                             | 193      |
| Record message list                                 | 82                           | Scroll  | 216, 262      | Shutter sound                           | 193      |
| Record message setting                              | 80                           | Scroll function                                 | 34            | Side keys guard                         | 171      |
| Record voice memo                                   | 400                          | Scroll selection                                | 31            | Signature                               | 264      |
| Rec. file restriction                               | 342                          | SD other file list                              | 353           | Site display for the FirstPass center   | 222      |
| Redial  | 59                           | SD other files                                  | 353           | Slideshow                               | 324      |
| Redial list   | 60                           | SD other folder list                            | 353           | Smiley                                  | 418, 484 |
| Refer address                                       | 265, 269                     | SD-Jukebox                                      | 384           | SMS (Short Messages)                    | 232      |
| Referer   | 317                          | SD-PIM  | 349           | Compose                                 | 269      |
| Referer setting                                     | 317                          | Search (PDF)                                    | 364           | Forward                                 | 247      |
| Register a secret code                              | 231                          | Search (ToruCa)                                 | 298           | Receive                                 | 270      |
| Register Bluetooth device                           | 408                          | Search by voice                                 | 37            | Reply                                   | 246      |
| Register LCS client                                 | 307                          | Search phonebook                                | 116           | Save                                    | 270      |
| Reject unknown                                      | 176                          | Search phonebook display                        | 116           | Send                                    | 269      |
| Related equipment                                   | 489                          | Secret code                                     | 122, 231      | SMS center selection                    | 272      |
| Releasing PIN lock                                  | 159                          | Secret data only                                | 172           | SMS composition display                 | 269      |
| Reload  | 207, 315                     | Secret mail display                             | 173           | SMS input character                     | 272      |
| Remote access                                       | 434                          | Secret mode                                     | 172           | SMS report request                      | 271      |
| Remote monitoring                                   | 90                           | Security error                                  | 277           | SMS validity period                     | 272      |
| Rerecord sound                                      | 339                          | Security scan function (Scanning function)      | 511           | Software description                    | 279      |
| Reset (i-mode)                                      | 217                          | Security settings                               | 155, 178      | Software for playing back moving images | 490      |
| Reset (Mail settings)                               | 263                          | Select image                                    | 88            | Software list                           | 277      |
| Reset last URL                                      | 207                          | Select image on videophone                      | 88            | Software setting                        | 278      |
| Reset learned words                                 | 422                          | Select language                                 | 46            | Change melody/image                     | 279      |
| Reset mail address                                  | 231                          | Select ring tone                                | 128           | Icon info                               | 279      |
| Reset settings                                      | 412                          | Select storage                                  | 323, 345, 378 | Location usage                          | 279      |
| Reset total cost&duration                           | 402                          | Selecting and receiving i-mode mail             | 230           | Network set                             | 278      |
| Restrict dialing                                    | 174                          | Selecting multiple items                        | 34            | See phonebook/history                   | 279      |
| Restrictions  | 174                          | Self mode                                       | 161           | Stand-by net                            | 289      |
| Retouch   | 188, 331                     | Send DTMF tone                                  | 87            | Stand-by set                            | 288      |
| Retry   | 207, 212, 298, 315, 328, 332 | Send substitute images                          | 84            | View ToruCa                             | 279      |
| Rights of portrait                                  | 20, 180                      | Sent address                                    | 258           | Software update                         | 505      |
| Ring time   | 176                          | Sent address list                               | 258           | Software update display                 | 507      |
| Ring time setting (PushTalk)                        | 104                          | Sent/received phonebook data list               | 126           | Sound effect                            | 130      |
| Ring volume   | 75                           | Serial number of mobile phones/UIMs             | 206           | Sound effect setting                    | 217      |
| Roaming setting                                     | 453                          | Service numbers                                 | 433           | Sound quality (MUSIC player)            | 378      |
| Rotate  | 331                          | Service selection display                       | 409           | Spam mail prevention                    | 231      |
| Rotate view   | 364                          | Service settings                                | 306           | Specifications                          | 514      |
|   |                              | Services available overseas                     | 448           | SSL certificate                         | 221      |
|   |                              | Services available with FOMA phones             | 487           | Stand-by display                        | 45       |
|   |                              | Set as ring tone (Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> ) | 380           | Stand-by set (i-oppli)                  | 288      |
|   |                              | Set as ring tone (Melody)                       | 345           | Still image                             | 322      |
|   |                              | Set as stand-by (Camera)                        | 190           | Still image folder list                 | 322      |
|   |                              | Set check new message                           | 246           | Still image list                        | 322      |
|   |                              | Set connection timeout                          | 217           | Still image shoot                       | 186      |
|   |                              | Set display                                     | 187, 326      | Store/delete ANSHIN-KEY                 | 165      |
|   |                              | Set hold tone                                   | 77            | Store/delete ANSHIN-KEY list            | 165      |
|   |                              | Set $\mathbb{H}$ $\mathbb{A}$ pli to            | 278           | Store in                                | 193      |
|   |                              |   |               | Store in PushTalk phonebook             | 99       |



|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| "S" icons              | 75  |
| SAR                    | 516 |
| Save                   | 366 |
| Save an i-motion movie | 225 |
| Save BG image          | 298 |
| Save image (ToruCa)    | 298 |


# Index

|                                   |          |                        |     |
|-----------------------------------|----------|------------------------|-----|
| Sub-address setting               | 67       | Upload                 | 314 |
| Substitute image                  | 83, 84   | URL history            | 209 |
| Substitute image answering        | 70       | URL history list       | 209 |
| Super silent                      | 136      | Usable time            | 42  |
| Surround (MUSIC player)           | 378      | USB mode setting       | 354 |
| Suspend mail                      | 231      | Use phone information  | 217 |
| Switch cameras                    | 84, 191  | User authentication    | 442 |
| Switch image display positions    | 85       | User certificate       | 221 |
| Switch to videophone call         | 58       | Request issue/download | 222 |
| Switch to voice call              | 58       | Request revocation     | 223 |
| Switching character input methods |          | User icon              | 396 |
|                                   | 416, 420 |                        |     |
| Switching i-mode mail display     | 243      |                        |     |
| Symbol candidate list             | 482      |                        |     |
| Symbol list                       | 480      |                        |     |

## ◆◆◆ T ◆◆◆

|                               |          |                                |     |
|-------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|-----|
| Template                      | 239      | “V” icons                      | 130 |
| Template list                 | 239      | Vibrator                       | 130 |
| Terminal security code        | 156      | Videophone record message list | 82  |
| Text box                      | 206      | Videophone settings            | 85  |
| Text reader                   | 199      | Videophone while packet        | 89  |
| Text reader list              | 200      | View types                     | 364 |
| Text reader selection display | 199      | Visual preference              | 87  |
| Ticker (i-Channel)            | 226      | Voice announce                 | 131 |
| Ticker (i-motion)             | 226, 339 | Voice call auto redial         | 89  |
| Ticker list                   | 340      | Voice dial                     | 123 |
| Timer lock at close           | 166      | Voice dial setting             | 123 |
| Timer lock on at close        | 167      | Voice earphone dial            | 125 |
| Title name                    | 327      | Voice mail                     | 427 |
| ToDo                          | 397      | Voice memo                     | 400 |
| ToruCa                        | 294      | Voice memo during a call       | 400 |

## ◆◆◆ W ◆◆◆

|   |          |                 |         |
|---|----------|-----------------|---------|
| ToruCa file list  | 295, 297 | Wake-up display | 138     |
| ToruCa folder list  | 295      | Warranty        | 503     |
| ToruCa settings   | 299      | Web mail        | 272     |
| ToruCa viewer   | 295      | Web to function | 216     |
| Total calls   | 401      | White balance   | 86, 192 |
| Total calls duration  | 401      | WMA list        | 376     |
| Trace info  | 277      | WORLD CALL      | 55      |
| Trademarks  | 20       | WORLD WING      | 448     |
| Trim away   | 331      |                 |         |
| Trim for mail   | 338      |                 |         |
| Trim for picture  | 338      |                 |         |
| Trim  motion | 339      |                 |         |
| Troubleshooting   | 491      |                 |         |
| Two-touch dial  | 123      |                 |         |
| Type list   | 374      |                 |         |

## ◆◆◆ Z ◆◆◆

|          |              |
|----------|--------------|
| Zoom     | 85, 190, 315 |
| Zoom in  | 364          |
| Zoom out | 364          |

## ◆◆◆ U ◆◆◆

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| UIM (FOMA card)       | 38  |
| Insert/remove         | 38  |
| UIM operation         | 403 |
| UIM restrictions      | 39  |
| UIM setting           | 158 |
| Update (Pattern data) | 511 |
| Update ToruCa         | 298 |

## ◆◆◆ Numerics ◆◆◆

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| 184                    | 49  |
| 186                    | 49  |
| 2in1                   | 435 |
| 3D sound               | 130 |
| 3gp                    | 357 |
| 64K data communication | 442 |



# Quick Manual

## How to Use Quick Manual

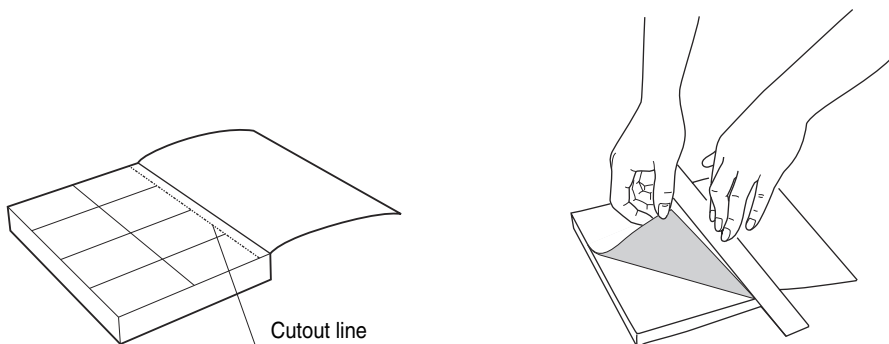
Cut out Quick Manual interleaved into this manual along the cutout line, and then fold it as shown below:  
Take Quick Manual “For Overseas Use” with you for using an international roaming service (WORLD WING) overseas.

### How to cut

Cut out Quick Manual along the cutout line.

You can place a ruler on the cutout line and cut as illustrated below.

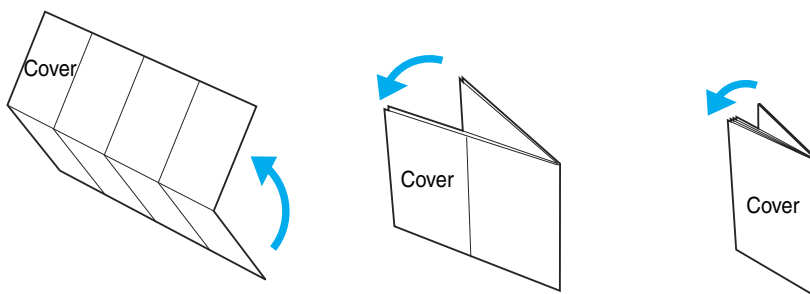
- Be careful not to cut yourself when using scissors.



### How to fold

Fold Quick Manual along the dotted line so that the cover faces upwards as illustrated below.

- Fold the second sheet of Quick Manual so that “Function List” (page 16) will be the cover.



## Quick Manual

### General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

- (In English)  
☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)  
• Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
- (In Japanese only)  
☎ 151 (toll free)  
• Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

### Repairs

- (In Japanese only)  
☎ 113 (toll free)  
• Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.
- (In Japanese only)  
☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)  
• Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Customer Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

## Character Entry

### Character Entry Display



- Character Entry Mode  
abc... Alphabets  
123... Numerals  
漢... Kanji/Hiragana  
ｶ... Katakana

4

## Storing in Phonebook (FOMA Phone)

- Stand-by display→ (for at least one second) → Phone
- Enter a name.
- R** → Edit a reading.
- GR** <Group> → Select a group.
- ☎** <Phone number> → Enter a phone number→Select an icon. (Up to four numbers)
- ✉** <Mail address> → Enter a mail address  
→Select an icon. (Up to three addressees)
- 📍** <Address> → Enter a zip code  
→Enter a postal address.

1

- Selecting Character Input Method  
**☎** →Settings→Other settings  
→Character Input method→Input mode→  
Put a check mark for Mode 1 (5-Touch)  
Put a check mark for Mode 2 (2-Touch)  
Put a check mark for Mode 3 (MIKOTouch)  
→**☎** →Select the mode you use with priority.
- Entering " " and " "   
Enter a character→Press **✕** several times.
- Entering " " and " "   
Press **☎** several times.
- Switching "Alphabet" (abc), "Numerals" (123), "Kanji/Hiragana" (漢), and "Katakana" (ｶ)   
Press **☎** several times.
- Entering Pictographs  
**📷** →Pictograph→Select a pictograph.

5

<Cutout line>

- <Location Information> → Select an item.  
By position loc.  
... Measures the current location and store the location information→Check the location information→**📍** (Set)  
From loc. history  
... Select a location information from Location History and store it.
- <Birthday>→Enter a birthday.
- <Memo>→Enter a memo.
- <Change> → Select an item.  
Select Image  
... Store a still image in Data Box  
Shoot Image  
... Store a still image shot by a camera
- <Memory No.>→Enter a three-digit memory number→**📷**

2

- Entering Symbols  
**📷** →Symbols→Select a symbol.
- Line Feed  
Press **☎**.
- Entering a Space  
**📷** →Space
- Deleting Characters  
Use **📷** to move the cursor→**☎**
- Switching to Uppercase/Lowercase  
Enter a character→**📷**

6

## Store from Redial, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls

- Adding Data to the FOMA phone  
Bring up the redial item, dialed call record, or received call record→**📷**
- Add to phonebook→Phone→Add
- Select a search method
- Search the Phonebook
- Select a destination Phonebook entry  
→**📷**→**☎**→YES

## Edit Phonebook Entries

- Bring up the detailed Phonebook display  
→**📷** →Select an item to be edited  
→Edit the contents→**📷**→YES

3

## Enter "タダの菓子" into a Free Memo

- Bringing up the Character Entry (Edit) display  
**☎** →Stationery→Free memo→**📷**
- Entering Hiragana characters <Mode 1>  
ㇿ→Press **4** once and **☎** once.  
ㇿ→Press **4** once and **✕** once.  
ㇿ→Press **5** five times.  
ㇿ→Press **2** once.  
ㇿ→Press **3** twice.
- Converting the Characters  
Use **☎** to move the cursor to "ㇿ"→**📷**  
→Use **📷** to highlight "タダの" and press **☎**→Fix the rest of characters in the same way.

7

## Camera

- Shooting a Still Image  
Stand-by display → → → →   
→ Select a destination folder.
- Continuous Shooting  
Stand-by display → → (for at least one second) → → → Highlight a still image and press → → Select a destination folder.  
※ This is the procedure to select and save one still image for continuous shooting.
- Shooting a Moving Image  
Stand-by display → → (for at least one second) → → →   
→ Select a destination folder.

8

## Viewer/Player

- Playing Back a Still Image  
 → Data box → My picture  
→ Select a folder → Select a still image.
- Playing Back a Moving Image  
 → Data box → motion  
→ Select a folder → Select a moving image.
- Playing Back a Chara-den Image  
 → Data box → Chara-den  
→ Select a Chara-den image.
- Playing Back a Melody  
 → Data box → Melody → Select a folder  
→ Select a melody.
- Displaying a PDF File  
 → Data box → My documents  
→ Select a folder → Select a PDF file.

9

## Music Playback

- Playing Back Music by MUSIC Player  
 → LifeKit → MUSIC Player → All tracks  
→ Select a music file.

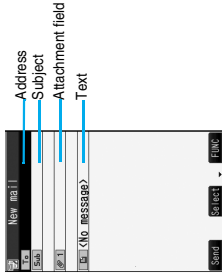
## Making and Receiving a Videophone Call

- Making a Videophone Call  
Enter the other party's phone number  
→ → Press → to end the call after talking.
- Receiving a Videophone Call  
The ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers → or   
→ Press to end the call after talking.  
If you answer by pressing or , the image through your camera is sent to the other party. If you answer by pressing , the substitute image is sent to the other party.
- Switching to Hands-free  
During a call, dialing, or connecting →

11

## i-mode Mail

### Compose and Send i-mode Mail



- Stand-by display → →   
Select the address field → Select an entering method → Enter or select an address.

12

## Receive i-mode Mail

- “(white)” blinks → The Reception Result display appears → Select “Mail”  
→ Select an i-mode mail message to be displayed.

10

## Check New Message

- Stand-by display → (for at least one second)

## Other Mail Functions

- Replying  
Select or bring up a mail message to be replied → → Reply, Reply with quote, or Reply with ref → Select the text field\*  
→ Enter text → → After sending, press .  
※ Not required for “Reply with ref”.
- Forwarding  
Select or bring up a mail message to be forwarded → → Forward → Select the address field → Select an entering method → Enter or select an address →   
→ After sending, press .

14

15

## Function List

| Menu            | Function name      |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| Mail            | Inbox              |
|                 | Outbox             |
|                 | Draft              |
|                 | Compose message    |
|                 | Template           |
|                 | Web mail           |
|                 | Check new message  |
|                 | Compose SMS        |
|                 | Check new SMS      |
|                 | Chat mail          |
| Receive option  |                    |
| I-mode          | Mail settings      |
|                 | Mail               |
|                 | Book mark          |
|                 | Screen memo        |
|                 | Go to location     |
|                 | Last URL           |
|                 | Message P/F        |
|                 | I-Channel          |
|                 | Check new message  |
|                 | Client certificate |
| I-mode settings |                    |
| Full browser    |                    |

16

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| Settings               | <b>I-opp1 settings</b> |
|                        | Disp. software info    |
|                        | αBacklight             |
|                        | αVibrator              |
|                        | End stand-by display   |
|                        | <b>External option</b> |
|                        | Earphone               |
|                        | 94 Automatic answer    |
|                        | <b>Feel settings</b>   |
|                        | Feel * Talk            |
| Feel * Mail            |                        |
| <b>Network setting</b> |                        |
| Prefix setting         |                        |
| Int'l dial assist      |                        |

20

|                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| I-opp1                    | Software list(phone) |
|                           | I-opp1(microSD)      |
|                           | Auto start set       |
|                           | I-opp1 info          |
|                           | <b>Incoming call</b> |
|                           | 50 Ring volume       |
|                           | 13 Select ring tone  |
|                           | 64 Sound effect      |
|                           | 54 Vibrator          |
|                           | 20 Manner mode set   |
| 58 Disp. P/H-book image   |                      |
| 68 Answer setting         |                      |
| 68 Disp. call/receive No. |                      |
| 90 MailMsg. ring tone     |                      |
| 90 Ring time              |                      |
| 65 Info notice setting    |                      |
| Settings                  | Set when opened      |
|                           | V-phone white packet |
| <b>Display</b>            | Display setting      |
| 56                        | Backlight            |
| 70                        | Color pattern        |
| 86                        | Private window       |
| 93                        | I-Channel ticker     |
| 66                        | Font                 |
| 63                        | Character size       |
| 15                        | Desktop icon         |
|                           | Select language      |

17

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Settings            | Network search mode    |
|                     | PLMN setting           |
|                     | Operator name display  |
|                     | <b>Other settings</b>  |
|                     | 30 Keypad sound        |
|                     | 71 Charge sound        |
|                     | Battery level          |
|                     | 35 Side keys guard     |
|                     | Character input method |
|                     | Record display set     |
| 84 Pause dial       |                        |
| Sub-address setting |                        |
| Voice settings      |                        |
| USB mode setting    |                        |
| 23 Reset settings   |                        |
| Initialize          |                        |
| 46 My picture       |                        |
| MUSIC               |                        |
| <b>Data box</b>     | 16                     |
|                     | My documents           |
|                     | Char-aden              |
|                     | SD other files         |

21

|                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Settings               | 52 Private menu setting     |
|                        | 57 Menu icon setting        |
|                        | 47 Recv/mail/call at open   |
|                        | Automatic display           |
|                        | LCD AI                      |
|                        | 36 Loos icons               |
|                        | <b>Illumination setting</b> |
|                        | 89 Illumination             |
|                        | Illumination in talk        |
|                        | Missed call illum.          |
| Unread mail illum.     |                             |
| illum. when tolled     |                             |
| MUSIC illumination     |                             |
| Bluetooth illumination |                             |
| IC card illumination   |                             |
| PuSt/talk illumination |                             |
| Slide key illumination |                             |
| Check settings         |                             |
| <b>Lock/Security</b>   | Self mode                   |
| Lock all               |                             |
| Personal data lock     |                             |
| IC card lock           |                             |
| Auto lock              |                             |
| 40 Secret mode         |                             |
| Secret data only       |                             |
| 41 Keypad dial lock    |                             |
| Reject unknown num     |                             |

18

|                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| Service                   | 79 MUSIC Player   |
|                           | Bar code reader   |
|                           | Receive Ir data   |
|                           | TouCa             |
|                           | IC card content   |
|                           | IC card lock menu |
|                           | SD-PIM            |
|                           | Camera            |
|                           | Bluetooth         |
|                           | GPS               |
| 55 Text reader            |                   |
| Rec. msg/voice memo       |                   |
| Voice memo                |                   |
| 25 Date Security/Service  |                   |
| Check MW/Inf.             |                   |
| 17 Caller ID notification |                   |
| Voice mail                |                   |
| Call waiting              |                   |
| Call forwarding           |                   |
| Nus. call blocking        |                   |
| Caller ID request         |                   |
| In-call management        |                   |
| Set-in-call/arrival act   |                   |
| Remote access             |                   |
| Dual network              |                   |
| English guidance          |                   |
| Oversas service           |                   |
| Roaming setting           |                   |

22

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Settings                | 10 Call setting w/o ID    |
|                         | 29 Change security code   |
|                         | UMI setting               |
|                         | Scanning function         |
|                         | Lock setting              |
|                         | <b>Call time/cost</b>     |
|                         | 61 Call data              |
|                         | 60 Reset total cost/dura. |
|                         | Notice call cost          |
|                         | CLF max cost /ton         |
| <b>Clock</b>            |                           |
| 31 Set time             |                           |
| 39 Clock display        |                           |
| Auto power ON/OFF       |                           |
| Alarm setting           |                           |
| <b>Talk</b>             |                           |
| Volume                  |                           |
| 76 Noise reduction      |                           |
| 75 Quality alarm        |                           |
| 77 Recurred signal      |                           |
| 18 Setting when tolled  |                           |
| Set hold tone           |                           |
| <b>PuStTalk</b>         |                           |
| Auto answer setting     |                           |
| Ring time setting       |                           |
| Hands-free w/ PuSt/talk |                           |
| Caller ID setting       |                           |
| PuSt/talk arrival act   |                           |

19

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Service            | Additional service  |
|                    | Service numbers     |
|                    | 2n1 setting         |
|                    | Multi number        |
|                    | Char-umoji          |
|                    | Add to phonebook    |
|                    | Search phonebook    |
|                    | PuSt/talk phonebook |
|                    | Dial/review. calls  |
|                    | 24 UIM operation    |
| 0 Own number       |                     |
| 26 UIM operation   |                     |
| Phonebook settings |                     |
| 44 Alarm           |                     |
| 45 Schedule        |                     |
| 95 ToDo            |                     |
| 42 Free memo       |                     |
| 85 Calculator      |                     |
| 38 Guide           |                     |
| Common phrase/dic. |                     |

23

■ **Manner Mode**  
During standby/During a call → **#** (for at least one second)

■ **Public Mode (Drive Mode)**  
From the Stand-by display → **\*** (for at least one second)

## Network Services

### Voice Mail Service

- **Activating**  
 (☎) → Service → Voice mail → Activate → YES  
 → YES → Enter a ring time (seconds).
- **Deactivating**  
 (☎) → Service → Voice mail → Deactivate → YES
- **Playing Back Messages**  
 (☎) → Service → Voice mail  
 → Play messages → YES  
 → Operate following the voice guidance.

24

### Major Icons



- : Battery level (estimate)
- : During Lock All
- : During Personal Data Lock
- : During Keypad Dial Lock
- : During Secret Mode or Secret Data Only
- : During IC Card Lock
- : During ANSHIN-KEY Lock

28

### Call Waiting Service

- **Activating**  
 (☎) → Service → Call waiting → Activate → YES
- **Deactivating**  
 (☎) → Service → Call waiting → Deactivate → YES
- **Answering an Incoming Call during a Call**  
 A call comes in during a call → .  
 Each time you press , you can switch the parties you talk with.

25

### Call Forwarding Service

- **Activating**  
 (☎) → Service → Call forwarding → Activate  
 → Register fwd number → Enter the phone number of the forwarding destination  
 → Set ring time → Enter a ring time (seconds)  
 → Activate → YES
- **Deactivating**  
 (☎) → Service → Call forwarding  
 → Deactivate → YES

26

### Services Available with FOMA Phone

| Available service   | Phone number                        |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Directory assistance service<br>(Charges apply, guidance fee + call fee)<br>※ Listed phone numbers only can be given. | (No prefix) 104                     |
| Telegrams<br>(Telegram charges apply)   | (No prefix) 115                     |
| Time check (Charges apply)  | (No prefix) 117                     |
| Weather forecast (Charges apply)  | City code of the desired area +1770 |
| Emergency calls to police   | (No prefix) 119                     |
| Emergency calls to fire station and ambulance   | (No prefix) 118                     |
| Emergency calls for accidents at sea  | (No prefix) 171                     |
| Disaster messaging service<br>(Charge apply)  | (No prefix) 106                     |
| Collect calls<br>(Charges apply, guidance fee + call fee)   |                                     |

27

### <Emergency Contact Number for Loss Etc.>

#### Omakase Lock

※ Omakase Lock is a pay service. You are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the use or during the suspension.

Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock

**0120-524-360**

Business hours: 24 hours

#### Other Emergency Calls

- <Phone number: >
- <Phone number: >
- <Phone number: >

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

31

: Radio waves reception level (estimate)

: During Self Mode

: While Vibrator is set to other than "OFF"  
(See page 17)

: While Ring Volume is set to "Silent" or Mail/Msg. Ring Time is set to "OFF"

: During Manner Mode (See page 23)

: During Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 23)

: While Side Keys Guard is set to "ON"  
(See page 21)

30

(white): Unread i-mode mail or SMS messages exist.

(white): Unread Messages RIF exist

(white): i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center.

(white): Messages RIF are held at the i-mode Center.

: i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center (While Receive Option Setting is set to "ON").

29

<Cutout line>



## Quick Manual "For Overseas Use"

### Loss of theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas

- ▶DoCoMo Information Center\* (available 24 hours a day)
  - From a DoCoMo mobile phone International call access code for the country you stay (Table 1) (toll free)
  - \*You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a landing phone, etc.
- ※ You use P904i, you should dial the number +61-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press and hold the "0" key for at least one second).
- From a landing phone
  - ▶Universal numbers
    - International prefix number for the universal numbers (Table 2)
    - You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
  - ※ See page 13 and page 14 for international call access codes for major countries (Table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (Table 2).

## Respective Communication Systems and Communication Services Available

You can use this FOMA phone in the 3G roaming area.

| Communication Service | 3G                    | Communication Service | 3G                               |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Voice call            | <input type="radio"/> | SMS                   | <input type="radio"/>            |
| Video phone call      | <input type="radio"/> | I-Channel             | <input type="radio"/>            |
| I-mode                | <input type="radio"/> | Data communication    | <input checked="" type="radio"/> |
| I-mode mail           | <input type="radio"/> |                       |                                  |

- Available
- × Not available
- ※ Packet communication by connecting with a personal computer and G4K data communication are not available overseas.

## Failures encountered overseas

- ▶Network Technical Operation Center\* (available 24 hours a day)
  - From a DoCoMo mobile phone International call access code for the country you stay (Table 1) (toll free)
  - \*You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a landing phone, etc.
- ※ You use P904i, you should dial the number +61-3-5718-1414 (to dial "+", press and hold the "0" key for at least one second).
- From a landing phone
  - ▶Universal numbers
    - International prefix number for the universal numbers (Table 2)
    - You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
  - ※ See page 13 and page 14 for international call access codes for major countries (Table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (Table 2).
  - If you lose your FOMA phone or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA phone.
  - If the FOMA phone that you purchased malfunctions, bring your FOMA phone to a repair center specified by DoCoMo after you return to Japan.

## Setting a Search Method of Carrier

- Setting at purchase: Auto
- Settings→Network setting
  - ▶Network search mode→Select an item.
  - Auto..... Automatically re-connect to another carrier. The setting is completed.
  - Manual..... Displays the list of carriers.
  - Network re-search..... When set to "Auto", automatically switches to an available carrier. The setting is completed. When set to "Manual", displays the list of carriers.
- Select a carrier.

## Preparing for Overseas Use

### Things to prepare

- The UIM (other than the one) that supports WORLD WING
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (option)

### Setting of i-mode

- Setting in Japan
  - Menu→English Menu→Options
  - ▶International Settings
  - I-mode services Settings→Select "Yes"
  - Enter your I-mode password→Select
- Setting overseas
  - Menu→English Menu→Options
  - ▶International Settings
  - I-mode services Settings→Select "Yes"
  - Enter your I-mode password→Select

## Selecting Carrier to Preferentially Connect to

- Settings→Network setting→PLMN setting
  - Highlight <Not recorded> and press
  - PLMN list select→Select a carrier→
  - YES

## Displaying the Carrier on the Stand-by Display

- Settings→Network setting
  - Operator name display
  - Display ON or Display OFF

## Remote Access

- Activate Remote Access
  - Service→Remote access→Activate
  - YES
- Deactivate Remote Access
  - Service→Remote access→Deactivate
  - YES

## Set Time

- Settings→Clock→Set time
- Auto time adjust ON

## Display

The network you use is displayed on the Stand-by display.



## Setting after Returning to Japan

- After you return to Japan, the FOMA network is automatically searched and set.
- When you have set to switch networks manually
  - Settings→Network setting
  - Network search mode→Manual→DoCoMo

## Making/Receiving a Call

### Make a Call to Outside the Country You Stay (Including Japan)

- Making an international call to Japan Using Phonebook  
→ Bring up the detailed Phonebook display  
→ → Dial

Press to make an international videophone call.

- Making an international call Using "+, \*"  
 (for at least one second) → Enter

"Country code - Area code (City code) - Destination phone number" → → → Enter  
Press to make an international videophone call.  
Enter "81" as a country code when you make an international call to Japan.

When the area code (city code) begins with "0", enter it except for the "0". However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.

8

## Country Codes for Major Countries

Use the following country codes when you make international calls or when you set Int'l Dial Assist.

(As of May 2007)

| Service area   | Country code | Service area               | Country code |
|----------------|--------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| Australia      | 61           | Monaco                     | 377          |
| Belgium        | 32           | Netherlands                | 31           |
| Brazil         | 55           | New Zealand                | 64           |
| Canada         | 1            | Norway                     | 47           |
| China          | 86           | Philippines                | 63           |
| Czech Republic | 420          | Ireland                    | 48           |
| Denmark        | 45           | Portugal                   | 351          |
| Finland        | 358          | Russia                     | 7            |
| France         | 33           | Singapore                  | 65           |
| Germany        | 49           | South Korea                | 82           |
| Greece         | 30           | Spain                      | 34           |
| Hong Kong      | 852          | Sweden                     | 46           |
| Hungary        | 36           | Switzerland                | 41           |
| India          | 91           | Taiwan                     | 886          |
| Indonesia      | 62           | Thailand                   | 66           |
| Ireland        | 353          | Turkey                     | 90           |
| Italy          | 39           | United Arab Emirates       | 971          |
| Luxembourg     | 352          | United Kingdom             | 44           |
| Macao          | 853          | United States of America 1 | 1            |
| Malaysia       | 60           | Vietnam                    | 84           |

12

## Make a Call to a Phone in the Country You Stay

Enter a destination phone number → → to make a videophone call.

- Making a Call Using Phonebook  
Bring up the detailed Phonebook display  
→ → "Original phone No."

## Make a Call to a Person who is Staying Overseas and Using WORLD WING

When you make a call to a person who is also internationally roaming, make the call in the same way as to make international calls to Japan even if he/she is in the country you stay.

## Receive a Call

Press → when a call comes in.  
(For videophone call, press → → .)

9

\*For the code for the countries other than listed in the table, or for details, refer to the DoCoMo Global Service web page.

## International Call Access Codes for Major Countries (Table 1)

(As of May 2007)

| Service area   | Access code    | Service area         | Access code |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------|-------------|
| Australia      | 0011           | Malaysia             | 00          |
| Belgium        | 00             | Monaco               | 00          |
| Brazil         | 0041/0021/0023 | Netherlands          | 00          |
| Canada         | 011            | New Zealand          | 00          |
| China          | 00             | Philippines          | 00          |
| Czech Republic | 00             | Portugal             | 00          |
| Denmark        | 00             | Russia               | 810         |
| Finland        | 00990          | South Korea          | 001         |
| France         | 00             | Spain                | 00          |
| Germany        | 00             | Sweden               | 00          |
| Greece         | 001            | Switzerland          | 00          |
| Hong Kong      | 001            | Taiwan               | 002         |
| India          | 00             | Thailand             | 001         |
| Indonesia      | 001            | Turkey               | 00          |
| Ireland        | 00             | United Arab Emirates | 00          |
| Italy          | 00             | United Kingdom       | 00          |

13

## Using Network Services

- Remote Access\*\*

→ Service → Overseas service  
→ Remote access (Int.)

- Set Roaming Guidance\*\*

→ Service → Roaming setting  
→ Set Roaming guidance

- Call Barring\*\*

→ Service → Roaming setting  
→ Call barring

- Voice Mail (International)

→ Service → Overseas service  
→ Voice mail (Int.)

- Call Forwarding (International)

→ Service → Overseas service  
→ Call forwarding (Int.)

10

- Roaming Guidance (International)  
 → Service → Overseas service  
→ Roaming guidance (Int.)

\*\* Set the functions in Japan.

11

## Inquiries

For lost, stolen, and cost settlement, or malfunction of your FOMA phone overseas, refer to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" on cover page of Quick Manual "For Overseas Use", or "Failures encountered overseas" on page 1.

- You need to add the "international call access code (Table 1)" that is assigned to the country you stay or "international prefix number for the universal number (Table 2)" to the head of each phone number for inquiries.

- Note that, in many cases, the universal number may not be used from a mobile phone, public phone, or hotel phone, etc.

15

## International Prefix Numbers for the Universal Number (Table 2)

(As of May 2007)

| Service area | International prefix number | Service area             | International prefix number |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Argentina    | 00                          | Luxembourg               | 00                          |
| Australia    | 0011                        | Malaysia                 | 00                          |
| Austria      | 00                          | Netherlands              | 00                          |
| Belgium      | 00                          | New Zealand              | 00                          |
| Brazil       | 0021                        | Norway                   | 00                          |
| Canada       | 011                         | Philippines              | 001                         |
| China        | 00                          | Singapore                | 001                         |
| Colombia     | 009                         | South Korea              | 001                         |
| Denmark      | 00                          | Spain                    | 00                          |
| Finland      | 990                         | Sweden                   | 00                          |
| France       | 00                          | Switzerland              | 00                          |
| Germany      | 00                          | Taiwan                   | 00                          |
| Hong Kong    | 001                         | Thailand                 | 001                         |
| Ireland      | 00                          | United Kingdom           | 00                          |
| Israel       | 014                         | United States of America | 011                         |
| Italy        | 00                          |                          |                             |

14

## Don't forget your FOMA phone ... or your manners!

### In the following cases, be certain to turn the power off.

#### ■ Where use is prohibited

Be sure to turn off the power to your FOMA phone in airplanes and in hospitals.

※Persons with electronic medical equipment are in places other than the actual wards.

Make sure you have the power switched off even if you are in a lobby or waiting room.

#### ■ When in crowded places such as packed trains, where you could be near a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator

The implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator operation can be affected by radio emissions from the FOMA phone.

### In the following cases, be certain to set Public Mode.

#### ■ While driving

Using the FOMA phone interferes with safe driving and could cause danger.

※Park the car in a safe place before using the FOMA phone, or switch to Public Mode.

#### ■ When in theaters, movie theaters, museums, and similar venues

If you use your FOMA phone where you are supposed to be quiet, you will disturb those around you.

### Adjust the volume of your voice and ring tone according to where you are.

#### ■ If you use the FOMA phone in quiet places such as restaurants and hotel lobbies, keep the volume of your voice and other sounds down.

#### ■ Do not block thoroughfares when using the FOMA phone.

## Respect the privacy.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### These functions help you keep your manners in public.

Handy functions are available such as for setting the response to incoming calls and setting the tones to silent.

#### ● Public Mode (Drive Mode/Power Off) (Page 77 and page 79)

The guidance that you are currently driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone or the guidance that you are in a place where you should turn off the power is played back to the caller. Then the call is disconnected.

#### ● Record Message function (Page 80)

Callers can record a message when you cannot come to the phone.

#### ● Vibrator (Page 130)

When the vibrator is set, it vibrates for incoming calls.

#### ● Manner Mode/Super Silent/Original Manner (Page 134)

In Manner Mode or Super Silent, the keypad sound, ring tone and other sounds from the FOMA phone are silenced.

In Original Manner, you can set whether or not to activate the Record Message function, and can change the settings for the vibrator and ring tone.

※The shutter sound cannot be silenced.

Optional services are also available, such as Voice Mail Service (page 427) and Call Forwarding Service (page 430).

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of Information materials.

**From i-mode** i Menu ▶ 料金&お申込・設定(Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶  
ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site) **Packet communication charges free**

**From PC** My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)  
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode .
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.


### General inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

\* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **151** (toll free)

\* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

### Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **113** (toll free)

\* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

\* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

### Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <DoCoMo Information Center> (available 24 hours a day)

#### From a DoCoMo mobile phone

International call access code for the country you stay (Table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114\*** (toll free)

\* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a landline phone, etc.

※If you use P904i, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", press and hold the "0" key for at least one second).

#### From a landline phone

<●Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151\***

\* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※See page 450 for international call access codes for major countries (Table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (Table 2).

●If you lose your FOMA phone or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA phone.

●If the FOMA phone you purchased malfunctions, bring your FOMA phone to a repair counter specified by DoCoMo after you return to Japan.

### Failures encountered overseas

<Network Technical Operation Center> (available 24 hours a day)

#### From a DoCoMo mobile phone

International call access code for the country you stay (Table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414\*** (toll free)

\* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a landline phone, etc.

※If you use P904i, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", press and hold the "0" key for at least one second).

#### From a landline phone

<●Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600\***

\* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※See page 450 for international call access codes for major countries (Table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (Table 2).



Do not forget your cellular phone ... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

### Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.



Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, being used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



PRINTED WITH  
SOY INK  
This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

May '07 (Ver.1.2)



3TR004999AAA  
F0507F0 - (A)

# FOMA® P904i

## Manual for Data Communication

|   |    |
|---|----|
| Data Communication Available from FOMA Phone .....                      | 1  |
| Before Using .....  | 1  |
| Preparation Flow for Data Communication .....                           | 3  |
| <b>For Using Windows® XP/Windows® 2000 Professional</b>                 |    |
| Installing Communication Setup Files (Driver) .....                     | 4  |
| Preparing Bluetooth Communication ..... (Dial-up Communication Service) | 7  |
| FOMA PC Setup Software .....  | 8  |
| Communication Setting by FOMA PC Setup Software .....                   | 9  |
| Installing FOMA PC Setup Software .....                                 | 9  |
| Setting Communication .....   | 12 |
| Carrying Out Set Communication .....                                    | 16 |
| Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software .....                               | 17 |
| Communication Setup Optimization .....                                  | 18 |
| Access Point Name (APN) Setting .....                                   | 19 |
| Setting Dial-up Network .....   | 20 |
| Making Dial-up Connection .....   | 29 |
| Using FirstPass PC Software .....                                       | 30 |
| <b>For Using Windows Vista™</b>   |    |
| Installing Communication Setup Files (Driver) .....                     | 32 |
| Preparing Bluetooth Communication ..... (Dial-up Communication Service) | 33 |
| FOMA PC Setup Software .....  | 34 |
| Communication Setting by FOMA PC Setup Software .....                   | 35 |
| Installing FOMA PC Setup Software .....                                 | 35 |
| Setting Communication .....   | 37 |
| Carrying Out Set Communication .....                                    | 41 |
| Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software .....                               | 42 |
| Access Point Name (APN) Setting .....                                   | 43 |
| Setting Dial-up Network .....   | 44 |
| Making Dial-up Connection .....   | 47 |
| Using FirstPass PC Software .....                                       | 48 |
| <b>Using AT Command</b>   |    |
| AT Command .....  | 50 |
| AT Command List .....   | 51 |

### About Manual for Data Communication

This manual explains the items required for making data communication using FOMA P904i as well as how to install "P904i communication setup files" (driver)/"FOMA PC setup software" on the CD-ROM.

### About Windows® Operation

This manual explains the contents compliant with Windows® XP Service Pack 2. Some procedures and displays in this manual may differ depending on your operating environment.

## Data Communication Available from FOMA Phone

The data communication services you can use by connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer are classified as follows: packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer (OBEX).

The FOMA phone is equipped with the adapter function for packet communication.

- This FOMA phone does not support the IP connection.
- Packet communication by connecting with a personal computer and 64K data communication are not available overseas.

### Packet Communication

This service requires a communication fee according to the amount of data you sent and received. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)

It uses an access point which supports FOMA packet communication such as DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U”/“mopera”.

To use this service, connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) or Bluetooth, and then carry out settings. The packet communication is suitable for using applications which require the high-speed communication.

To carry out the settings and connection, see page 3 and after.

- The packet communication is charged according to the amount of data you sent and received. Note that a communication fee becomes expensive if you send/receive a large amount of data such as by browsing web pages having many images, or by downloading the data.

### 64K Data Communication

This service requires a communication fee according to the duration of connection. By connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) or Bluetooth, you can execute 64 kbps communication.

To use this service, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U”/“mopera”, or an ISDN-synchronous 64K access point.

To carry out the settings and connection, see page 3 and after.

- The 64K data communication is charged according to the duration of connection. Note that a communication fee becomes expensive if you use this service for a long time.

### Data Transfer (OBEX)

This service sends/receives data using infrared rays or the FOMA USB Cable (option). By infrared exchange, you can exchange data with another FOMA phone or a device having the infrared exchange function such as a personal computer.

To perform data transfer (OBEX) between the FOMA phone and personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable, install the DoCoMo keitai datalink or Data Link Software.

### Information

- You cannot use PHS services such as PIAFS (32K/64K data communication) from the FOMA phone.
- The FOMA phone does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA phone does not support the FAX communication.
- You can perform data communications by connecting the FOMA phone with DoCoMo's PDA “sigmarion II”, “sigmarion III”, or “musea”. When you use “sigmarion II” or “musea”, the update is required. For details such as how to update them, refer to the DoCoMo web page.

## Before Using

### Charge of Internet service provider

To use the Internet, you need to pay the charge for the Internet service provider you use. Besides the FOMA service fee, you need to directly pay this charge to the Internet service provider. For details on the charge, contact the Internet service provider you use. You can use the DoCoMo Internet access service, “mopera U”/“mopera”. To use “mopera U”, subscription (charged) is required. To use “mopera”, subscription and monthly charge are not required.

### Setting access point (Internet service provider, etc.)

The access points for the packet communication and 64K data communication differ. To use the packet communication, connect to an access point which supports packet communication. To use the 64K data communication, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN-synchronous 64K.

- You cannot connect to the DoPa access point.
- You cannot connect to PHS 64K/32K data communication access point such as PIAFS.

### About user authentication for accessing network

User authentication (ID and password) may be required at connection to some access points. In this case, enter your ID and password on the communication software (dial-up network). ID and password are specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator of the access point. For details, contact the provider or network administrator.

### About access authentication for using browser

If you need FirstPass (user certificate), install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM and make the setting.

For details, see “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM.

## Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To carry out the communication using the FOMA phone, the following conditions are required:

- The personal computer to be used can use the FOMA USB Cable (option).
- When connecting using Bluetooth, the personal computer should support Dial-up Networking Profile of Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.1 or Ver. 1.2.
- The PDA to be used should support FOMA packet communication and 64K data communication.
- Within the FOMA service area
- For packet communication, the access point should support packet communication of the FOMA.
- For 64K data communication, the access point should support the FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN-synchronous 64K.

Even when these conditions are satisfied, if the base station is congested or the radio wave conditions are bad, you may not carry out the communication.

## About Operating Environment

For the data communication, the following operating environment is required for your personal computer:

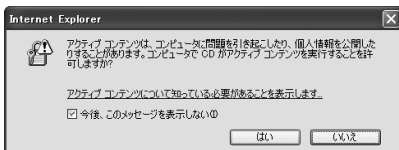
| Item                 | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
| PC main unit         | PC/AT compatible model<br>When using the FOMA USB Cable (option): USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 compliant)<br>When using Bluetooth: Bluetooth Specification Ver. 1.1 or Ver. 1.2 compliant (Dial-up Networking Profile)<br>Display resolution 800 x 600 dots, high color 16 bits or more recommended. |
| OS                   | Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition, Windows Vista™ (Japanese version in each)   |
| Memory requirements  | Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional: 64 Mbytes or more<br>Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition: 128 Mbytes or more<br>Windows Vista™: 512 Mbytes or more (Japanese version in each)  |
| Hard disk space size | Unused memory space of 5 Mbytes or more   |

- The operation on the upgraded OS is not guaranteed.
- The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on the system environment.

When you set the CD-ROM on your personal computer, an alert message might appear on the display as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but you can use your computer without any problem.

Click “はい” (YES).

※The example message below is for when you use Windows® XP. The message might differ depending on the environment of the computer you use.



## Necessary Devices

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA phone and personal computer:

- FOMA USB Cable (option) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (option)※
- Provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM”

※For USB connection

### Information

- Purchase a dedicated FOMA USB Cable or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01. The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used because the shape of the connector differs.
- In this manual, operations are described for the case of using FOMA USB Cable.

## Connect FOMA phone to Other Devices

The following three ways are available for connecting the FOMA phone to another device:

### Using FOMA USB Cable

Connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer provided with the USB port using the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 3)

This way of connection applies to all types of communications such as packet communication, 64K data communication, and data transfer.

- Set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode” for data communication.  
Operate (F2) ▶ Settings ▶ Other settings ▶ USB mode setting ▶ Communication mode”.
- You need to install the P904i communication setup files (driver) before use.

### Using Bluetooth

Connect a Bluetooth compatible personal computer wirelessly to the FOMA phone. (See page 7 or page 33)

This way of connection applies to packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Use a Bluetooth-linked standard modem or a Bluetooth modem provided by the Bluetooth maker. Contact the maker of your personal computer or Bluetooth maker for how to install and to set up.

### Using Infrared Data Exchange

By using infrared rays, you can send/receive data between your FOMA phone and another FOMA phone, mobile phone, or personal computer provided with the infrared data exchange function.

This applies to data transfer only.

## ■ Glossary of Terms

### ● APN

The abbreviation of Access Point Name, which is used to identify an Internet service provider or Intranet LAN system you access for packet communication. For example, "mopera U" is expressed with character string "mopera.net".

### ● cid

The abbreviation of Context Identifier, which is a registration number of the APN that is registered in the FOMA phone in advance for packet communication. In the FOMA phone, you can register up to 10 cid numbers (1 to 10).

### ● Administrator right

Means the right with which the user can access all functions of Windows® XP, Windows® 2000 Professional, or Windows Vista™ system, in this manual. Generally, the user in the administrators group has this right. Users without the administrator right can use only specific functions of the system; therefore, the operation such as installing the communication setup files (driver) results in an error. For the setting of the PC administrator right, contact the maker of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

### ● DNS

The abbreviation of Domain Name System, which converts an easy-to-understand name for people, for example, "nttdocomo.co.jp", into an address indicated by an easy-to-manage number for computers.

### ● OBEX

The abbreviation of Object Exchange, which is the international data communication protocol defined by IrDA (Infrared Data Association). By using devices and software supporting the OBEX protocol, you can send/receive data among various devices such as mobile phones, personal computers, digital cameras, and printers.

### ● IrDA

The abbreviation of Infrared Data Association, which is the international organization that establishes and promotes a protocol of data communication via infrared rays.

### ● IrMC

The abbreviation of Ir Mobile Communications, which is the protocol defined by IrDA that provides how to exchange data such as Phonebook entries, schedule events, mail or free memos. Also, it provides that communication between devices should be based on the OBEX protocol.

### ● QoS

The abbreviation of Quality of Service, which indicates the quality of network services. For the QoS setting of the FOMA phone, you can specify a connection either at a free baud rate or only at the maximum baud rate (upload: 64 kbps, download: 384 kbps). (After connection, the baud rate is variable.) For details, see page 56.

### ● Communication setup optimization (W-TCP)

A TCP parameter used to maximize the TCP/IP transmission capability when carrying out the packet communication in the FOMA network. To maximize the communication performance of the FOMA phone under the "Wireless", "W-CDMA", or "Windows®" environment, you need to optimize the TCP parameter.

### ● W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile phone communication systems (IMT-2000) authorized as the global standards. The FOMA phone conforms to the W-CDMA standard.

## Preparation Flow for Data Communication

The following outline shows a preparation flow for packet communication or 64K data communication.

### For USB connection

Connect a personal computer to the FOMA phone using the FOMA USB Cable (option).

### For Bluetooth connection

Connect a personal computer wirelessly to the FOMA phone using Bluetooth. (See page 7 or page 33)

Install the "P904i communication setup files" (driver). (See page 4 or page 32)

Check the setting after installation. (See page 6 or page 33)

Check the modem. (See page 8 or page 34)

Install the "FOMA PC setup software". (See page 8 or page 34)

Carry out the setting manually without using the "FOMA PC setup software". (See page 20, page 30, page 44 or page 48)

Connect. (See page 16 or page 29, page 41 or page 47)

### ■ Provided "FOMA P904i CD-ROM"

When connecting the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable for packet communication, install the "P904i communication setup files" (driver) from the provided "FOMA P904i CD-ROM" onto the personal computer. You are advised to install "FOMA PC setup software" for establishing the APN or dial-up setting easily when you communicate.

See page 4 through page 7 for how to install the "P904i communication setup files" (driver).

See page 9 for how to install the "FOMA PC setup software".

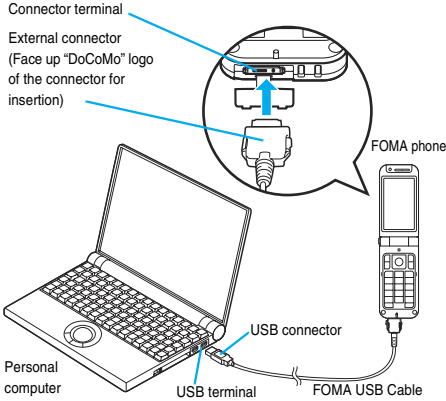
## Connect the FOMA Phone to a PC

The following steps explain how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (option).

- 1 Check the direction of the connector terminal of the FOMA phone, then straight insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable until it clicks.



## 2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the personal computer.

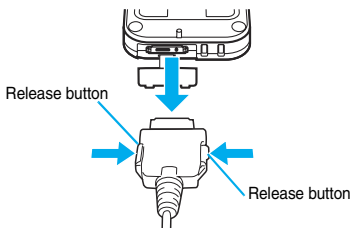


### Information

- Do not forcibly insert the FOMA USB Cable. Malfunction may result. Insert each connector in the correct direction at the correct angle; otherwise, you will fail connection. When the direction and angle are correct, you can insert a connector smoothly without the strong force. If you fail to insert a connector, check its shape and direction once more without inserting a connector forcibly.
- Purchase a dedicated FOMA USB Cable. (The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used because the shape of the connector differs.)
- Symbol "☎" appears on the FOMA phone when the FOMA phone recognizes the connection with the personal computer after you install the communication setup files (driver) for packet communication or 64K data communication. Before you install the communication setup files (driver), the FOMA phone does not recognize the connection with the personal computer, and symbol "☎" does not appear.

### Removing

1. While holding down the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable, straight pull out the connector.
2. Pull out the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the personal computer.



### Information

- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable forcibly. Malfunction may result.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication. Erroneous operation or malfunction of the personal computer or FOMA phone, or loss of data could result.
- Do not connect/disconnect the FOMA USB Cable in succession. Once you connect the cable, wait for a while, then disconnect it and vice versa.

# For Using Windows® XP/ Windows® 2000 Professional

## Installing Communication Setup Files (Driver)

Installing the communication setup files (driver) is required when you connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) for the first time.

- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, you do not need to install the communication setup files (driver).
- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

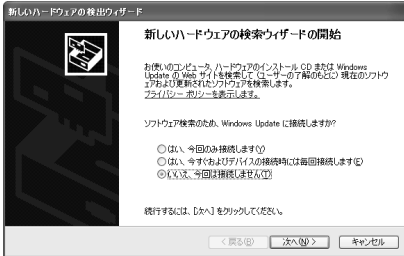
### For Windows® XP

- 1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable. (See page 3)
- 2 Start Windows®, then set the provided "FOMA P904i CD-ROM" into the personal computer.
- 3 Close the "FOMA P904i CD-ROM" display.
  - This display automatically appears when you set "FOMA P904i CD-ROM" into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on the settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.
  - If this display appears during installation of the "P904i communication setup files" (driver), close the display.
- 4 Turn on the power to the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

## 5 Start installation.

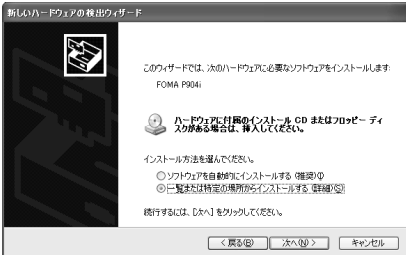
Pop-up message “新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)” appears for a few seconds from the indicator of the task bar, then the display below appears. Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません (No, do not connect now)” and click “次へ (Next)”.

- This display may not appear depending on the personal computer you use.



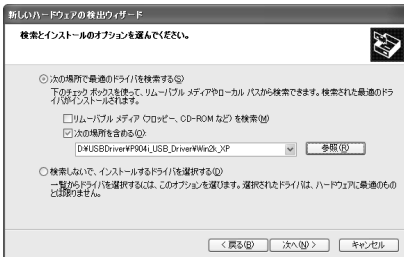
## 6 Select how to install.

Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細) [Install from the list or a specific place (details)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



## 7 Select a driver.

Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する (Search the place below for the appropriate driver)”, and uncheck “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど) を検索 [Search the removable media (floppy disk, CD-ROM, etc.)]”. Then check “次の場所を含める (Include the place below)”. Click “参照 (Browse)”; specify “-CD-ROM drive name>¥USBDrive¥P904i\_USB\_Driver¥Win2k\_XP”; then click “次へ (Next)”. (The CD-ROM drive name varies depending on the personal computer you use.)



## 8 Click “完了 (Complete)”.

All the four “P904i communication setup files” (driver) (see page 6) are installed.

After you complete the installation of all the “P904i communication setup files” (driver), pop-up message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。(New hardware is installed, and the system is ready.)” appears for a few seconds from the indicator of the task bar.

Next, confirm that the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) are installed correctly. (See page 6)

## For Windows® 2000 Professional

### 1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable. (See page 3)

### 2 Start Windows®, then set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.

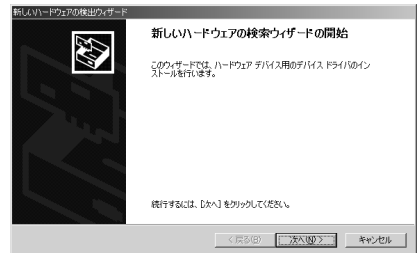
### 3 Close the “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” display.

- This display automatically appears when you set “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on the settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.
- If this display appears during installation of the “P904i communication setup files” (driver), close the display.

### 4 Turn on the power to the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

### 5 Start installation.

Click “次へ (Next)”.



### 6 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨) [Search for the appropriate driver for the device (recommended)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

- “USB DEVICE” may appear depending on the personal computer you use.

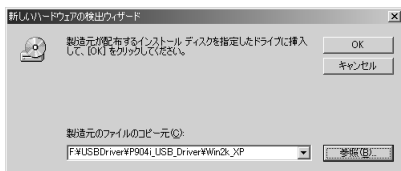
### 7 Select “場所を指定 (Specify a place)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 8 Specify the folder you want to search for.

The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive name>¥USBDriver ¥P904i\_USB\_Driver¥Win2k\_XP".

After specifying the folder you want to search for, click "OK". (The CD-ROM drive name varies depending on the personal computer you use.)

- The driver is common to Windows® XP.



## 9 Confirm the driver name (see page 6), then click "次へ (Next)".

"FOMA P904i" is displayed here.

- "USB DEVICE" may appear depending on the personal computer you use.

## 10 Click "完了 (Complete)".

All the four "P904i communication setup files" (driver) (see page 6) are installed.

Next, confirm that the "P904i communication setup files" (driver) are installed correctly. (See page 6)

## Confirm Installed Driver

Confirm that the "P904i communication setup files" (driver) are installed correctly.

- 1 <For Windows® XP>  
"スタート (Start)" ▶ Open "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" ▶ "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)" ▶ Open "システム (System)".

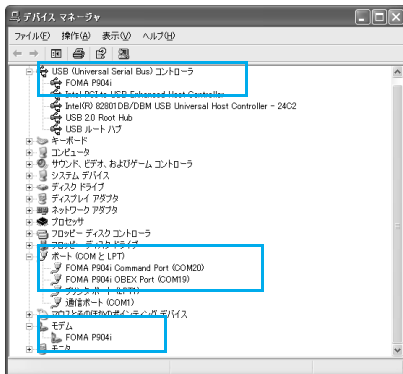
<For Windows® 2000 Professional>

- 1 "スタート (Start)" ▶ "設定 (Setting)" ▶ Open "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" ▶ Open "システム (System)".

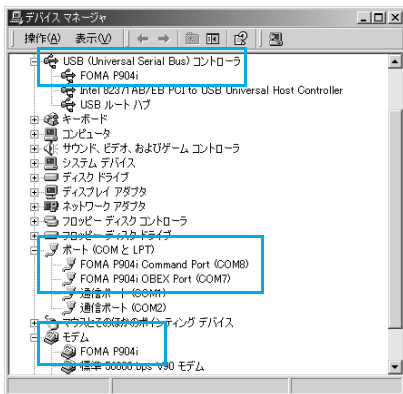
- 2 Click the "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab  
▶ Click "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

## 3 Click each device, then confirm the installed driver names.

Confirm that all driver names are displayed under "ポート (COMとLPT) [Port (COM/LPT)]", "モデム (Modem)", and "USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ [USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller]".



For Windows® XP



For Windows® 2000 Professional

※ The COM port number varies depending on the personal computer you use.

The following drivers are installed by installation of the "P904i communication setup files" (driver):

| Device name   | P904i communication setup file (driver) name        |
|---|---|
| ポート (COMとLPT) [Port (COM/LPT)]  | ・ FOMA P904i Command Port<br>・ FOMA P904i OBEX Port |
| モデム (Modem)   | ・ FOMA P904i  |
| USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ [USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller] | ・ FOMA P904i  |

To set an access point with the "FOMA PC setup software", see page 9.

To set an access point without the "FOMA PC setup software", see page 20 or page 30.

## Uninstall Communication Setup Files (Driver)

When uninstalling the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) is necessary (such as when upgrading the version), perform the operation below. The operation here explains how to uninstall the P904i communication setup files using Windows® XP as an example.

- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

**1** If the FOMA phone is connected to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option), disconnect the FOMA USB Cable.

**2** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ Open “プログラムの追加と削除 (Add and delete programs)”.

**3** Select “FOMA P904i USB” and click “変更と削除 (Change and delete)”.

**4** Click “OK”.

**5** Click “はい (Yes)” to restart Windows®.

The uninstallation is then completed.

- If you click “いいえ (No)”, restart Windows® manually.

### Information

- If you remove the FOMA USB Cable from the personal computer while installing the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) or click the “キャンセル (Cancel)” button to stop installation, the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) may not be installed correctly. In this case, open “USB Driver” → “Win2k\_XP” inside “FOMA P904i CD-ROM”, and execute “p904i\_un.exe” to delete the “P904i communication setup files” (driver), and then install the files again.

## <Dial-up Communication Service>

### Preparing Bluetooth Communication



You can make data communication by connecting a Bluetooth compatible personal computer wirelessly to your FOMA phone.

## Connect to Personal Computer for the First Time

To connect a personal computer to the FOMA phone for the first time, register the personal computer to the FOMA phone.

**1**  ▶ LifeKit ▶ Bluetooth  
▶ Accept dialup devices

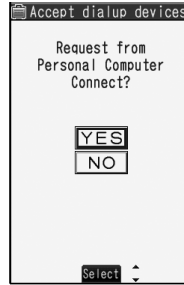
**2** Enter your Terminal Security Code.

- To cancel, press  (Quit) in standby. When no connection is made for five minutes in standby, the connection is automatically released.
- During standby, “ (blue)” lights.

**3** Search and register the Bluetooth device from the personal computer.

- Register the device from the personal computer while the FOMA phone is in standby.
- Refer to the operating manual of your personal computer for the details of how to operate it.  
(Depending on the personal computer you use, “探索 (search)” or “サーチ (search)” is used instead of “検索 (search)”, and “ペアリング (pairing)” is used instead of “機器登録 (register devices)”.)

**4** When the display for connection request appears, select “YES”.




**5** Select the text box for a Bluetooth pass key

▶ Enter the Bluetooth pass key ▶ Set

- You can enter 1 through 16 half-pitch alphanumeric characters for the Bluetooth pass key.
- Enter the same Bluetooth pass key for both the FOMA phone and personal computer.

**6** The personal computer is registered and a wireless connection starts.

When the connection is completed, “ (blue)” blinks.

### Information

- You cannot place the devices using the Headset service or Hands-free service in the state of “Accept registered” while the FOMA phone is in the state of “Accept dialup devices”.
- When the personal computer found multiple devices for registering the FOMA phone on the personal computer, identify the FOMA phone by the device name. When the personal computer found multiple devices having the same device names, identify the FOMA phone by the device address.
- In the state of “Accept dialup devices”, searches are made from all the Bluetooth devices around, however, you cannot connect to any service other than the Dial-up Communication service.

### ■ To connect to the registered personal computer

When you connect to the FOMA phone from a registered personal computer, place “Dial-up” in the state of “Accept registered”. Then you can make a connection from the personal computer to the FOMA phone by operating from the personal computer. You can connect even in the state of “Accept dialup devices”.

## Confirm the Modem

Before setting communication, confirm the name and COM port number of the modem used for connecting the dial-up service.

- 1 <For Windows® XP>  
“スタート (Start)”▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”▶ “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)”▶ Open “システム (System)”.

<For Windows® 2000 Professional>  
“スタート (Start)”▶ “設定 (Setting)”▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”▶ Open “システム (System)”.

- 2 Click the “ハードウェア (Hardware)” tab  
▶ Click “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)”.

- 3 Click each device, then confirm the modem name or COM port number.

The modem name or COM port number is displayed under “ポート (COMとLPT) [Port (COM/LPT)]” and “モデム (Modem)”.

To set an access point with the “FOMA PC setup software”, see page 9.

To set an access point without the “FOMA PC setup software”, see page 20 or page 30.

## Have Dial-up Communication Service Closed

You can close the Dial-up Communication service that is connected.

- 1 ▶ LifeKit▶ Bluetooth▶ Device list
- 2 Select the Bluetooth device that is connected.
- 3 Dial-up▶ YES

The Dial-up Communication service is closed.

## FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet communication or 64K data communication, you need to configure various settings related to the communication. Using the “FOMA PC setup software”, you can easily carry out the settings below. If required, you can set the packet communication and 64K data communication without using the “FOMA PC setup software”. (See page 20 and page 30)

### ■ Easy setting

You can easily carry out “dial-up creation for FOMA data communication” and “Communication setup optimization” by following the guidance.

### ■ Communication setup optimization

Before using “FOMA packet communication”, optimize communication settings in your personal computer.

To maximize the communication performance, communication setup optimization is needed.

### ■ Access point name (APN) setting

You can set an access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

The FOMA packet communication does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data communication.

You need to register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone in advance, and specify the registration number (cid) in the access point number field for connection.

By the default, “mopera.ne.jp”, the access point name (APN) of “mopera”, is registered in cid\*1, and “mopera.net”, that of “mopera U”, is registered in cid\*3. To connect to another service provider or Intranet LAN, however, you need to set the access point name (APN).

※“cid” is the abbreviation of “Context Identifier”, the number for storing the packet communication access point name (APN) to the FOMA phone.

### Information

- If the old-version “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)”, the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” or the older version than this “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” (older than version 4.0.0) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

## Communication Setting by FOMA PC Setup Software

### STEP1 Install Software

#### Install the “FOMA PC setup software”.

See page 9 for installation.

If the older version than this “FOMA PC setup software” (version 4.0.0) is already installed, you cannot install this “FOMA PC setup software”, so uninstall it in advance. See page 11 if the display appears to indicate that the old-version “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)”, or the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” is installed.

### STEP2 Prepare for Setup

#### Prepare for setup.

Before setup, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and correctly recognized by the personal computer. See page 3 for how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (option).

See page 7 for how to connect the Bluetooth devices.

If the FOMA phone is not correctly recognized by the personal computer, you cannot carry out settings and communication. See page 6 for confirming whether the FOMA phone is correctly recognized by the personal computer.

See page 4 through page 7 for how to install the “P904i communication setup files” (driver).

### STEP3 Setting Operation

#### Carry out the appropriate setting for the communication you use.

Setting the packet communication from “Easy Setting”

When using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point ..... page 12

When using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” ..... page 13

Setting the 64K data communication from “Easy Setting”

When using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point ..... page 14

When using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” ..... page 15

See page 18 for optimizing the packet communication performance.

See page 19 for setting an access point name (APN).

### STEP4 Connection

#### Connect to the Internet.

## Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet communication or 64K data communication, you need to configure various settings related to the communication.

Using the “FOMA PC setup software”, you can easily set up dial-up, communication setup optimization, and access point name (APN).

● Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

## Notes for Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

### Confirm that the FOMA phone is correctly recognized by your personal computer

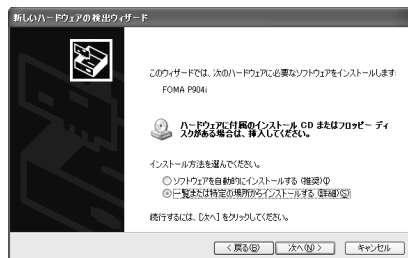
Before installing the “FOMA PC setup software”, you need to register the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) correctly on the device of the personal computer. (See page 6)

#### ■ When you connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer for the first time

The wizard shown below starts.

To use the FOMA data communication, you need to register the FOMA phone in your personal computer as a communication device.

See page 4 through page 7 for installation of the “P904i communication setup files” (driver).



## Install FOMA PC Setup Software

The explanation here uses the displays for when installing the FOMA PC setup software on Windows® XP. The displays are slightly different depending on the personal computer you use.

1 Set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into your personal computer.

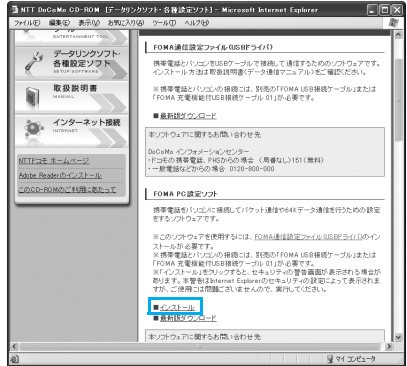
2 To install the “FOMA PC setup software”, click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setup software)”.

The recommended environment that the Menu operates is Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 or later. When the personal computer you use does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the Menu does not appear after you set the CD-ROM, operate as follows:  
Refer to the CD-ROM from “マイコンピュータ (My computer)”, then double-click “setup\_4.0.0.exe” in the “FOMA\_PCSET” folder. Go to step 4.

- If this display appears during installation of the “FOMA PC setup software”, close the display.

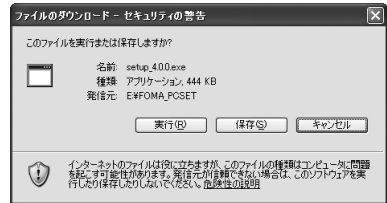


3 Click “インストール (Install)” under “FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”.



When you click “インストール (Install)”, an alert message might appear in the screen as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but you can use your computer without any problem.

- When the “ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (File download - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行 (Execute)”.



- When the “Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行する (Execute)”.



4 Click “次へ (Next)”.

Before starting setup, check that no other programs are currently running. If any program is running, click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to save and exit the program, then restart installation.

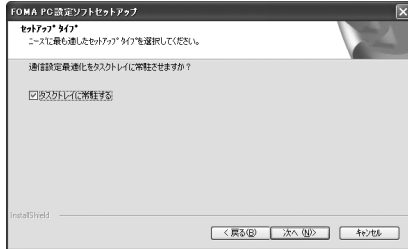
- See page 11 if the display appears to indicate that the old-version “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)”, old-version “FOMA データ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” or old-version “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” is installed.

5 Confirm the displayed contract contents.  
If you agree with the contents, click “はい (Yes)”.

## 6 Select a setup type.

After setup, you can select whether "Communication setup optimization" resides on the task tray. To make it reside, check "タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside on the task tray)" and click "次へ (Next)", then continue installation.

- Even if you do not check "タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside on the task tray)", you can select "メニュー (Menu)" → "通信設定最適化をタスクトレイに常駐させる (Make the communication setup optimization reside on the task tray)" on the "FOMA PC setup software" to modify settings.



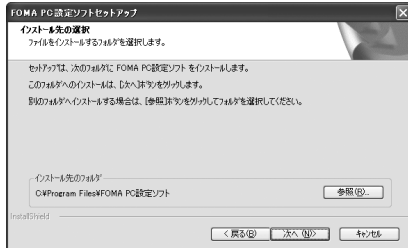
The "W-TCP" icon appears on the task tray at the bottom right (ordinarily) of the desk top.



## 7 Confirm the installation destination, then click "次へ (Next)".

To change the installation destination, click "参照 (Browse)"; specify any installation destination; then click "次へ (Next)".

(You can install the FOMA PC setup software in a different drive, however, proceed without changing unless you have a problem on hard disk space, etc.)



## 8 Confirm the program folder name, then click "次へ (Next)".

To change the program folder name, enter a new one, then click "次へ (Next)".



## 9 Click "完了 (Complete)".

After setup is completed, the "FOMA PC setup software" operation display appears.

### ■Displays at installation of the "FOMA PC setup software"

#### When the old-version "W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)" is installed

A warning display appears.

From "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete application)", uninstall the old-version "W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)".

#### When the old-version "FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)" is installed

A warning display appears.

From "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete application)", uninstall the old-version "FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)".

#### When the older version than this "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)" (version 4.0.0) is installed

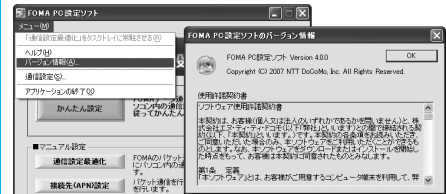
A warning display appears.

From "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete application)", uninstall the old-version "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)".

#### When you click "キャンセル (Cancel)" during the installation

A confirmation display appears when you click "キャンセル (Cancel)" or "いいえ (No)" during the setup operation. To continue the installation, click "いいえ (No)". To intentionally cancel, click "はい (Yes)" and "完了 (Complete)".

### ■Checking the version information about "FOMA PC setup software"



Select "メニュー (Menu)" → "バージョン情報 (Version information)" from the menu of the "FOMA PC setup software".

The version information about the "FOMA PC setup software" is displayed.



## Setting Communication

The operation below explains how to carry out various settings related to the packet communication and 64K data communication.

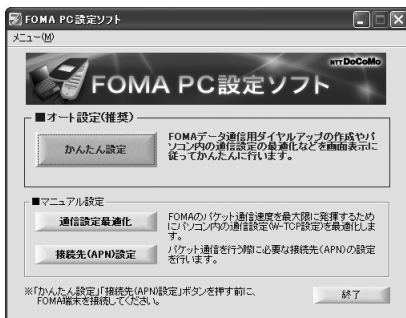
There are “auto setting” for easy operation and “manual setting” for the user familiar with personal computers. Before setting, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer.

### 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” ▶ Open “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”.

<For Windows® 2000 Professional>  
Select “スタート (Start)”→“プログラム (Programs)”→“FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”→Open “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”

Using this PC setup software, you can easily create FOMA dial-up setting by answering (selecting and entering) the displayed questions according to “the information of connected provider” and “connection method” you selected.

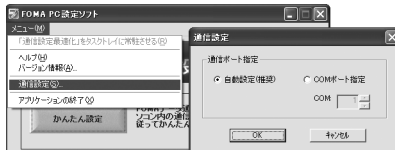
- See page 12 for setting the packet communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.
- See page 14 for setting the 64K data communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.
- See page 18 for executing “通信設定最適化 (communication setup optimization)”.
- See page 19 for setting “接続先 (APN) 設定 [access point name (APN) setting]”.



## Specify Communication Port

### 1 “メニュー (Menu)” of “FOMA PC setup software” ▶ Select “通信設定 (Communication setup)”.

- 自動設定 (推奨) [Auto-setup (recommended)]  
The connected FOMA phone is automatically specified. Usually, select “Auto-setup”.
- COMポート指定 (Specifying COM port)  
When specifying a COM port number, specify the COM port number (COM1 through 99) the FOMA phone is connected to.
- If you could not connect the FOMA phone by “Auto-setup” for connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, specify the COM port number.
- See page 21 for how to check the COM port number.



### 2 Click “OK”.

The settings are applied.

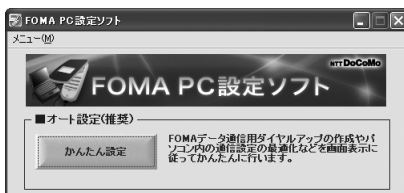
## Select Packet Communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”

### Using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The packet communication is a communication system you are charged according to the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the communication time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)

You can use the DoCoMo Internet access service, “mopera U”/“mopera”.

### 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



### 2 Select “パケット通信 (Packet communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 3 Select “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” or “『mopera』への接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To use “mopera U”, select “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)”. To use “mopera”, select “『mopera』への接続 (Connect to mopera)”.

When “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” is selected, the confirmation display appears asking whether you have signed up for it. If you have signed up, click “はい (YES)”.

- See page 13 for using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera”.

## 4 Click “OK”.

- The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.

## 5 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Connection name)” field.

- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.”.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, “モデム名 (Modem name)” becomes the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.
- For this FOMA phone, select “PPP接続 (PPP connection)” for “接続方式 (connection type)” because it supports only the PPP connection.
- Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection. You need to notify your caller ID for connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”. Select “設定しない (not set)” or “186を付加する (add 186)”.

## 6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

If the access point is “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can connect even if the “ユーザ名 (user name)” and “パスワード (password)” fields are blank.

- Select a user optionally.

## 7 Put a check mark for “最適化を行う (Optimize)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

- If optimized already, the confirmation display to optimize does not appear.

## 8 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

## 9 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 16)

- To make the optimization valid, you need to restart the personal computer.



## Using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The packet communication is a communication system you are charged according to the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the communication time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)

To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply for the service and sign a contract with the provider.

## 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.

## 2 Select “パケット通信 (Packet communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 4 Click “OK”.

- The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.

## 5 Enter an access point name.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field.

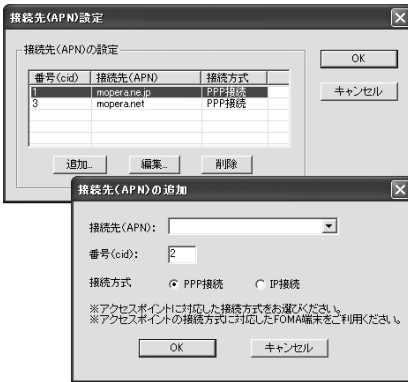
- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.”.
- In the “接続先 (APN) の選択 [Select an access point name (APN)]” field, “mopera.ne.jp (PPP接続) [mopera.ne.jp (PPP connection)]” is displayed as the default. Go to the “接続先 (APN) 設定 [Set an access point name (APN)]” display.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, “モデム名 (Modem name)” becomes the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.
- Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection. For the setting of the caller ID notification, follow the instructions from the provider you use.

## 6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定 [Set an access point name (APN)]”.

“mopera.ne.jp” is registered in “cid1” and “mopera.net” is registered in “cid3” by default. Click “追加 (Add)”, then enter the correct access point name (APN) for FOMA packet communication on the “接続先 (APN) の追加 [Add an access point name (APN)]” display. Click “OK”. The “パケット通信設定 (Packet communication setting)” display returns. Select the access point name (APN) you specified newly. If it is ok, click “OK”.

- For this FOMA phone, select “PPP接続 (PPP connection)” for “接続方式 (connection type)” because it supports only the PPP connection.

For a provider access point name (APN) or supported connection types, contact your provider.



## 7 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

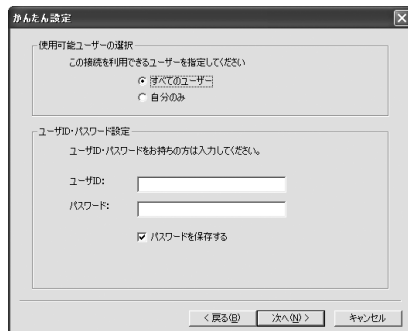
The display for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction information, then click “OK”.

## 8 Click “次へ (Next)”.

## 9 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

When specifying the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your Internet service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.

- Select a user optionally.



## 10 Put a check mark for “最適化を行う (Optimize)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

- If optimized already, the confirmation display to optimize does not appear.

## 11 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

## 12 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 16)

- To make the optimization valid, you need to restart the personal computer.

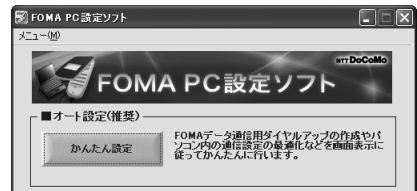


## Select 64K Data Communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”

### Using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data communication is a communication system you are charged according to the duration of connection. (Maximum communication speed: 64 kbps) You can use the DoCoMo Internet access service, “mopera U”/“mopera”.

## 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



## 2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 3 Select “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” or “『mopera』への接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To use “mopera U”, select “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)”. To use “mopera”, select “『mopera』への接続 (Connect to mopera)”. When “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” is selected, the confirmation display appears asking whether you have signed up for it. If you have signed up, click “はい (YES)”.

- See page 15 for using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera”.

## 4 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field. Confirm that “FOMA P904i” is displayed in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.

- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and ”.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, select the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.
- Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection. You need to notify your caller ID for connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”.



## 5 Click “次へ (Next)”.

If the access point is “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can connect even if the “ユーザ名 (user name)” and “パスワード (password)” fields are blank.

- Select a user optionally.

## 6 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

## 7 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

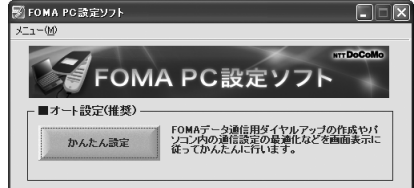
Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 16)



## Using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data communication is a communication system you are charged according to the duration of connection. (Maximum communication speed: 64 kbps) To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply for the service and sign a contract with the provider.

## 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



## 2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 4 Enter dial-up information.

When connecting to a provider supporting ISDN-synchronous 64K other than “mopera U” or “mopera”, register the following items when creating the dial-up.

- ①接続名 (Access point name) (arbitrary)
- ②“モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” (FOMA P904i)
- ③“電話番号 (Phone number of provider access)”
- ④Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection.

Correctly enter these items according to the provider information.

- For the setting of the caller ID notification, follow the instructions from the provider you use.
- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and ”.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, select the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.



## 5 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

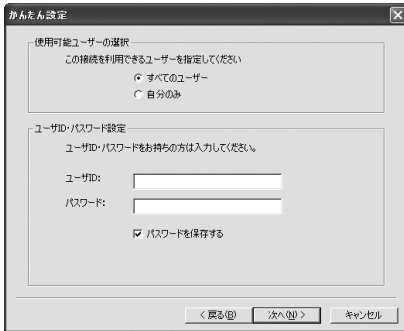
The display for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction information, then click “OK”.

## 6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

## 7 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

When specifying the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your Internet service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.

- Select a user optionally.



## 8 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

## 9 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 16)



## Carrying Out Set Communication

The operation below explains how to make a dial-up connection using Windows® XP as an example. Perform the operation on page 3 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

### 1 Double-click the dial-up shortcut icon on the desktop.



Open the FOMA connection shortcut icon created at communication setting; the connection display for starting communication appears.

- Bring up the icon by the following operations if it is not displayed:  
<For Windows® XP>

“スタート (Start)”→“すべてのプログラム (All programs)”→“アクセサリ (Accessories)”→“通信 (Communications)”→“ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)”

<For Windows® 2000 Professional>

“スタート (Start)”→“プログラム (Program)”→“アクセサリ (Accessories)”→“通信 (Communications)”→“ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections)”

### 2 Enter “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

- For “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can connect even if the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” fields are blank.
- When you put a check mark for “次のユーザーが接続するとき使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワードを保存する (Save this user name and the password for the next user to use for connecting)”, this user or all users do not need to enter them from the next time.



### 3 Click the dial-up icon on the task tray to check for the connection.

- You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail, and so on.



#### Information

- Use the FOMA phone with the dial-up setting completed for dial-up connection. To connect another FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall the communication setup files (driver).
- The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during communication.
- During packet communication, the communication state appears on the FOMA phone.



- "⇐" (Communicating, data sending)
- "⇐" (Communicating, data receiving)
- "⇐⇐" (Communicating, no data sending/receiving)
- "⇐⇐" (Outgoing or being disconnected)
- "⇐⇐" (Incoming or being disconnected)

- During 64K data communication, "⇐⇐" appears on the FOMA phone.



#### Disconnecting

### 1 Click the dial-up icon on the task tray.



### 2 Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

#### Information

- The communication line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the communication line, perform this operation.
- The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

## Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software

### Before Uninstalling

Before uninstalling the "FOMA PC setup software", reset the contents modified for the FOMA phone to the default.

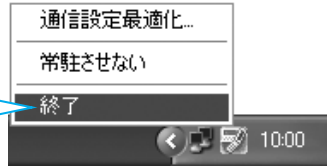
### 1 Exit the currently running programs.

- Exit the "通信設定最適化ソフト" (Communication setup optimization software).
- Right click "通信設定最適化ソフト" (Communication setup optimization software) on the task tray at the bottom right of the display, and select "終了 (Exit)".

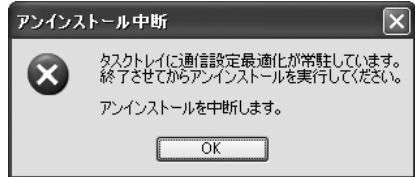
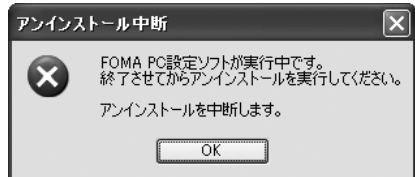
Right-click



Click



- Exit the "FOMA PC setup software". Click "終了 (Exit)" at the bottom right of the FOMA PC setup software.
- If you try to uninstall during running of the "FOMA PC setup software" or "Communication setup optimization software", the display below appears. Stop the uninstallation processing, and exit those programs.



## Uninstall

The explanation here uses the displays for when you uninstall the software on Windows® XP. The displays differ depending on the personal computer you use.

- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ Open “プログラムの追加と削除 (Add and delete programs)”.

<For Windows® 2000 Professional>  
“スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ “アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete applications)”

2 Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “削除 (Delete)”.



3 Confirm the name of the program you want to delete, then click “はい (Yes)”.

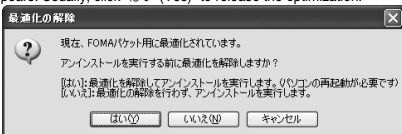
The uninstallation starts, and applications (programs) are deleted.

4 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

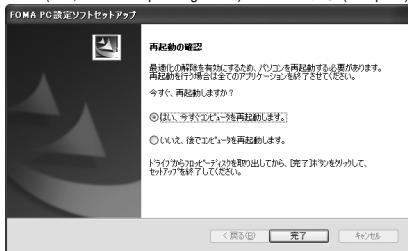
Uninstalling the “FOMA PC setup software” is completed.

### ■ Releasing “通信設定最適化 (Communication setup optimization)”

If communication setup optimization is executed, the display below appears. Usually, click “はい (Yes)” to release the optimization.



To make the settings valid, select “はい、今すぐコンピュータを再起動します。(Yes, restart computer right now)” and click “完了 (Complete)”.



## Communication Setup Optimization

### Role of Communication Setup Optimization

The “通信設定最適化 (Communication setup optimization)” is a “TCP parameter setup” tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capability at packet communication via the FOMA network.

To maximize the communication performance of the FOMA phone, you need to optimize the communication setting by this software. If you put a check mark for “最適化を行う (Optimize)” in “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)” to create dial-up information, you do not need to carry out the optimization here.

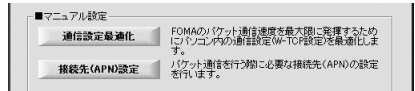
### Optimization Setting and Its Deletion

#### For Windows® XP

You can optimize the setting for each dial-up information for Windows® XP.

1 <Operating from the “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”>

Start “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “通信設定最適化 (Communication setup optimization)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setup)”.



<Operating from the task tray>

Click the “Communication setup optimization icon” on the task tray to start the program.



2 <If the system setting is not optimized>  
Click “最適化を行う (Optimize)”.

Select “384Kbps” to optimize the system setting. Select the dial-up information you want to optimize, then click “実行 (Execute)”; the system setting and dial-up setting are optimized.

<If the system setting is already optimized>

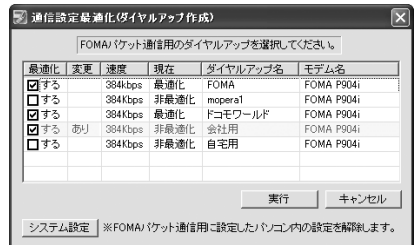
If required, modify the contents.

<Releasing the optimization>

▶ **Uncheck the dial-up connection**

▶ “実行 (Execute)” ▶ Click “OK”.

When releasing the setting to carry out communication via a device other than the FOMA phone, release the optimization.



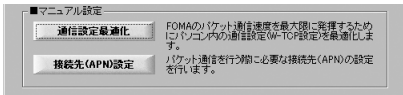
3 Click “OK”.

4 Click “はい (Yes)”.

To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.

### For Windows® 2000 Professional

1 <Operating from the “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”>  
Start “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “通信設定最適化 (Communication setup optimization)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setup)”.



<Operating from the task tray>

Click the “Communication setup optimization icon” on the task tray to start the program.



2 <If not optimized>

Click “最適化を行う (Optimize)”.

Select “384Kbps” to optimize the system setting.

<If optimized>

Click “最適化を解除する (Release optimization)”.

When releasing the setting to carry out communication via a device other than the FOMA phone, release the optimization.

3 Click “OK”.

4 Click “はい (Yes)”.

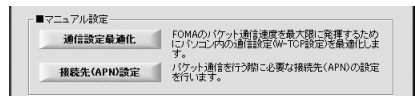
To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.

## Access Point Name (APN) Setting

The operation below explains how to set an access point name (APN) for packet communication.

The FOMA packet communication does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data communication. For each access point, register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone beforehand, then specify the registration number (cid) in the access point phone number field for connection. “cid” is the abbreviation of “Context Identifier”, the number for storing the packet communication access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone. (See page 23)

1 Start the “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “接続先 (APN) 設定 [Access point name (APN) setting]” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setup)”.



2 Click “OK”.

When you click “OK”, the system automatically accesses the connected FOMA phone and reads the registered “access point name (APN) setting”. You can obtain the setting information also from “ファイル (File)”→“FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)” on the menu in step 3.

3 Set an access point name (APN).

• If the FOMA phone is not connected, this display does not appear.



**Adding, editing, and deleting an access point name (APN)**

- To add an access point name (APN), click “追加 (Add)”.
  - To edit (correct) a registered access point name (APN), click “編集 (Edit)”.
  - To delete a registered access point name (APN), select the target access point name (APN), then click “削除 (Delete)”.
- ※ You cannot delete the access point name (APN) registered in “cid1” and “cid3”. (Even if you select “cid3” and click “削除 (Delete)”, it is not deleted actually and “mopera.net” returns.)

**Saving data into a file**

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)”→“上書き保存 (Overwrite and save)” or “名前を付けて保存 (Rename and save)”; you can back up the access point name (APN) setting registered in the FOMA phone or save the currently edited access point name (APN) setting.

**Reading data from a file**

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)”→“開く (Open)”; you can obtain the access point name (APN) setting saved in the personal computer.



## Reading access point name (APN) information from the FOMA phone

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)”→“FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)”; you can obtain the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone.

## Writing access point name (APN) information to the FOMA phone

Click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write the setting to the FOMA phone)”; you can write the displayed access point name (APN) setting to the FOMA phone.

You cannot write the IP information to the FOMA phone which does not support the IP connection.

## Dial-up information creation function

Select an access point name (APN) you add or edit on the access point name (APN) setting display, then click “ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dial-up information)”; you can create dial-up information for packet communication. If the access point name (APN) setting is not written to the FOMA phone, the FOMA phone setting writing confirmation display then appears, then click “はい (Yes)”. After writing ends, the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップ作成画面 (packet communication dial-up information creation display)” appears.

Enter any access point name, then click “アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Specify account and password)”. (You can leave it blank to connect to “mopera U” or “mopera.”)

Enter the user name and password, select the authorized user, and then click “OK”.

If your Internet service provider instructs you to specify IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”, and register the required information. Then click “OK”.

After entering information, click “OK”. Dial-up is created.

See page 12 for using “mopera U” or “mopera”.

See page 13 for using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera”.

### Information

- The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect another FOMA phone, you need to register the access point name (APN) again.
- To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same access point name (APN) for the same cid number in the FOMA phone.

## Setting Dial-up Network

### Set Packet Communication

The operation below explains how to set a connection for packet communication without using the “FOMA PC setup software”.

The packet communication uses AT commands to carry out the settings from a personal computer. To specify settings, communication software to enter AT command is required. “Hyper Terminal”, which is attached to Windows® as the standard software, is used here for explanation.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U” or “mopera”, you do not need to set an access point name (APN) (see page 22).

You can set “caller ID notified/not notified” (see page 23) as required. (You need to set “caller ID notified” when using “mopera U” or “mopera.”)

<Packet communication setting flow using AT commands>

Confirm the COM port number (See page 21)



Start the communication software that enables the entry of AT commands (See step 3 of “Set an Access Point Name (APN)” on page 22)



Set an access point name (APN) (See step 7 on page 23)



Set “caller ID notified/not notified” (See step 2 on page 23)




Set others (See page 50)



Exit the communication software (See step 9 on page 23)

#### ■AT commands

- The AT commands are used to control a modem. The FOMA phone, which conforms to the AT commands, supports some extended commands and unique AT commands.
- By entering AT commands, you can carry out detailed setting for packet communication and FOMA phone, and confirm (display) the setting contents.
- If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter “ATE1 

20

## Confirm COM Port Number

To manually carry out the communication setting, you need to specify a COM port number, which is assigned to “FOMA P904i” (modem) embedded after you install the “P904i communication setup file” (driver). The confirmation method varies depending on the operating system of your personal computer.

- When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U” or “mopera”, you do not need to set an access point name (APN); therefore, you do not need to confirm the modem.

### For Windows® XP

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 2 From “プリンタとその他のハードウェア (Printer and the other hardware)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”, open “電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” display appears, enter “市外局番/エリアコード (City code/Area code)”, then click “OK”.
- 4 Open the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port number in the “接続先 (Access point)” field of “FOMA P904i”, then click “OK”.

- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, confirm the COM port number of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “接続先 (Access point)” field.
- The COM port number you confirmed is used to set an access point name (APN) (see page 22).
- The contents on the property display and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



### For Windows® 2000 Professional

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” display appears, enter “市外局番 (City code)”, then click “OK”.
- 4 Open the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port number in the “接続先 (Access point)” field of “FOMA P904i”, then click “OK”.

- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, confirm the COM port number of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “接続先 (Access point)” field.
- The COM port number you confirmed is used to set an access point name (APN) (see page 22).
- The contents on the property display and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



## Set an Access Point Name (APN)

The operation below explains how to set an access point name (APN) for packet communication. You can register up to 10 access point names (APNs), which are managed with cid1 to cid10 (see page 23).

When using “mopera U” or “mopera”, you do not need to set the access point name (APN).

The operation below is the example where you use “XXX.abc” as the access point name (APN) and use the FOMA USB Cable (option). For the actual access point name (APN), contact your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The setting here will be the access point number for dial-up network setting (see page 24).

### For Windows® XP

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA phone.
- 2 Turn on the power to the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

- 3 Start Hyper Terminal.

“スタート (Start)”→“すべてのプログラム (All programs)”→“アクセサリ (Accessories)”→“通信 (Communications)”→Open “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”.

After starting Hyper Terminal, when the message “ [既定のTelnet] プログラムにしますか? (Select the specified Telnet program?) ” is displayed, set as desired. Contact the maker of your personal computer and Microsoft Corporation for the setting contents.

● For Windows® 2000 Professional, “スタート (Start)”→“プログラム (Programs)”→“アクセサリ (Accessories)”→“通信 (Communications)”→Open “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”.

- 4 Enter any name in the “名前 (Name)” field, then click “OK”.

Here, “Sample” is entered as an example.



## 5 Select the connection method.

<When you can select the COM port number of “FOMA P904i”>

Select the COM port number with which you install the “FOMA P904i” in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field, then click “OK”. Then, go to step 6.

- Here, “COM3” is selected as an example. See page 21 for the COM port number of “FOMA P904i” you should actually select in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field.



<When you cannot select the COM port number of “FOMA P904i”>

Click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to close the “接続の設定 (Set a connection)” display, then perform the following operations:

- (1) “ファイル (File)” menu→Select “プロパティ (Properties)”.
- (2) Select “FOMA P904i” in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field of the “接続の設定 (Set a connection)” tab on the “Sample の プロパティ (Sample properties)” display.
- (3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う (Use country/region code and city code)”.
- (4) Click “OK”.

Then, go to step 7.



## 6 The properties of the COM port number appear on the display, then click “OK”.

- This display appears when you select a COM port number in step 5.

## 7 Set an access point name (APN).

Enter an access point name (APN) in the following format:

AT+CGDCONT = cid, "PPP", "APN"

cid: Enter 2 or any number from 4 through 10.

※If you have already specified cid, be careful that its contents are overwritten by the access point name you enter here.

"PPP": Enter "PPP" as it is.

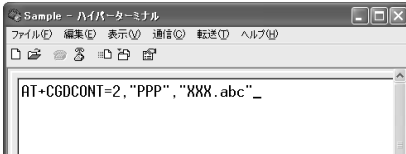
"APN": Enclose an access point name (APN) in double quotation marks ("").

(Example: When specifying APN "XXX.abc" in cid2)

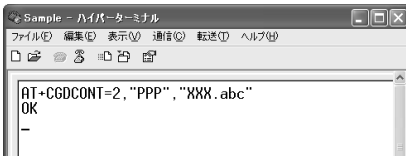
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc"

Enter this character string, then press . If "OK" appears, the APN setting is completed.

- To confirm the current APN setting, enter "AT+CGDCONT? ". The set APNs are listed on the display.



## 8 Confirm that "OK" appears on the display.



## 9 "ファイル (File)" menu ▶ Select "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit Hyper Terminal)" to exit Hyper Terminal.

- If the message "現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? (Currently connected. Do you want to disconnect this line?)" appears, select "はい (Yes)".
- The message "セッションXXXを保存しますか? (Do you want to save session XXX?)" then appears. You do not need to especially save that session.

### Information

- The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect another FOMA phone, you need to register the access point name (APN) again.
- To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same access point name (APN) for the same cid number in the FOMA phone.
- If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter "ATE1 ".

### ■cid (Registration number)

The FOMA phone has registration numbers, cid1 through cid10. cid1 contains "mopera.ne.jp" and cid3 contains "mopera.net" as an access point name (APN) by default. To connect to a provider other than "mopera U" or "mopera", you need to set the access point name (APN) to one of cid2 or cid4 through cid10 as specified by the provider or network administrator.

#### Default cid contents

| Registration No. (cid) | Access point name (APN) |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1                      | mopera.ne.jp (mopera)   |
| 2                      | Not set                 |
| 3                      | mopera.net (mopera U)   |
| 4 to 10                | Not set                 |

### ■"Phone number" for connecting to an access point name (APN) you register in cid

\*99\*\*\*cid No.>#"

(Example) When connecting to the access point name (APN) you register in cid2, enter the following:  
\*99\*\*2#

### ■Resetting/Confirming the access point name (APN) settings

You can use AT commands to reset/confirm the access point name (APN) settings.

#### Resetting access point name (APN)

The access point name (APN) for cid=1 returns to "mopera.ne.jp" (default), and for cid=3 returns to "mopera.net" (default); the settings for cid=2 and cid=4 through cid10 are reset to being unregistered if you reset them.

(Entry method)

AT+CGDCONT= (When resetting all the cid contents)

AT+CGDCONT=cid> (When resetting only a specific cid)

#### Confirming access point name (APN)

The currently specified access point name appears on the display.

(Entry method)

AT+CGDCONT?

## Set Caller ID Notified/Not Notified

For packet communication, you can specify whether to notify your caller ID (caller ID notified/not notified).

The caller ID is your important information; so, take a great care to notify your caller ID.

You can use AT commands (\*DGPIR command) to specify "caller ID notified/not notified" before dial-up connection.

### 1 Start the communication software such as "Hyper Terminal".

- See page 22 for details on how to operate "Hyper Terminal".

### 2 Use the \*DGPIR command (see page 52) to specify "caller ID notified/not notified".

- To automatically add "184 (not notify)" for outgoing or incoming call, enter the following:  
AT\*DGPIR=1
- To automatically add "186 (notify)" for outgoing or incoming call, enter the following:  
AT\*DGPIR=2



### 3 Confirm that "OK" appears on the display.



## Information

- When using DoCoMo Internet access service "mopera U" or "mopera", you need to set your caller ID to be "notified".
- If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter "ATE1 [ ]".

### ■Specifying "caller ID notified/not notified" in dial-up network

Also by dial-up network setting (see page 24), you can add "186 (notify)" or "184 (not notify)" to each access point number.

When you specify "186 (notify)" or "184 (not notify)" using both the \*DGPIR command and dial-up network setting, the caller ID is set as follows:

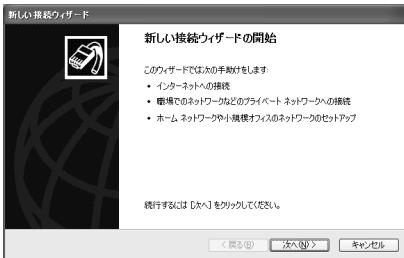
| Dial-up network setting (cid = 3) | Caller ID notification setting by *DGPIR command | Notify/Not notify caller ID                             |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| *99**3#                           | Not set  | Notify  |
|                                   | Not notify                                       | Not notify  |
|                                   | Notify   | Notify  |
| 184*99**3#                        | Not set  | Not notify  |
|                                   | Not notify                                       | ("184" specified in the dial-up network has a priority) |
|                                   | Notify   | Notify  |
| 186*99**3#                        | Not set  | Notify  |
|                                   | Not notify                                       | ("186" specified in the dial-up network has a priority) |
|                                   | Notify   | Notify  |

- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", you need to notify your caller ID.

## Set Dial-up Network for Windows® XP

1 "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communications)" ▶ Open "新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)".

2 When the "新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)" display appears, click "次へ (Next)".



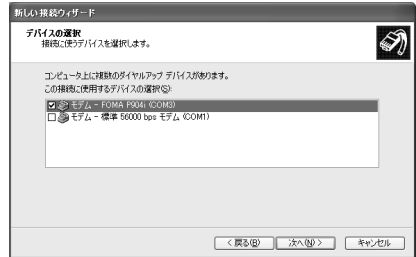
3 Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to the Internet)", then click "次へ (Next)".

4 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Manually set up the connection)", then click "次へ (Next)".

5 Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use a dial-up modem for connection)", then click "次へ (Next)".

6 If the "デバイスの選択 (Select a device)" display appears, check "FOMA P904i" only, then click "次へ (Next)".

- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, put a check mark for only the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.
- The "デバイスの選択 (Select a device)" display appears only when you have registered two or more modems.



7 Enter any name in the "ISP 名 (ISP name)" field, then click "次へ (Next)".

- Here, "SAMPLE" is entered as an example.



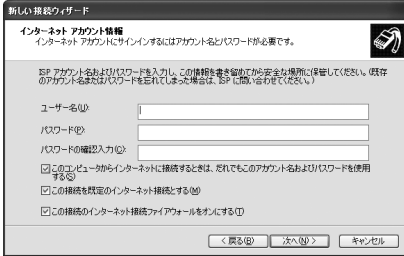
8 Enter an access point number in the "電話番号 (Phone number)" field, then click "次へ (Next)".

- When connecting to "mopera U", enter "\*99\*\*3#" as the access point number. See page 23 for access point numbers other than "mopera U".



**9** Enter the user name and password supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名 (User name)”, “パスワード (Password)” and “パスワードの確認入力 (Confirm the password)” fields. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

- When connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can leave the user name and password fields blank.



**10** Click “完了 (Complete)”.

**11** スタート (Start) ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Communications)” ▶ Open “ネットワーク接続 (Connect to network)”.

**12** Select the dial-up icon; then “ネットワークタスク (Network task)” ▶ Select “この接続の設定を変更する (Modify this connection setting)”.

Here, click the icon of the name you entered in step 7.



**13** Click the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

When two or more modems are connected to your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it. If two or more modems are checked, click the 全 (A) button to position the priority level of “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” to the top or uncheck modems other than “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker”.

When “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is checked, uncheck it.

- The COM port number allocated to “FOMA P904” or “the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” varies depending on the personal computer you use.
- When connecting to “mopera U”, enter “\*99\*\*#” as the access point number.

See page 23 for access point numbers other than “mopera U”.



## 14 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

In the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of calling dial-up server)” field, select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet”.

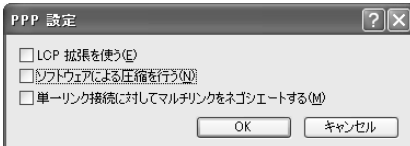
In the “この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use the following items for this connection)” field, select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) [Internet protocol (TCP/IP)]”.

You cannot modify the setting of the “QoS パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)” field; so use the default setting as it is. Next, click “設定 (Setting)”.

Contact your ISP (Internet service provider) or network administrator for how to set up TCP/IP to connect to a general ISP and so on.



## 15 Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



## 16 Return to the display in step 14, then click “OK”.

## Set Dial-up Network for Windows® 2000 Professional

### 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Communications)” ▶ Open “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections)”.

### 2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成 (Create a new connection)” in “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections)”.



### 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” display appears, enter “市外局番 (City code)”, then click “OK”.

- The “所在地情報 (Address information)” display appears only when you first start “新しい接続の作成 (Create a new connection)” in step 2.
- At the second time or after, the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard)” display appears instead of this display. Go to step 5.

### 4 When “電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)” appears, click “OK”.

### 5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard)” display appears, click “次へ (Next)”.



### 6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Dial-up connect to the Internet)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します [Connect to Internet manually or via the local area network (LAN)]”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet via a phone line and modem)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

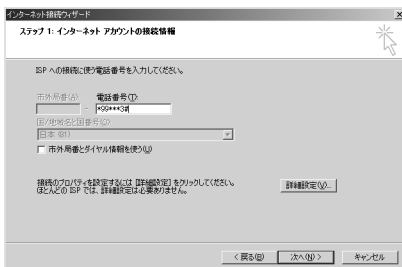
## 9 Confirm that “FOMA P904i” is displayed in the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select a modem for connection to Internet)” field. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

- If “FOMA P904i” is not selected in that field, select it.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, select the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.
- The display below may not appear depending on the operating environment of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 10.



## 10 Enter an access point number in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field.

- Leave the “市外局番 (City code)” field blank.
- Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use city code and dial information)”.
- When connecting to “mopera U”, enter “\*99\*\*3#” as the access point number. See page 23 for access point numbers other than “mopera U”.



## 11 Click “詳細設定 (Detailed setting)”.

## 12 Specify the items in the “接続 (Connection)” tab.

Enter “接続の種類 (Connection type)” and “ログオンの手続き (Logon procedure)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator. Confirm the contents you entered, then click the “アドレス (Address)” tab.

- **Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents of “接続 (Connection)” tab.**

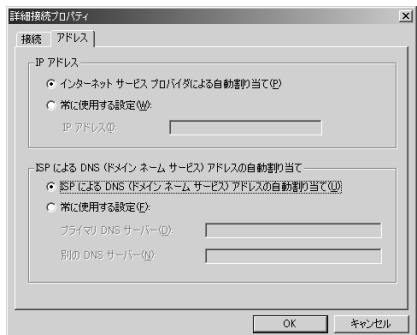


## 13 Specify IP address and DNS (domain name service) address.

Enter “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ISPによるDNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て (Automatically allocate a DNS (domain name service) address by ISP)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

After you finish entering all the items, click “OK”. The display in step 10 returns; then click “次へ (Next)”.

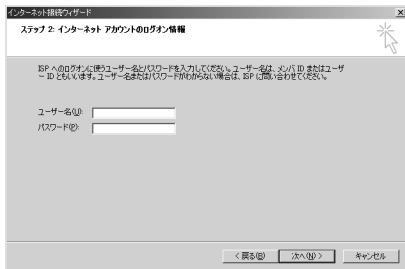
- **Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents of IP address and DNS address.**





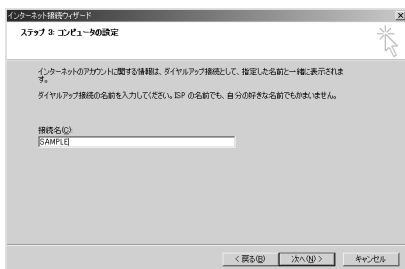
**14** Enter the user name and password supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator, in the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” fields. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

- When connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can leave the user name and password fields blank. In this case, two displays “ユーザー名を空白のままにしておきますか? (Do you want to make the user name blank?)” and “パスワードを空白のままにしておきますか? (Do you want to make the password blank?)” appear. Click “はい (Yes)” on each display. Then go to step 15.



**15** Enter any name in the “接続名 (Connection name)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

- Here, “SAMPLE” is entered as an example.

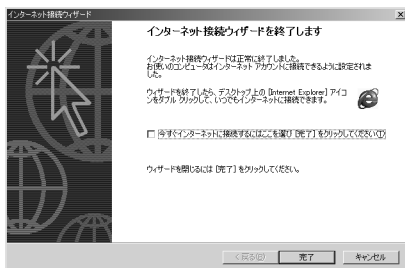


**16** Select “いいえ (No)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

- When setting the Internet mail, select “はい (Yes)”.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on the setting.

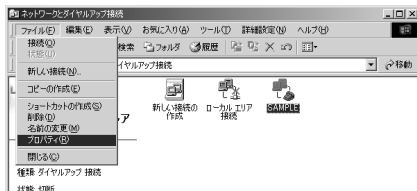
**17** Then, carry out the “TCP/IP” setting.

- If the display below appears, uncheck “今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選び「完了」をクリックしてください (To connect to the Internet right now, select here, then click “Complete”).” Then click “完了 (Complete)”.



**18** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Communications)” ▶ Open “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections)”.

**19** Select the icon of the access point name you entered in step 15; then “ファイル (File)” menu ▶ Select “プロパティ (Properties)”.



**20** Click the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

- When two or more modems are connected to your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904i” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it.
  - Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.
  - The COM port number allocated to “FOMA P904i” or “the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” varies depending on the personal computer you use.
  - When connecting to “mopera U”, enter “\*99\*\*3#” as the access point number.
- See page 23 for access point numbers other than “mopera U”.

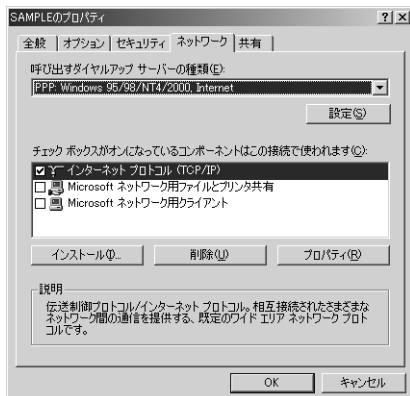


## 21 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

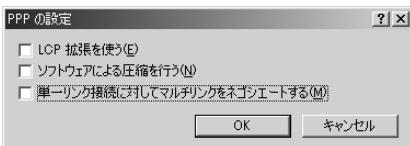
In the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of calling dial-up server)” field, select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet”.

For the component, check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) [Internet protocol (TCP/IP)]”.

Then click “設定 (Setting)”.



## 22 Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



## 23 Return to the display in step 21, then click “OK”.

### Making Dial-up Connection

The operation below explains how to make a dial-up connection using Windows® XP as an example. Perform the operation on page 3 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

- To perform a connection via packet communication, it is recommended that you optimize the communication performance by “Communication Setup Optimization” on page 18. By optimizing data, you can maximize the high-speed communication capability in the FOMA network. To execute the optimization, install “FOMA PC setup software” (see page 8).
- When you perform 64K data communication, do not optimize the communication performance by “Communication setup optimization”.

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Communications)” ▶ Open “ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)”.

## 2 Open the access point to be used.

Select the access point icon of the ISP name (see page 24) you specified in “Setting Dial-up Network”, then “ネットワークタスク (Network task)” → “この接続を開始する (Start this connection)”. Otherwise, double-click the access point icon.

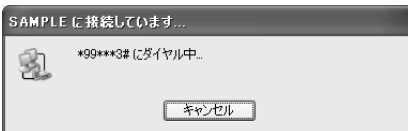


## 3 Confirm the contents and click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

- When connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can leave the user name and password fields blank.

## 4 The display appears to indicate the connecting state.

In this period, the system performs logon processing to confirm the user name and password.



## 5 The connection is completed.

After the connection is completed, the message below appears from the indicator of the task bar for a few seconds.

- You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail and so on.
- If this message does not appear, confirm the setting of the access point again.



### Information

- Use the FOMA phone with the dial-up setting completed for dial-up connection. To connect another FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall the communication setup files (driver).
  - The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during communication.
  - During packet communication, the communication state appears on the FOMA phone.
- 
- “P” (Communicating, data sending)  
“D” (Communicating, data receiving)  
“R” (Communicating, no data sending/receiving)  
“P” (Outgoing or being disconnected)  
“R” (Incoming or being disconnected)
- During 64K data communication, “P” appears on the FOMA phone.
-

## Disconnecting

- 1 Click the dial-up icon on the task tray.



- 2 Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.

### Information

- The communication line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the communication line, perform this operation.
- The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

## When you cannot connect to network

If you cannot connect to network (if you fail a dial-up connection), confirm the following items:

| If this error occurs                                 | Confirm those:   |
|--|--|
| Your personal computer cannot recognize “FOMA P904i” | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Confirm whether your personal computer satisfies the operating environment (see page 2).</li><li>· Confirm whether “P904i communication setup files” (driver) is installed in your personal computer.</li><li>· Confirm whether the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and powered on.</li><li>· Confirm whether the FOMA USB Cable (option) is securely connected.</li><li>· Confirm whether the Bluetooth device is connected using the Dial-up service.</li></ul>                      |
| You cannot connect to the access point               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Confirm whether the ID (user name) and password are correct.</li><li>· When you need to notify your caller ID such as when using “mopera U” or “mopera”, make sure “184” is not prefixed to the phone number.</li><li>· Confirm that “フロー制御を使う (Use the flow control)” is checked in the modem properties.</li><li>· If you cannot connect to the access point even after confirming above, contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting method, and so on.</li></ul> |

## Set 64K Data Communication

The operation below explains how to set the 64K data communication without using “FOMA PC setup software”.

### Setting dial-up connection and TCP/IP

The setting of dial-up connection and TCP/IP for the 64K data communication is the same as for the packet communication (see page 20).

Take care of the following points:

- In the 64K data communication, you do not need to set an access point name (APN). For the access point of the dial-up connection, enter the phone number of the access point specified by your Internet service provider or network administrator. (To connect to “mopera U”, enter “\*8701” in the phone number field. To connect to “mopera”, enter “\*9601” in the phone number field.)
- Set “caller ID notified/not notified” and “others” as required. (When connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”, you need to notify your caller ID.)
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on the setting contents.

### How to connect and disconnect

You can operate in the same way as for the packet communication. Perform the operations on page 16 or page 29.

## Using FirstPass PC Software

The FirstPass PC software is to access the FirstPass site from the web browser of your personal computer using the user certificate obtained by the FOMA phone supporting FirstPass.

## Notes for Installing FirstPass PC Software

### Confirm the operating environment

Use the FirstPass PC software under the following operating environment:

| Item                 | Required environment  |
|----------------------|---|
| PC main unit         | PC/AT compatible model  |
| OS                   | Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP (Japanese version in each)                                   |
| Memory requirements  | Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional: 32 Mbytes or more*<br>Windows® XP: 128 Mbytes or more**                  |
| Hard disk space size | Unused memory space of 10 Mbytes or more**  |
| Browser              | Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 or higher<br>Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher when using Windows® XP |

※The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on the system environment.

## Before installing

See “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM before installing the FirstPass PC software.

## Install FirstPass PC Software

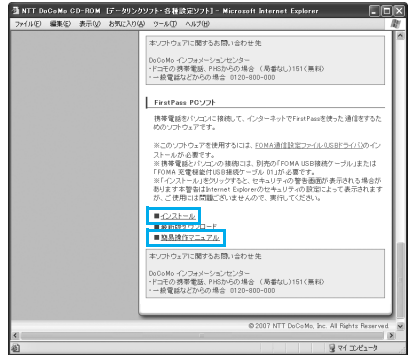
The explanation here uses the displays for when installing the FirstPass PC software on Windows® XP. The displays are slightly different depending on the personal computer you use.

- 1 Set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into your personal computer.
- 2 To install the FirstPass PC software, click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setup software)”.



## 3 Click “インストール (Install)” under “FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC software)”.

Then, perform the operations described in “簡易操作マニュアル (Easy operation manual)” (PDF format).

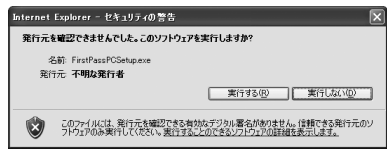


When you click “インストール (Install)”, an alert message might appear in the screen as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but you can use your computer without any problem.

- When the “ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (File download - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行 (Execute)”.



- When the “Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行する (Execute)”.



# For Using Windows Vista™

## Installing Communication Setup Files (Driver)

Installing the communication setup files (driver) is required when you connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) for the first time.

- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, you do not need to install the communication setup files (driver).
- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

**1** Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable. (See page 3)

**2** Start Windows®, then set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into the personal computer.

**3** Close the “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” display.

- This display automatically appears when you set “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into the personal computer. It may not appear depending on the settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.
- If this display appears during installation of the “P904i communication setup files” (driver), close the display.

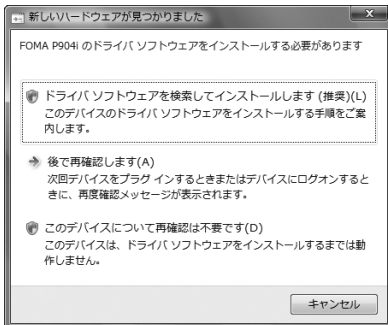
**4** Turn on the power to the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

**5** Start installation.

Pop-up message “新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)” appears for a few seconds from the indicator of the task bar, then the display below appears.

Open “ドライバソフトウェアを検索してインストールします (Search and install driver software)”, then click “続行 (Continue)”.

- This display may not appear depending on the personal computer you use.



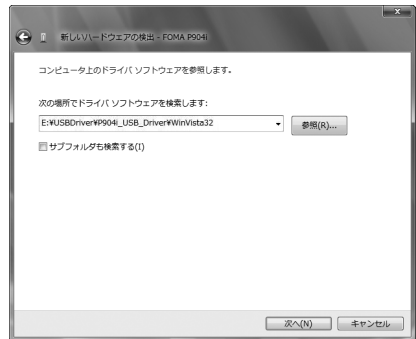
**6** Detect new hardware.

Select “ディスクはありません。他の方法を試します (No disk is found. Try another method)”, and select “コンピュータを参照してドライバソフトウェアを検索します (Browse in the computer and search driver software)”.



**7** Select a driver.

Uncheck “サブフォルダも検索する (Search the sub folders too)”. Click “参照 (Browse)”, specify “<CD-ROM drive name>:\¥USBDriver ¥P904i\_USB\_Driver¥WinVista32”, then click “次へ (Next)”. (The CD-ROM drive name varies depending on the personal computer you use.)



**8** Click “このドライバソフトウェアをインストールします (Install this driver software)”.

**9** Click “閉じる (Close)”.


All the four “P904i communication setup files” (driver) (see page 33) are installed.

After the installation of all the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) is completed, a pop-up message “デバイスを使用する準備ができました。デバイス ドライバソフトウェアが正しくインストールされました。(The system is ready to use the device. The device driver software was installed correctly.)” appears for a few seconds from the indicator of the task bar.

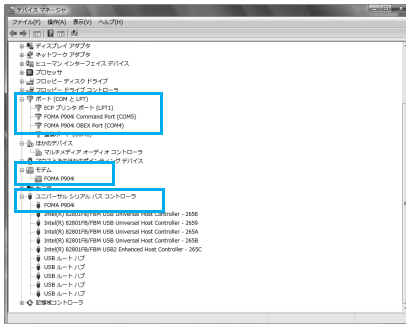
Next, confirm that the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) are installed correctly. (See page 33)

## Confirm Installed Driver

Confirm that the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) are installed correctly.

- 1 “ [スタート (Start)]” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ “システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)”
- 2 Open “ハードウェアとデバイスを表示 (Show hardwares and devices)”  
▶ Click “**続行 (Continue)**”.
- 3 Click each device, then confirm the installed driver names.

Confirm that all driver names are displayed under “ポート (COMとLPT) [Port (COM/LPT)]”, “モデム (Modem)”, and “ユニバーサル シリアルバス コントローラ (Universal serial bus controller)”.



※The COM port number varies depending on the personal computer you use.

The following drivers are installed by installation of the “P904i communication setup files” (driver):

| Device name  | P904i communication setup file (driver) name        |
|--|---|
| ポート (COMとLPT) [Port (COM/LPT)]                       | ・ FOMA P904i Command Port<br>・ FOMA P904i OBEX Port |
| モデム (Modem)  | ・ FOMA P904i  |
| ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ (Universal serial bus controller) | ・ FOMA P904i  |


To set an access point with the “FOMA PC setup software”, see page 35.  
To set an access point without the “FOMA PC setup software”, see page 44 or page 48.

## Uninstall Communication Setup Files (Driver)

When uninstalling the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) is necessary (such as when upgrading the version), perform the operation below.

- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

- 1 If the FOMA phone is connected to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option), disconnect the FOMA USB Cable.

- 2 “ [スタート (Start)]” ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ Open “プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)”.
- 3 Select “FOMA P904i USB” and click “アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)”  
▶ Click “**続行 (Continue)**”.
- 4 Click “**OK**”.
- 5 Click “**はい (Yes)**” to restart Windows®.

The uninstallation is then completed.

- If you click “いいえ (No)”, restart Windows® manually.

### Information

- If you remove the FOMA USB Cable from the personal computer while installing the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) or click the “キャンセル (Cancel)” button to stop installation, the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) may not be installed correctly. In this case, open “USB Driver” → “WinVista32” inside “FOMA P904i CD-ROM”, and execute “p904i\_un.exe” to delete the “P904i communication setup files” (driver), and then install the files again.




## <Dial-up Communication Service>

### Preparing Bluetooth Communication

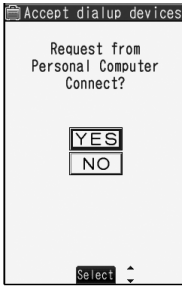
You can make data communication by connecting a Bluetooth compatible personal computer wirelessly to your FOMA phone.

### Connect to Personal Computer for the First Time

To connect a personal computer to the FOMA phone for the first time, register the personal computer to the FOMA phone.

- 1  ▶ LifeKit ▶ Bluetooth  
▶ Accept dialup devices
- 2 Enter your Terminal Security Code.
  - To cancel, press  (Quit) in standby. When no connection is made for five minutes in standby, the connection is automatically released.
  - During standby, “ (blue)” lights.
- 3 Search and register the Bluetooth device from the personal computer.
  - Register the device from the personal computer while the FOMA phone is in standby.
  - Refer to the operating manual of your personal computer for the details of how to operate it.  
(Depending on the personal computer you use, “探索 (search)” or “サーチ (search)” is used instead of “検索 (search)”, and “ペアリング (pairing)” is used instead of “機器登録 (register devices)”.)

## 4 When the display for connection request appears, select “YES”.



## 5 Select the text box for a Bluetooth pass key ▶ Enter the Bluetooth pass key ▶ Set

- You can enter 1 through 16 half-pitch alphanumeric characters for the Bluetooth pass key.
- Enter the same Bluetooth pass key for both the FOMA phone and personal computer.

## 6 The personal computer is registered and a wireless connection starts.

When the connection is completed, “ (blue)” blinks.

### Information


- You cannot place the devices using the Headset service or Hands-free service in the state of “Accept registered” while the FOMA phone is in the state of “Accept dialup devices”.
- When the personal computer found multiple devices for registering the FOMA phone on the personal computer, identify the FOMA phone by the device name. When the personal computer found multiple devices having the same device names, identify the FOMA phone by the device address.
- In the state of “Accept dialup devices”, searches are made from all the Bluetooth devices around, however, you cannot connect to any service other than the Dial-up Communication service.

### ■ To connect to the registered personal computer

When you connect to the FOMA phone from a registered personal computer, place “Dial-up” in the state of “Accept registered”. Then you can make a connection from the personal computer to the FOMA phone by operating from the personal computer. You can connect even in the state of “Accept dialup devices”.

## Confirm the Modem

Before setting communication, confirm the name and COM port number of the modem used for connecting the dial-up service.

1  [スタート (Start)] ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ “システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)”

2 Open “ハードウェアとデバイスを表示 (Show hardwares and devices)”  
▶ Click “続行 (Continue)”.

3 Click each device, then confirm the modem name or COM port number.

The modem name or COM port number is displayed under “ポート (COMとLPT) [Port (COM/LPT)]” and “モデム (Modem)”.

To set an access point with the “FOMA PC setup software”, see page 35.  
To set an access point without the “FOMA PC setup software”, see page 44 or page 48.

## Have Dial-up Communication Service Closed

You can close the Dial-up Communication service that is connected.

1  ▶ LifeKit ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Device list

2 Select the Bluetooth device that is connected.

3 Dial-up ▶ YES

The Dial-up Communication service is closed.

## FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet communication or 64K data communication, you need to configure various settings related to the communication. Using the “FOMA PC setup software”, you can easily carry out the settings below. If required, you can set the packet communication and 64K data communication without using the “FOMA PC setup software”. (See page 44 and page 48)

### ■ Easy setting

You can easily carry out “dial-up creation for FOMA data communication” by following the guidance.

### ■ Access point name (APN) setting

You can set an access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

The FOMA packet communication does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data communication.

You need to register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone in advance, and specify the registration number (cid) in the access point number field for connection.

By the default, “mopera.ne.jp”, the access point name (APN) of “mopera”, is registered in cid\*1, and “mopera.net”, that of “mopera U”, is registered in cid\*3. To connect to another service provider or Intranet LAN, however, you need to set the access point name (APN).

※ “cid” is the abbreviation of “Context Identifier”, the number for storing the packet communication access point (APN) to the FOMA phone.

### Information

- If the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” or the older version than this “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” (older than version 4.0.0) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

## Communication Setting by FOMA PC Setup Software

### STEP1 Install Software

#### Install the “FOMA PC setup software”.

See page 35 for installation.

If the older version than this “FOMA PC setup software” (version 4.0.0) is already installed, you cannot install this “FOMA PC setup software”, so uninstall it in advance. See page 37 if the display appears to indicate that the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” is installed.

### STEP2 Prepare for Setup

#### Prepare for setup.

Before setup, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and correctly recognized by the personal computer. See page 3 for how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (option).

See page 33 for how to connect the Bluetooth devices.

If the FOMA phone is not correctly recognized by the personal computer, you cannot carry out settings and communication. See page 33 for confirming whether the FOMA phone is correctly recognized by the personal computer.

See page 32 through page 33 for how to install the “P904i communication setup files” (driver).

### STEP3 Setting Operation

#### Carry out the appropriate setting for the communication you use.

Setting the packet communication from “Easy Setting”

When using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point ..... page 38

When using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” ..... page 39

Setting the 64K data communication from “Easy Setting”

When using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point ..... page 40

When using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” ..... page 41

See page 43 for setting an access point name (APN).

### STEP4 Connection

Connect to the Internet.

## Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet communication or 64K data communication, you need to configure various settings related to the communication.

Using the “FOMA PC setup software”, you can easily set up dial-up and access point name (APN).

- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

## Notes for Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

### Confirm that the FOMA phone is correctly recognized by your personal computer

Before installing the “FOMA PC setup software”, you need to register the “P904i communication setup files” (driver) correctly on the device of the personal computer. (See page 33)

#### ■When you connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer for the first time

The wizard shown below starts.

To use the FOMA data communication, you need to register the FOMA phone in your personal computer as a communication device.

See page 32 through page 33 for installation of the “P904i communication setup files” (driver).





## Install FOMA PC Setup Software

The displays are slightly different depending on the personal computer you use.

1 Set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into your personal computer.

2 To install the “FOMA PC setup software”, click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setup software)”.

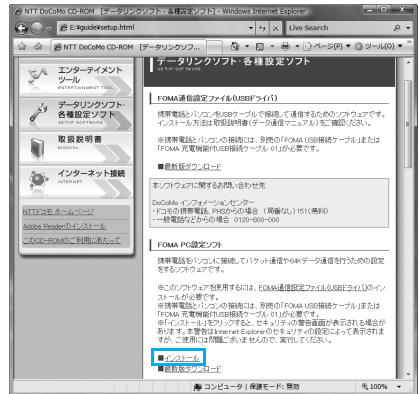
The recommended environment that the Menu operates is Microsoft® Internet Explorer 7.0 or later. When the personal computer you use does not satisfy the recommended environment or when the Menu does not appear after you set the CD-ROM, operate as follows:

Refer to the CD-ROM from “コンピュータ (Computer)”, then double-click “setup.4.0.0.exe” in the “FOMA\_PCSET” folder. Go to step 4.

- If this display appears during installation of the “FOMA PC setup software”, close the display.

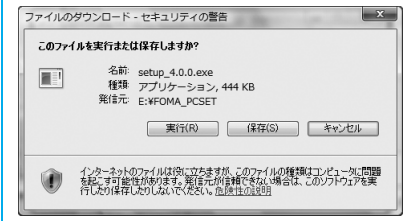


3 Click “インストール (Install)” under “FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”.



When you click “インストール (Install)”, an alert message might appear in the screen as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but you can use your computer without any problem.

- When the “ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (File download - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行 (Execute)”.



4 Click “続行 (Continue)” ▶ Click “次へ (Next)”.

Before starting setup, check that no other programs are currently running. If any program is running, click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to save and exit the program, then restart installation.

- See page 37 if the display appears to indicate that the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” or old-version “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” is installed.

5 Confirm the displayed contract contents. If you agree with the contents, click “はい (Yes)”.

## 6 Confirm the installation destination, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To change the installation destination, click “参照 (Browse)”; specify any installation destination; then click “次へ (Next)”. (You can install the FOMA PC setup software in a different drive, however, proceed without changing unless you have a problem on hard disk space, etc.)



## 7 Confirm the program folder name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To change the program folder name, enter a new one, then click “次へ (Next)”.



## 8 Click “完了 (Complete)”.

After setup is completed, the “FOMA PC setup software” operation display appears.

### ■Displays at installation of the “FOMA PC setup software”

When the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)” is installed

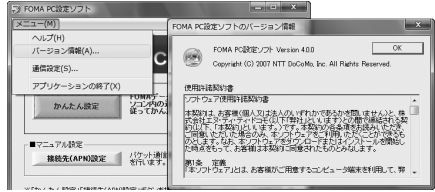
A warning display appears.

From “プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)”, uninstall the old-version “FOMAデータ通信設定ソフト (FOMA data communication setup software)”.

When you click “キャンセル (Cancel)” during the installation

A confirmation display appears when you click “キャンセル (Cancel)” or “いいえ (No)” during the setup operation. To continue the installation, click “いいえ (No)”. To intentionally cancel, click “はい (Yes)” and “完了 (Complete)”.

### ■Checking the version information about “FOMA PC setup software”



Select “メニュー (Menu)”→“バージョン情報 (Version information)” from the menu of the “FOMA PC setup software”.

The version information about the “FOMA PC setup software” is displayed.

## Setting Communication

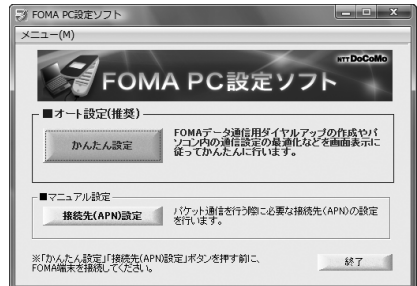
The operation below explains how to carry out various settings related to the packet communication and 64K data communication.

There are “auto setting” for easy operation and “manual setting” for the user familiar with personal computers. Before setting, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer.

## 1 “[スタート (Start)]”▶“すべてのプログラム (All programs)”▶“FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”▶Open “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”.

Using this PC setup software, you can easily create FOMA dial-up setting by answering (selecting and entering) the displayed questions according to “the information of connected provider” and “connection method” you selected.

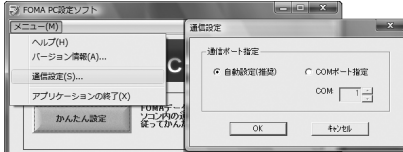
- See page 38 for setting the packet communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.
- See page 40 for setting the 64K data communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.
- See page 43 for setting “接続先 (APN) 設定 (access point name (APN) setting)”.



## Specify Communication Port

### 1 “メニュー (Menu)” of “FOMA PC setup software” ▶ Select “通信設定 (Communication setup)”.

- ・自動設定 (推奨) [Auto-setup (recommended)]  
The connected FOMA phone is automatically specified. Usually, select “Auto-setup”.
- ・COMポート指定 (Specifying COM port)  
When specifying a COM port number, specify the COM port number (COM1 through 99) the FOMA phone is connected to.
- If you could not connect the FOMA phone by “Auto-setup” for connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, specify the COM port number.
- See page 44 for how to check the COM port number.



### 2 Click “OK”.

The settings are applied.

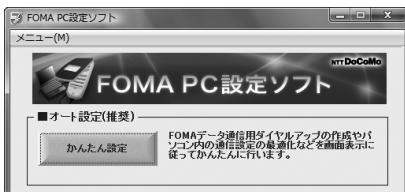
## Select Packet Communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”

### Using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The packet communication is a communication system you are charged according to the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the communication time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)

You can use the DoCoMo Internet access service, “mopera U”/“mopera”.

### 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



### 2 Select “パケット通信 (Packet communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 3 Select “[mopera U] への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” or “[mopera] への接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To use “mopera U”, select “[mopera U] への接続 (Connect to mopera U)”. To use “mopera”, select “[mopera] への接続 (Connect to mopera)”.

When “[mopera U] への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” is selected, the confirmation display appears asking whether you have signed up for it. If you have signed up, click “はい (YES)”.

- See page 39 for using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera”.

### 4 Click “OK”.

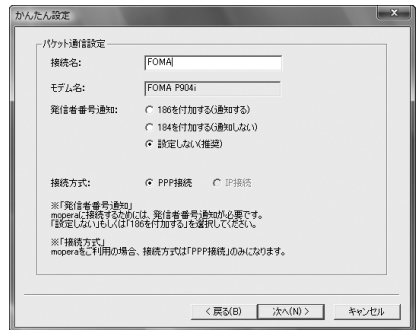
- The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.

### 5 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection.

Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field.

- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters:  
¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.”
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, “モデム名 (Modem name)” becomes the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.
- For this FOMA phone, select “PPP接続 (PPP connection)” for “接続方式 (connection type)” because it supports only the PPP connection.
- Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection. You need to notify your caller ID for connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”. Select “設定しない (not set)” or “186を付加する (add 186)”.



### 6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

If the access point is “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can connect even if the “ユーザ名 (user name)” and “パスワード (password)” fields are blank.

- Select a user optionally.

### 7 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

### 8 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created

on the desktop; then the connection display for

starting communications appears. After confirming that the

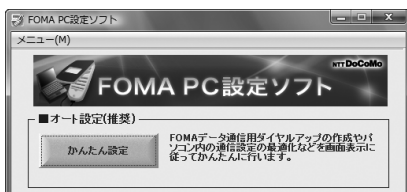
connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 41)



## Using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The packet communication is a communication system you are charged according to the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the communication time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)  
To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply for the service and sign a contract with the provider.

### 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



### 2 Select “パケット通信 (Packet communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 4 Click “OK”.

The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.

### 5 Enter an access point name.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection.

Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters:

%, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and “”.

In the “接続先 (APN) の選択 [Select an access point name (APN)]” field, “mopera.ne.jp [PPP接続] [mopera.ne.jp [PPP connection]]” is displayed as the default. Go to the “接続先 (APN) 設定 [Set an access point name (APN)]” display.

When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, “モデム名 (Modem name)” becomes the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.

Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection. For the setting of the caller ID notification, follow the instructions from the provider you use.

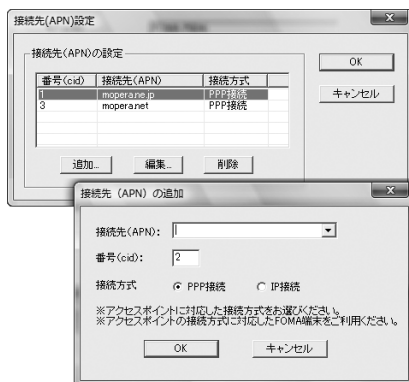


### 6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定 [Set an access point name (APN)]”.

“mopera.ne.jp” is registered in “cid1” and “mopera.net” is registered in “cid3” by default. Click “追加 (Add)”, then enter the correct access point name (APN) for FOMA packet communication on the “接続先 (APN) の追加 [Add an access point name (APN)]” display. Click “OK”. The “パケット通信設定 (Packet communication setting)” display returns. Select the access point name (APN) you specified newly. If it is ok, click “OK”.

For this FOMA phone, select “PPP接続 (PPP connection)” for “接続方式 (connection type)” because it supports only the PPP connection.

For a provider access point name (APN) or supported connection types, contact your provider.



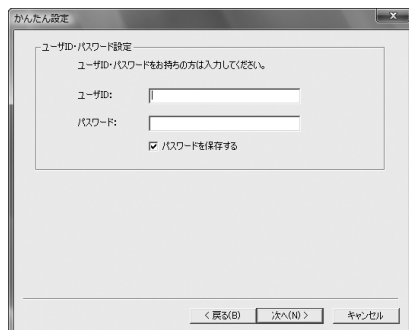
### 7 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

The display for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction information, then click “OK”.

### 8 Click “次へ (Next)”.

### 9 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

When specifying the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your Internet service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.



## 10 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

## 11 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 41)

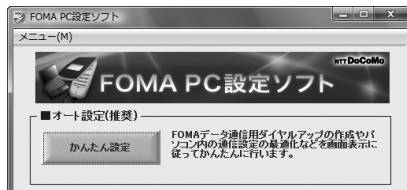


## Select 64K Data Communication from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”

### Using “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data communication is a communication system you are charged according to the duration of connection. (Maximum communication speed: 64 kbps) You can use the DoCoMo Internet access service, “mopera U”/“mopera”.

## 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



## 2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

## 3 Select “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” or “『mopera』への接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To use “mopera U”, select “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)”. To use “mopera”, select “『mopera』への接続 (Connect to mopera)”. When “『mopera U』への接続 (Connect to mopera U)” is selected, the confirmation display appears asking whether you have signed up for it. If you have signed up, click “はい (YES)”.

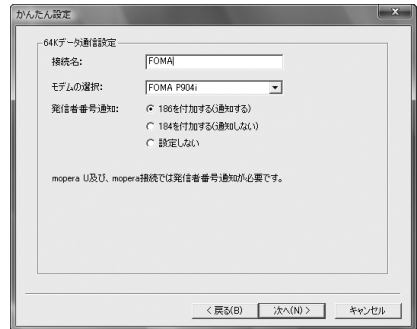
- See page 41 for using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera”.

## 4 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection.

Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field. Confirm that “FOMA P904” is displayed in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.

- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.”.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, select the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.
- Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection. You need to notify your caller ID for connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”.



## 5 Click “次へ (Next)”.

If the access point is “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can connect even if the “ユーザ名 (user name)” and “パスワード (password)” fields are blank.

- Select a user optionally.

## 6 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

## 7 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

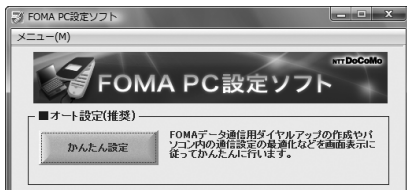
Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 41)



## Using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data communication is a communication system you are charged according to the duration of connection. (Maximum communication speed: 64 kbps) To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply for the service and sign a contract with the provider.

### 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



### 2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data communication)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

### 3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

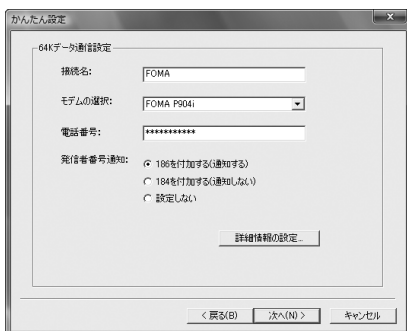
### 4 Enter dial-up information.

When connecting to a provider supporting ISDN-synchronous 64K other than “mopera U” or “mopera”, register the following items when creating the dial-up.

- ① “接続名 (Access point name)” (arbitrary)
- ② “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” (FOMA P904i)
- ③ “電話番号 (Phone number of provider access)”
- ④ Set whether to notify your caller ID for dial-up connection.

Correctly enter these items according to the provider information.

- For the setting of the caller ID notification, follow the instructions from the provider you use.
- You cannot enter the following half-pitch characters in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and “.”.
- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, select the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.



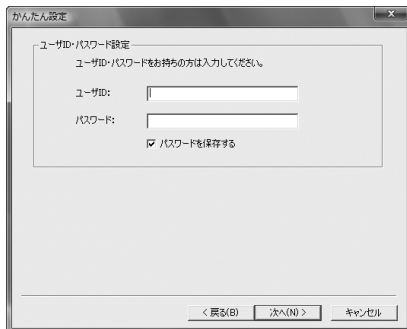
### 5 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

The display for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction information, then click “OK”.

### 6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

### 7 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

When specifying the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your Internet service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.



### 8 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

The set contents are listed on the display. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Complete)”.

- To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.
- If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut will be created on the desktop.

### 9 Click “OK”.

The setting is completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; then the connection display for starting communications appears. After confirming that the connection starts, you can start the Internet browser or mail browser for communication. (See page 41)



## Carrying Out Set Communication

Perform the operation on page 3 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

### 1 “ [スタート (Start)]”

▶ Open “接続先 (Access point)”, select an access point and click “接続 (Connect)”.

- Open the FOMA connection shortcut icon created at communication setting; the connection display for starting communication appears. Bring up the icon by the following operations if it is not displayed:

“ [スタート (Start)]” → “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” → “ネットワークとインターネット (Network and Internet)” → “ネットワークと共有センター (Network and sharing center)” → “ネットワーク接続の管理 (Management of network connection)”

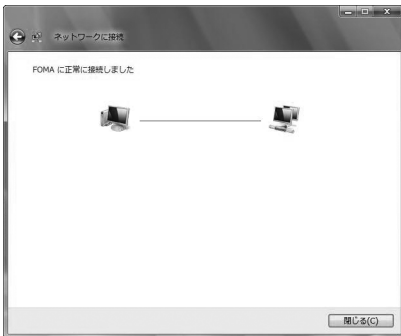
## 2 Enter “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

- For “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can connect even if the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” fields are blank.
- When you put a check mark for “次のユーザーが接続するとき使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワードを保存する (Save this user name and the password for the next user to use for connecting)”, this user or all users do not need to enter them from the next time.



## 3 Check for the connection, then click “閉じる (Close)”.

- You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail, and so on.



### Information

- Use the FOMA phone with the dial-up setting completed for dial-up connection. To connect another FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall the communication setup files (driver).
- The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during communication.
- During packet communication, the communication state appears on the FOMA phone.



“” (Communicating, data sending)

“” (Communicating, data receiving)

“” (Communicating, no data sending/receiving)

“” (Outgoing or being disconnected)

“” (Incoming or being disconnected)

- During 64K data communication, “” appears on the FOMA phone.



## Disconnecting

- 1 “ [スタート (Start)]”  
▶ Open “接続先 (Access point)”.
- 2 Select the icon which is communicating, then click “切断 (Disconnect)”  
▶ Click “閉じる (Close)”.

### Information

- The communication line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the communication line, perform this operation.
- The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

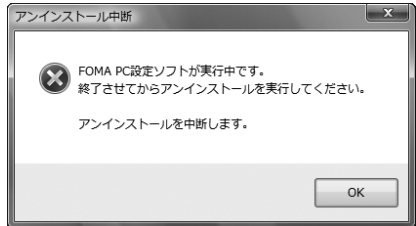
## Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software

### Before Uninstalling

Before uninstalling the “FOMA PC setup software”, reset the contents modified for the FOMA phone to the default.

### 1 Exit the currently running programs.


- Click “終了 (Exit)” at the bottom right to exit the “FOMA PC setup software”.
- If you try to uninstall during running of the “FOMA PC setup software”, the display below appears. Stop the uninstallation processing, and exit the program.



## Uninstall

The displays differ depending on the personal computer you use.

- Operate as the user who has the PC administrator right.

1 “ [スタート (Start)]”▶“コントロールパネル (Control panel)”▶Open “プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)”.

2 Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “アンインストール (Uninstall)”▶Click “続行 (Continue)”.



3 Click “はい (Yes)”.

The uninstallation starts, and applications (programs) are deleted.

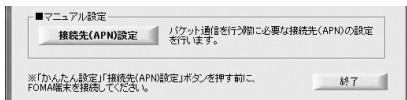
4 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

Uninstalling the “FOMA PC setup software” is completed.

## Access Point Name (APN) Setting

The operation below explains how to set an access point name (APN) for packet communication. The FOMA packet communication does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data communication. For each access point, register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone beforehand, then specify the registration number (cid) in the access point phone number field for connection. “cid” is the abbreviation of “Context Identifier”, the number for storing the packet communication access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone.

1 Start the “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “接続先 (APN) 設定 [Access point name (APN) setting]” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setup)”.



2 Click “OK”.

When you click “OK”, the system automatically accesses the connected FOMA phone and reads the registered “access point name (APN) setting”. You can obtain the setting information also from “ファイル (File)”→“FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)” on the menu in step 3.

## 3 Set an access point name (APN).

- If the FOMA phone is not connected, this display does not appear.



Adding, editing, and deleting an access point name (APN)

- To add an access point name (APN), click “追加 (Add)”.
  - To edit (correct) a registered access point name (APN), click “編集 (Edit)”.
  - To delete a registered access point name (APN), select the target access point name (APN), then click “削除 (Delete)”.
- ※ You cannot delete the access point name (APN) registered in “cid1” and “cid3”. (Even if you select “cid3” and click “削除 (Delete)”, it is not deleted actually and “mopera.net” returns.)

Saving data into a file

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)”→“上書き保存 (Overwrite and save)” or “名前を付けて保存 (Rename and save)”; you can back up the access point name (APN) setting registered in the FOMA phone or save the currently edited access point name (APN) setting.

Reading data from a file

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)”→“開く (Open)”; you can obtain the access point name (APN) setting saved in the personal computer.

Reading access point name (APN) information from the FOMA phone

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)”→“FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)”; you can obtain the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone.

Writing access point name (APN) information to the FOMA phone

Click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write the setting to the FOMA phone)”; you can write the displayed access point name (APN) setting to the FOMA phone.

You cannot write the IP information to the FOMA phone which does not support the IP connection.

Dial-up information creation function

Select an access point name you add or edit on the access point name (APN) setting display, then click “ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dial-up information)”; you can create dial-up information for packet communication. If the access point name (APN) setting is not written to the FOMA phone, the FOMA phone setting writing confirmation display then appears, then click “はい (Yes)”. After writing ends, the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップ作成画面 (packet communication dial-up information creation display)” appears.

Enter any access point name, then click “アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Specify account and password)”. (You can leave it blank to connect to “mopera U” or “mopera.”)

Enter the user name and password, select the authorized user, and then click “OK”.

If your Internet service provider instructs you to specify IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”, and register the required information. Then click “OK”.

After entering information, click “OK”. Dial-up is created.

See page 38 for using “mopera U” or “mopera”.

See page 39 for using a provider other than “mopera U” or “mopera”.



## Information

- The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect another FOMA phone, you need to register the access point name (APN) again.
- To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same access point name (APN) for the same cid number in the FOMA phone.

## Setting Dial-up Network

### Set Packet Communication

The operation below explains how to set a connection for packet communication without using the “FOMA PC setup software”.

The packet communication uses AT commands to carry out the settings from a personal computer. To specify settings, communication software to enter AT command is required.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U” or “mopera”, you do not need to set an access point name (APN) (See page 45).

You can set “caller ID notified/not notified” (see page 45) as required. (You need to set “caller ID notified” when using “mopera U” or “mopera”.)

<Packet communication setting flow using AT commands>

Confirm the COM port number



Start the communication software that enables the entry of AT commands



Set an access point name (APN)



Set “caller ID notified/not notified”



Set others



Exit the communication software

#### ■ AT commands

- The AT commands are used to control a modem. The FOMA phone, which conforms to the AT commands, supports some extended commands and unique AT commands.
- By entering AT commands, you can carry out detailed setting for packet communication and FOMA phone, and confirm (display) the setting contents.
- If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter “ATE1 ”.

## Confirm COM Port Number

To manually carry out the communication setting, you need to specify a COM port number, which is assigned to “FOMA P904i” (modem) embedded after you install the “P904i communication setup file” (driver). The confirmation method varies depending on the operating system of your personal computer.

- When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera U” or “mopera”, you do not need to set an access point name (APN); therefore, you do not need to confirm the modem.

- 1 [スタート (Start)] ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 2 From “ハードウェアとサウンド (Hardware and sound)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”, open “電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” display appears, enter “市外局番/エリアコード (City code/Area code)”, then click “OK”.
- 4 Open the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port number in the “接続先 (Access point)” field of “FOMA P904i”, then click “OK”.

- When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, confirm the COM port number of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker in the “接続先 (Access point)” field.
- The COM port number you confirmed is used to set an access point name (APN) (see page 45).
- The contents on the property display and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.
- Windows Vista does not support “Hyper Terminal”. For Windows Vista, set by using a software program which supports Windows Vista. (Follow the settings of the software program you use.)



## Set an Access Point Name (APN)

The operation below explains how to set an access point name (APN) for packet communication. You can register up to 10 access point names (APNs), which are managed with cid1 to cid10.

When using “mopera U” or “mopera”, you do not need to set the access point name (APN).

The operation below is the example where you use “XXX.abc” as the access point name (APN) and use the FOMA USB Cable (option). For the actual access point name (APN), contact your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The setting here will be the access point number for dial-up network setting (see page 45).


## Set Caller ID Notified/Not Notified

For packet communication, you can specify whether to notify your caller ID (caller ID notified/not notified).

The caller ID is your important information; so, take a great care to notify your caller ID.

You can use AT commands (\*DGPIR command) to specify “caller ID notified/not notified” before dial-up connection.

## Set Dial-up Network

1  [スタート (Start)]

▶ “接続先 (Access point)”

▶ Click “接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Setup the connection or network)”.

2 Select “ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Setup the dial-up connection)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



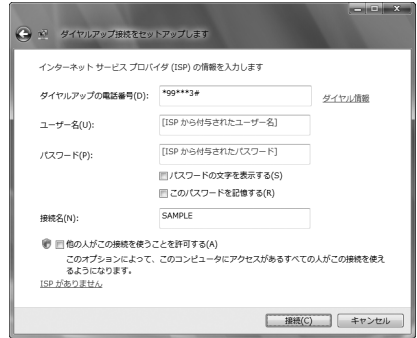
3 If the “デバイスの選択 (Select a device)” display appears, check “FOMA P904i” only, then click “次へ (Next)”.

● When connecting wirelessly using Bluetooth, put a check mark for only the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker.

● The “デバイスの選択 (Select a device)” display appears only when you have registered two or more modems.

4 Enter any name in the “接続名 (Connection name)” field.

● Here, “SAMPLE” is entered as an example.




5 Enter an access point number in the “ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Phone number for dial-up)” field.

● When connecting to “mopera U”, enter “\*99\*\*\*3#” as the access point number.


6 Enter the user name and password supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” fields. Then click “接続 (Connect)”

▶ Click “閉じる (Close)”.

● When connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can leave the user name and password fields blank.

7  [スタート (Start)] ▶ “接続先 (Access point)” ▶ Highlight the access point which is finished with connection, and select “プロパティ (Property)” after the right click.

## 8 Click the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

When two or more modems are connected to your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904i” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it. If two or more modems are checked, click the  button to position the priority level of “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904i” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” to the top or uncheck modems other than “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P904i” or “モデム (Modem) - the name of the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker”.

When “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is checked, uncheck it.

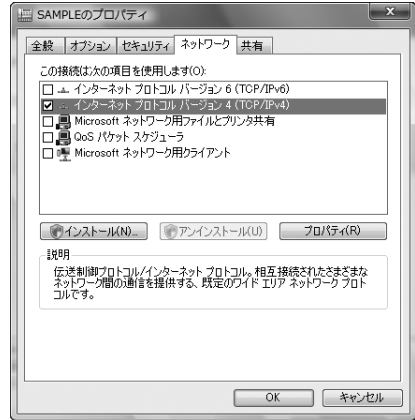
- The COM port number allocated to “FOMA P904i” or “the in-use Bluetooth-linked standard modem or Bluetooth modem provided by a Bluetooth maker” varies depending on the personal computer you use.
- When connecting to “mopera U”, enter “\*99\*\*\*3#” as the access point number.



## 9 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

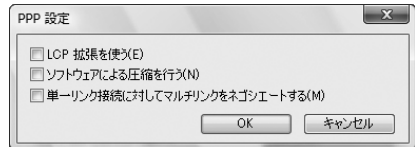
In the “この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use the following items for this connection)” field, select “インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPv4) [Internet protocol version 4 (TCP/IPv4)]”. You can set the “QoS パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)” if necessary.

Contact your ISP (Internet service provider) or network administrator for how to set up TCP/IP to connect to a general ISP and so on.



## 10 Click the “オプション (Option)” tab, then click “PPP設定 (PPP settings)”.


## 11 Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



## 12 Return to the display in step 9, then click “OK”.

## Making Dial-up Connection

Perform the operation on page 3 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

- 1 “ [スタート (Start)]” ▶ Open “接続先 (Access point)”.
- 2 Select access point and click “接続 (Connect)”.

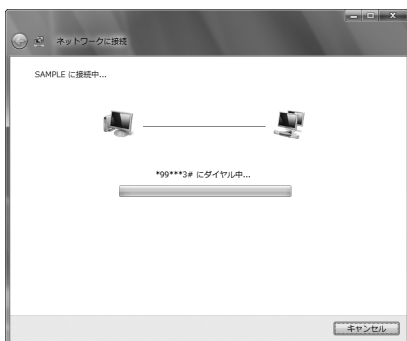


- 3 Confirm the contents and click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

• When connecting to “mopera U” or “mopera”, you can leave the user name and password fields blank.

- 4 The display appears to indicate the connecting state.

In this period, the system performs logon processing to confirm the user name and password.



- 5 After the connection is completed, click “閉じる (Close)”.

• You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail and so on.



### Information

- Use the FOMA phone with the dial-up setting completed for dial-up connection. To connect another FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall the communication setup files (driver).
- The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during communication.
- During packet communication, the communication state appears on the FOMA phone.



“→” (Communicating, data sending)

“←” (Communicating, data receiving)

“↑” (Communicating, no data sending/receiving)

“↓” (Outgoing or being disconnected)

“↕” (Incoming or being disconnected)

- During 64K data communication, “↕” appears on the FOMA phone.



### Disconnecting

- 1 Click the dial-up icon on the task tray.
- 2 Select “接続または切断 (Connect or disconnect)”, then click “切断 (Disconnect)”  
▶ Click “閉じる (Close)”.



### Information

- The communication line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the communication line, perform this operation.
- The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

## When you cannot connect to network

If you cannot connect to network (if you fail a dial-up connection), confirm the following items:

| If this error occurs                                 | Confirm those:   |
|--|--|
| Your personal computer cannot recognize "FOMA P904i" | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Confirm whether your personal computer satisfies the operating environment (see page 2).</li><li>Confirm whether "P904i communication setup files" (driver) is installed in your personal computer.</li><li>Confirm whether the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and powered on.</li><li>Confirm whether the FOMA USB Cable (option) is securely connected.</li><li>Confirm whether the Bluetooth device is connected using the Dial-up service.</li></ul>                        |
| You cannot connect to the access point               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Confirm whether the ID (user name) and password are correct.</li><li>When you need to notify your caller ID such as when using "mopera U" or "mopera", make sure "184" is not prefixed to the phone number.</li><li>Confirm that "フロー制御を使う (Use the flow control)" is checked in the modem properties.</li><li>If you cannot connect to the access point even after confirming above, contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting method, and so on.</li></ul> |

## Set 64K Data Communication

The operation below explains how to set the 64K data communication without using "FOMA PC setup software".

### Setting dial-up connection and TCP/IP

The setting of dial-up connection and TCP/IP for the 64K data communication is the same as for the packet communication (see page 44).

Take care of the following points:

- In the 64K data communication, you do not need to set an access point name (APN). For the access point of the dial-up connection, enter the phone number of the access point specified by your Internet service provider or network administrator. (To connect to "mopera U", enter "\*8701" in the phone number field. To connect to "mopera", enter "\*9601" in the phone number field.)
- Set "caller ID notified/not notified" and "others" as required. (When connecting to "mopera U" or "mopera", you need to notify your caller ID.)
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on the setting contents.

### How to connect and disconnect

You can operate in the same way as for the packet communication. Perform the operations on page 41 or page 47.

## Using FirstPass PC Software

The FirstPass PC software is to access the FirstPass site from the web browser of your personal computer using the user certificate obtained by the FOMA phone supporting FirstPass.

## Notes for Installing FirstPass PC Software

### Confirm the operating environment

Use the FirstPass PC software under the following operating environment:

| Item                 | Required environment                         |
|----------------------|--|
| PC main unit         | PC/AT compatible model                       |
| OS                   | Microsoft® Windows Vista™ (Japanese version) |
| Memory requirements  | 512 Mbytes or more*                          |
| Hard disk space size | Unused memory space of 10 Mbytes or more**   |
| Browser              | Microsoft® Internet Explorer 7.0 or higher   |

\*: The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on the system environment.

### Before installing

See "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder of the CD-ROM before installing the FirstPass PC software.

## Install FirstPass PC Software

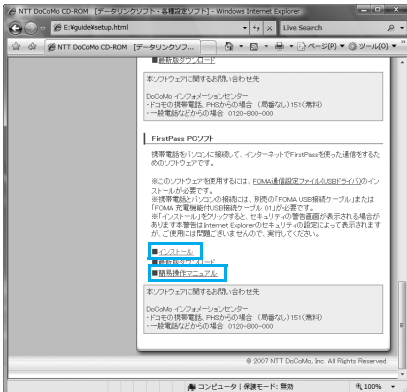
The displays are slightly different depending on the personal computer you use.

- 1 Set the provided “FOMA P904i CD-ROM” into your personal computer.
- 2 To install the FirstPass PC software, click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setup software)”.



- 3 Click “インストール (Install)” under “FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC software)”.

Then, perform the operations described in “簡易操作マニュアル (Easy operation manual)” (PDF format).

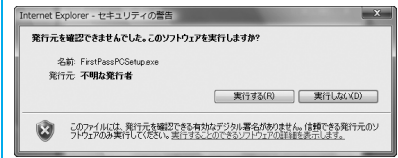


When you click “インストール (Install)”, an alert message might appear in the screen as shown below. This alert message appears depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but you can use your computer without any problem.

- When the “ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (File download - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行 (Execute)”.



- When the “Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer - Security alert)” window appears: Click “実行する (Execute)”.



# Using AT Command

## AT Command

AT commands are used to specify and modify the functions of the FOMA phone on the personal computer.

※The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list:

**[AT]:** Commands which are available at the FOMA P904i Command Port.

**[M]:** Commands which are available in the FOMA P904i (modem).

**[&F]:** Commands whose settings are initialized by the AT&F command.

**[&W]:** Commands whose settings are saved by the AT&W command. The set value can be recalled by the ATZ command.

### Information

- When you make a call from an external device or make an AT command call, the call is made from Number A, regardless of the current mode of 2in1.  
[Dialing from the Phonebook]  
In A Mode, dialing to the Phonebook entries of B setting is restricted.  
In B Mode, dialing to the Phonebook entries of A setting is restricted.  
In Dual Mode, dialing to the Phonebook entries of A/B/common setting is available from Number A.  
[Dialing from Redial]  
In A Mode, dialing to the latest dialed call record of Number A is available, and in B Mode, dialing to the latest dialed call record of Number B is available, both from Number A.

## Entry Format of AT Command

To enter an AT command, use the terminal mode display of the communication software. Be sure to enter half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

• Entry example

ATD\*99\*\*\*1# 

RETURN mark  
Parameter  
Command


• You need to enter an AT command on one line, including a parameter (digits and symbols) which follows the command.

### Information

- The terminal mode enables you to operate a personal computer as one communication terminal. Using this mode, you can send characters you have entered from the keyboard to a line connected to the communication port.


## Switch between Online Data Mode and Online Command Mode

There are following two methods of switching the FOMA phone between the online data mode and online command mode:

- Enter the “+++” command or enter the code specified in the “S2” register.
- Set the ER signal of the RS-232C※ off when “AT&D1” is set.
- To switch the online command mode to the online data mode, enter “ATO 

※The RS-232C signal line, which is emulated via the USB interface, is controlled by a communication application.

### ■ Saving the setting contents

Please be careful that the setting contents with AT commands are initialized when the FOMA phone is turned off and on or the external device is removed, except for the access point name (APN) setting with the AT+CGDCONT command, QoS setting with the AT+CGEQMIN or AT+CGEQREQ command, incoming call acceptance/rejection setting with the AT+DGAPL, AT+DGARL, or AT+DGANSM command, phone number notification/no notification setting (for packet communication) with the AT+DGPIR command and caller ID notification restriction setting with the AT+CLIR command. For commands with [&W], you can enter “AT&W 

50

## AT Command List

| AT command                  | Outline   | Parameter/Explanation  | Command execution example   |
|-----------------------------|---|--|---|
| A/<br>[M]                   | Re-executes the last executed command. No carriage return is required.  | —  | A/<br>OK  |
| AT%V<br>[M]                 | Displays the version of the FOMA phone.   | —  | AT%V<br>Ver1.00<br>OK   |
| AT&Cn<br>[M]<br>[&F]&[W]    | Selects the operating conditions of the circuit CD signal sent to the DTE.  | n=0: CD is always ON.<br>n=1: CD varies according to the carrier of the other party's modem. (default)   | AT&C1<br>OK   |
| AT&Dn<br>[M]<br>[&F]&[W]    | Selects an operation to be performed when the circuit ER signal received from the DTE transits from ON to OFF.  | n=0: Ignores the ER status. (Always assumed to be ON.)<br>n=1: Sets the online command state when the ER changes from ON to OFF.<br>n=2: Sets the offline command state when the ER changes from ON to OFF. (default)  | AT&D1<br>OK   |
| AT&En<br>[M]<br>[&F]&[W]    | Selects the speed display specification for connection.   | n=0: Displays communication speed between radio wave blocks.<br>n=1: Displays DTE serial communication speed. (default)  | AT&E0<br>OK   |
| AT&Fn<br>[AT][M]            | Returns all registers to the default. Performs line disconnection processing if you enter this command during communication.  | Only n=0 is specifiable. (Can be omitted)  | —   |
| AT&Sn<br>[M]<br>[&F]&[W]    | Specifies the control of the data set ready signal to be output to the DTE.   | n=0: DR is always ON. (default)<br>n=1: DR is set to ON at connection of the line (at establishment of a communication call).  | AT&S0<br>OK   |
| AT&Wn<br>[M]                | Stores the current set values.  | Only n=0 is specifiable. (Can be omitted)  | —   |
| AT* DANTE<br>[AT][M]        | Shows the number of antenna bars. (0 to 3)  | =0: Antenna shows the out of the service area<br>=1: Zero antenna bars or a single antenna bar<br>=2: Two antenna bars<br>=3: Three antenna bars   | AT* DANTE<br>* DANTE:3<br>OK<br>AT* DANTE=?<br>* DANTE:(0-3)<br>OK                            |
| AT* DGANSM=n<br>[M]         | Sets the reject/accept setting mode for the packet incoming call.<br>The setting with this command is valid for incoming calls in packet communication after you enter the setting command. | n=0: Invalidates the incoming call reject/accept setting. (default)<br>n=1: Validates the incoming call reject setting (AT* DGARL).<br>n=2: Validates the incoming call accept setting (AT* DGAPL).<br>AT* DGANSM?: Displays the current setting.                | AT* DGANSM=0<br>OK<br>AT* DGANSM?<br>* DGANSM:0<br>OK   |
| AT* DGAPL=n<br>[cid]<br>[M] | Sets the APN of which packet incoming call is to be accepted. To specify the APN, use the <cid> parameter defined in AT+CGDCONT.  | n=0: Adds the APN defined by <cid> to the incoming call accept list.<br>n=1: Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from the incoming call accept list.<br>Applied to all the cid contents if <cid> is omitted.<br>AT* DGAPL?: Displays the incoming call accept list. | AT* DGAPL=0,1<br>OK<br>AT* DGAPL?<br>* DGAPL:1<br>OK<br>AT* DGAPL=1<br>OK<br>AT* DGAPL?<br>OK |
| AT* DGARL=n<br>[cid]<br>[M] | Sets the APN of which packet incoming call is to be rejected. To specify the APN, use the <cid> parameter defined in +CGDCONT.  | n=0: Adds the APN defined by <cid> to the incoming call reject list.<br>n=1: Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from the incoming call reject list.<br>Applied to all the cid contents if <cid> is omitted.<br>AT* DGARL?: Displays the incoming call reject list. | AT* DGARL=0,1<br>OK<br>AT* DGARL?<br>* DGARL:1<br>OK<br>AT* DGARL=1<br>OK<br>AT* DGARL?<br>OK |



| AT command                          | Outline  | Parameter/Explanation  | Command execution example   |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|---|
| AT*DGPIR=n<br><br>[M]               | This command is valid at dialing/receiving calls.<br>In the dial-up network setting, you can add "186" (notify) or "184" (not notify) to the phone number of the access point.<br>(See page 23 or page 45) | n=0: Uses the APN as it is. (default)<br>n=1: Adds "184" to the APN. (always not notify)<br>n=2: Adds "186" to the APN. (always notify)<br>AT*DGPIR?: Displays the current setting.  | AT*DGPIR=0<br>OK<br>AT*DGPIR?<br>*DGPIR:0<br>OK   |
| AT*DRPW<br><br>[AT][M]              | Displays the output power index for receiving.<br>(0: minimum value to 75: maximum value)  | —  | AT*DRPW<br>*DRPW:0<br>OK  |
| +++<br><br>[M]                      | Changes to the online command state without disconnecting the line when the escape sequence is executed in the online mode.  | —  | —   |
| AT+CEER<br><br>[M]                  | Displays the reason why the preceding call was disconnected.   | <report><br>Disconnection reason list (See page 57)  | AT+CEER<br>+CEER:36<br>OK   |
| AT+CGDCONT<br>[M]                   | Sets the access point name (APN) for when dialing for packet communication.  | See page 56.   | See page 56.  |
| AT+CGEQMIN<br><br>[M]               | Registers the reference value to judge whether the system permits QoS (Quality of service) reported from the network at establishment of PPP packet communication.   | AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter]<br>See page 56.<br>AT+CGEQMIN=?<br>Lists the settable values.<br>AT+CGEQMIN?<br>Displays the current setting.   | See page 56.  |
| AT+CGEQREQ<br><br>[M]               | Sets QoS (Quality of service) to be requested to the network at dialing of the PPP packet communication.   | AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]<br>See page 56.<br>AT+CGEQREQ=?<br>Lists the settable values.<br>AT+CGEQREQ?<br>Displays the current setting.   | See page 56.  |
| AT+CGMR<br><br>[M]                  | Displays the version of the FOMA phone.  | —  | AT+CGMR<br>1234512345123456<br>OK   |
| AT+CGREG=n<br><br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]    | Sets whether the network registration state is notified.<br>Displays whether you are inside or outside the service area according to the returned notification.  | n=0: Not notified. (default)<br>n=1: Notified at switching between the inside and outside of the service area.<br>(Inquiry)<br>AT+CGREG?<br>+CGREG: <n>,<stat><br>n: Set value<br>stat:<br>0: Outside packet area<br>1: Inside packet area<br>4: Unknown<br>5: Inside packet area (during roaming) | AT+CGREG=1<br>OK<br>(set to "Notified")<br>AT+CGREG?<br>+CGREG:1,0<br>OK<br>(means the outside of the service area)<br><br>(when moved from the outside to the inside of the service area)<br>+CGREG: 1 |
| AT+CGSN<br><br>[M]                  | Displays the serial number of the FOMA phone.  | —  | AT+CGSN<br>123456789012345<br>OK  |
| AT+CLIP=n<br><br>[AT][M]<br>[&F]&W] | Enables to display the other party's caller ID on the personal computer at reception of 64K data communication or videophone calls.  | n=0: Does not notify. (default)<br>n=1: Notifies.<br><br>Result: +CLIP:<n>,<m><br>m=0: NW setting not to notify caller ID at calling<br>m=1: NW setting to notify caller ID at calling<br>m=2: Unknown   | AT+CLIP=0<br>OK<br>AT+CLIP?<br>+CLIP:0,1<br>OK  |

| AT command                          | Outline  | Parameter/Explanation   | Command execution example  |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|--|
| AT+CLIR=n<br><br>[M]                | Sets whether to notify your phone number to do 64K data communication or to make videophone calls. | n=0: Notifies (does not notify) caller ID according to CLIR service.<br>n=1: Does not notify the other party of your caller ID.<br>n=2: Notifies the other party of your caller ID. (default)<br>Result: +CLIR: <n>,<m><br>m=0: CLIR is not launched. (always notify)<br>m=1: CLIR is launched. (always not notify)<br>m=2: Unknown<br>m=3: CLIR temporary mode (not notify, default)<br>m=4: CLIR temporary mode (notify, default)   | AT+CLIR=0<br>OK<br>AT+CLIR?<br>+CLIR:0,1<br>OK<br>AT+CLIR=?<br>+CLIR:(0-2)<br>OK   |
| AT+CMEE=n<br><br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]     | Sets how the FOMA phone shows an error report.   | n=0: Uses the ordinary ERROR result. (default)<br>n=1: +CME ERROR: Uses the <err> result code. <err> indicates a numeric value.<br>n=2: +CME ERROR: Uses the <err> result code. <err> indicates characters.<br>AT+CMEE?: Displays the current setting.<br>Command execution examples on the right are for when the FOMA phone or connection has abnormality.<br>Below listed are the +CME ERROR result codes.<br>1: no connection to phone<br>10: SIM not inserted<br>15: SIM wrong<br>16: incorrect password<br>100: unknown | AT+CMEE=0<br>OK<br>AT+CNUM<br>ERROR<br>AT+CMEE=1<br>OK<br>AT+CNUM<br>+CME ERROR: 10<br>AT+CMEE=2<br>OK<br>AT+CNUM<br>+CME ERROR: SIM<br>not inserted   |
| AT+CNUM<br><br>[AT][M]              | Displays the own phone number of the FOMA phone.   | number: Phone number<br>type: 129 or 145<br>129: Does not include the IDD prefix code (+).<br>145: Includes the IDD prefix code (+).<br>Result: +CNUM:,<number>,<type>  | AT+CNUM<br>+CNUM:,"+8190123<br>45678",145<br>OK  |
| AT+CR=n<br><br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]       | Displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code appears at connection of the line. | n=0: Does not display. (default)<br>n=1: Displays.<br><serv>: Displays only "GPRS" that means packet communication.<br>(Displays "SYNC", "AV32K", or "AV64K", depending on the line type.)<br>AT+CR?: Displays the current set value.   | AT+CR=1<br>OK<br>ATD *99** *1#<br>+CR: GPRS<br>CONNECT   |
| AT+CRIC=n<br><br>[AT][M]<br>[&F]&W] | Sets whether the extended result code is used at reception.  | n=0: Does not use +CRING. (default)<br>n=1: Uses +CRING.<type>.<br>AT+CRIC?: Displays the current setting.<br>The +CRING format is as follows:<br>+CRING: <type><br>During PPP packet ringing<br>+CRING: GPRS "PPP",,<APN>  | AT+CRIC=0<br>OK<br>AT+CRIC?<br>+CRIC: 0<br>OK  |
| AT+CREG=n<br><br>[AT][M]<br>[&F]&W] | Sets whether the result is displayed about the inside and outside of the service area.             | n=0: Not notified. (default)<br>n=1: Notified at switching between the inside and outside of the service area.<br>(Inquiry)<br>AT+CREG?<br>+CREG: <n>,<stat><br>n: Set value<br>stat:<br>0: Outside voice call area<br>1: Inside voice call area<br>4: Unknown<br>5: Inside voice call area (during roaming)  | AT+CREG=1<br>OK<br>(set to "Notified")<br>AT+CREG?<br>+CREG: 1,0<br>OK<br>(means the outside of the service area)<br><br>(when moved from the outside to the inside of the service area)<br>+CREG: 1 |
| AT+GMI<br><br>[M]                   | Displays the manufacturer name (Panasonic).  | —   | AT+GMI<br>Panasonic<br>OK  |
| AT+GMM<br><br>[M]                   | Displays the product name (FOMA P904i) of the FOMA phone.  | —   | AT+GMM<br>FOMA P904i<br>OK   |

| AT command                   | Outline  | Parameter/Explanation   | Command execution example                                  |
|------------------------------|--|---|--|
| AT+GMR<br>[M]                | Displays the version of the FOMA phone.  | —   | AT+GMR<br>Ver1.00<br>OK                                    |
| AT+IFC=n,m<br>[M]<br>[&F]&W] | Selects the flow control method.   | n: DCE by DTE<br>m: DTE by DCE<br>0: No flow control<br>1: XON/XOFF flow control<br>2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control<br>Default: n, m = 2,2<br>AT+IFC?: Inquires the set value.  | AT+IFC=2,2<br>OK   |
| AT+WS46=n<br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]  | Selects the wireless communication network of the FOMA phone.  | n=22: W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) only specifiable. (default)  | AT+WS46=22<br>OK   |
| ATA<br>[M]                   | Performs the receiving process in the mode when the FOMA phone received the incoming call.   | —   | RING<br>ATA<br>CONNECT                                     |
| ATD<br>[M]                   | Performs the automatic outgoing process to the FOMA phone according to the contents specified in the parameter and dial parameter. | <cid>: 1 to 10<br>Displays the APN defined by +CGDCONT.<br>When calling cid1, you can omit the phone number like "ATD*99**.*#."   | ATD*99**.*1#<br>CONNECT                                    |
| ATEn<br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]       | Sets whether echo-back is issued to the DTE in the command mode.   | n=0: Issues no echo-back.<br>n=1: Issues echo-back. (default)   | ATE1<br>OK   |
| ATHn<br>[M]                  | Places the FOMA phone into the on-hook state.  | n=0: Disconnects the line. (can be omitted)   | (During packet communication)<br>+++<br>ATH<br>NO CARRIER  |
| ATIn<br>[AT][M]              | Displays the ID code.  | n=0: Displays "NTT DoCoMo".<br>n=1: Displays the product name. (same as +GMM)<br>n=2: Displays the version of the PPP packet function. (same as +GMR)   | ATI0<br>NTT DoCoMo<br>OK<br>ATI1<br>FOMA P904i<br>OK       |
| ATOn<br>[M]                  | Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.   | n=0: Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode. (can be omitted)   | ATO<br>CONNECT   |
| ATQn<br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]       | Sets whether the result code is to be displayed for the DTE.   | n=0: Displays the result code. (default)<br>n=1: Does not display the result code.  | ATQ0<br>OK<br>ATQ1<br>("OK" is not returned at this time.) |
| ATS0=n<br>[M]<br>[&F]&W]     | Sets the number of rings required until the FOMA phone automatically receives an incoming call.                                    | n=0: Does not automatically receive an incoming call. (default)<br>n=1 to 255: Automatically receives an incoming call with the specified number of rings.<br>(when n ≥ 10, does not automatically receive a packet (PPP) incoming call, then the line is disconnected after about 30 seconds.)<br>ATS0?: Inquires the set value. | ATS0=0<br>OK<br>ATS0?<br>000<br>OK                         |
| ATS2=n<br>[M]<br>[&F]        | Sets the escape character.   | n=43: Default<br>n=127: Makes escape processing invalid.<br>ATS2?: Inquires the set value.  | ATS2=43<br>OK<br>ATS2?<br>043<br>OK                        |
| ATS3=n<br>[M]<br>[&F]        | Sets the carriage return (CR) character.   | n=13: Default (n=13 only specifiable)<br>ATS3?: Inquires the set value.   | ATS3=13<br>OK<br>ATS3?<br>013<br>OK                        |
| ATS4=n<br>[M]<br>[&F]        | Sets the line feed (LF) character.   | n=10: Default (n=10 only specifiable)<br>ATS4?: Inquires the set value.   | ATS4=10<br>OK<br>ATS4?<br>010<br>OK                        |

| AT command                  | Outline   | Parameter/Explanation   | Command execution example  |
|-----------------------------|---|---|--|
| ATS5=n<br><br>[M]<br>[&F]   | Sets the back space (BS) character.   | n=8: Default (n=8 only specifiable)<br><br>ATS5?: Inquires the set value.   | ATS5=8<br>OK<br>ATS5?<br>008<br>OK   |
| ATS30=n<br><br>[M][&F]      | Sets the inactive timer (minute). When no user data is sent or received, the connection is cut after the set time has elapsed. This command is for only 64K data communication. When 0 is set, the inactive timer turns to OFF. | n=0 to 255 (default=0) (unit: minute)   | ATS30=0<br>OK  |
| ATS103=n<br><br>[M][&F]     | Selects characters to pause for incoming sub-address.   | n=0: *(asterisk)<br>n=1: / (slash) (default)<br>n=2: ¥ or back slash  | ATS103=0<br>OK   |
| ATS104=n<br><br>[M][&F]     | Selects characters to pause for outgoing sub-address.   | n=0: # (sharp)<br>n=1: % (percentage) (default)<br>n=2: & (and)   | ATS104=0<br>OK   |
| ATVn<br>[M]<br>[&F][&W]     | Sets all the result codes in the numeric or alphabetical notation.  | n=0: Returns the result code in a numeric value.<br>n=1: Returns the result code in alphabetical characters. (default)  | ATV1<br>OK   |
| ATXn<br><br>[M]<br>[&F][&W] | Sets whether to display the speed in the CONNECT display at connection. Detects busy tone and dial tone.  | n=0: Dial tone not detected; busy tone not detected; speed not displayed.<br>n=1: Dial tone not detected; busy tone not detected; speed displayed.<br>n=2: Dial tone detected; busy tone not detected; speed displayed.<br>n=3: Dial tone not detected; busy tone detected; speed displayed.<br>n=4: Dial tone detected; busy tone detected; speed displayed. (default) | ATX1<br>OK   |
| ATZ<br><br>[M]              | Resets the setting to the contents of the nonvolatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the line is disconnected.  | —   | (In online)<br>ATZ<br>NO CARRIER<br>(In offline)<br>ATZ<br>OK  |
| ATYS<br><br>[M]             | Displays the contents of the each command and S register currently set.   | —   | ATYS<br>E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1<br>&D2 &S0 ¥V0<br>S000=000<br>S002=043<br>S003=013<br>S004=010<br>S005=008<br>S006=005<br>S007=060<br>S008=003<br>S010=001<br>S030=000<br>S103=000<br>S104=000<br>OK |
| AT¥Vn<br>[M]<br>[&F][&W]    | Selects the response code specifications at connection.   | n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default)<br>n=1: Uses the extended result code.  | AT¥V0<br>OK  |

※The following commands do not result in an error even if specified; however, they do not function as commands.

- AT (AT only entered.)
- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)
- ATS6 (Setting the pause time taken for dialing)
- ATS8 (Setting the pause time by comma dialing)
- ATS10 (Setting the automatic disconnection delay time)

## Supplementary Explanation of AT Commands

- Command name: +CGDCONT [M]
  - Outline
 

This command sets an access point name (APN) for when dialing for packet communication.
  - Format
 

```
+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP[","<APN>"]]]
```
  - Explanation of parameters
 

You set an access point name (APN) for when dialing for packet communication.

See the example below for command instructions.

```
<cid>※: 1 to 10
<APN>※: Arbitrary
```

※ <cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet communication, which is registered in the FOMA phone.

You can register 1 to 10 in the FOMA phone. "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1, and "mopera.net" is registered to <cid>=3, each at purchase, so register 2 or 4 through 10.

<APN> indicates any character string for each access point name.
  - Operation at omission of parameters
 

```
+CGDCONT= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the default.
+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the default.
+CGDCONT=? : Lists the specifiable values.
+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.
```
  - Command execution example
 

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"
OK
```

※ The command used to register an APN name, abc (cid=2)

※ This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and is not reset by [&F] and [Z], either.
- Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter] [M]
  - Outline
 

This command registers the reference value to judge whether the system permits QoS (Quality of service) reported from the network at establishment of the PPP packet communication.

You can specify four setting patterns described in the command execution example below.
  - Format
 

```
+CGEQMIN=<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]
```
  - Explanation of parameters
 

```
<cid>※ : 1 to 10
<Maximum bitrate UL>※ : None (default) or 64
<Maximum bitrate DL>※ : None (default) or 384
```

※ <cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet communication, which is registered in the FOMA phone.

You can register 1 to 10 in the FOMA phone. "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is registered to <cid>=3, each at purchase, so register 2 or 4 through 10.

<Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> are used to specify the minimum baud rates (kbps) for upload and download between the FOMA phone and base station. "None" (default) accepts all baud rates; however, 64 and 384 do not accept a baud rate other than 64 kbps and 384 kbps. If you specify 64 and 384, you may not establish packet communication.
  - Operation at omission of parameters
 

```
+CGEQMIN= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the default.
+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the default.
```

- Command execution example
 

You can specify only the following four setting patterns: (The setting in (1) is defined in each cid as the default.)

(1) Command that accepts all the baud rates for both upload and download (cid=2)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
```

(2) Command that accepts 64 kbps for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=3)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=3,64,384
OK
```

(3) Command that accepts 64 kbps for upload and all baud rates for download (cid=4)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
OK
```

(4) Command that accepts all baud rates for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=5)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384
OK
```

※ This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and is not reset by [&F] and [Z], either.
- Command name: +CGEREQ=[parameter] [M]
  - Outline
 

This command sets QoS (Quality of service) to be requested to the network at dialing of the PPP packet communication.

You can specify only one setting pattern described in the command execution example below, which is set as the default.
  - Format
 

```
+CGEREQ=<cid>]
```
  - Explanation of parameter
 

```
<cid>※: 1 to 10
```

※ <cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet communication, which is registered in the FOMA phone.

You can register 1 to 10 in the FOMA phone. "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is registered to <cid>=3, each at purchase, so register 2 or 4 through 10.
  - Operation at omission of parameter
 

```
+CGEREQ= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the default.
+CGEREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the default.
```
  - Command execution example
 

You can specify only the following one pattern: (This setting is defined in each cid as the default.)

(1) Command that requests a connection at 64 kbps for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=3)

```
AT+CGEREQ=3
OK
```

※ This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and is not reset by [&F] and [Z], either.
- Command name: +CLIP
  - Outline
 

The result for "AT+CLIP=1" is displayed in the following format:

```
+CLIP: <number> <type>
```
  - Command execution example
 

```
AT+CLIP=1
OK
RING
+CLIP: "09012345678",49
```

## Disconnection Reason List

### ■ 64K Data Communication

| Value | Reason   |
|-------|--|
| 1     | The specified number does not exist.                                     |
| 16    | The line was normally disconnected.                                      |
| 17    | Cannot communicate because the other party is communicating.             |
| 18    | Dialed but no response has come in within the specified duration.        |
| 19    | Cannot communicate because the other party is dialing.                   |
| 21    | The other party rejected to receive the call.                            |
| 63    | The network service and options are not valid.                           |
| 65    | The specified transmission performance is not provided.                  |
| 88    | Dialed to or received the call from the phone with different properties. |

### ■ Packet Communication

| Value | Reason   |
|-------|--|
| 27    | No APN was found; or an invalid APN was specified.         |
| 30    | The line was disconnected from the network.                |
| 33    | You have not applied for the service option you requested. |
| 36    | The line was normally disconnected.                        |

## Result Codes

### ■ Result Code List

| Numeric notation | Character notation | Meaning   |
|------------------|--------------------|---|
| 0                | OK                 | Processing has been executed normally.          |
| 1                | CONNECT            | The line has been connected to the other party. |
| 2                | RING               | An incoming call has arrived.                   |
| 3                | NO CARRIER         | The line has been disconnected.                 |
| 4                | ERROR              | The system can receive no command.              |
| 6                | NO DIALTONE        | The system can detect no dial tone.             |
| 7                | BUSY               | The system is detecting the busy tone.          |
| 8                | NO ANSWER          | The connection completed; timeout               |
| 100              | RESTRICTION        | The network is restricted.                      |
| 101              | DELAYED            | Within restricted redialing time                |

### ■ Extended Result Code List

For &E0

Connection speed between the FOMA phone and the base station is displayed.

| Numeric notation | Character notation | Connection speed |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 121              | CONNECT 32000      | 32,000bps        |
| 122              | CONNECT 64000      | 64,000bps        |
| 125              | CONNECT 384000     | 384,000bps       |

For &E1

| Numeric notation | Character notation | Connection speed |
|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 5                | CONNECT 1200       | 1,200bps         |
| 10               | CONNECT 2400       | 2,400bps         |
| 11               | CONNECT 4800       | 4,800bps         |
| 13               | CONNECT 7200       | 7,200bps         |
| 12               | CONNECT 9600       | 9,600bps         |
| 15               | CONNECT 14400      | 14,400bps        |
| 16               | CONNECT 19200      | 19,200bps        |
| 17               | CONNECT 38400      | 38,400bps        |
| 18               | CONNECT 57600      | 57,600bps        |
| 19               | CONNECT 115200     | 115,200bps       |
| 20               | CONNECT 230400     | 230,400bps       |
| 21               | CONNECT 460800     | 460,800bps       |

## Information

- Result codes are displayed in the character notation (default) when the ATVn command (see page 55) is set to n=1 and displayed in the numeric notation when it is set to n=0.
- The baud rate is displayed to keep the compatibility with a conventional modem connected via RS-232C. However, the FOMA phone and personal computer are connected via the FOMA USB Cable (option) or Bluetooth; so, the baud rate is different from the actual connection speed.
- "RESTRICTION" (numeric notation: 100) means that the communication network is congested. If this result code appears, wait for a while, then connect the line again.

### ■ Communication Protocol Result Code List

| Numeric notation | Character notation | Meaning                             |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1                | PPPOverUD          | Connected by 64K data communication |
| 2                | AV32K              | Connected by 32K videophone         |
| 3                | AV64K              | Connected by 64K videophone         |
| 5                | PACKET             | Connected by packet communication   |

### ■ Result Code Display Examples

- When ATX0 is set:

CONNECT only appears at completion of the connection, regardless of the contents specified in the ATYV command (see page 55).

Example in character notation: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#  
CONNECT

Example in numeric notation: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#  
1

- When ATX1 is set\*:

· If ATX1 and ATYV0 are set (default):

A result code appears in the following format at completion of the connection: CONNECT<baud rate between the FOMA phone and PC>

Example in character notation: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#  
CONNECT 460800

Example in numeric notation: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#  
1 21

· If ATX1 and ATYV1 are set\*:

A result code appears in the following format at completion of the connection: CONNECT<baud rate between the FOMA phone and PC>PACKET<access point name (APN)><-maximum baud rate for

upload (the FOMA phone → wireless base station)><-maximum baud rate for download (the FOMA phone ← wireless base station)>

Example in character notation: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET  
mopera.ne.jp /64/384

(Indicates that the FOMA phone connected to motpera.ne.jp at maximum 64 kbps for upload and maximum 384 kbps for download.)

Example in numeric notation: ATD\*99\*\*\*1#  
1215

\*If you specify ATX1 and ATYV1 at the same time, you may not be able to correctly carry out the dial-up connection.

You are advised to use only ATYV0.

FOMA® P904i

# Kuten Code List







| Kuten digit 4 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | Kuten digit 4 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | Kuten digit 4 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|---------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 0             | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 0             | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 0             | 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   |
| 揚             | 擁   | 雍   | 楊   | 樣   | 漾   | 溶   | 熔   | 用   | 521 | 玊             | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 坡             | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   |
| 羊             | 羊   | 羊   | 羊   | 羊   | 羊   | 羊   | 羊   | 羊   | 522 | 玊             | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 坡             | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   |
| 葱             | 葱   | 葱   | 葱   | 葱   | 葱   | 葱   | 葱   | 葱   | 523 | 玊             | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 玊   | 坡             | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   | 榜   |
| ...           | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 524 | ...           | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ...           | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |

